

2009

# AICPA technical practice aids as of June 1, 2009, volume 1

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants

Follow this and additional works at: [https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa\\_guides](https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa_guides)



Part of the [Accounting Commons](#), and the [Taxation Commons](#)

---

## Recommended Citation

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, "AICPA technical practice aids as of June 1, 2009, volume 1" (2009). *Guides, Handbooks and Manuals*. 352.

[https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa\\_guides/352](https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa_guides/352)

This Book is brought to you for free and open access by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) Historical Collection at eGrove. It has been accepted for inclusion in Guides, Handbooks and Manuals by an authorized administrator of eGrove. For more information, please contact [egrove@olemiss.edu](mailto:egrove@olemiss.edu).



# AICPA Technical Practice Aids

AS OF JUNE 1, 2009

Volume 1

AICPA®

005149

AICPA Member and  
Public Information:  
[www.aicpa.org](http://www.aicpa.org)

AICPA Online Store:  
[www.cpa2biz.com](http://www.cpa2biz.com)

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

AICPA®

# AICPA Technical Practice Aids

Volume 1

- > Technical Questions and Answers (Nonauthoritative)
- > PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers and Other Implementation Guidance
- > Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations
- > Statement of Position—Accounting
- > Issues Papers Listing of the Accounting Standards Division
- > Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation
- > Practice Alerts

AS OF JUNE 1, 2009

# AICPA Technical Practice Aids

Volume 1

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS



1954-355

- > Technical Questions and Answers (Nonauthoritative)
- > PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers and Other Implementation Guidance
- > Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations
- > Statement of Position—Accounting
- > Issues Papers Listing of the Accounting Standards Division
- > Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation
- > Practice Alerts

**AS OF JUNE 1, 2009**

Acknowledgments:

*PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers and Other Implementation Guidance*

Copyright © 2004-2009 by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB).

Copyright © 2009 by  
American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, Inc.  
New York, NY 10036-8775

All rights reserved. For information about the procedure for requesting permission to make copies of any part of this work, please visit [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com) or call (978) 750-8400.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 PrP 0 9

ISBN 978-0-87051-832-4

# CHANGES AFFECTING *TECHNICAL PRACTICE AIDS*

## TECHNICAL QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS (NONAUTHORITATIVE)

<u>Section</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Status</u>
<b>FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION</b>		
<b>Statement of Financial Position</b>		
1100.15	Liquidity Restrictions	Added
<b>Financial Statements Prepared Under an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA)</b>		
1500.07	Disclosure Concerning Subsequent Events in OCBOA Financial Statements	Added
<b>Personal Financial Statements</b>		
1600.04	Presentation of Assets at Current Values and Liabilities at Current Amounts in Personal Financial Statements	Added
<b>Interim Financial Information</b>		
1900.01	Condensed Interim Financial Reporting by Nonissuers	Added
<b>SPECIALIZED INDUSTRY PROBLEMS</b>		
<b>Insurance Companies</b>		
6300.36	Prospective Unlocking	Added
<b>Investment Companies</b>		
6910.29	Allocation of Unrealized Gain (Loss), Recognition of Carried Interest, and Clawback Obligations	Added
<b>Financial Statement Reporting and Disclosure—Employee Benefit Plans</b>		
6931.11	Fair Value Measurement Disclosures for Master Trusts	Added
<b>Credit Unions</b>		
6995.01	Financial Reporting Issues Related to Actions Taken by the National Credit Union Administration on January 28, 2009 in Connection With the Corporate Credit Union System and the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund	Added
6995.02	Evaluation of Capital Investments in Corporate Credit Unions for Other-Than-Temporary Impairment	Added

## Changes Affecting Technical Practice Aids

<u>Section</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Status</u>
<b>AUDITORS' REPORTS</b>		
<b>Compilation and Review Engagements</b>		
9150.25	Determining Whether Financial Statements Have Been Prepared by the Accountant	Added

## PCAOB STAFF QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS AND OTHER IMPLEMENTATION GUIDANCE PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers

<u>Topic</u>	<u>Question Date</u>	<u>Numbers</u>	<u>PC Section</u>
Registration of Broker-Dealer Auditors	February 19, 2009	Q1–Q11	100.06

<u>Sections Deleted and Redesigned</u>	<u>Old Section</u>	<u>New Section</u>
Preliminary Staff Views	300	Deleted
Staff Views	—	300

### Staff Views

<u>Topic</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>PC Section</u>
An Audit of Internal Control That Is Integrated With an Audit of Financial Statements: Guidance for Auditors of Smaller Public Companies	January 23, 2009	300.01

### Staff Audit Practice Alerts

Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 3, <i>Audit Considerations in the Current Economic Environment</i>	December 5, 2008	400.03
Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 4, <i>Auditor Considerations Regarding Fair Value Measurements, Disclosures, and Other-Than-Temporary Impairments</i>	April 21, 2009	400.04

## TRUST SERVICES PRINCIPLES, CRITERIA, AND ILLUSTRATIONS

<u>Section</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Status</u>
100	Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations for Security, Availability, Processing Integrity, Confidentiality, and Privacy (Including WebTrust® and SysTrust®)	Deleted

## Changes Affecting *Technical Practice Aids*

<u>Section</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Status</u>
100	Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations for Security, Availability, Processing Integrity, Confidentiality, and Privacy	Added

### STATEMENTS OF POSITION—AUDITING AND ATTESTATION Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation, Recently Added

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Addition Date</u>	<u>Section</u>
SOP 09-1	Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address the Completeness, Accuracy, or Consistency of XBRL-Tagged Data.	April 2009	14,440

### Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation, Recently Removed

	Confirmation of Insurance Policies in Force	August 1978	14,040
	Auditing Property and Liability Reinsurance	October 1982	14,060
	Auditing Life Reinsurance	November 1984	14,070
SOP 89-2	Reports on Audited Financial Statements of Investment Companies	January 1989	14,100
SOP 89-3	Questions Concerning Accountants' Services on Prospective Financial Statements	April 1989	14,110
SOP 89-7	Report on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Investment Companies	December 1989	14,140
SOP 90-1	Accountants' Services on Prospective Financial Statements for Internal Use Only and Partial Presentations	January 1990	14,150
SOP 90-2	Report on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Futures Commission Merchants	February 1990	14,160
SOP 92-2	Questions and Answers on the Term Reasonably Objective Basis and Other Issues Affecting Prospective Financial Statements	February 1992	14,220
SOP 92-4	Auditing Insurance Entities' Loss Reserves	May 1992	14,230
SOP 93-8	The Auditor's Consideration of Regulatory Risk-Based Capital for Life Insurance Enterprises	December 29, 1993	14,280

## Changes Affecting *Technical Practice Aids*

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Addition Date</u>	<u>Section</u>
SOP 94-1	Inquiries of State Insurance Regulators	April 20, 1994	14,290
SOP 95-4	Letters for State Insurance Regulators to Comply With the NAIC Model Audit Rule	November 3, 1995	14,300
SOP 95-5	Auditor's Reporting on Statutory Financial Statements of Insurance Enterprises	December 21, 1995	14,310
SOP 98-6	Reporting on Management's Assessment Pursuant to the Life Insurance Ethical Market Conduct Program of the Insurance Marketplace Standards Association	April 9, 1998	14,330

---

### ADDITIONAL CHANGES

#### How *Technical Practice Aids* is Organized

The section "Special Note About Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification*<sup>™</sup>" has been added.

#### Technical Questions and Answers (Nonauthoritative)

Sections throughout Technical Questions and Answers have been deleted or have been revised to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification*<sup>™</sup> (ASC) as well as other necessary changes. Deleted sections are marked with brackets in the tables of contents. Revisions are called out in a note at the end of any revised section

#### Statements of Position—Accounting

The guidance included in this section has been codified into FASB ASC effective July 1, 2009. However, these Statements of Position (SOPs) will continue to be included in *Technical Practice Aids* for archival purposes until further notice. They have been moved to the new section **Archive—Statements of Position—Accounting** in volume 2.

Although SOP 98-2, *Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include Fund Raising* (ACC sec. 10,730), was codified for nongovernmental entities as FASB ASC 958-720, it remains authoritative in its native form for governmental entities. The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) previously made this SOP, as originally issued, applicable to governmental entities; as such, it is still authoritative for those entities. In addition to being moved to the new section **Archive—Statements of Position—Accounting** in volume 2, this SOP is retained in this section for application by governmental entities as authoritative guidance permitted by GASB.

## Practice Bulletins

The guidance included in this section has been codified into FASB ASC effective July 1, 2009. However, the Practice Bulletins will remain in *Technical Practice Aids* for archival purposes until further notice. They have been moved to the new section **Archive—Practice Bulletins** in volume 2.

## Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation,

Conforming and editorial changes have been made to the following due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature:

- SOP 92-8, *Auditing Property/Casualty Insurance Entities' Statutory Financial Statements—Applying Certain Requirements of the NAIC Annual Statement Instructions*
- SOP 99-1, *Guidance to Practitioners in Conducting and Reporting on an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement to Assist Management in Evaluating the Effectiveness of Its Corporate Compliance Program*
- SOP 00-1, *Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables*
- SOP 01-3, *Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions as Required by the New York State Insurance Law*
- SOP 02-1, *Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code*
- SOP 03-2, *Attest Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Emissions Information*
- SOP 04-1, *Auditing the Statement of Social Insurance*
- SOP 06-1, *Reporting Pursuant to the Global Investment Performance Standards*
- SOP 07-2, *Attestation Engagements That Address Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls at Entities That Provide Services to Investment Companies, Investment Advisers, or Other Service Providers*



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## VOLUME 1

<i>Section</i>		<i>Page</i>
.....	How <i>Technical Practice Aids</i> Is Organized .....	1
	TECHNICAL QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS (NONAUTHORITATIVE)	
	Notice to Readers .....	11
1000	Financial Statement Presentation .....	101
	1100 Statement of Financial Position	
	1200 Income Statement	
	1300 Statement of Cash Flows	
	1400 Consolidated Financial Statements	
	1500 Financial Statements Prepared Under An Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA)	
	1600 Personal Financial Statements	
	1800 Notes to Financial Statements	
	1900 Interim Financial Information	
2000	Assets .....	701
	2110 Cash	
	2120 Temporary Investments	
	2130 Receivables	
	2140 Inventories	
	2210 Fixed Assets	
	2220 Long-Term Investments	
	2230 Noncurrent Receivables	
	2240 Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance	
	2250 Intangible Assets	
	2260 Other Assets	
3000	Liabilities and Deferred Credits .....	1801
	3100 Current Liabilities	
	3200 Long-Term Debt	
	3400 Contingent Liabilities	
	3500 Commitments	
	3600 Deferred Credits	
4000	Capital .....	3001
	4110 Issuance of Capital Stock	
	4120 Reacquisition of Capital Stock	
	4130 Warrants	
	4150 Stock Dividends and Stock Splits	

<i>Section</i>		<i>Page</i>
4000	Capital—continued	
	4160 Contributed Capital	
	4200 Retained Earnings	
	4210 Dividends	
	4230 Capital Transactions	
5000	Revenue and Expense .....	3901
	5100 Revenue Recognition	
	5210 Depreciation and Depletion	
	5220 Interest Expense	
	5230 Employee Benefit Plans	
	5240 Cost Allocation	
	5260 Estimated Losses	
	5290 Other Expenses	
	5400 Extraordinary and Unusual Items	
	5500 Earnings per Share	
	5600 Leases	
	5700 Contributions Made	
6000	Specialized Industry Problems .....	5151
	6130 Finance Companies	
	6140 Not-For-Profit Entities	
	6300 Insurance Companies	
	6400 Health Care Entities	
	6500 Extractive Industries	
	6600 Real Estate	
	6700 Construction Contractors	
	6910 Investment Companies	
	6930 Employee Benefit Plans	
	6931 Financial Statement Reporting and Disclosure—Employee Benefit Plans	
	6932 ERISA Reporting and Disclosures	
	6933 Auditing Employee Benefit Plans	
	6934 Limited-Scope Audits—Employee Benefit Plans	
	6935 SAS No. 70 Reports—Employee Benefit Plans	
	6936 Auditing Defined Contribution Plans	
	6937 Auditing Defined Benefit Plans	
	6938 Auditing Health and Welfare Plans	
	6939 Auditor's Reports—Employee Benefit Plans	
	6940 Franchisors	
	6950 State and Local Governments	
	6960 Colleges and Universities	
	6970 Entertainment Industry	
	6980 Brokers and Dealers	

<i>Section</i>		<i>Page</i>
6000	Specialized Industry Problems—continued	
	6990 Common Interest Realty Associations	
	6995 Credit Unions	
7000	Specialized Organizational Problems .....	7001
	7200 Partnerships	
	7400 Related Parties	
8000	Audit Field Work .....	8301
	8100 Generally Accepted Auditing Standards	
	8200 Internal Control	
	8220 Sampling	
	8310 Audit Evidence: Securities	
	8320 Audit Evidence: Inventories	
	8330 Audit Evidence: Fixed Assets	
	8340 Audit Evidence: Confirmation Procedures	
	8345 Audit Evidence: Destruction of Documents	
	8350 Audit Evidence: Audit Documentation	
	8900 Predecessor/Successor Auditors	
9000	Auditors' Reports .....	9051
	9030 Accounting Changes	
	9060 Uncertainties	
	9070 Subsequent Events	
	9080 Audited Financial Statements	
	9100 Signing and Dating Reports	
	9110 Special Reports	
	9120 Reliance on Others	
	9130 Limited Scope Engagements	
	9150 Compilation and Review Engagements	
	9160 Other Reporting Issues	
9500	Attestation Engagements .....	9501
	9510 Attestation Reports	
.....	Topical Index .....	10,001
	PCAOB STAFF QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS AND OTHER IMPLEMENTATION GUIDANCE	
PC	PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers and Other Implementation Guidance .....	11,001
	100 PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers	
	200 [Reserved]	
	300 Staff Views	
	400 Staff Audit Practice Alerts	

Section		Page
.....	Topical Index .....	12,001
	TRUST SERVICES PRINCIPLES, CRITERIA, AND ILLUSTRATIONS	
TSP	Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations .....	15,001
	100 Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations for Security, Availability, Processing Integrity, Confidentiality, and Privacy	
	200 Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations for WebTrust® for Certification Authorities	
	STATEMENT OF POSITION ACCOUNTING	
.....	Introduction .....	16,001
10,000	Statement of Position .....	16,501
	10,730 Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include Fund Raising (SOP 98-2)	
	ISSUES PAPERS ACCOUNTING STANDARDS DIVISION	
13,000	Issues Papers of the Accounting Standards Division .....	28,001
	STATEMENTS OF POSITION AUDITING AND ATTESTATION	
.....	Introduction .....	30,201
14,000	Statements of Position .....	30,211
	[14,010] Revision of Form of Auditor's Report (7/74)	
	[14,020] Audits of Brokers and Dealers in Securities (12/76)	
	[14,030] Clarification of Accounting, Auditing, and Reporting Practices Relating to Hospital Malpractice Loss Contingencies (3/78)	
	[14,040] Confirmation of Insurance Policies in Force (8/72)	
	[14,050] Report on a Financial Feasibility Study (10/82)	
	[14,060] Auditing Property and Liability Reinsurance (10/82)	
	[14,070] Auditing Life Reinsurance (11/84)	
	[14,080] Illustrative Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements of Employee Benefit Plans Comporting With Statement on Auditing Standards No. 58, <i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i> (SOP 88-2)	
	[14,090] Reports on Audited Financial Statements of Brokers and Dealers in Securities (SOP 89-1)	
	[14,100] Reports on Audited Financial Statements of Investment Companies (SOP 89-2)	

Section	Page
14,000	Statements of Position — continued
[14,110]	Questions Concerning Accountants' Services on Prospective Financial Statements (SOP 89-3)
[14,120]	Reports on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Brokers and Dealers in Securities (SOP 89-4)
[14,130]	Auditor's Reports in Audits of State and Local Governmental Units (SOP 89-6)
[14,140]	Report on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Investment Companies (SOP 89-7)
[14,150]	Accountants' Services on Prospective Financial Statements for Internal Use Only and Partial Presentations (SOP 90-1)
[14,160]	Report on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Futures Commission Merchants (SOP 90-2)
[14,170]	Auditor's Reports Under U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development's Audit Guide for Mortgagors Having HUD Insured or Secretary Held Multifamily Mortgages (SOP 90-4)
[14,180]	Inquiries of Representatives of Financial Institutions (SOP 90-5)
[14,190]	Director's Examinations of Banks (SOP 90-6)
[14,200]	The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Control Structure Used in Administering Federal Financial Assistance Programs Under the Single Audit Act (SOP 90-9)
[14,210]	Reports on Audited Financial Statements of Property and Liability Insurance Companies (SOP 90-10)
[14,220]	Questions and Answers on the Term <i>Reasonably Objective Basis</i> and Other Issues Affecting Prospective Financial Statements (SOP 92-2)
[14,230]	Auditing Insurance Entities' Loss Reserves (SOP 92-4)
[14,240]	Audits of State and Local Governmental Entities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance (SOP 92-7)
14,250	Auditing Property/Casualty Insurance Entities' Statutory Financial Statements—Applying Certain Requirements of the NAIC Annual Statement Instructions (SOP 92-8)
[14,260]	Audits of Not-for-Profit Organizations Receiving Federal Awards (SOP 92-9)
[14,270]	Reporting on Required Supplementary Information Accompanying Compiled or Reviewed Financial Statements of Common Interest Realty Associations (SOP 93-5)
[14,280]	The Auditor's Consideration of Regulatory Risk-Based Capital for Life Insurance Enterprises (SOP 93-8)
[14,290]	Inquiries of State Insurance Regulators (SOP 94-1)

<i>Section</i>		<i>Page</i>
14,000	Statements of Position — continued	
	[14,300] Letters for State Insurance Regulators to Comply With the NAIC Model Audit Rule (SOP 95-4)	
	[14,310] Auditor's Reporting on Statutory Financial Statements of Insurance Enterprises (SOP 95-5)	
	[14,320] Audits of States, Local Governments, and Not-for-Profit Organizations Receiving Federal Awards (SOP 98-3)	
	[14,330] Reporting on Management's Assessment Pursuant to the Life Insurance Ethical Market Conduct Program of the Insurance Marketplace Standards Association (SOP 98-6)	
	[14,340] Engagements to Perform Year 2000 Agreed-Upon Procedures Attestation Engagements Pursuant to Rule 17a-5 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, Rule 17Ad-18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, and Advisories No. 17-98 and No. 42-98 of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (SOP 98-8)	
14,350	Guidance to Practitioners in Conducting and Reporting on an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement to Assist Management in Evaluating the Effectiveness of Its Corporate Compliance Program (SOP 99-1)	
14,360	Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables (SOP 00-1)	
14,370	Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions as Required by the New York State Insurance Law (SOP 01-3)	
[14,380]	Reporting Pursuant to the Association for Investment Management and Research Performance Presentation Standards (SOP 01-4)	
14,390	Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code (SOP 02-1)	
14,400	Attest Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Emissions Information (SOP 03-2)	
14,410	Auditing the Statement of Social Insurance (SOP 04-1)	
14,420	Reporting Pursuant to the Global Investment Performance Standards (SOP 06-1)	
14,430	Attestation Engagements That Address Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls at Entities That Provide Services to Investment Companies, Investment Advisers, or Other Service Providers (SOP 07-2)	

<i>Section</i>		<i>Page</i>
14,000	Statements of Position — continued	
	14,440 Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address the Completeness, Accuracy, or Consistency of XBRL-Tagged Data (SOP 09-1)	
	<b>PRACTICE ALERTS</b>	
16,000	Practice Alerts .....	50,741
	16,010 Dealing With Audit Differences	
	16,020 Auditing Inventories—Physical Observations	
	[16,030] Acceptance and Continuance of Audit Clients	
	[16,040] Revenue Recognition Issues	
	[16,050] Auditing Related Parties and Related-Party Transactions	
	16,060 The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995	
	16,070 Members in Public Accounting Firms	
	16,080 Audits of Employee Benefit Plans	
	16,090 Changes in Auditors and Related Topics	
	16,100 The Auditor's Use of Analytical Procedures	
	16,110 Professional Skepticism and Related Topics	
	16,120 Responding to the Risk of Improper Revenue Recognition	
	16,130 Guidance for Independence Discussions With Audit Committees	
	16,140 How the Use of a Service Organization Affects Internal Control Considerations	
	16,150 Accounting for Certain Equity Transactions	
	16,160 Guidance for Communications With Audit Committees Regarding Alternative Treatments of Financial Information Within Generally Accepted Accounting Principles	
	16,170 Auditing Construction Contracts	
	[16,180] Quarterly Review Procedures for Public Companies	
	16,190 Common Peer Review Recommendations	
	16,200 Audit Considerations in Times of Economic Uncertainty	
	[16,210] Communications With the Securities and Exchange Commission	
	16,220 Use of Specialists	
	16,230 Reauditing Financial Statements	
	16,240 Audit Confirmations	
	16,250 Journal Entries and Other Adjustments	
	16,260 Acceptance and Continuance of Clients and Engagements	
	16,270 Illegal Acts	
	16,280 Auditing Procedures With Respect to Variable Interest Entities	
	16,290 Dating of the Auditor's Report and Related Practical Guidance	

## VOLUME 2

### ARCHIVE—STATEMENTS OF POSITION ACCOUNTING

<i>Section</i>		<i>Page</i>
.....	Introduction .....	76,001
10,000	Statements of Position .....	76,501
	[10,010] Recognition of Profit on Sales of Receivables With Recourse (SOP 74-6)	
	[10,020] Financial Accounting and Reporting by Colleges and Universities (SOP 74-8)	
	[10,030] Financial Accounting and Reporting by Face-Amount Certificate Companies (SOP 74-11)	
	[10,040] Accounting Practices in the Mortgage Banking Industry (SOP 74-12)	
	[10,050] Revenue Recognition When Right of Return Exists (SOP 75-1)	
	10,060 Accounting Practices of Real Estate Investment Trusts (SOP 75-2)	
	[10,070] Accrual of Revenues and Expenditures by State and Local Governmental Units (SOP 75-3)	
	[10,080] Presentation and Disclosure of Financial Forecasts (SOP 75-4)	
	[10,090] Accounting Practices in the Broadcasting Industry (SOP 75-5)	
	[10,100] Questions Concerning Profit Recognition on Sales of Real Estate (SOP 75-6)	
	[10,110] Accounting Practices in the Record and Music Industry (SOP 76-1)	
	[10,120] Accounting for Origination Costs and Loan and Commitment Fees in the Mortgage Banking Industry (SOP 76-2)	
	10,130 Accounting Practices for Certain Employee Stock Ownership Plans (SOP 76-3)	
	[10,140] Financial Accounting and Reporting by Investment Companies (SOP 77-1)	
	[10,150] Accounting of Interfund Transfers of State and Local Governmental Units (SOP 77-2)	
	[10,160] Accounting by Hospitals for Certain Marketable Equity Securities (SOP 78-1)	
	[10,170] Accounting Practices of Real Estate Investment Trusts (SOP 78-2)	
	[10,180] Accounting for Costs to Sell and Rent, and Initial Rental Operations of, Real Estate Projects (SOP 78-3)	
	[10,190] Application of the Deposit, Installment, and Cost Recovery Methods in Accounting for Sales of Real Estate (SOP 78-4)	

<i>Section</i>		<i>Page</i>
10,000	Statements of Position—continued	
	[10,200] Accounting for Advance Refunding of Tax-Exempt Debt (SOP 78-5)	
	[10,210] Accounting for Property and Liability Insurance Companies (SOP 78-6)	
	[10,220] Financial Accounting and Reporting by Hospitals Operated by a Government Unit (SOP 78-7)	
	[10,230] Accounting for Product Financing Arrangements (SOP 78-8)	
	10,240 Accounting for Investments in Real Estate Ventures (SOP 78-9)	
	[10,250] Accounting Principles and Reporting Practices for Certain Nonprofit Organizations (SOP 78-10)	
	[10,260] Accounting for Municipal Bond Funds (SOP 79-1)	
	[10,270] Accounting by Cable Television Companies (SOP 79-2)	
	[10,280] Accounting for Investments of Stock Life Insurance Companies (SOP 79-3)	
	[10,290] Accounting for Motion Picture Films (SOP 79-4)	
	[10,300] Accounting for Title Insurance Companies (SOP 80-1)	
	[10,310] Accounting and Financial Reporting by Governmental Units (SOP 80-2)	
	[10,320] Accounting for Real Estate Acquisition, Development and Construction Costs (SOP 80-3)	
	10,330 Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type and Certain Production-Type Contracts (SOP 81-1)	
	[10,340] Reporting Practices Concerning Hospital-Related Organizations (SOP 81-2)	
	10,350 Accounting and Financial Reporting for Personal Financial Statements (SOP 82-1)	
	[10,360] Reporting by Banks of Investment Securities Gains or Losses (SOP 83-1)	
	[10,370] Financial Reporting by Not-for-Profit Health Care Entities for Tax-Exempt Debt and Certain Funds Whose Use Is Limited (SOP 85-1)	
	[10,380] Accounting for Dollar Repurchase—Dollar Reverse Repurchase Agreements by Sellers-Borrowers (SOP 85-2)	
	10,390 Accounting by Agricultural Producers and Agricultural Cooperatives (SOP 85-3)	
	[10,400] Reporting Repurchase—Reverse Repurchase Agreements and Mortgage-Backed Certificates by Savings and Loan Associations (SOP 86-1)	
	[10,410] Accounting for Asserted and Unasserted Medical Malpractice Claims of Health Care Providers and Related Issues (SOP 87-1)	

<i>Section</i>		<i>Page</i>
10,000	Statements of Position—continued	
	[10,420] Accounting for Joint Costs of Informational Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal (SOP 87-2)	
	10,430 Accounting for Developmental and Preoperating Costs, Purchases and Exchanges of Take-off and Landing Slots, and Airframe Modifications (SOP 88-1)	
	[10,440] Financial Accounting and Reporting by Providers of Prepaid Health Care Services (SOP 89-5)	
	10,450 Definition of the Term Substantially the Same for Holders of Debt Instruments, as Used in Certain Audit Guides and a Statement of Position (SOP 90-3)	
	10,460 Financial Reporting by Entities in Reorganization Under the Bankruptcy Code (SOP 90-7)	
	[10,470] Financial Accounting and Reporting by Continuing Care Retirement Communities (SOP 90-8)	
	[10,480] Disclosure of Certain Information by Financial Institutions About Debt Securities Held as Assets (SOP 90-11)	
	[10,490] Software Revenue Recognition (SOP 91-1)	
	10,500 Accounting for Real Estate Syndication Income (SOP 92-1)	
	[10,510] Accounting for Foreclosed Assets (SOP 92-3)	
	10,520 Accounting for Foreign Property and Liability Reinsurance (SOP 92-5)	
	10,530 Accounting and Reporting by Health and Welfare Benefit Plans (SOP 92-6)	
	10,540 Financial Accounting and Reporting for High-Yield Debt Securities by Investment Companies (SOP 93-1)	
	[10,550] Determination, Disclosure, and Financial Statement Presentation of Income, Capital Gain, and Return of Capital Distributions by Investment Companies (SOP 93-2)	
	10,560 Rescission of Accounting Principles Board Statements (SOP 93-3)	
	10,570 Foreign Currency Accounting and Financial Statement Presentation for Investment Companies (SOP 93-4)	
	10,580 Employers' Accounting for Employee Stock Ownership Plans (SOP 93-6)	
	10,590 Reporting on Advertising Costs (SOP 93-7)	
	[10,600] The Application of the Requirements of Accounting Research Bulletins, Opinions of the Accounting Principles Board, and Statements and Interpretations of the Financial Accounting Standards Board to Not-for-Profit Organizations (SOP 94-2)	

Section		Page
10,000	Statements of Position—continued	
	10,610 Reporting of Related Entities by Not-for-Profit Organizations (SOP 94-3)	
	10,620 Reporting of Investment Contracts Held by Health and Welfare Benefit Plans and Defined-Contribution Pension Plans (SOP 94-4)	
	10,630 Disclosures of Certain Matters in the Financial Statements of Insurance Enterprises (SOP 94-5)	
	10,640 Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties (SOP 94-6)	
	10,650 Accounting for Certain Insurance Activities of Mutual Life Insurance Enterprises (SOP 95-1)	
	10,660 Financial Reporting by Nonpublic Investment Partnerships (SOP 95-2)	
	10,670 Accounting for Certain Distribution Costs of Investment Companies (SOP 95-3)	
	10,680 Environmental Remediation Liabilities (SOP 96-1)	
	10,690 Accounting by Participating Mortgage Loan Borrowers (SOP 97-1)	
	10,700 Software Revenue Recognition (SOP 97-2)	
	10,710 Accounting by Insurance and Other Enterprises for Insurance-Related Assessments (SOP 97-3)	
	10,720 Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software Developed or Obtained for Internal Use (SOP 98-1)	
	10,730 Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include Fund Raising (SOP 98-2)	
	10,740 Deferral of the Effective Date of a Provision of SOP 97-2, <i>Software Revenue Recognition</i> (SOP 98-4)	
	10,750 Reporting on the Costs of Start-Up Activities (SOP 98-5)	
	10,760 Deposit Accounting: Accounting for Insurance and Reinsurance Contracts That Do Not Transfer Insurance Risk (SOP 98-7)	
	10,770 Modification of SOP 97-2, <i>Software Revenue Recognition</i> , With Respect to Certain Transactions (SOP 98-9)	
	10,780 Accounting for and Reporting of Postretirement Medical Benefit (401(h)) Features of Defined Benefit Pension Plans (SOP 99-2)	
	10,790 Accounting for and Reporting of Certain Defined Contribution Plan Investments and Other Disclosure Matters (SOP 99-3)	
	10,800 Accounting by Producers or Distributors of Films (SOP 00-2)	
	10,810 Accounting by Insurance Enterprises for Demutualizations and Formations of Mutual Insurance Holding Companies and for Certain Long-Duration Participating Contracts (SOP 00-3)	

Section		Page
10,000	Statements of Position — continued	
	10,820 Amendment to Scope of Statement of Position 95-2, <i>Financial Reporting by Nonpublic Investment Partnerships</i> , to Include Commodity Pools (SOP 01-1)	
	10,830 Accounting and Reporting by Health and Welfare Benefit Plans (SOP 01-2)	
	10,840 Amendments to Specific AICPA Pronouncements for Changes Related to the NAIC Codification (SOP 01-5)	
	10,850 Accounting by Certain Entities (Including Entities With Trade Receivables) That Lend to or Finance the Activities of Others (SOP 01-6)	
	10,860 Accounting for Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities by Not-for-Profit Health Care Organizations, and Clarification of the Performance Indicator (SOP 02-2)	
	10,870 Accounting and Reporting by Insurance Enterprises for Certain Nontraditional Long-Duration Contracts and for Separate Accounts (SOP 03-1)	
	10,880 Accounting for Certain Loans or Debt Securities Acquired in a Transfer (SOP 03-3)	
	10,890 Reporting Financial Highlights and Schedule of Investments by Nonregistered Investment Partnerships: An Amendment to the Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Investment Companies</i> and AICPA Statement of Position 95-2, <i>Financial Reporting by Nonpublic Investment Partnerships</i> (SOP 03-4)	
	10,900 Financial Highlights of Separate Accounts: An Amendment to the Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Investment Companies</i> (SOP 03-5)	
	10,910 Accounting for Real Estate Time-Sharing Transactions (SOP 04-2)	
	10,920 Accounting by Insurance Enterprises for Deferred Acquisition Costs in Connection With Modifications or Exchanges of Insurance Contracts (SOP 05-1)	
	10,930 Clarification of the Scope of the Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Investment Companies</i> and Accounting by Parent Companies and Equity Method Investors for Investments in Investment Companies (SOP 07-1)	
.....	Topical Index .....	85,051
	<b>ARCHIVE—PRACTICE BULLETINS</b>	
12,000	Practice Bulletins .....	85,201
	12,010 Purpose and Scope of AcSEC Practice Bulletins and Procedures for Their Issuance	
	12,020 Elimination of Profits Resulting From Intercompany Transfers of LIFO Inventories	

Section		Page
12,000	Practice Bulletins—continued	
	[12,030] Prepayments Into the Secondary Reserve of the FSLIC and Contingencies Related to Other Obligations of the FSLIC	
	12,040 Accounting for Foreign Debt/Equity Swaps	
	12,050 Income Recognition on Loans to Financially Troubled Countries	
	12,060 Amortization of Discounts on Certain Acquired Loans	
	[12,070] Criteria for Determining Whether Collateral for a Loan Has Been In-Substance Foreclosed [Amended]	
	12,080 Application of FASB Statement No. 97, <i>Accounting and Reporting by Insurance Enterprises for Certain Long-Duration Contracts and for Realized Gains and Losses From the Sale of Investments</i> , to Insurance Enterprises	
	[12,090] Disclosures of Fronting Arrangements by Fronting Companies	
	[12,100] Amendment to Practice Bulletin 7, <i>Criteria for Determining Whether Collateral for a Loan Has Been In-Substance Foreclosed</i>	
	12,110 Accounting for Preconfirmation Contingencies in Fresh-Start Reporting	
	[12,120] Reporting Separate Investment Fund Option Information of Defined-Contribution Pension Plans	
	12,130 Direct-Response Advertising and Probable Future Benefits	
	12,140 Accounting and Reporting by Limited Liability Companies and Limited Liability Partnerships	
	12,150 Accounting by the Issuer of Surplus Notes	

---

[The next page is 1.]



## HOW TECHNICAL PRACTICE AIDS IS ORGANIZED

### Scope of *Technical Practice Aids*

*Technical Practice Aids* brings together the following:

- Selected American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) Technical Questions and Answers (nonauthoritative)
- Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) Staff Questions and Answers and other implementation guidance
- Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations of the AICPA Assurance Services Executive Committee
- A listing of issues papers of the AICPA Accounting Standards Division
- Statements of Position of the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards Division
- Practice alerts of the AICPA SEC Practice Section Professional Issues Task Force
- Statements of Position (SOPs) of the AICPA Accounting Standards Division
- Accounting Standards Executive Committee practice bulletins

Due to the release of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification*™ (ASC), the AICPA accounting SOPs and practice bulletins have been moved to archival sections. Please see the following section for more information.

### Special Note About Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification*™

The accounting guidance in this publication has been conformed to reflect reference to FASB ASC as it existed on June 1, 2009 (through FASB ASC Update 2009-179). Although FASB ASC is not effective at this writing, it will be released as authoritative on July 1, 2009; therefore, this publication has been conformed to FASB ASC to assist you during this transition.

On June 3, 2009, FASB voted to approve FASB ASC as the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). FASB ASC becomes authoritative upon its release on July 1, 2009, significantly changing the way financial statement preparers, auditors, and academics perform accounting research.

Upon release, FASB ASC will supersede all existing, non-SEC accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities. When FASB ASC becomes effective, all other nongrandfathered, non-SEC accounting literature not included in FASB ASC will become nonauthoritative.

FASB ASC will be effective for interim and annual periods ending after September 15, 2009, which means that preparers must begin to use FASB ASC for periods that begin on or about July 1, 2009.

FASB ASC is a major restructuring of accounting and reporting standards designed to simplify user access to all authoritative U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) by providing the authoritative literature in a topically organized structure. FASB ASC disassembled thousands of nongovernmental accounting pronouncements (including those of FASB, the Emerging Issues Task Force [EITF], and the AICPA) and reassembled them under approximately 90 topics.

FASB ASC also includes relevant portions of authoritative content issued by the SEC, select SEC staff interpretations, and administrative guidance issued by the SEC; however, FASB ASC is not the official source of SEC guidance and does not contain the entire population of SEC rules, regulations, interpretive releases, and staff guidance.

FASB ASC is not intended to change U.S. GAAP or any requirements of the SEC; rather, it is part of FASB's efforts to reduce the complexity of accounting standards and also to facilitate international convergence. Moreover, FASB ASC does not include governmental accounting standards. The purposes behind the codification project include the following:

- Reduce the amount of time and effort required to solve an accounting research issue
- Mitigate the risk of noncompliance with standards through improved usability of the literature
- Provide accurate information with real-time updates as new standards are released
- Assist FASB with the research and convergence efforts required during the standard-setting process
- Become the authoritative source of literature for the completed eXtensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL) taxonomy
- Clarify that guidance not contained in FASB ASC is not considered authoritative

FASB ASC uses a topical structure in which guidance is organized into *areas*, *topics*, *subtopics*, *sections*, and *subsections*. These terms are defined as follows:

**Areas.** The broadest category in FASB ASC and represent a grouping of topics.

**Topics.** The broadest categorization of related content and correlate with the International Accounting Standards (IASs) and International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

**Subtopics.** Represent subsets of a topic and are generally distinguished by type or scope.

**Sections.** Indicate the nature of the content such as recognition, measurement, or disclosure. The sections' structure correlates with the IASs and IFRSs.

**Subsections.** Allow further segregation and navigation of content.

Topics, subtopics, and sections are numerically referenced. This effectively organizes the content without regard to the original standard setter or standard from which the content was derived. An example of the numerical referencing is FASB ASC 305-10-05, in which 305 is the *Cash and Cash Equivalents* topic, 10 represents the "Overall" subtopic, and 05 represents the "Overview and Background" section.

FASB ASC features a notice to constituents, which explains the scope, structure, and usage of consistent terminology of FASB ASC. Users are encouraged to read this notice.

By July 1, 2009, FASB is expected to issue a final standard to flatten the GAAP hierarchy and replace FASB Statement No. 162, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*. The standard's effective date is expected to be July 1, 2009, to coincide with the release of FASB ASC as authoritative. The new standard will essentially reduce the GAAP hierarchy to two levels, one that is authoritative (in FASB ASC) and one that is not (not in FASB ASC).

Exceptions include all rules and interpretive releases of the SEC under authority of federal securities laws—which are sources of authoritative GAAP for SEC registrants—and certain grandfathered guidance having an effective date before March 15, 1992. The proposed standard is expected to create a new topic, *Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, in FASB ASC. One piece of the grandfathered guidance relates to AICPA software revenue recognition Technical Practice Aid Questions and Answers (TIS) sections 5100.38–76, which were elevated into the authoritative literature during development of FASB ASC. Nonpublic entities would be required to apply this guidance prospectively for revenue agreements entered into or materially modified in annual periods beginning on or after December 15, 2009, and interim periods within those years. This transition provision would only be applicable for nonpublic entities that had not previously applied this guidance. Public entities should have already been applying guidance in TIS sections 5100.38–76. Readers can monitor the status of the proposed statement at [www.fasb.org/draft/index.shtml](http://www.fasb.org/draft/index.shtml).

FASB ASC represents a major shift in the organization and presentation of U.S. GAAP. For more information, refer to the FASB ASC Web site at <http://asc.fasb.org/home>, and the FASB ASC project status page at [www.fasb.org/project/codification&retrieval\\_project.shtml](http://www.fasb.org/project/codification&retrieval_project.shtml). To read more about it, including recent developments and updates, please also see the AICPA's dedicated FASB ASC Web site at [www.aicpa.org/Professional+Resources/Accounting+and+Auditing/FASB+Accounting+Standards+Codification/](http://www.aicpa.org/Professional+Resources/Accounting+and+Auditing/FASB+Accounting+Standards+Codification/).

### ***FASB ASC Effect on AICPA Literature Included in Technical Practice Aids***

As noted previously, FASB ASC disassembled and reassembled thousands of nongovernmental accounting pronouncements (including those of the FASB, EITF, and the AICPA) and codified them under approximately 90 topics. FASB ASC reduces the GAAP hierarchy to two levels: one that is authoritative (in FASB ASC) and one that is not (not in FASB ASC). The U.S. accounting and reporting standards (for nongovernmental entities) as we know them will cease to exist as authoritative guidance upon release of FASB ASC on July 1, 2009. Those standards you have come to memorize through FASB Statement Nos., FASB Interpretation Nos., accounting Statements of Position (SOP), and the like will now reside in FASB ASC and have a FASB ASC reference for accountants to use. FASB ASC codifies all AICPA accounting SOPs and Practice Bulletins and also sections .38–76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100, *Revenue Recognition*, of AICPA *Technical Practice Aids*. The authoritative source of this guidance beginning July 1, 2009 is FASB ASC. However, we have also included it here for archive purposes.

## Arrangement of Material in *Technical Practice Aids*

The material in *Technical Practice Aids* is arranged as follows:

Technical Questions and Answers (Nonauthoritative)

Financial Statement Presentation

Assets

Liabilities and Deferred Credits

Capital

Revenue and Expense

Specialized Industry Problems

Specialized Organizational Problems

Audit Field Work

Auditors' Reports

Attestation Engagements

PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers and Other Implementation Guidance

PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers

Policy Statement

Staff Audit Practice Alerts

Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations

Statements of Position—Accounting

Issues Papers Listing of the Accounting Standards Division

Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation

Practice Alerts

Archive—Statements of Position—Accounting

Archive—Practice Bulletins

## Description of Content

The major divisions are divided into sections, each with its own section number. Each paragraph or equivalent is decimally numbered for reference purposes. With respect to Technical Questions and Answers, within each section, each question and answer is decimally numbered. For example, TIS section 9100.02 is the second question and answer in TIS section 9100, *Signing and Dating of Reports*. When a question and answer is deleted, its number is reserved. Reserved sections are deleted permanently if no future questions and answers are expected for a particular topic.

Authoritative pronouncements are referenced in the questions and answers, whenever possible, to support the guidance provided. The following list explains the references and cites the publications containing the authoritative literature:

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| AR | Accounting and Review Services standard or interpretation contained in AICPA <i>Professional Standards</i> |
| AT | Attestation standard or interpretation contained in AICPA <i>Professional Standards</i>                    |
| AU | Auditing standard or interpretation contained in AICPA <i>Professional Standards</i>                       |

AUD	Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation contained in <i>AICPA Technical Practice Aids</i>
ET	Section from the Code of Professional Conduct of the AICPA contained in <i>AICPA Professional Standards</i>
GAFRS	An accounting section from the <i>GASB Codification of Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards</i>
PA	Practice alerts of the AICPA SEC Practice Section Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) contained in <i>AICPA Technical Practice Aids</i>
TSP	Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations of the AICPA Assurance Services Executive Committee contained in <i>AICPA Technical Practice Aids</i>

**Note:** Generally, abbreviations are not used to reference AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides. Each guide is published separately and is also included in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides subscription service.

The TIS topical index for Technical Questions and Answers uses the key word method to facilitate reference to the inquiries. This index is arranged alphabetically by subject, with references to section numbers.

PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers and Other Implementation Guidance are assigned section and decimal numbers in chronological order as they are issued. However, the format and any numbering assigned by the PCAOB has been retained.

The PC Topical Index for the PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers and Other Implementation Guidance facilitates reference to the guidance. This index is arranged alphabetically by subject, with references to section, paragraph, and question numbers.

The Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations are assigned section numbers in chronological order as they are issued. Each paragraph or equivalent is decimally numbered for reference purposes.

Statements of Position—Auditing and Attestation are assigned section numbers in chronological order as they are issued. Each paragraph or equivalent is decimally numbered for reference purposes.

Practice alerts are assigned section numbers in chronological order as they are issued. Each paragraph or equivalent is decimally numbered for reference purposes.

Statements of Position—Accounting are assigned section numbers in chronological order as they were issued. Each paragraph or equivalent is decimally numbered for reference purposes. (**Note:** this section is now archival and will no longer be updated.)

The ACC topical index for the Statements of Position—Accounting facilitates reference to the statements. This index is arranged alphabetically by subject, with references to section and paragraph numbers.

Practice bulletins are assigned section numbers in chronological order as they were issued. Each paragraph or equivalent is decimally numbered for reference purposes. (**Note:** this section is now archival and will no longer be updated.)

---

[The next page is 11.]



## TECHNICAL QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS (NONAUTHORITATIVE)

### Notice to Readers

The questions and answers in this section of the AICPA TECHNICAL PRACTICE AIDS are based on selected practice matters identified by the staff of the AICPA's Technical Hotline and various other bodies within the AICPA.

This material has not been approved, disapproved, or otherwise acted upon by any senior technical committee of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. **These answers are not sources of established accounting principles as described in Statement on Auditing Standards No. 69, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, nor are they sources of authoritative generally accepted auditing standards.**

This publication is designed to provide accurate information in regard to the subject matter covered. It is sold with the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering legal, accounting, or other professional service.

#### AICPA TECHNICAL HOTLINE

The AICPA Technical Hotline answers inquiries about specific audit or accounting problems.

Call Toll Free:

(888) 777-7077

This service is free to AICPA members.

---

[The next page is 101.]



# TIS Section 1000

## FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Section

1100	Statement of Financial Position
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Unclassified Balance Sheet for Venture With Limited Life
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	.07 Comparative Statement Disclosures
	.08 Classification of Outstanding Checks
	[.09] Reserved
	[.10] Reserved
	[.11] Reserved
	.12 Classification of Inventory Stored in a Grain Elevator
	[.13] Reserved
	.14 Classification of Convertible Debt
	.15 Liquidity Restrictions
1200	Income Statement
	.01 Disclosure of Revenues of an Agent
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Statement Title When There Is a Net Loss
	.05 Presentation of Reimbursed Payroll Expense
	.06 Note to TIS Section 1200.07 to 1200.16—Accounting by Noninsurance Enterprises for Property and Casualty Insurance Arrangements That Limit Insurance Risk
	.07 Finite Insurance
	.08 Insurance Risk Limiting Features
	.09 Transfer of Insurance Risk
	.10 Accounting Guidance for Transfer of Insurance Risk
	.11 Differences Between Retroactive and Prospective Insurance
	.12 Accounting for Prospective Insurance
	.13 Accounting for Retroactive Insurance
	.14 Accounting for Multiple-Year Retrospectively Rated Insurance
	.15 Deposit Accounting
	.16 Identifying Accounting Model for Insurance Transactions

*Section*

1300	Statement of Cash Flows
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Comparative Statements of Cash Flows
	[.04] Reserved
	.05 Statement of Cash Flows for Annual Report With Balance Sheet Only
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	[.09] Reserved
	.10 Comprehensive Basis of Accounting Other Than Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
	.11 The Effect of an Error Correction on the Statement of Cash Flows When Single Period Statements Are Presented
	[.12] Reserved
	.13 Classification of Increase in Cash Value of Officers' Life Insurance in Statement of Cash Flows
	[.14] Reserved
	.15 Presentation of Cash Overdraft on Statement of Cash Flows
	.16 Purchase of Inventory Through Direct Financing
	.17 Omission of Reconciliation of Net Income to Cash Flow From Operations
	.18 Presentation on the Statement of Cash Flows of Distributions From Investees With Operating Losses
	.19 Classification of Payments on Equipment Finance Note
	.20 Direct vs. Indirect Method for Statement of Cash Flows
	.21 Presentation of Financing Transaction on Statement of Cash Flows
	.22 Negative Amortization of Long-Term Debt in Cash Flows Statement
1400	Consolidated Financial Statements
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Consolidation of Corporation and Proprietorship
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Combined and Separate Financial Statements
	.07 Reporting on Company Where Option to Acquire Control Exists
	[.08] Reserved

## Section

1400	Consolidated Financial Statements—continued
	[.09] Reserved
	[.10] Reserved
	[.11] Reserved
	[.12] Reserved
	[.13] Reserved
	[.14] Reserved
	[.15] Reserved
	[.16] Reserved
	[.17] Reserved
	[.18] Reserved
	[.19] Reserved
	[.20] Reserved
	[.21] Reserved
	.22 Intervening Intercompany Transactions Between Subsidiary's and Parent's Year End
	.23 Conforming Subsidiary's Inventory Pricing Method to Its Parent Company's Method
	[.24] Reserved
	.25 Issuance of Parent Company Only Financial Statements
	.26 Consolidated Versus Combined Financial Statements
	.27 Subsidiary Financial Statements
	[.28] Reserved
	.29 Consolidated Versus Combined Financial Statements Under FASB ASC 810, <i>Consolidation</i>
	.30 Stand-Alone Financial Statements of a Variable Interest Entity
	.31 GAAP Departure for FASB ASC 810
	.32 Parent-Only Financial Statements and Relationship to GAAP
1500	Financial Statements Prepared Under An Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA)
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Terminology for OCBOA Financial Statements
	.05 Substantial Support for Modifications in Cash Basis
	.06 Application of FASB ASC 810, <i>Consolidation</i> , to Income Tax Basis Financial Statements
	.07 Disclosure Concerning Subsequent Events in OCBOA Financial Statements

*Section*

1600	Personal Financial Statements
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Social Security Benefits—Personal Financial Statements
	.04 Presentation of Assets at Current Values and Liabilities at Current Amounts in Personal Financial Statements
1700	Prospective Financial Statements
	[.01] Reserved
1800	Notes to Financial Statements
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Disclosure of Change in Fiscal Year
	[.04] Reserved
1900	Interim Financial Information
	.01 Condensed Interim Financial Reporting by Nonissuers

---

**[The next page is 121.]**

## Section 1100

### *Statement of Financial Position*

#### **.03 Unclassified Balance Sheet for Venture With Limited Life**

*Inquiry*—A corporation has recently been organized with the sole purpose of constructing a shopping center which will take several years to complete, after which the company will be liquidated. The company uses the completed contract method to recognize income, and will have only one operating cycle. Would an unclassified balance sheet be appropriate?

*Reply*—An unclassified balance sheet would be more appropriate than a classified one in this situation. The sole purpose of the corporation is to construct the shopping center, and the appropriate time frame for reporting purposes, by definition, becomes the time required to complete the project, rather than an arbitrary one-year period.

#### **.07 Comparative Statement Disclosures**

*Inquiry*—When financial statements of the prior period are presented on a comparative basis with financial statements of the current period, should the notes to the comparative financial statements disclose details for the prior year?

*Reply*—Generally, in practice notes to comparative financial statements are also comparative if they present details of items on the financial statements or are otherwise pertinent. For example, details of notes payable outstanding at the end of each period are normally disclosed, but the future maturities disclosure need only be disclosed for the current year.

[Amended, June 1995.]

#### **.08 Classification of Outstanding Checks**

*Inquiry*—Should the amount of checks that have been issued and are out of the control of the payor but which have not cleared the bank by the balance sheet date be reported as a reduction of cash?

*Reply*—Yes. A check is out of the payor's control after it has been mailed or delivered to the payee. The balance sheet caption "cash" should represent an amount that is within the control of the reporting enterprise, namely, the amount of cash in banks plus the amount of cash and checks on hand and deposits in transit minus the amount of outstanding checks. Cash is misrepresented if outstanding checks are classified as liabilities rather than a reduction of cash.

#### **.12 Classification of Inventory Stored in a Grain Elevator**

*Inquiry*—Should the operator of a grain elevator report in its financial statements grain owned by others and stored in its grain elevator?

*Reply*—No. Grain stored for others should not be included on the balance sheet of a grain elevator operator. Paragraph .13 of AU section 901, *Public Warehouses—Controls and Auditing Procedures for Goods Held* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that goods held for others by a warehouseman are not owned by the warehouseman and should not appear in his financial statements. The same is true for grain stored for others by a grain elevator.

#### .14 Classification of Convertible Debt

*Inquiry*—A company has debt that is convertible into common stock of the company at the option of the company. The debt by its terms is considered long-term debt in the classified balance sheet. The company intends to call the debt and issue the common stock within one year of the balance sheet date. Should this debt be classified as a current liability?

*Reply*—No. The expected call of the debt securities will not consume current assets or increase current liabilities, and accordingly should continue to be classified as a long-term obligation.

The general principle underlying the classification of debt in a debtor's principal balance sheet should be based on facts existing at the date of the balance sheet rather than on expectations. According to Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary, the term *current liabilities* "is used principally to designate obligations whose liquidation is reasonably expected to require the use of existing resources properly classifiable as current assets, or the creation of other current liabilities."

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .15 Liquidity Restrictions

*Inquiry*—Entities may invest in assets such as money market funds or other short term investment vehicles from which they generally may withdraw funds at any time without prior notice or penalty, but for which the fund (or its trustee) may restrict the ability of an entity to withdraw its balance in the fund or other short term investment vehicle. In some circumstances, with little or no notice, the fund (or its trustee) may impose such withdrawal restrictions. For example, the fund (or its trustee), in accordance with the terms of the fund, may, with little or no notice, stipulate that up to 20 percent of the fund balance can be withdrawn immediately, an additional 30 percent can be withdrawn in 6 months, and the remaining balance can be withdrawn in 2 years.

What are the potential accounting and auditing implications of such an event for a nongovernmental entity (the event being restrictions on the ability of an entity to withdraw its balance in the money market fund or other short term investment vehicle)?

*Reply*—The following are examples of potential accounting and auditing issues that may be relevant if such an event exists. Each situation is different and should be evaluated based on its specific facts and circumstances:

*Balance Sheet Classification.* Such withdrawal restrictions should be considered in determining whether such assets meet the definition of *cash equivalents*. (This technical question and answer does not address whether such assets met the definition of *cash equivalents* prior to the imposition of such withdrawal restrictions.)

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary provides a definition of *cash equivalents* for the purposes of applying FASB ASC 230, *Statement of Cash Flows*.

Such withdrawal restrictions should be considered in determining whether such assets meet the definition of *current assets*.

FASB ASC glossary defines *current assets* for balance sheet classification purposes.

For entities that do not prepare a classified balance sheet, such withdrawal restrictions should be considered in determining the sequencing of assets on the balance sheet or disclosures in the notes to financial statements providing relevant information about the liquidity or maturity of assets.

*Disclosures.* The entity may be required to provide financial statement disclosures about such events. For example, such events may create or lead to risks and uncertainties pertaining to certain significant estimates, such as measurement, liquidity, and violation of debt covenants, and vulnerability from concentrations of investments in volatile markets. Entities should consider whether they should make disclosures in their financial statements (beyond those required or generally made in financial statements) about the risks and uncertainties resulting from such events and existing as of the date of the financial statements. In addition, auditors should consider whether such disclosures include forward-looking statements that are not required by generally accepted accounting principles and therefore may not be audited.

FASB ASC 275, *Risks and Uncertainties*, provides guidance pertaining to disclosures about risks and uncertainties.

*Debt Covenants.* Such events may result in balance sheet classifications (balance sheet classifications are previously discussed) and other events that may trigger violations of debt covenants. If a covenant violation occurs, issuers of debt should consider whether that covenant violation triggers classification of the debt liability as current (or otherwise affects reported information about liquidity) or cross covenant violations in other arrangements.

FASB ASC glossary defines *current assets* and *current liabilities* for balance sheet classification purposes. FASB ASC 470-10-45-11 clarifies how the debtor should present obligations that are callable by the creditor in a balance sheet in which liabilities are classified as current or noncurrent.

Paragraphs 12A–12B of FASB ASC 470-10-45 provide guidance for the classification of short-term obligations that are expected to be refinanced on a long-term basis.

FASB ASC 470-10-45 and FASB ASC 470-10-55 address the classification of obligations at the balance sheet date that are not callable at the balance sheet date, but that become callable by violation of a debt agreement provision after the balance sheet date but before the financial statements are issued.

FASB ASC 470-10-45-2 and FASB ASC 470-10-50-3 provide guidance pertaining to balance sheet classification in circumstances in which debt agreements include subjective acceleration clauses.

*Events Occurring Subsequent to the Balance Sheet Date.* Events occurring subsequent to the balance sheet date, but prior to the issuance of the financial statements, such as significant changes in fair value or changes in liquidity leading to violation of debt covenants, may need to be reflected in the financial statements (either through adjustment to or disclosure in the financial statements).

Paragraphs .02–.09 of AU section 560, *Subsequent Events* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), provide guidance pertaining to subsequent events.

*Going Concern.* Certain events (some interrelated) could call into question the entity's ability to continue as a going concern. For example:

- The inability to withdraw funds can pose significant challenges to the entity's liquidity.
- As discussed earlier, balance sheet reclassifications or other events may trigger violations of debt covenants.

Entities and auditors should consider such events and circumstances in evaluating an entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

AU section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), provides guidance with respect to evaluating whether there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, as well as the impact on the auditor's report.

*Auditor Communication With Those Charged With Governance.* Auditors should consider whether such events and any matters related to such events should be communicated to those charged with governance.

AU section 380, *The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), establishes standards and provides guidance to an auditor on matters to be communicated with those charged with governance.

*Auditor's Report—Emphasis of a Matter.* Auditors should consider whether they wish to emphasize a matter pertaining to such events and regarding the financial statements in the auditor's report. For example, the auditor may wish to refer, in the auditor's report, to financial statement disclosures about restrictions on liquidity pertaining to such events.

Paragraph .19 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), discusses an emphasis of a matter in the auditor's report.

[Issue Date: October 2008; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 161.]

## Section 1200

### Income Statement

#### .01 Disclosure of Revenues of an Agent

*Inquiry*—Company A is in the business of arranging sales of used cars for which service it receives a commission based on an established fee schedule. Company A receives title to the cars sold but simultaneously transfers title to the car buyer. Company A warrants main engine components for thirty days after date of sale.

The following presentations of revenue in the income statement are being considered:

Commission Earned	<u>\$20,000</u>
or	
Sales	\$300,000
Cost of Sales	<u>(280,000)</u>
Gross Profit (or Net Commissions)	\$20,000

What is the proper presentation of revenue?

*Reply*—Since Company A is operating as a broker, Company A should report Commissions Earned rather than Sales. However, Company A could disclose above the Commissions Earned figure, without showing a deduction, the amount of sale, as follows:

Sales Arranged	<u>\$300,000</u>
Commissions Earned	<u>\$20,000</u>
Expenses, etc.	XXX

Company A should also make proper provision for the cost of warranties.

#### .04 Statement Title When There Is a Net Loss

*Inquiry*—What title is suggested for the “Statement of Income” when a “net loss” exists in one or more years?

*Reply*—Companies included in the annual survey entitled *Accounting Trends & Techniques* (“Trends”) file with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Accordingly, their annual reports include a three year statement of income. If a current year net loss is shown in the income statement, the “Trends” companies usually describe the statement of income as the “Statement of Operations.” They occasionally use the title “Statement of Income (Loss)” and very rarely use the title “Statement of Loss.”

Some companies always use “Statement of Operations” since the heading will be the same whether there is a “net loss” or “net income.”

#### .05 Presentation of Reimbursed Payroll Expense

*Inquiry*—One company of a controlled group, in addition to its own operations, acts as a “paymaster” for the entire group. This company records the entire payroll of all members in the group on its general ledger to facilitate reconciliation with state and federal payroll tax returns. Each member of the group reimburses the “paymaster” for its share of payroll and payroll taxes and

records management fee expense while the paymaster records it as management fee income.

Should the reimbursement be classified as other income in the separate income statement of the “paymaster” company?

*Reply*—No. The reimbursement should be allocated as a reduction of payroll and payroll tax expense because this approach would more accurately present the “paymaster” company’s expenses for its own operations.

**.06 Note to TIS Section 1200.07 to 1200.16—Accounting by Noninsurance Enterprises for Property and Casualty Insurance Arrangements That Limit Insurance Risk**

Insurance enables a company (the insured) to transfer insurance risk to an insurer for a specified premium. Insurance may be purchased for a number of economic reasons generally with the underlying goal of transferring insurance risk, including property damage, injury to others, and business interruption.

The following series of questions and answers (Sections 1200.07–.16) focus on certain aspects of finite insurance products that are utilized by noninsurance enterprises. Due to the diverse nature of contracts in the marketplace, the guidance in these questions and answers is designed to assist practitioners in identifying the relevant literature to consider in addressing their specific facts and circumstances. The TPAs contain many excerpts of applicable guidance, but readers should be familiar with all the guidance contained in that literature not only the specific paragraphs listed.

GAAP guidance for an insurance enterprise’s purchase of reinsurance is more extensive than guidance on accounting by noninsurance enterprises for insurance contracts. The accounting guidance for reinsurance addresses transactions between an insurer (the contract holder) and a reinsurer (the issuer of the contract). TIS sections 1200.07–.16 address property and casualty insurance contracts between a policyholder and an insurance enterprise, which is similar to the relationship between an insurer and a reinsurer.

**.07 Finite Insurance**

*Inquiry*—What are “finite” insurance transactions?

*Reply*—Finite insurance contracts are contracts that transfer a clearly defined and restricted amount of insurance risk from the policyholder to the insurance company, and the policyholder retains a substantial portion of the related risks under most scenarios. Nevertheless, under certain finite contracts there may be a reasonable possibility that the insurance company will incur a loss on the contract.

**.08 Insurance Risk Limiting Features**

*Inquiry*—What types of insurance risk limiting features do finite insurance contracts normally contain?

*Reply*—Contractual features that serve to limit insurance risk transfer are found in both traditional and finite insurance contracts; however, the degree to which these features limit risk is relatively higher in finite insurance. All contractual provisions that limit risk transfer need to be considered when reviewing insurance contracts. Common features that may limit the transfer of insurance risk include:

- *Sliding scale fees and profit sharing formulae.* These features adjust cash flows between the policyholder and insurance company based on loss experience (for example, increasing payments from the insured

enterprise as losses increase and decreasing payments as losses decrease, subject to maximum and minimum limits).

- *Experience refunds.* These arrangements allow the policyholder to share in the favorable experience of the underlying contracts by reference to an “experience account” that typically tracks premiums paid, less fees, less losses incurred, plus interest. Experience provisions also can require the policyholder to share in unfavorable experience by requiring additional payments to the insurer in the event that the experience account is negative.
- *Caps.* Caps are used to limit the insurer’s aggregate exposure by imposing a dollar limit, or a limit expressed as a percentage of premiums paid, on the amount of claims to be paid by the insurer. For example, the insurer will not be responsible for losses beyond 150 percent of the premiums paid. While commercial insurance policies usually have limits on the amount of coverage provided, there may be significant risk mitigation for the insurer if the premium paid is a substantial percentage of the maximum coverage provided.
- *Loss Corridors.* This feature, which may exist in various forms, serves to eliminate or limit the risk of loss for a specified percentage or dollar amount of claims within the contract coverage. For example, in a contract providing coverage for a policyholder’s first \$3,000,000 of losses, the insurer will pay the first million and last million of losses but will exclude the corridor from \$1,000,000 to \$2,000,000.
- *Dual-triggers.* This feature requires the occurrence of both an insurable event and changes in a separate pre-identified variable to trigger payment of a benefit/claim. An example is a policy entered into by a trucking company that insures costs associated with rerouting trucks over a certain time period if snowfall exceeds a specified level during that time period.
- *Retrospectively-Rated Premiums.* Such premiums are determined after the inception of the policy based on the loss experience under the policy.
- *Reinstatement Premiums.* To the extent the coverage provided by a contract is absorbed by losses incurred, the contract provides for the policyholder to reinstate coverage for the balance of the contract period for a stated additional premium. To the extent reinstatement is required rather than optional, the additional premium may mitigate risk to the insurer.
- *Termination Provisions.* These provisions can be structured to reduce the risk of the insurer, for example, by allowing for termination by the insurer at a discounted amount under certain circumstances.
- *Payment Schedules.* Features that delay timely reimbursement of losses by the insurer prevent the transfer of insurance risk.

There may be other features and provisions, in addition to the list of common insurance risk transfer limiting features above, that exist in a contract. Determining the appropriate accounting requires a full understanding of all of the features and provisions of the contract.

## **.09 Transfer of Insurance Risk**

*Inquiry*—Why is transfer of insurance risk important under GAAP?

*Reply*—If a contract does not provide for the indemnification of the insured by the insurer, it is accounted for as a deposit (financing) rather than as

insurance as noted in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 720-20-25-1.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.10 Accounting Guidance for Transfer of Insurance Risk**

*Inquiry*—What GAAP accounting literature provides guidance related to transfer of insurance risk?

*Reply*—The assessment of transfer of insurance risk requires significant judgment and a complete understanding of the insurance contract and other related contracts between the parties. The greater the number and/or degree of insurance risk limiting features that exist in a contract, the more difficult it becomes to assess whether or not the insurance risk transferred is sufficient to permit the contract to be accounted for as insurance rather than as a deposit.

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 720-20-25-1 provides the following guidance on insurance contracts that do not provide for indemnification of the insured by the insurer against loss or liability:

To the extent that an insurance contract or reinsurance contract does not, despite its form, provide for indemnification of the insured or the ceding entity by the insurer or reinsurer against loss or liability, the premium paid less the amount of the premium to be retained by the insurer or reinsurer shall be accounted for as a deposit by the insured or the ceding entity. Those contracts may be structured in various ways, but if, regardless of form, their substance is that all or part of the premium paid by the insured or the ceding entity is a deposit, it shall be accounted for as such.

FASB ASC 944, *Financial Services—Insurance*, establishes the conditions required for a contract between an insurer and a reinsurer to be accounted for as reinsurance and prescribes accounting and reporting standards for those contracts. FASB ASC 944-20-15-41 notes:

Unless the condition in paragraph 944-20-15-53 is met, indemnification of the ceding entity against loss or liability relating to insurance risk in reinsurance of short-duration contracts exists under paragraph 944-20-15-37(a) only if both of the following conditions are met:

- a. Significant insurance risk. The reinsurer assumes significant insurance risk under the reinsured portions of the underlying insurance contracts. Implicit in this condition is the requirement that both the amount and timing of the reinsurer's payments depend on and directly vary with the amount and timing of claims settled under the reinsured contracts.
- b. Significant loss. It is reasonably possible that the reinsurer may realize a significant loss from the transaction.

FASB ASC 944 looks to the present value of all cash flows between the parties, however characterized, under reasonably possible outcomes in determining whether it is reasonably possible that the reinsurer may realize a significant loss from the contract.

FASB ASC 720-20-25-2 suggests that noninsurance entities look to the risk transfer guidance in FASB ASC 944 and states, in part:

Entities may find the conditions in Section 944-20-15 useful in assessing whether an insurance contract transfers risk.

FASB ASC 944-20-25-1 states that a multiple-year retrospectively rated insurance contract must indemnify the insured as required by FASB ASC 944-20-15-36 to be accounted for as insurance. FASB ASC 944-20 also indicates that there may be certain situations in which the guarantee accounting in accordance with FASB ASC 460, *Guarantees*, is applicable.

FASB ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging*, addresses scenarios where there are dual-triggers and includes a number of relevant examples.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.11 Differences Between Retroactive and Prospective Insurance**

*Inquiry*—What are the differences between retroactive and prospective insurance?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 944-605-05-7 states that for property and casualty insurance: The distinction between prospective and retroactive reinsurance contracts is based on whether the contract reinsures future or past insured events covered by the underlying contracts.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.12 Accounting for Prospective Insurance**

*Inquiry*—How does a noninsurance enterprise account for prospective insurance contracts that qualify for insurance accounting?

*Reply*—A noninsurance enterprise amortizes the premiums over the contract period in proportion to the amount of insurance protection provided. If an insured loss occurs, and if it is probable that the policy will provide reimbursement for the loss and the amount of the loss can be reasonably estimated, the noninsurance enterprise records a receivable from the insurance enterprise and a recovery of the incurred loss in the income statement. If it is not probable<sup>1</sup> that the policy will provide reimbursement, then the receivable and recovery are not recorded.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.13 Accounting for Retroactive Insurance**

*Inquiry*—How does a noninsurance enterprise account for retroactive insurance contracts that qualify for insurance accounting?

*Reply*—Paragraphs 3–4 of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 720-20-25 state:

Notwithstanding that Topic 944 applies only to insurance entities, purchased retroactive insurance contracts that indemnify the insured shall be accounted for in a manner similar to the manner in which retroactive reinsurance contracts are accounted for under Subtopic 944-605. The guidance in that Subtopic shall be applied, as appropriate, based on the facts and circumstances of the particular transaction. That is, amounts paid for retroactive insurance shall be expensed immediately. Simultaneously, a receivable shall be established for the expected recoveries related to the underlying insured event.

---

<sup>1</sup> According to the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary, *probable* means that the future event or events are likely to occur.

If the receivable established exceeds the amounts paid for the insurance, the resulting gain is deferred. Immediate gain recognition and liability derecognition are not appropriate because the liability has not been extinguished (the entity is not entirely relieved of its obligation). Additionally, the liability incurred as a result of a past insurable event and amounts receivable under the insurance contract do not meet the criteria for offsetting under paragraph 210-20-45-1.

FASB ASC 720-20-35-2 further states:

If the amounts and timing of the insurance recoveries can be reasonably estimated, the deferred gain shall be amortized using the interest method over the estimated period over which the entity expects to recover substantially all amounts due under the terms of the insurance contract. If the amounts and timing of the insurance recoveries cannot be reasonably estimated, then the proportion of actual recoveries to total estimated recoveries shall be used to determine the amount of the amortization.

Paragraphs 22–23 of FASB ASC 944-605-25 state:

Amounts paid for retroactive reinsurance of short-duration contracts that meets the conditions for reinsurance accounting shall be reported as reinsurance receivables to the extent those amounts do not exceed the recorded liabilities relating to the underlying reinsured contracts. If the recorded liabilities exceed the amounts paid, reinsurance receivables shall be increased to reflect the difference and the resulting gain deferred.

If the amounts paid for retroactive reinsurance for short-duration contracts exceed the re-corded liabilities relating to the underlying reinsured short-duration contracts, the ceding entity shall increase the related liabilities or reduce the reinsurance receivable or both at the time the reinsurance contract is entered into, so that the excess is charged to earnings.

FASB ASC 944-605-35-9 further states:

Any gain deferred under paragraph 944-605-25-22 shall be amortized over the estimated remaining settlement period. If the amounts and timing of the reinsurance recoveries can be reasonably estimated, the deferred gain shall be amortized using the effective interest rate inherent in the amount paid to the reinsurer and the estimated timing and amounts of recoveries from the reinsurer (the interest method). Otherwise, the proportion of actual recoveries (the recovery method) shall determine the amount of amortization.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.14 Accounting for Multiple-Year Retrospectively Rated Insurance**

*Inquiry*—How does a noninsurance enterprise account for a multiple-year retrospectively rated insurance contract?

*Reply*—As noted in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 720-20-05-10, multiple-year retrospectively rated contracts:

include a retrospective rating provision that provides for any of the following based on contract experience:

- a. Changes in the amount or timing of future contractual cash flows, including premium adjustments, settlement adjustments, or refunds to the noninsurance entity
- b. Changes in the contract's future coverage.

FASB ASC 720-20-05-9 also states, in part:

A critical feature of these contracts is that part or all of the retrospective rating provision is obligatory such that the retrospective rating provision creates for each party to the contract future rights and obligations as a result of past events.

FASB ASC 944-20-25-2 also discusses the accounting for retrospective adjustments and states:

For a multiple-year retrospectively rated insurance contract accounted for as insurance, the insurer shall both:

- a. Recognize an asset to the extent that the insured has an obligation to pay cash (or other consideration) to the insurer that would not have been required absent experience under the contract.
- b. Recognize a liability to the extent that any cash (or other consideration) would be payable by the insurer to the insured based on experience to date under the contract.

Paragraphs 3–4 of FASB ASC 944-20-35 further state:

The amount recognized under paragraph 944-20-25-4 in the current period shall be computed, using a with-and-without method, as the difference between the ceding entity's total contract costs before and after the experience under the contract as of the reporting date, including costs such as premium adjustments, settlement adjustments, and impairments of coverage.

The amount of premium expense related to impairments of coverage shall be measured in relation to the original contract terms. Future experience under the contract (that is, future losses and future premiums that would be paid regardless of past experience) shall not be considered in measuring the amount to be recognized.

FASB ASC 944-20-25-4 also further states:

For contracts that meet all of the conditions described in paragraph 944-20-15-55:

- a. The ceding entity shall recognize a liability and the assuming entity shall recognize an asset to the extent that the ceding entity has an obligation to pay cash (or other consideration) to the reinsurer that would not have been required absent experience under the contract (for example, payments that would not have been required if losses had not been experienced).
- b. The ceding entity shall recognize an asset and the assuming entity shall recognize a liability to the extent that any cash (or other consideration) would be payable from the assuming entity to the ceding entity based on experience to date under the contract.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.15 Deposit Accounting**

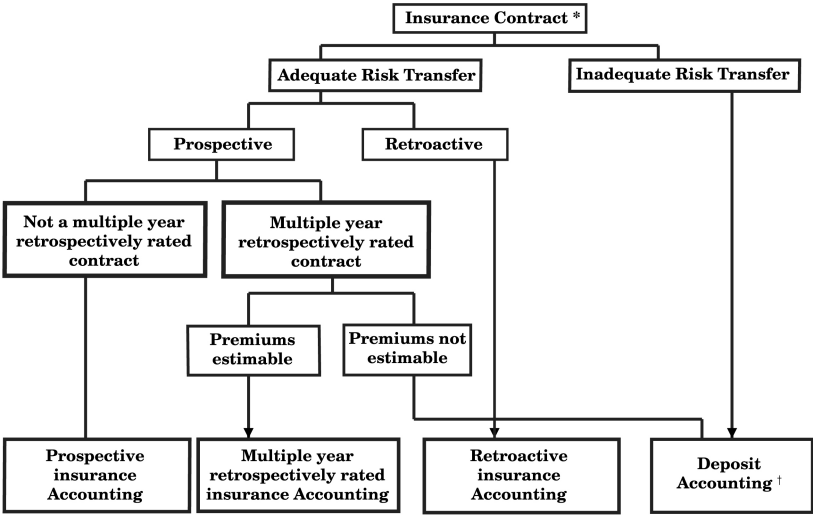
*Inquiry*—What is deposit accounting?

*Reply*—Deposit accounting essentially treats the contract as a financing transaction similar to a loan taking into account the time value of money. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 340, *Other Assets and Deferred Costs*, provides guidance on how to account for insurance and reinsurance contracts that do not transfer insurance risk.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.16 Identifying Accounting Model for Insurance Transactions**

The accompanying chart depicts the basic decision process in identifying the appropriate accounting model for insurance transactions.



\*The insurance model discussed in this series of technical practice aids is based on property and casualty and other short-duration contracts, as defined in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 944, *Financial Services—Insurance*.

† FASB ASC-944-20 should also be considered in determining the accounting for multiple-year retrospectively rated contracts that do not transfer risk.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

[The next page is 201.]

## Section 1300

### Statement of Cash Flows

#### .03 Comparative Statements of Cash Flows

*Inquiry*—Is it necessary to provide a statement of cash flows for both the current and prior periods if comparative income statements are presented, but only the current balance sheet is presented?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 230-10-15-3 states:

A business entity or not-for-profit entity that provides a set of financial statements that reports both financial position and results of operations shall also provide a statement of cash flows for each period for which results of operations are provided.

Therefore, if a balance sheet is presented, a statement of cash flows should be presented for both current and prior periods if income statements are presented for such periods.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .05 Statement of Cash Flows for Annual Report With Balance Sheet Only

*Inquiry*—When only a statement of financial position is presented, is it necessary that the auditor's opinion be qualified relative to the omission of the statement of cash flows?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 230-10-15-3 states:

A business entity or not-for-profit entity that provides a set of financial statements that reports both financial position and results of operations shall also provide a statement of cash flows for each period for which results of operations are provided.

Therefore, when a statement of financial position is not accompanied by a statement of operations, there is no need for presentation of a statement of cash flows, and no comment on the absence of such a statement is necessary.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .10 Comprehensive Basis of Accounting Other Than Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

*Inquiry*—When an entity prepares its financial statements on a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), is a statement of cash flows required?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 230-10-15-3 states:

A business entity or not-for-profit entity that provides a set of financial statements that reports both financial position and results of operations shall also provide a statement of cash flows for each period for which results of operations are provided.

Paragraph .07 of AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states, in part:

Terms such as “balance sheet,” “statement of financial position,” “statement of income,” “statement of operations,” and “statement of cash flows,” or similar unmodified titles are generally understood to be applicable only to financial statements that are intended to present financial position, results of operations, or cash flows in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

Interpretation No. 14, “Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure and Presentation in Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA),” of AU section 623 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AU sec. 9623 par. .90–.95) states, in part:

While a statement of cash flows is not required, if a presentation of cash receipts and disbursements is presented in a format similar to a statement of cash flows or if the entity chooses to present such a statement....the statement should either conform to the requirements for a GAAP presentation or communicate their substance.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.11 The Effect of an Error Correction on the Statement of Cash Flows When Single Period Statements Are Presented**

*Inquiry*—How would an error correction be presented in the statement of cash flows if single period statements are presented?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 250-10-45-24 states that “error corrections shall, in single period statements, be reflected as adjustments of the opening balance of retained earnings.” A corresponding error correction will normally result in a change in the beginning balance of an asset or liability account. FASB ASC 230-10-50-3 states, in part:

Information about all investing and financing activities of an entity during a period that affect recognized assets or liabilities but that do not result in cash receipts or cash payments in the period shall be disclosed.

Therefore, the difference in an account between the current balance sheet and that same account in the restated beginning balance sheet (even if not presented) that resulted from the error correction, should be reflected in the related footnote disclosures and clearly referenced to the statement of cash flows.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.13 Classification of Increase in Cash Value of Officers’ Life Insurance in Statement of Cash Flows**

*Inquiry*—How should the increase in cash surrender value of officers’ life insurance be classified in the statement of cash flows?

*Reply*—An increase in the cash surrender value of officers’ life insurance would normally be presented as an investing outflow if the increase in cash value is less than the related premium paid. If the increase in cash value exceeds the premium paid, the premium paid is an investing outflow and the remainder of the increase in cash value would be presented as a reconciling item on the reconciliation of net income to net cash provided by operating activities.

**.15 Presentation of Cash Overdraft on Statement of Cash Flows**

*Inquiry*—A company has accounts at three separate banks. One of the bank accounts is in an overdraft position at year end, thus it is shown as a liability on the balance sheet. Does the company show as cash and cash equivalents on the statement of cash flows only the two accounts with the positive balances or does it show the net cash (the three accounts combined) at the end of the year as its cash and cash equivalents?

*Reply*—The amount that will be shown on the statement of cash flows is the two accounts with the positive balances. Per Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) ASC 230-10-45-4, “The total amounts of cash and cash equivalents at the beginning and end of the period shall be the same amounts as similarly titled line items or subtotals shown in the statements of financial position . . .” The net change in overdrafts during the period is a financing activity.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.16 Purchase of Inventory Through Direct Financing**

*Inquiry*—An automobile dealer purchases its inventory from a manufacturer which finances purchases through a finance subsidiary. The finance subsidiary pays the manufacturer directly on behalf of the dealer. Cash is not disbursed by the dealer until the automobiles are sold.

Under the provisions of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 230, *Statement of Cash Flows*, how should the purchases of inventory be reported by the automobile dealer in the statement of cash flows?

*Reply*—A statement of cash flows reports an enterprise’s cash receipts and cash payments during the period. Transactions that do not involve cash receipts and cash payments should be excluded from the statement of cash flows. Noncash investing and financing transactions should be reported in separate disclosures.

The purchases of inventory described above do not involve a cash flow by the automobile dealer until the automobiles are sold and the dealer pays the finance subsidiary under the financing arrangement. Therefore, only the cash outflows from payments to the finance subsidiary should be included in the body of the statement of cash flows.

Payments made to the finance subsidiary of the manufacturer should be classified as operating cash outflows in accordance with FASB ASC 230-10-45-17, which defines operating cash outflows to include principal payments on accounts and notes payable to suppliers for goods acquired for resale.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.17 Omission of Reconciliation of Net Income to Cash Flow From Operations**

*Inquiry*—When an accountant is requested to compile financial statements that omit substantially all of the disclosures required by GAAP, [paragraphs .19–.22 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2)] would the omission of the schedule, “reconciliation of net income to net cash flow from operating activities” required by the direct method of reporting cash flows under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 230, *Statement of Cash Flows*, be considered a departure from GAAP?

*Reply*—Yes. Under the direct method of reporting net cash flows from operating activities, the separate schedule reconciling net income to net cash flow from operating activities is a required part of the cash flow statement. If the schedule is omitted, the accountant should modify his compilation report to disclose a departure from GAAP in accordance with paragraphs .56–.58 of AR section 100.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.18 Presentation on the Statement of Cash Flows of Distributions From Investees With Operating Losses**

*Inquiry*—An entity carries an investment in a limited partnership interest under the equity method of accounting. The partnership had operating losses during the year, but a positive cash flow allowed the partnership to distribute funds to its investors. Would receipt of that distribution by the entity be classified on the statement of cash flows as cash inflows from investing activities or as cash inflows from operating activities?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 230, *Statement of Cash Flows*, requires dividends received (returns on investments) to be classified as cash inflows from operating activities. Receipts from returns of investments are classified as cash inflows from investing activities.

Distributions to investors from investees should be presumed to be returns on investments and be classified by the investor as cash inflows from operating activities, similar to the receipt of dividends. That presumption can be overcome based on the specific facts and circumstances. For example, if the partnership sells assets, the distribution to investors of the proceeds of that sale would be considered a return of investment and be classified by the investor as cash inflows from investing activities.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.19 Classification of Payments on Equipment Finance Note**

*Inquiry*—Under the provisions of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 230-10-50-3, noncash investing and financing transactions are to be disclosed in related narrative form or summarized in a schedule. An example of a transaction of this type would be an acquisition of equipment in a transaction in which an enterprise borrows money from a financial institution for the purchase of equipment and the financial institution remits the money directly to the vendor. In a transaction of this nature, should the payments of principal be presented as an outflow in the financing or investing section of the cash flow statement?

*Reply*—Payments on the aforementioned notes would be recorded as financing outflows per FASB ASC 230-10-45-15(b).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.20 Direct vs. Indirect Method for Statement of Cash Flows**

*Inquiry*—A company has decided to present its statement of cash flows using the direct method for the current year although the indirect method was used in the prior year. Would this change require an explanatory paragraph noting a lack of consistency in the financial statements?

*Reply*—No. A change in the presentation for the statement of cash flows from the indirect to direct method (or vice versa) is considered a change in classification rather than a consistency problem. If the statement of cash flows is presented for the prior period, it should be restated using the direct method approach for comparative purposes. In addition, disclosure should be made indicating the prior period restatement.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### **.21 Presentation of Financing Transaction on Statement of Cash Flows**

*Inquiry*—A buyer contracts to purchase real estate. The lender gives the buyer a check made payable to the buyer for a loan to purchase the property. The buyer in turn endorses the check over to the seller. How should this financing transaction be presented on the buyer's statement of cash flows?

*Reply*—This transaction should be treated as a cash receipt by the buyer since the buyer was named as payee on the check. The amount of the check should be reported on the statement of cash flows even though the buyer did not convert the check to currency or deposit it in his or her bank account. The cash receipt belongs to the payee named on the check. The buyer should present the amount of the check as "Proceeds From Borrowings" as a cash inflow from financing transactions and "Purchase of Real Estate" as a cash outflow from investing activities.

### **.22 Negative Amortization of Long-Term Debt in Cash Flows Statement**

*Inquiry*—The cash repayments on a long-term loan are less than the interest expense for the period. The amount of the interest expense not paid becomes part of the principal balance (negative amortization). How should the negative amortization be shown on the cash flows statement?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 230-10-45-28(a) indicates:

Adjustments to [reconcile] net income to determine net cash flow from operating activities shall reflect accruals for interest earned but not received and interest incurred but not paid.

The negative amortization should therefore be treated as an adjustment to net income to remove the effect of this noncash expense. Disclosure should also be considered.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 261.]



## Section 1400

# Consolidated Financial Statements

### .02 Consolidation of Corporation and Proprietorship

*Inquiry*—How should the financial statements of a corporation and a proprietorship be consolidated?

*Reply*—This answer assumes that 100 percent of the corporation capital stock is owned by the proprietorship. If not, the proportion of the net equity of the corporation applicable to the interest of the minority should appear on the balance sheet between liabilities and equity, and on the income statement as a subtraction following the provision for income taxes.

As in any consolidation, the stockholders' equity of the subsidiary corporation should be eliminated against the investment of the parent (the proprietorship). Any net earnings of the subsidiary corporation subsequent to its acquisition and not recorded on the books of the parent should be reflected in the consolidated net equity, which, since the parent is a sole proprietorship, will be a single figure. As income taxes are assessed against the owner as an individual, rather than against the proprietorship, no provision is made for income taxes beyond those payable by the corporation. However, a footnote should disclose such omission, and if it is anticipated that funds will have to be withdrawn from the proprietorship to meet future taxes on income earned to date, this too should be disclosed, with an estimate of the amount thereof if practicable. Of course, provision should be made for elimination of profits to the extent that they may be reflected in consolidated inventories or in other consolidated assets.

### .06 Combined and Separate Financial Statements

*Inquiry*—Company A and Company B are new car dealers with A selling an American made car and B selling a foreign made car. One individual owns 100 percent of the outstanding stock of both companies.

Both companies A and B are at the same location with separate buildings for sales staffs. Company A maintains the parts and service departments for both companies with the parts inventory, warranty and service receivables of Company B on Company A's books. In return, Company B pays Company A a per car fee for services to be performed on each new car sold by B.

Company A maintains the only used car inventory on the lot adjacent to Company B's building. Each time B receives a used car in trade, it is sold to Company A at the wholesale fair market value.

Although there is a differentiation in sales staffs, management, accounting, secretarial, and other related services are performed by the same staff out of both buildings, and Company B pays a monthly fee for services performed.

Company A has income for the year, but Company B has a loss for the period. Combined financial statements will be prepared, but is it also necessary to provide combining statements for the individual companies?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 810-10-55-1B states, in part:

There are circumstances, however, in which combined financial statements (as distinguished from consolidated statements) of commonly controlled entities are likely to be more meaningful than their separate

statements. For example, combined financial statements would be useful if one individual owns a controlling interest in several entities that are related in their operations.

Combined financial statements of the companies would be appropriate, and there is no necessity for presenting separate statements for the companies.

Unfortunately, FASB ASC 810, *Consolidation*, makes no statement as to appropriate presentation of the stockholder's equity section of a combined balance sheet. Appropriate disclosure, therefore, may depend upon the circumstances. Either on the statement of financial position, or in a note, there should be disclosure for each company of their number of shares of stock that are authorized and outstanding, and the par value. While under some circumstances it might not be necessary to disclose the allocation of retained earnings between the two companies, other circumstances may exist under which such disclosure would be required—for example, if the losses of either company have been so severe that an insolvent condition might be anticipated.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.07 Reporting on Company Where Option to Acquire Control Exists**

*Inquiry*—Corporation A acquired debentures from Corporation B convertible into common voting stock within ten years at \$1 per share. Corporation A also has an option to purchase additional shares at \$1 per share upon conversion to bring A's holdings in B up to 51 percent of the total outstanding shares. Corporation A also has the right to appoint a majority of Corporation B's Board of Directors and has done so. Other intercompany transactions are negligible.

May each company issue separate financial statements, or are consolidated statements required? What disclosures would be necessary?

*Reply*—At present there is no ownership of one company by the other, and consolidation would not be proper. Further, since intercompany transactions (other than interest on the debentures) are negligible, combined statements would probably not be particularly useful.

Corporation A should disclose in its financial statements the terms under which it may obtain controlling stock ownership of Corporation B, the amount of interest received, that no other intercompany transactions are significant, and that it presently has the right to and does appoint a majority to Corporation B's Board of Directors. It should also present summarized information as to the assets, liabilities, and operating results of Corporation B, or include B's financial statements with its report.

Corporation B, in addition to disclosing the interest rate and maturity of the convertible debentures, should disclose Corporation A's conversion and option privileges and should disclose that Corporation A has the right to and has appointed a majority to Corporation B's Board of Directors.

### **.22 Intervening Intercompany Transactions Between Subsidiary's and Parent's Year-End**

*Inquiry*—A parent company has a December 31 year-end and its wholly owned subsidiary has a November 30 year-end. The two companies generally have substantial intercompany sales and purchases which are recorded by each company as they occur. The parent uses the subsidiary's November 30 year-end statement to prepare the consolidated financial statements.

The intervening intercompany transactions, which occur between December 1 and December 31, create intercompany account balances which do not

eliminate upon consolidation due to the difference in year-ends of the parent and its subsidiary. How should these intervening transactions be accounted for in the consolidated financial statements?

*Reply*—In discussing differences in fiscal periods, Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 810-10-45-12 states, “if the difference is not more than about three months, it usually is acceptable to use, for consolidation purposes, the subsidiary’s financial statements for its fiscal period; if this is done, recognition should be given by disclosure or otherwise to the effect of intervening events that materially affect the financial position or results of operations.”

When a subsidiary’s fiscal year differs from that of the parent, intercompany accounts may not agree. Transactions in the interval between the subsidiary’s year-end and the parent’s year-end must be analyzed and appropriate consolidation entries prepared.

A practical approach to preparing these consolidation entries would be to reverse the intervening intercompany transactions in the parent company’s accounts but not in the subsidiary’s accounts. A summary of these intervening transactions could then be disclosed in a note to the consolidated financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.23 Conforming Subsidiary’s Inventory Pricing Method to Its Parent Company’s Method**

*Inquiry*—A parent company uses the first-in, first-out (FIFO) cost assumption to price its inventory, while its subsidiary uses the last-in, first-out (LIFO) cost assumption to price its inventory. Must the subsidiary’s inventory method be changed to conform to the FIFO method used by its parent company in consolidated financial statements?

*Reply*—There is no requirement under generally accepted accounting principles for the subsidiary to conform its inventory pricing method with the parent company’s method. Consolidated statements may be presented with the subsidiary using LIFO and the parent using FIFO. Also, separate subsidiary only statements may be presented on the LIFO basis.

### **.25 Issuance of Parent Company Only Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—Generally accepted accounting principles preclude preparation of parent company financial statements for issuance to stockholders as the financial statements of the primary reporting entity. Are there any circumstances under which parent company financial statements may still be prepared?

*Reply*—Yes. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 810-10-45-11 states: “In some cases parent entity statements may be needed, in addition to consolidated statements, to indicate adequately the position of bondholders and other creditors or preferred stockholders of the parent. Consolidating statements, in which one column is used for the parent entity and other columns for particular subsidiaries or groups of subsidiaries often are an effective means of presenting the pertinent information.”

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.26 Consolidated Versus Combined Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—S Corporation has 2000 common shares and 1000 preferred shares outstanding. The preferred shareholders have the same rights as the common shareholders, except the right to vote. Of the 2000 common shares outstanding, 1000 shares are owned by P Corporation and 1000 shares are owned by I (an individual) who also owns all of the outstanding common shares of P Corporation. The preferred shares of S Corporation are owned by an outside party. Should P Corporation consolidate S Corporation for financial reporting purposes?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 810-10-05-6 states that to “justify the preparation of consolidated financial statements, the controlling financial interest shall rest directly or indirectly in one of the entities included in the consolidation.” In this situation P does not control S directly or indirectly and therefore consolidation is not appropriate. Combined financial statements could be presented if the circumstances are such that combined financial statements of S Corporation and P Corporation are more meaningful than separate financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.27 Subsidiary Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—Generally accepted accounting principles indicate that “consolidated rather than parent-company financial statements are the appropriate general-purpose financial statements.” May subsidiary-only financial statements be issued without consolidated financial statements?

*Reply*—Yes. Generally accepted accounting principles do not preclude issuance of subsidiary-only statements. Care should be taken to include all disclosures required by Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) SC 740-10-50-17, FASB ASC 850, *Related Party Disclosures*, and other relevant pronouncements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.29 Consolidated Versus Combined Financial Statements Under FASB ASC 810, Consolidation**

*Inquiry*—If a reporting entity is the primary beneficiary of a variable interest entity (VIE) under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 810, *Consolidation*, would it be appropriate to issue combined financial statements rather than consolidated financial statements?

*Reply*—No. FASB ASC 810-10-05-6 permits combined financial statements in certain situations in which consolidated financial statements are not required. However, FASB ASC 810-10-25-38 states that “an entity shall consolidate a variable interest entity if that entity has a variable interest (or combination of variable interests) that will absorb a majority of the variable interest entity’s expected losses, receive a majority of the variable interest entity’s expected residual returns, or both.” Furthermore, the starting point for the preparation of combined financial statements is two or more sets of financial statements that are prepared in accordance with GAAP; in the case of a primary beneficiary of a VIE, financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP would be consolidated financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.30 Stand-Alone Financial Statements of a Variable Interest Entity**

*Inquiry*—Regarding Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 810, *Consolidation*, is it appropriate to present stand-alone financial statements of a variable interest entity (VIE)?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 810 does not specifically address this issue. Subsidiary-only financial statements are appropriate under generally accepted accounting principles. By extension, it may be appropriate to present stand-alone financial statements of a VIE.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.31 GAAP Departure for FASB ASC 810**

*Inquiry*—If a reporting entity is the primary beneficiary of a variable interest entity under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 810, *Consolidation*, what are the implications for the auditors' report if the reporting entity does not consolidate the variable interest entity?

*Reply*—Paragraphs .35–.38 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), address departures from generally accepted accounting principles. When financial statements are materially affected by a departure from generally accepted accounting principles and the auditor has audited the statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, he or she should express a qualified or an adverse opinion.

In deciding whether the effects of a departure are sufficiently material to require either a qualified or adverse opinion, the auditor should use qualitative as well as quantitative judgments. The significance of an item to a particular entity and the pervasiveness of the misstatement (such as whether it affects the amounts and presentation of numerous financial statement items), and the effect of the misstatement on the financial statements taken as a whole are all factors to be considered in making a judgment regarding materiality.

If an auditor concludes that a qualified opinion is appropriate, he or she should disclose the GAAP departure in a separate explanatory paragraph(s) preceding the opinion paragraph of the report. Furthermore, the opinion paragraph of the report should include the appropriate qualifying language and a reference to the explanatory paragraph(s). The explanatory paragraph(s) should disclose the principal effects of the departure on financial position, results of operations, and cash flows, if practicable. If the effects are not reasonably determinable, the report should so state. If such disclosures are made in a note to the financial statements, the explanatory paragraph(s) may be shortened by referring to it.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.32 Parent-Only Financial Statements and Relationship to GAAP**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 810, *Consolidation*, addresses parent company financial statements. If consolidation is required under generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), are there any circumstances in which an entity may prepare parent company-only financial statements without preparing related consolidated financial statements and say that the parent company-only financial statements are in accordance with GAAP?

*Reply*—No. FASB ASC 810-10-10-1 notes the presumption in GAAP that consolidated financial statements are more meaningful than parent entity-only financial statements. FASB ASC 810-10-15-10 states that all majority-owned subsidiaries shall be consolidated, with few exceptions. FASB ASC 810-10-45-11 adds that parent company financial statements may be needed in addition to consolidated financial statements, but it does not suggest that parent company financial statements may be prepared in place of consolidated financial statements.

For example, if, as a condition of a legal or regulatory agreement, an entity is required to submit “restricted” or “special use” parent-only financial statements without related consolidated financial statements, the restricted or special use parent-only financial statements are not in accordance with GAAP.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 301.]**

## Section 1500

# ***Financial Statements Prepared Under an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting***

For nonauthoritative guidance about financial statements prepared under an other comprehensive basis of accounting (OCBOA), consult the AICPA publication *Preparing and Reporting on Cash- and Tax-Basis Financial Statements*. This book alerts the reader to some of the most frequently-encountered issues faced by accounting professionals in dealing with cash- and tax-basis financial statements and provides suggestions and insight into how these issues are resolved in practice. To order this publication, call the AICPA at 1-888-777-7077 or visit [www.cpa2biz.com](http://www.cpa2biz.com).

### **.04 Terminology for OCBOA Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—(1) If an entity presents financial statements under an other comprehensive basis of accounting, may GAAP financial statement titles be used?

(2) What should be the caption for “net income” or “net loss,” and may the corporation use “retained earnings”?

*Reply*—(1) No. Paragraph .07 of AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that unmodified GAAP financial statement titles are not acceptable for use in OCBOA financial statements. The paragraph contains a few examples of appropriate financial statement titles (for example, *Statement of Assets and Liabilities Arising from Cash Transactions and Statement of Income—Statutory Basis*). However, the examples presented in the authoritative literature were not meant to be all-inclusive and are not the only acceptable titles. Equally acceptable titles would be *Balance Sheet—Cash Basis* or *Statement of Operations—Income Tax Basis*. The selection of specific financial statement titles is a matter of judgment; any modified title would fulfill the requirements of AU section 623 as long as it is clear that the financial statements are not prepared in accordance with GAAP.

(2) The authoritative literature is silent regarding the captions to be used within OCBOA financial statements. Therefore, there is no requirement to modify standard GAAP financial statement captions in OCBOA financial statements. If modifications are desired, common examples for cash basis financial statements are *Excess of revenue collected over expenses paid*, *Excess of expenses paid over revenue collected*, and *Accumulated excess of revenue over expenses paid*. For tax-basis financial statements, acceptable modifications include *Retained earnings—income tax basis* and *Net income—tax basis*.

[Amended, February 1995.]

### **.05 Substantial Support for Modifications in Cash Basis**

*Inquiry*—Many not-for-profit entities, partnerships, and small businesses prepare their financial statements on a modified cash basis of accounting. Which modifications of the cash basis of accounting have “substantial support” under paragraph .04(c) of AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1)?

*Reply*—The cash basis of accounting and modifications of the cash basis are not formalized in accounting literature. Modifications have evolved through common usage and practice.

Modifications of the cash basis of accounting to record depreciation on plant and equipment and to accrue income taxes were recognized in paragraph .04(c) of AU section 623. Ordinarily a modification would have “substantial support” if the method is equivalent to the accrual basis of accounting for the particular item and if the method is not illogical. For example, generally income tax accruals are derived from the tax payable or receivable on the entity’s income tax return(s). An illogical method would be recording revenue on the accrual basis and recording purchases and other costs on the cash basis.

If modifications to the cash basis of accounting do not have substantial support, the auditor should include an explanatory paragraph in his or her report (preceding the opinion paragraph) and should include in the opinion paragraph the appropriate modifying language and a reference to the explanatory paragraph.

If the modifications are so extensive that the modified “cash-basis” statements are, in the auditor’s judgment, equivalent to financial statements on the accrual basis, the statements should be considered GAAP basis. The auditor should use the standard form of report (paragraph .08 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* [AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1]), modified as appropriate because of departures from generally accepted accounting principles (paragraphs .49–.54 of AU section 508). For example, financial statements that are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, except that material leases are not capitalized (Financial Accounting Standards Board [FASB] *Accounting Standards Codification* [ASC] 840, *Leases*) are considered GAAP-basis financial statements containing a GAAP departure.

[Amended, February 1995. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.06 Application of FASB ASC 810, *Consolidation*, to Income Tax Basis Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—Do the consolidation or disclosure provisions of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 810, *Consolidation*, apply to financial statements prepared under the income tax basis of accounting?

*Reply*—For income tax basis financial statements, consolidation is based on the Internal Revenue Code. Therefore, the consolidation requirements of the FASB ASC 810 would not apply to financial statements prepared under the income tax basis of accounting.

Paragraphs .09–.10 of AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), and Interpretation No. 14, “Evaluating the Adequacy of Disclosure and Presentation in Financial Statements Prepared in Conformity With an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA),” of AU section 623 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AU sec. 9623par. .90–.95), discusses disclosures in OCBOA financial statements. It states that, if OCBOA financial statements contain elements, accounts, or items for which GAAP would require disclosure, the statements should either provide the relevant disclosure that would be required for those items in a GAAP presentation or provide information that communicates the substance of that disclosure.

A variable interest entity (VIE) that is not consolidated under the income tax basis of accounting is analogous to a 60 percent-owned subsidiary that

would be consolidated under GAAP but is not consolidated under the income tax basis of accounting because the threshold for consolidation under the Internal Revenue Code is 80 percent ownership. The primary beneficiary of the VIE should perform the same analysis in determining which disclosures are appropriate as would the parent of the 60 percent-owned subsidiary. Examples of matters that might require disclosure are related-party transactions, guarantees, and commitments.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.07 Disclosure Concerning Subsequent Events in OCBOA Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—FASB *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 855, *Subsequent Events*, sets forth general standards of accounting for and disclosure of events that occur after the balance sheet date but before financial statements are issued or are available to be issued. FASB ASC 855 also requires disclosure of the date through which an entity has evaluated subsequent events and the basis for that date, that is, whether that date represents the date on which the financial statements were issued or were available to be issued. Should full disclosure financial statements prepared on an other comprehensive basis of accounting contain the disclosures set forth in FASB ASC 855?

*Reply*—Yes. Paragraph .10 of AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states, in part, “when the financial statements contain items that are the same as, or similar to, those in financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, similar informative disclosures are appropriate.”

Therefore, the date through which an entity has evaluated subsequent events and the basis for that date should be disclosed. Furthermore, some nonrecognized subsequent events are of such a nature that they must be disclosed to keep the financial statements prepared on an OCBOA from being misleading. Such events should be disclosed following the guidance in FASB ASC 855.

[Issue Date: June 2009.]

---

[The next page is 451.]



## Section 1600

### ***Personal Financial Statements***

#### **.03 Social Security Benefits—Personal Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—Do social security benefits to be received based on the future life expectancy of an individual qualify as an asset in personal financial statements?

*Reply*—No. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 274, *Personal Financial Statements*, indicates that nonforfeitable rights to receive future sums must meet certain criteria to be accounted for as assets. One of these criteria is that the rights must not be contingent on the individual's life expectancy or the occurrence of a particular event, such as disability or death. In this example, because the social security benefits are contingent on the individual's life expectancy, they do not qualify as a recognizable asset for the personal financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.04 Presentation of Assets at Current Values and Liabilities at Current Amounts in Personal Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 274, *Personal Financial Statements*, states that personal financial statements should present assets at their estimated current values and liabilities at their estimated current amounts at the date of the financial statements. FASB ASC 274 also defines estimated current values and current amounts.

Are the definitions of *current values* (assets) and *current amounts* (liabilities) for personal financial statements meant to be the same as *fair value*, as defined in FASB ASC 820, *Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*?

*Reply*—No. FASB ASC 820 did not contemplate the reporting of personal financial statements, and FASB did not amend the definitions of estimated current values and current amounts for personal financial statements as part of its codification process.

[Issue Date: June 2009.]

---

[The next page is 551.]



## Section 1800

### ***Notes to Financial Statements***

#### **.03 Disclosure of Change in Fiscal Year**

*Inquiry*—What disclosure in the financial statements is necessary when a company changes its fiscal year?

*Reply*—Generally accepted accounting principles do not specifically require disclosure of a change in the fiscal year. However, disclosure of such a change is generally considered necessary to make the financial statements meaningful to users. [Amended]

---

[The next page is 561.]



## Section 1900

### Interim Financial Information

#### .01 Condensed Interim Financial Reporting by Nonissuers

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 270, *Interim Reporting*, provides accounting and disclosure guidance relating to *recognition and measurement* in interim financial information (including condensed interim financial statements). FASB ASC 270 does not provide a reporting framework for condensed interim financial statements—that is, minimum requirements for the *form and content* of condensed interim financial statements. Article 10 of Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Regulation S-X provides guidance on the form and content of condensed interim financial statements of issuers. When preparing condensed interim financial statements, because specific guidance with respect to form and content is absent, may nonissuers apply Article 10 of SEC Regulation S-X in addition to complying with FASB ASC 270 with respect to recognition and measurement?

*Reply*—Yes. In the absence of established accounting principles for form and content in preparing condensed interim financial statements, nonissuers may analogize to the guidance in Article 10 of SEC Regulation S-X.

Preparers should keep in mind that the purpose of *condensed* interim financial statements is to provide an update to users of the entity's annual financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Article 10 of SEC Regulation S-X also has this premise. Therefore, to avoid being considered misleading,

- such condensed interim financial statements would include a note that the financial information should be read in conjunction with the entity's latest annual financial statements, and
- the entity's latest annual financial statements would either accompany such condensed interim financial statements or be made readily available by the entity. The financial statements are deemed to be readily available if a user can obtain the financial statements without any further action by the entity (for example, financial statements on an entity's Web site may be considered readily available, but being available upon request is not considered readily available).

[Issue Date: January 2009; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 701.]



# TIS Section 2000

## ASSETS

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Section

2110	Cash
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Checks Held at Balance Sheet Date
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Disclosure of Cash Balances in Excess of Federally Insured Amounts
2120	Temporary Investments
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Accounting for Preferred Dividends Received on Investments in Common Stock
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
2130	Receivables
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	.05 Out-of-Pocket Costs Incurred by a Law Firm
	[.06] Reserved
	.07 Requirement for Doubtful Accounts Allowance
	[.08] Reserved
	.09 Scope Part I: Application of FASB ASC 310-30 to Debt Securities
	.10 Scope Part II: Instruments Accounted for as Debt Securities Under FASB ASC 310-30
	.11 Determining Evidence of Significant Delays and Shortfalls Relative to FASB ASC 310-30
	.12 Determining Evidence of Deterioration of Credit Quality and Probability of Contractual Payment Deficiency in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30

## Section

2130	Receivables—continued
.13	Non-Accrual Loans Part I: Acquired Non-Accrual Loans Under FASB ASC 310-30
.14	Non-Accrual Loans Part II: Consumer Loans on Non-Accrual Status Under FASB ASC 310-30
.15	Loans Held for Sale in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30
.16	Treatment of Commercial Revolving Loans Under FASB ASC 310-30
.17	Application of FASB ASC 310-30
.18	Loans Reacquired Under Recourse Under FASB ASC 310-30
.19	Acquired Loans Where Purchase Price Is Greater Than Fair Value Under FASB ASC 310-30
.20	Acquired Loans Where Purchase Price Is Less Than Fair Value Under FASB ASC 310-30
.21	Accounting for Loans With Cash Flow Shortfalls That Are Insignificant Under FASB ASC 310-30
.22	Carrying Over the Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses (ALLL) Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part I)
.23	Carrying Over the ALLL Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part II)
.24	Carrying Over the ALLL Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part III)
.25	Income Recognition for Non-Accrual Loans Acquired Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part I)
.26	Income Recognition for Non-Accrual Loans Acquired Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part II)
.27	Income Recognition for Non-Accrual Loans Acquired Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part III)
.28	Estimating Cash Flows Under FASB ASC 310-30
.29	Implications of FASB ASC 310-20-35-11 With a Restructured or Refinanced Loan Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part I)
.30	Implications of FASB ASC 310-20-35-11 With a Restructured or Refinanced Loan Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part II)
.31	Variable Rate Loans and Changes in Cash Flows and FASB ASC 310-30
.32	Pool Accounting Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part I)
.33	Pool Accounting Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part II)
.34	Application to Fees Expected to Be Collected Under FASB ASC 310-30
.35	Application to Cash Flows From Collateral and Other Sources Under FASB ASC 310-30
.36	Impact on Cash Flows on a Group of Loans Accounted for as a Pool in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30, if There Is a Confirming Event, and One Loan Is Removed as Expected

*Section*

- 2130 Receivables—continued
  - .37 Impact on Cash Flows on a Group of Loans Accounted for as a Pool in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30, if There Is a Confirming Event, One Loan Is Removed From the Pool, and the Investor Decreases Its Estimate of Expected Cash Flows
- 2140 Inventories
  - .01 Warehousing Included in Cost of Inventory
  - .02 Obsolete Items in Inventory—I
  - .03 Obsolete Items in Inventory—II
  - .04 Airplanes Chartered While Held for Sale
  - [.05] Reserved
  - .06 Inventory of Meat Packer
  - [.07] Reserved
  - .08 Valuing Precious Metals Inventory Used in Manufacturing Applications
  - .09 Standard Cost for Inventory Valuation
  - [.10] Reserved
  - .11 Average Cost Method for Subsidiary
  - .12 Classification of Replacement Parts Under a Maintenance Agreement
  - .13 Classification of Slow-Moving Inventory
  - .14 Disclosure of LIFO Reserve
  - [.15] Reserved
  - [.16] Reserved
- 2210 Fixed Assets
  - .01 Settlement of Mortgage Installment on Real Estate Between Buyer and Seller
  - .02 Broker's Commission Received by Purchaser of Property as Purchase Price Concession
  - [.03] Reserved
  - [.04] Reserved
  - [.05] Reserved
  - .06 Valuation of Cattle Herd
  - .07 Costs of Ski Slopes and Lifts
  - .08 Restaurant Dishes and Silverware
  - [.09] Reserved
  - [.10] Reserved
  - [.11] Reserved
  - [.12] Reserved
  - [.13] Reserved
  - [.14] Reserved
  - .15 Capitalization of Cost of Dredging Log Pond [Amended]

*Section*

2210	Fixed Assets—continued
	[.16] Reserved
	[.17] Reserved
	.18 Revaluation of Assets
	[.19] Reserved
	.20 Compounding Capitalized Interest
	[.21] Reserved
	[.22] Reserved
	[.23] Reserved
	[.24] Reserved
	.25 Capitalization of Interest Costs Incurred by Subsidiary [Amended]
	[.26] Reserved
	.27 Construction of Asset—Foreign Currency Transaction Gains/Losses [Amended]
	.28 Accounting for Certain Liquidated Damages
2220	Long-Term Investments
	.01 Equity Method When Current Direct Ownership Less Than Twenty Percent
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Equity Method for Investee Following Completed Contract Method [Amended]
	[.04] Reserved
	.05 Assuming Pro Rata Share of Venture's Revenues and Expenses [Amended]
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	.08 Acquisition of Subsidiaries by Exchange of Assets With No Book Value
	[.09] Reserved
	[.10] Reserved
	[.11] Reserved
	.12 Investor's Share of Losses in Excess of Its Investment
	.13 A Change in Circumstances Using the Equity Method of Accounting for an Investment
	[.14] Reserved
	.15 Accounting for Distribution From Joint Venture
	[.16] Reserved
	.17 Tax Basis Accounting—Use of Equity Method
2230	Noncurrent Receivables
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Balance Sheet Classification of Deposit on Equipment to Be Purchased

*Section*

2240	Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance
	.01 Balance Sheet Classification of Life Insurance Policy Loan
	.02 Disclosure of Life Insurance on Principal Stockholders
	.03 Omission of Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance from Assets
	.04 Corporation's Policy on Life of Debtor Corporation's Officer
	[.05] Reserved
2250	Intangible Assets
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Accounting Treatment of Agreements Not to Compete
	[.07] Reserved
2260	Other Assets
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Legal Expenses Incurred to Defend Patent Infringement Suit

---

[The next page is 721.]



## Section 2110

### Cash

#### .02 Checks Held at Balance Sheet Date

*Inquiry*—It is the practice of a company to eliminate its recorded accounts payable balance at the end of each month by writing checks to all of its trade vendors prior to the end of the month. To prevent overdrafts that would result from this practice, the company retains possession of the checks and only mails them to the vendors after the end of the month, when sufficient funds are available to satisfy them.

How should these held checks be accounted for by the company at month end?

*Reply*—At month end the aggregate dollar amount of held checks should be added back to cash and accounts payable. Checks which have not left the custody of the company should not reduce the company's recorded cash or accounts payable balances because they have not been tendered to the vendor to satisfy the debt.

#### .06 Disclosure of Cash Balances in Excess of Federally Insured Amounts

*Inquiry*—Should the existence of cash on deposit with banks in excess of FDIC-insured limits be disclosed in the financial statements?

*Reply*—The existence of uninsured cash balances should be disclosed if the uninsured balances represent a significant concentration of credit risk. *Credit risk* is defined in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary as follows:

For purposes of a hedged item in a fair value hedge, credit risk is the risk of changes in the hedged item's fair value attributable to both of the following:

- a. Changes in the obligor's creditworthiness
- b. Changes in the spread over the benchmark interest rate with respect to the hedged item's credit sector at inception of the hedge.

For purposes of a hedged item in a cash flow hedge, credit risk is the risk of changes in the hedged item's cash flows attributable to all of the following:

- a. Default
- b. Changes in the obligor's creditworthiness
- c. Changes in the spread over the benchmark interest rate with respect to the hedged item's credit sector at inception of the hedge.

As a result, bank statement balances in excess of FDIC-insured amounts represent a credit risk.

A concentration of credit risk exists if an entity has exposure with an individual counterparty or groups of counterparties. For example, a material uninsured cash balance with a single bank should generally be disclosed. In

contrast, numerous immaterial uninsured cash balances on deposit with several banks may not require disclosure. The threshold for “significance” is a matter of judgment and will vary with individual circumstances.

An example of disclosure for this circumstance might be:

The Company maintains its cash accounts primarily with banks located in Alabama. The total cash balances are insured by the FDIC up to \$100,000 per bank. The Company has cash balances on deposit with two Alabama banks at December 31, 1996 that exceeded the balance insured by the FDIC in the amount of \$1,100,000.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 761.]**

## Section 2120

### *Temporary Investments*

#### **.06 Accounting for Preferred Dividends Received on Investments in Common Stock**

*Inquiry*—A company received dividends on its investment in common stock of another company in the form of preferred stock. How should the dividend be recorded?

*Reply*—The assets and related dividend income should be recorded at fair value. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 835-10-30-1 states that in general, accounting for nonmonetary transactions should be based on the fair values of the assets (or services) involved which is the same basis as that used in monetary transactions and that a nonmonetary asset received in a nonreciprocal transfer should be recorded at the fair value of the asset received. (FASB ASC 505, *Equity*, discusses accounting for stock dividends by the recipient; however, the scope of that pronouncement specifically excludes distributions of a different class of shares from that owned.)

[Amended, June 1995. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 811.]



## Section 2130

### Receivables

#### .05 Out-of-Pocket Costs Incurred by a Law Firm

*Inquiry*—A law firm incurs certain out-of-pocket costs on behalf of its clients. If the law firm's efforts on behalf of the client are successful, these costs are recovered from the client in addition to the legal fees. If the case is lost, the costs are absorbed by the law firm. How should these costs be treated by the law firm?

*Reply*—These out-of-pocket costs should be reported as an asset in the financial statements of the law firm (for example, in an account called "client costs receivable"). At each balance sheet date, the law firm should apply the criteria in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 450-20-25-1 to determine whether a loss contingency should be accrued.

If an asset is recorded, an allowance for unrecoverable client disbursements should be established representing the estimated amount of such costs that will not be realized. If these out-of-pocket costs become uncollectible because a case is lost, they should be written off against the allowance.

[Amended, June 1995. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .07 Requirement for Doubtful Accounts Allowance

*Inquiry*—Do generally accepted accounting principles require an enterprise to establish an allowance for doubtful accounts even though management, based on analysis of the receivables and past charge-off experience, believes that no accounts are uncollectible at the balance sheet date?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-10-35-7 states that "the conditions under which receivables exist usually involve some degree of uncertainty about their collectibility, in which case a contingency exists . . ." FASB ASC 450-20-25-2 would require an accrual of a loss by a charge to income if both of the following conditions exist:

- a. "Information available prior to issuance of the financial statements indicates that it is probable that an asset had been impaired . . . at the date of the financial statements." and
- b. "The amount of loss can be reasonably estimated."

If both conditions are not met, an allowance for doubtful accounts would not be required. Further, there is no requirement to disclose the absence of a loss accrual. If the conditions are met, an accrual for the loss should be recognized even though the specific receivables that are uncollectible may not be identifiable.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .09 Scope Part I: Application of FASB ASC 310-30 to Debt Securities

*Inquiry*—Does the scope of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30 include debt securities?

*Reply*—Yes. FASB ASC 310-30 applies to *loans*, as defined in the FASB ASC glossary, as follows:

**Loan:** A contractual right to receive money on demand or on fixed or determinable dates that is recognized as an asset in the creditor's statement of financial position. Examples include but are not limited to accounts receivable (with terms exceeding one year) and notes receivable. This definition encompasses loans accounted for as debt securities.

**Debt Security:** Any security representing a creditor relationship with an entity. The term debt security also includes all of the following:

- a. Preferred stock that by its terms either must be redeemed by the issuing entity or is redeemable at the option of the investor
- b. A collateralized mortgage obligation (or other instrument) that is issued in equity form but is required to be accounted for as a nonequity instrument regardless of how that instrument is classified (that is, whether equity or debt) in the issuer's statement of financial position
- c. U.S. Treasury securities
- d. U.S. government agency securities
- e. Municipal securities
- f. Corporate bonds
- g. Convertible debt
- h. Commercial paper
- i. All securitized debt instruments, such as collateralized mortgage obligations and real estate mortgage investment conduits
- j. Interest-only and principal-only strips.

The term debt security excludes all of the following:

- a. Option contracts
- b. Financial futures contracts
- c. Forward contracts
- d. Lease contracts
- e. Receivables that do not meet the definition of security and, so, are not debt securities (unless they have been securitized, in which case they would meet the definition of a security), for example:
  1. Trade accounts receivable arising from sales on credit by industrial or commercial entities
  2. Loans receivable arising from consumer, commercial, and real estate lending activities of financial institutions.

Therefore, the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 includes acquired loans that are accounted for as debt securities.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.10 Scope Part II: Instruments Accounted for as Debt Securities Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—Some types of instruments are measured like debt securities. In accordance with the guidance of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30 and considering expected cash flows for instruments measured like debt securities, when does the investor follow the guidance of paragraphs 8–9 of FASB ASC 310-30-35 (loans accounted for as debt securities) or paragraphs 10–11 of FASB ASC 310-30-35 (loans not accounted for as debt securities)?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 310-10-35-45 provides an example of instruments that are measured like debt securities:

... interest-only strips, other interests that continue to be held by a transferor in securitizations, loans, other receivables, or other financial assets that can contractually be prepaid or otherwise settled in such a way that the holder would not recover substantially all of its recorded investment, except for instruments that are within the scope of Topic 815, [shall] be subsequently measured like investments in debt securities classified as available for sale or trading under Topic 320.

For these types of instruments measured like debt securities, investors should follow the impairment guidance in paragraphs 8–9 of FASB ASC 310-30-35 (loans accounted for as debt securities) unless the asset is otherwise excluded according to FASB ASC 310-30-15.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.11 Determining Evidence of Significant Delays and Shortfalls Relative to FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30-15-8 states that “investors shall consider the significance of delays and shortfalls for a loan so FASB ASC 310-30 is not applied in evaluating payment collectability when such delays and shortfalls are insignificant with regard to the contractually required payments.” How might that assessment be determined?

*Reply*—That assessment will likely be based on individual facts and circumstances and should be guided by an accounting policy adopted and applied consistently by the investor. For instance a percentage could be established to indicate an “insignificant” shortfall and for those items that meet the percentage shortfall, the dollar shortfall itself would be evaluated as to whether it is insignificant in the aggregate.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.12 Determining Evidence of Deterioration of Credit Quality and Probability of Contractual Payment Deficiency in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—In accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310–30, how can an investor identify loans that have evidence of deterioration of credit quality and for which it is probable that the investor will be unable to collect all contractually required payments receivable so that they can identify whether the loans are in the scope of FASB ASC 310-30?

*Reply*—There are several things to consider when determining whether certain loans are within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30. An investor may set

policies, including thresholds based on the type of loan product. Commercial loans are generally classified or graded into risk categories as part of an ongoing credit review process. An investor may identify commercial loans with evidence of deterioration using the previous owner's record of changes in classification and accrual status. Such records may also provide evidence concerning whether it is probable that the investor will be unable to collect all contractually required payments receivable. In contrast, consumer loans are generally not individually reviewed or graded and non-accrual and charge-off policies vary by product. For instance, some types of consumer loans are immediately charged-off when the loan is a certain number of days past due and may never be classified as non-accrual. As a result, indicators of credit quality deterioration for consumer products may vary depending on the product and may include non-accrual classification, past due status, or FICO score and changes therein. For debt securities, investors may establish other criteria to determine when securities should be considered for review for application under FASB ASC 310-30; for example, downgrades in credit grade categories.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.13 Non-Accrual Loans Part I: Acquired Non-Accrual Loans Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—Does an acquired loan (purchased individually or as part of a business combination) that was classified by the seller as non-accrual fall within the scope of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30?

*Reply*—Non-accrual status may be an indicator that a loan that meets the criteria of FASB ASC 310-30. However, the investor should analyze whether the loan meets all the scope criteria in FASB ASC 310-30-15, including evidence of credit deterioration. Classification of a loan as non-accrual by the seller and/or investor does not provide an exemption from FASB ASC 310-30. FASB ASC 310-30 does not prohibit carrying acquired loans on non-accrual status, when appropriate. However, certain disclosures are required for such loans in accordance with FASB ASC 310-30-50-2(a)(4).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.14 Non-Accrual Loans Part II: Consumer Loans on Non-Accrual Status Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—Should Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30 be applied to non-accrual (for example, 90 days past due) consumer loans that are reported as non-performing loans when such loans may be charged off completely in relatively short order (that is, after 120 days)?

*Reply*—Yes. FASB ASC 310-30 is applicable to all loans within its scope, including non-accrual loans. The accrual accounting specified in FASB ASC 310-30 should be applied if the investor is able to estimate expected cash flows, including cash flows resulting from foreclosure and other collection efforts. However, when the investor does not have the ability to reasonably estimate cash flows, FASB ASC 310-30 does not prohibit carrying loans on non-accrual. Also, investors should note there are additional disclosure requirements for these circumstances.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.15 Loans Held for Sale in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—Why are only mortgage loans held for sale and not all loans held for sale excluded from the scope of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30?

*Reply*—Only mortgage loans held for sale that are accounted for under FASB ASC 948, *Financial Services—Mortgage Banking*, are excluded from the scope because FASB ASC 948 had to provide an exception.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.16 Treatment of Commercial Revolving Loans Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30-15-2(f) excludes revolving credit agreements from its scope specifically noting as examples two types of consumer revolving agreements, credit cards and home equity loans. *Revolving privilege* is defined in the FASB ASC glossary as “a feature in a loan that provides the borrower with the option to make multiple borrowings up to a specified maximum amount, to repay portions of previous borrowings, and then to reborrow under the same loan.” Are commercial revolving loans also excluded from the scope of FASB ASC 310-30?

*Reply*—Commercial revolving loans should be treated the same as consumer revolving loans. Thus, commercial revolving loans are excluded as well, if the borrower has revolving privileges at the acquisition date.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.17 Application of FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—The scope of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30 excludes loans that are retained (transferor’s beneficial) interests. How does the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 relate to the scope of FASB ASC 325-40?

*Reply*—Accounting for retained interests should follow FASB ASC 325-40 and for purchased interests should follow FASB ASC 310-30 if they meet the scope criteria in FASB ASC 310-30-15.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.18 Loans Reacquired Under Recourse Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—If a loan that was transferred with recourse and qualified for accounting as a sale under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) ASC 860, *Transfers and Servicing*, is subsequently repurchased under the recourse provision, is it within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30?

*Reply*—Yes, if it meets the criteria in FASB ASC 310-30-15 related to credit quality. Except for purchases triggered by initial representations and warranty deficiencies, it is likely that the repurchased loan would meet the criteria to be included in the scope of FASB ASC 310-30. FASB ASC 310-30 includes guidance on the evidence of credit deterioration. (See TIS section 2130.11, “Determining Evidence of Significant Delays and Shortfalls Relative to FASB ASC 310-30.”)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.19 Acquired Loans Where Purchase Price Is Greater Than Fair Value Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—If the fair value of a purchased loan is less than the purchase price because a loan is repurchased under a recourse provision, does Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30 permit recording the loan at the purchase price?

*Reply*—If a loan meets the criteria of FASB ASC 310-30-15 such that it is in the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 and the seller repurchases the asset at a price that is more than fair value, the seller should record the asset at its fair value and record a loss for the difference between the price paid and the fair value, if not already recognized. An allowance for loan losses to offset recording the loan at the purchase price should not be recorded. In most cases, if the loan had previously been transferred with recourse, the seller should already have recognized an associated liability for the recourse obligation in accordance with FASB ASC 450, *Contingencies*, and FASB ASC 860, *Transfers and Servicing*, as well as FASB ASC 460, *Guarantees*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.20 Acquired Loans Where Purchase Price Is Less Than Fair Value Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—In accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30, if the fair value of a purchased loan is more than the purchase price because a loan is acquired (for example, as part of a clean up call) should the seller record a gain?

*Reply*—No. There may be instances where the seller is required or has an option to re-purchase an asset at a price that is less than fair value. In that situation and if the loan is within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30, the investor should record the asset at the purchase price and the excess of expected cash flows over the initial investment should be recognized as the yield under FASB ASC 310-30.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.21 Accounting for Loans With Cash Flow Shortfalls That Are Insignificant Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—Related to Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30-15-8, an investor might establish a policy that a shortfall in contractually required payments below a certain amount or percentage is insignificant and thus, certain acquired loans would not be in the scope of FASB ASC 310-30. For loans with shortfalls in payments of less than the established threshold, how should those discounts be accreted into income as a yield adjustment?

*Reply*—If a loan is not in the scope of FASB ASC 310-30, then FASB ASC 310-20 applies, and FASB ASC 310-20-35-15 requires that the entire discount be accreted to income over the life of the loan.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.22 Carrying Over the Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses (ALLL) Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part I)**

*Inquiry*—Can some or all of an Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses (ALLL) be carried over in a business combination under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 310-30 does not address the appropriateness of carrying over the ALLL for loans not in its scope.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.23 Carrying Over the ALLL Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part II)**

*Inquiry*—Are there any recommendations on calculating allowance ratios relating to loans in the scope of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30?

*Reply*—Although the nonaccretable difference is akin to an ALLL because it represents amounts that are not expected to be collected, it should not be included in the ALLL or ALLL ratios. The only time there is any ALLL for the loans within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 is when the expected cash flows have decreased after acquisition and a loss is recognized by the investor. In other words, at the purchase date, for loans within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30, the allowance-to-loans ratio is always zero. The investor may wish to disclose in the notes to the financials the amount of the nonaccretable difference so that the readers understand by how much the loans have already been “written down.”

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.24 Carrying Over the ALLL Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part III)**

*Inquiry*—For loans evaluated collectively by the previous owner that have related Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 450, *Contingencies*, components, should the investor in a business combination carry over the ALLL?

*Reply*—If the investor has acquired loans within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 in a business combination for which a portion of the predecessor's allowance had been specifically allocated to those loans, that portion of the ALLL would not be carried over. Even when loans are acquired within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 for which there had been no specific allocation, it is expected that some portion of the predecessor's ALLL related to such loans and should not be carried over. However, it may be difficult to determine the amount of the ALLL allocable to those loans where the ALLL had been estimated by a pool methodology and when there were “unallocated” components of the allowance. In considering how to attribute the appropriate amount of the predecessor's ALLL to loans in the scope of FASB ASC 310-30, investors should carefully consider that loans within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 likely have additional risk characteristics that may warrant a heavier weighting of the ALLL to those loans, considering other factors such as prior charge-offs. The AICPA staff understands that the portion of the predecessor's ALLL that is not carried over because it relates directly to or has been allocated to loans within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 should be disclosed for public companies. Another consideration related to determining the amount of the ALLL that should not be carried over is the seller's calculated nonaccretable difference. After a loan by loan analysis to determine whether an individual loan is in the scope of FASB ASC 310-30, SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 61, *Adjustments to Allowances*

for *Loan Losses in Connection with Business Combinations*, will continue to apply to public companies to the remainder of the loans and the ALLL that are not within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.25 Income Recognition for Non-Accrual Loans Acquired Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part I)**

*Inquiry*—What is the accounting for a purchased loan that was classified by the previous owner as non-accrual and for which cash flows cannot be reasonably estimated under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 310-30 does not prohibit placing (or keeping) loans on non-accrual. At inception or thereafter the investor may place a loan on non-accrual, if the conditions in FASB ASC 310-30-35-3 are met. FASB ASC 310-30-50-2(a)(4) requires certain disclosures for purchases of non-accrual loans.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.26 Income Recognition for Non-Accrual Loans Acquired Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part II)**

*Inquiry*—A loan is classified as non-accrual by a seller because the debtor is not meeting its obligations under the loan's contractual terms. That loan is sold to an investor who determines that the loan meets the requirements of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30. If the investor can reasonably estimate cash flows, should the investor classify the loan as an accruing loan?

*Reply*—Yes, if the investor can reasonably estimate cash flows, it should recognize an accretable yield and the loan is an accruing loan as discussed in FASB ASC 310-30-35-3.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.27 Income Recognition for Non-Accrual Loans Acquired Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part III)**

*Inquiry*—Assuming the investor followed the cost recovery method on a loan, and assuming the loan was brought current for a period of time, could the investor return the loan to accrual status and account for the loan as a new loan?

*Reply*—If the loan was within the scope of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30 when it was purchased, it is not accounted for as a new loan but is always under the requirements of FASB ASC 310-30, even if the loan's performance improves. However, as discussed in TIS section 2130.26, the loan should be accruing income whenever the investor is able to reasonably estimate cash flows. Also, if the currently expected cash flows exceed the originally expected cash flows, the guidance in paragraphs 8–11 of FASB ASC 310-30-35 should be applied, which may result in recognizing income at a higher yield than originally expected.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.28 Estimating Cash Flows Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—In accordance with the guidance in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30, how often should an investor reassess the cash flows expected to be collected?

*Reply*—Investors should reassess expected cash flows at the end of each reporting period. Thus, for entities that prepare quarterly GAAP-basis financial statements, it is expected that cash flows will be re-assessed at least quarterly.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.29 Implications of FASB ASC 310-20-35-11 With a Restructured or Refinanced Loan Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part I)**

*Inquiry*—Can a loan that meets the requirements of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-20-35-11 be removed from the scope of FASB ASC 310-30? If a loan is within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 and there are modifications to that loan, should the guidance in FASB ASC 310-20-35-11 apply?

*Reply*—No. FASB ASC 310-20-35-11 only applies to loans that are not within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30. The point of FASB ASC 310-30-35-13 is that a loan stays in the scope of FASB ASC 310-30, regardless of restructuring or refinancing, except for a troubled debt restructuring.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.30 Implications of FASB ASC 310-20-35-11 With a Restructured or Refinanced Loan Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part II)**

*Inquiry*—Can a loan that has been extinguished in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-20-35-11 and given a new loan number, with new terms, but which has not been paid off, be accounted for as a new loan under the guidance in FASB ASC 310-30? What steps could the investor and borrower take to permit the loan to be accounted for as a new loan?

*Reply*—A loan within the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 can never be accounted for as a new loan, except through a troubled debt restructuring in accordance with FASB ASC 310-40.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.31 Variable Rate Loans and Changes in Cash Flows and FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—In accordance with the guidance in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30, should an investor in variable rate loans determine the cause of a decrease in expected cash flows?

*Reply*—Yes. To the extent that the investor can directly attribute a decrease in expected cash flows to a decrease in the contractual interest rate, the investor should reduce the yield recognized in income on a prospective basis. However, if the investor is not able to directly attribute the decrease in expected cash flows to a decrease in the contractual interest rate (for example, because the change in the index or rate has no direct effect on the cash flows available to the borrower to service the loan or because the change in the index or rate had no direct effect on expected cash flows that relate to the value of the collateral)

the investor should immediately recognize any decrease in expected cash flows as an impairment, not over time as reduced yield.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.32 Pool Accounting Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part I)**

*Inquiry*—In accordance with the guidance in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30, if a loan is removed from a pool, how is the specific carrying amount of a loan determined?

*Reply*—As discussed in FASB ASC 310-30-40-1, once a pool has been assembled the integrity of the pool should be maintained. If the loan is removed under the specific criteria in FASB ASC 310-30-40-1, it should be removed at its carrying amount. In some cases the cash flows of the pool will have been estimated for the pool as a whole such that there is no specific information on the carrying amount and cash flows related to any particular loan. In that case, an allocation of carrying amount to the loan on a pro rata basis is an appropriate way to achieve the goal of not impacting the accounting for the remaining pool. In other cases, the cash flows of the pool may have been built up as the sum of cash flows of individual loans and there is specific information related to the loan being removed. In that case, the carrying amount is allocated on the basis of the specific information for the loan removed. In either case, the goal remains the same—that is, to not have a removal event result in either impairment or an increase in yield for the remaining pool.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.33 Pool Accounting Under FASB ASC 310-30 (Part II)**

*Inquiry*—Alternatively, and related to TIS section 2130.32, should the loan be removed at its initial fair value in accordance with the guidance in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30?

*Reply*—Generally, no. Removing a loan at its initial fair value, unless done very shortly after acquisition of the loan and creation of the pool, would likely result in a change in the effective yield of the remaining pool and the stated intent of FASB ASC 310-30 is that removing a loan from a pool should not result in such a change.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.34 Application to Fees Expected to Be Collected Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—In accordance with the guidance in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30, should fees be included in “expected cash flows?” The FASB ASC glossary definition for *cash flows expected at acquisition* includes “principal, interest and other cash flows expected to be collected.” Does FASB ASC 310-30 address late fees and other fees?

*Reply*—“Other cash flows expected to be collected” includes all fees. If late fees are expected to be collected and are contractual, the investor should include them in total contractual cash flows and expected cash flows for purposes of calculating yield and making disclosures. If late fees are contractual but not expected to be collected, the investor should exclude late fees from contractual cash flows and disclose that accounting policy (if it is considered material).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.35 Application to Cash Flows From Collateral and Other Sources Under FASB ASC 310-30**

*Inquiry*—In accordance with the guidance in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30, should cash expected to be received from the ownership and sale of assets taken in settlement of loans be included in “other cash flows expected to be collected?”

*Reply*—Cash flows expected at acquisition includes all cash flows directly related to the acquired loan, including those expected from collateral. Although yield is measured on this basis under FASB ASC 310-30 for the loan prior to foreclosure, an asset received by the investor in full or partial settlement of a loan should be accounted for in accordance with paragraphs 2–4 of FASB ASC 310-40-40.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.36 Impact on Cash Flows on a Group of Loans Accounted for as a Pool in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30 if There Is a Confirming Event, and One Loan Is Removed as Expected**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30-15-6 states that investors may aggregate loans acquired in the same fiscal quarter that have common risk characteristics and thereby use a composite interest rate and expectation of cash flows expected to be collected for the pool. FASB ASC 310-30-40-1 states that once the pool is assembled, the integrity of the pool should be maintained. What is the impact on the accounting for a group of loans accounted for as a pool, if there is a confirming event, and one loan is removed from the pool as expected?

*Reply*—The following is an example of the impact on the accounting for a pool of loans, if there is a confirming event, and one loan is removed as expected.

**FASB ASC 310-30 Example**

**Group of Loans**

**Example 1—Confirming Event, One Loan Is Removed From Pool, as Expected**

Facts: The investor purchases 10 loans that individually meet the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 for \$800. Based on the aggregation criteria, the investor assembles the loans into a pool. The investor initially expects to collect \$929.29 in cash flows (which generates a yield of approximately 5.387 percent over 3 years). The investor recognizes one month of yield income. The investor then receives notification that one obligor has become bankrupt and that it will make no further payments on its loan. The investor concludes that event is in accordance with the original expectation of cash flows. That is, the investor continues to expect that it will collect \$929.29 from the pool of loans. The investor removes the contractual cash flows from that loan and an equal amount of nonaccretable difference, in the amount of \$117.42, from the pool such that the yield is unaffected. This TPA does not address charge-offs.

## Assets

	<u>Original Purchase</u>	<u>Accrue Income</u>	<u>Receive Payment</u>	<u>Balance</u>	<u>Removal of Loan</u>	<u>Balance</u>
Contractual Cash Flows	1,200.00		(25.81)	1,174.19	(117.42)	1,056.77
Nonaccretable Difference	(270.71)			(270.71)	117.42	(153.29)
Expected Cash Flows	929.29		(25.81)	903.48	0.00	903.48
Accretable Yield	(129.29)	6.67		(122.62)	0.00	(122.62)
Recorded Amount	800.00	6.67	(25.81)	780.86	0.00	780.86
Bad Debt Expense/ALLL	0.00			0.00	0.00	0.00
Carrying Amount	800.00	6.67	(25.81)	780.86	0.00	780.86
Yield (computed on carrying amount)*	<b>5.387%</b>			<b>5.384%</b>		<b>5.384%</b>
Principal Balance	1,000.00		(19.14)	980.86	(98.09)	882.77
Delinquent Accrued Interest Rec.	50.00			50.00	(5.00)	45.00
Balance	1,050.00		(19.14)	1,030.86	(103.09)	927.77
Remaining Interest Due Under Contract	150.00		(6.67)	143.33	(14.33)	129.00
Nonaccretable Difference	(270.71)			(270.71)	117.42	(153.29)
Expected Cash Flows	929.29		(25.81)	903.48	0.00	903.48
Accretable Yield	(129.29)	6.67		(122.62)	0.00	(122.62)
Recorded Amount	800.00	6.67	(25.81)	780.86	0.00	780.86
Bad Debt Expense/ALLL	0.00			0.00	0.00	0.00
Carrying Amount	800.00	6.67	(25.81)	780.86	0.00	780.86

\* Yield = Accretable yield divided by the carrying amount divided by 36 times 12

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.37 Impact on Cash Flows on a Group of Loans Accounted for as a Pool in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30 if There Is a Confirming Event, One Loan Is Removed From the Pool, and the Investor Decreases Its Estimate of Expected Cash Flows**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-30-15-6 states that investors may aggregate loans acquired in the same fiscal quarter that have common risk characteristics and thereby use a composite interest rate and expectation of cash flows expected to be collected for the pool. FASB ASC 310-30-40-1 states that once the pool is assembled, the integrity of the pool should be maintained. What is the impact on the on the accounting for a group of loans accounted for as a pool, if there is a confirming event, one loan is removed from the pool, and the investor decreases its estimate of expected cash flows?

*Reply*—The following is an example of the impact on the accounting for a group of loans accounted for as a pool, if there is a confirming event, one loan is removed from the pool, and the investor decreases its estimate of expected cash flows:

**FASB ASC 310-30 Example**

**Group of Loans**

**Example 2—Confirming Event, One Loan Is Removed From Pool, and Investor Decreases Estimate of Expected Cash Flows From Pool**

**Facts:** The investor purchases 10 loans that individually meet the scope of FASB ASC 310-30 for \$800. Based on the aggregation criteria, the investor assembles the loans into a pool. The investor initially expects to collect \$929.29 in cash flows (which generates a yield of approximately 5.387 percent over 3 years). The investor recognizes one month of yield income. The investor then receives notification that one that one obligor has become bankrupt and that it will make no further payments on its loan. The investor concludes that the expected cash flows from the pool are decreased by \$90.35, which has a present value at 5.387 percent of \$78.09. The investor records a provision of \$78.09, increasing the loan loss allowance by \$78.09. In addition, the investor removes the contractual cash flows from that loan and an equal amount of nonaccretible discount, in the amount of \$117.42, from the pool such that the yield is unaffected. This TPA does not address charge-offs.

	Original Purchase	Accrue Income	Receive Payment	Decrease in Expected Cash Flows		Removal of Loan	Assets	
				Balance	Balance		Balance	Balance
Contractual Cash Flows	1,200.00		(25.81)	1,174.19	1,174.19	(117.42)	1,056.77	
Nonaccretable Difference	(270.71)			(270.71)	(282.97)	117.42	(165.55)	
Expected Cash Flows	929.29		(25.81)	903.48	891.22	0.00	891.22	
Accretable Yield	(129.29)	6.67		(122.62)	(110.36)	0.00	(110.36)	
Recorded Amount	800.00	6.67	(25.81)	780.86	780.86	0.00	780.86	
Bad Debt Expense/ALLL	0.00			0.00	(78.09)		(78.09)	
Carrying Amount	800.00	6.67	(25.81)	780.86	702.77	0.00	702.77	
Yield (computed on carrying amount)*	5.387%			5.384%	5.384%		5.384%	
Principal Balance	1,000.00		(19.14)	980.86	980.86	(98.09)	882.77	
Delinquent Accrued Interest Rec.	50.00			50.00	50.00	(5.00)	45.00	
Balance	1,050.00		(19.14)	1,030.86	1,030.86	(103.09)	927.77	
Remaining Interest Due Under Contract	150.00		(6.67)	143.33	143.33	(14.33)	129.00	
Nonaccretable Difference	(270.71)			(270.71)	(282.97)	117.42	(165.55)	
Expected Cash Flows	929.29		(25.81)	903.48	891.22	0.00	891.22	
Accretable Yield	(129.29)	6.67		(122.62)	(110.36)	0.00	(110.36)	
Recorded Amount	800.00	6.67	(25.81)	780.86	780.86	0.00	780.86	
Bad Debt Expense/ALLL	0.00			0.00	(78.09)		(78.09)	
Carrying Amount	800.00	6.67	(25.81)	780.86	702.77	0.00	702.77	

\* Yield =Accretable yield divided by the carrying amount divided by 36 times 12

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

[The next page is 861.]

## Section 2140

### ***Inventories***

#### **.01 Warehousing Included in Cost of Inventory**

*Inquiry*—A client deals in wholesaling and retailing automotive tires for foreign cars. Most of the inventory is imported, and it is valued on the company's records at the actual inventory cost plus freight-in. At year-end, the warehousing costs are prorated over cost of goods sold and ending inventory. The company's auditor believes the warehousing costs should not be capitalized to inventory, but the entire amount should be expensed in the year the costs are incurred. Are warehousing costs considered to be product costs or period costs?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 330-10-30-1 states, in part:

As applied to inventories, cost means in principle the sum of the applicable expenditures and charges directly or indirectly incurred in bringing an article to its existing condition and location.

Kieso and Weygandt, *Intermediate Accounting*, 9th Edition states:

Product costs are those costs that "attach" to the inventory and are recorded in the inventory accounts. These costs are directly connected with the bringing of goods to the place of business of the buyer and converting such goods to a saleable condition. Such charges would include freight charges on goods purchased, other direct costs of acquisition and labor, and other production costs incurred in processing the goods up to the time of sale. It would seem proper also, to allocate to inventories a share of any buying costs or expenses of a purchasing department, storage costs, and other costs incurred in storing or handling goods before they are sold (i.e., warehousing costs). Because of the practical difficulties involved in allocating such costs and expenses, however these items are not ordinarily included in valuing inventories.

Costs of delivering the goods from the warehouse would be considered a selling expense and should not be allocated to the goods that are still in the warehouse.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.02 Obsolete Items in Inventory—I**

*Inquiry*—A client purchased in bulk various inventories of stock material. This material is used to produce various specialized parts used in electronic equipment. The bulk purchase took place some eighteen months ago, and less than ten percent of these inventories have been used. The client claims that there may be some obsolete stock on hand from this bulk purchase, but an eighteen month period is not enough time to effectively determine the complete degree of obsolescence because the highly specialized nature of the product line may not lead to renewed orders until periods beyond one or more operating cycles. Based on the information available to the client, about one-third of the original bulk purchase will be written off because of obsolescence. For the remaining inventories, the client will present a representation letter indicating that he believes the remaining inventory not to be obsolete.

There may be more obsolete inventory than the client is willing to admit. The poor turnover of such items is the chief reason for concern. Pricing the inventory at the lower of cost or market will be difficult. The nature of the inventory (many small items at low unit cost) and its poor turnover make obtaining market prices difficult.

What is the responsibility of auditors, not being inventory experts, in determining the extent of obsolescence?

*Reply*—Paragraphs .09–.13 of AU section 331, *Inventories* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), discuss audit evidence for inventories. Paragraphs .09–.13 of AU section 331 do not define the auditor's responsibility for quality of inventory. However, the third standard of field work would require the auditor to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding inventory quality in connection with determining whether or not the inventories are presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. This audit evidence might include the opinion of other experts, for example an electronics engineer, with respect to the quality of the inventories in this case.

Over the eighteen-month period since the inventories were purchased, less than ten percent have been utilized. Such a usage rate indicates that the client has close to an estimated fifteen year supply of these inventories. This would indicate that little or no value should be assigned to these inventories.

[Revised, May 2007.]

### **.03 Obsolete Items in Inventory—II**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary defines inventory, in part, as

The aggregate of those items of tangible personal property that have any of the following characteristics:

- a. Held for sale in the ordinary course of business
- b. In process of production for such sale
- c. To be currently consumed in the production of goods or services to be available for sale.

Is it correct to assume that obsolete items which are not currently consumed in the production of “goods or services to be available for sale,” are not classified as inventory?

*Reply*—It is correct to conclude that obsolete items are excludable from inventory. Cost attributable to such items is “nonuseful” and “nonrecoverable” cost (except for possible scrap value) and should be written off if a perpetual inventory is maintained or simply excluded from the inventory count if cost of sales is derived solely by means of taking a physical inventory count at the end of a period.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.04 Airplanes Chartered While Held for Sale**

*Inquiry*—A company purchases airplanes for sale to others. However, until they are sold, the company charters and services the planes. What would be the proper way to report these airplanes in the company's financial statements?

*Reply*—The primary use of the airplanes should determine their treatment on the balance sheet. Since the airplanes are held primarily for sale, and chartering is only a temporary use, the airplanes should be classified as current assets. However, depreciation would not be appropriate if the planes are

considered inventory. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary states, in part, that the term inventory “excludes long-term assets subject to depreciation accounting, or goods which, when put into use, will be so classified.”

If the use period were to exceed one year, reclassification to fixed assets and recognition of depreciation expense would be appropriate under generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.06 Inventory of Meat Packer**

*Inquiry*—A client engaged in the meat packing business uses the “National Provisioner Daily Market Service” quotations in valuing its inventories. The client contends that these quotations, adjusted for freight differentials, reflect an accurate approximation of actual costs and, in lieu of a complete cost accounting system, should be considered as cost for inventory valuation. Is this method of inventory valuation acceptable for meat packers?

*Reply*—Meat packing companies generally value their work in process and finished goods inventories at market price less cost to bring to market in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 330, *Inventory*. Live animals and whole carcasses are carried at lower of cost or market. Many companies use quoted costs such as the National Provisioner quotations which are estimated costs of producing a particular cut of meat adjusted for the fluctuating daily livestock prices and other factors. These quoted prices must be further adjusted by the individual meat packers to take into account individual factors such as freight and storage.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.08 Valuing Precious Metals Inventory Used in Manufacturing Applications**

*Inquiry*—Should inventories of precious metals used in manufacturing applications (for example, diamonds used in drill bits, plutonium or uranium used in steel fabrication, or titanium used in paint manufacturing) be valued at market or at the lower of cost or market?

*Reply*—These inventories should be valued at the lower of cost or market in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 330-10-35-2. The excess of market value over cost may be disclosed.

The exception to “lower of cost or market” that allows precious metals to be recorded at market on the balance sheet does not apply to these industrial applications because the metals will be used in the manufacturing process rather than held for immediate sale and do not meet the other conditions specified in FASB ASC 330-10-35-15, which states:

Only in exceptional cases may inventories properly be stated above cost. For example, precious metals having a fixed monetary value with no substantial cost of marketing may be stated at such monetary value; any other exceptions must be justifiable by inability to determine appropriate approximate costs, immediate marketability at quoted market price, and the characteristic of unit interchangeability.

FASB ASC 330-10-50-3 further states:

Where goods are stated above cost, this fact shall be fully disclosed.

[Amended, June 1995. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.09 Standard Cost for Inventory Valuation**

*Inquiry*—A client uses standard costs for valuing inventory. What disclosure is necessary in the financial statements regarding inventory valuation?

*Reply*—Ordinarily, standard costs should be adjusted to a figure which approximates the lower of cost or market. If this is done, then it is appropriate to use standard costs for financial reporting purposes. This is usually the case where standards are currently and frequently adjusted.

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 330-10-30-13 states:

Standard costs are acceptable if adjusted at reasonable intervals to reflect current conditions so that at the balance sheet date standard costs reasonably approximate costs computed under one of the recognized bases. In such cases descriptive language shall be used which will express this relationship, as, for instance, “approximate costs determined on the first-in first-out basis,” or, if it is desired to mention standard costs, “at standard costs, approximating average costs.”

Accordingly, if in this particular case standard costs do in fact approximate the lower of cost or market, then disclosure along the lines indicated in the above reference is adequate.

On the other hand, if the difference between standard costs and the lower of cost or market is material, then mere footnote disclosure will not cure the known statement imperfection.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.11 Average Cost Method for Subsidiary**

*Inquiry*—Company A and all of its subsidiaries, except one, determine the cost of inventories by the last-in, first-out method (LIFO). The one subsidiary uses an average cost method. Is the average cost method acceptable for determining the cost of inventory? Is it acceptable for one subsidiary to use the average cost method and Company A and the other subsidiaries to use the LIFO method?

*Reply*—The average cost method is an acceptable method for determining the cost of inventory. An entity may use more than one method to determine the cost of inventory provided the methods are disclosed.

### **.12 Classification of Replacement Parts Under a Maintenance Agreement**

*Inquiry*—Company A has entered into a maintenance agreement with Company B, an unrelated party, to provide maintenance and service for specialized computer equipment leased by Company B to third parties. The maintenance contract between A and B requires that A maintain a spare/replacement parts inventory for the equipment. Company A has no use for these parts other than to fulfill the obligation under its contract with Company B. The term of the contract between Company A and Company B is for several years.

Most of the spare parts (i.e., circuit boards) are of a repairable nature, and it is expected that as A replaces a part, A will have the removed part refurbished, at its own cost. The refurbished parts will be available for future use as necessary.

Should Company A classify the refurbished replacement parts as inventory? Should Company A's investment in the parts be amortized?

*Reply*—Company A should classify the refurbished replacement parts as inventory. Inventory costs should not be amortized; a loss in their utility should be reflected as a charge against revenues of the period in which it occurs, as discussed in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 330-10-35-2.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.13 Classification of Slow-Moving Inventory**

*Inquiry*—A client, engaged in an oil field related industry, has slow-moving products that are not considered obsolete. The inventory is properly stated at the lower of cost or market. The client plans to continue selling the inventory on hand but will cease manufacturing the specialized product. Based on current sales estimates and demand for the product, it appears likely that the client will be able to sell all of the items in the inventory over a period of about four years. Is it correct to classify a portion of the slow-moving inventory as a long-term asset in the client's classified balance sheet?

*Reply*—The portion of the slow-moving inventory not reasonably expected to be realized in cash during the client's normal operating cycle should be classified as a long-term asset in the company's classified balance sheet. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-10-45-9 states that the term *current assets* is used to designate cash and other assets or resources commonly identified as those that are reasonably expected to be realized in cash or sold or consumed during the normal operating cycle of the business.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.14 Disclosure of LIFO Reserve**

*Inquiry*—Should a company using the last-in, first-out (LIFO) method of inventory valuation be required to disclose the LIFO reserve in its financial statements or in the accompanying footnotes?

*Reply*—Yes. The Accounting Standards Division Issues Paper, *Identification and Discussion of Certain Financial Accounting and Reporting Issues Concerning LIFO Inventories*, addresses this matter in section 2, paragraphs 24 through 28. Paragraph 28 indicates that the task force voted (9 yes, 0 no) that either the LIFO reserve or replacement cost and its basis for determination should be disclosed. Paragraph 26 states that the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) requires companies whose securities trade publicly to disclose this information [Regulation S-X, section 210.5-02.6(c)] and that many nonpublic companies also disclose this information.

[Amended, June 1995. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

---

[The next page is 1161.]



## Section 2210

### *Fixed Assets*

#### **.01 Settlement of Mortgage Installment on Real Estate Between Buyer and Seller**

*Inquiry*—A company purchased an office building subject to the seller's assumable mortgage. The closing of the transaction occurred in the middle of a month which was between payment dates on the mortgage. The closing statement reflected a credit from the seller to the buyer for the interest that accrued on the mortgage from the last payment date until the date of the closing. How should this credit be accounted for by the buyer?

*Reply*—The buyer would treat the accrued interest credit as a reduction of interest expense for the first month of ownership. When the buyer makes the first interest payment after the closing, the credit will offset the full month's interest paid and thus reduce the buyer's net interest expense to the amount attributable to the period that the property was owned by the buyer.

[Amended, June 1995.]

#### **.02 Broker's Commission Received by Purchaser of Property as Purchase Price Concession**

*Inquiry*—A corporation ("purchaser") is engaged in negotiations to purchase real property. During the negotiations, the purchaser was unwilling to accept the seller's best offer. To induce the purchaser to agree to the sale, the broker agreed to rebate a portion of the seller-paid commission to the purchaser.

Would this rebate be considered income to the purchaser or a reduction of the cost of the property acquired?

*Reply*—The "rebate" received from the broker should be accounted for as a reduction of the cost of the property rather than as income. Income should not be recognized on a purchase. The receipt of the rebate was part of the acquisition of the real estate and, when netted against the purchase price, reflects the amount the purchaser was willing to pay for the property.

[Amended, June 1995.]

#### **.06 Valuation of Cattle Herd**

*Inquiry*—A client, in the business of raising and selling cattle, has not been in business long enough to develop enough cost information to reliably value the cattle raised by them. Each cow costs \$2,000 or more and has an estimated salvage value of about \$300 at the end of its productive breeding life. The client has adopted a life of seven years for its breeding herd based on the various ages of the cows.

The client proposes to price the cattle raised as follows:

##### *Purchased calves*

When a cow is purchased with a "calf at side," twenty percent of the purchase price is allocated to the calf. An additional \$50 is allocated to the calf every six months for the first eighteen months. At eighteen months of age, the cows are considered mature enough for breeding and are then either sold or placed in the breeding herd and depreciated.

*Raised calves*

Since the mother is maintained principally for breeding and is expected to produce one calf each year, the calf birthed and raised is allocated one year's depreciation of the mother, plus \$50 at birth. An additional \$50 is allocated every six months for the first eighteen months.

The problem of valuing the cattle is compounded by the fact that cattle purchased for breeding and those purchased for sale are not separated, and any cow may be sold at any time. What improvements could be made in the pricing scheme, and how should the breeding herd and the herd held for sale be shown on the balance sheet?

*Reply*—Rather than setting an average breeding life of seven years for the breeding herd, it would appear more reasonable to set an estimated age at which a cow should be fully depreciated and to depreciate the cost of each cow over the remaining estimated years of life. Also, instead of allocating twenty percent of the purchase price of the cow to the calf “at side,” it would be better to determine the percent applicable to the calf on the basis of the number of expected additional calves for that cow.

In valuing the calves, if the \$50 figure is a reasonable estimate of six months of costs, the method seems reasonable. However, instead of allocating one year's depreciation of the mother plus \$50 at birth, it might be better to allocate only the depreciation plus the direct expenses of birth such as veterinarian's fees, etc.

Since it is difficult to determine which of the cattle are “inventory” and which are “fixed assets,” it might not be appropriate in this case to classify the assets and liabilities as current or long-term in the balance sheet.

**.07 Costs of Ski Slopes and Lifts**

*Inquiry*—A company has developed a piece of land into a skiing resort. The company has cut the trees, cleared and graded the land and hills, and constructed ski lifts and platter pulls.

Should the tree cutting, land clearing, and grading costs of constructing the ski slopes be capitalized to land? If so, are these costs amortizable?

Should the clearing and grading costs connected with the construction of the ski lifts and platter pulls be capitalized to this equipment and depreciated?

*Reply*—All expenditures incurred which are made for the purpose of making the land suitable for its intended use or purpose (whether that use be for the construction of a ski lodge, lifts, slopes, platter pulls, or other facilities) are properly capitalizable as land costs, and land is not subject to depreciation. During the course of clearing the land to make it useful for the purpose acquired, salable timber may be recovered, and since the clearing costs are capital items, amounts realized from the sale of the timber may properly be credited to the land account. Recurring maintenance of right-of-way (i.e., the slope and ski-lift areas) would be properly treated as a period cost.

**.08 Restaurant Dishes and Silverware**

*Inquiry*—Should a base stock inventory of silverware and dishes be shown on the balance sheet of a restaurant as a fixed asset? In the base stock method, the base stock is recorded at an unchanging amount and additions to the stock are charged to expenses for the period. Inasmuch as fixed assets are specific items which are subject to depreciation (except land), and the base stock is an approximate figure for many items and is not depreciated, it would seem that the base stock should not be classified as a fixed asset.

*Reply*—Various publications recommending treatment for large stocks of short-lived, replaceable assets such as silverware and dishes indicate that the assets should be valued on the basis of physical inventories at year-end, with used equipment being valued at 50 percent of current cost, and unused equipment valued at full cost. This, in effect, assigns an average useful life of two years for the equipment. It is recommended that such assets be included in fixed assets.

The classification in the balance sheet should not depend upon the method of valuing the assets. Therefore, regardless of the method of valuation, the assets should be included in fixed assets. If the valuation differs materially from the depreciated cost of individual goods on hand at year-end, the presentation is not in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

### **.15 Capitalization of Cost of Dredging Log Pond**

*Inquiry*—Corporation A operates a log pond and dredged the pond during the year at a cost of \$350,000. Thus, the useful life of the log pond was extended several years. Should the dredging cost be expensed or capitalized?

*Reply*—FASB Concept No. 6, *Elements of Financial Statements—a replacement of FASB Concepts Statement No. 3 (incorporating an amendment of FASB Concepts Statement No. 2)*, paragraph 149 states, in part, “. . . many assets yield their benefits to an entity over several periods . . . . Expenses resulting from their use are normally allocated to the periods of their estimated useful lives (the periods over which they are expected to provide benefits) by a ‘systematic and rational’ allocation procedure, for example, by recognizing depreciation or other amortization.”

Since the dredging cost will benefit future periods, Corporation A should capitalize the cost and amortize it in a systematic and rational manner over the estimated period of benefit.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.18 Revaluation of Assets**

*Inquiry*—Company A acquired a material amount of treasury stock resulting in a stockholders’ equity deficit. Since state law (where Company A is incorporated) prohibits the impairment of legal capital, Company A revalued certain of its assets at fair market value. Should Company A record depreciation for the revalued assets based on historical cost or fair market value?

*Reply*—An opinion expressed on the financial statements of Company A should be qualified or adverse because the write-up of assets is a departure from generally accepted accounting principles.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.20 Compounding Capitalized Interest**

*Inquiry*—Company A is constructing a building for its own use. The company capitalized interest cost on the average amount of accumulated expenditures for the asset during the current year end. The building was completed in the next year. Should the company capitalize interest on the average amount of expenditures for the assets that were made during the current period only or the average amount of accumulated expenditures for the asset during the period including the expenditures made in the prior period, which already includes capitalized interest cost?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 835-20-30-3 states, in part:

The amount capitalized in an accounting period shall be determined by applying the capitalization rate to the average amount of accumulated expenditures for the asset during the period.

FASB ASC 835-20-35-3 further states:

The compounding of capitalized interest is conceptually consistent with the conclusion that interest on expenditures for the asset is a cost of acquiring the asset.

Accordingly, the rate should be applied to the average of all the accumulated expenditures.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.25 Capitalization of Interest Costs Incurred by Subsidiary**

*Inquiry*—A subsidiary with an asset qualifying for interest capitalization under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 835, *Interest*, incurs its entire interest cost from a loan from its parent.

What is the extent of interest that may be appropriately capitalized?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 835-20-30-3 states, in part: “the amount capitalized in an accounting period shall be determined by applying the capitalization rate to the average amount of accumulated expenditures for the asset during the period.” FASB ASC 835-20-30-6 further states

The total amount of interest cost capitalized in an accounting period shall not exceed the total amount of interest cost incurred by the entity in that period. In consolidated financial statements, that limitation shall be applied by reference to the total amount of interest cost incurred by the parent entity and consolidated subsidiaries on a consolidated basis. In any separately issued financial statements of a parent entity or a consolidated subsidiary and in the financial statements (whether separately issued or not) of unconsolidated subsidiaries and other investees accounted for by the equity method, the limitation shall be applied by reference to the total amount of interest cost (including interest on intra-entity borrowings) incurred by the separate entity.

Such financial statements should disclose related party transactions as required by FASB ASC 850, *Related Party Disclosures*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.27 Construction of Asset—Foreign Currency Transaction Gains/Losses**

*Inquiry*—A company is constructing a building in the United States for its own use. In order to finance the cost of the building, a loan denominated in a foreign currency is obtained from a bank in a foreign country. The company is appropriately capitalizing interest incurred as part of the cost of the building in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 835, *Interest*. However, the company wants to also capitalize as part of the cost of the building any foreign currency transaction gains or losses it incurs as a result of the loan with the bank in the foreign country. The company's rationale is that the transaction gains or losses

relate specifically to the building and therefore should be considered part of the cost of the building. Is this appropriate?

*Reply*—No. According to FASB ASC glossary, *foreign currency transactions* are transactions whose terms are denominated in a currency other than the entity's functional currency. Foreign currency transactions arise when a reporting entity does any of the following:

- a. Buys or sells on credit goods or services whose prices are denominated in foreign currency
- b. Borrows or lends funds and the amounts payable or receivable are denominated in foreign currency
- c. Is a party to an unperformed forward exchange contract
- d. For other reasons, acquires or disposes of assets, or incurs or settles liabilities denominated in foreign currency.

FASB ASC 830-20-05-2 states:

Foreign currency transactions may produce receivables or payables that are fixed in terms of the amount of foreign currency that will be received or paid.

FASB ASC 830-20-35-1 further states:

A change in exchange rates between the functional currency and the currency in which a transaction is denominated increases or decreases the expected amount of functional currency cash flows upon settlement of the transaction. That increase or decrease in expected functional currency cash flows is a foreign currency transaction gain or loss that generally shall be included in determining net income for the period in which the exchange rate changes.

Thus, even though the loan was obtained to construct the building, the transaction gains and losses are not part of the cost of the building, but are a result of the change in the exchange rate and are included in income each period in which the exchange rate fluctuates.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.28 Accounting for Certain Liquidated Damages**

*Inquiry*—"Liquidated damages" represent contractual payments to a buyer of property, plant, and equipment (PP&E) for the nondelivery or noncompletion of construction of PP&E by a stated completion date. The amount is specified in advance by contract—for example, a stated amount per day of delay—rather than a computation of actual losses of the buyer caused by the delay. Liquidated damages are negotiated to represent compensation for a reasonable estimate of the buyer's costs associated with a delay. Liquidated damages are specified in advance in order to eliminate the need for possibly contentious after-the-fact negotiations about actual costs incurred. How should a buyer of PP&E account for liquidated damages, as defined above?

*Reply*—Because the buyer does not provide the payer of the damages with an identifiable benefit in exchange for the payment, a buyer typically records liquidated damages as a reduction of the payments it has made to the vendor for the PP&E (that is, a reduction of the cost of the PP&E). Amounts of liquidated damages in excess of the total cost of PP&E would be recognized by the buyer as income.

The basis for this reply is Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 605-50. The underlying principle in FASB ASC 605-50 is that unless the customer provides the vendor with an identifiable benefit, the payment received from the vendor is a reduction of the purchase price of the goods purchased from the vendor—that is, a return of amounts paid.

Contracts between a buyer and provider of PP&E could be drafted in two ways—with a realistic completion date and contract price with liquidated damages for late delivery, or with a pessimistic completion date and a bargain contract price with a bonus for early delivery. The accounting for liquidated damages, as noted in this reply, results in the same accounting for the buyer regardless of how the contract is drafted.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 1261.]

## Section 2220

### Long-Term Investments

#### **.01 Equity Method When Current Direct Ownership Less Than Twenty Percent**

*Inquiry*—Company A purchased a 19 percent stock ownership interest in B. The company also made a loan to B which is convertible into stock of B and is secured by shares of C (B's subsidiary). For as long as the loan is outstanding, Company A will have several seats on B's board. The company also has options to purchase shares of C.

Is the company required to report its investment in B under the equity method?

*Reply*—Paragraphs 6 and 8 of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 323-10-15 state that the ability to exercise the type of influence contemplated in FASB ASC 323, *Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures*, may be indicated in several ways such as representation on the board of directors and investment (direct or indirect) of 20 percent or more in the voting stock of an investee.

The company would own only 19 percent of the outstanding voting stock. Although it is not indicated whether the conversion feature of the loan may result in ownership of 20 percent or more, or whether the board seats would allow A to significantly influence the voting at meetings of B's board of directors, the overall impact of the proposed transaction could demonstrate that the company has the ability to exercise significant influence over the investee. Therefore, the equity method should be followed in accounting for the investment.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.03 Equity Method for Investee Following Completed Contract Method**

*Inquiry*—A client, a contractor who follows the percentage of completion method for income recognition, has entered into a joint venture. The joint venture follows the completed contract method in its financial statements. The client accounts for his investment in the joint venture on the equity basis. May the client recognize his share of the venture's income (determined on the percentage of completion method) even though the venture will not recognize income until the contract is completed?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary defines the terms *earnings or losses of an investee* and *financial position of an investee* as “net income (or net loss) of an investee determined in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles” and “financial position of an investee determined in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles,” respectively.

Both the completed contract method and the percentage of completion method are generally accepted, and the investor should not change the investee's method of accounting from completed contract to percentage of completion in applying the equity method. If the investee's financial statements are prepared on a comprehensive basis of accounting other than GAAP, the investor should eliminate material variances from GAAP in applying the equity method, in accordance with FASB ASC 970-323-35-20.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.05 Assuming Pro Rata Share of Venture's Revenues and Expenses**

*Inquiry*—A company has entered into a joint venture with another venturer. Would it be permissible for the company to include in its income its pro rata share of each of the revenue and expense accounts of the venture?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 323-10-45-1 states:

Under the equity method, an investment in common stock shall be shown in the balance sheet of an investor as a single amount. Likewise, an investor's share of earnings or losses from its investment shall be shown in its income statement as a single amount except for the extraordinary items as specified in the following paragraph.

However, FASB ASC 810-10-45-14, relating to accounting for investments in unincorporated joint ventures states, in part:

If the investor-venturer owns an undivided interest in each asset and is proportionately liable for its share of each liability, the provisions of paragraph 323-10-45-1 may not apply in some industries. For example, in certain industries the investor-venturer may account in its financial statements for its *pro rata* share of the assets, liabilities, revenues, and expenses of the venture.

Guidance for transactions of this type relating to real estate can be found in FASB ASC 970-323-25-12 and FASB ASC 970-810-45-1.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.08 Acquisition of Subsidiaries by Exchange of Assets With No Book Value**

*Inquiry*—A client, a computer services company, acquired fifty percent of the capital stock of a corporation in exchange for rights to computer programs. The cost of these programs had been expensed by the client. Another party acquired the remaining fifty percent of the stock for \$150,000. The client recorded this transaction as a debit to investments in subsidiaries and a credit to earnings of \$150,000.

A similar transaction, an exchange of rights to computer programs for capital stock with a stated value of \$200,000, occurred later. Investments in subsidiaries was debited and earnings was credited for \$200,000.

The subsidiaries are accounted for under the equity method.

Can the earnings recorded on the exchange of expensed computer programs for common stock be reflected in parent company financial statements, or do generally accepted accounting principles require elimination?

*Reply* —Intra-entity profit eliminations under the equity method is discussed in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 323-10-35-8 and states, in part, "All intra-entity transactions are eliminated in consolidation under that Subtopic, but under the equity method intra-entity profits or losses are normally eliminated only on assets still remaining on the books of an investor or an investee."

FASB ASC 323, *Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures*, indicates that the intercompany gain (\$150,000 and \$200,000) recorded by the investor company would be eliminated under the equity method.

In the second case, measuring the value of the computer programs by the \$200,000 stated value of the stock may not be appropriate, and the auditor should try to satisfy himself concerning the estimated values assigned to the tangible and intangible assets contributed by the other stockholders. (See FASB ASC 323, FASB ASC 350, *Intangibles—Goodwill and Other*, and FASB ASC 805, *Business Combinations*.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.12 Investor's Share of Losses in Excess of Its Investment**

*Inquiry*—Company A's share of the losses of a real estate venture exceeds its investment in the venture. How should Company A account for its investment?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 970-323 recommends that the equity method be used to account for investments in corporate or noncorporate real estate ventures. Paragraphs 19–22 of FASB ASC 323-10-35 state, in part:

An investor's share of losses of an investee may equal or exceed the carrying amount of an investment accounted for by the equity method plus advances made by the investor. The investor ordinarily shall discontinue applying the equity method if the investment (and net advances) is reduced to zero and shall not provide for additional losses unless the investor has guaranteed obligations of the investee or is otherwise committed to provide further financial support for the investee. An investor shall, however, provide for additional losses if the imminent return to profitable operations by an investee appears to be assured. For example, a material, nonrecurring loss of an isolated nature may reduce an investment below zero even though the underlying profitable operating pattern of an investee is unimpaired. If the investee subsequently reports net income, the investor shall resume applying the equity method only after its share of that net income equals the share of net losses not recognized during the period the equity method was suspended.

Accordingly, the investor should reflect its investment at a zero amount and disclose in a note to the financial statements the amount of its share of investee losses in excess of the zero amount.

If the investor is committed to provide further financial support to the investee, the investor should show the excess of its share of investee losses over its investment and advances as a liability up to the amount of its commitment.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.13 A Change in Circumstances Using the Equity Method of Accounting for an Investment**

*Inquiry*—An investor had guaranteed obligations of an investee and the investor's share of losses of this investee have exceeded the carrying amount of the investment on the investor's book in a prior year. This procedure is in accordance with paragraphs 19–22 of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 323-10-35. In the current year, the investee fully paid the obligation which was guaranteed by the investor; accordingly, the investor will no longer guarantee the obligations of the investee and, therefore, will not record its share of the investee's losses.

- (1) Does this constitute a change of accounting principle?
- (2) How should the liability recorded on the investor's books be accounted for?

*Reply*—(1) This is not a change in accounting principle. According to FASB ASC 250-10-45-1, an “adoption or modification of an accounting principle necessitated by transactions or events that are clearly different in substance from those previously occurring” is not a change in accounting principle. The situation described is a change in circumstances and not a change in accounting principle.

(2) The liability recorded on the investor's books should be reversed in the current year and reported in the income statement with appropriate footnote disclosure.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.15 Accounting for Distribution From Joint Venture**

*Inquiry*—A corporation invests in a joint venture which is involved in real estate. The joint venture is a corporation and it is not controlled by the corporate investor. It accounts for this investment in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 323, *Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures*. The joint venture incurred losses over the next few years. That resulted in the investment account on the corporation's books to decline to zero. At this point, the joint venture paid the corporation a cash distribution. How should the corporation account for this distribution?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 323 states that the investor ordinarily shall discontinue applying the equity method when the investment (and net advances) is reduced to zero and shall not provide for additional losses unless the investor has guaranteed obligations of the investee or is otherwise committed to provide financial support for the investee.

In this situation, the corporate investor in the joint venture should account for the cash distributions received as income if the distribution is not refundable by agreement or by law and the investor is not liable for the obligations of the joint venture and is not otherwise committed to provide financial support to the joint venture.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.17 Tax Basis Accounting—Use of Equity Method**

*Inquiry*—Can an investor who prepares its financial statements in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) use the equity method of accounting for an investment in the common stock of an investee that presents its financial statements on the income tax basis of accounting if the investment would otherwise qualify for the equity method?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 323-10-35-4 states, in part:

Under the equity method, an investor shall recognize its share of the earnings or losses of an investee in the periods for which they are reported by the investee in its financial statements.

FASB ASC glossary defines the term *earnings or losses of an investee* as the “net income (or net loss) of an investee determined in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.”

If the investment qualifies for equity method accounting, the investor must adjust the investee’s tax basis financial statements to GAAP basis to determine its share of earnings or losses. If the adjustment cannot be determined, and the amounts are material, it would be considered a GAAP exception.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 1361.]



## Section 2230

### ***Noncurrent Receivables***

#### **.02 Balance Sheet Classification of Deposit on Equipment to Be Purchased**

*Inquiry*—What is the appropriate balance sheet classification of a deposit on machinery which is to be purchased within one year?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 210-10-45-4 states, in part:

The concept of the nature of current assets contemplates the exclusion from that classification of such resources as the following:

- a* Cash and claims to cash that are restricted as to withdrawal or use for other than current operations, are designated for expenditure in the acquisition or construction of noncurrent assets, or are segregated for the liquidation of long-term debts.

Accordingly, the deposit on equipment should be classified as a noncurrent asset even though the equipment will be purchased within one year.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 1391.]



## Section 2240

### Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance

#### .01 Balance Sheet Classification of Life Insurance Policy Loan

*Inquiry*—A company has secured a short-term loan from an insurance company against the cash surrender value of its life insurance policies.

In Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 210-10-45-4(d), cash surrender value of life insurance policies is excluded from the classification of a current asset. This reference does not appear to recommend a different classification if the cash value may have been fully borrowed from the insurance company.

Is it proper to classify a readily liquid asset as noncurrent and simultaneously show the related borrowings as a current liability?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 210-10-45-4 states, in part:

This concept of the nature of current assets contemplates the exclusion from that classification of such resources as . . . (d) cash surrender value of life insurance policies.

FASB ASC 210-10-45-9(d) states, in part:

Loans accompanied by pledge of life insurance policies would be classified as current liabilities if, by their terms or by intent, they are to be repaid within 12 months. The pledging of life insurance policies does not affect the classification of the asset any more than does the pledging of receivables, inventories, real estate, or other assets as collateral for a short-term loan. However, when a loan on a life insurance policy is obtained from the insurance entity with the intent that it will not be paid but will be liquidated by deduction from the proceeds of the policy upon maturity or cancellation, the obligation shall be excluded from current liabilities.

FASB ASC 210-20-05-1 states, in part:

It is a general principle of accounting that the offsetting of assets and liabilities in the balance sheet is improper except if a right of setoff exists.

Therefore, if a company takes out policy loans from the insurance company on life insurance policies which it owns and if there is no intention to repay the loan during the ensuing operating cycle of the business, such loan may be excluded from current liabilities. Furthermore, as the owner of a policy normally has the right to offset the loan against the proceeds received on maturity or cancellation of the policy, it is appropriate to apply the amount of the loan in reduction of the cash surrender value, with disclosure of the amount so offset.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .02 Disclosure of Life Insurance on Principal Stockholders

*Inquiry*—A client corporation maintains life insurance policies on its principal stockholders which will provide for the repurchase of the stock in the event of a stockholder's death. The cash surrender value of these policies appears on the balance sheet. Is further disclosure necessary?

*Reply*—The rule of informative disclosure requires that the essential facts respecting firm commitments for purchase of a corporation's own stock pursuant to a buy-sell agreement, be set forth in a footnote to the financial statements.

Below is an example of a footnote describing such a situation which might appear on the balance sheet in reference to the cash surrender value account:

The company is the owner and beneficiary of key-man life insurance policies carried on the lives of X, Y, and Z bearing face value amounts of \$500,000, \$500,000 and \$450,000 respectively. No loans are outstanding against the policies, but there is no restriction in the policy regarding loans.

The life insurance contracts are accompanied by mandatory stock purchase agreements to the amount of the proceeds of the life insurance. In the event of the insured's death, the "fair market value" of the stock will, by previous action, be established by the X Appraisal Company. The insured's estate will be obligated to sell, and the company will be obligated to purchase the insured's stock up to the appraisal value of the stock or the proceeds of insurance, whichever is the lesser. The purpose is to protect the company against an abrupt change in ownership or management.

### **.03 Omission of Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance from Assets**

*Inquiry*—Clearly, cash surrender values of life insurance may be included among the assets in the balance sheet of an enterprise. Is this mandatory, or may management elect to omit this item from the assets on the theory that its inclusion will be misleading since the insurance is carried for the purpose of covering the loss it is anticipated will be sustained as a result of the death of a key official?

*Reply*—If the enterprise retains all valuable contract rights incident to ownership of the life insurance policy, then it is mandatory from the standpoint of full accountability to reflect the asset status of the cash surrender value of the policy. Not to reflect the cash surrender value would be tantamount to creating a hidden reserve which would be contrary to generally accepted accounting principles.

### **.04 Corporation's Policy on Life of Debtor Corporation's Officer**

*Inquiry*—A client took out a straight life insurance policy on the life of an officer of another corporation which is indebted to the client. The client corporation hopes to receive the proceeds of the insurance policy tax free and has not deducted the yearly premium payments as expenses. The officer is over 65 years old, and, therefore, there is a great possibility he will die prior to the full payment of the outstanding balance of the corporation's debt. The prior CPA reported the accumulated premium payments on the Balance Sheet as "Investment in Life Insurance."

Is it proper to show total premiums paid as an investment under these circumstances?

*Reply*—Where a corporation takes out a life insurance policy on the life of a debtor corporation's officer (assuming that there is an insurable interest), the manner of accounting for the premiums should not differ from the manner of accounting for premiums paid on the life of the corporation's own officer. The premiums should be broken down between the expense and the cash surrender value elements. Accordingly, the accumulated premiums account should be analyzed to determine the cash surrender value as at the balance sheet date,

the expense portion for the period under audit, and the remaining portion which should be treated as a correction of prior period earnings. See Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 250, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*, for a discussion of correction of an error.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 1451.]



## Section 2250

### *Intangible Assets*

#### **.06 Accounting Treatment of Agreements Not to Compete**

*Inquiry*—A company enters into an agreement with an outgoing officer whereby the company will make future periodic payments to the officer in return for the officer's agreement not to compete with the company for the period coinciding with the payments.

Would it be appropriate for the company to record a liability for the total future payments to the former officer and a corresponding intangible asset for the covenant?

*Reply*—The authoritative literature does not provide specific guidance for the treatment of executory contracts, which require future consideration upon the occurrence of certain events.

FASB Concept No. 6, *Elements of Financial Statements*—a replacement of *FASB Concepts Statement No. 3 (incorporating an amendment of FASB Concepts Statement No. 2)*, paragraph 36 specifies that a characteristic of a liability is that “the transaction or other event obligating the entity has already happened.” Because the event that gives rise to the company's obligation is the former officer's forbearance from competition, many accountants believe that the transaction should be recorded prospectively, as the payments are “earned” by the former officer. They would disclose the contractual obligation as a commitment in the company's notes to its financial statements.

FASB Concept No. 6 paragraph 26 provides that a characteristic of an asset is that “it embodies a probable future benefit.” Accordingly, the company would only record an intangible asset if the payment to the former officer preceded the period of forbearance.

---

[The next page is 1501.]



## Section 2260

### ***Other Assets***

#### **.03 Legal Expenses Incurred to Defend Patent Infringement Suit**

*Inquiry*—A company is sued for patent infringement. Should the cost to defend the patent be capitalized or expensed?

*Reply*—The choice of capitalizing or expensing depends on the outcome of the lawsuit. FASB Concept No. 6, *Elements of Financial Statements—a replacement of FASB Concepts Statement No. 3 (incorporating an amendment of FASB Concepts Statement No. 2)*, paragraph 247 states “. . . the legal and other costs of successfully defending a patent from infringement are ‘deferred legal costs’ only in the sense that they are part of the cost of retaining and obtaining the future economic benefit of the patent.”

If defense of the patent lawsuit is successful, costs may be capitalized to the extent of an evident increase in the value of the patent. Legal costs which relate to an unsuccessful outcome should be expensed.

---

[The next page is 1801.]



# TIS Section 3000

## LIABILITIES AND DEFERRED CREDITS

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Section

3100	Current Liabilities
	.01 Estimated Liability for Unemployment Claims
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Accounting for Possible Refunds of Leasing Fees
	.04 Date for Accrual of Tax Penalties
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	.09 Accrual for Employer Co-Insurance Arrangements
	.10 Compensated Absences
3200	Long-Term Debt
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Amortization Period for Placement Fee When Mortgage Refinanced [Amended]
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	.09 Financial Statement Presentation of "Pay Any Day" Loans
	.10 Determining the Allocation for Lease Payments for a Lease Capitalized at Fair Market Value
	.11 Effect of Sales Taxes on the Determination of Present Value of Minimum Lease Payments
	.12 Balance Sheet Classification of Revolving Line of Credit
	.13 Uncertainty Arising From Violation of Debt Agreement
	[.14] Reserved
	.15 Disclosure of Five-Year Maturities on Long-Term Debt
	.16 Amortization of Premium or Discount in Investment Securities With an Early Call Date
	.17 Disclosure of Covenant Violation and Subsequent Bank Waiver

*Section*

3400	Contingent Liabilities
	.01 Contested Liability
	.02 Disclosure of Agreement Between Corporation and Its Shareholders
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Accounting for Issuance of Cents Off Coupons
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
3500	Commitments
	.01 Accounting for Contract to Cut Timber [Amended]
	.02 Liability Under Foreign Bank's Letter of Payment Guarantee
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Recognition of Losses on Purchase Commitments
	.05 Letters of Credit [Amended]
	.06 Covenants Imposed by Loan Agreements [Amended]
	.07 Disclosure of Unused Lines of Credit [Amended]
3600	Deferred Credits
	.01 Balance Sheet Presentation of Unearned Revenue
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved

---

[The next page is 1821.]

## Section 3100

### Current Liabilities

#### .01 Estimated Liability for Unemployment Claims

*Inquiry*—Under state law, a corporation has a choice of the method to pay unemployment insurance contributions. The corporation may pay a percentage of gross wages or may reimburse the state employment commission directly for actual unemployment claims. A client chose to reimburse the state for the actual claims which may arise. If no claims against the client are filed, may the client record an expense and a liability for unemployment claims?

*Reply*—The estimated unemployment insurance costs should be accrued currently based on the client's estimated or past history of unemployment. Unemployment insurance cost should be related to the period worked by the employees. Not recording unemployment costs until claims are actually filed would result in a mismatching of revenues and expenses. Such an approach would be unacceptable under generally accepted accounting principles.

#### .03 Accounting for Possible Refunds of Leasing Fees

*Inquiry*—A company franchises distributorships for home and office oxygen inhalator units. The licensees lease the units from the company and pay an initial leasing fee for each unit before receipt of the unit. As stipulated in the franchise agreement, the licensee is entitled to a refund, upon termination of the franchise agreement and return of the units, of a specified amount of the initial leasing fee depending on the period of time that the units are leased out. When units are returned they can usually be redistributed with little or no repair. Is there a liability for the return of a portion of the initial leasing fees?

*Reply*—The returned units can usually be redistributed with little or no repair. Therefore, accounting for these units would be similar to accounting for returnable containers. Because the licensee pays the initial leasing fee prior to delivery of the units, there is no receivable to be offset by an "allowance account" for the estimated refunds, and so the amounts for estimated refunds should be shown as a liability.

#### .04 Date for Accrual of Tax Penalties

*Inquiry*—A company has received certain billings from the federal government for interest and penalties for late filing of federal withholding taxes. Some of these notices were received prior to the balance sheet date, while other notices were received after the balance sheet date, but in either case they apply to periods prior to the balance sheet date. Should liabilities for the interest and penalties be shown on the balance sheet?

*Reply*—Paragraph .03 of AU section 560, *Subsequent Events* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states, in part:

All information that becomes available prior to the issuance of the financial statements should be used by management in its evaluation of the conditions on which the estimates were based. The financial statements should be adjusted for any changes in estimates resulting from the use of such evidence.

Therefore, provision should be made for any billings received for penalties on late filing of federal withholding taxes which were required to be filed prior to the balance sheet date. Similarly, any such interest should be provided for up

to the balance sheet date. Interest accrued subsequent thereto would be an expense of the following period.

### **.09 Accrual for Employer Co-Insurance Arrangements**

*Inquiry*—A company pays for the medical expenses of its active employees but purchased “stop-gap” or “excess of loss” insurance to cover medical expenses exceeding \$10,000, lifetime benefit, per employee. What amount, if any, should the company accrue to cover its liability?

*Reply*—Although Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 450, *Contingencies*, excludes employment-related costs, that accounting guidance may be appropriate for this situation. FASB ASC 450-20-25-2 states that an accrual for a loss contingency is required if the loss is probable and the amount of the loss can be reasonably estimated. Medical expenses incurred by the employee during the reporting period should be accrued. This includes expenses incurred during the reporting period but submitted after the balance sheet date. The accrual should be based on all relevant data (including statistical data), the company’s historical experience, and its expectations of the future. Some of this data may be available from insurance administrators or actuaries.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.10 Compensated Absences**

*Inquiry*—A company with a June 30 year end has a sick pay policy that states that an employee employed for at least three months is entitled to ten sick days annually. The employee is entitled to these days as of January 1 and any unused sick days as of December 31, are paid to these workers. Should the company accrue a liability as of June 30 for the unused sick days of these workers?

*Reply*—Yes. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 710, *Compensation—General*, indicates that sick pay that is customarily paid even though the absence from work is not actually the result of an illness, should not be considered sick pay in applying the provisions of paragraphs 6–7 of FASB ASC 710-10-25. In considering necessity for making an accrual, the four criteria in FASB ASC 710-10-25-1 should be considered.

In determining the amount of the accrual, the guidance in FASB ASC 450, *Contingencies*, concerning the probability of future payment should be considered. Specifically, the company should consider its payment history and employee turnover in calculating the accrual.

In this example, if an employee had taken three days through June 30, the remaining accrual would be seven days. If this example were modified, and the days were earned on a pro rata basis throughout the year, the company would record a liability for the expected payment to be made to the employee for only the accumulated right through June 30. With the same three days taken through June 30, the company would have an accrual for the remaining two days in the June 30 financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 2021.]



## Section 3200

### Long-Term Debt

#### .06 Amortization Period for Placement Fee When Mortgage Refinanced

*Inquiry*—A company paid a \$100,000 mortgage placement fee for an eighteen year mortgage. Ten months later, it became apparent that a refinancing of a significantly larger mortgage would be needed. The company negotiated a commitment with a bank for a larger mortgage to be placed one year from the date of this agreement. At the time of the commitment, in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 350, *Intangibles—Goodwill and Other*, which deals with intangible assets, the company reduced the amortization period of the placement fee to the expected remaining period of the original mortgage.

Two months before the closing date of the original mortgage, at which time almost the entire prepaid mortgage fee had been amortized, the bank was unable to make the loan and exercised an option to extend the closing date of the old mortgage and the placement date of the new mortgage for six more months.

Should the amortization period now be extended to the new settlement date?

*Reply*—The mortgage placement fee should not be viewed as an intangible asset but as a deferred charge under FASB ASC 835, *Interest*. It is an amortizable cost incurred to secure the mortgage.

The unamortized amount of the fee at the time when the bank exercises the option should be amortized over the remaining six month period. The reasons for the exercise of the option do not change the fact that the period benefited has been extended. The change should be treated as a change in accounting estimate, in accordance with FASB ASC 250, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*. If the new mortgage is placed before the end of the six month option period, any balance of the fee should then be written off in accordance with FASB ASC 470-50 and FASB ASC 470-50-45-1, which deal with early extinguishment of debt.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .09 Financial Statement Presentation of “Pay Any Day” Loans

*Inquiry*—Corporation A finances its purchases of equipment through “pay any day” loans. Under this type of financing arrangement, the borrower signs a note and security agreement which sets forth the amount financed, the finance charge, and the amount of monthly payment. This instrument differs from a conditional sales contract or “add-on” loan. The “add-on” loan is a contract calling for a specified number of payments, including interest, and therefore the liability is the total amount to be repaid over the life of the contract; whereas, the “pay any day” loan, or note and security agreement is a simple interest loan and the agreement shows the finance charge in order to disclose the amount of interest that will be paid if each installment payment is made on its exact due date.

What is the appropriate financial statement presentation of “pay any day” loans?

*Reply*—A “pay any day” loan can be recorded and reported in the financial statements at its face amount plus accrued interest because it is in effect a term loan with interest charged at the current rate. The amount of the loan, if any, expected to be paid within one year would be shown as a current liability.

#### **.10 Determining the Allocation for Lease Payments for a Lease Capitalized at Fair Market Value**

*Inquiry*—According to Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 840-30-30-1, a lessee accounting for a capital lease, records an asset and an obligation equal to the present value of the minimum lease payments at the beginning of the lease term, excluding any portion of the payments which represent executory costs (such as insurance and taxes) which will be paid by the lessor. However, if this amount is greater than the fair market value of the leased property, the amount recorded as the asset and obligation should be fair market value. When the asset and obligation are recorded at the fair market value, since the interest rate is not known, how should the amount for the lease payments be recorded?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 840-30-35-6 states that during the lease term, each minimum lease payment shall be allocated between a reduction of the obligation and interest expense so as to produce a constant periodic rate of interest on the remaining balance of the obligation. This is the “interest” method described in paragraphs 2–3 of FASB ASC 835-30-35.

When the asset to be recorded based on the present value of the minimum lease payments exceeds the fair market value of the asset, it is usually because the incremental borrowing rate used to determine present value is lower than the interest rate implicit in the lease.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.11 Effect of Sales Taxes on the Determination of Present Value of Minimum Lease Payments**

*Inquiry*—A company leases a machine for \$14,000 a month for 72 months. The monthly invoice received from the lessor includes the stipulated monthly rent plus a charge for state sales taxes. The lease does not meet the 90 percent criterion of a capital lease (i.e., the present value of the minimum lease payments excluding executory costs equals or exceeds 90 percent of the fair value of the leased property) if sales taxes are excluded from minimum lease payments. The criterion is met if both the rent and sales taxes are included as minimum lease payments.

Should the minimum lease payments include sales taxes?

*Reply*—Practice in this area varies. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 840-10-25 describes, in part, minimum lease payments as the payments that the lessee is obligated to make or can be required to make in connection with the leased property. However, the lessee’s obligation to pay (apart from rental payments) executory costs such as insurance, maintenance, and taxes in connection with leased property are excluded. Many accountants interpret this to mean that all taxes, including sales taxes, levied on lease payments are considered executory costs since the lessor is merely acting as a collection agent for the taxing authority.

Other accountants believe that only taxes other than sales taxes (such as property taxes) should be excluded from the minimum lease payments because sales taxes are often capitalized as part of the cost of purchased assets. FASB ASC 840-10-10-1 states that the criteria are derived from the concept that a

lease that transfers substantially all of the benefits and risks incident to ownership should be accounted for as the acquisition of an asset and the incurrence of an obligation.

Because the authoritative pronouncements do not specifically address whether sales taxes should be included as part of minimum lease payments, practice varies and should be determined by the company's general policy for accounting for sales taxes on purchased assets.

Regardless of which approach is used, in order to properly apply the 90 percent test referred to in FASB ASC 840-10-25-1(d), the components of the numerator and denominator should be the same. For example, if the sales taxes are included as part of the minimum lease payments (the numerator) then the sales taxes should be included in the fair value of the leased asset (the denominator).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.12 Balance Sheet Classification of Revolving Line of Credit**

*Inquiry*—A company has a revolving line of credit with a bank. The company is only required to make monthly interest payments. No principal payments are required. In the event the credit line is terminated, the principal is due 12 months after the date of termination.

Should the principal amount be classified as current or long-term in a classified balance sheet?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 210-10-45-9 states that liabilities whose regular and ordinary liquidation is expected to occur within a relatively short period of time, usually 12 months, are intended for inclusion in the current liability classification. If the line of credit has not been terminated at the balance sheet date, the principal amount should be classified as long-term, unless the company intends to repay the outstanding debt within 12 months.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.13 Uncertainty Arising From Violation of Debt Agreement**

*Inquiry*—At the end of 20X1, a company was in violation of its long-term debt covenant and was unable to obtain a waiver from the bank. It therefore reclassified its debt to current and appropriate footnote disclosures were made. During 20X2, the violation was cured. What is the proper classification of the debt in the company's 20X2 comparative financial statements?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) ASC 470-10-45-11 states that:

Current liabilities shall include long-term obligations that are or will be callable by the creditor either because the debtor's violation of a provision of the debt agreement at the balance sheet date makes the obligation callable or because the violation, if not cured within a specified grace period, will make the obligation callable. Accordingly, such callable obligations shall be classified as current liabilities unless either of the following conditions is met:

- a. The creditor has waived or subsequently lost (for example, the debtor has cured the violation after the balance sheet date and the obligation is not callable at the time the financial statements are issued) the right to demand repayment for more than one year (or

operating cycle, if longer) from the balance sheet date. If the obligation is callable because of violations of certain provisions of the debt agreement, the creditor needs to waive its right with regard only to those violations.

- b. For long-term obligations containing a grace period within which the debtor may cure the violation, it is probable that the violation will be cured within that period, thus preventing the obligation from becoming callable.

Since the violation was cured in 20X2, the debt should be classified as long-term in the 20X2 financial statements. The debt should not be reclassified to long term in the 20X1 financial statements because it was a current liability based on the facts existing at the 20X1 balance sheet date.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.15 Disclosure of Five-Year Maturities on Long-Term Debt**

*Inquiry*—A company entered into a 10-year loan agreement with a lender. The mortgage note contains a variable interest rate based on prime plus one percent. In accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 440, *Commitments*, the company will disclose the maturities on the debt for each of the next five succeeding years. Should the disclosure include principal and interest?

*Reply*—No. The required disclosure of the amount of scheduled repayments for each of the five succeeding fiscal years relates only to principal repayments and should not include interest. Disclosure is also called for when interest rates vary with the prime rate.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.16 Amortization of Premium or Discount in Investment Securities With an Early Call Date**

*Inquiry*—Investment securities may be acquired at par value, at a premium, or at a discount. If the investment securities have an earlier call date, how should the amortization of premium or accretion of discount be recorded?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-20 applies to the accounting for discounts, premiums, and commitment fees associated with the purchase of loans and other debt securities such as corporate bonds. In accordance with FASB ASC 310-20-35-26, “the calculation of the constant effective yield necessary to apply the interest method shall use the payment terms required by the loan contract, and prepayments of principal shall not be anticipated to shorten the loan term.” Accordingly, the period of amortization or accretion is from the purchase date to the maturity date. As provided by FASB ASC 310-20-35-26, in order to amortize the premium or accrete the discount to an early call date, the enterprise must hold a large number of similar loans for which prepayments are probable and the timing and amount of prepayments can be reasonably estimated.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.17 Disclosure of Covenant Violation and Subsequent Bank Waiver**

*Inquiry*—At the balance-sheet date, an entity was in violation of certain provisions of the loan covenant associated with its long-term debt. Under the terms of the loan agreement, the obligation is now callable by the creditor. Subsequent to the balance-sheet date, the bank waived its right to demand repayment for more than one year from the balance-sheet date. Therefore, the loan remained classified as long-term, per Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 470-10-45-12. Does the covenant violation and subsequent bank waiver need to be disclosed in the financial statements?

*Reply*—The authoritative literature applicable to nonpublic entities does not address disclosure of debt covenant violations existing at the balance-sheet date that have been waived by the creditor for a stated period of time. Nevertheless, disclosure of the existing violation(s) and the waiver period should be considered for reasons of adequate disclosure. If the covenant violation resulted from nonpayment of principal or interest on the debt, inability to maintain required financial ratios, or other such financial covenants, that information may be vital to users of the financial statements even though the debt is not callable. If the lender has waived the right for greater than one year but retained the future covenant requirements (i.e., covenant requirements will have to be met at interim dates during the next 12 months), the accounting and disclosure provisions of FASB ASC 470, *Debt*, apply.

For SEC registrants, Regulations S-X, Article 4, Section 210-4-08(c), requires disclosure of the amount of the obligation and the period of waiver whenever a creditor has waived its right to call the debt for a stated period of time.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 2471.]



## Section 3400

### Contingent Liabilities

#### .01 Contested Liability

*Inquiry*—A company acquired the entire outstanding stock of another company several years ago. The acquired company was reorganized under IRS Code Section 334(b)(2) causing its building and equipment to be written up in value. Inventory was later written down.

An unpaid portion of the original purchase price is claimed by the former owners of the acquired company, but this is contested by the acquiring company on the grounds that the value of the acquired company's stock was misrepresented.

The acquired company's shareholders intend to sue the acquiring company for the unpaid balance, but a suit has not yet been filed. How should the amount due under the original purchase contract and the possible suit be reflected on the acquiring company's financial statements?

*Reply*—Because the possibility of a suit exists, footnote disclosure describing the entire dispute should be made, including legal counsel's comment that no suit is pending at this time. The amount due under the original purchase contract, plus accrued interest, should still be reported as a liability. No adjustments should be made in the acquiring company's financial records until the dispute is settled or legal counsel advises that a statute of limitations effectively bars filing of the suit in question and the company is not legally liable to pay the debt.

#### .02 Disclosure of Agreement Between Corporation and Its Shareholders

*Inquiry*—Corporation A, a closely held entity, has an agreement with its shareholders under which Corporation A could become obligated to purchase a certain number of shares of stock of deceased shareholders at book value. Should Corporation A disclose this agreement in its financial statements?

*Reply*—Corporation A should disclose the terms of the agreement in a note to its financial statements since it is a contingent liability.

#### .04 Accounting for Issuance of Cents Off Coupons

*Inquiry*—A client includes with its consumer product a coupon for cents off on the next purchase of the product. Should the coupon be accounted for as a reduction of the selling price when the second product is sold?

*Reply*— Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 450-20-05-10 would consider the possible future coupon claims as a loss contingency to be evaluated as a future event. More than likely, the redemption of some or all of the coupons would be considered a *probable* event as defined in FASB ASC glossary. The amount to be accrued and charged to earnings at the time the first product is sold should be based on a reasonable estimate of the amount of coupons expected to be presented for redemption. This estimate could be based on experience in previous promotions.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 2571.]

## Section 3500

### Commitments

#### .01 Accounting for Contract to Cut Timber

*Inquiry*—A corporation is engaged in the forest products industry and purchases timber under both “pay as cut” (specifies a rate the buyer will pay per unit of volume cut) and “lump sum” (buyer pays a fixed amount for the right to cut timber on a specific tract of land). The corporation agrees to purchase timber on land which is identified in the contract. The exact amount of timber purchased can vary in total footage as well as species due to the nature of the goods. Is it proper to recognize the transactions as assets and liabilities on the balance sheet?

*Reply*—It would be improper to recognize a contract to cut timber as an asset and a liability unless the contract, at the time it was entered into, resulted in the purchase of the timber.

A distinction must be made between a contract that is executory in nature and one in which a sale and a purchase of lumber has occurred. Evidence of a purchase would be the transfer of title to the lumber at the time the contract is signed. Such a transfer usually occurs with lump sum contracts and may occur under pay as cut contracts if they include performance guarantees or risk of monetary damages if not performed. Therefore, those contracts would generally be recognized as assets and liabilities.

Receiving title at the time the timber is cut rather than at the time the contract is signed makes the contract executory. It is generally accepted practice to adequately disclose the nature and amounts of commitments relating to executory contracts in the notes to financial statements. Therefore, pay as cut contracts without performance guarantees or risk of monetary damages would generally not be recognized as assets and liabilities until performance occurs.

#### .02 Liability Under Foreign Bank's Letter of Payment Guarantee

*Inquiry*—A client, an import-export firm, agreed to purchase goods from a foreign manufacturer. The agreement calls for advance payment with the goods being delivered over the twelve-month period following the date of the agreement. The client arranged to make this advance payment through a letter of credit issued by a U.S. bank. The U.S. bank has received a letter of payment guarantee issued by a bank in the foreign country. If the supplier fails to make shipments under the terms of the agreement, the U.S. bank will look to the foreign bank for any unpaid advances owed to the U.S. bank by the client. The U.S. bank will look to the client for payment of all amounts represented by shipments to the client under the terms of the agreement.

Is the client directly liable for the amount advanced by the U.S. bank through its letter of credit, or does the client become liable only as the goods are received and payment is due the U.S. bank?

*Reply*—The client is directly liable for the amount advanced to the foreign supplier. It appears from the description of the transactions that the foreign bank is contingently liable if the supplier does not perform under the agreement. The offsetting asset would be classified as an “Advance to Suppliers.” Additional footnote disclosure of the financial arrangements would also be required.

**.04 Recognition of Losses on Purchase Commitments**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 330-10-35-17 states: “A net loss on firm purchase commitments for goods for inventory, measured in the same way as are inventory losses, shall be recognized in the accounts”. FASB ASC 330-10-50-5 further states: “The amounts of net losses on firm purchase commitments accrued under paragraph 330-10-35-17 shall be disclosed separately in the income statement.”

Does this statement mean that the measurement of losses cannot be done on an item by item basis but must only be done if there is an overall net loss on purchase commitments?

*Reply*—Net losses apply to specific purchase commitments and contracts, and not necessarily to components of major categories of inventories, as discussed in FASB ASC 330-10-35-8.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.05 Letters of Credit**

*Inquiry*—Should a company report its outstanding letters of credit as a liability in the financial statements?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 440-10-50-1 requires disclosure of unused letters of credit. They are commitments and should not be reported as a liability in the financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.06 Covenants Imposed by Loan Agreements**

*Inquiry*—Restrictive covenants under certain loan agreements of Company A require the Company to maintain a special level of working capital, limit the amount of additional debt that it can incur, and restrict the amount of retained earnings available for dividend payments. Should the restrictive covenants be disclosed?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 450, *Contingencies* and AU section 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), require the disclosure of restrictive covenants.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.07 Disclosure of Unused Lines of Credit**

*Inquiry*—Should nonpublic companies disclose the existence of unused lines of credit that are available as of the balance sheet date?

*Reply*—Although public companies are required [pursuant to SEC Regulation S-X, section 210.5-02.19(b)] to disclose significant unused lines of credit for short-term financing in the notes, there is no such explicit requirement for nonpublic companies under generally accepted accounting principles. However, under certain circumstances, disclosure by nonpublic companies may be advisable based on the general principle of adequate disclosure.

Paragraph .04 of AU section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that the notes, as well as the financial statements, should be “. . . informative of matters that may affect their use, understanding, and interpretation.” In addition, paragraph .02 of AU section 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), emphasizes:

An independent auditor considers whether a particular matter should be disclosed in light of the circumstances and facts of which he is aware at the time.

[Amended, June 1995.]

---

[The next page is 2671.]



## Section 3600

### ***Deferred Credits***

#### **.01 Balance Sheet Presentation of Unearned Revenue**

*Inquiry*—A client, a motor club with an insurance company subsidiary, has annually contended that unearned insurance premiums and membership dues should be presented on the consolidated balance sheet as deferred income immediately preceding the members' equity and should not be included in the amount for total liabilities. The client recognizes the revenues on the insurance premiums and membership dues on a pro rata basis over the period covered by the insurance policy and the memberships, therefore, the auditors have maintained that the unearned portion of the insurance premiums and membership dues represent a liability on the part of the client to render services in the future.

Is it appropriate to show these unearned premiums and dues outside the liability section of the balance sheet?

*Reply*—FASB Concepts Statement No. 5, *Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements of Business Enterprises*, paragraph 84, indicates that amounts received for goods or services in advance are not treated as revenue of the period in which they are received but as revenue of the period or periods in which they are earned. These amounts are carried as "unearned revenue"—that is, liabilities to transfer goods or render services in the future—until the earning process is complete. Therefore, the unearned portions of the insurance premiums and membership dues represent liabilities to provide services in the future. While the description of the liabilities might vary, to present the unearned premiums and membership dues outside of the liability section of the balance sheet would be inappropriate.

---

[The next page is 3001.]



# TIS Section 4000

## CAPITAL

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Section

4100	Capital Stock
4110	Issuance of Capital Stock
	.01 Expenses Incurred in Public Sale of Capital Stock [Amended]
	.02 Stock Issued for No Consideration [Amended]
	.03 Stock Issued for Accounting and Management Services [Amended]
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	.07 Expenses Incurred in Withdrawn Public Offering
	.08 Balance Sheet Presentation of Mandatory Redeemable Preferred Stock [Amended]
	.09 Costs Incurred to Acquire Treasury Stock
	.10 Costs Incurred in Shelf Registration
	.11 Default on Stock Subscribed
4120	Reacquisition of Capital Stock
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Repurchase of Stock in Excess of Retained Earnings and Additional Paid-in Capital [Amended]
	[.04] Reserved
	.05 Purchase of Treasury Shares for an Amount in Excess of Market Price
4130	Warrants
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Warrants Reacquired
4150	Stock Dividends and Stock Splits
	.01 Stock Dividends of Closely-Held Corporation [Amended]
	.02 Stock Dividend Affecting Market Price of Stock
	[.03] Reserved

*Section*

4160	Contributed Capital
	.01 Payment of Corporate Debt by Stockholders [Amended]
	[.02] Reserved
4200	Retained Earnings
	.01 Foreign Currency Translation—Retained Earnings
4210	Dividends
	.01 Write-Off of Liquidating Dividends
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Accrual of Preferred Dividends [Amended]
4230	Capital Transactions
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Exchange of No Par Common Shares for Par Value Preferred Shares [Amended]
	.03 Use of Stockholder's Assets to Repay Corporate Loan

---

**[The next page is 3021.]**

## Section 4110

### *Issuance of Capital Stock*

#### **.01 Expenses Incurred in Public Sale of Capital Stock**

*Inquiry*—A closely held corporation is issuing stock for the first time to the public.

How would costs, such as legal and accounting fees, incurred as a result of this issue, be handled in the accounting records?

*Reply*—Direct costs of obtaining capital by issuing stock should be deducted from the related proceeds, and the net amount recorded as contributed stockholders' equity. Assuming no legal prohibitions, issue costs should be deducted from capital stock or capital in excess of par or stated value.

Such costs should be limited to the direct cost of issuing the security. Thus, there should be no allocation of officers' salaries, and care should be taken that legal and accounting fees do not include any fees that would have been incurred in the absence of such issuance.

#### **.02 Stock Issued for No Consideration**

*Inquiry*—A corporation issued stock without receiving any consideration and set up goodwill to offset the credit to capital stock. Was this transaction properly recorded?

*Reply*—This is primarily a legal rather than an accounting question, and it would be advisable to obtain legal advice as to the effect of such issuance. If such stock were legally issued, the appropriate entry would be to show the offset as discount on capital stock issued. Goodwill should only be recognized when acquired, in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 350, *Intangibles—Goodwill and Other*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.03 Stock Issued for Accounting and Management Services**

*Inquiry*—A newly formed corporation is going public and wishes to issue shares of stock for certain services, such as accounting, legal, underwriting, printing, etc.

How should the value for these services be set up on the books of the corporation?

*Reply*—It would be appropriate to record the stock issued at the fair value of the stock or services rendered, whichever is the more clearly evident. The recipients should be able to furnish evidence as to such fair value. Since the amounts the Securities and Exchange Commission might consider to be fair value cannot be predicted, a consultation with the staff of the Commission might be advisable before formal submission of the financial statements.

#### **.07 Expenses Incurred in Withdrawn Public Offering**

*Inquiry*—What is the proper accounting for the costs of a public offering that was withdrawn?

*Reply*—Accounting Research Study No. 15, *Stockholders' Equity*, page 23, discusses accounting for stock issue costs. The Study states that such costs are

usually deducted from contributed portions of equity, that is, capital stock or capital in excess of stated or par value, as a reduction in the proceeds from the sale of securities.

Since there were no proceeds from a sale of securities to offset the costs, the costs should be charged to current year's income, but not as an extraordinary item.

#### **.08 Balance Sheet Presentation of Mandatory Redeemable Preferred Stock**

*Inquiry*—Should mandatory redeemable preferred stock be reflected in the equity section of the balance sheet?

*Reply*—The Securities and Exchange Commission has addressed this question in Regulation S-X, section no. 210.5-02.28. This regulation states that mandatory redeemable preferred stock is not to be included in amounts reported as stockholders' equity.

Although nonpublic companies are not required to follow Regulation S-X, it would be appropriate for them to do so in most cases. However, practice varies.

FASB Concepts Statement No. 6, *Elements of Financial Statements*, paragraph 62, states all classes of equity depend to some extent on enterprise profitability for distribution of enterprises assets, and no class of equity carries an unconditional right to receive future transfers of assets from the enterprise except in liquidation, and then only after liabilities have been satisfied.

This characteristic of equity is generally not found in mandatory redeemable preferred stock. If the stock is redeemable at a specific date or at the option of the holder, debt classification as suggested by Regulation S-X seems most appropriate. Some financial statements present mandatory redeemable preferred stock in a category between liabilities and equity. However, facts and circumstances in nonpublic entities (e.g., certain stock issued for estate planning purposes) may justify equity classification of certain mandatory redeemable preferred stock.

#### **.09 Costs Incurred to Acquire Treasury Stock**

*Inquiry*—A company has incurred legal and accounting costs arising from the acquisition of treasury stock. How should the costs be classified in the company's financial statements?

*Reply*—There is no authoritative literature on this particular subject. Some accountants believe that costs associated with the acquisition of treasury stock should be treated in a manner similar to stock issue costs. Stock issue costs are usually accounted for as a deduction from the gross proceeds of the sale of stock. Costs associated with the acquisition of treasury stock may be added to the cost of the treasury stock.

#### **.10 Costs Incurred in Shelf Registration**

*Inquiry*—A public company incurs legal and other fees in connection with an SEC filing for a stock issue it plans to offer under a shelf registration. How should the company account for these costs?

*Reply*—The costs should be capitalized as a prepaid expense. When securities are taken off the shelf and sold, a portion of the costs attributable to the securities sold should be charged against paid in capital. Any subsequent costs incurred to keep the filing "alive" should be charged to expense as incurred. If the filing is withdrawn, the related capitalized costs should be charged to expense.

**.11 Default on Stock Subscribed**

*Inquiry*—A company entered into a stock subscription agreement to sell its stock. The agreement called for three monthly payments of \$10,000 after which the stock would be issued. Although the first payment was received by the company, the subscriber subsequently defaulted on the remaining two payments. According to the agreement, any payments made by the subscriber towards the stock subscription are not refundable. How should the company account for the retention of the first \$10,000 payment?

*Reply*—The payment should be recorded as an addition to shareholders' equity (i.e., a credit to paid-in capital). According to Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 505-10-25-2, capital transactions shall be excluded from the determination of net income or the results of operations.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 3121.]



## Section 4120

### *Reacquisition of Capital Stock*

#### **.03 Repurchase of Stock in Excess of Retained Earnings and Additional Paid-in Capital**

*Inquiry*—A corporation has contracted to repurchase, over a period, some of its own stock. The corporation does not have sufficient retained earnings and additional paid-in capital from which to charge the excess of amounts paid over par value. How should this repurchase be reflected in the company's financial statements?

*Reply*—In many states, it would not be legal for a corporation to repurchase shares of its own stock at a cost greater than the amount of retained earnings of the corporation. Competent legal advice as to the effect of the agreement should be obtained. This may be an executory contract, with only amounts currently being paid for considered as repurchases. If this be the case, only amounts disbursed are to be recognized in the accounts, with an offset to treasury stock. There should of course be disclosure in a note to the financial statements of the date, number of shares, and amounts of future payments under the contract. Such future payments would thus include the interest factor, which would be an additional cost of the stock, rather than being interest expense.

However, if legal counsel advises that this is in fact a completed contract and enforceable, the full amount should be shown (excluding interest) as treasury stock, with an offsetting liability. Again, there should be footnote disclosure of the nature of the liability and of the interest rate and maturity dates. Under these circumstances, the interest would be included as a current expense.

#### **.05 Purchase of Treasury Shares for an Amount in Excess of Market Price**

*Inquiry*—A corporation enters into an agreement to purchase a major block of its shares from one of its shareholders at a price in excess of its current market price. These shares represent the controlling interest in the corporation. The purchase price of the treasury stock does not include any other rights or privileges. At what value should the corporation record the treasury stock?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 505-30-30-4 states that transactions do arise in which an acquisition of an enterprise's stock may take place at prices different from routine transactions in the open market. A block of shares representing a controlling interest will generally trade at a price in excess of market, and a large block of shares may trade at a price above or below the current market price depending on whether the buyer or seller initiates the transaction. A company's acquisition of its shares in those circumstances is solely a treasury stock transaction and is properly accounted for at the purchase price of the treasury shares.

In this situation, since the purchase price does not include amounts attributable to items other than the shares purchased, the entire purchase price should be accounted for as the cost of treasury shares.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 3201.]**

## Section 4130

### ***Warrants***

#### **.03 Warrants Recquired**

*Inquiry*—Company A issued, in a prior year, stock warrants with a subordinated note. The value of the warrants as determined at the date of issuance was added to capital in excess of par value and recorded as deferred loan costs to be amortized over the term of the loan. Company A plans to reacquire the warrants for \$110,000. Should the \$110,000 be:

- (a) accounted for as additional cost of the loan and amortized over the remaining term of the loan, or
- (b) accounted for as a capital transaction and deducted from capital in excess of par value, or
- (c) accounted for in some other manner?

*Reply*—The purchase price of the warrants should be deducted from either capital in excess of par value or retained earnings.

---

[The next page is 3341.]



## Section 4150

### ***Stock Dividends and Stock Splits***

#### **.01 Stock Dividends of Closely-Held Corporation**

*Inquiry*—A corporation has about two hundred stockholders with the board of directors controlling about 80 percent of the stock. There is virtually no buying or selling of the company's stock and the price of trades has been constant at a level suggested by management.

The company has followed a policy of issuing stock distributions (usually 10 percent or 20 percent) and capitalizing them at par because there is not sufficient retained earnings to capitalize at estimated market value. The issuance of stock distributions is an integral part of the company's philosophy and policy with regard to employee morale and maintaining a relatively fixed trading value for the stock in the absence of a market.

Earnings have been increasing at 10 percent to 20 percent per year and cash dividends have remained constant. Stock distributions provide a means for returning earnings to stockholders without the tax impact of cash dividends.

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 505-20-25-3 states that stock dividends in amounts of less than 20 percent to 25 percent or of a recurring or frequent nature should be accounted for by capitalizing the estimated market value of the stock. FASB ASC 505-20-30-5 also states that in cases of closely held companies, it is to be presumed that the intimate knowledge of the corporation's affairs possessed by the shareholders would preclude any such implications as referred to in FASB ASC 505-20-30-3, and that there is no need to capitalize earned surplus other than to meet legal requirements.

Under these circumstances, is it required that the stock dividends be capitalized at the estimated market value of the stock?

*Reply*—Since only 20 percent of the corporation's stock is not controlled by the board of directors, it is likely that these minority shareholders would not have intimate knowledge of the corporation's affairs, as contemplated in FASB ASC 505-20-30-5, which excludes closely held entities from the provisions of FASB ASC 505-20-30-3. Accordingly, the requirements of FASB ASC 505-20-30-3 would apply. The stock dividends should be capitalized at the selling price of the stock with a corresponding charge to retained earnings.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.02 Stock Dividend Affecting Market Price of Stock**

*Inquiry*—A company issued a 10 percent stock dividend. May the dividend be treated as a stock split if the dividend resulted in a drop in the market price of the stock?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 505-20-25-3 states, in part: "except for a few instances, the issuance of additional shares of less than 20 or 25 percent of the number of previously outstanding shares would call for treatment as a stock dividend as described in paragraph 505-20-30-3." FASB ASC 505-20-30-3 requires a transfer from retained earnings to the category of permanent

capitalization in an amount equal to the fair value of the additional shares issued.

In order to treat the 10 percent “stock dividend” as a “split-up effected in the form of a dividend,” the company would have to demonstrate that the additional shares issued is “large enough to materially influence the unit market price of the stock” as indicated in FASB ASC 505-20-25-3.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 3401.]**

## Section 4160

### *Contributed Capital*

#### **.01 Payment of Corporate Debt by Stockholders**

*Inquiry*—Three shareholders own stock in Corporations A and B. They agree to personally pay a debt of Corporation A by giving the creditor stock in Corporation B. How should this transaction be recorded on the books of Corporation A?

*Reply*—The payments by the three stockholders of Corporation A's debt would represent an additional contribution by the stockholders to Corporation A. This can be recorded as a credit to "additional capital." [Amended]

---

[The next page is 3501.]



## Section 4200

### ***Retained Earnings***

#### **.01 Foreign Currency Translation—Retained Earnings**

*Inquiry*—A parent company is translating a foreign subsidiary's financial statements for consolidation purposes. It is the second year of operation for the subsidiary. How should retained earnings be translated?

*Reply*—For assets and liabilities, Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 830-30-45-3 requires the use of the exchange rate at the balance sheet date. For revenues, expenses, gains, and losses, the exchange rate at the dates on which those elements are recognized shall be used. However, an appropriately weighted average exchange rate for the period may be used to translate the income statement.

In year two, net income or loss would be translated at the weighted average exchange rate for the current year and accumulated with the historical opening translated retained earnings. It should be noted there may be a number of other transactions that may affect the subsidiary's retained earnings including the declaration of dividends.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 3551.]



## Section 4210

### Dividends

#### .01 Write-Off of Liquidating Dividends

*Inquiry*—Quite a few years ago, cash dividends were distributed to stockholders in excess of earnings. The company would now like to “clean up” the stockholders’ equity section of the balance sheet by removing the account “Prior Years’ Liquidation Dividends” which is shown as a reduction of the capital stock account. Can the liquidating dividends account be written off against “retained earnings” or “paid in capital in excess of par value”?

*Reply*—Essentially, this question is a legal one as to whether cash distribution to stockholders in excess of earnings in prior years may be charged to earnings in subsequent years. When liquidating dividends are declared, the charge is made to accounts such as “capital repayment,” “capital returned,” or “liquidating dividends” which appear on the balance sheet as offsets to paid-in capital. By this treatment, the amount of capital returned as well as the amount of capital originally paid in can be disclosed. Perhaps the wisest thing to do under the circumstances is to consult legal counsel to determine whether the write-off proposed is legal under the corporate statutes of the state. Perhaps it is legally permissible, under the laws of incorporation, to reduce the par or stated value of the corporation’s stock, thereby creating a reduction surplus which may then be used retroactively to absorb the original deficit, on the ground that the excess payments were dividends in partial liquidation.

#### .04 Accrual of Preferred Dividends

*Inquiry*—A corporation has cumulative preferred stock. It has not paid any dividends on this stock in the last three years. Should the corporation accrue the preferred dividends in arrears?

*Reply*—Generally, preferred stock contains a cumulative provision whereby dividends omitted in previous years must be paid prior to the payment of dividends on other outstanding shares. Since dividends do not become a corporate liability until declared, no accrual is needed. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 505-10-50-5 requires entities to disclose within its financial statements (either on the face of the statement of financial position or in the notes thereto) the aggregate and per-share amounts of arrearages in cumulative preferred dividends. Furthermore, FASB ASC 260-10-45-11 states that dividends accumulated for the period on cumulative preferred stock (whether or not earned) should be deducted from income from continuing operations and also from net income when computing earnings per share. If there is a loss from continuing operations or a net loss, the amount of the loss should be increased by those preferred dividends. Preferred dividends that are cumulative only if earned should be deducted only to the extent that they are earned.

If preferred dividends are not cumulative, only the dividends declared should be deducted. In all cases, the effect that has been given to preferred dividends in arriving at income available to common stockholders in computing basic earnings per share should be disclosed for every period for which an income statement is presented.

[Amended, September 1997. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 3631.]

## Section 4230

### *Capital Transactions*

#### **.02 Exchange of No Par Common Shares for Par Value Preferred Shares**

*Inquiry*—The shareholders of Corporation A exchanged their no par common shares for preferred shares with a par value to “freeze” the value of stock ownership for estate tax purposes. How should the difference between the carrying basis of the preferred shares and the carrying basis of the common shares be accounted for?

*Reply*—The difference should be charged or credited to additional paid-in capital. If there is no additional paid-in capital, any “debit” balance should first be charged to retained earnings and any remaining “debit” balance should be described in the financial statements as a discount on preferred stock. However, in many states the law requires that issued stock must be fully paid and nonassessable and therefore, if the par value of the preferred shares exceeds the market value of the common shares this exchange may have legal implications that should be considered.

#### **.03 Use of Stockholder’s Assets to Repay Corporate Loan**

*Inquiry*—The sole owner of a corporation agreed to collateralize the company’s bank loan with personal assets. As a result of financial difficulties, the company’s bank loan was called and its owner agreed to sell his personal assets collateralizing the company’s loan, to repay the bank debt. What is the appropriate accounting of this transaction?

*Reply*—The monies used to repay the bank loan are in substance a further capital infusion by the individual, which increases his investment in the company. The company would eliminate its liability to the bank and credit paid-in capital.

---

[The next page is 3901.]



# TIS Section 5000

## REVENUE AND EXPENSE

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

*Section*

5100	Revenue Recognition
	.01 Equipment Sales Net of Trade-Ins
	.02 Rights to Broadcast Time Received for Services [Amended]
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Discounts on Prepaid Funeral Arrangement Plans
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	.07 One-Cent Sales
	.08 Life Membership Fees in a Club
	[.09] Reserved
	.10 Members of Country Club Assessed for Debt Retirement
	.11 Excise Tax on Club Dues
	[.12] Reserved
	[.13] Reserved
	.14 Recognition of Fees Earned on Construction Mortgage Placements
	[.15] Reserved
	.16 Rental Revenue Based on Percentage of Sales [Amended]
	[.17] Reserved
	[.18] Reserved
	[.19] Reserved
	.20 Payment for Termination of License Agreement
	[.21] Reserved
	[.22] Reserved
	[.23] Reserved
	[.24] Reserved
	.25 Finished Parts Held by Manufacturer for Customers
	[.26] Reserved
	[.27] Reserved
	.28 Revenue From Private Label Sales [Amended]
	[.29] Reserved
	[.30] Reserved

## Section

5100	Revenue Recognition—continued
	.31 Accounting for Zero Coupon Bonds
	[.32] Reserved
	.33 Operating Lease With Rental Payments Rebated Against Purchase Price
	[.34] Reserved
	.35 Involuntary Conversion—Recognition of Gain
	.36 Sales of Investment to Minority Stockholder
	.37 Sales Price Based on Future Revenue
	.38 Subsequent Event Related to Vendor-Specific Objective Evidence for Software Revenue Recognition
	.39 Software Revenue Recognition for Multiple-Element Arrangements
	.40 Software Revenue Recognition Related to Year 2000 Compliant Software
	.41 Effect of Prepayments on Software Revenue Recognition
	.42 Extended Payment Terms and Software Revenue Recognition
	.43 Corrections of Errors in Computer Software (Bug Fixes)
	.44 Postcontract Customer Support During the Deployment Phase of Computer Software
	.45 Effect of Change in License Mix on Software Revenue Recognition
	.46 Nonmonetary Exchanges of Software (Part I)
	.47 Nonmonetary Exchanges of Software (Part II)
	.48 Application of Contract Accounting in Software Arrangements (Part I)
	.49 Application of Contract Accounting in Software Arrangements (Part II)
	.50 Definition of More-Than-Insignificant Discount and Software Revenue Recognition
	.51 Accounting for Significant Incremental Discounts in Software Revenue Recognition
	.52 Fair Value of PCS in a Perpetual License and Software Revenue Recognition
	.53 Fair Value of PCS in a Short-Term Time-Based License and Software Revenue Recognition
	.54 Fair Value of PCS in a Multi-Year Time-Based License and Software Revenue Recognition
	.55 Fair Value of PCS With a Consistent Renewal Percentage (But Varying Renewal Dollar Amounts) and Software Revenue Recognition
	.56 Concessions and Software Revenue Recognition
	.57 Overcoming Presumption of Concessions in Extended Payment Term Arrangements and Software Revenue Recognition

## Section

5100	Revenue Recognition—continued
.58	Effect of Prepayments on Software Revenue Recognition (Part II)
.59	Subsequent Cash Receipt in an Extended Payment Term Arrangement for Software Revenue Recognition
.60	Customer Financing With No Software Vendor Participation and Software Revenue Recognition
.61	Effect of Prepayments on Software Revenue Recognition When Vendor Participates in Customer Financing
.62	Indicators of Incremental Risk and Their Effect on the Evaluation of Whether a Fee is Fixed or Determinable and Software Revenue Recognition
.63	Overcoming the Presumption That a Fee is Not Fixed or Determinable When Vendor Participates in Customer Financing and Software Revenue Recognition
.64	Indicators of Vendor Participation in Customer Financing That Do Not Result in Incremental Risk and Software Revenue Recognition
.65	Software Vendor Interest Rate Buy Downs on Customer Financing and Software Revenue Recognition
.66	Consideration of Other TPAs on Customer Borrowing When Customer is a Reseller and Software Revenue Recognition
.67	Customer Acceptance and Software Revenue Recognition
.68	Fair Value of PCS in Perpetual and Multi-Year Time-Based Licenses and Software Revenue Recognition
.69	Delivery Terms and Software Revenue Recognition
.70	Effect of Commencement of an Initial License Term and Software Revenue Recognition
.71	Effect of Commencement of an Extension/Renewal License Term and Software Revenue Recognition
.72	Effect of Additional Product(s) in an Extension/Renewal of License Term and Software Revenue Recognition
.73	Software Revenue Recognition for an Arrangement Containing an Option to Extend a Time-Based License Indefinitely
.74	Effect of Discounts on Future Products on the Residual Method and Software Revenue Recognition
.75	Fair Value of PCS Renewals Based on Users Deployed and Software Revenue Recognition
.76	Fair Value in Multiple-Element Arrangements That Include Contingent Usage-Based Fees and Software Revenue Recognition

*Section*

5210	Depreciation and Depletion
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Disclosure of Depreciation Expense
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Depreciation of Clothing Rented to Individuals
	.05 Classification of Costs of Constructing a Golf Course
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	.08 Additional First Year Depreciation [Amended]
	.09 Amortization of Leasehold Improvement
	[.10] Reserved
5220	Interest Expense
	.01 Deferral of Payment of Interest
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Computation of Interest Expense on Long-Term Redeemable Bonds
	[.04] Reserved
	.05 Amortization of Prepaid Interest on Discounted Notes
	.06 Imputed Interest on Shareholder Loans
	.07 Imputed Interest on Note Exchanged for Cash Only [Amended]
5230	Employee Benefit Plans
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Deferred Compensation Payable to Surviving Spouse
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	.09 Deferred Compensation Arrangement Funded by Life Insurance Contracts
5240	Cost Allocation
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved

*Section*

5240	Cost Allocation—continued
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	[.09] Reserved
	.10 Sale of Research and Development Technology
	[.11] Reserved
5250	Tax Allocation
	[.01-.13] Reserved
5260	Estimated Losses
	.01 Recognition of Estimated Losses on Uncompleted Contracts
5290	Other Expenses
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Classification of Expenses Which Are Taxable to Employees
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	.05 Accrual of Audit Fee
	.06 Accounting for a Lease Trial Period
5400	Extraordinary and Unusual Items
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Sale of Cotton Futures Commitment Contracts
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Reporting the Proceeds From Life Insurance on an Officer
	.05 Accounting and Disclosures Guidance for Losses From Natural Disasters-Nongovernmental Entities
5500	Earnings per Share
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Earnings Per Share of Wholly-Owned Subsidiaries
	.03 Weighted Average Shares Outstanding for an Interim Period
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	[.09] Reserved
	[.10] Reserved
	[.11] Reserved
	[.12] Reserved
	[.13] Reserved

*Section*

5500	Earnings per Share—continued
	[.14] Reserved
	.15 Stock Dividend Declared But Not Paid at Balance-Sheet Date
	[.16] Reserved
5600	Leases
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Accounting for Subleases
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	.07 Determining a Lease Term for Accounting Purposes
	.08 Lease Term for Accounting Purposes Differs From Term Stated in Lease (Part 1)
	.09 Lease Term for Accounting Purposes Differs From Term Stated in Lease (Part 2)
	.10 Rent Expense and Rent Revenue in an Operating Lease—General
	.11 Rent Expense and Rent Revenue in an Operating Lease—Scheduled Increase in Rental Space
	.12 Rent Expense and Rent Revenue in an Operating Lease—Rent Holiday
	.13 Rent Expense and Rent Revenue in an Operating Lease—Scheduled Rent Increases
	.14 Amortization/Depreciation of Leasehold Improvements in an Operating Lease (Part 1)
	.15 Leasehold Improvements and Lease Term in an Operating Lease (Part 2)
	.16 Landlord Incentive Allowance in an Operating Lease
	.17 Cash Flows Statement Presentation of Landlord Incentive Allowance in an Operating Lease
5700	Contributions Made
	.01 Income Tax Accounting for Contributions to Certain Not-for-Profit Scholarship Funding Entities

---

[The next page is 3921.]

## Section 5100

### Revenue Recognition

#### .01 Equipment Sales Net of Trade-Ins

*Inquiry*—A Client who deals in heavy equipment records all sales at net of trade-ins. Is this an acceptable accounting practice?

*Reply*—Support for the accounting treatment for trade-ins which this client follows could not be found. Sales should be credited with the nominal or stated contract price, and the difference between (a) the trade-in allowance and (b) the amount determined by pricing the trade-in at net realizable value minus normal profit margin should be treated as a sales allowance or discount. The traded-in equipment should be set up in inventory at an amount which, when reconditioning costs are added, will allow a margin approximating a normal profit when the sale is made.

#### .02 Rights to Broadcast Time Received for Services

*Inquiry*—An advertising agency creates and sells jingles and station identifications to radio and television stations. The agency receives broadcast time credit as part payment. This broadcast time is then resold by the agency to its clients. Should this broadcast time be recognized by the advertising agency:

1. when the agency bills the radio or television station, or
2. when it is subsequently sold to advertisers?

*Reply*—The broadcast time credit should be recognized as income when the services are billed to the station. It may be necessary to estimate the value of the credits. A corresponding asset account should be charged. This asset would be relieved as the broadcast time is sold by the advertising agency.

#### .04 Discounts on Prepaid Funeral Arrangement Plans

*Inquiry*—An incorporated mortuary sells pre-need funeral plans in addition to rendering current mortuary services. These pre-need funeral plans are sold at a discount in order to be attractive to the public. All monies received from the sale of these plans are placed in a trust fund which has been set up at a local bank. The bank is the trustee of the trust and makes investments as it sees fit. The pre-need funeral plan agreements stipulate that all income earned by the trust belong to the mortuary, and withdrawals of such income from the trust may be made by the mortuary periodically. In return for the feature of the agreements calling for the mortuary's entitlement to the trust fund income, purchasers of the pre-need plans are permitted to buy the plans at a substantial discount. The agreements also provide for fully-covered funeral benefits in certain cases, although the plans may not be fully paid at time of death. Another advantage to the purchasers is that the costs of their funerals will not be influenced by increases in the cost of living index.

Certain expenses are met by the mortuary in the selling of its pre-need funeral plans; these are recorded monthly in a separate expense account in its general ledger. Trust fund income earned is also recorded monthly in the mortuary's general ledger, in a separate income account. As pre-need plans are

utilized by persons who had purchased them earlier, the special discounts mentioned in the preceding paragraph are recorded in a separate expense account in the mortuary's general ledger. It should be emphasized here that such discounts are not reflected as an expense in the mortuary's operations until such time the plans are actually used, whereas the expenses of the sales of the plans and the income earned by the trust affect operations currently, with no dependency whatsoever on the deaths of the purchasers or holders of the plans.

In order to achieve a better matching of expenses with revenues accruing from the sales of plans, could the trust fund income or the excess of trust fund income over the expenses of selling the plans be deferred until the plans are utilized? Or could the special discounts be charged to income at some date prior to the utilization of the plans?

*Reply*—It would be more acceptable to currently accrue or recognize selling expenses, fees and commissions, and trust fund income rather than use the “completed contract” or deferral accounting approach. If it is a fact that costs of furnishing services commonly exceed the trust funds expended at time of utilizing a plan, current provision should be made on an estimated basis for the potential or possible losses (more accurately, estimated excess of future servicing costs over monies to be released from trust to defray same) on plans not utilized as yet at the balance sheet date.

The special discounts are more in the nature of sales adjustments rather than costs or expenses.

**.07 One-Cent Sales**

*Inquiry*—A client in the fast food business has a “one-cent sale” once a week. For example, the sale might be two cheeseburgers for the price of one (60¢) plus one cent. The company would record the transaction as follows:

Cash (.60 + .01) .....	\$ .61	
Advertisement Expense .....	.59	
Sales (.60 x 2) .....		\$1.20

The company makes this entry so that their “food costs” are not distorted, but should an adjustment be made at the end of the year for financial reporting purposes eliminating this advertising expense against sales?

*Reply*—The practice of crediting sales and charging advertising expense for the difference between the normal sales price and the “bargain day” sales price of merchandise is not acceptable for financial reporting. Realization of the full sales price cannot properly be imputed under such conditions. To do so would seem to imply that the same quantities would have been sold if the price had not been reduced.

It might however be appropriate to adjust the cost of sales and charge advertising for the cost of the one-cent hamburger. Such cost of sales should include only out-of-pocket expenses.

**.08 Life Membership Fees in a Club**

*Inquiry*—A company is engaged in a service club enterprise. What is the proper accounting for life membership fees?

*Reply*—The life membership fees should be allocated over the time the individual may be expected to require the services of the club.

#### **.10 Members of Country Club Assessed for Debt Retirement**

*Inquiry*—A country club has voted to impose a special yearly assessment on its membership for ten years. The proceeds are to be used to retire a first mortgage on the property of the club.

The assessment is being imposed on all members including voting certificate holders and nonvoting associate members.

Is the proper accounting treatment of this transaction a contribution to capital, or are dues to be reflected in the annual income statement?

*Reply*—When billing the assessments each year, the receivables from the members can be shown as an asset with a credit to income for the special assessment. Such amounts might then be appropriated to a special membership equity, perhaps entitled “appropriation for retirement of debt.” The financial statements should disclose that the directors had voted a special assessment for ten years and the amount of assessment per year. The first or the last year for the assessment, or both, should also be disclosed.

#### **.11 Excise Tax on Club Dues**

*Inquiry*—The members of certain private clubs must pay a federal excise tax in addition to their annual dues. Should the clubs record, as revenues, the dues net of the excise tax, or should revenues include both dues and taxes?

*Reply*—A club, in collecting excise taxes on dues, is acting as no more than an agent or conduit for the federal government. The amounts paid to the club by members to be turned over as excise taxes should not be construed as dues, and to show them as such on the income statement is erroneous.

#### **.14 Recognition of Fees Earned on Construction Mortgage Placements**

*Inquiry*—A client is in the business of bringing lenders and borrowers together for a fee. When a construction mortgage has been arranged and agreed to, it would appear that the client has earned its fee. However, because of the terms of the fee arrangement, there is some doubt as to when the income should be recognized.

The following is a summary of the types of transactions involved:

1. Negotiable Note

The company receives a negotiable note in payment of its fees. Generally the note is unsecured and non-interest-bearing and is payable over the same period as the construction draws on the related mortgage are to be made.

2. Nonnegotiable Note

The terms of the nonnegotiable note are comparable to the negotiable note.

3. Commitment Letter, Not Contingent on Future Events

The company receives a letter from the borrower indicating that the lender and the borrower have agreed on the terms of the mortgage. In addition, the letter states that the borrower agrees to pay the company a fixed fee by a specified date for services rendered in arranging the loan.

4. Commitment Letter, Contingent on Future Draws

The company receives commitment letters from the borrower as described in No. 3 in the preceding. However, the commitment letters state that a certain amount of the fee will not be paid unless or until certain construction draws are received from the lender.

When should revenue be recognized as earned by the client?

*Reply*—Revenue recognition is discussed in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Concepts Statement No. 5, *Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements of Business Enterprises*, paragraphs 83 and 84.

Applying the guidelines of Concepts No. 5, paragraphs 83 and 84, to the specific situations, revenue would be recognized as follows:

1. Negotiable Note

Income would be recognized when the services have been performed and billed which may be prior to receipt of the negotiable note.

2. Nonnegotiable Note

The terms of the nonnegotiable note are comparable to the negotiable note, and revenue would be recognized in a similar manner.

3. Commitment Letter, Not Contingent on Future Events

Such a letter would be evidence that the services have been rendered and are now “billable”; therefore, the fee has been earned and income should be recognized.

4. Commitment Letter, Contingent on Future Draws

From the description, it appears that the agreement between the client, borrower, and lender in this case is such that the parties do not consider all the services rendered until actual borrowings take place even though the client need not physically do anything else. In such a situation, a portion of the fees should be deferred until the stipulated draw provisions have been met.

## **.16 Rental Revenue Based on Percentage of Sales**

*Inquiry*—A supermarket built an addition to its store to house a liquor store. The rent to the liquor store is to be a percent of its sales. On its income statement, would it be proper for the supermarket to include the liquor store sales as though they were their own sales? The rent would then appear as a gross margin.

*Reply*—No. In accordance with the FASB *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary, this transaction meets the definition of a *lease*, which is “... the right to use property, plant, or equipment (land and/or depreciable assets) usually for a stated period of time.”

The revenue received from the liquor store represents rental income to the supermarket and it would be inappropriate for the supermarket to include as its sales the sales of the liquor store. However, it would be appropriate for the supermarket to include the rental income as part of its gross revenues.

[Amended June 1995; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.20 Payment for Termination of License Agreement**

*Inquiry*—A research and development company holds numerous patents. The company derives its income from the sale of products which utilize its patents as well as from the licensing of the patents, for which it receives royalties, and also from the sale of patent rights, for which it receives a single payment for the term of the license.

A licensee desired to terminate its license, since it was no longer using the technology contained in the company's patent, and paid to the company a lump sum termination payment. This payment approximated the amount the company would have earned during the remaining years of the license agreement. How should the termination payment be reflected in the company's financial statements?

*Reply*—The transaction is similar to sale of a license for the remaining life of a patent and should be accounted for in the same manner. If this is the sole license for a patent, any remaining unamortized cost of such patent should be written off at this time. If the license represents only a portion of the use of the patent, an appropriate portion of the remaining unamortized cost should be written off. The proceeds should be included in this year's current operations, and there should be disclosure that a major source of income from licensing agreements is being terminated.

**.25 Finished Parts Held by Manufacturer for Customers**

*Inquiry*—Corporation A, a subcontractor, manufactures precision parts to customers' specifications. Parts produced by Corporation A are inspected by a customer's quality control representative and then held in a secured area in Corporation A's plant. Corporation A is entitled to full contract payment on parts inspected and held in the secured area. Historically, there has been a short time span between completion date and scheduled shipment date, but recently production efficiency has improved to the extent that contracts are completed significantly in advance of scheduled shipment dates. Based on the recent experience of Corporation A, what is the proper date for revenue recognition?

*Reply*—FASB Concepts Statement No. 5, *Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements of Business Enterprises*, paragraph 83, states in part:

"Revenues are not recognized until earned. An entity's revenue-earning activities involve delivering or producing goods, rendering services, or other activities that constitute its ongoing major or central operations, and revenues are considered to have been earned when the entity has substantially accomplished what it must do to be entitled to the benefits represented by the revenues . . . ."

Revenue should be recognized at the time of inspection and delivery to the secured areas, since the realization criteria have been met. Corporation A should disclose the method followed for income recognition as part of its disclosure of accounting policies.

**.28 Revenue From Private Label Sales**

*Inquiry*—Corporation A produces certain products that are sold under Corporation B's label. Corporation B reimburses Corporation A for all direct costs of raw material, ingredients, and packaging plus 10 cents per pound processing fee. Corporation A prepares an invoice for each shipment which itemizes the various direct costs plus 10 cents per pound processing fee. Should Corporation A record the total invoice amount as a sale or should it record the processing fee as revenue and the reimbursed direct costs as a reduction of expenses?

*Reply*—Corporation A should probably record the total invoice amount as a sale. Accounting for contracts of this type would be treated similar to cost-plus-fixed-fee contracts discussed in FASB ASC 912-605.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.31 Accounting for Zero Coupon Bonds**

*Inquiry*—A client purchased a 20-year zero coupon treasury bond for \$189, with a maturity value of \$1,000, at an 8 1/2 percent yield to maturity.

- (1) What authoritative pronouncement would provide guidance for this transaction?
- (2) How is the interest income computed for financial reporting purposes?

*Reply*—(1)FASB ASC 835-30-15-2 states that, “The guidance in this Sub-topic applies to receivables and payables that represent contractual rights to receive money or contractual obligations to pay money on fixed or determinable dates, whether or not there is any stated provision for interest . . . Some examples are secured and unsecured notes, debentures, bonds . . .”

(2)FASB ASC 835-30-35-2 states that, “the difference between the present value and the face amount shall be treated as discount or premium and amortized as interest expense or income over the life of the note in such a way as to result in a constant rate of interest when applied to the amount outstanding at the beginning of any given period.” This is the “interest” method described in paragraphs 2–3 of FASB ASC 835-30-35. However, other methods of amortization may be used if the results obtained are not materially different from those which would result from the “interest” method.

The following is an example of the application of the interest method. To calculate the semi-annual amount, multiply the purchase price by 4 1/4 percent (half of 8 1/2 percent) to arrive at the adjusted cost basis for the first six-month period. Then repeat this calculation for the next six-month period using the adjusted cost basis. The total amount of income (accrual) in the first year will be \$16.40. Each year the cost basis is increased by the amount of income (accrual) reported in the previous year, as indicated in the following example:

<i>Semi-Annual Period</i>	<i>Your Purchase Price or Adjusted Cost Basis</i>	<i>1/2 Purchase YTM</i>	<i>Accrual During Period</i>	<i>Adjusted Cost Basis at End of Period</i>
1	\$189.00	4.25%	\$8.03	\$197.03
2	197.03	4.25%	8.37	205.40
3	205.40	4.25%	8.73	214.13
4	214.13	4.25%	9.10	223.23

The interest income would be reported annually for financial reporting purposes. If the bond is held to maturity, there will be no gain or loss. If sold prior to maturity any gain or loss is determined by the difference between the adjusted cost basis and the selling price.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.33 Operating Lease With Rental Payments Rebated Against Purchase Price**

*Inquiry*—A lessor corporation leases construction equipment for periods of six to eighteen months under short-term cancellable leases. The leases provide that during the first six months, 100 percent of the rentals paid may be applied

toward the purchase price of the equipment if the lessee decides to purchase the equipment; during the next three months the percentage drops to 80 percent, and after nine months 60 percent may be applied toward the purchase price. The leases do not qualify as capital leases. How should the lessor account for the leases and the respective rebates?

*Reply*—The authoritative literature does not address this matter. The lessor should record rental income until the lessee decides to purchase the equipment. The lessor should then record the sale of the equipment net of the applicable rebate. The amount recorded as rental income should not be reclassified as sales proceeds.

### **.35 Involuntary Conversion—Recognition of Gain**

*Inquiry*—A tornado virtually destroys a company's building on June 12, 20X0. The company has insurance and expects to be reimbursed for costs incurred to refurbish the building. The company's fiscal year-end is June 30, 20X0. On August 15, 20X0, prior to the issuance of the financial statements, the company receives a check in excess of the carrying amount of the building. Should the company recognize the gain on the involuntary conversion in the June 30, 20X0 financial statements?

*Reply*—No. Since the company was reimbursed for an amount in excess of the carrying amount of the building there was no loss to record on June 30, 20X0. The gain, which was received on August 15, 20X0, was a gain contingency on June 30, 20X0. Per FASB ASC 450-30-25-1, contingencies that might result in gains usually are not reflected in the accounts since to do so might be to recognize revenue prior to its realization.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.36 Sales of Investment to Minority Stockholder**

*Inquiry*—A corporation enters into an agreement to sell an investment accounted for on the equity method to a minority stockholder in return for his shares in the corporation. The fair value of the investment exceeds its book value. Would the corporation recognize a gain on this transaction or would the excess be credited to equity?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 845-10-30-1 states that a transfer of a nonmonetary asset to a stockholder or to another entity in a nonreciprocal transfer should be recorded at the fair value of the asset transferred, and that a gain or loss should be recognized on the disposition of the asset. FASB ASC 845-10-30-2 also indicates that the fair value of an entity's own stock reacquired may be a more clearly evident measure of the fair value of the asset distributed in a nonreciprocal transfer if the transaction involves acquiring stock for the treasury or retirement.

The corporation should recognize as a gain, in the year in which the transaction occurs, the excess of the fair value of the investment transferred over its carrying amount.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.37 Sales Price Based on Future Revenue**

*Inquiry*—A company sold one of its direct-mail catalog offices for cash plus a percentage of revenue to be earned over the next five years. The sales

agreement limits the percentage of revenue to a stipulated maximum. Management believes the maximum will be earned within the five-year period. When should revenue from this transaction be recorded?

*Reply*—According to FASB ASC 450-30-25-1, “A contingency that might result in a gain usually should not be reflected in the financial statements because to do so might be to recognize revenue before its realization.”

Unless it is assured that adequate revenue will be earned to cause payment of the contingent portion of the sales price, the contingent portion of the sales price should only be accrued as earned. The accuracy and reasonableness of management’s projections must be ascertained. If realization is assured, which would be relatively infrequent, revenue should be recorded as of the date of the sale using the present value of the projected cash receipts in accordance with FASB ASC 835, *Interest*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.38 Subsequent Event Related to Vendor-Specific Objective Evidence for Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE) of fair value may be established by management after the balance sheet date but before the issuance of the financial statements, either by separate sales or by establishment of a price by a pricing committee. May an entity use such evidence to recognize revenue at the balance sheet date in accordance with SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700)?

*Reply*—No. Establishment of VSOE after the balance sheet date is a Type II subsequent event, as discussed in AU section 560, *Subsequent Events* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). As a result, revenue should be deferred at the balance sheet date in accordance with paragraph 12 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.12), as amended by SOP 98-9, *Modification of SOP 97-2, Software Revenue Recognition, With Respect to Certain Transactions* (ACC 10,770).

---

\* The elevation of this guidance is a change in generally accepted accounting principles and may result in an accounting change for nonpublic entities that had not previously applied it. Sections .38–.76 of TIS section 5100 were the only paragraphs within the TIS section that FASB codified and therefore made authoritative during the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification™* (ASC) project. Nonpublic entities will be required to apply it prospectively for new transactions for fiscal years beginning on or after December 15, 2009, and interim periods within those years (public entities should have already been applying the guidance as directed by the Securities and Exchange Commission). Such transitional provisions will be issued and reflected in FASB ASC via the standard that will replace FASB Statement No. 162, which is expected to be issued by July 1, 2009, to coincide with the release of FASB ASC as authoritative. For more information on FASB ASC, see the Special Note About Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification™* section of this publication.

However, if subsequent to the balance sheet date, management merely compiles evidence that existed at the balance sheet date, that evidence should be used to assess whether there is sufficient VSOE (in accordance with paragraph 10 of SOP 97-2 [ACC 10,700.10]) to recognize revenue at the balance sheet date.

### .39 Software Revenue Recognition for Multiple-Element Arrangements

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Software vendors may execute more than one contract or agreement with a single customer. Should separate contracts or agreements be viewed as one multiple-element arrangement when determining the appropriate amount of revenue to be recognized in accordance with SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700)?

*Reply*—A group of contracts or agreements may be so closely related that they are, in effect, parts of a single arrangement. The form of an arrangement is not necessarily the only indicator of the substance of an arrangement. The existence of any of the following factors (which are not all-inclusive) may indicate that a group of contracts should be accounted for as a single arrangement:

- The contracts or agreements are negotiated or executed within a short time frame of each other.
- The different elements are closely interrelated or interdependent in terms of design, technology, or function.
- The fee for one or more contracts or agreements is subject to refund or forfeiture or other concession if another contract is not completed satisfactorily.
- One or more elements in one contract or agreement are essential to the functionality of an element in another contract.
- Payment terms under one contract or agreement coincide with performance criteria of another contract or agreement.
- The negotiations are conducted jointly with two or more parties (for example, from different divisions of the same company) to do what in essence is a single project.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.40 Software Revenue Recognition Related to Year 2000 Compliant Software**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—Is a commitment to deliver in the future a Year 2000 compliant version of a software product to an existing customer or to a customer that is acquiring a non-Year 2000 compliant version considered an upgrade right or specified upgrade in accordance with SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700)?

**Reply**—Yes. The criteria of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) related to specified upgrades apply whether or not the commitment is contained under a warranty provision. Given the ramifications of non-Year 2000 compliant software, special attention should be given to paragraphs 13 and 14 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.13–.14). Further, the SEC released an Interpretation in August 1998 titled, *Statement of the Commission Regarding Disclosure of Year 2000 Issues and Consequences by Public Companies, Investment Advisors, Investment Companies, and Municipal Securities Issuers*. Part of that Interpretation states, “Year 2000 issues may affect the timing of revenue recognition in accordance with (SOP 97-2 [ACC 10,700]). For example, if a vendor licenses a product that is not Year 2000 compliant and commits to deliver a Year 2000 compliant version in the future, the revenue from the transaction should be allocated to the various elements—the software and the upgrade. Entities should also consider FASB Statement No. 48, *Revenue Recognition When the Right of Return Exists* (AC R75), relating to any product return issues such as for products containing hardware and software, including whether the necessary conditions have been met to recognize revenue in the period of sale, whether that revenue should be deferred, or whether an allowance for sales return should be provided.” In such situations, a vendor generally would be required to defer all revenue until it delivers the upgraded (compliant) version.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.41 Effect of Prepayments on Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—Paragraph 29 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.29), states that if a fee on a software arrangement with extended payment terms is not fixed or determinable at the outset of an arrangement revenue should be recognized as payments become due. Should a vendor recognize revenue for amounts (related to an arrangement with extended payment terms) received directly from customers (without the software vendor's participation in its customers' financing arrangements) in advance of scheduled payments?

**Reply**—Yes, provided all other requirements of revenue recognition in SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) are met.

**.42 Extended Payment Terms and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—A software vendor with a fiscal year ending September 30 enters into a licensing arrangement and simultaneously delivers its product to a customer on September 29. Payment terms are as follows: \$600,000 due thirty days from September 29; \$400,000 due thirteen months from September 29. The licensing fee is not fixed or determinable because a significant portion of the fee is due more than one year after delivery of the software and the vendor cannot overcome the presumption in paragraph 28 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.28). How much revenue should the vendor recognize during the current fiscal year ending September 30?

**Reply**—None. Paragraph 29 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.29) requires that the vendor recognize revenue as payments from customers become due (assuming all other conditions for revenue recognition in the SOP are met). In this situation, \$600,000 should be recognized as revenue on October 29 when the payment becomes due and the remaining \$400,000 should be recognized twelve months later on October 29 of the following fiscal year.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.43 Corrections of Errors in Computer Software (Bug Fixes)**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—A software vendor licenses software products to customers. Customers may elect to obtain postcontract customer support (PCS) from the software vendor as an element of the software arrangement, or customers may choose not to obtain PCS. In order to satisfy its warranty obligations, the software vendor provides bug fixes (free of charge) that are necessary to maintain compliance with published specifications to those customers that do not obtain PCS from the software vendor.

Paragraph 31 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.31), states, "... obligations related to warranties for defective software, including warranties that are routine, short-term, and relatively minor, should be accounted for in conformity with FASB Statement No. 5." However, the SOP's glossary (ACC 10,700.149) indicates that PCS may include services such as the correction of errors (for example, bug fixing). If a software vendor provides bug fixes (under warranty obligations) free of charge that are necessary to maintain compliance with published specifications, should the software vendor account for the estimated costs to correct the bugs in accordance with FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies* (AC C59), or should the vendor consider the practice of providing bug fixes free of charge part of PCS (which may result in the deferral of revenue)?

*Reply*—In this situation, the software vendor should account for the estimated costs to provide bug fixes (that are necessary to maintain compliance with published specifications) in accordance with FASB Statement No. 5 (AC C59).

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.44 Postcontract Customer Support During the Deployment Phase of Computer Software**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—A software vendor enters into an arrangement with a customer to deliver its software product and to provide postcontract customer support (PCS). The product will be deployed in stages. The stipulated term of the PCS period begins six months after delivery of the product, though the vendor has a history of regularly making available to all customers the services or unspecified upgrades/enhancements normally associated with PCS as soon as its products are delivered. (That is, the customer receives any upgrades/enhancements released by the vendor during the six-month period after product delivery.) The PCS rate inherent in the licensing fee increases over time based on the customer's deployment of the product. After three years, the predetermined renewal rate for PCS for a fully deployed license is set at a stipulated rate multiplied by the aggregate list price (as established at the inception of the arrangement) of the licensed product, regardless of the status of the deployment efforts. The vendor does not have vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE) of fair value of the PCS when the product is less than fully deployed because the only PCS sold separately is the renewal of PCS (that is, the predetermined renewal rate). Is PCS considered to commence at the date of product delivery or six months after delivery? Should the vendor consider the PCS predetermined renewal rate to be VSOE of fair value for PCS?

*Reply*—In this situation, the PCS arrangement commences upon product delivery because the customer receives any upgrades/enhancements released by the vendor during the six-month period after product delivery. In addition, the predetermined renewal rate is the only indicator of fair value because it is the only arrangement under which PCS is sold separately, and therefore, it should be used to establish VSOE of fair value of the PCS. In this situation, the vendor should initially defer the portion of the arrangement fee related to the three and one-half years of PCS provided under the arrangement based on the predetermined renewal rate.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.45 Effect of Change in License Mix on Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Software arrangements may allow a user to change or alternate its use of multiple products/licenses (license mix) included in a license arrangement after those products have been delivered by the software vendor. The user has the right under the arrangement to deploy and utilize at least one copy of each licensed product (that is, the user has a license to use each delivered product). The products may or may not be similar in functionality. These arrangements may limit the customer's use at any time to any mix or combination of the products as long as the cumulative value of all products in use does not exceed the total license fee. Certain of these arrangements may not limit usage of a product or products, but rather, they may limit the number of users that simultaneously can use the products (referred to as concurrent user pricing). When should the software vendor recognize revenue for these kinds of arrangements?

*Reply*—If the other criteria in SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700), for revenue recognition are met, revenue should be recognized upon delivery of the first copy or product master for all of the products within the license mix. Subsequent remixing is not an exchange or a return of software because the master or first copy of all products has been licensed and delivered, and the customer has the right to use them.

**.46 Nonmonetary Exchanges of Software (Part I)**

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Is an exchange by a software vendor of a license of its software to a customer in exchange for a license to the customer's technology that permits the software vendor to sublicense the customer's technology to other customers as a component of the software vendor's products or as a stand-alone additional product the culmination of the earnings process? That is, should that exchange be recorded at fair value or at carryover basis?

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

*Reply*—Paragraph 21a of APB Opinion No. 29, *Accounting for Nonmonetary Transactions*, states that an exchange of a product or property held for sale in the ordinary course of business for a product or property to be sold in the same line of business to facilitate sales to customers other than the parties to the exchange does not culminate an earning process. Therefore, if the technology/products received by the software vendor in the exchange were to be sold, licensed, or leased in the same line of business as the software vendor's technology/products delivered in the exchange, the software vendor should record the exchange at carryover basis. However, if the technology/products received by the software vendor in the exchange were to be sold, licensed, or leased in a different line of business from the software vendor's technology/products delivered in the exchange, the exchange is the culmination of the earnings process and the exchange should be recorded at fair value provided that:

1. the fair value of the technology/products exchanged or received can be determined within reasonable limits (that is, vendor-specific objective evidence of fair value of the software given up, or the value of the technology/products received, as if the software vendor had received or paid cash), and
2. the technology/products received in the exchange are expected, at the time of the exchange, to be deployed and utilized by the software vendor and the value ascribed to the transaction reasonably reflects such expected use.

If neither the fair value of the technology/products exchanged nor the fair value of the technology/products received can be reasonably determined, the exchange should be recorded at carryover basis. Paragraph 26 of APB Opinion No. 29 states that "if neither the fair value of a nonmonetary asset transferred nor the fair value of a nonmonetary asset received in exchange is determinable within reasonable limits, the recorded amount of the nonmonetary asset transferred from the enterprise may be the only available measure of the transaction."

#### **.47 Nonmonetary Exchanges of Software (Part II)**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Is an exchange by a software vendor of a license of its software to a customer in exchange for a license to the customer's technology that the software vendor intends to utilize for internal use the culmination of the earnings process? That is, should that exchange be recorded at fair value or at carryover basis?

*Reply*—Providing that the fair value of either of the nonmonetary assets involved in the transaction can be determined within reasonable limits, the

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

software vendor should record the exchange at fair value because the exchange is subject to the guidance in paragraph 18 of APB Opinion No. 29, *Accounting for Nonmonetary Transactions*. Further, EITF Issue No. 86-29, *Nonmonetary Transactions: Magnitude of Boot and the Exception to the Use of Fair Value*, which provides guidance on interpreting APB Opinion No. 29, states that a product or property held for sale and exchanged for a productive asset does not fall within the modifications to the basic principle of paragraph 18 of APB 29 (even if they were in same line of business) and should be recorded at fair value.

Thus, that exchange is the culmination of the earnings process and that exchange should be recorded at fair value provided that:

1. the fair value of the technology/products exchanged or received can be determined within reasonable limits (that is, vendor-specific objective evidence of fair value of the software given up, or the value of the technology/products received, as if the software vendor had received or paid cash), and
2. the technology/products received in the exchange are expected, at the time of the exchange, to be deployed and utilized by the software vendor and the value ascribed to the transaction reasonably reflects such expected use.

If neither the fair value of the technology/products exchanged nor the fair value of the technology/products received can be reasonably determined, the exchange should be recorded at carryover basis. Paragraph 26 of APB Opinion No. 29 states that “if neither the fair value of a nonmonetary asset transferred nor the fair value of a nonmonetary asset received in exchange is determinable within reasonable limits, the recorded amount of the nonmonetary asset transferred from the enterprise may be the only available measure of the transaction.”

The following matrix summarizes the answers in sections 5100.46–.47:

<i>Software Vendor's Technology Exchanged</i>	<i>Software Vendor's Use of Technology Received</i>	<i>Same Line of Business</i>	<i>Accounting Treatment</i>
Software product held for sale in the ordinary course of business (that is, inventory) <sup>1</sup>	Technology to be held for sale in the ordinary course of business (that is, inventory) <sup>2</sup>	1. Yes	1. Record at historical cost
Software product held for sale in the ordinary course of business (that is, inventory)	Internal-use software <sup>4</sup>	2. No	2. Record at fair value <sup>3</sup>
		N/A	Record at fair value <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Licenses to software products, source code, and object code that the software vendor sells, licenses, or leases in the ordinary course of business would constitute inventory.

<sup>2</sup> A software vendor that receives any of the following would be receiving inventory

- a. a product to resell, sublicense, or sublease,
- b. a right to embed the technology received into a product, or
- c. a right to further develop the technology received into a product.

<sup>3</sup> Assumes that vendor-specific objective evidence of fair value exists and the transaction has a business purpose.

<sup>4</sup> A software vendor that receives any of the following would be receiving something other than inventory

- a. a product or technology that only can be used internally (for example, a financial or

The following example illustrates the answers in sections 5100.46–.47:

Software vendor XYZ licenses software product A (a suite of financial accounting applications) to customers in the normal course of business. Software vendor XYZ has vendor-specific objective evidence of fair value of product A resulting from prior cash transactions with its customers. Product A includes technology (Product B) sublicensed by software vendor XYZ from Company PQR.

Software vendor XYZ agrees to exchange product A with Company PQR for licenses to product B. Software vendor XYZ intends to relicense product B (as a stand-alone product or embedded in product A) to its customers. Company PQR intends to use product A for internal use.

**Accounting by software vendor XYZ.** The exchange of product A for product B by software vendor XYZ would not result in the culmination of the earnings process for software vendor XYZ because software vendor XYZ exchanged property held for sale (product A) for property to be sold in the same line of business (product B) to facilitate future sales to other customers. The exchange should be recorded at carryover basis (that is, no revenue should be recognized until product B was sublicensed to other customers in a subsequent transaction).

**Accounting by Company PQR.** The exchange of product B for product A by Company PQR would result in the culmination of the earnings process for Company PQR because Company PQR exchanged property held for sale (product B) for a productive asset (product A, which will be used by Company PQR as an amortizable asset). The exchange should be recorded by Company PQR at fair value (that is, revenue should be recognized on the exchange). Such accounting treatment is based on the fact that the fair value of the technology exchanged or received can be reasonably determined and that a business purpose exists for the transaction.

#### .48 Application of Contract Accounting in Software Arrangements (Part I)

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—In paragraph 7 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC section 10,700 paragraph .07), what is the meaning of the phrase “using the relevant guidance herein?”

**Reply**—The phrase “using the relevant guidance herein” refers to paragraphs 74-91 of SOP 97-2 (ACC section 10,700 paragraphs .74–.91), which

---

management application)

b. a product or technology that only can be used internally to make a product but which does not become part of the product.

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

provide guidance on applying contract accounting to certain arrangements involving software.

#### **.49 Application of Contract Accounting in Software Arrangements (Part II)**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Footnote 4 to paragraph 7 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.07), states: “If a software arrangement includes services that meet the criteria discussed in paragraph 65 (ACC 10,700.65) of this SOP, those services should be accounted for separately.” The type of services addressed by paragraph 65 (ACC 10,700.63) are described in paragraph 63 and specifically exclude post contract customer support (PCS)-related services. For a software arrangement that is subject to contract accounting and that includes PCS-related services (other than those meeting the cost accrual criteria in paragraph 59 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.59)), how should the software vendor account for such PCS-related services?

*Reply*—If the software vendor has vendor-specific objective evidence of the fair value of such PCS-related services that has been determined pursuant to paragraph 57 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.57), those PCS-related services should be accounted for separately from the balance of the arrangement that is being accounted for in conformity with Accounting Research Bulletin (ARB) No. 45, *Long-Term Construction-Type Contracts* and the relevant guidance in paragraphs 74-91 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.74-.91), and in SOP 81-1, *Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type and Certain Production-Type Contracts* (ACC 10,330).

#### **.50 Definition of More-Than-Insignificant Discount and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—As discussed in paragraph 3 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.03), in connection with the licensing of an existing product, a vendor might offer a small or insignificant discount on additional

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

licenses of the licensed product or other products that exist at the time of the offer but are not part of the arrangement. Paragraph 3 indicates that those discounts are not within the scope of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700). However, footnote 3 to paragraph 3 (ACC 10,700.03) states that “[i]f the discount or other concessions in an arrangement are more than insignificant, a presumption is created that an additional element(s) (as defined in paragraph 9) is being offered in the arrangement.” What is a “more-than-insignificant” discount, as discussed in footnote 3 to paragraph 3 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.03)?

**Reply**—For purposes of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700), a more-than-insignificant discount with respect to future purchases that is provided in a software arrangement is a discount that is: (1) incremental to the range of discounts reflected in the pricing of the other elements of the arrangement, (2) incremental to the range of discounts typically given in comparable transactions, and (3) significant. Insignificant discounts and discounts that are not incremental to discounts typically given in comparable transactions (for example, volume purchase discounts comparable to those generally provided in comparable transactions) are not unique to software transactions and are not included in the scope of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700). Judgment is required when assessing whether an incremental discount is significant.

The provisions of footnote 3 to paragraph 3 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.03), should not be applied to an option within a software arrangement that allows the customer to purchase additional copies of products licensed by and delivered to the customer under the same arrangement. In that case, revenue should be recognized as the rights to additional copies are purchased, based on the price per copy as stated in the arrangement. Additional copies of delivered software are not considered an undelivered element. Paragraph 21 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.21), says that duplication of software is considered incidental to an arrangement, and the delivery criterion is met upon the delivery of the first copy or product master.

#### **.51 Accounting for Significant Incremental Discounts in Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—How should a software vendor account for significant incremental discounts that are within the scope of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700)?

**Reply**—If a software arrangement includes a right to a significant incremental discount on a customer's future purchase of a product(s) or service(s), a proportionate amount of that significant incremental discount should be applied to each element covered by the arrangement based on each element's

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

fair value (VSOE) without regard to the significant incremental discount. (See examples 1–6 below.)

If (a) the future product(s) or service(s) to which the discount is to be applied is not specified in the arrangement (for example, a customer is allowed a discount on any future purchases), or (b) the fair value of the future purchases cannot be determined under paragraph 10 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.10), but the maximum amount of the incremental discount on the future purchases is quantifiable, that quantifiable amount should be allocated to the elements of the arrangement and the future purchases assuming that the customer will purchase the minimum amount necessary to utilize the maximum discount. (See examples 2 and 3 below.)

If the maximum amount of the significant incremental discount on future purchases is not quantifiable (for example, the future purchases that can be purchased under the significant incremental discount arrangement are not limited by quantity of product(s) or service(s)), revenue otherwise allocated to each element covered by the arrangement without regard to the significant incremental discount should be reduced by the rate of the significant incremental discount. (See example 5 below.)

The portion of the fee that is deferred as a result of the significant incremental discount should be recognized as revenue proportionately as the future purchases are delivered, assuming all other revenue recognition criteria are met, such that a consistent discount rate is applied to all purchases under the arrangement. If the future purchases are not limited by quantity of product(s) or service(s), the portion of the fee that is deferred as a result of the presence of a significant incremental discount should be recognized as revenue as a subscription in accordance with paragraphs 48 and 49 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.48–.49).

**Examples** (For purposes of the examples, VSOE of fair value equals list price)

**Example 1:** A software vendor sells Product A for \$40 along with a right to a discount (the “coupon”) of \$30 on another of its software products, Product B. VSOE of fair value for Product A is \$40 and VSOE of fair value for Product B is \$60. The \$30 discount on Product B is a significant incremental discount that would not normally be given in comparable transactions.

The vendor should allocate the \$30 discount across Product A and Product B. The overall discount is 30% (\$30/\$100). Therefore, upon the delivery of Product A, the vendor would recognize \$28 of revenue and defer \$12. If the customer uses the discount and purchases Product B, the vendor would recognize \$42 in revenue upon delivery of Product B (\$30 in cash received plus the \$12 previously deferred). If the discount expires unused, the \$12 in deferred revenue would be recognized at that time.

**Example 2:** A software vendor sells Product A for \$40 along with a right to a discount (the “coupon”) of \$20 on any one of its other software products, Products B through Z. VSOE of fair value for Product A is \$40 and VSOE of fair value for Products B through Z ranges from \$30 to \$100. The \$20 discount is a significant incremental discount that would not normally be given in comparable transactions.

The vendor should allocate the \$20 discount across Product A and the assumed purchase of whichever of Product B through Z has the lowest fair value (\$30). The overall discount is 28.57% (\$20/\$70).

Therefore, upon delivery of Product A, the vendor would recognize \$28.57 in revenue, and defer \$11.43. If the customer uses the discount and purchases the additional Product with a fair value of \$30, the vendor would recognize \$21.43 in revenue upon its delivery (the \$11.43 previously deferred and the additional cash license fee due of \$10). If the discount expires unused, the \$11.43 in deferred revenue would be recognized at that time.

**Example 3:** A software vendor sells Product A for \$40 along with a right to a discount (the “coupon”) of 50% off list price on any future purchases of its other software products, Products B through Z, with a maximum cumulative discount of \$100. VSOE of fair value for Product A is \$40 and VSOE of fair value for Products B through Z ranges from \$20 to \$100. The 50% discount is a significant incremental discount that would not normally be given in comparable transactions.

The vendor should assume that the maximum discount will be utilized. Therefore, the vendor would allocate the \$100 discount across Product A and the assumed additional products to be purchased. The overall discount is 41.67% ( $\$100/\$240$ ). Therefore, upon the delivery of Product A, the vendor would recognize \$23.33 of revenue and defer \$16.67. If the customer uses the discount by purchasing additional products with fair value totaling \$200, the vendor would recognize \$116.67 in revenue upon delivery of those products (\$100 in cash received plus the \$16.67 previously deferred). If the discount expires unused, the \$16.67 in deferred revenue would be recognized at that time.

**Example 4:** A software vendor sells Product A for \$60, which represents a 40% discount off its list price (VSOE) of \$100. In the same transaction, it also provides the right to a discount of 60% off of the list price (VSOE) on any future purchases of units of software Product B for the next 6 months with a maximum discount of \$200. The discount of 60% on future purchases of units of Product B is a discount not normally given in comparable transactions.

Because the discount offered on future purchases of Product B is not normally given in comparable transactions and is both significant and incremental in relation to the 40% discount, it must be accounted for as part of the original sale consistent with example 3 in the preceding. The vendor should assume that the maximum discount will be utilized. Therefore, the vendor would allocate the \$240 discount (\$40 on Product A and \$200 maximum on future purchases) across Product A and the assumed additional products to be purchased. The overall discount is 55.38% ( $\$240/\$433.33$ ) — (\$433.33 is the sum of the \$100 list price of Product A and the \$333.33 accumulated list price of Product B that results in a maximum discount of \$200). Therefore, upon the delivery of Product A, the vendor would recognize \$44.62 of revenue and defer \$15.38. If the customer uses the discount by purchasing additional products with fair value totaling \$333.33, the vendor would recognize \$148.71 in revenue upon delivery of those products (\$133.33 in cash received plus the \$15.38 previously deferred). If the discount expires unused, the \$15.38 in deferred revenue would be recognized at that time.

**Example 5:** A software vendor sells Product A for \$40 along with a right to a discount (the “coupon”) of 50% off list price on any future purchases of its other software products, Products B through Z, with no maximum cumulative discount. VSOE of fair value for Product A is

\$40 and VSOE of fair value (which equals list price) of Products B through Z ranges from \$20 to \$100. The 50% discount is a significant incremental discount that would not normally be given in comparable transactions.

The vendor should apply the 50% discount to Product A and all future products purchased using the discount. Therefore, upon the delivery of Product A, the vendor would recognize \$20 of revenue and defer \$20. If the customer purchases additional products using the discount, the vendor would recognize revenue equal to the cash received upon the delivery of those products. The previously deferred \$20 should be accounted for as a subscription in accordance with paragraphs 48 and 49 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.48–.49), and recognized pro rata over the discount period or, if no period is specified in the arrangement, over the estimated period during which additional purchases will be made.

**Example 6:** A software vendor sells Product A for \$30 along with the right to a discount for 70% off list price (VSOE) on any future purchases of its other software products, Products B through P, for the next 6 months with no maximum cumulative discount. Product A is also given at a 70% discount and the VSOE of fair value of Product A is \$100.

As the discount offered on future purchases over the next 6 months is equal to the discount offered on the current purchase (70%), there is no accounting necessary in the original sale for the discount offered on future purchases.

#### **.52 Fair Value of PCS in a Perpetual License and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—The fee for a perpetual software license includes post-contract customer support (PCS) services for a term of two years. However, only one-year PCS renewal rates are offered to those holding the perpetual license rights. Do rates for the PCS renewal terms provide vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE) of the fair value of the PCS element included (bundled) in the software arrangement pursuant to the provisions in paragraphs 10 and 57 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.10 and .57)?

**Reply**—Yes, if the PCS renewal rate and term are substantive. The dollar amount of the one-year PCS renewal rate multiplied by two (which reflects the PCS term included in the arrangement) constitutes VSOE of the fair value of PCS pursuant to the provisions in paragraphs 10 and 57 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.10 and .57).

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.53 Fair Value of PCS in a Short-Term Time-Based License and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—A multiple-element software arrangement subject to the accounting requirements of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700), provides a 12-month time-based software license that includes (bundles) 6 months of post-contract customer support (PCS) services for a total fee of \$100,000, and specifies a 6-month renewal fee for PCS services of \$5,000. Are there arrangements that include time-based software licenses and PCS services wherein the duration of the time-based software license is so short that a renewal rate or fee for the PCS services does not represent vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE) of the fair value of the bundled PCS?

**Reply**—Yes, and the fact pattern in this question is an example of such a situation. For time-based software licenses with a duration of one year or less, the fair value of the bundled PCS services is not reliably measured by reference to a PCS renewal rate. The short time frame during which any unspecified upgrade provided under the PCS agreement can be used by the licensee creates a circumstance whereby one cannot objectively demonstrate the VSOE of fair value of the licensee's right to unspecified upgrades.

Though a PCS service element may not be of significant value when it is provided in a short duration time-based license, SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700), does not provide for an exception from its provision that VSOE of fair value is required for each element of a multiple-element arrangement. Consequently, when there is no VSOE of the fair value of PCS services included (bundled) in a multiple-element arrangement, even if the arrangement provides a short duration time-based software license, the total arrangement fee would be recognized under paragraph 12 (or paragraph 59, if applicable) of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.12 or .59, if applicable). Section 5100.54 addresses circumstances where a PCS renewal rate in connection with a multi-year time-based license may not constitute VSOE of the fair value of PCS.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

#### .54 Fair Value of PCS in a Multi-Year Time-Based License and Software Revenue Recognition

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Arrangements for multi-year time-based software licenses may include: 1) initial (bundled) post-contract customer support (PCS) services for only a portion of the software license's term (for example, a five-year time-based software license that includes initial PCS services for one year) and 2) a renewal rate for PCS for an additional year(s) within the time-based license period. Does that renewal rate constitute vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE) of the fair value of the PCS under paragraphs 10 and 57 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.10 and .57)?

*Reply*—Yes, if the PCS renewal rate and term are substantive. Circumstances that indicate that the PCS renewal rate or term is **not** substantive include:

- The period of initial (bundled) PCS services is relatively long compared to the term of the software license (for example, four years of initial PCS services in connection with a five-year time-based software license, with a specified PCS renewal rate for the remaining year).
- The aggregate PCS renewal term is less than the initial (bundled) PCS period (for example, a 5-year time-based software license with three year bundled PCS and two annual PCS renewals).
- A PCS renewal rate that is significantly below the vendor's normal pricing practices in combination with a time-based software license that is for a relatively short period (for example, a two-year time-based software license that includes initial [bundled] PCS for one year for a total arrangement fee of \$1,000,000 and that stipulates a PCS renewal rate for the second year of \$25,000 when the vendor's normal pricing practices suggest higher renewal rates).

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.55 Fair Value of PCS With a Consistent Renewal Percentage (But Varying Renewal Dollar Amounts) and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—A software vendor charges Customer A \$100,000 for a software license with a post-contract customer support (PCS) renewal rate of 15% of the license fee while charging Customer B \$150,000 for the same software license with a PCS renewal rate of 15% of the license fee. Does the existence of varying dollar amounts of PCS renewal fees for the same software product (resulting from using a renewal rate that is a consistent percentage of the stipulated software license fee for the same software product) indicate an absence of vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE) of the fair value of PCS or the possible presence of discounts on PCS that should be accounted for under paragraph 11 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.11)?

**Reply**—No. Assuming that the PCS renewal rate expressed as a consistent percentage of the stipulated license fee for customers is substantive, that PCS renewal rate would be the VSOE of the fair value of PCS.

**.56 Concessions and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—Paragraph 27 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.27), states that “Because a product’s continuing value may be reduced due to the subsequent introduction of enhanced products by the vendor or its competitors, the possibility that the vendor still may provide a refund or concession to a credit-worthy customer to liquidate outstanding amounts due under the original terms of the arrangement increases as payment terms become longer.” What kinds of changes to an arrangement would be considered concessions?

**Reply**—Concessions by a software vendor may take many forms and include, but are not limited to, any one of the following kinds of changes to the terms of an arrangement:

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

- Changes that would have affected the original amount of revenue recognized;
- Changes that reduce the arrangement fee or extend the terms of payment;
- Changes that increase the deliverables or extend the customer's rights beyond those in the original transaction.

Examples of concessions by a software vendor that reduce an arrangement fee or extend the terms of payment include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Extending payment due dates in the arrangement (except when the extension is due to credit problems of the customer).
- Decreasing total payments due under the arrangement (except when the decrease is due to credit problems of the customer).
- Paying financing fees on a customer's financing arrangement that was not contemplated in the original arrangement.
- Accepting returns that were not required to be accepted under the terms of the original arrangement.

Examples of concessions by a software vendor that increase the deliverables include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Providing discounted or free post-contract customer support that was not included in the original arrangement.
- Providing various types of other discounted or free services (beyond those provided as part of the vendor's normal product offerings or warranty provisions), upgrades, or products that were not included in the original arrangement.
- Allowing the customer to have access to products not licensed under the original arrangement without an appropriate increase in the arrangement fee.
- For term licenses, extending the time frame for a reseller to sell the software or an end user to use the software.
- For limited licenses, extending the geographic area in which a reseller is allowed to sell the software, or the number of locations in which an end user can use the software.

Although the nature of a concession may vary by type of arrangement, many of the preceding concessions could be granted for any type of license arrangement regardless of its form (that is, term arrangement, perpetual arrangement, site license arrangement, enterprise license arrangement, and so on).

Examples of changes to the terms of an arrangement that are not concessions include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Changes that increase the deliverables with a corresponding appropriate increase in the arrangement fee.
- Changes that eliminate the software vendor's delivery obligation without a refund of cash.

**.57 Overcoming Presumption of Concessions in Extended Payment Term Arrangements and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph 28 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.28), indicates that, if a significant portion of the software licensing fee is not due until after expiration of the license or more than twelve months after delivery, the licensing fee should be presumed not to be fixed or determinable. That presumption may be overcome by evidence that the vendor has a standard business practice of using long-term or installment contracts and a history of successfully collecting under the original payment terms without making concessions. What types of evidence are useful in determining whether the vendor has a history of successfully collecting under the original payment terms without making concessions?

*Reply*—To have a “a history of successfully collecting under the original payment terms without making concessions,” a vendor would have to have collected all payments as due under comparable arrangements without providing concessions. For example, one year of payments under three-year payment arrangements would not provide sufficient history because all of the payments under the contracts would not yet have been paid as due.

In addition to a history of collecting payments as due without making concessions, paragraph 14 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.14) requires that the software vendor must intend not to provide refunds or concessions that are beyond the provisions of the arrangement.

In evaluating a vendor’s history, the historical arrangements should be comparable to the current arrangement relative to terms and circumstances to conclude that the history is relevant. Examples of factors that should be assessed in this evaluation include, but are not limited to, the following:

**Similarity of Customers**

- **Type or Class of Customer:** New arrangements with substantially the same types and class of customer is an indicator that the history is relevant. Significant differences call into question the relevance of the history.

**Similarity of Products Included**

- **Types of Products:** Similarity in the types of products included under the new license arrangement (for example, financial systems, production planning, and human resources).
- **Stage of Product Life Cycle:** Product maturity and overall stage within its product life cycle should be considered when assessing the relevance of history. The inclusion of new products in a license arrangement should not

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

automatically preclude the vendor from concluding that the software products are comparable. For example, if substantially all of the products under one license arrangement are mature products, the inclusion of a small number of newly developed products in a subsequent arrangement may not change the overall risk of concession and economic substance of the subsequent transaction.

- **Elements Included in the Arrangement:** There are no significant differences in the nature of the elements included in the arrangements. The inclusion of significant rights to services or discounts on future products in some arrangements, but not others, could indicate that there is a significant difference between the arrangements. For example, a history developed for arrangements that included bundled post-contract customer support (PCS) and rights to additional software products would not be comparable to an arrangement that does not include these rights.

#### Similarity of License Economics

- **Length of Payment Terms:** In order for the history to be considered relevant, the overall payment terms should be similar. Although a nominal increase in the length of payment terms may be acceptable, a significant increase in the length of the payment terms may indicate that the terms are not comparable.
- **Economics of License Arrangement:** The overall economics and term of the license arrangement should be reviewed to ensure that the vendor can conclude that the history developed under a previous arrangement is relevant, particularly if the primary products licensed are near the end of their lives and the customer would not be entitled to the updated version under a PCS arrangement.

#### .58 Effect of Prepayments on Software Revenue Recognition (Part II)

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—Paragraph 28 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.28) says that any extended payment terms in a software licensing arrangement may indicate that the fee is not fixed or determinable. In addition, the licensing fee is presumed not to be fixed or determinable if payment of a significant portion of the fee is not due until after expiration of the license or more than twelve months after delivery. Is the presumption overcome if the software vendor transfers the rights to receive amounts due on an extended payment term arrangement to an independent third party without recourse to the vendor?

**Reply**—No. The presumption that the licensing fee is not fixed or determinable is NOT overcome if at the outset of the arrangement, or subsequently, the vendor receives cash on the transfer of the extended payment term arrangement. That answer does not change if the extended payment term

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

arrangement is irrevocably transferred or otherwise converted to cash without recourse to the vendor. The difference in this situation as compared to section 5100.41 (which addresses prepayments received directly from customers) is that the transfer of the extended payment term arrangement does not change the nature or structure of the transaction between the vendor and customer. Therefore, the presumption in paragraph 28 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.28) has not been overcome.

**.59 Subsequent Cash Receipt in an Extended Payment Term Arrangement for Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph 28 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.28), says that the presumption that an extended payment term license fee due more than twelve months after delivery of the software is not fixed or determinable *may* be overcome by evidence that the software vendor has a standard business practice of using long-term or installment contracts and has a history of successfully collecting under the original payment terms without making concessions. A calendar year end software vendor enters into a two-year installment payment licensing arrangement with a customer on December 1 and the first payment is due in May of the following year. Subsequent to its December 31 year end but before it issues the financial statements, the software vendor receives from the customer payment of the full amount due. As of December 1, the software vendor has met all other conditions of revenue recognition except that it does not have a standard business practice of using long-term or installment contracts. Does the subsequent cash receipt provide sufficient evidence to render the licensing fee as fixed or determinable, and thus allow the software vendor to recognize revenue in the December 31 financial statements?

*Reply*—No. Paragraph 29 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.29) requires that the software vendor make the determination of whether the fee is fixed or determinable at the outset of the arrangement, which in this situation is December 1. The only circumstances sufficient to overcome the presumption that the license fee is not fixed or determinable are that the software vendor has (1) a standard business practice of using long-term or installment contracts and (2) has a history of successfully collecting under the original payment terms without making concessions. Since the software vendor has met all other conditions of revenue recognition, it should recognize revenue in the period it receives payment in full directly from the customer (see section 5100.41, *Effect of Prepayments on Software Revenue Recognition*).

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.60 Customer Financing With No Software Vendor Participation and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

(For illustrative purposes, the following inquiry and reply assumes that the software arrangement is a single product/single element arrangement; however, the inquiry and reply also applies to multiple element arrangements.)

*Inquiry*—Section 5100.41 addresses a situation in which a customer obtains financing, without the software vendor's participation, and prepays amounts due the software vendor under previously negotiated extended payment terms. That TPA indicates that a software vendor should recognize revenue in advance of scheduled payments if amounts related to extended payment terms are received directly from customers without the software vendor's participation in its customers' financing arrangements, providing all other requirements of revenue recognition in SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700), are met. Section 5100.58 indicates a software vendor should not recognize revenue in advance of scheduled payments if amounts related to extended payment terms are received as a result of the software vendor's transfer of a customer's extended payment term obligation to a third party, without recourse to the software vendor. Given the two aforementioned TPAs, how should a software vendor recognize revenue if it enters into an arrangement with an end user customer that contains customary (that is, non-extended) payment terms and the end user customer obtains, without the software vendor's participation, financing from a party unrelated to the software vendor?

*Reply*—Because the software arrangement's payment terms are not extended, as contemplated in paragraph 28 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.28), and the software vendor does not participate in the end user customer's financing, the software vendor should recognize revenue upon delivery of the software product, provided all other requirements of revenue recognition in SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700), are met.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.61 Effect of Prepayments on Software Revenue Recognition When Vendor Participates in Customer Financing**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

(For illustrative purposes, the following inquiry and reply assumes that the software arrangement is a single product/single element arrangement; however, the inquiry and reply also applies to multiple element arrangements.)

*Inquiry*—Section 5100.41 addresses a situation in which amounts related to extended payment terms are received directly from customers without the software vendor's participation in its customers' financing arrangements. The specific reference to *without participation* suggests that the answer might be different if the software vendor *participates* in the customer's financing. How should a software vendor recognize revenue under SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700), if it enters into an arrangement with an end user customer that contains extended payment terms and the software vendor receives payments in advance of the scheduled due dates after the software vendor participated in the customer's financing with a party unrelated to the software vendor?

*Reply*—If the software vendor's participation in the customer's financing results in incremental risk that the software vendor will provide a refund or concession to either the end user customer or the financing party (as discussed in section 5100.62), the presumption is that the fee is not fixed or determinable. If the software vendor cannot overcome that presumption, the software vendor should recognize revenue as payments from the customer become due and payable to the financing party, provided all other requirements of revenue recognition in SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) are met. The software vendor should account for any proceeds received from the customer or the financing party prior to revenue recognition as a liability for deferred revenue. Section 5100.63 addresses when the presumption may be overcome.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.62 Indicators of Incremental Risk and Their Effect on the Evaluation of Whether a Fee is Fixed or Determinable and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

(For illustrative purposes, the following inquiry and reply assumes that the software arrangement is a single product/single element arrangement; however, the inquiry and reply also applies to multiple element arrangements.)

*Inquiry*—Based on the reply to section 5100.61, and as implied in section 5100.41, considering whether a software vendor participated in the customer's financing is important to how revenue is recognized in a software arrangement that contains extended payment terms. A software vendor enters into an arrangement with an end user customer that contains customary (that is, non-extended) payment terms for which the arrangement fee ordinarily would be considered fixed or determinable. Simultaneously with entering into a software arrangement, or prior to the scheduled payment due date(s), the software vendor participates in the end user customer's financing with a party unrelated to the software vendor. In what circumstances would the software vendor's participation in the end user customer's financing (a) preclude a determination by the software vendor that the software arrangement fee is fixed or determinable pursuant to paragraph 28 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.28), or (b) lead to a presumption (that can be overcome) that the fee is not fixed or determinable in accordance with paragraph 28 (ACC 10,700.28)?

*Reply*—A software arrangement fee is not fixed or determinable if a software vendor: (a) lacks the intent or ability to enforce the original payment terms of the software arrangement if the financing is not successfully completed, or (b) in past software arrangements, altered the terms of original software arrangements or entered into another arrangement with customers, to provide extended payment terms consistent with the terms of the financing. If a software vendor's participation in an end user customer's financing results in incremental risk that the software vendor will provide a refund or concession to either the end user customer or the financing party, there is a presumption that the arrangement fee is not fixed or determinable.

Any one of the following conditions or software vendor actions results in incremental risk and a presumption that the fee is not fixed or determinable:

1. Provisions that require the software vendor to indemnify the financing party in the preceding and beyond the standard indemnification provisions that are explicitly included in the software arrangement between the software vendor and the end user customer.
2. Provisions that require the software vendor to make representations to the financing party related to customer acceptance of the software that

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

are above and beyond the **written** acceptance documentation, if any, that the software vendor has already received from the end user customer.

3. Provisions that obligate the software vendor to take action (such as to terminate the license agreement and/or any related services), which results in more than insignificant direct incremental costs, against the customer on behalf of the financing party in the event that the end user customer defaults under the financing, unless, as part of the original arrangement, the customer explicitly authorizes the software vendor upon request by the financing party to take those specific actions against the customer and does not provide for concessions from the vendor as a result of such action.
4. Provisions that prohibit or limit the ability of the software vendor to enter into another software arrangement with the customer for the same or similar product if the end user customer defaults under the financing, unless, as part of the original arrangement, the customer explicitly authorizes the software vendor upon request by the financing party to take those specific actions against the customer.
5. Provisions that require the software vendor to guarantee, certify, or otherwise attest in any manner to the financing party that the customer meets the financing party's qualification criteria.
6. Software vendor has previously provided concessions to financing parties or to customers to facilitate or induce payment to financing parties.
7. Provisions that lead to the software vendor's guarantee of the customer's indebtedness to the financing party.

If the presumption is not overcome, the software vendor should recognize revenue as payments from the customer become due and payable to the financing party, provided all other requirements of revenue recognition in SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) are met.

### **.63 Overcoming the Presumption That a Fee is Not Fixed or Determinable When Vendor Participates in Customer Financing and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Section 5100.62 provides indicators of incremental risk that result in a presumption that a fee is not fixed or determinable in an arrangement in which a software vendor participates in an end user customer's financing with a party unrelated to the software vendor. What evidence should

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

the software vendor consider to overcome the presumption that the fee is not fixed or determinable, as discussed in section 5100.62?

*Reply*—The presumption may be overcome in certain circumstances. The software vendor should use the guidance in paragraph 28 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.28), and section 5100.57.

To overcome the presumption, there should be evidence that the software vendor has a standard business practice of entering into similar arrangements with financing parties that have substantially similar provisions, and has a history of not providing refunds or concessions to the customer or the financing party.

Additionally, with respect to incremental risk indicator 7 in section 5100.62, in those circumstances in which the software vendor has relevant history with arrangements in which it granted extended payment terms to its customers, the software vendor should consider that history. A history of the software vendor granting concessions to either (a) its customers in similar arrangements in which it provided extended payment terms or (b) unrelated financing parties in similar arrangements in which the software vendor participated, would prevent the software vendor from overcoming the presumption that the fee is not fixed or determinable.

In circumstances where there is sufficient evidence to overcome the presumption that the fee is not fixed or determinable, the software vendor should nevertheless evaluate the nature of the incremental risk to determine if there are other accounting ramifications, for example, accounting for the software vendor's continuing involvement that results from a guarantee of the customer's indebtedness (recourse).

#### **.64 Indicators of Vendor Participation in Customer Financing That Do Not Result in Incremental Risk and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

(For illustrative purposes, the following inquiry and reply assumes that the software arrangement is a single product/single element arrangement; however, the inquiry and reply also applies to multiple element arrangements.)

*Inquiry*—Related to section 5100.62, are there examples of software vendor actions that generally do not cause the software vendor to assume incremental risk that the software vendor will provide a refund or concession to either the end user customer or the financing party related to the software vendor's participation in an end user customer's financing of a software arrangement?

*Reply*—Yes. The following examples of software vendor actions generally do not cause a software vendor to assume incremental risk:

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

1. Software vendor introduces the customer and financing party and facilitates their discussions.
2. Software vendor assists the customer in pre-qualifying for financing as long as the software vendor does not guarantee, certify, or otherwise attest in any manner to the financing party that the customer meets the financing party's qualification criteria.
3. Software vendor represents to the financing party that the software vendor has free and clear title to the licensed software or the right to sublicense if the software vendor makes the same written representations in the software arrangement with the end user customer.
4. Software vendor warrants to the financing party that the software functions according to the software vendor's published specifications if the software vendor makes the same written warranty in the software arrangement with the end user customer.
5. Software vendor takes action, which was explicitly authorized by the customer in the original arrangement, to terminate the license agreement and/or any related services, or to not enter into another arrangement for the same or similar product.
6. Software vendor makes customary recourse provisions to its customer related to warranties for defective software.

**.65 Software Vendor Interest Rate Buy Downs on Customer Financing and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

(For illustrative purposes, the following inquiry and reply assumes that the software arrangement is a single product/single element arrangement; however, the inquiry and reply also applies to multiple element arrangements.)

*Inquiry*—A customer may desire, and a software vendor may be willing to assist the customer in obtaining financing with a party unrelated to the software vendor that has a more attractive interest rate than typically offered by the financing party. For example, a software vendor arranges to “buy down” the interest rate a financing party would otherwise charge to the software vendor’s customer. That interest rate “buy down” may occur simultaneously with the original arrangement between the software vendor and customer, or it may occur at a later point in time. Further, that interest rate “buy down” may occur with or without the customer’s awareness. Does either the point in time of the interest rate “buy down”, or the awareness by the customer of it, affect revenue recognition under SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700)?

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

*Reply*—The point in time that the interest rate “buy down” occurs affects revenue recognition, however, whether the customer is aware of the “buy down” does not affect revenue recognition.

An interest rate “buy down” which is evidenced contemporaneously and occurs simultaneously with the original arrangement between the software vendor and customer is considered an integral part of the arrangement because of its timing. Because the interest rate “buy down” is an integral part of the original arrangement, it is irrelevant whether the customer is or is not aware of it. The amount of the interest rate “buy down” should be treated as a reduction of the total arrangement fee to be recognized in accordance with SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700), and not as a financing or other expense.

A software vendor’s “buy down” of an interest rate which is not evidenced contemporaneously or occurs other than simultaneously with the original arrangement is not considered an integral part of the original arrangement, rather it constitutes a concession because it represents a reduction in the arrangement fee not contemplated in the original arrangement (see section 5100.56). Because the interest rate “buy down” is a concession, it is irrelevant whether the customer is or is not aware of it.

#### **.66 Consideration of Other TPAs on Customer Borrowing When Customer is a Reseller and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

(For illustrative purposes, the following inquiry and reply assumes that the software arrangement is a single product/single element arrangement; however, the inquiry and reply also applies to multiple element arrangements.)

*Inquiry*—The inquiries in section 5100.60–.65 specifically refer to a software vendor’s arrangements with an end user customer. Are the replies different if the customer is a reseller?

*Reply*—The inquiries and replies in section 5100.60–.65 are phrased in the context of end user customers to eliminate the additional discussion that may be necessary to address the complexities that exist for resellers. Paragraph 30 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.30), provides additional factors to consider in evaluating whether an arrangement fee is fixed or determinable if the customer is a reseller. The underlying concepts in the replies should be applied to customers that are resellers; however, all of the additional factors in paragraph 30 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.30), also should be considered. Further, the existence of financing by a reseller customer may increase the risk that:

1. Payment of the arrangement fee is substantially contingent on the distributor’s success at reselling the product.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

2. The reseller may not have the ability to honor a commitment to pay, which could increase the risk of software vendor concessions regardless of the source of the financing.
3. Returns or price protection cannot be reasonably estimated because of the potential for increased concession risk.

#### **.67 Customer Acceptance and Software Revenue recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph 20 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.20), says, “After delivery, if uncertainty exists about customer acceptance of the software, license revenue should not be recognized until acceptance occurs.” In a software arrangement that contains a customer acceptance provision, can a software vendor ever recognize revenue (provided all of the other revenue recognition criteria of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) have been met) before formal customer acceptance occurs?

*Reply*—Yes. Paragraph 20 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.20) is not intended to suggest that the mere existence of a customer acceptance provision precludes revenue recognition until formal acceptance has occurred. Items to consider in evaluating the effect of customer acceptance on revenue recognition include, but are not limited to, (a) historical experience with similar types of arrangements or products, (b) whether the acceptance provisions are specific to the customer or are included in all arrangements, (c) the length of the acceptance term, and (d) historical experience with the specific customer. Public registrants subject to SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700), should also consider the guidance in SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 101 (SAB 101), *Revenue Recognition in Financial Statements*, and the *Frequently Asked Questions* to SAB 101, as it relates to customer acceptance.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.68 Fair Value of PCS in Perpetual and Multi-Year Time-Based Licenses and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Software licenses for the same product currently are offered by a software vendor as: 1) a perpetual license and 2) a multi-year time-based license (for example, two or more years). The pricing of the licenses reflects the duration of the license rights. Vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE) of fair value exists for post-contract customer support (PCS) services in the perpetual licenses. For the multi-year time-based licenses, PCS services for the *entire* license term are included (bundled) in the license fee and there is no renewal rate inasmuch as the time-based license rights are coterminous with the PCS service period. Do the PCS renewal terms in the perpetual license provide VSOE of the fair value of the PCS services element included (bundled) in the multi-year time-based software arrangement pursuant to the provisions of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700)?

*Reply*—No. SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) states that VSOE of fair value is provided by the price charged when the same element is sold separately. PCS services for a perpetual license and PCS services for a multi-year time-based license are two different elements. Though the same unspecified product upgrades or enhancements may be provided under each PCS arrangement, the time period during which the software vendor's customer has the right to use such upgrades or enhancements differs based on the terms of the underlying licenses. Because PCS services are bundled for the entire term of the multi-year time-based license, those PCS services are not sold separately.

However, in the rare situations in which both of the following circumstances exist, the PCS renewal terms in a perpetual license provide VSOE of the fair value of the PCS services element included (bundled) in the multi-year time-based software arrangement: (1) the term of the multi-year time-based software arrangement is substantially the same as the estimated economic life of the software product and related enhancements that occur during that term; and (2) the fees charged for the perpetual (including fees from the assumed renewal of PCS for the estimated economic life of the software) and multi-year time-based licenses are substantially the same.

If the software vendor also offers multi-year time-based licenses for the same product that include bundled PCS services for a portion of the license period (instead of only including bundled PCS services for the entire license term), the renewal terms of those transactions may provide VSOE of the fair value of the PCS services elements that are bundled for the entire license term. See section 5100.54 for additional guidance on VSOE of PCS renewals.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.69 Delivery Terms and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700), says that delivery is one of the basic criteria for revenue recognition. In an arrangement that requires physical delivery of software, are delivery terms that indicate when the customer assumes the risks and rewards of its licensing rights (for example, FOB destination and FOB shipping point terms) relevant in the assessment of whether software has been delivered?

*Reply*—Yes, including in arrangements in which a software vendor licenses a software product and retains title to the product. For example, software arrangements that include FOB destination terms do not meet the delivery criterion until the customer receives the software. Public registrants subject to SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) should also consider the guidance in SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 101, *Revenue Recognition in Financial Statements*, as it relates to when delivery is considered to have occurred.

**.70 Effect of Commencement of an Initial License Term and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Revenue recognition in software arrangements that do not require significant production, modification, or customization of the software should occur when all four basic revenue recognition criteria (persuasive evidence of an arrangement, delivery, fixed or determinable fee and probable collectibility) of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700), are met. None of the four basic criteria specifically address whether the license term also must commence. For example: On December 20, X0, a software vendor enters into a software arrangement with a first-time customer for the license of Product A and PCS. VSOE of fair value exists for PCS. For reasons that may or may not be known by the software vendor, the customer desires the license to terminate on January 2, X4. The software vendor accepts the customer's terms and structures the arrangement as a three-year term beginning January

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

3, X1 and ending January 2, X4. On December 20, X0, the software vendor ships the software and collects the fee. Assuming all other criteria for revenue recognition are met, should the software vendor recognize any of the arrangement fee before the license term begins (that is, January 3, X1)?

*Reply*—No. Revenue should not be recognized prior to the commencement of the initial license term. Deferring recognition of revenue until the initial license term commences is consistent with section 5100.45, which includes a “right to use” concept, and the overall concept of delivery addressed in SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700).

If the software arrangement were to have been structured as a three-year and 14-day license commencing on December 20, X0 and ending January 2, X4, the software vendor would recognize revenue in December X0 if all other revenue recognition criteria had been met.

#### **.71 Effect of Commencement of an Extension/Renewal License Term and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Section 5100.70, which addresses the effect of commencement of an initial license term on software revenue recognition, indicates revenue should not be recognized before the license term commences even if all other criteria for revenue recognition have been met. If the license were an extension/renewal of a pre-existing, currently active license for the same product(s), would commencement of the extension/renewal term also be a prerequisite for revenue recognition? For example: Consider the arrangement described in section 5100.70, including that VSOE of fair value exists for PCS. The license term commenced on January 3, X1 and ends on January 2, X4. Now assume that in September X3, the customer decides it wants to be able to continue to use Product A beyond January 2, X4. The software vendor and customer execute an arrangement on September 20, X3 to extend/renew the terms of the existing license through December 31, X5. The extension/renewal arrangement includes only product(s) already included in the existing, currently active arrangement. Assuming all other revenue recognition criteria are met, should the software vendor recognize the portion of the extension/renewal arrangement fee allocated to the license of Product A as revenue on September 20, X3 or January 3, X4?

*Reply*—The software vendor should recognize the portion of the extension/renewal arrangement fee allocated to the license of Product A as revenue on September 20, X3 if all other revenue recognition criteria are met. In the case of an extension/renewal of a pre-existing, currently active license for the same product(s), the customer already has possession of and the right to use the software to which the extension/renewal applies.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

However, if the customer's pre-existing license for the product(s) had lapsed (that is, was not currently active), a new arrangement including the same software product(s) should be accounted for as an initial arrangement and not as an extension/renewal.

In considering the guidance in paragraphs 28 and 29 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.28–.29), for determining whether the extension/renewal fee is fixed or determinable, the date that the extension/renewal arrangement is executed should be used to determine whether the extension/renewal payment terms are extended.

## **.72 Effect of Additional Product(s) in an Extension/Renewal of License Term and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—Section 5100.71 addresses the effect of commencement of an extension/renewal license term when the extension/renewal arrangement includes only a product(s) already included in the existing, currently active arrangement. If the extension/renewal arrangement includes additional product(s), how should the extension/renewal arrangement fee be allocated to the different products? For example: Consider the arrangement described in section 5100.71, including that VSOE of fair value exists for PCS. The license term of Product A commenced on January 3, X1 and ends on January 2, X4. In September X3, the customer decides it wants to be able to continue to use Product A beyond January 2, X4 and now assume that the customer also wants to include in the arrangement a license to Product B, which will commence upon the delivery of Product B. The software vendor and customer execute an arrangement on September 20, X3 to extend/renew the terms of the existing, currently active license of Product A through December 31, X5 and also to license Product B. The software vendor has VSOE of fair value for Products A and B, and Product B is expected to be delivered in the first quarter of X4. How should the software vendor allocate and recognize the portions of the extension/renewal arrangement fee allocated to Products A and B?

**Reply**—The software vendor should allocate the extension/renewal arrangement fee using VSOE of fair value consistent with paragraph 10 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.10). Consistent with section 5100.71, the software vendor should recognize the portion of the extension/renewal arrangement fee allocated to Product A as revenue on September 20, X3 (if all other revenue recognition criteria are met) because the customer already has possession of and the right to use the software to which the extension/renewal applies. The portion of the extension/renewal arrangement fee allocated to Product B should be recognized when the criteria of paragraph 8 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.08) are met and the license period for Product B has commenced.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

In considering the guidance in paragraphs 28 and 29 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.28–29) for determining whether the extension/renewal fee is fixed or determinable, the date that the extension/renewal arrangement is executed as it relates to the portion of the arrangement fee allocated to Product A, and the date Product B is delivered as it relates to the portion of the arrangement fee allocated to Product B, should be used to determine whether the extension/renewal arrangement payment terms are extended.

**.73 Software Revenue Recognition for an Arrangement Containing an Option to Extend a Time-Based License Indefinitely**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—A software vendor sells Product A with PCS under a three-year term license with PCS renewable after year 1. VSOE of fair value exists for PCS. The arrangement specifies that any time during its term the customer can extend the license for Product A indefinitely for an additional fee. Effectively, the arrangement contains an option to convert the three-year term license into a perpetual license for Product A. Does the option to convert represent an element as that term is used in paragraph 10 of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700.10)? Would the answer differ if the perpetual license for Product A necessitated another delivery of software media because the term license software media contained a self-destruct or similar mechanism to allow the vendor to control the usage of its intellectual property?

*Reply*—The option itself is not an element as contemplated in paragraph 10 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.10) because there is no new deliverable. The exercise of the option merely affords the customer a longer time period over which to use the same Product A that it already has as part of the original arrangement. The additional fee to exercise the option is essentially the same as the fee for an extension/renewal of a license, as discussed in section 5100.71.

Further, the need for another delivery of the software media as a result of a self-destruct or similar mechanism would not create an element or deliverable to be accounted for in the original arrangement; however, such media would need to be delivered before the option exercise fee could be recognized as revenue.

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

**.74 Effect of Discounts on Future Products on the Residual Method and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Section 5100.50 defines a more-than-insignificant discount with respect to future purchases and section 5100.51 provides examples of accounting for significant incremental discounts that are within the scope of SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700). The term “discount,” as used in SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) and the related TPAs, is the difference between the arrangement fee and VSOE of fair value when VSOE of fair value exists for all elements in the arrangement. A question arises as to how to compute the amount of a discount when the software vendor is applying the residual method because VSOE of fair value does not exist for all of the elements in the arrangement but does exist for all of the undelivered elements.

For example: A software vendor enters into an arrangement with a customer that licenses currently available software products and services (referred to as the initial arrangement) and offers a discount off of its published list price on future purchases of products not previously licensed by the customer. The software vendor does not have VSOE of fair value of its software products. However, the software vendor is able to apply the residual method pursuant to SOP 98-9, *Modification of SOP 97-2, Software Revenue Recognition, With Respect to Certain Transactions* (ACC 10,770), when the only undelivered elements are services.

How should the software vendor determine if the discount on future purchases of future products is significant and incremental (as discussed in section 5100.50) since it does not have VSOE of fair value of its software products?

*Reply*—In this situation, the software vendor should compute the discount provided in the initial arrangement by comparing the published list price of the delivered elements in the initial arrangement to the residual value attributable to those delivered elements. If the discount on future purchases of future products is significant and incremental to the discount provided on the delivered elements in the initial arrangement, the software vendor should apply the significant and incremental discount on future purchases to the initial arrangement using the guidance in section 5100.51.

*Example:*

On December 31, 20X1, software vendor licenses Product A (with a published list price of \$100) on a perpetual basis, bundled with PCS for the first year, to a customer for \$80. The customer may elect to renew PCS following the initial year at a stipulated rate of \$15, which requires the software vendor to apply the residual method pursuant to SOP 98-9 (ACC 10,770). In conjunction

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

with the licensing of Product A, the software vendor offers the customer a 55% discount off of its published list price on the purchase of all new products released by the software vendor during the three years subsequent to December 31, 20X1, with no maximum cumulative discount. Based on the guidance in the reply in the preceding, the software vendor would perform the calculation below to assist in determining whether the discount offered on future purchases of future products is significant and incremental (as discussed in section 5100.50):

	<i>Published List Price</i>	<i>Residual Value</i>	<i>Discount From Published List Price</i>
Product A	\$100	\$65	35.00%
Future Products	Unknown	Unknown	55.00%
Additional discount from published list price			20.00%

Assuming that the software vendor concludes that the additional discount (that is, 20.00% in this example) on future purchases is significant and incremental, the software vendor should allocate such discount to Product A and defer revenue related to the PCS in the initial arrangement as follows:

(a)	(b)	(a)*(b)= (c)	(d)	(c)+(d)=(e)	(f)	(f)-(e)
Published List Price	Add'l Discount	Revenue Deferral for Additional Discount	Revenue Deferral for PCS	Total Revenue Deferral	Arrangement Fee	Up-front Revenue Product A
\$100	20 %	\$20	\$15	\$35	\$80	\$45

Consistent with Example 5 in section 5100.51, upon delivery of Product A, the vendor should recognize \$45 of revenue and defer \$35, provided all other requirements of revenue recognition in SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) are met. The revenue related to PCS (\$15) deferred pursuant to the residual method should be recognized over the initial year of the license in accordance with paragraph 57 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.57). The deferred revenue related to the discount (\$20) should be accounted for as a subscription in accordance with paragraphs 48 and 49 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.48–.49) and recognized pro rata over the three-year discount period. If the customer purchases additional products using the discount, the vendor would recognize revenue equal to the fee attributable to those additional products, provided all other requirements of revenue recognition in SOP 97-2 are met (ACC 10,700).

**.75 Fair Value of PCS Renewals Based on Users Deployed and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38-.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

**Inquiry**—A software vendor offers a perpetual license to an end-user customer for a software product with post-contract customer support (PCS) bundled for the initial year. The initial fee is \$1,150,000 (\$1,000,000 is stated as the software license fee and \$150,000 is stated as the PCS fee). The end-user customer is entitled to deploy an unlimited number of copies of the licensed software product for a 3-year period. During the 3-year unlimited deployment period, the end-user customer has the option to renew PCS annually for years 2 and 3 for a stipulated fee of 15% of the stated license fee, which is \$150,000 per year. After the expiration of the 3-year unlimited deployment period, the end-user customer is required to pay additional license and PCS fees if it deploys additional copies of the software product. The optional PCS fee for year 4 and annually thereafter is based on the ultimate number of copies of the software product deployed by the end-user customer at the end of the 3-year unlimited deployment period. Do the annual PCS renewal rates stipulated for years 2 and 3 constitute vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE) of fair value for the year 1 PCS in accordance with SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700)?

**Reply**—No. In this arrangement there are two different pricing methodologies for PCS and no basis for determining which pricing methodology produces the appropriate VSOE of fair value of the PCS bundled in year 1 and offered in years 2 and 3. Accordingly, the vendor should recognize the entire arrangement fee (\$1,450,000) ratably over the three-year deployment period (the aggregate fee recognized should not exceed the amount that is not subject to forfeiture, refund, or other concession, as required in paragraph 14 of SOP 97-2 [ACC 10,700.14]). This presumes that PCS will be renewed in years 2 and 3; however, if the customer does not renew PCS in year two or year three, the vendor should recognize the remaining deferred revenue at the time PCS is no longer being provided.

If sufficient objective evidence demonstrated that the renewal rate in year 4 and thereafter is more likely than not (that is, a likelihood of more than fifty percent, as that term is used in FASB Statement No. 109, *Accounting for Income Taxes*) to approximate or be less than the amount charged in years 2 and 3, the annual PCS renewal rates stipulated for years 2 and 3 would constitute VSOE of fair value of PCS. One example of such evidence would be a vendor's past history of deployment with other comparable arrangements that result in postdeployment PCS fees that approximate PCS fees charged during the unlimited deployment period. Another example of such evidence would be a stated cap or maximum on the price to be charged for PCS in year 4 and

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

thereafter that would result in a price that approximates or is less than the amount charged in years 2 and 3. In such a circumstance, the amount allocated to the perpetual license (\$1,000,000) would be recognized immediately provided all other requirements for revenue recognition in SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700) are met, and the fair value of PCS in year 1 would be recognized ratably over the PCS period. Likewise, the fees related to PCS renewals after year 1 (\$150,000 each for years 2 and 3) would be recognized ratably over the respective PCS periods.

**.76 Fair Value in Multiple-Element Arrangements That Include Contingent Usage-Based Fees and Software Revenue Recognition**

*FASB codified sections .38–.76 of the AICPA TIS section 5100 in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification™ (ASC), elevating them from previously nonauthoritative guidance into authoritative generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for nongovernmental entities. Upon its release as authoritative July 1, 2009, FASB ASC is the source of authoritative U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). All other guidance not included in FASB ASC is nonauthoritative.\**

*Inquiry*—Software vendors may enter into various multiple-element arrangements that provide for both licensing rights and post-contract customer support (PCS) and that include contingent usage-based fees. Usage-based fees are determined based on applying a constant multiplier to the frequency that the licensee uses the software, for example, customer call center software wherein a fee of \$.01 is charged for each call handled. That fee structure is different from fees that are determined based on the number of individuals or workstations that use or employ the software (that is, user-based fees). If usage-based fees are not paid timely, the licensee's perpetual license to use the software is vacated and there is no continuing obligation to provide PCS.

The following scenarios focus on circumstances in which software functionality is used by the software licensee only in processing the activity that underlies the measurement of the usage-based fee, that is, the software provides the licensee with no internal-use functionality for which a usage-based fee would not be charged. In each of the three scenarios, how should a software vendor recognize revenue for the perpetual license, PCS, and contingent usage-based fee elements?

Scenario No. 1—Arrangement provides for a non-refundable initial fee for the perpetual license and contingent usage-based fees determined monthly or quarterly and due shortly thereafter. PCS is provided at no additional charge for the first year and the licensee may purchase renewal PCS annually thereafter for a fixed amount that is deemed substantive (the renewal rate).

Scenario No. 2—Arrangement provides for a non-refundable initial fee for the perpetual license and contingent usage-based fees determined monthly or quarterly and due shortly thereafter. PCS is provided at no additional stated charge (or the pricing of PCS is stated as being included in the contingent usage-based fee).

---

\* See footnote \* in section 5100.38.

Scenario No. 3—Arrangement provides for a perpetual license solely in exchange for contingent usage-based fees determined monthly or quarterly and due shortly thereafter. PCS is provided at no additional stated charge.

*Reply*—Usage-based fees are not specifically addressed in SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* (ACC 10,700). However, paragraph 10 (ACC 10,700.10), which provides guidance as to what constitutes vendor-specific objective evidence (VSOE) of fair value of the elements of a software arrangement, states, in part: “When a vendor’s pricing is based on multiple factors such as the number of products and the number of users, the amount allocated to the same element when sold separately must consider all the factors of the vendor’s pricing structure.” Accordingly, usage-based fees should be considered in determining whether there is sufficient VSOE of fair value of all the elements of an arrangement.

Scenario No. 1—The existence of a substantive renewal rate for PCS allows for the determination of the portion of the initial fee that should be allocated to the perpetual license through the application of the residual method described in SOP 98-9, *Modification of SOP 97-2, Software Revenue Recognition, With Respect to Certain Transactions* (ACC 10,770). That amount should be recognized as revenue when the criteria in paragraph 8 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.08) are satisfied. The amount allocated to PCS should be recognized pursuant to the requirements of paragraph 57 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.57). The usage-based fee should be recognized at the time a reliable estimate can be made of the actual usage that has occurred (estimates may be used, for example, if there is a lag in the reporting of actual usage), provided collectibility is probable.

Scenario No. 2—Because there is no substantive renewal rate for PCS, there is no VSOE of fair value of the PCS that is to be provided, which precludes application of the residual method to determine the portion of the initial fee allocable to the perpetual license. Further, there is not sufficient objective evidence to demonstrate that some portion of the initial fee does not represent payment for future PCS. Accordingly, pursuant to paragraphs 12 and 58 of SOP 97-2 (ACC 10,700.12 and .58), the initial fee should be recognized ratably over the period that the vendor expects to provide PCS because there is no contractual term for the PCS. The usage-based fee should be recognized at the time a reliable estimate can be made of the actual usage that has occurred, provided collectibility is probable.

Scenario No. 3—The usage-based fee represents payment for both the perpetual license right and PCS. However, that fee becomes fixed or determinable only at the time actual usage occurs. Therefore, revenue should be recognized at the time a reliable estimate can be made of the actual usage that has occurred, provided collectibility is probable.

---

[The next page is 4121.]



## Section 5210

### ***Depreciation and Depletion***

#### **.02 Disclosure of Depreciation Expense**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 360-10-50-1 states that the financial statements should disclose depreciation *expense* for a period. Does *expense* mean the total amount of depreciation accrued (that is, credited to the allowance for depreciation account) for the period or the amount actually expensed after allowing for depreciation included in overhead apportioned to inventories?

*Reply*—In concerns such as public utilities and trading or commercial enterprises, determination of the total provision for depreciation is usually simple since the amounts of depreciation are generally identified in the expense accounts. In manufacturing concerns, however, there are difficulties in determining the amount of depreciation to be disclosed. Depreciation is usually included in overhead which in turn is distributed over a number of departments and products and finds its way ultimately into cost of sales through inventory accounts. To determine the amount of depreciation which is included as a part of the cost of merchandise sold may require an extensive and usually impracticable, if not impossible, analysis of cost accounts. The auditor usually solves the problem by suggesting that the amount of depreciation charged to manufacturing costs and to expense accounts be taken as representing the amount charged to income. Obviously, this method does not correctly state the depreciation charge which was recovered through sale of goods in which depreciation was an element of cost. From a practical standpoint, in view of the indicated difficulty, if not impossibility, of determining the exact amount of depreciation included in cost of sales, it has become recognized practice to report the amount of depreciation charged in the statement of income as that which has been charged to manufacturing costs and to expense accounts, even when amounts of depreciation included in inventories at the beginning and end of the period vary sufficiently to affect depreciation included in cost of sales. Such practice also is acceptable to the Securities and Exchange Commission.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.04 Depreciation of Clothing Rented to Individuals**

*Inquiry*—Company A maintains a stock of tuxedos, shoes and related items which are rented to individuals. Management estimates that this stock will have a useful life of approximately two years. Additional stock will be purchased from time to time as required. At the end of each fiscal year, a complete physical inventory is taken of all items on hand. What is the most appropriate accounting treatment for the stock of rental clothing?

*Reply*—The clothing represents a fixed asset to be depreciated over its estimated life. The estimated life should be adjusted periodically to reflect experience and should not exceed two years. The depreciation charge should be computed monthly based on inventory at the beginning of the period plus additions during the current year.

Logically it seems that loss and retirement of clothing will relate to that clothing first purchased. Accordingly the first-in first-out basis would appropriately account for such loss and retirement.

**.05 Classification of Costs of Constructing a Golf Course**

*Inquiry*—How should the costs of constructing a golf course be broken down into depreciable and nondepreciable classifications?

*Reply*—For the costs incurred in constructing a golf course, those expenditures made to change the land itself, exclusive of buildings, should be treated as permanent improvements to the land and are not, therefore, depreciable. These costs would include clearing the land, building fairways, changing the contour of the earth by moving and filling, building sand traps, and creating water hazards. If trees are planted, and their lives can be estimated, it would appear to be proper to depreciate these over such lives. In the absence of any reasonable estimate, trees and shrubs should be carried at cost. Any structures such as buildings, shacks or stands should be depreciated along with the costs of any vehicles such as trucks or carts, and any equipment used. A watering system should be depreciated as it is made of material that will not last indefinitely.

**.08 Additional First Year Depreciation**

*Inquiry*—A corporation reports depreciation expense on its financial statements at the same amount that it claims on its income tax return. If that amount included the maximum \$10,000 deduction for additional first year depreciation (election to expense recovery property) allowed for tax purposes, whereas, normal depreciation was \$18,000, would the financial statements be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 360-10-35-4 states, in part: “. . . depreciation accounting, a system of accounting which aims to distribute the cost or other basic value of tangible capital assets, less salvage (if any), over the estimated useful life of the unit . . . in a systematic and rational manner . . . .” Accordingly, if any arbitrary additional first year depreciation amount is included in the financial statements and it is material, it would be a departure from generally accepted accounting principles. Refer to paragraph .50 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, and paragraph .27 of AU section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), for guidance on materiality.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.09 Amortization of Leasehold Improvement**

*Inquiry*—A zoological society leases property in the city zoo for concession stands. The society plans to construct a new building, which will house several concession stands, on the leased property. When construction is complete the title to the building will be turned over to the city. How should the building be accounted for by the zoological society?

*Reply*—The construction of a building on leased property is considered a leasehold improvement. A leasehold improvement is a permanent improvement or betterment that increases the usefulness of the leased property and will revert to the lessor at the end of the lease term. The costs of such improvements are normally amortized either over the life of the improvement or the lease term, whichever is shorter.

---

[The next page is 4201.]

## Section 5220

### Interest Expense

#### .01 Deferral of Payment of Interest

*Inquiry*—A client experienced problems in meeting its current obligations and reached an agreement with its primary creditor concerning several mortgage loans. Under the agreement, the interest rate on these loans will, for the present, be reduced from 10 percent to 8 percent, but the lender has the option in the future of increasing the interest rate to 11 percent to recover the foregone interest. At the maturity date, any unpaid interest calculated at the original 10 percent rate will be due.

How should the interest expense be recorded on the client's financial statements?

*Reply*—Interest should be accrued at the rate of 10 percent, the original rate under the mortgage loans. This debit would represent the interest expense charged to income. The credit would be segregated between current liabilities (an amount representing the 8 percent rate) and noncurrent liabilities (an amount representing the *deferred interest*).

#### .03 Computation of Interest Expense on Long-Term Redeemable Bonds

*Inquiry*—A bank has issued four year nonnegotiable savings bonds with interest of 7 percent for the first year, 7 1/2 percent for the second year, 8 percent for the third year and 8 1/2 percent for the fourth year. The depositor has the option to request that he be paid his interest on a semiannual or annual basis, but few do so, and the normal procedure is that the interest will be compounded and left on deposit for the four years.

If a bond is redeemed prior to maturity, interest is paid to the bondholder at the rate of 5 percent per annum for the period that the bond was held, less 90 days. Few instances of bond redemption prior to maturity are anticipated.

Which of the following methods of accounting for interest expense is appropriate?

(1)Accrue interest at 7 percent for the first year, 7 1/2 percent for the second year (plus the compounding factor), 8 percent for the third year (plus the compounding factor), and 8 1/2 percent for the fourth year (plus the compounding factor), making a debit to the interest expense and a credit to the accrued interest payable on four year bonds.

(2)Determine the total amount of interest that will be due to the holder upon the maturity of the bond and accrue a pro rata share of this amount for each month of the four year period that the bond is in effect.

*Reply*—A rate of interest should be used which reflects the bank's liabilities and assumes that the bondholders will not redeem their bonds and not withdraw the interest prior to maturity. This is essentially the second approach in the preceding.

#### .05 Amortization of Prepaid Interest on Discounted Notes

*Inquiry*—An equipment leasing company will use as of the beginning of the year the interest method to amortize prepaid interest on new discounted notes. But it will continue to use the straight-line method to amortize prepaid interest

on notes discounted earlier. Is the adoption of the interest method on a prospective basis a change in accounting principle?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 835-30-35 states that the interest method of amortization should be used but that other methods of amortization may be used if the results obtained are not materially different from those which would result from the interest method.

If the results in earlier periods would not have differed materially by using the interest method, the interest method may be adopted for the new notes, disclosed, and not be reported as a change in accounting principle.

If the results in earlier periods would have been materially different by using the interest method, the interest method should be adopted for the old and new notes, and be reported as a correction of an error.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.06 Imputed Interest on Shareholder Loans**

*Inquiry*—A section of the Internal Revenue Code requires, under certain circumstances, that a company impute interest on demand loans made to a shareholder of the company. Would this also be required under generally accepted accounting principles? If not, must it be disclosed and would there be an effect on the deferred income tax accounts?

*Reply*—No. FASB ASC 835-30-15-2 states that the guidance in FASB ASC 835-30 applies to receivables and payables which represent contractual rights to receive money or contractual obligations to pay money on fixed or determinable dates. Imputed interest would not be required on demand loans since they have no fixed or determinable due date.

However, disclosure of this transaction would be required under FASB ASC 850, *Related Party Disclosures*.

There would be no effect on the deferred income tax accounts since this would be considered a permanent difference.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.07 Imputed Interest on Note Exchanged for Cash Only**

*Inquiry*—If an enterprise receives cash in exchange for a non-interest bearing long-term note payable with a stated amount equal to the cash received, must interest be imputed on the note in accordance with FASB ASC 835, *Interest*?

*Reply*—If there are rights or privileges other than cash attendant to the exchange, the value of such rights or privileges should be given accounting recognition pursuant to FASB ASC 835-30-25-6. If the note is issued solely for cash (that is, the cash received is equivalent to the face amount of the note) and no other right or privilege is exchanged, it is presumed to have a present value at issuance measured by the cash proceeds exchanged.

[Amended, June 1995; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 4281.]

## Section 5230

### *Employee Benefit Plans*

#### **.06 Deferred Compensation Payable To Surviving Spouse**

*Inquiry*—Corporation A and its president entered into an employment contract. The contract stipulated that if the president died while employed by Corporation A, Corporation A would pay \$500 a month to the president's widow for the rest of her life. Shortly after the contract was signed, the president died. The present value of the estimated future payments by Corporation A to the president's widow is \$X. Should Corporation A accrue the \$X?

*Reply*—Under Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 710-10-25-11, the estimated amounts to be paid under a compensation contract would normally be accrued over the period of active employment. The president's death accelerates recognition of a liability that is reasonably determinable from actuarial tables. Accordingly, the present value of the estimated future payments not previously recognized should be accrued and recognized as an expense.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.09 Deferred Compensation Arrangement Funded by Life Insurance Contracts**

*Inquiry*—A company has a deferred compensation contract with one of its employees. In accordance with FASB ASC 710-10-25-11, the estimated amount of future payments was accrued over the period of active employment. The company purchases a life insurance policy on the employee, naming the company as beneficiary. May the cash surrender value earned on the policy be offset against the liability for the deferred compensation arrangement?

*Reply*—No. Paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 325-30-35 specify that the cash surrender value on a life insurance contract should be reported on the balance sheet as an asset with any changes in that value reflected as an adjustment of insurance expense for the period. No right of offset or other deviations from the preceding accounting would be appropriate regardless of the funding objective pertaining to the purchase of the insurance contract, as stated in paragraphs 2–3 of FASB ASC 325-30-15.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 4381.]



## Section 5240

### ***Cost Allocation***

#### **.10 Sale of Research and Development Technology**

*Inquiry*—A company has incurred material research and development costs in the current year. Subsequent to the balance sheet date but prior to issuance of the financial statements, the company commenced negotiations and sold the research and development technology to an unrelated company. May the company capitalize the incurred research and development costs in its annual financial statements in light of the subsequent sale?

*Reply*—No. Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* 730-10-25 states that research and development costs should be expensed when incurred. There is no justification for capitalizing the costs because the technology will be sold. The company should disclose the subsequent sale of the research and development technology in the footnotes to its financial statements if the amount is material.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 4501.]**



## Section 5260

### ***Estimated Losses***

#### **.01 Recognition of Estimated Losses on Uncompleted Contracts**

*Inquiry*—An engineering firm manufactures and sells telemetry components on the basis of bids previously submitted to customers. In some cases, engineering time is required to modify a component to customer specifications. Since the amount of required engineering time is not known at the time a bid is submitted, costs to complete a particular job may exceed the bid price. The firm completes all jobs.

Presently all costs that accumulate on a particular job (direct materials, labor, and applied manufacturing and engineering overhead) are charged to that job and treated as work in process, even though the costs may exceed the selling price. Once the job is completed, it is taken out of work in process inventory and treated as costs of completion in the month that the job is shipped. Therefore, a loss on a job is recognized only when the job is shipped. When cost to complete a job is expected to exceed the bid price, what disclosure should be made on the balance sheet?

*Reply*—The problem faced by the firm is not primarily one of disclosure but rather that of satisfying the generally accepted accounting principle of “providing for losses which are reasonably certain to occur.”

It is assumed that the firm is accounting on the completed-contract basis. With regard to construction companies using this method of accounting, Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 605-35-25-89 states, “Although the completed-contract method does not permit the recording of any income prior to completion, provision shall be made for expected losses. See paragraphs 605-35-25-45 through 25-47.” The same concept applies to companies accounting under the percentage-of-completion method (paragraphs 5 and 46 of FASB ASC 605-35-25).

A possible journal entry to recognize the loss would be a charge to “Estimated Loss on Uncompleted Contracts” while crediting “Estimated Liability for Loss on Uncompleted Contracts.” This estimated liability could then be deducted from any excess of accumulated costs over related billings (or added to any liability arising from billings in excess of accumulated costs) for balance sheet purposes. If the loss is not deductible for tax purposes, part of the income tax paid should be set up as a deferred charge.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 4551.]



## Section 5290

### Other Expenses

#### .02 Classification of Expenses Which Are Taxable to Employees

*Inquiry*—An amendment to the Internal Revenue Code requires, under certain circumstances, that an employer include as income, the fair value for the use of a company automobile, in the employee's wage and tax statement (Form W-2).

Should this be reported in the company's statement of income as compensation to employees?

*Reply*—No. The fair value is the amount the employee would have paid to use the car if the employee had owned it. The employer should report, as automobile expenses, the amount of actual expenses it incurred as owner of the car.

#### .05 Accrual of Audit Fee

*Inquiry*—A CPA has been engaged to audit the financial statements of a client company. The audit is being conducted after year end. Is it proper to accrue the audit fee as an expense of the year under audit?

*Reply*—According to FASB Concepts Statement No. 6, *Elements of Financial Statements*, paragraph 145, "The goal of accrual accounting is to account in the periods in which they occur for the effects on an entity of transactions and other events and circumstances, to the extent that those financial effects are recognizable and measurable." The audit fee expense was incurred in the period subsequent to year end. Therefore, it is properly recorded as an expense in the subsequent period. However, fees incurred in connection with planning the audit, together with preliminary procedures (e.g., confirmation work) would be accruable for the year under audit.

#### .06 Accounting for a Lease Trial Period

*Inquiry*—A lease agreement allows a prospective lessee the free use of newly introduced specialized equipment for 30 days prior to entering into a long-term lease agreement for the equipment. The prospective lessee is not committed to enter into a long-term lease agreement at the beginning or during the 30-day trial period and there is no economic penalty to the lessee if the lessee does not enter into that agreement. How should the prospective lessee account for the 30-day trial period?

*Reply*—The 30-day trial period is part of the lessor's marketing strategy. Therefore, the lessee should not report any lease expense during the 30-day trial period. If the lessee subsequently enters into the lease arrangement, the date of inception should begin on the first day of the lease with no accounting recognition given to the trial period.

---

[The next page is 4801.]



## Section 5400

### *Extraordinary and Unusual Items*

#### **.02 Sale of Cotton Futures Commitment Contracts**

*Inquiry*—A textile manufacturer entered into firm purchase commitments for cotton at a very favorable price. At the present time, the corporation has an unusually long position of purchase commitments at a low fixed price. Some of these contracts may be sold at a tremendous profit which is extremely material in relation to normal operating income. This results from the tremendous increase in cost of raw cotton during recent months. The corporation has not sold such commitment contracts in the past; nor does it anticipate selling such contracts in the future.

Will the sale of cotton futures commitment contracts be considered an extraordinary item?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 225-20-45 discusses the criteria for extraordinary items. In order to be classified as an extraordinary item, an event or transaction would have to be both unusual in nature and infrequent in occurrence. The transaction would not meet the “unusual nature” test. Making a commitment for future delivery of cotton to insure a source of supply would be part of the normal operations of a textile manufacturer. Any resulting gain or loss would therefore be considered ordinary. Although the corporation has not sold such commitment contracts in the past; nor does the corporation anticipate selling such contracts in the future, any gain realized on the sale of such a contract should not be considered an extraordinary item under FASB ASC 225-20-45. However, it should be shown as a separate line item in the income statement in accordance with FASB ASC 225-20-45-16.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.04 Reporting the Proceeds From Life Insurance on an Officer**

*Inquiry*—A company received the life insurance proceeds on the death of its president before the end of its fiscal year and intends to report the amount in its income statement as an extraordinary item. Would this be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles?

*Reply*—No. FASB ASC 225-20-45-2 states that “extraordinary items are events and transactions that are distinguished by their unusual nature and by the infrequency of their occurrence.” The receipt of insurance proceeds from an officer’s life insurance policy is an infrequent occurrence, but it is not unusual in nature. Since it does not meet *both* the criteria of unusual and infrequent it does not qualify as an extraordinary item.

FASB ASC 225-20-45-16 states that “a material event or transaction that is unusual in nature or occurs infrequently but not both, and therefore does not meet both criteria for classification as an extraordinary item, shall be reported as a separate component of income from continuing operations.”

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.05 Accounting and Disclosures Guidance for Losses From Natural Disasters—Nongovernmental Entities**

(This section identifies certain issues that may arise in accounting for losses from natural disasters, and lists relevant accounting literature for nongovernmental entities to consider in addressing those financial reporting issues.)

*Inquiry*—A natural disaster (such as a hurricane, tornado, fire, or earthquake) strikes and causes substantial damages. Though extreme in the loss of life and financial harm caused, the nature and location of the disaster may be such that one might reasonably expect that type of activity of nature to strike again in greater or lesser magnitude of damage. What are some of the accounting issues that arise and which accounting literature provides guidance for recognizing, measuring, and disclosing losses from natural disasters?

*Reply*—The following questions may arise in accounting for losses incurred as a result of a natural disaster:

1. How should losses from a natural disaster of a type that is reasonably expected to reoccur be classified in the statement of operations?
2. When should an asset impairment loss related to a natural disaster be recognized?
3. When should a liability for non-impairment losses and costs related to a natural disaster be recognized?
4. What is the accounting for insurance recoveries to cover losses sustained in a natural disaster? Also, what are the additional considerations related to business interruption insurance recoveries?
5. What are the required disclosures regarding the impact of a natural disaster?

***Issue 1—How should losses from a natural disaster of a type that is reasonably expected to reoccur be classified in the statement of operations?***

FASB ASC 225-20-45-2 describes an extraordinary item as an item that is both unusual in nature *and* nonrecurring. A natural disaster of a type that is reasonably expected to reoccur would not meet both conditions. The magnitude of loss from a particular natural disaster does not cause that disaster to be unusual in nature or unlikely to reoccur. If losses from such natural disasters meet the criteria for disclosure of unusual or infrequently occurring items in FASB ASC 225-20-45-16, they should be reported as a separate component of income from continuing operations either on the face of the statement of operations or in the notes to the financial statements.

***Issue 2—When should an asset impairment loss related to a natural disaster be recognized?***

FASB ASC 360, *Property, Plant, and Equipment*, provides guidance on recognition and measurement of impairment losses on long-lived assets. That literature should be used to determine when an impairment loss on long-lived assets resulting from a natural disaster should be recognized and how that impairment loss should be measured.

FASB ASC 310, *Receivables*, provides guidance on recognition and measurement of impairment losses on loans. The FASB ASC glossary defines *loan* as “a contractual right to receive money on demand or on fixed or determinable dates that is recognized as an asset in the creditor’s statement of financial position.” According to FASB ASC 310-10-35-16, a loan is impaired when, “based on current information and events, it is probable that a creditor will be unable

to collect all amounts due according to the contractual terms of the loan agreement.” In measuring impairment losses on loans, creditors should follow FASB ASC 310-10-35-22, which states

When a loan is impaired as defined in paragraphs 310-10-35-16 through 35-17, a creditor shall measure impairment based on the present value of expected future cash flows discounted at the loan’s effective interest rate, except that as a practical expedient, a creditor may measure impairment based on a loan’s observable market price, or the fair value of the collateral if the loan is a collateral-dependent loan.

FASB ASC 350, *Intangibles—Goodwill and Other*, provides guidance on recognition and measurement of impairment losses on intangible assets and goodwill.

FASB ASC 450, *Contingencies*, provides guidance on recognition and measurement of impairment losses on assets not covered by specific other literature.

***Issue 3—When should a liability for non-impairment losses and costs related to a natural disaster be recognized?***

FASB ASC 450-20-25-2 requires a loss accrual by a charge to income, if it is probable that an asset had been impaired or a liability had been incurred at the date of the financial statements and the amount of loss can be reasonably estimated.

Paragraph 63 of FASB Concepts Statement No. 5, *Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements of Business Enterprises*, provides that liabilities should be recognized when

- a. the item meets the definition of a liability. Paragraph 35 of Concepts Statement 6 defines liabilities as “probable future sacrifices of economic benefits arising from present obligations of a particular entity to transfer assets or provide services to other entities in the future as a result of past transactions or events” (footnote references omitted).
- b. the liability can be measured with sufficient reliability.
- c. the information about the liability is capable of making a difference in user decisions.
- d. the information about the liability is representationally faithful, verifiable, and neutral.

Other authoritative literature to consider includes FASB ASC 420, *Exit or Disposal Cost Obligations*, and FASB ASC 450-20.

***Issue 4—What is the accounting for insurance recoveries to cover losses sustained in a natural disaster? Also, what are the additional considerations related to business interruption insurance recoveries?***

In accounting for insurance payments to cover losses, entities should follow the guidance in FASB ASC 210-20; FASB ASC 225-20; FASB ASC 410-30; FASB ASC 605-40; and FASB ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging*.

FASB ASC 605-40 clarifies the accounting for involuntary conversions of nonmonetary assets (such as property or equipment) to monetary assets (such as insurance proceeds). It requires that a gain or loss be recognized when a nonmonetary asset is involuntarily converted to monetary assets even though an enterprise reinvests or is obligated to reinvest the monetary assets in replacement nonmonetary assets. FASB ASC 605-40-45-1 states

Gain or loss resulting from an involuntary conversion of a nonmonetary asset to monetary assets shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of Subtopic 225-20.

Entities should follow the guidance in FASB ASC 605-40-25-4 (for recoveries in connection with property and casualty losses), or paragraphs 8–11 of FASB ASC 410-30-35 (for recoveries in connection with environmental obligations), as applicable. That guidance generally requires that an asset relating to the insurance recovery should be recognized only when realization of the claim for recovery of a loss recognized in the financial statements is deemed probable (as that term is used in FASB ASC 450). In addition, under FASB ASC 450-30-25-1, a gain (that is, a recovery of a loss not yet recognized in the financial statements or an amount recovered in excess of a loss recognized in the financial statements) should not be recognized until any contingencies relating to the insurance claim have been resolved. It is important to note that in some circumstances, losses and costs might be recognized in the statement of operations in a different (earlier) period than the related recovery.

An additional consideration relates to FASB ASC 225-30, which indicates that entities may choose how to classify such recoveries in the statement of operations, provided that classification does not conflict with existing GAAP requirements.

***Issue 5—What are the required disclosures regarding the impact of a natural disaster?***

In disclosing the impact of a natural disaster in the financial statements, entities should follow the guidance in FASB ASC 225-20-45-16 pertaining to presentation and disclosure of a material event or transaction that is unusual in nature or occurs infrequently.

As it relates to the issues covered in this section, entities also should consider the disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 275, *Risks and Uncertainties*; FASB ASC 310; FASB ASC 350; FASB ASC 360; FASB ASC 410, *Asset Retirement and Environmental Obligations*; FASB ASC 420; and FASB ASC 450.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 4851.]

## Section 5500

### *Earnings per Share*

#### **.02 Earnings Per Share of Wholly-Owned Subsidiaries**

*Inquiry*—The annual report of a holding company with five wholly owned subsidiaries shows the consolidated net income and earnings per share of the companies. If the report also includes the individual income statements of the five subsidiaries, is it necessary to include individual earnings per share figures?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 260-10-15-3 does not require presentation of earnings per share in statements of wholly owned subsidiaries.

Therefore, it is not necessary to show earnings per share figures for the subsidiaries.

[Amended, September 1997; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.03 Weighted Average Shares Outstanding for an Interim Period**

*Inquiry*—A company retired some of its common stock during the first quarter of its fiscal year. Should earnings per share for the interim period be based on annualized weighted average shares outstanding or the weighted average shares outstanding during the period?

*Reply*—The earnings per share computation should be based on the weighted average shares outstanding during the interim period, and not on an annualized weighted average.

[Amended, September 1997; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.15 Stock Dividend Declared But Not Paid at Balance-Sheet Date**

*Inquiry*—A client declared a percent stock dividend to shareholders of record in December 20X4, payable in 20X5. In calculating the weighted average number of shares outstanding for determining the earnings per share for 20X4, how should this stock dividend apply?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 260-10-55-12 requires the computations of basic and diluted earnings per share to be adjusted retroactively for all periods presented to reflect a change in capital structure resulting from a stock dividend. Therefore, the 5 percent stock dividend should be considered as being outstanding for every month of 20X4, as well as for every month of every preceding period presented.

[Amended, September 1997; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 4891.]



## Section 5600

### Leases

#### .04 Accounting for Subleases

*Inquiry*—A corporation leased a building and, ultimately, subleased half of the space to a third party with the lease agreement between the two original parties remaining in effect. Management believed that a fairer presentation was made by netting the rental income from the sublease against its own minimum lease payments. Is the corporation properly accounting for its leased property and sublease income?

*Reply*—No. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 840-30-35-12 states that the original lessee, as sublessor, shall continue to account for the obligation related to the original lease as before. The sublease shall be accounted for in accordance with paragraphs 1, 29–31, and 41–44 of FASB ASC 840-10-25, depending upon which of the criteria the original lease met. If the original lease is an operating lease, the original lessee shall account for both it and the new lease as operating leases.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .07 Determining a Lease Term for Accounting Purposes

*Inquiry*—How should a lessee and lessor determine, for accounting purposes, the lease term of a lease, which is fundamental to determining the appropriate accounting for that lease?

*Reply*—FASB ASC glossary provides a definition of *lease term* as follows:

The fixed noncancelable lease term plus all of the following, except as noted in the following paragraph:

- a. All periods, if any, covered by bargain renewal options
- b. All periods, if any, for which failure to renew the lease imposes a penalty on the lessee in such amount that a renewal appears, at lease inception, to be reasonably assured
- c. All periods, if any, covered by ordinary renewal options during which any of the following conditions exist:
  1. A guarantee by the lessee of the lessor's debt directly or indirectly related to the leased property is expected to be in effect
  2. A loan from the lessee to the lessor directly or indirectly related to the leased property is expected to be outstanding
- d. All periods, if any, covered by ordinary renewal options preceding the date as of which a bargain purchase option is exercisable
- e. All periods, if any, representing renewals or extensions of the lease at the lessor's option

The lease term shall not be assumed to extend beyond the date a bargain purchase option becomes exercisable.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.08 Lease Term for Accounting Purposes Differs From Term Stated in Lease (Part 1)**

*Inquiry*—Can a lease term for accounting purposes begin before an initial fixed noncancelable term stated in a lease agreement?

*Reply*—Yes. FASB ASC 840 provides that a lease term for accounting purposes includes all periods in which a lessee has access to and control over leased space, even if those periods precede the fixed noncancelable term stated in the lease agreement. For example, a lease agreement is signed on January 1 but the initial fixed noncancelable term begins on April 1. The lease allows the lessee to make improvements to the leased space at any time starting after January 1. In this situation, the lease term for accounting purposes starts on January 1.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.09 Lease Term for Accounting Purposes Differs From Term Stated in Lease (Part 2)**

*Inquiry*—Can a lease term for accounting purposes extend beyond an initial fixed noncancelable term stated in a lease agreement?

*Reply*—Yes. FASB ASC glossary term *lease term* identifies situations in which the lease term for accounting purposes extends beyond the fixed noncancelable term stated in a lease agreement. Section 5600.07 identifies those situations. For example, the lease term for accounting purposes would include renewal periods that at lease inception appear reasonably assured because failure to exercise renewal periods would impose a penalty on the lessee.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.10 Rent Expense and Rent Revenue in an Operating Lease—General**

*Inquiry*—In an operating lease, how should a lessee accrue rent expense and a lessor recognize rent revenue?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 840-20-25-1 says that the lessee should accrue rent expense on a straight line basis over the lease term unless another systematic and rational basis is more representative of the time pattern use of the property.

Paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 840-20-25 say that the lessor should recognize rent revenue on a straight line basis over the lease term unless another systematic and rational basis is more representative of the time pattern use of the property.

Also see section 5600.11, “Rent Expense and Rent Revenue in an Operating Lease—Scheduled Increase in Rental Space.”

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.11 Rent Expense and Rent Revenue in an Operating Lease—Scheduled Increase in Rental Space**

*Inquiry*—Related to sections 5600.08 and 5600.10 assume a lessee has access to and use of one floor of a building as of the beginning of a lease agreement in year 1. In accordance with the agreement and at the start of year 3, the lessee will have access to and the ability to occupy a second floor in addition to the first floor, and will pay an additional rental fee starting at that

time. In this situation, how should the lessee accrue rent expense and the lessor recognize rent revenue before the lessee is allowed to occupy the second floor?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 840 is the applicable guidance. In years 1 and 2, the lessee should accrue rent expense on a straight line basis (unless another systematic and rational basis is more representative of the time pattern use of the property) for the one floor and not include the rental of the second floor in its accrual because the lessee does not have access to and control over the second floor until the start of year 3. Starting in year 3, the lessee should accrue rent expense on a straight line basis for both floors.

The lessor's accounting for revenue is parallel to that of the lessee for expense in this fact pattern.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.12 Rent Expense and Rent Revenue in an Operating Lease—Rent Holiday**

*Inquiry*—A lessee has a 120 month lease for \$10,000 per month on space owned by a lessor. The lease term for accounting purposes is 120 months. As an incentive to sign the lessee to the lease agreement, the first 6 of those months are rent free. In an operating lease, if a lease term includes a period of free or reduced rent (rent holiday), how does the rent holiday factor into the lessee's recognition of rent expense and the lessor's recognition of rent revenue?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 840-20-25-2 provides that the lessee should recognize rent expense of \$9,500 per month ( $\$10,000 \times 114 \text{ months} / 120 \text{ month lease term}$ ) for 120 months, which is on a straight line basis. Likewise, the lessor should recognize rent revenue of \$9,500 per month.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.13 Rent Expense and Rent Revenue in an Operating Lease—Scheduled Rent Increases**

*Inquiry*—In an operating lease, how should a lessee accrue rent expense and a lessor recognize rent revenue using the straight line method (see section 5600.10) when the lease agreement contains scheduled rent increases over the lease term?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 840-20-25-2 provides that the lessee and lessor should add up all rental payments over the lease term and divide that number by the number of periods in the lease term to arrive at the expense/revenue amounts to be accrued/recognized on a straight line basis.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.14 Amortization/Depreciation of Leasehold Improvements in an Operating Lease (Part 1)**

*Inquiry*—A lessee enters into an operating lease in which the lease term for accounting purposes is 10 years. Upon signing the lease, the lessee acquires leasehold improvements that have a useful life of 15 years. Over what period should the lessee amortize or depreciate the leasehold improvements?

*Reply*—For leasehold improvements contemplated at or near the beginning of an initial lease term, the lessee should amortize or depreciate the leasehold improvements over the shorter of the (a) useful life of the improvements or (b) remaining lease term, which is 10 years in this inquiry. If the leasehold

improvements are acquired and placed in service significantly after the inception of a lease, FASB ASC 840-10-35-6 requires that the lessee amortize or depreciate leasehold improvements over the shorter of the useful life of the leasehold assets or a term that includes required lease periods and renewals that are deemed to be reasonably assured at the date the leasehold improvements are acquired. Note that FASB ASC 840-10-35-6 does not apply to preexisting leasehold improvements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.15 Leasehold Improvements and Lease Term in an Operating Lease (Part 2)**

*Inquiry*—A lessee enters into an operating lease in which the initial fixed noncancelable term within the lease agreement is 10 years and the agreement includes three 5-year renewal periods. Upon signing the lease, the lessee plans to acquire leasehold improvements that have a useful life of 15 years. Is the lessee's plan to acquire the leasehold improvements a factor in determining the lease term for accounting purposes?

*Reply*—Yes, the lessee should consider the impact on the lease term for accounting purposes, if any, of the plan to acquire leasehold improvements. If the leasehold improvements are expected to have a significant value at the end of the initial 10 year term such that the lessee would not be willing to abandon these assets (that is, effectively incur a penalty) resulting in a renewal option being reasonably assured of being exercised, that renewal period would be added to the initial fixed noncancelable term in determining the appropriate lease term for accounting purposes.

#### **.16 Landlord Incentive Allowance in an Operating Lease**

*Inquiry*—A lessee enters into an operating lease in which the landlord offers an incentive allowance towards the cost of the lessee making leasehold improvements. The leasehold improvements are the lessee's assets and cost \$1 million, and the incentive allowance totals \$500,000. Should the lessee net the \$500,000 allowance received from the landlord against the \$1 million leasehold improvement asset?

*Reply*—No. In accordance with FASB ASC 840-20-55-3, the \$500,000 allowance should be reported by the lessee as a liability and amortized straight line over the lease term as a reduction of rent expense. Therefore, the lessee's amortization/depreciation calculation is based on the \$1 million leasehold improvements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.17 Cash Flows Statement Presentation of Landlord Incentive Allowance in an Operating Lease**

*Inquiry*—Related to section 5600.16, how should a lessee categorize expenditures for leasehold improvements and a related cash incentive allowance received from a landlord in the statement of cash flows?

*Reply*—In accordance with FASB ASC 230, *Statement of Cash Flows*, a lessee should report expenditures for leasehold improvements in the investing section of a statement of cash flows. Cash allowances received from the landlord should be presented in the lessee's operating activities section of its statement of cash flows. The cash allowances from the lessor are treated for accounting purposes as adjustments of rent. FASB ASC 230 does not identify rent payments on operating leases as investing or financing activities.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 4901.]**



## Section 5700

### Contributions Made

#### .01 Income Tax Accounting for Contributions to Certain Not-for-Profit Scholarship Funding Entities

**Inquiry**—A state's corporate income taxpayers are allowed a credit against their state corporate income tax of 100 percent of eligible contributions made during the year to a not-for-profit scholarship funding entity. Unused credits may be carried forward up to 3 years. The taxpayer may not convey, assign, or transfer the credit to another entity unless all of the assets of the taxpayer are conveyed, assigned, or transferred in the same transaction.

Should corporate income taxpayers report contributions that qualify for the tax credit as contributions or as income tax expense in income statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles?

**Reply**—Corporate income taxpayers should report such contributions as contributions in their income statements in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 720-25.

Such contributions meet the definition of a *contribution* in the FASB ASC glossary. Just as the federal government offering a tax deduction for such a contribution does not change the nonreciprocal nature of the gift, the fact that the state provides a dollar-for-dollar tax credit to the donor for its remittance to the scholarship funding entity does not change the nonreciprocal nature of the gift. Nor does having only the alternative of paying a corresponding, higher tax make the contribution involuntary.

FASB ASC 740, *Income Taxes*, provides that total income tax expense or benefit for the year is the sum of deferred tax expense or benefit and income taxes currently payable or refundable.

#### Example

##### Assumptions:

\$100 contribution to qualified scholarship funding entity

\$5,000 federal taxable income (includes \$100 charitable contribution deduction)

Tax rate—5.5 percent

##### State Tax Computation:

Federal taxable income	\$5,000
Contribution	<u>100</u>
State taxable income	5,100
Tax rate	<u>0.055</u>
Pre-credit state income tax	275
Tax credit	<u>(100)</u>
State income taxes payable	\$175

*Journal Entries:*

Journal entries made during the year should achieve the following result:

Dr. Contributions	100
Cr. Cash	100

To record contribution to scholarship fund

Dr. Income tax expense	175
Cr. State income taxes payable	175

To record state income tax expense

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 5151.]

# TIS Section 6000

## SPECIALIZED INDUSTRY PROBLEMS

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Section

6130	Finance Companies
	.01 Amortization of Discount on Receivables of Consumer Finance Companies
	.02 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Finance Charges
	.03 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Service Charges
	.04 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Commissions on Loan Insurance
	.05 Disclosure of Contractual Maturities of Direct Cash Loans
	.06 Balance Sheet Presentation of Subordinated Debt
	[.07] Reserved
6140	Not-For-Profit Entities
	.01 Inventory Valuation for a Not-for-Profit Scientific Entity
	.02 Income Recognition of Membership Dues by Not-for-Profit Entity
	.03 Lapsing of Time Restrictions on Receivables That Are Uncollected at Their Due Date
	.04 Lapsing of Restrictions on Receivables if Purpose Restrictions Pertaining to Long-Lived Assets Are Met Before the Receivables Are Due
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Functional Category of Cost of Sales of Contributed Inventory
	.07 Functional Category of Costs of Special Events
	.08 Functional Category of the Costs of Direct Donor Benefits
	.09 Reporting Bad Debt Losses
	.10 Consolidation of Political Action Committee

*Section*

6140

## Not-For-Profit Entities—continued

- .11 Costs of Soliciting Contributed Services and Time That Do Not Meet the Recognition Criteria in FASB ASC 958
- .12 Nondiscretionary Assistance Programs
- .13 Note to Sections 6140.14–.18—Implementation of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (in the Beneficiary's Financial Statements)
- .14 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)
- .15 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)
- .16 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated)
- .17 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)
- .18 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)

## Section

- 6140 Not-For-Profit Entities—continued
- .19 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of Distributions From a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity) to a Health Care Beneficiary
  - .20 NPEs Reporting No Fund-Raising Expenses
  - .21 Should an NPE Report Amounts Charged to the NPE by a Professional Fund-Raiser Gross, as Fund-Raising Expenses, or Net, as a Reduction of Contributions?
  - .22 In Circumstances in Which the Reporting NPE Undertakes a Transaction in Which Another NPE (Fund-Raising NPE) Raises Contributions on Behalf of the Reporting NPE, and the Reporting NPE Compensates the Fund-Raising NPE for Raising Those Contributions (Compensation Including, But Not Limited to, an Administrative Fee), Should the Reporting NPE Report the Fund-Raising NPE's Compensation Gross, as Fund-Raising Expenses, or Net, as a Reduction of Contributions?
- 6300 Insurance Companies
- .01 Recognition of Commission Income by Insurance Agency
  - .02 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Commissions on Credit Life Insurance
  - .03 Recognition of Income on Unclaimed Refunds Due Policyholders on Policy Cancellations
  - .04 Reserve for Future Claims of Title Insurance Company
  - [.05] Reserved
  - [.06] Reserved
  - [.07] Reserved
  - .08 Definition of an Insurance Benefit Feature
  - .09 Definition of an Assessment
  - .10 Level of Aggregation of Additional Liabilities Determined Under FASB ASC 944
  - .11 Losses Followed by Losses
  - .12 Reinsurance
  - .13 Accounting for Contracts That Provide Annuitization Benefits
  - .14 Note to Sections 6300.15–.24—Accounting by Noninsurance Enterprises for Property and Casualty Insurance Arrangements That Limit Insurance Risk
  - .15 Finite Insurance
  - .16 Insurance Risk Limiting Features
  - .17 Transfer of Insurance Risk

*Section*

6300	Insurance Companies—continued
	.18 Accounting Guidance for Transfer of Insurance Risk
	.19 Differences Between Retroactive and Prospective Insurance
	.20 Accounting for Prospective Insurance
	.21 Accounting for Retroactive Insurance
	.22 Accounting for Multiple-Year Retrospectively Rated Insurance
	.23 Deposit Accounting
	.24 Identifying Accounting Model for Insurance Transactions
	.25 Integrated/Nonintegrated Contract Features in Applying FASB ASC 944-30
	.26 Evaluation of Significance of Modification in Applying FASB ASC 944-30
	.27 Changes in Investment Management Fees and Other Administrative Charges in Applying FASB ASC 944-30
	.28 Definition of Reunderwriting for Purposes of Applying FASB ASC 944-30
	.29 Contract Reinstatements in Applying FASB ASC 944-30
	.30 Commissions Paid on an Increase in Insurance Coverage or Incremental Deposits in Applying FASB ASC 944-30
	.31 Participating Dividends and the Interaction of Guidance in FASB ASC 944
	.32 Premium Changes to Long Duration Contracts in Applying FASB ASC 944-30
	.33 Evaluation of Changes Under FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(a)
	.34 Nature of Investment Return Rights in FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(b)
	[.35] Reserved
	.36 Prospective Unlocking
6400	Health Care Entities
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Hospital as Collecting Agent for Physicians
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	[.09] Reserved
	[.10] Reserved
	[.11] Reserved

## Section

6400	Health Care Entities—continued
	.12 General Obligation Bonds Issued for Current Use by City Owned Hospital
	[.13] Reserved
	[.14] Reserved
	[.15] Reserved
	[.16] Reserved
	.17 Elimination of Profit on Intercompany Sales
	[.18] Reserved
	.19 Offsetting of Limited Use Assets
	.20 Format of Combined or Consolidated Financial Statements
	[.21] Reserved
	[.22] Reserved
	[.23] Reserved
	[.24] Reserved
	.25 Accounting for Transfer of Assets From Not-for-Profit to For-Profit Entities
	.26 Transfer of Assets From Subsidiary For-Profit Entity to Not-for-Profit Stockholder Parent
	[.27] Reserved
	[.28] Reserved
	.29 Timing of Recording Transfers Between Related Entities
	.30 Accounting for Transactions Involving Medicaid Voluntary Contribution or Taxation Programs
	[.31] Reserved
	[.32] Reserved
	.33 Accounting for a Joint Operating Agreement
	.34 Accounting for Computer Systems Costs Incurred in Connection With the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA)
	.35 Note to Sections 6400.36–.42—Implementation of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (in the Beneficiary’s Financial Statements)
	.36 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)

## Section

6400

## Health Care Entities—continued

- .37 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)
- .38 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation—Does Common Control Lead to the Conclusion That the Beneficiary Can Determine the Timing and Amount of Distributions from the Recipient?
- .39 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated)
- .40 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)
- .41 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)
- .42 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity)—Accounting for Unrealized Gains and Losses on Investments Held by the Foundation
- .43 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of Distributions From a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity) to a Health Care Beneficiary

*Section*

6400	Health Care Entities—continued
	.45 Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others
	.46 Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Guarantor’s Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others—Mortgage Guarantees
6500	Extractive Industries
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Disclosure of Contingent Liability for Royalties
6600	Real Estate
	.01 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Commissions by Real Estate Brokerage Firm
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Accounting for Sale of Property With Option to Repurchase
	.04 Method of Recognizing Profit on Sale of Undeveloped Land With a Release Provision
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
6700	Construction Contractors
	.01 Distinction Between Long-Term and Short-Term Construction Contracts
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	[.09] Reserved
	.10 Payments for Landfill Rights
6910	Investment Companies
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved

*Section*

6910	Investment Companies—continued
[.03]	Reserved
[.04]	Reserved
[.05]	Reserved
[.06]	Reserved
[.07]	Reserved
[.08]	Reserved
[.09]	Reserved
[.10]	Reserved
[.11]	Reserved
[.12]	Reserved
[.13]	Reserved
[.14]	Reserved
[.15]	Reserved
.16	Presentation of Boxed Investment Positions in the Condensed Schedule of Investments of Nonregistered Investment Partnerships
.17	Disclosure of Long and Short Positions
.18	Disclosure of an Investment in an Issuer When One or More Securities and/or One or More Derivative Contracts Are Held
.19	Information Required to Be Disclosed in Financial Statements When Comparative Financial Statements of Nonregistered Investment Partnerships Are Presented
.20	Presentation of Purchases and Sales/Maturities of Investments in the Statement of Cash Flows
.21	Recognition of Premium/Discount on Short Positions in Fixed-Income Securities
.22	Presentation of Reverse Repurchase Agreements
.23	Accounting Treatment of Offering Costs Incurred by Investment Partnerships
.24	Meaning of “Continually Offer Interests”
.25	Considerations in Evaluating Whether Certain Liabilities Constitute ‘Debt’ for Purposes of Assessing Whether an Investment Company Must Present a Statement of Cash Flows
.26	Additional Guidance on Determinants of Net Versus Gross Presentation of Security Purchases and Sales/Maturities in the Statement of Cash Flows of a Nonregistered Investment Company
.27	Treatment of Deferred Fees

*Section*

- 6910 Investment Companies—continued
  - .28 Reporting Financial Highlights, Net Asset Value (NAV) Per Share, Shares Outstanding, and Share Transactions When Investors in Unitized Nonregistered Funds Are Issued Individual Classes or Series of Shares
  - .29 Allocation of Unrealized Gain (Loss), Recognition of Carried Interest, and Clawback Obligations
- 6930 Employee Benefit Plans
  - .01 When Does a Plan Have to File a Form 11-K?
- 6931 Financial Statement Reporting and Disclosure—Employee Benefit Plans
  - .01 Computation of Net Appreciation/Depreciation in Fair Value of Investments
  - .02 Benefits Payable to Terminated Participants of a Defined Contribution Plan
  - .03 Should the Sale of Real Estate Investments Held by Employee Benefit Plans Be Treated as Discontinued Operations?
  - .04 Depreciation of a Real Estate Investment Owned by a Defined Benefit Pension Plan
  - .05 Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Single-Employer Employee Benefit Plans Related to the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement and Modernization Act of 2003
  - .06 Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Multiemployer Employee Benefit Plans Related to the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement and Modernization Act of 2003
  - .07 Financial Statement Presentation of Underwriting Deficits
  - .08 Types of Investments Subject to FASB ASC 962
  - .09 Financial Statement Presentation When a Plan Invests in a Common Collective Trust Fund or in a Master Trust That Holds Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts
  - .10 Financial Statement Disclosure Requirements When a Plan Invests in a Common Collective Trust Fund or in a Master Trust That Holds Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts
  - .11 Fair Value Measurement Disclosures for Master Trusts
- 6932 ERISA Reporting and Disclosures
  - .01 Employee Benefit Security Administration Guidance on Insurance Company Demutualizations
  - .02 When Should Participant Contributions Be Considered Late Remittances?

*Section*

- 6932 ERISA Reporting and Disclosures—continued
- .03 How Should Delinquent Loan Remittances Be Reported on the Form 5500?
  - .04 How Should Participant Loans Be Reported on Defined Contribution Plan Master Trust Form 5500 Filings?
  - .05 How Should Investments in Brokerage Accounts Be Reported in the Financial Statements and Form 5500?
  - .06 Do All Types of Reconciling Items Between the Financial Statements and the Form 5500 Require a Reconciling Footnote in the Financial Statements?
  - .07 What is the Requirement to Report Certain Transactions Under Individual Account Plans on the Schedule of Reportable Transactions?
  - .08 Is Noninterest-Bearing Cash an Asset on the Supplemental Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year)?
  - .09 Is Netting of Investments on the Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year) Permitted?
  - .10 Is the Schedule of 5 Percent Reportable Transactions Required for Defined Benefit Plans?
- 6933 Auditing Employee Benefit Plans
- .01 Initial Audit of a Plan
  - .02 Investment Allocations Testing in an Electronic Environment
  - .03 Auditor's Responsibility for Detecting Nonexempt Transactions
  - .04 Nonexempt Transactions
  - .05 Testing of Plan Qualification Tests Prepared by TPA
  - .06 Audit Procedures for Plan Mergers
  - .07 Audit Requirements for Remaining Portion of a Split Plan
  - .08 Audit Requirements for Frozen and Terminated Plans
  - .09 Audit Procedures When Plan Operates in a Decentralized Environment
  - .10 Is the Master Trust Required to Be Audited?
- 6934 Limited-Scope Audits—Employee Benefit Plans
- .01 Certifications by "Agent of"
  - .02 Limited-Scope Audit on a Portion of the Plan's Investments
  - .03 Limited-Scope Audit—Plan Certifications for Master Trusts
  - .04 In a Limited-Scope Audit Is it Necessary to Test the Allocation of Investment Earnings at the Participant Account Level?
- 6935 SAS No. 70 Reports—Employee Benefit Plans
- .01 Audit Procedures When SAS No. 70 Reports Are Not Available
  - .02 Allocations Testing of Investment Earnings When a Type 2 SAS No. 70 Report Is Available

*Section*

- 6936 Auditing Defined Contribution Plans
  - .01 Auditor's Responsibility for Testing a Plan's Compliance With Qualification Issues
  - .02 Merger Date for Defined Contribution Plans
- 6937 Auditing Defined Benefit Plans
  - .01 General Conditions Requiring an Audit of Pension Plan Financial Statements
- 6938 Auditing Health and Welfare Plans
  - .01 When Does a Health and Welfare Plan Require an Audit?
  - .02 Audit Requirements for Health and Welfare Plans
  - .03 HIPAA Restrictions
  - .04 Is a Health and Welfare Plan Required to Be Audited if Participants Are Contributing to the Plan?
  - .05 Audit Requirement When Only Medical Is Funded Through a VEBA Trust
  - .06 Audit of Plan When VEBA Trust Is a Pass-Through
  - .07 When Multiple Plans Use a VEBA Trust, Can the Audit Be Performed At the Trust Level?
  - .08 Audit Requirement for Health and Welfare Plan Funded Through a 401(h) Account
- 6939 Auditor's Reports—Employee Benefit Plans
  - [.01] Reserved
  - .02 Audit Opinion to Be Issued When Discrimination Testing Has Not Been Completed
- 6940 Franchisors
  - .01 Method of Accounting for Sale of Territorial Franchise Right
  - .02 Revenue Recognition for Franchisors
- 6950 State and Local Governments
  - [.01] Reserved
  - [.02] Reserved
  - [.03] Reserved
  - [.04] Reserved
  - [.05] Reserved
  - [.06] Reserved
  - [.07] Reserved
  - [.08] Reserved
  - [.09] Reserved
  - [.10] Reserved
  - [.11] Reserved
  - [.12] Reserved
  - [.13] Reserved

*Section*

6950	State and Local Governments—continued
	[.14] Reserved
	[.15] Reserved
	[.16] Reserved
	[.17] Reserved
	.18 Accounting for the Issuance of Zero-Coupon Bonds and Other Deep Discount Debt by a Governmental Entity
	[.19] Reserved
	[.20] Reserved
	.21 Auditor's Reports on Local Governments [Amended]
	.22 State Accounting Guide Differs From GAAP [Amended]
6960	Colleges and Universities [Amended]
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	[.09] Reserved
	[.10] Reserved
	[.11] Reserved
	.12 Allocation of Overhead
6970	Entertainment Industry
	.01 Changes in Film Impairment Estimates During Quarters Within a Fiscal Year (Part I)
	.02 Changes in Film Impairment Estimates During Quarters Within a Fiscal Year (Part II)
6980	Brokers and Dealers
	.01 Auditor's Report on Internal Control for Broker-Dealer [Amended]
	[.02] Reserved
6985	U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) Programs
	[.01] Reserved
6990	Common Interest Realty Associations
	.01 Personal Property of Timeshares

*Section*

## 6995 Credit Unions

- .01 Financial Reporting Issues Related to Actions Taken by the  
National Credit Union Administration on January 28, 2009  
in Connection with the Corporate Credit Union System and  
the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund
  - .02 Evaluation of Capital Investments in Corporate Credit Unions for  
Other-Than-Temporary Impairment
- 

**[The next page is 5261.]**



## Section 6130

### Finance Companies

#### **.01 Amortization of Discount on Receivables of Consumer Finance Companies**

*Inquiry*—A client in the consumer finance business loans money for short periods of time. What method should be used to amortize discounts on such loans?

*Reply*—In determining income from loans receivable which have been issued at a discount, the required method of income recognition for any such discount is the interest method, as described in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 310-20.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.02 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Finance Charges**

*Inquiry*—A finance company would like to establish a policy of recognizing 15 percent of the finance charges on discount loans as revenues in the first month of the loan and recognizing the balance of such charges as yield adjustments as the receivables are liquidated. Is this an acceptable method of recognizing revenues from finance charges?

*Reply*—No. In accordance with FASB ASC 310-20, the interest (actuarial) method should be used to account for interest income. In addition, FASB ASC 310-20-35-2 requires that certain direct loan acquisition costs be deferred and treated as yield adjustments in applying the interest method.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.03 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Service Charges**

*Inquiry*—A company finances insurance premiums of individuals through various insurance agents. The company's policy is to receive completed premium finance agreements directly from the insurance agents. The amount financed includes a finance charge and a nonreturnable service charge. The finance charge is recognized in income by the interest method.

How should the service charge be recognized on the records of the company?

*Reply*—In accordance with FASB ASC 310-20, the service charge should also be recognized in income over the life of the related loan as an adjustment of yield using the interest method.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.04 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Commissions on Loan Insurance**

*Inquiry*—A finance company receives commissions for loan insurance. How should the company recognize commission revenues?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 942-605-25-1 states that the insurance commissions received from independent insurers should be deferred and systematically amortized to income over the life of the related insurance contracts because the insurance and lending activities are integral parts of the same transactions.

The method of commission amortization should be consistent with the method of premium income recognition for that type of policy in accordance with FASB ASC 944, *Financial Services—Insurance*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.05 Disclosure of Contractual Maturities of Direct Cash Loans**

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 944-805-50-4 states

Disclosures that typically would be required by the preceding paragraph for the various specific elements included in the closed block need not be made separately for the closed block if the nature of the information for the closed block would not differ significantly from that already included for the reporting entity as a whole. For example, it is not necessary to show a separate schedule of contractual maturities of closed block fixed maturity securities if the relative composition of contractual maturities is similar to those of the reporting entity taken as a whole. However, if the relative maturities of the closed block fixed maturities securities differ from those of the reporting entity taken as a whole, separate disclosures shall be made.

At December 31, 20X1, a company has only three loans outstanding of \$36,000 each, payable monthly as follows: 12 installments of \$3,000 each; 24 installments of \$1,500 each; and 36 installments of \$1,000 each. How would these contractual maturities properly be shown?

*Reply*—Appropriate disclosure of the amounts to be received would be: 20X2, \$66,000; 20X3, \$30,000; and 20X4, \$12,000. Refer to FASB ASC 944-805-55 for implementation guidance and illustrations.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.06 Balance Sheet Presentation of Subordinated Debt**

*Inquiry*—A consumer finance company, whose financial statements are used only by the company and its banks, would like to include subordinated debt in its balance sheet with the caption “Total Subordinated Notes and Shareholders’ Equity.” The company believes that presentation would show more clearly the position of the banks with respect to other creditors. Would the presentation be acceptable if the statements were clearly labeled, “For the Use of Banks and Bankers Only”?

*Reply*—No. Although the total of subordinated long-term debt and stockholders’ equity is important to creditors of finance companies, the prominent presentation of this total in balance sheets causes many users of financial statements to interpret this amount as total stockholders’ equity, and, for this reason, its use is not acceptable.

The proposed balance sheet presentation would not be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles even if the financial statements are clearly and conspicuously labeled, “For the Use of Banks and Bankers Only.”

---

[The next page is 5371.]

## Section 6140

### Not-For-Profit Entities

#### .01 Inventory Valuation for a Not-for-Profit Scientific Entity

*Inquiry*—A not-for-profit scientific entity produces products that are sold at a price less than cost. The difference between cost and sale proceeds is covered by contributions. The not-for-profit entity reports inventories in its financial statements at an arbitrary amount and discloses that fact on the face of the financial statements. Is this accounting appropriate?

*Reply*—No. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 330-10-35-1 states

A departure from the cost basis of pricing the inventory is required when the utility of the goods is no longer as great as their cost. Where there is evidence that the utility of goods, in their disposal in the ordinary course of business, will be less than cost, whether due to physical deterioration, obsolescence, changes in price levels, or other causes, the difference shall be recognized as a loss of the current period. This is generally accomplished by stating such goods at a lower level commonly designated as *market*.

Accordingly, inventories should be valued at lower of cost or market and not at an arbitrary amount. The fact that the difference between the sales proceeds and the costs is covered by contributions does not change the application of the requirements of FASB ASC 330-10.

[Amended, June 1995; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .02 Income Recognition of Membership Dues by Not-for-Profit Entity

*Inquiry*—A local not-for-profit entity collects membership dues and does not provide any services to its members in return for the dues. It records the dues as contributions and recognizes them as revenue in the period they are received. The entity provides services, such as seminars, group insurance, and so on., to its members at an extra cost.

Is this the appropriate accounting method?

*Reply*—Yes. This entity qualifies as a *not-for-profit entity* under the FASB ASC glossary definition. Accordingly, FASB ASC 958-605-25-2 would require that the dues be recognized as contributions revenue when received since the members receive no benefits from the dues. In accordance with FASB ASC 958-605-25-1, if the member did receive benefits from those dues, dues revenue would be recognized over the period of membership.

[Amended, June 1995; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .03 Lapsing of Time Restrictions on Receivables That Are Uncollected at Their Due Date

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 958-605-45-5 provides that “receipts of unconditional promises to give with payments due in future periods shall be reported as restricted support unless explicit donor stipulations or circumstances surrounding the receipt of a promise make clear that the donor intended it to be used to support activities of the current period. It is reasonable to assume that by specifying future payment dates donors indicate that their gift is to support

activities in each period in which a payment is scheduled. For example, receipts of unconditional promises to give cash in future years generally increase temporarily restricted net assets.”

Do time restrictions on contributions receivable lapse when the receivable is due or when it is collected?

*Reply*—Time restrictions on contributions receivable lapse when the receivable is due. (In some cases, the due date may be explicitly stated. In other cases, circumstances surrounding receipt of the contribution may make clear the implicit due date. In yet other cases, the due date may be unclear. NPEs should consider the facts and circumstances surrounding the promise to give to determine the due date, if any.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.04 Lapsing of Restrictions on Receivables if Purpose Restrictions Pertaining to Long-Lived Assets Are Met Before the Receivables Are Due**

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 958-605-45-4 provides, in part, that “a restriction on a not-for-profit entity’s use of the assets contributed results either from a donor’s explicit stipulation or from circumstances surrounding the receipt of the contribution that make clear the donor’s implicit restriction on use.” These are purpose restrictions. FASB ASC 958-605-45-5 provides that “receipts of unconditional promises to give with payments due in future periods shall be reported as restricted support unless explicit donor stipulations or circumstances surrounding the receipt of a promise make clear that the donor intended it to be used to support activities of the current period. It is reasonable to assume that by specifying future payment dates donors indicate that their gift is to support activities in each period in which a payment is scheduled. For example, receipts of unconditional promises to give cash in future years generally increase temporarily restricted net assets.” These are time restrictions. FASB ASC 958-205-45-9 provides, in part, as follows:

If two or more temporary restrictions are imposed on a contribution, the effect of the expiration of those restrictions shall be recognized in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired.

FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 further provides, in part

Temporarily restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired.

FASB ASC 958-205-45-12 further provides

Time restrictions implied on gifts of long-lived assets pursuant to paragraph 958-605-45-6 expire as the economic benefits of the acquired assets are used up; that is, over their estimated useful lives. In the absence of donor stipulations specifying how long donated assets must be used or a not-for-profit entity’s policy of implying time restrictions, restrictions on long-lived assets, if any, or cash to acquire long-lived assets expire when the assets are placed in service.

NPEs may receive promises to give contributions that are restricted by donors for investment in long-lived assets. In some circumstances, the assets may be placed in service, and the purpose restrictions met, prior to the due date of the contribution. For example, an NPE may have a capital campaign, asking for commitments to contribute over the next five years so the entity can build a new facility. A donor may promise to give \$100,000 in five years in response to that request.

Are the restrictions met when the assets are placed in service or when the receivable is due?

*Reply*—NPEs should consider the facts and circumstances surrounding the promise to give and whether those facts and circumstances indicate that the donor intended the contribution to be used to support activities of the current period, with constructing the building or placing it in service considered activities of the current period. If circumstances indicate that the donor intended to support activities of the current period, there is no time restriction and the preceding guidance in paragraphs 9 and 11–12 of FASB ASC 958-205-45 would not be applicable, unless a restriction was placed on the contribution other than constructing the building. If circumstances indicate that the donor's intent is not to support activities of the current period, there are both a time restriction and a purpose restriction. In accordance with FASB ASC 958-205-45-11, the effect of the expiration of restrictions is recognized in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.06 Functional Category of Cost of Sales of Contributed Inventory**

*Inquiry*—How should the cost of sales of contributed inventory be reported? For example, should it be reported as a separate supporting service, as program, or as fund-raising?

*Reply*—Cost of sales of contributed inventory should be reported as the cost of a separate supporting service, unless the item sold is related to a program activity, in which case, cost of sales is reported as a cost of a program activity. Cost of sales of contributed inventory should not be reported as fund-raising.

#### **.07 Functional Category of Costs of Special Events**

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 958-720-25-4 provides that “fundraising costs, including the cost of special fundraising events, are incurred to persuade potential donors to make contributions to a not-for-profit entity and shall be expensed as incurred.” The FASB ASC glossary defines the term fundraising activities as “activities undertaken to induce potential donors to contribute money, securities, services, materials, facilities, other assets, or time.” Chapter 13 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Entities* provides guidance on accounting for special events and provides that not-for-profit entities may report the gross revenues of special events and other fund-raising activities with the cost of direct benefits to donors (for example, meals and facilities rental) displayed either (1) as a line item deducted from the special event revenues or (2) in the same section of the statement of activities as are other programs or supporting services and allocated, if necessary, among those various functions.

Should all costs of special fund-raising events, such as costs of direct donor benefits that are provided in exchange transactions, be reported as fund-raising?

*Reply*—The discussion of special fund-raising events in FASB ASC 958-720-25 and 958-720-45 provide that some, but not necessarily all, costs of special fund-raising events should be reported as fund-raising. Certain costs of special fund-raising events, such as costs of direct donor benefits that are provided in exchange transactions, should be reported in categories other than fund-raising.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.08 Functional Category of the Costs of Direct Donor Benefits**

*Inquiry*—NPEs may hold special events that provide donor benefits. For example, an entity may hold a special event and provide a meal to donors, which would be a direct donor benefit. Paragraphs 10–15 of FASB ASC 958-720-55 provide guidance on reporting the costs of special events, including the costs of direct donor benefits. Paragraphs 20–22 of FASB ASC 958-720-45 provide that, if cost of sales relates to an item that is program related, cost of sales should be reported as program expense. Otherwise, cost of sales could be reported as a separate supporting service. Also, FASB ASC 958-720-45-19 provides that the cost of premiums provided that are greater than nominal in value should be reported as cost of sales. However, FASB ASC 958 provides no guidance concerning the functional category in which the costs of direct donor benefits should be reported in circumstances in which the benefits are not program related, beyond providing that they should be reported as a supporting service.

In which functional category should the costs of direct donor benefits that are not program related be reported?

*Reply*—The costs of donor benefits that are not program related and that are provided in exchange transactions should be reported as a separate supporting category, such as cost of sales, and should not be reported as fund-raising.

The costs of donor benefits that are not program related and that are provided in transactions that are other than exchange transactions, such as a fund-raising dinner for which there is no charge to attend, should be reported as fund-raising.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.09 Reporting Bad Debt Losses**

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 958-225-45-7 provides that expenses should be reported as decreases in unrestricted net assets.

FASB ASC 958-225-45-15 provides that “a statement of activities may report gains and losses as net amounts if they result from peripheral or incidental transactions or from other events and circumstances that may be largely beyond the control of the not-for-profit entity and its management.”

FASB ASC 958-310-35-7 provides that, if the fair value of contributions arising from unconditional promises to give cash or noncash assets decreases subsequent to initial measurement because of changes in the quantity or nature of assets expected to be received, the decrease should be recognized as expenses or losses (bad debt) in the period(s) in which the expectation changes.<sup>1</sup>

May bad debt losses be netted against contribution revenue?

*Reply*—Bad debt losses are prohibited from being netted against contribution revenue under FASB ASC 958-225-45-15 because losses are permitted to be netted only against gains, and not against revenues.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

<sup>1</sup> The provision that certain decreases in the fair value of contributions arising from unconditional promises to give should be accounted for as losses, rather than as expenses, is an accounting convention. This convention provides that, in circumstances in which the net assets related to receivables are represented as restricted net assets, decreases in net assets should be reported as decreases in restricted net assets, rather than as decreases in unrestricted net assets.

## **.10 Consolidation of Political Action Committee**

*Inquiry*—Some not-for-profit entities are related to other not-for-profit entities that perform political activities that the reporting entity does not wish to perform, perhaps because performing those activities may threaten the reporting entity's tax exempt status, the reporting entity is precluded from conducting such activities, or for other reasons. For example, a membership entity may establish and sponsor a political action committee (PAC) whose mission is to further the interests of the membership entity. The resources held by the PAC are used for the purposes of the membership entity and the governing board of the PAC is appointed by the board of the membership entity.

Does FASB ASC 958-810 require consolidation of PACs in the circumstances previously described?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 958-810 requires consolidating PACs in the circumstances described in the preceding. Under FASB ASC 958-810, the threshold issues pertaining to the circumstances previously described are whether there is (1) control through a majority voting interest in the board of the PAC and (2) an economic interest. In the circumstances described in the preceding, both are present. Control through a majority voting interest in the board of the PAC exists because the governing board of the PAC is appointed by the board of the membership entity. An economic interest exists because the PAC holds significant resources that must be used for the purposes of the membership entity.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.11 Costs of Soliciting Contributed Services and Time That Do Not Meet the Recognition Criteria in FASB ASC 958**

*Inquiry*—Questions have arisen about the classification of costs of soliciting contributed services and time. The issue focuses on whether those costs should be reported as fundraising in all cases or whether, in circumstances in which the services or time do not meet the recognition criteria in FASB ASC 958-605-25-16, those costs should be reported in the functional category to which the solicited services or time pertain.

According to FASB ASC 958-720-45-9, fundraising activities include the following:

- a. Publicizing and conducting fundraising campaigns
- b. Maintaining donor mailing lists
- c. Conducting special fundraising events
- d. Preparing and distributing fundraising manuals, instructions, and other materials
- e. Conducting other activities involved with soliciting contributions from individuals, foundations, government agencies, and others.

The FASB ASC glossary defines *contribution* and provides as follows:

An unconditional transfer of cash or other assets to an entity or a settlement or cancellation of its liabilities in a voluntary nonreciprocal transfer by another entity acting other than as an owner. Those characteristics distinguish contributions from exchange transactions, which are reciprocal transfers in which each party receives and sacrifices approximately equal value; from investments by owners and distributions to owners, which are nonreciprocal transfers between an entity and its owners; and from other nonreciprocal transfers, such as impositions of taxes or fines and thefts, which are not voluntary transfers. In a contribution transaction, the value,

if any, returned to the resource provider is incidental to potential public benefits. In an exchange transaction, the potential public benefits are secondary to the potential proprietary benefits to the resource provider. The term contribution revenue is used to apply to transactions that are part of the entity's ongoing major or central activities (revenues), or are peripheral or incidental to the entity (gains).

The FASB ASC glossary defines the term *fundraising activities* as follows:

Activities undertaken to induce potential donors to contribute money, securities, services, materials, facilities, other assets, or time.

FASB ASC 958-605-25-16 discusses recognition criteria for contributed services and provides, in part, as follows:

Contributions of services shall be recognized if the services received meet any of the following criteria:

- a. They create or enhance nonfinancial assets
- b. They require specialized skills, are provided by individuals possessing those skills, and would typically need to be purchased if not provided by donation.

Contributed services that do not meet these criteria are prohibited from being recognized.

As previously mentioned, questions have arisen about the classification of the costs of soliciting contributed services and time that do not meet the recognition criteria in FASB ASC 958-605-25-16.

How should the costs of soliciting contributed services that do not meet the recognition criteria in FASB ASC 958-605-25-16 be reported?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 958-720-45-10 provides that fundraising activities include soliciting contributions of services from individuals, regardless of whether those services meet the recognition criteria for contributions in paragraphs 2–20 of FASB ASC 958-605-25.<sup>2</sup> For example, costs of soliciting contributed services to be used in program functions should be reported as fundraising, even if the services do not meet the recognition criteria. Similarly, costs of soliciting management and general services should be reported as fundraising, even if the management and general services do not meet the recognition criteria.

Certain contributed services are prohibited from being recognized for practical, rather than conceptual, reasons. Those services are nevertheless contributions, regardless of whether or not they are recognized. Therefore, soliciting those contributions meets the definition of *fundraising* in the FASB ASC glossary.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## .12 Nondiscretionary Assistance Programs

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 958 provides guidance for transactions in which an entity—the *donor*—makes a contribution by transferring assets to a not-for-profit entity—the *recipient entity*, as defined in the FASB ASC glossary—that accepts the assets from the donor and agrees to use those assets on behalf of or transfer those assets, the return on investment of those assets, or both to another entity—the *beneficiary*—that is specified by the donor. It also provides

---

<sup>2</sup> NPEs frequently incur other costs in connection with contributed services, such as costs of training and managing volunteers. Costs of training and managing volunteers should not be reported as fund-raising, unless those volunteers are performing fundraising functions.

guidance for transactions that take place in a similar manner but are not contributions because the transfers are revocable, repayable, or reciprocal. FASB ASC 958 provides that a recipient entity that (a) accepts assets from a donor without variance power and (b) agrees to use those assets on behalf of or transfer those assets, the return on investment of those assets, or both to a specified beneficiary that is not financially interrelated is not a donee. The recipient entity should recognize its liability to the specified beneficiary concurrent with its recognition of cash or other financial assets<sup>3</sup> received from the donor. Further, FASB ASC 958 provides that a nondonee recipient entity that receives nonfinancial assets is permitted, but not required, to recognize its liability and those assets provided that the entity reports consistently from period to period and discloses its accounting policy.

FASB ASC 958-605-55-71 discusses transfers that are not contributions and provides as follows:

Receipts of resources as an agent, trustee, or intermediary of a donor are not contributions received to the agent because the recipient of assets who is an agent or trustee has little or no discretion in determining how the assets transferred will be used. For the same reason, deliveries of resources as an agent, trustee, or intermediary of a donor are not contributions made by the agent. Similarly, contributions of services (time, skills, or expertise) between donors and donees that are facilitated by an intermediary are not contributions received or contributions made by the intermediary.

Some NPEs participate in activities wherein the resource provider (donor) determines the eligibility requirements for the ultimate beneficiaries and the NPE must disburse to any who meet guidelines specified by the resource provider or return the assets. In some of those programs, the NPE receives assets, such as food, food vouchers, public transportation vouchers, and cash and distributes the assets on behalf of the resource provider (donor) in exchange for a fee for performing that service.

Should recipient entity NPEs report receipts and disbursements of assets under such programs (other than any fees for performing the service) as revenues and expenses?

*Reply*—Receipts and disbursements of assets under such programs (other than any fees for performing the service) are agency transactions, and are not contributions to the recipient entity NPE. A recipient entity that receives financial assets, such as cash or vouchers that can be exchanged for cash, should recognize its liability to the beneficiaries concurrent with its recognition of financial assets received from the donor. A recipient entity that receives nonfinancial assets, such as food vouchers or public transportation vouchers that are denominated in either dollar values or in nonfinancial terms, such as pounds of food or bus rides, but that will not be settled in cash, is permitted, but not required, to recognize its liability and those assets provided that the entity reports consistently from period to period and discloses its accounting policy.

---

<sup>3</sup> The Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) glossary defines financial assets as

cash, evidence of an ownership interest in an entity, or a contract that conveys to one entity a right to do either of the following:

- a. Receive cash or another financial instrument from a second entity
- b. Exchange other financial instruments on potentially favorable terms with the second entity

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.13 Note to Sections 6140.14–.18—Implementation of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (in the Beneficiary’s Financial Statements)**

Some not-for-profit entities have separate fund-raising foundations (commonly referred to as *institutionally related foundations*) that solicit contributions on their behalf. FASB ASC 958 provides guidance on (among other things) the accounting that should be followed by such institutionally related foundations and their related beneficiary entity(ies) with respect to contributions received by the foundation.

Some institutionally related foundations and their beneficiary entities meet the characteristics of financially interrelated entities provided in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. If entities are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958 provides that the balance sheet of the beneficiary entity(ies) should reflect that entity’s interest in the net assets of the foundation, and that interest should be periodically adjusted to reflect the beneficiary’s share of the changes in the net assets of the foundation. This accounting is similar to the equity method of accounting, which is described in FASB ASC 323, *Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures*.

FASB ASC 323-10-35-5 requires that the periodic adjustment of the investment be included in the determination of the investor’s net income. The purpose of sections 6140.14–.18 (applicable to NPEs other than health care [HC] entities) and sections 6400.36–.42 (applicable to not-for-profit HC entities) is to clarify that in circumstances in which the recipient and the beneficiary are financially interrelated:

- Beneficiary entities should segregate the adjustment into changes in restricted and unrestricted net assets. (NPE TPA [sections 6140.14–.16]; HC TPA [section 6400.36–37 and .39])
- In circumstances in which the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, the existence of the recipient entity should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in the beneficiary’s financial statements. In other words, the recipient cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (NPE TPA [sections 6140.14 and .16]; HC TPA [sections 6400.36 and .39])
- In circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, the existence of the recipient entity creates an implied time restriction on the beneficiary’s net assets attributable to the beneficiary’s interest in the net assets of the recipient (in addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, in recognizing its interest in the net assets of the recipient entity and the changes in that interest, the beneficiary should classify the resulting net assets and changes in those net assets as temporarily restricted (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions). (NPE TPA [section 6140.15]; HC TPA [section 6400.37])

- In circumstances in which the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary and some net assets held by the recipient for the benefit of the beneficiary are subject to purpose restrictions (for example, net assets of the recipient restricted to the beneficiary's purchase of property, plant, and equipment [PPE]), expenditures by the beneficiary that meet those purpose restrictions result in the beneficiary (and recipient) reporting reclassifications from temporarily restricted to unrestricted net assets (assuming that the beneficiary has no other net assets subject to similar purpose restrictions), unless those net assets are subject to time restrictions that have not expired, including time restrictions that are implied on contributed long-lived assets as a result of the beneficiary's accounting policy pursuant to FASB ASC 958-605-45-6. (If those net assets are subject to time restrictions that have not expired and the beneficiary has other net assets with similar purpose restrictions, the restrictions on those other net assets would expire in accordance with FASB ASC 958. These sections do not, however, establish a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or purpose restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary.) (NPE TPA [section 6140.17]; HC TPA [section 6400.40])
- In circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary and some net assets held by the recipient for the benefit of the beneficiary are subject to purpose restrictions, though not subject to time restrictions other than the implied time restrictions that exist because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, expenditures by the beneficiary that are consistent with those purpose restrictions should not result in the beneficiary reporting a reclassification from temporarily restricted to unrestricted net assets, subject to the exceptions in the following sentence. Expenditures by the beneficiary that are consistent with those purpose restrictions should result in the beneficiary reporting a reclassification from temporarily restricted to unrestricted net assets if (a) the recipient has no discretion in deciding whether the purpose restriction is met<sup>4</sup> or (b) the recipient distributes or obligates itself to distribute to the beneficiary amounts attributable to net assets restricted for the particular purpose, or otherwise indicates that the recipient intends for those net assets to be used to support the particular purpose as an activity of the current period. In all other circumstances, (a) purpose restrictions and (b) implied time restrictions on the net assets attributable to the interest in the recipient entity exist and have not yet expired. (However, if the beneficiary has other net assets with similar purpose

---

<sup>4</sup> In some circumstances, the purpose restrictions may be so broad that the recipient entity has discretion in deciding whether expenditures by the beneficiary that are consistent with those purpose restrictions actually meet those purpose restrictions. For example, the recipient's net assets may have arisen from a contribution that was restricted for the beneficiary's purchase of research equipment, with no particular research equipment specified. Purchasing an XYZ microscope, which is consistent with that purpose restriction, may or may not meet that purpose restriction, depending on the decision of the recipient. In contrast, the net assets may have arisen from a contribution that was restricted for an XYZ microscope. Purchasing an XYZ microscope, which also is consistent with that purpose restriction, would result in the recipient having no discretion in determining whether that purpose restriction is met.

restrictions, those restrictions would expire in accordance with FASB ASC 958. These TPAs do not establish a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary.) (NPE TPA [section 6140.18]; HC TPA [section 6400.41])

- *For HC NPEs Only.* In circumstances in which the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, changes in the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of a recipient entity attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments should be included or excluded from the performance indicator in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205-45, FASB ASC 954-320-45, FASB ASC 954-320-55, and FASB ASC 954-605 in the same manner that they would have been had the beneficiary had the transactions itself. Similarly, in applying this guidance, the determination of whether amounts are included or excluded from the performance measure should comprehend that if the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, an implied time restriction exists on the beneficiary's net assets attributable to the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient (in addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, in circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, the beneficiary should classify the resulting net assets and changes in those net assets as temporarily restricted (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions) and therefore exclude those changes from the performance indicator. (HC TPA [section 6400.42])
- *For HC NPEs Only.* In circumstances in which the recipient entity and the beneficiary are both controlled by the same entity, entities should consider the specific facts and circumstances to determine whether the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary. (HC TPA [section 6400.38])

**Technical Practice Aids for Not-for-Profit Entities**  
**Implementation of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's**  
**Interest in the**  
**Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation**  
**(in the Beneficiary's Financial Statements)**

HC NPEs			
NPEs that are not HC NPEs			
Can the beneficiary determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary? [Not-for-profit health care entities (HC NPEs) under common control consider HC Technical Practice Aid (TPA) section 6400.38]	How does the existence of the recipient affect the beneficiary's reporting of its interest?	Are any net assets held by the recipient for the benefit of the beneficiary subject to donor-imposed purpose restrictions and has the beneficiary made expenditures that meet those purpose restrictions (in circumstances in which the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary) or that are consistent with those purpose restrictions (in circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary)?	Are any changes in the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments?

*(continued)*

HC NPEs			
NPEs that are not HC NPEs			
Yes	Existence of recipient is transparent in determining net asset classifications. (NPE TPA [sections 6140.14 and .16]; HC TPA [sections 6400.36 and .39])	Reclass the applicable net assets from temporarily restricted (TR) to unrestricted (UR) unless those net assets are subject to time restrictions that have not expired. (NPE TPA [section 6140.17]; HC TPA [ section 6400.40])	Changes in the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of a recipient entity attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments should be included or excluded from the performance indicator in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205-45, FASB ASC 954-320-45, FASB ASC 954-320-55, and FASB ASC 954-605 in the same manner that they would have been had the beneficiary had the transactions itself. (HC TPA [section 6400.42])
No	Existence of the recipient creates an implied time restriction on the beneficiary's net assets attributable to the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient. (NPE TPA [section 6140.15]; HC TPA [ section 6400.37])	Reclass the applicable net assets from TR to UR only if the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction are met. Whether the purpose restriction is met depends in part on (1) whether the recipient has discretion in determining whether the purpose restriction is met and (2) the recipient's decision in exercising that discretion, if any. (NPE TPA [ section 6140.18]; HC TPA [section 6400.41])	An implied time restriction exists on the beneficiary's net assets attributable to the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient. The beneficiary should classify the resulting net assets and changes in those net assets as temporarily restricted (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions) and therefore exclude those changes from the performance indicator. (HC TPA [section 6400.42])

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.14 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)**

*Inquiry*—ABC Research Institute, a not-for-profit entity subject to FASB ASC 958<sup>5</sup> and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Research Institute. Assume that ABC Research Institute can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Research Institute can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute.

During its most recent fiscal year, ABC Foundation's activities resulted in an increase in net assets (before distributions) of \$3,200, comprised of \$2,000 in unrestricted contributions, \$1,000 in temporarily restricted contributions (purpose restrictions), \$500 in unrestricted dividend and interest income, and \$300 in expenses. In addition, ABC Foundation distributed \$2,500 in cash representing unrestricted net assets to ABC Research Institute. How should this activity be reported in ABC Research Institute's financial statements?

*Reply*—Because ABC Foundation (the recipient entity) and ABC Research Institute (the beneficiary) are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires ABC Research Institute to recognize its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and periodically adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of ABC Foundation. This is similar to the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323.

In recognizing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and the changes in that interest, ABC Research Institute should classify the resulting net assets as if contributions were received by ABC Research Institute directly from the donor, because ABC Research Institute can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Research Institute can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute. In other words, the existence of ABC Foundation should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in ABC Research Institute's financial statements because ABC Foundation cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (Any instructions given by ABC Foundation are designations, rather than restrictions.)

In the circumstances described in the preceding, ABC Research Institute would initially increase its asset, "Interest in Net Assets of ABC Foundation" for the change in ABC Foundation's net assets (\$3,200). ABC Research Institute's Statement of Activity would include "Change in Unrestricted Interest in ABC Foundation" of \$2,200, which would be reported as an increase in unrestricted net assets, and "Change in Temporarily Restricted Interest in ABC Foundation" of \$1,000 as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets.

The \$2,500 distribution from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute would not be reported as an increase in net assets on ABC Research Institute's

---

<sup>5</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958. Section 6400.36, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954, *Health Care Entities*.

Statement of Activity. By analogy to equity method accounting, the \$2,500 would be reported in a manner similar to a distribution from a subsidiary to its parent (for example, a dividend). ABC Research Institute should report the distribution by increasing cash and decreasing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation.

If the distribution represented restricted net assets, ABC Research Institute would not reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted at the time of the distribution. Instead, ABC Research Institute would reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted when those restrictions were met.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.15 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)**

*Inquiry*—ABC Research Institute, a not-for-profit entity subject to FASB ASC 958<sup>6</sup> and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Research Institute. Assume that ABC Research Institute cannot, however, influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Research Institute can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute.

During its most recent fiscal year, ABC Foundation's activities resulted in an increase in net assets (before distributions) of \$3,200, comprised of \$2,000 in unrestricted contributions, \$1,000 in temporarily restricted contributions (purpose restrictions), \$500 in unrestricted dividend and interest income, and \$300 in expenses. In addition, ABC Foundation elected to distribute \$2,500 in cash representing unrestricted net assets to ABC Research Institute. How should this activity be reported in ABC Research Institute's financial statements?

*Reply*—Because ABC Foundation (the recipient entity) and ABC Research Institute (the beneficiary) are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires ABC Research Institute to recognize its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and periodically adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of ABC Foundation. This is similar to the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323.

ABC Research Institute cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Research Institute can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute. Therefore, an implied time restriction exists on ABC Research Institute's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation (in addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, in recognizing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and the changes in that interest, ABC Research Institute should classify the resulting net assets as changes in

---

<sup>6</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958. Section 6400.37, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954.

temporarily restricted net assets (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions).

In the circumstances described in the preceding, ABC Research Institute would initially increase its asset, “Interest in Net Assets of ABC Foundation” for the change in ABC Foundation’s net assets (\$3,200). ABC Research Institute’s Statement of Activity would include “Change in Temporarily Restricted Interest in ABC Foundation” of \$3,200 as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets.

The \$2,500 distribution from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute would not be reported as an increase in net assets on ABC Research Institute’s Statement of Activity. By analogy to equity method accounting, the \$2,500 would be treated similar to a distribution from a subsidiary to its parent (for example, a dividend). ABC Research Institute should report the distribution by increasing cash and decreasing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation.

ABC Research Institute would reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted at the time of the distribution, because the time restriction would expire at the time of the distribution. (If those net assets were subject to purpose or time restrictions that remained even after the net assets had been distributed to ABC Research Institute, ABC Research Institute would not reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted at the time of the distribution. Instead, ABC Research Institute would reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted when those restrictions were met.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.16 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated)**

*Inquiry*—DEF Arts Entity is the parent of three brother-sister not-for-profit entities: Ballet, Orchestra, a not-for-profit entity subject to FASB ASC 958<sup>7</sup> and Foundation. Foundation is organized for the purpose of raising contributions for the benefit of both Ballet and Orchestra. The four entities are legally separate not-for-profit entities that are financially interrelated pursuant to the guidance in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. Assume that Orchestra can influence the financial decisions of Foundation to such an extent that Orchestra can determine the timing and amount of distributions from Foundation to Orchestra.

A donor contributes \$5,000 cash to Foundation and stipulates that the contribution is for the benefit of Orchestra. Foundation would record the contribution as temporarily restricted revenue (because Foundation must use the contribution for the benefit of Orchestra). In its separately issued financial statements, Orchestra would recognize its interest in the net assets attributable to that contribution by debiting “Interest in Net Assets of Foundation” for \$5,000. Would the offsetting credit be reported as temporarily restricted revenue (because the net assets attributable to the contribution are restricted on Foundation’s Balance Sheet) or unrestricted revenue (because there are no

---

<sup>7</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958. Section 6400.39, “Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated),” addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954.

donor-imposed time restrictions or purpose restrictions on how Orchestra must use the contribution)?

*Reply*—Orchestra should report the offsetting credit as unrestricted revenue. Because Orchestra can influence the financial decisions of Foundation to such an extent that Orchestra can determine the timing and amount of distributions from Foundation to Orchestra, no implied time restriction exists on Orchestra's net assets attributable to its interest in the net assets of Foundation. Accordingly, in recognizing its interest in the net assets of Foundation and the changes in that interest, Orchestra should classify the resulting net assets as if contributions were received by Orchestra directly from the donor. In other words, the existence of Foundation should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in Orchestra's separately issued financial statements because Foundation cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (Any instructions given by Foundation are designations, rather than restrictions.)

Because there are no donor-imposed restrictions on how Orchestra must use the contribution, Orchestra should report the change in its interest in the net assets attributable to the contribution as an increase in unrestricted net assets in its separately issued Statement of Activity. When Foundation actually distributes the funds, Orchestra should increase cash and decrease its interest in net assets of Foundation; the distributions would have no effect on Orchestra's Statement of Activity.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.17 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)**

*Inquiry*—ABC Research Institute, a not-for-profit entity subject to FASB ASC 958<sup>8</sup> and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Research Institute. Assume that ABC Research Institute can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Research Institute can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute.

ABC Foundation's net assets consist of \$3,000,000 resulting from cash contributions restricted for the purchase of property, plant, and equipment (PPE) by ABC Research Institute. ABC Research Institute has recorded its interest in those net assets by debiting "Interest in net assets of ABC Foundation" and crediting "Change in interest in ABC Foundation," which is reported as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets. ABC Research

<sup>8</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958. Section 6400.40, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient organization—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954.

Institute's accounting policy is to not imply a time restriction that expires over the useful life of the donated long-lived assets pursuant to FASB ASC 958-605-45-6 and it has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE.<sup>9</sup> ABC Research Institute subsequently purchased and placed into service \$3,000,000 of PPE that meets those donor restrictions prior to receiving a distribution from ABC Foundation. Should ABC Research Institute reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the \$3,000,000 of PPE?

*Reply*—Because ABC Foundation (the recipient entity) and ABC Research Institute (the beneficiary) are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires ABC Research Institute to recognize its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and periodically adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of ABC Foundation. This is similar to the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323.

In recognizing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and the changes in that interest, ABC Research Institute should classify the resulting net assets as if contributions were received by ABC Research directly from the donor, because ABC Research Institute can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Research Institute can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute. Accordingly, the net assets representing contributions restricted for the purchase of PPE should be reported as temporarily restricted net assets (purpose restricted) in ABC Research Institute's financial statements. Upon purchasing and placing into service the PPE, ABC Research Institute (and ABC Foundation) should reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily restricted to unrestricted net assets.<sup>10</sup> In other words, the existence of ABC Foundation should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in ABC Research Institute's financial statements because ABC Foundation cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (Any instructions given by ABC Foundation are designations, rather than restrictions.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

<sup>9</sup> The assumption that ABC Research Institute has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE is intended to avoid establishing a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary. That issue is not addressed in this TPA.

<sup>10</sup> In this fact pattern, ABC Research Institute's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation is subject to only purpose restrictions because the net assets arose from cash contributions with no time restrictions. If instead the net assets arose from promises to give rather than from cash contributions, the net assets might be subject to time restrictions in addition to the purpose restrictions. In determining whether net assets that arose from promises to give are subject to time restrictions, NPEs should consider the guidance in section 6140.04, "Lapsing of Restrictions on Receivables if Purpose Restrictions Pertaining to Long-Lived Assets Are Met Before the Receivables Are Due," which discusses whether restrictions on net assets arising from promises to give that are restricted by donors for investments in long-lived assets are met when the assets are placed in service or when the receivables are due.

- .18 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)**

*Inquiry*—ABC Research Institute, a not-for-profit entity subject to FASB ASC 958<sup>11</sup> and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Research Institute. Assume that ABC Research Institute cannot, however, influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Research Institute can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute.

ABC Foundation's net assets consist of \$3,000,000 resulting from cash contributions restricted for the purchase of property, plant, and equipment (PPE) by ABC Research Institute. ABC Research Institute has recorded its interest in those net assets by debiting "Interest in net assets of ABC Foundation" and crediting "Change in interest in ABC Foundation," which is reported as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets. ABC Research Institute has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE.<sup>12</sup>

ABC Research Institute subsequently built and placed into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building prior to receiving a distribution from ABC Foundation or any indication that it intends to support building and placing into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building. Should ABC Research Institute reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the \$3,000,000 of PPE?

*Reply*—From ABC Research Institute's perspective, its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation has two restrictions—a purpose restriction (the purchase of the PPE) and an implied time restriction. (ABC Research Institute cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Research Institute can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute, including distributions pertaining to expenditures by ABC Research Institute that meet the donor-imposed purpose restrictions. Therefore, an implied time restriction exists on ABC Research Institute's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation.) FASB ASC 958-205-45-9 provides, in part, as follows:

If two or more temporary restrictions are imposed on a contribution, the effect of the expiration of those restrictions shall be recognized in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired.

<sup>11</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958. Section 6400.41, "Application of FASB Statement No. 136—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient organization—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954.

<sup>12</sup> The assumption that ABC Research Institute has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE is intended to avoid establishing a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary. That issue is not addressed in this section.

FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 further provides, in part, as follows:

Temporarily restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired.

In considering whether the purpose restriction on ABC Research Institute's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation is met, ABC Research Institute should determine whether ABC Foundation has discretion in deciding whether an expenditure by ABC Research Institute that is consistent with the purpose restriction satisfies that purpose restriction. For example, if the restricted net assets arose from a contribution that was restricted for "building projects of ABC Research Institute," with no particular building project specified, purchasing and placing into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building is consistent with the purpose restriction but may or may not meet it, because ABC Foundation has some discretion in deciding which building project releases the purpose restriction. In other words, ABC Foundation may, at its discretion, either release restricted net assets in support of building the New Modern Wing of the Research Building or not, because the purpose restriction imposed by the donor was broad enough to give ABC Foundation discretion in deciding which building projects meet the purpose restriction. If ABC Foundation has such discretion, a purpose restriction and an implied time restriction on ABC Research Institute's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation exist. Therefore, ABC Research Institute should not reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building unless ABC Foundation distributes or obligates itself to distribute to ABC Research Institute amounts attributable to net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE by ABC Research Institute, or ABC Foundation otherwise indicates that it intends for those net assets to be used to support the building and placing into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building as an activity of the current period (assuming that ABC Research Institute had no other net assets that were restricted for the purchase of PPE).<sup>13 14</sup>

---

<sup>13</sup> In this fact pattern, the expenditure is made prior to meeting the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction that exists because ABC Research Institute cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute. FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 provides that in circumstances in which both purpose and time restrictions exist, expenditures meeting the purpose restriction must be made simultaneous with or after the time restriction has expired in order to satisfy both the purpose and time restriction and result in a reclassification of net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted. In other words, time restrictions, if any, must be met before expenditures can result in purpose restrictions being met. In this fact pattern, however, the time restriction is an implied time restriction that exists because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, rather than an implied time restriction that exists because a promise to give is due in a future period or because of an explicit donor stipulation. Accordingly, in this fact pattern, temporarily restricted net assets with implied time restrictions are available to support expenditures made before the expiration of the time restrictions and the net assets should be reclassified from temporarily restricted to unrestricted in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired. In other words, in this fact pattern, if the expenditure that meets the purpose restriction is made before meeting the implied time restriction that exists because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, all the restrictions should be considered met once the implied time restriction is met.

<sup>14</sup> In this fact pattern, ABC Research Institute's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation is subject to an implied time restriction that exists because ABC Research Institute cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute and a purpose restriction. Because the net assets arose from cash contributions with no other donor-imposed time restrictions, no time restrictions other than those imposed by ABC Foundation exist. If instead the net assets arose from promises to give rather than from cash contributions, the net assets might be subject to donor-imposed time restrictions in addition to the time restriction imposed by ABC Foundation and the purpose restriction. In determining whether net assets that arose from promises to give are subject to donor-imposed

In contrast to the example in the previous paragraph, if the restricted net assets arose from a contribution that was restricted for “building and placing into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building,” ABC Foundation has no discretion in deciding whether that purpose restriction is met by building and placing into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building. Therefore, if ABC Research Institute builds and places into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building, the purpose restriction is met (assuming that ABC Research Institute had no other net assets that were restricted for building and placing into service the New Modern Wing). In addition, the implied time restriction is met because ABC Foundation is required to distribute the funds to ABC in order to meet the donor’s stipulations. Therefore, ABC Research Institute (and ABC Foundation) should reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building.

In summary, ABC Research Institute should not reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Wing of the Research Building until both the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction are met. If both the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction are met, ABC Research Institute should decrease its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and increase cash (or a receivable, if the Foundation has merely obligated itself to make the distribution) by the amount of the distribution, and simultaneously reclassify the same amount from temporarily restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.19 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of Distributions From a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity) to a Health Care Beneficiary**

*Inquiry*—How should a fund-raising foundation (recipient), a not-for-profit entity subject to FASB ASC 958 report (in its separately issued financial statements) distributions to a financially interrelated beneficiary that is a health care entity? In other words, should such distributions be reported following (a) the guidance on reporting transfers among affiliated health care entities in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-605, and FASB ASC 954-810, or (b) the guidance in FASB ASC 958.

*Reply*—FASB ASC 958 applies to all not-for-profit entities, except those that are providers of health care services (FASB ASC 958-10-15-3). Therefore, the guidance in FASB ASC 954 generally does not apply to financial statements of recipient entities that are financially interrelated fund-raising foundations. The foundation should follow the accounting and reporting requirements of FASB ASC 958 rather than FASB ASC 954 in the foundation’s separately issued financial statements. The foundation should report distributions to beneficiary

---

time restrictions in addition to the time restrictions imposed by ABC Foundation, NPEs should consider the guidance in section 6140.04, which discusses whether restrictions on net assets arising from promises to give that are restricted by donors for investments in long-lived assets are met when the assets are placed in service or when the receivables are due. In circumstances in which the net assets are subject to (a) donor-imposed time restrictions in addition to the (b) implied time restrictions that exist because ABC Research Institute cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Research Institute and (c) purpose restrictions, the last remaining time restriction should be considered in applying the guidance in FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 that provides that temporarily restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired.

entities as expenses or distributions to related entities. The guidance in the previous sentence applies regardless of whether the recipient entity and the beneficiary are under common control or whether one controls the other in a parent-subsidiary relationship.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.20 NPEs Reporting No Fund-Raising Expenses**

*Inquiry*—Some NPEs with contributions report no fund-raising expense. FASB ASC 958-720-50-1 provides that the financial statements should disclose total fund-raising expense. Do circumstances exist in which an NPE could have contributions but minimal or no fund-raising expense?

*Reply*—It would be unusual for an NPE to have contributions but have minimal or no fund-raising expense. Examples of circumstances in which an NPE could have contributions but minimal or no fund-raising expense typically include those in which (a) because of name recognition or custom, donors contribute to the NPE without the NPE undertaking fund-raising activities,<sup>15</sup> (b) fund-raising activities related to those contributions are conducted entirely or almost entirely by volunteers whose contributed services do not meet the recognition criteria for contributed services in FASB ASC 958-605-25-16 or (c) other entities that the NPE does not control<sup>16</sup> contribute to the NPE with the NPE undertaking minimal or no fund-raising activity or other participation in relation to those contributions.<sup>17</sup> <sup>18</sup> Examples of circumstances in which an NPE with contributions may have no fund-raising expense or minimal fund-raising expense in relation to contributions include:

- A religious entity obtains most or all of its contributions from member tithing.
- Most or all contributions arise from volunteers making phone calls or writing letters on the entity's behalf (and this volunteer activity does not meet the recognition criteria for contributed services in FASB ASC 958-605-25-16).
- An entity has no paid staff, and most or all contributions arise from uncompensated board members soliciting contributions (and this

---

<sup>15</sup> Fund-raising activities include, but are not limited to, compensating another entity for raising funds on behalf of the NPE, such as circumstances in which the fund-raising entity retains an administrative fee for raising funds on behalf of the NPE.

<sup>16</sup> The FASB ASC glossary defines *control* as “the possession, direct or indirect, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management and policies of an entity through ownership, by contract, or otherwise.”

<sup>17</sup> As discussed in FASB ASC 958-720-45-27, “Federated fundraising entities solicit and receive designated and undesignated contributions and make grants and awards to other not-for-profit entities. The fundraising activities of federated fundraising entities, including activities related to fundraising on behalf of others, shall be reported as fundraising expenses.”

<sup>18</sup> As discussed in section 6140.22, “In Circumstances in Which the Reporting NPE Undertakes a Transaction in Which Another NPE (Fund-Raising NPE) Raises Contributions on Behalf of the Reporting NPE, and the Reporting NPE Compensates the Fund-Raising NPE for Raising Those Contributions (Compensation Including, But Not Limited to, an Administrative Fee), Should the Reporting NPE Report the Fund-Raising NPE's Compensation Gross as Fund-Raising Expenses, or Net, as a Reduction of Contributions?” reporting NPEs should report fund-raising expenses for compensation to a fund-raising NPE acting as an agent or intermediary in circumstances in which the fund-raising NPE acting as an agent or intermediary retains an administrative fee that will be deducted from all contributions that are to be transferred to the donor's chosen entity. That fact pattern is an example of a circumstance in which other entities that the NPE does not control contribute to the NPE (through an agent or intermediary) with the NPE undertaking minimal or no fund-raising activity or other participation in relation to those contributions, and the NPE would report fund-raising expense.

board member activity does not meet the recognition criteria for contributed services in FASB ASC 958-605-25-16).

- The reporting entity is a private foundation or is supported by a private foundation, and the reporting entity expends no or minimal resources in soliciting those contributions.
- The reporting entity obtains most or all of its contributions from one or more entities that it does not control (fund-raising NPE), expends minimal resources, and has minimal participation in soliciting those contributions.<sup>19</sup> For example:
  - NPE Relief and Development Entity is one of many entities devoted to cause ABC. NPE Relief and Development Entity receives most or all of its contributions from Relief and Development Entities in the USA, Canada, and the United Kingdom that raise support for cause ABC throughout the world.
  - NPE Religious Entity Denomination International Mission Board receives a substantial portion of its support from the NPE Religious Entity Denomination, which supports various entities and causes, including but not limited to NPE Religious Entity Denomination International Mission Board. NPE Religious Entity Denomination allocates, at its discretion, X percent of its contributions from supporting churches and individuals to NPE Religious Entity Denomination International Mission Board.

The reporting NPE should consider, however, whether it is required to make financial statement disclosures required by FASB ASC 850, *Related Party Disclosures*, and FASB ASC 275, *Risks and Uncertainties*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.21 Should an NPE Report Amounts Charged to the NPE by a Professional Fund-Raiser Gross, as Fund-Raising Expenses, or Net, as a Reduction of Contributions?**

*Inquiry*—In circumstances in which a professional fund-raiser charges an NPE for soliciting contributions on the NPE's behalf, should the NPE report amounts charged to the NPE by the professional fund-raiser gross, as fund-raising expense, or net, as a reduction of contributions?

*Reply*—In circumstances in which a professional fund-raiser charges an NPE for soliciting contributions on the NPE's behalf, the NPE should report the amounts charged to the NPE by the professional fund-raiser gross, as fund-raising expense. As discussed in paragraphs 14–15 of FASB ASC 958-225-45, revenues and expenses should be reported gross (except for investment revenues and related expenses, which are permitted to be reported net of related expenses), while gains and losses may be reported net. Accordingly, in circumstances in which an NPE incurs expenses by hiring a professional fund-raiser to solicit contributions on its behalf, the NPE should report those contributions and expenses gross, rather than net. For example, assume NPE A enters into a transaction with Professional Fund-Raiser B, whereby Professional Fund-Raiser B solicits contributions on behalf of NPE A, for a fee of 20 percent of contributions raised. Professional Fund-Raiser B raises \$100,000 and remits

---

<sup>19</sup> Footnote 18, in referring to section 6140.22, discusses a circumstance in which other entities that the NPE does not control contribute to the NPE (through an agent or intermediary) with the NPE undertaking minimal or no fund-raising activity or other participation in relation to those contributions, and the NPE would report fund-raising expense.

\$80,000 to NPE A after re-retain its fee of \$20,000. NPE A should report \$100,000 contribution revenue and \$20,000 fund-raising expense.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.22 In Circumstances in Which the Reporting NPE Undertakes a Transaction in Which Another NPE (Fund-Raising NPE) Raises Contributions on Behalf of the Reporting NPE, and the Reporting NPE Compensates the Fund-Raising NPE for Raising Those Contributions (Compensation Including, But Not Limited to, an Administrative Fee), Should the Reporting NPE Report the Fund-Raising NPE's Compensation Gross, as Fund-Raising Expenses, or Net, as a Reduction of Contributions?**

*Inquiry*—In some circumstances, a federated fund-raising entity (or other NPE) (fund-raising NPE) acts as an agent or intermediary rather than a donee. For example, in circumstances in which the fund-raising NPE receives resources from donors who stipulate that those resources should be transferred to a specified NPE, the fund-raising NPE acts as an agent or intermediary rather than a donee.<sup>20</sup> The NPE compensates the fund-raising NPE acting as an agent or intermediary. (Such compensation includes, but is not limited to, the fund-raising NPE retaining an administrative fee that will be deducted from all contributions that are to be transferred to the donor's chosen entity.) Should the reporting NPE report the compensation to the fund-raising NPE acting as an agent or intermediary gross, as fund-raising expenses, or net, as a reduction of contributions?

*Reply*—The reporting NPE should report fund-raising expenses for the compensation to the fund-raising NPE acting as an agent or intermediary in circumstances in which the reporting NPE compensates the fund-raising NPE acting as an agent or intermediary for raising contributions on behalf of the reporting NPE. (Such compensation includes, but is not limited to, the fund-raising NPE acting as an agent or intermediary retaining an administrative fee that will be deducted from all contributions that are to be transferred to the donor's chosen entity.) Accordingly, the reporting NPE should report the amount retained as compensation by the fund-raising NPE acting as an agent or intermediary gross as fund-raising expenses and report contributions for the gross amount contributed from the donor to the fund-raising NPE acting as an agent or intermediary for the benefit of the reporting NPE.

Paragraphs 84–87 of FASB ASC 958-605-55 discuss, among other matters, circumstances in which a federated fund-raising entity acts as an agent or intermediary, rather than a donee, in raising contributions in which the donor specifies the entity to which the contribution should be transferred. As discussed in FASB ASC 958-605-55-86, in circumstances in which the federated fund-raising entity charges an administrative fee that will be deducted from all contributions that are to be transferred to the donor's chosen entity, the beneficiaries should report the gross amount of the contributions as contribution revenue and the administrative fees withheld by the federated fund-raising entity as expenses. The guidance in paragraphs 84–87 of FASB ASC 958-605-55 would also apply if the fund-raising NPE were other than a

---

<sup>20</sup> In some circumstances, the fund-raising NPE receives resources from donors without stipulations or with stipulations sufficiently broad such that the fund-raising NPE acts as a donee, rather than as an agent or intermediary.

federated fund-raising entity. Also, in functionalizing the administrative fees reported as expenses, the reporting NPE beneficiary would classify those expenses as fund-raising.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 5521.]**

## Section 6300

### *Insurance Companies*

#### **.01 Recognition of Commission Income by Insurance Agency**

*Inquiry*—Insurance agents and brokers receive commissions on the insurance policies that they place for their clients with insurance companies. Commissions consist of a percentage of the premiums that the clients pay for the policies. On policies that are cancelled before the end of their term, usually one year, the insurance company charges back the portion of the commissions related to the unearned premiums to the originating agent or broker. In addition, some brokers may receive contingent commissions from underwriters based on the profitability of policies placed with an underwriter. How should an insurance agent or broker account for revenue from such commissions?

*Reply*—Commissions should be recognized on the date on which (a) the client is afforded protection under the policy (effective date), (b) the premium due under the policy can be reasonably estimated, and (c) the premium is billable to the client. A provision should be made for expected adjustments relating to policy cancellations when they can be reasonably estimated in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 450, *Contingencies*. Contingent commissions should generally be recognized when the insurance agent or broker is notified by the underwriter of the amount to be received.

[Amended; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.02 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Commissions on Credit Life Insurance**

*Inquiry*—Under arrangements with a lending institution, an insurance agency provides credit life insurance to mortgagors. The borrower pays the premium for the entire term of the insurance (as much as eight years) when the loan is made, and the insurance agency remits to the insurance company this entire sum less a commission.

Should this commission income be recognized when it is received, or should it be recognized over the term of the policy?

*Reply*—Generally, credit life insurance appears to have more of the characteristics of casualty insurance than it does of life insurance. In particular, from the agent's viewpoint, payment for the policy usually occurs in a lump sum from which agent commissions are deducted. Generally, the efforts of the agency in connection with any individual policy terminate when collection is made or, at least, when the proceeds from the collections are remitted to the insurance company. It would therefore seem that the recognition of income should occur when proceeds of the policy are received.

However, as there is a potential liability for returned premiums, it would appear that a reasonable allowance should be provided at this time for estimated commissions on the portion of the policies that may be cancelled in future years. Most finance companies should have adequate statistics upon which to base such estimates. If the finance company is new, there may be statistics available from similar enterprises.

### **.03 Recognition of Income on Unclaimed Refunds Due Policyholders on Policy Cancellations**

*Inquiry*—An insurance agency has a material amount of accounts payable legally due to policyholders who have cancelled their insurance prior to the end of the policy term. The company does not notify these policyholders that these amounts are due them. When, if ever, should these credits be taken into income?

*Reply*—These accounts payable should continue to be reported as liabilities until such time as the individuals involved legally lose their claim to these amounts. Legal counsel should be consulted for an opinion as to whether these amounts would have to be paid over to the state under an escheat law.

Consideration should also be given to the appropriateness of notifying these policyholders that this money is due them.

### **.04 Reserve for Future Claims of Title Insurance Company**

*Inquiry*—A title insurance company must place part of its premiums in a reserve for future claims. When should this reserve be recognized as income?

*Reply*—The jurisdiction under which a title insurance company operates usually requires that a stipulated percentage of premiums collected must be deferred in an unearned premium account. Generally, the unearned premium is taken into income over a ten-year period since most claims against title policies tend to occur during this ten-year period. However, actual claims are not charged to the unearned premium account. Actual claims are charged against income (title claims account) with the credit to “Reserve for Claims.” The reserve for claims represents reported claims that have surfaced. The unearned premium account is intended to cover unsurfaced claims.

### **.08 Definition of an Insurance Benefit Feature**

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 944-605-25-8 states “If the amounts assessed against the contract holder each period for the insurance benefit feature of an insurance contract are assessed in a manner that is expected to result in profits in earlier years and losses in subsequent years from the insurance benefit function, a liability for unearned revenue shall be recognized in addition to the account balance.” What constitutes the *insurance benefit function* in performing the test described previously?

*Reply*—The test should be applied separately to the base mortality or morbidity feature and, in addition, separately to each other individual mortality or morbidity feature. Other individual mortality or morbidity features that would need to be tested separately are those features that create incremental mortality or morbidity risk to the base contract (for example, no lapse guarantees or long term care riders in a universal life insurance contract). Indicators that a mortality or morbidity feature should be evaluated separately may include

- explicit incremental charges,
- offered separately in the market place,
- described in the contract as a separate benefit, or
- the contract holder has a choice to accept or reject the additional benefit without rejecting the base contract.

Other insurance benefit features that provide for fixed and guaranteed benefits and premiums, and offered as a rider or an addition to a universal life contract, in practice typically would have been and should continue to be, separately accounted for under FASB ASC 944. Those features that have not been accrued

for under FASB ASC 944 should be evaluated under the guidance of FASB ASC 944-20-10-2, paragraphs 20–25 of FASB ASC 944-40-30, and paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 944-605-30.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.09 Definition of an Assessment**

*Inquiry*—In performing the test in FASB ASC 944-605-25-8 (that is, have amounts assessed against the contract holder in a manner that is expected to result in profits in earlier years and losses in subsequent years from the insurance benefit function), what assessments should be used in the comparison of the amount and timing of expected assessments and the related benefits for determining whether amounts are assessed in a manner that is expected to result in profits in earlier years and losses in subsequent years from the insurance benefit function?

*Reply*—If an insurance benefit function has an explicit fee, there is a presumption that the terms and conditions of a contract entered into between two parties dealing at arms length are representative of their agreement. Therefore, there is a rebuttable presumption that the explicit fee should be used for the test in FASB ASC 944-605-25-8. However, there may be circumstances where the presumption may be overcome if evidence indicates that the substance of the agreement is not captured in the explicit terms of the contract. It is unlikely the presumption can be rebutted in the situation in which the assessment is explicitly incremental upon election of a separate insurance benefit feature and for which the policyholder has the choice to not pay if the election is not made.

In circumstances in which an insurance benefit function has no corresponding explicit fee or if the explicit fee does not capture the substance of the agreement, another method of determining assessments should be used for the test in FASB ASC 944-605-25-8. For example, in some universal life policies, the product's base mortality function may have been designed and priced on an integrated basis with the other functions, such as, administration and asset management. In such products, while the explicit cost of insurance charge is not expected to be sufficient to cover the death benefit risk in all periods, the product may be designed such that other assessments, including administrative fees, asset management fees, and investment margins, are expected to result in profits in subsequent years sufficient to offset the losses from the explicit cost of insurance charges designed shortfalls. In this example, it may be appropriate to include such additional implicit assessments in the test in FASB ASC 944-605-25-8 for the base mortality function. The analysis of implicit assessments would need to appropriately consider the pricing and cost of all components of the product. Indicators that implicit assessments are appropriately allocated to product components are

- allocation is not inconsistent with documentation, if any, of pricing at contract inception,
- assessments are allocated considering the recovery of all costs of each product component,
- allocation does not contradict external information on the market value of an individual product component on a stand-alone basis, and
- allocation method is applied consistently.

There is a presumption that the minimum guaranteed death benefit of a variable annuity and the no-lapse guarantee mortality feature of a universal

life or a variable universal life contract will result in profits in earlier years and losses in subsequent years. This pattern of profits followed by losses results from the design and capital markets risks of these benefit features.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.10 Level of Aggregation of Additional Liabilities Determined Under FASB ASC 944**

*Inquiry*—At what level of aggregation should additional liabilities, determined in accordance with FASB ASC 944-40-30-20, be calculated?

*Reply*—It is presumed that the level of aggregation generally should be consistent with the level at which the entity's DAC amortization ratios and associated DAC balances are calculated. This is the level at which products with common features have been aggregated. It is not appropriate to combine DAC-level groups for aggregation purposes in FASB ASC 944-40-30-20. Aggregation at a more detailed level than the level at which the entity's DAC amortization ratios and associated DAC balances are calculated may be warranted based on an individual entity's facts and circumstances including, but not limited to, the risk characteristics of the corresponding insurance benefit features, such as, variable annuities with a ratchet minimum guaranteed death benefit (MGDB) and variable annuities with a return of premium MGDB, or universal life products with and without secondary guarantees.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.11 Losses Followed by Losses**

*Inquiry*—Should the guidance in FASB ASC 944-605-25-8 be applied if amounts assessed against the contract holder for an insurance benefit feature are expected to result in losses in earlier and subsequent years?

*Reply*—Yes, the concept underlying FASB ASC 944-605-25-8 is that the insurance entity may be required to establish a liability if it provides an insurance benefit in future periods for which it charges amounts in such periods that are less than the expected value of the insurance benefits to be provided. Consequently, the insurance enterprise should recognize a liability. This concept is applicable in situations in which charges attributable to an insurance benefit feature are less than the expected cost of the insurance benefit in all periods.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.12 Reinsurance**

*Inquiry*—How should a ceding entity account for reinsurance contracts that meet the risk transfer criteria of FASB ASC 944 and that reinsure the insurance benefit features accounted for under FASB ASC 944-20-10-2, paragraphs 20–25 of FASB ASC 944-40-30, and paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 944-605-30?

*Reply*—The accounting for reinsurance should be separate from the accounting for the direct contracts of the ceding entity in accordance with paragraphs 3–4 of FASB ASC 944-20-40, FASB ASC 944-310-25-2, FASB ASC 944-310-45-7, FASB ASC 944-340-25-1, FASB ASC 944-605-45-1, and FASB ASC 944-605-50-1. Reinsurance recoverables arising from the reinsurance contract should be reported as assets. As stated in FASB ASC 944-40-25-34, the recoverable should be calculated using methods and assumptions consistent

with those used to establish the direct contract holder's liability. Therefore, a benefit ratio using the same assumptions and scenarios used to establish the direct contract liability, as required in FASB ASC 944-40-30-20 should be used to establish a reinsurance recoverable with excess benefit payments ceded under the terms of the reinsurance contract as the numerator and direct assessments as the denominator. As required by FASB ASC 944-605-35-14, the cost of reinsurance shall be amortized over the remaining life of the underlying reinsured contracts if the reinsurance contract is long-duration, or over the contract period of the reinsurance if the reinsurance contract is short-duration. The cost of reinsurance may be recognized based on total direct assessments or on another reasonable manner such as estimated gross profits.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.13 Accounting for Contracts That Provide Annuitization Benefits**

*Inquiry*—Are the provisions of paragraphs 26–27 and 40–41 of FASB ASC 944-40-25, paragraphs 26–29 of FASB ASC 944-40-30, paragraphs 10 and 12–16 of FASB ASC 944-40-35, and FASB ASC 944-40-45-2, dealing with accounting for contracts that provide annuitization benefits, limited only to universal life-type, limited-payment, and investment contracts?

*Reply*—No. The provisions of FASB ASC 944 relating to accounting for contracts that provide annuitization benefits applies to all insurance and investment contracts that have annuitization benefits. Therefore, any product that includes an annuitization benefit should be evaluated. This includes, but is not limited to, products where the base contracts are accounted for under FASB ASC 944 and where the annuitization benefit has not already been included in establishing the liability. To the extent annuitization benefits features have not already been included in benefit or pre-mium deficiency liabilities, the provisions of paragraphs 26–27 and 40–41 of FASB ASC 944-40-25, paragraphs 26–29 of FASB ASC 944-40-30, paragraphs 10 and 12–16 of FASB ASC 944-40-35, and FASB ASC 944-40-45-2 should be applied.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.14 Note to Sections 6300.15–.24—Accounting by Noninsurance Enterprises for Property and Casualty Insurance Arrangements That Limit Insurance Risk**

Insurance enables a company (the insured) to transfer insurance risk to an insurer for a specified premium. Insurance may be purchased for a number of economic reasons generally with the underlying goal of transferring insurance risk, including property damage, injury to others, and business interruption.

The following series of questions and answers (sections 6300.15–.24) focus on certain aspects of finite insurance products that are utilized by noninsurance enterprises. Due to the diverse nature of contracts in the marketplace, the guidance in these questions and answers is designed to assist practitioners in identifying the relevant literature to consider in addressing their specific facts and circumstances. The sections contain many excerpts of applicable guidance, but readers should be familiar with all the guidance contained in that literature not only the specific paragraphs listed.

GAAP guidance for an insurance enterprise's purchase of reinsurance is more extensive than guidance on accounting by noninsurance enterprises for insurance contracts. The accounting guidance for reinsurance addresses transactions between an insurer (the contract holder) and a reinsurer (the issuer of

the contract). Sections 6300.15–.24 address property and casualty insurance contracts between a policyholder and an insurance enterprise, which is similar to the relationship between an insurer and a reinsurer.

### .15 Finite Insurance

*Inquiry*—What are “finite” insurance transactions?

*Reply*—Finite insurance contracts are contracts that transfer a clearly defined and restricted amount of insurance risk from the policyholder to the insurance company, and the policyholder retains a substantial portion of the related risks under most scenarios. Nevertheless, under certain finite contracts there may be a reasonable possibility that the insurance company will incur a loss on the contract.

### .16 Insurance Risk Limiting Features

*Inquiry*—What types of insurance risk limiting features do finite insurance contracts normally contain?

*Reply*—Contractual features that serve to limit insurance risk transfer are found in both traditional and finite insurance contracts; however, the degree to which these features limit risk is relatively higher in finite insurance. All contractual provisions that limit risk transfer need to be considered when reviewing insurance contracts. Common features that may limit the transfer of insurance risk include:

- *Sliding scale fees and profit sharing formulae.* These features adjust cash flows between the policyholder and insurance company based on loss experience (for example, increasing payments from the insured enterprise as losses increase and decreasing payments as losses decrease, subject to maximum and minimum limits).
- *Experience refunds.* These arrangements allow the policyholder to share in the favorable experience of the underlying contracts by reference to an “experience account” that typically tracks premiums paid, less fees, less losses incurred, plus interest. Experience provisions also can require the policyholder to share in unfavorable experience by requiring additional payments to the insurer in the event that the experience account is negative.
- *Caps.* Caps are used to limit the insurer’s aggregate exposure by imposing a dollar limit, or a limit expressed as a percentage of premiums paid, on the amount of claims to be paid by the insurer. For example, the insurer will not be responsible for losses beyond 150 percent of the premiums paid. While commercial insurance policies usually have limits on the amount of coverage provided, there may be significant risk mitigation for the insurer if the premium paid is a substantial percentage of the maximum coverage provided.
- *Loss Corridors.* This feature, which may exist in various forms, serves to eliminate or limit the risk of loss for a specified percentage or dollar amount of claims within the contract coverage. For example, in a contract providing coverage for a policyholder’s first \$3,000,000 of losses, the insurer will pay the first million and last million of losses but will exclude the corridor from \$1,000,000 to \$2,000,000.
- *Dual-triggers.* This feature requires the occurrence of both an insurable event and changes in a separate pre-identified variable to trigger payment of a benefit/claim. An example is a policy entered into by a trucking company that insures costs associated with rerouting trucks

over a certain time period if snowfall exceeds a specified level during that time period.

- *Retrospectively-Rated Premiums.* Such premiums are determined after the inception of the policy based on the loss experience under the policy.
- *Reinstatement Premiums.* To the extent the coverage provided by a contract is absorbed by losses incurred, the contract provides for the policyholder to reinstate coverage for the balance of the contract period for a stated additional premium. To the extent reinstatement is required rather than optional, the additional premium may mitigate risk to the insurer.
- *Termination Provisions.* These provisions can be structured to reduce the risk of the insurer, for example, by allowing for termination by the insurer at a discounted amount under certain circumstances.
- *Payment Schedules.* Features that delay timely reimbursement of losses by the insurer prevent the transfer of insurance risk.

There may be other features and provisions, in addition to the list of common insurance risk transfer limiting features in the preceding, that exist in a contract. Determining the appropriate accounting requires a full understanding of all of the features and provisions of the contract.

### **.17 Transfer of Insurance Risk**

*Inquiry*—Why is transfer of insurance risk important under GAAP?

*Reply*—If a contract does not provide for the indemnification of the insured by the insurer, it is accounted for as a deposit (financing) rather than as insurance as noted in FASB ASC 720-20-25-1.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.18 Accounting Guidance for Transfer of Insurance Risk**

*Inquiry*—What GAAP accounting literature provides guidance related to transfer of insurance risk?

*Reply*—The assessment of transfer of insurance risk requires significant judgment and a complete understanding of the insurance contract and other related contracts between the parties. The greater the number, or degree, or both, of insurance risk limiting features that exist in a contract, the more difficult it becomes to assess whether or not the insurance risk transferred is sufficient to permit the contract to be accounted for as insurance rather than as a deposit.

FASB ASC 720-20-25-1 provides the following guidance on insurance contracts that do not provide for indemnification of the insured by the insurer against loss or liability:

To the extent that an insurance contract or reinsurance contract does not, despite its form, provide for indemnification of the insured or the ceding entity by the insurer or reinsurer against loss or liability, the premium paid less the amount of the premium to be retained by the insurer or reinsurer shall be accounted for as a deposit by the insured or the ceding entity. Those contracts may be structured in various ways, but if, regardless of form, their substance is that all or part of the premium paid by the insured or the ceding entity is a deposit, it shall be accounted for as such.

FASB ASC 944 establishes the conditions required for a contract between an insurer and a reinsurer to be accounted for as reinsurance and prescribes

accounting and reporting standards for those contracts. FASB ASC 944-20-15-41 notes, in part, the following:

Unless the condition in paragraph 944-20-15-53 is met, indemnification of the ceding entity against loss or liability relating to insurance risk in reinsurance of short-duration contracts exists under paragraph 944-20-15-37(a) only if both of the following conditions are met:

- a. Significant insurance risk. The reinsurer assumes significant insurance risk under the reinsured portions of the underlying insurance contracts. Implicit in this condition is the requirement that both the amount and timing of the reinsurer's payments depend on and directly vary with the amount and timing of claims settled under the reinsured contracts.
- b. Significant loss. It is reasonably possible that the reinsurer may realize a significant loss from the transaction.

FASB ASC 944 looks to the present value of all cash flows between the parties, however characterized, under reasonably possible outcomes in determining whether it is reasonably possible that the reinsurer may realize a significant loss from the contract.

FASB ASC 720-20-25-2 suggests that noninsurance entities look to the risk transfer guidance in FASB ASC 944, and states, in part, the following:

Entities may find the conditions in Section 944-20-15 useful in assessing whether an insurance contract transfers risk.

FASB ASC 944-20-25-1 states that a multiple-year retrospectively rated insurance contract must indemnify the insured as required by FASB ASC 944-20-15-36 to be accounted for as insurance. FASB ASC 944-20 also indicates that there may be certain situations in which the guarantee accounting in accordance with FASB ASC 460, *Guarantees*, is applicable.

FASB ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging*, addresses scenarios where there are dual-triggers and includes a number of relevant examples.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.19 Differences Between Retroactive and Prospective Insurance**

*Inquiry*—What are the differences between retroactive and prospective insurance?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 944-605-05-7 states that for property and casualty insurance: The distinction between prospective and retroactive reinsurance contracts is based on whether the contract reinsures future or past insured events covered by the underlying contracts.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.20 Accounting for Prospective Insurance**

*Inquiry*—How does a noninsurance enterprise account for prospective insurance contracts that qualify for insurance accounting?

*Reply*—A noninsurance enterprise amortizes the premiums over the contract period in proportion to the amount of insurance protection provided. If an insured loss occurs, and if it is probable that the policy will provide reimbursement for the loss and the amount of the loss can be reasonably estimated, the noninsurance enterprise records a receivable from the insurance enterprise and

a recovery of the incurred loss in the income statement. If it is not probable<sup>1</sup> that the policy will provide reimbursement, then the receivable and recovery are not recorded.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.21 Accounting for Retroactive Insurance**

*Inquiry*—How does a noninsurance enterprise account for retroactive insurance contracts that qualify for insurance accounting?

*Reply*—Paragraphs 3–4 of FASB ASC 720-20-25 state the following:

Notwithstanding that Topic 944 applies only to insurance entities, purchased retroactive insurance contracts that indemnify the insured shall be accounted for in a manner similar to the manner in which retroactive reinsurance contracts are accounted for under Subtopic 944-605. The guidance in that Subtopic shall be applied, as appropriate, based on the facts and circumstances of the particular transaction. That is, amounts paid for retroactive insurance shall be expensed immediately. Simultaneously, a receivable shall be established for the expected recoveries related to the underlying insured event.

If the receivable established exceeds the amounts paid for the insurance, the resulting gain is deferred. Immediate gain recognition and liability derecognition are not appropriate because the liability has not been extinguished (the entity is not entirely relieved of its obligation). Additionally, the liability incurred as a result of a past insurable event and amounts receivable under the insurance contract do not meet the criteria for offsetting under paragraph 210-20-45-1.

FASB ASC 720-20-35-2 further states the following:

If the amounts and timing of the insurance recoveries can be reasonably estimated, the deferred gain shall be amortized using the interest method over the estimated period over which the entity expects to recover substantially all amounts due under the terms of the insurance contract. If the amounts and timing of the insurance recoveries cannot be reasonably estimated, then the proportion of actual recoveries to total estimated recoveries shall be used to determine the amount of the amortization.

Paragraphs 22–23 of FASB ASC 944-605-25 state the following:

Amounts paid for retroactive reinsurance of short-duration contracts that meets the conditions for reinsurance accounting shall be reported as reinsurance receivables to the extent those amounts do not exceed the recorded liabilities relating to the underlying reinsured contracts. If the recorded liabilities exceed the amounts paid, reinsurance receivables shall be increased to reflect the difference and the resulting gain deferred.

If the amounts paid for retroactive reinsurance for short-duration contracts exceed the recorded liabilities relating to the underlying reinsured short-duration contracts, the ceding entity shall increase the related liabilities or reduce the reinsurance receivable or both at the time the reinsurance contract is entered into, so that the excess is charged to earnings.

FASB ASC 944-605-35-9 further states the following:

---

<sup>1</sup> According to the Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* glossary, *probable* means that the future event or events are likely to occur.

Any gain deferred under paragraph 944-605-25-22 shall be amortized over the estimated remaining settlement period. If the amounts and timing of the reinsurance recoveries can be reasonably estimated, the deferred gain shall be amortized using the effective interest rate inherent in the amount paid to the reinsurer and the estimated timing and amounts of recoveries from the reinsurer (the interest method). Otherwise, the proportion of actual recoveries (the recovery method) shall determine the amount of amortization.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.22 Accounting for Multiple-Year Retrospectively Rated Insurance**

*Inquiry*—How does a noninsurance enterprise account for a multiple-year retrospectively rated insurance contract?

*Reply*—As noted in FASB ASC 720-20-05-10, multiple-year retrospectively rated contracts

include a “retrospective rating” provision that provides for at least one of the following based on contract experience:

- a. Changes in the amount or timing of future contractual cash flows, including premium adjustments, settlement adjustments, or refunds to the noninsurance entity
- b. Changes in the contract’s future coverage

FASB ASC 720-20-05-9 also states, in part:

A critical feature of these contracts is that part or all of the retrospective rating provision is obligatory such that the retrospective rating provision creates for each party to the contract future rights and obligations as a result of past events.

FASB ASC 944-20-25-2 also discusses the accounting for retrospective adjustments and states:

For a multiple-year retrospectively rated insurance contract accounted for as insurance, the insurer shall both:

- a. Recognize an asset to the extent that the insured has an obligation to pay cash (or other consideration) to the insurer that would not have been required absent experience under the contract
- b. Recognize a liability to the extent that any cash (or other consideration) would be payable by the insurer to the insured based on experience to date under the contract.

Paragraphs 3–4 of FASB ASC 944-20-35 further state:

The amount recognized under paragraph 944-20-25-4 in the current period shall be computed, using a with-and-without method, as the difference between the ceding entity’s total contract costs before and after the experience under the contract as of the reporting date, including costs such as premium adjustments, settlement adjustments, and impairments of coverage.

The amount of premium expense related to impairments of coverage shall be measured in relation to the original contract terms. Future experience under the contract (that is, future losses and future premiums that would be paid regardless of past experience) shall not be considered in measuring the amount to be recognized.

FASB ASC 944-20-25-4 also further states:

For contracts that meet all of the conditions described in paragraph 944-20-15-55:

- a. The ceding entity shall recognize a liability and the assuming entity shall recognize an asset to the extent that the ceding entity has an obligation to pay cash (or other consideration) to the reinsurer that would not have been required absent experience under the contract (for example, payments that would not have been required if losses had not been experienced).
- b. The ceding entity shall recognize an asset and the assuming entity shall recognize a liability to the extent that any cash (or other consideration) would be payable from the assuming entity to the ceding entity based on experience to date under the contract.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.23 Deposit Accounting**

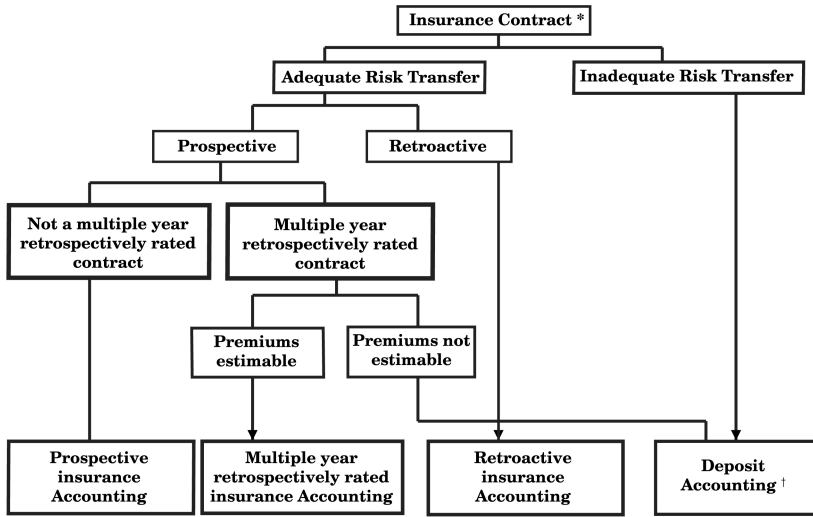
*Inquiry*—What is deposit accounting?

*Reply*—Deposit accounting essentially treats the contract as a financing transaction similar to a loan taking into account the time value of money. FASB ASC 340 provides guidance on how to account for insurance and reinsurance contracts that do not transfer insurance risk.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### .24 Identifying Accounting Model for Insurance Transactions

The accompanying chart depicts the basic decision process in identifying the appropriate accounting model for insurance transactions.



\* The insurance model discussed in this series of technical practice aids is based on property and casualty and other short-duration contracts, as defined in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 944, Financial Services—Insurance*.

† FASB ASC-944-20 should also be considered in determining the accounting for multiple-year retrospectively rated contracts that do not transfer risk.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### .25 Integrated/Nonintegrated Contract Features in Applying FASB ASC 944-30

**Inquiry**—If there are contract features that do not meet the definition of nonintegrated contract features contained in the FASB ASC glossary, how should the contract features be evaluated under FASB ASC 944-30?

**Reply**—The flowchart in FASB ASC 944-30-55-11, titled “Summary of Internal Replacement Transactions Accounting Model,” asks the question, “Does the contract modification involve the addition of or changes to a nonintegrated contract feature?” If the answer is *Yes*, the nonintegrated contract feature is evaluated separately from the base contract. All other modifications need to be evaluated to determine if the contract modification results in a substantially changed replacement contract in accordance with the criteria in FASB ASC 944-30-35-37.

When applying the guidance in FASB ASC 944-30 to determine whether a feature is integrated or nonintegrated, one indicator of a nonintegrated contract feature is that it is distinguishable as a separate component from the base contract.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.26 Evaluation of Significance of Modification in Applying FASB ASC 944-30**

*Inquiry*—When analyzing a contract feature under FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(a), how should the significance of the change in the degree of mortality risk, morbidity risk, or other insurance risk be determined?

*Reply*—In assessing the significance of a change in the degree of mortality, morbidity, or other insurance risk, the insurance enterprise should consider the specific facts and circumstances of the modification as well as which approach or approaches it considers most appropriate to analyze the substance of the change. It is the substance of the contract between the insurance enterprise and the contract holder that is to be evaluated, and not just the economics to the insurance enterprise that is critical to determining whether an internal replacement results in a substantially changed contract.

FASB ASC 944-30 does not require any one specific approach for analyzing the significance of a change in insurance risk; rather, it provides examples of several approaches that may be used in assessing changes in the degree of insurance risk. Factors to consider in determining whether there are significant changes in insurance risks may include changes in actuarially estimated costs for that benefit feature (for example, changes in the death benefit provided) or, alternatively, changes in the FASB ASC 944 benefit ratio related to that benefit feature (for example, giving consideration to the change in the relationship between the actuarially estimated future costs of the benefit feature and estimated total future fees to be charged for the contract). Another example of assessing the significance of a change for a universal life contract is by comparing the change in the relationship between the expected cost of the benefit and the charges for the benefit. Another potential comparison would be the change in the net amount at risk before and after the modification. Reunderwriting an entire contract generally would indicate a significant change in the kind or degree of insurance risk.

Different approaches utilized to assess the significance of a change in the degree of mortality, morbidity, or other insurance risk could result in different conclusions. Therefore, it may be necessary to consider multiple approaches to evaluate the significance of a change. For example, a change from a 20-pay life insurance contract to a 10-pay life insurance contract, where the two premiums are determined to be actuarially equivalent amounts, is an internal replacement that may or may not result in the replacement contract being determined to be substantially changed from the replaced contract. Using actuarially estimated cost before and after the modification would not result in a significant change (for example, the death benefit remains the same, only the premium payment period is changing). Comparing the relationship of the present value of estimated cost and the present value of the actuarially equivalent premiums also would not result in a significant change. However, if one used the net amount at risk as the basis for comparison, the change could be considered significant, given that the net amount at risk would differ for contracts with different premium collection periods.

While all these approaches, and perhaps others, would be appropriate in analyzing the significance of the change in this specific example, not all of these approaches would be appropriate in all circumstances. Any approach utilized should consider the substance of the change between the insurance enterprise and the contract holder. For instance, a minimum guaranteed death benefit (MGDB) is essentially a combination of mortality and investment risk and, therefore, it generally would not be appropriate to analyze the change in a MGDB based on a comparison of net expected cost (expected costs net of expected charges for the MGDB benefit) or the change in the relationship

between the expected cost and charges for the MGDB benefit due to the interaction of the mortality and investment risk.

The approach or approaches determined to be appropriate to evaluate the substance of a change should be applied consistently in analyzing similar types of modifications for similar contracts.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.27 Changes in Investment Management Fees and Other Administrative Charges in Applying FASB ASC 944-30**

*Inquiry*—How should changes in investment management fees and other administrative charges be evaluated under the guidance in FASB ASC 944-30?

*Reply*—Changes in accordance with terms and within ranges specified in the contract, without any other change in benefits or coverages, are not modifications to the contract.

Changes in investment management fees and charges that are not in accordance with terms specified in the contract should be evaluated under the guidance in FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(b) based on the substance of the fees and consider whether the change in fees is significant in the context of the overall investment return rights. Changes in the structure of investment management fees and charges (for example, between flat fee, sliding scale, or percentage of assets), whether made by the insurance entity or investment advisor, may or may not result in a significant change to the nature of investment return rights.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.28 Definition of Reunderwriting for Purposes of Applying FASB ASC 944-30**

*Inquiry*—Is the performance of limited examination procedures in conjunction with the election of a benefit, feature, right, or coverage by the contract holder considered underwriting or reunderwriting as contemplated by FASB ASC 944-30-35-26(b)?

*Reply*—It depends. The performance of examination procedures with respect to specific risks or components of a contract would not represent underwriting or reunderwriting as long as the procedures are limited in nature and do not involve judgment or discretion with respect to acceptance or price. For example, examination procedures undertaken to confirm data used to calculate benefit amounts, such as the income verification procedures undertaken as part of a benefit step-up in a disability policy, or to gather information to verify representations made by the contract holder with respect to the election being made, such as limited procedures to validate an insured's claim of currently being a nonsmoker, would not be considered underwriting or reunderwriting.

The lack of underwriting is not, by itself, determinative that an election is not a modification or that a change is not substantial. The election should be evaluated against the other conditions of FASB ASC 944-30.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.29 Contract Reinstatements in Applying FASB ASC 944-30**

*Inquiry*—How should insurance enterprises apply the guidance in FASB ASC 944-30 to contract reinstatements?

*Reply*—If an insurance enterprise determines it has no further obligation to pay claims due to the lapse of a contract, the related contract would be

considered extinguished. If the insurance contract is later reinstated, it would be accounted for as a newly issued contract in the period in which the reinstatement occurs. Unamortized deferred acquisition costs, unearned revenue liabilities, and deferred sales inducement assets related to the terminated contract should not be reestablished in connection with the newly issued contract.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.30 Commissions Paid on an Increase in Insurance Coverage or Incremental Deposits in Applying FASB ASC 944-30**

*Inquiry*—Should additional commissions incurred on either an increase in insurance coverage or incremental deposits not provided for in the replaced contract, related to a contract modification determined to result in a substantially unchanged replacement contract under FASB ASC 944-30, be accounted for as maintenance costs?

*Reply*—No. If commissions are paid on either an increase in insurance coverage or incremental deposit, not previously provided for in the contract, related to a contract modification determined to result in a substantially unchanged replacement contract, the commissions should be accounted for as acquisition costs in accordance with the provisions of FASB ASC 944, as appropriate.

For example, an increase in face amount of a universal life-type contract results in a replacement contract that is determined to be substantially unchanged. The modification is an integrated feature because the universal life-type contract has only a single account value and the death benefit is the excess of face amount over account value. In this situation, the commission incurred on what is essentially the sale of new insurance coverage should not be considered maintenance expense, but rather should be accounted for as acquisition costs in accordance with the provisions of FASB ASC 944. The substance of the modification in this example is the sale of additional insurance.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.31 Participating Dividends and the Interaction of Guidance in FASB ASC 944**

*Inquiry*—How are paid up additions funded by dividends on participating policies evaluated under FASB ASC 944-30, and what is the impact on estimated gross margins?

*Reply*—Paid up additions funded by dividends on participating policies that meet the conditions of FASB ASC 944-30-35-26 would not be considered internal replacements subject to the guidance in FASB ASC 944-30. Paid up additions that do not meet the conditions of FASB ASC 944-30-35-26 would be considered nonintegrated contract features under FASB ASC 944-30.

For paid up additions that do not meet the conditions of FASB ASC 944-30-35-26, FASB ASC 944 addresses the accounting and the impact of various dividend options, including paid up additions, on estimated gross margins. Under FASB ASC 944-30-35-57, the estimated gross margins should include an insurance company's best estimate of the dividend options that policyholders will elect, which would include the option to use dividends to fund paid up additions. FASB ASC 944-30 does not amend or affect that guidance in FASB ASC 944.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.32 Premium Changes to Long Duration Contracts in Applying FASB ASC 944-30**

*Inquiry*—Are changes in premiums to long-duration insurance contracts for which the insurer has the right to make changes in premium rates considered modifications as contemplated in FASB ASC 944-30?

*Reply*—It depends.

FASB ASC 944-20-55-5 states:

. . . individual and group insurance contracts that are . . . guaranteed renewable (renewable at the option of the insured), or collectively renewable (individual contracts within a group are not cancelable), ordinarily are long-duration contracts.

The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Life and Health Insurance Entities* defines a guaranteed renewable contract as:

An insurance contract whereby the insured has the right to continue in force by the timely payment of premiums for a period that coincides approximately with the average working lifetime (for federal income tax purposes at least until age sixty), with the right reserved by the insurer to make changes in premium rates by classes.

The right to adjust premium rates for group long-duration insurance contracts generally would not meet the characteristics of a modification under FASB ASC 944-30 as long as all of the following conditions are met:

- The right to adjust premium rates is provided for under the terms of the insurance contract,
- The change to premium rates for a contract holder is the same change in premium rates that is applicable to the entire class of contract holders,
- Changes to premium rates do not involve consideration by the insurer of specific experience of the contract holder, and
- No other changes in benefits or coverages occur.

Further, the determination of rates based on a formula specified within the contract that does not involve insurer discretion would not be considered a modification as contemplated under FASB ASC 944-30.

Changes to a contract that involve the adjustment of rates or benefits based on a judgmental review of actual experience of the contract holder or the renegotiation of rates or benefits with that contract holder, even if no reunderwriting has occurred, generally would be considered a modification that is subject to the guidance in FASB ASC 944-30.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.33 Evaluation of Changes Under FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(a)**

*Inquiry*—How should changes in the period of coverage or insured risk under FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(a) be evaluated?

*Reply*—A change in the period of coverage should be evaluated based on a comparison of the remaining period of coverage of the replaced contract to the remaining period of coverage of the replacement contract when assessing the significance of that change. Similarly, when determining whether there are significant changes in insurance risk under FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(a) the evaluation should be based on a comparison of the remaining insurance

coverage of the replaced contract to the remaining insurance coverage of the replacement contract.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.34 Nature of Investment Return Rights in FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(b)**

*Inquiry*—What constitutes the *nature of the investment return rights* in FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(b)?

*Reply*—The phrase *nature of the investment return rights* encompasses the manner in which the contract's investment return is determined. For pass-through contracts, the addition of a floor or the capping of the returns, such that actual returns (net of fees and charges) are not passed through to the policyholder, fundamentally changes the nature of the investment return rights.

If the contract is referenced to a pool of assets or otherwise indexed (for example, S&P 500 or LIBOR), the underlying referenced pool of assets or index is an inherent component of the nature of investment return rights, and changes in these provisions would result in a change to the nature of investment return rights between the insurance enterprise and the contract holder under FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(b). This differs from a contract holder reallocation of funds among multiple investment alternatives provided for in the contract in which the investment performance of the investments passes through to the contract holder.

Contract holder liquidity rights related to investment guarantees (for example, variable annuity guaranteed minimum accumulation benefits, guaranteed minimum income benefits, and guaranteed minimum withdrawal benefits) are inherent components of the nature of investment return rights, and the addition of a different investment guarantee with substantively different timing of cash flow accessibility to the contract holder would result in a change to the nature of investment return rights between the insurance enterprise and the contract holder under FASB ASC 944-30-35-37(b).

Changes to a component (or components) of an investment return formula (for example, the strike price of the guarantee for a variable annuity with a guaranteed minimum accumulation benefit or other modification to an existing investment guarantee) should be evaluated in a manner similar to changes in minimum guarantees for contracts subject to periodic discretionary declaration.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.36 Prospective Unlocking**

*Inquiry*—Certain insurance contracts classified as long-duration insurance contracts under FASB ASC 944, may include provisions that allow for premium rate increases by class of customer, subject to regulatory approval. Policies with these provisions may include long-term care, Medicare supplements, and certain other guaranteed renewable contracts.

Is an insurance company permitted to “unlock” its original FASB ASC 944 assumptions after contract inception for collected, approved, or expected premium rate increases for the contracts previously described in situations other than in premium deficiency?

*Reply*—No, FASB ASC 944 policyholder benefit liability assumptions cannot be unlocked for collected, approved, or expected premium rate increases for

the contracts described in situations other than in the premium deficiency situations described in paragraphs 7–9 of FASB ASC 944-60-25.

FASB ASC 944 requires that best estimate assumptions (with a provision for adverse deviation) be determined at contract inception and used to calculate the long duration policy benefit liability. Paragraphs 5–6 of FASB ASC 944-40-35 state the following:

Original assumptions shall continue to be used in subsequent accounting periods to determine changes in the liability for future policy benefits (often referred to as the lock-in concept) unless a premium deficiency exists subject to paragraphs 944-60-25-7 through 25-9.

Changes in the liability for future policy benefits that result from its periodic estimation for financial reporting purposes shall be recognized in income in the period in which the changes occur.

FASB ASC 944-60-25-7 describes the premium deficiency situations that can exist. As FASB ASC 944-60-30-1 describes, the first situation occurs when the present value of future payments for benefits and related expenses less the present value of future gross premiums (both determined using revised assumptions based on actual and expected experience) exceed the existing liability for future policy benefits reduced by unamortized acquisition costs. As FASB ASC 944-60-25-9 describes, a premium deficiency can also exist when the liability on a particular line of business is not deficient in the aggregate, but circumstances are such that profits would be recognized in early years and losses in later years.

[Issue Date: December 2008; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 5641.]

## Section 6400

### Health Care Entities

#### **.04 Hospital as Collecting Agent for Physicians [Amended]**

*Inquiry*—Under an agreement with several physicians, a hospital acts as collecting agent for the physicians' fees, and the physicians, in return, provide professional services at the hospital. These physicians are not employees; payroll taxes are not paid for them, and the hospital cannot exercise any of the prerogatives of an employer. To enable it to collect the physicians' Medicare fees, the hospital holds valid assignments. Should the amounts collected as physicians' fees be included in the income and expenses of the provider hospital?

*Reply*—No. As discussed in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 954-305-45-4, health care entities may receive and hold assets owned by others under agency relationships; for example, they may perform billing and collection services for physicians. In accepting responsibility for those assets, an entity incurs a liability to the principal under the agency relationship to return the assets in the future. In the preceding example, the hospital is functioning as a conduit with respect to the physicians' fees. As a result, the fees should be reported as a liability to the physicians and not recognized in the statement of revenues and expenses. Agency funds are reported as unrestricted assets.

[Amended, September 1997; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.12 General Obligation Bonds Issued for Current Use by City Owned Hospital [Amended]**

*Inquiry*—A hospital is a city municipal enterprise. The city council issued general obligation bonds to provide funds for the hospital's operations, without restriction. The hospital's assets will not be used to pay principal or interest on the bonds. Should the general obligation bond liability be reported in the hospital's financial statements?

*Reply*—No. FASB ASC 954-470-25-1 states that if a health care entity has no obligation to make payments of principal and interest on the debt, the entity should not reflect the liability on its balance sheet. The proceeds from the bond issue are contributions from the city. Therefore, the hospital should not report the bonds as a liability in its financial statements.

[Amended, September 1997; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.17 Elimination of Profit on Intercompany Sales**

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 810-10-45-1 addresses the elimination of intercompany profit or loss on assets remaining within a combined or consolidated group. FASB ASC 980-810-45-1 indicates the following with regard to intercompany profit:

Profit on sales to regulated affiliates shall not be eliminated in general-purpose financial statements if both of the following criteria are met:

- a. The sales price is reasonable.

- b. It is probable that, through the rate-making process, future revenue approximately equal to the sales price will result from the regulated affiliate's use of the products.

Since health care providers are, in certain cases, reimbursed for operating costs, it is possible that, assuming they meet certain related party tests under third-party regulations, an entity could receive reimbursement on intercompany sales that include a profit. Thus, one could argue that under that circumstance, it would not be appropriate to eliminate profit on intercompany sales using the criteria set forth in FASB ASC 980, *Regulated Operations*.

*Reply*—In some instances health care entities may encounter situations where they fall under FASB ASC 980-10-15-2. Generally, however, as explained in FASB ASC 980-10-15-7, the normal Medicare and Medicaid arrangements are excluded from the scope of FASB ASC 980 on the basis that the “regulator” is also a party to the contract. Accordingly, gains or losses on sale of assets within the group should be eliminated in combined or consolidated financial statements. However, these gains or losses would be recognized and disclosed as appropriate in the separate financial statements of the members of the group.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.19 Offsetting of Limited Use Assets**

*Inquiry*—Can limited-use assets of one entity be offset against the related liability of another entity in combined or consolidated financial statements?

*Reply*—Unless a *right of setoff* exists as defined in the FASB ASC glossary, assets, in general, should not be offset against related liabilities in any financial statement presentation.

[Amended; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.20 Format of Combined or Consolidated Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—When presenting combined or consolidated financial statements of various health care entities, is there a prescribed or recommended presentation format?

*Reply*—No. The sample financial statements contained in FASB ASC 954 do not prescribe the format of statements. In addition, no single format for combined or consolidated financial statements has been considered appropriate in all circumstances.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.25 Accounting for Transfer of Assets From Not-for-Profit to For-Profit Entities**

*Inquiry*—How should subsequent transfers of assets, evidenced as additional investment, from not-for-profit entities to for-profit entities be accounted for by the transferee and transferor?

*Reply*—Additional investments in for-profit entities (subsequent to the original transfer of assets) should be reflected by the transferee as an increase in capital stock and/or paid-in capital. The transferor would record a corresponding increase in its investment account in the for-profit entity, if a financial interest was received (for example, additional capital stock).

**.26 Transfer of Assets From Subsidiary For-Profit Entity to Not-for-Profit Stockholder Parent**

*Inquiry*—How should transfers of assets from a “subsidiary” for-profit entity (F) to a not-for-profit entity (N) that is a minority stockholder of F be recorded?

*Reply*—This transaction would generally be recorded as a dividend, which would be reported as a reduction in F’s retained earnings. Any dividend in excess of retained earnings is a “liquidating” dividend; as such, it would be reported as a reduction in F’s paid-in capital account. If N accounts for its investment in F using the equity method, then the not-for-profit entity would report all dividends received as a reduction of its investment account, in accordance with FASB ASC 323, *Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures*. If N’s investment in F is accounted for using the cost method, because the conditions for applying the equity method are not met, the dividends would be reported as income.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.29 Timing of Recording Transfers Between Related Entities**

*Inquiry*—When should a transfer of assets between related entities be recorded—only when the transfer is actually made, or at some earlier point?

*Reply*—In most situations, transfers should be recorded at the time they are formally obligated to occur (formal board resolutions, legal notes, passage of title to real estate, and so on). This would be the case when each of the entities have independent governance, and the timing of the transfer is controlled by the governing board of the transferor. Yet, in situations where there is clear, common control of the related entities, it would be appropriate to record transfers at the time when both (a) the transfer amount is known and (b) the receiving entity is given control over the timing of the transfer.

**.30 Accounting for Transactions Involving Medicaid Voluntary Contribution or Taxation Programs [Amended]**

*Inquiry*—The Medicaid program is set up on a state-by-state basis to provide medical assistance to the indigent. Although state-administered, the program is actually a joint federal and state program for which the federal government picks up a portion of the cost. Under this arrangement, the federal government “matches” a percentage of the total amount paid by the state to health care providers. This matching is referred to as federal financial participation.

States have attempted to increase the amount of federal matching funds for which they are eligible by increasing the amount of medical assistance they provide. In order to pay for the increased medical assistance, some states have imposed a tax on health care entities, sought donations or other voluntary payments from them, or both. As a result, the states have been able to generate additional federal matching funds without expending additional state funds. How should a health care entity account for these taxes or donations made to the state?

*Reply*—Congress has passed legislation prohibiting the use of health care entity taxes or donations except in limited situations.

The accounting for these types of programs is dependent on the individual facts and circumstances. For example, if there is a guarantee that specific monies given to the state by the health care entity will be ‘returned’ to the entity from the state, those amounts should be recorded as receivables. In addition,

if the health care entity has met all requirements to be legally entitled to additional funds from the state, the revenue/gain should be recognized.

However, if the monies go into a pool with other contributions which are then disbursed based on factors over which the health care entity has little or no control, the payments should be recognized as an expense. Any subsequent reimbursements would be recognized as revenue/gain when the provider is entitled to them and payment is assured.

Care should be taken to avoid delayed recognition of expenses or to improperly recognize contingent gains. Because of complexities involved, it may be necessary to consult with legal counsel.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.33 Accounting for a Joint Operating Agreement**

*Inquiry*—Two not-for-profit health care systems enter into a Joint Operating Agreement whereby both (the Venturers) agree to jointly operate and control certain of their hospitals while sharing in the operating results and residual interest upon dissolution based upon an agreed-upon ratio. Neither of the Venturers receives cash or other monetary assets as part of entering into the Agreement. How should the Venturers account for the Agreement?

*Reply*—Joint Operating Agreements are similar to joint ventures and typically are characterized by factors such as:

- Common purpose (for example, to share risks and rewards; to develop a new market, health service or program; to pool resources)
- Joint funding: all parties contribute resources toward its accomplishment
- Defined relationship: typically governed by an agreement
- Joint control: control is not derived from holding a majority of the voting interest

Even though the Agreement does not provide for a separate legal entity (such as a corporation or partnership), the same principles apply. For example, since there is joint control (that is, neither party controls the venture), consolidation would not be appropriate. Instead, such agreements should be accounted for similar to a corporate joint venture using the equity method of accounting (see FASB ASC 323). Since the transaction did not reflect the culmination of the earnings process, the Venturers' basis in the investment would be recorded at net book value.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.34 Accounting for Computer Systems Costs Incurred in Connection With the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA)**

*Inquiry*—The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA) was enacted by the federal government with the intent to assure health insurance portability, improve the efficiency and effectiveness of the health care system, reduce health care fraud and abuse, help ensure security and privacy of health information, and enforce standards for transacting health information. HIPAA addresses issues of security and confidentiality in the transfer of electronic patient information and facilitates the reduction of administrative costs by standardizing health care electronic transactions.

How should health care entities account for computer systems costs incurred in connection with HIPAA?

*Reply*—Costs associated with upgrading and improving computer systems to comply with HIPAA should follow the guidance set forth in FASB ASC 350-40. The accounting for specific compliance costs depends on whether the costs relate to “upgrades and enhancements” or maintenance. The following summarizes the financial reporting requirements for each type of cost:

- *Upgrades* are defined in the FASB ASC glossary as, “an improvement to an existing product that is intended to extend the life or improve significantly the marketability of the original product through added functionality, enhanced performance, or both. The terms upgrade and enhancement are used interchangeably to describe improvements to software products; however, in different segments of the software industry, those terms may connote different levels of packaging or improvements. This definition does not include platform-transfer rights.” For example, if the changes increase the security of the data from tampering or alteration or reduce the ability of unauthorized persons to gain access to the data, those changes would be tasks that the software previously could not perform and the associated qualifying costs of application development stage activities should be capitalized. Conversely, if the changes merely reconfigure existing data to conform to the HIPAA standard or regulatory requirements, such changes would not result in the capability to perform of additional tasks and the associated costs therewith should be expensed as incurred. Because many of the costs associated with HIPAA relate to compliance with the Act and do not result in “additional functionality,” those costs should be expensed as incurred.
- *Maintenance costs* should be expensed as incurred. Training costs and data conversion costs, except for costs to develop or obtain software that allows for access or conversion of old data by new systems, should also be expensed as incurred.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.35 Note to Sections 6400.36-.42—Implementation of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (in the Beneficiary’s Financial Statements)**

Some not-for-profit entities have separate fund-raising foundations (commonly referred to as “institutionally related foundations”) that solicit contributions on their behalf. FASB ASC 958 provides guidance on (among other things) the accounting that should be followed by such in-stitutionally related foundations and their related beneficiary entity(ies) with respect to contributions received by the foundation.

Some institutionally related foundations and their beneficiary entities meet the characteristics of financially interrelated entities provided in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. If entities are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958 provides that the balance sheet of the beneficiary entity(ies) should reflect that entity’s interest in the net assets of the foundation, and that interest should be periodically adjusted to reflect the beneficiary’s share of the changes in the net assets of the foundation. This accounting is similar to the equity method of accounting, which is described in FASB ASC 323.

FASB ASC 323-10-35-5 requires that the periodic adjustment of the investment be included in the determination of the investor's net income. The purpose of sections 6140.14–.18 (applicable to not-for-profit entities [NPEs] other than health care [HC] entities) and sections 6400.36–.42 (applicable to not-for-profit health care entities) is to clarify that in circumstances in which the recipient and the beneficiary are financially interrelated:

- Beneficiary entities should segregate the adjustment into changes in restricted and unrestricted net assets. (NPE TPA [sections 6140.14–.16]; HC TPA [sections 6400.36–.37 and .39])
- In circumstances in which the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, the existence of the recipient entity should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in the beneficiary's financial statements. In other words, the recipient cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (NPE TPA [section 6140.14 and .16]; HC TPA [sections 6400.36 and .39])
- In circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, the existence of the recipient entity creates an implied time restriction on the beneficiary's net assets attributable to the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient (in addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, in recognizing its interest in the net assets of the recipient entity and the changes in that interest, the beneficiary should classify the resulting net assets and changes in those net assets as temporarily restricted (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions). (NPE TPA [section 6140.15]; HC TPA [section 6400.37])
- In circumstances in which the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary and some net assets held by the recipient for the benefit of the beneficiary are subject to purpose restrictions [for example, net assets of the recipient restricted to the beneficiary's purchase of property, plant, and equipment (PPE)], expenditures by the beneficiary that meet those purpose restrictions result in the beneficiary (and recipient) reporting reclassifications from temporarily restricted to unrestricted net assets (assuming that the beneficiary has no other net assets subject to similar purpose restrictions), unless those net assets are subject to time restrictions that have not expired, including time restrictions that are implied on contributed long-lived assets as a result of the beneficiary's accounting policy pursuant to FASB ASC 958-605-45-6. (If those net assets are subject to time restrictions that have not expired and the beneficiary has other net assets with similar purpose restrictions, the restrictions on those other net assets would expire in accordance with FASB ASC 958. These TPAs do not, however, establish a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or purpose restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary.) (NPE TPA [section 6140.17]; HC TPA [section 6400.40])

- In circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary and some net assets held by the recipient for the benefit of the beneficiary are subject to purpose restrictions, though not subject to time restrictions other than the implied time restrictions that exist because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, expenditures by the beneficiary that are consistent with those purpose restrictions should not result in the beneficiary reporting a reclassification from temporarily restricted to unrestricted net assets, subject to the exceptions in the following sentence. Expenditures by the beneficiary that are consistent with those purpose restrictions should result in the beneficiary reporting a reclassification from temporarily restricted to unrestricted net assets if (a) the recipient has no discretion in deciding whether the purpose restriction is met<sup>1</sup> or (b) the recipient distributes or obligates itself to distribute to the beneficiary amounts attributable to net assets restricted for the particular purpose, or otherwise indicates that the recipient intends for those net assets to be used to support the particular purpose as an activity of the current period. In all other circumstances, (a) purpose restrictions and (b) implied time restrictions on the net assets attributable to the interest in the recipient entity exist and have not yet expired. (However, if the beneficiary has other net assets with similar purpose restrictions, those restrictions would expire in accordance with FASB ASC 958. These TPAs do not establish a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary.) (NPE TPA [section 6140.18]; HC TPA [section 6400.41])
- *For HC NPEs Only.* In circumstances in which the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, changes in the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of a recipient entity attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments should be included or excluded from the performance indicator in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205-45, FASB ASC 954-320-45, FASB ASC 954-320-55, and FASB ASC 954-605, in the same manner that they would have been had the beneficiary had the transactions itself. Similarly, in applying this guidance, the determination of whether amounts are included or excluded from the performance measure should comprehend that if the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, an implied time restriction exists on the beneficiary's net assets attributable to the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient (in

---

<sup>1</sup> In some circumstances, the purpose restrictions may be so broad that the recipient entity has discretion in deciding whether expenditures by the beneficiary that are consistent with those purpose restrictions actually meet those purpose restrictions. For example, the recipient's net assets may have arisen from a contribution that was restricted for the beneficiary's purchase of research equipment, with no particular research equipment specified. Purchasing an XYZ microscope, which is consistent with that purpose restriction, may or may not meet that purpose restriction, depending on the decision of the recipient. In contrast, the net assets may have arisen from a contribution that was restricted for an XYZ microscope. Purchasing an XYZ microscope, which also is consistent with that purpose restriction, would result in the recipient having no discretion in determining whether that purpose restriction is met.

addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, in circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, the beneficiary should classify the resulting net assets and changes in those net assets as temporarily restricted (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions) and therefore exclude those changes from the performance indicator. (HC TPA [section 6400.42])

- *For HC NPEs Only.* In circumstances in which the recipient entity and the beneficiary are both controlled by the same entity, entities should consider the specific facts and circumstances to determine whether the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary. (HC TPA [section 6400.38])

**Technical Practice Aids for Not-for-Profit Entities**  
**Implementation of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s**  
**Interest in the**  
**Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation**  
**(in the Beneficiary’s Financial Statements)**

HC NPEs			
NPEs that are not HC NPEs			
Can the beneficiary determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary? [Not-for-profit health care entities (HC NPEs) under common control consider HC Technical Practice Aid (TPA) section 6400.38]	How does the existence of the recipient affect the beneficiary’s reporting of its interest?	Are any net assets held by the recipient for the benefit of the beneficiary subject to donor-imposed purpose restrictions and has the beneficiary made expenditures that meet those purpose restrictions (in circumstances in which the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary) or that are consistent with those purpose restrictions (in circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary)?	Are any changes in the beneficiary’s interest in the net assets of the recipient attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments?

(continued)

HC NPEs			
NPEs that are not HC NPEs			
Yes	Existence of recipient is transparent in determining net asset classifications. (NPE TPA [sections 6140.14 and .16]; HC TPA [sections 6400.36 and .39])	Reclass the applicable net assets from temporarily restricted (TR) to unrestricted (UR) unless those net assets are subject to time restrictions that have not expired. (NPE TPA [section 6140.17]; HC TPA [section 6400.40])	Changes in the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of a recipient entity attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments should be included or excluded from the per-formance indicator in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205-45, FASB ASC 954-320-45, FASB ASC 954-320-55, and FASB ASC 954-605, in the same manner that they would have been had the benefici-ary had the transactions itself. (HC TPA [section 6400.42])
No	Existence of the recipient creates an implied time restriction on the beneficiary's net assets attributable to the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient. (NPE TPA [ section 6140.15]; HC TPA [section 6400.37])	Reclass the applicable net assets from TR to UR only if the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction are met. Whether the purpose restriction is met depends in part on (1) whether the recipient has discretion in determining whether the purpose restriction is met and (2) the recipient's decision in exercising that discretion, if any. (NPE TPA [section 6140.18]; HC TPA [section 6400.41])	An implied time restriction exists on the beneficiary's net assets attributable to the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient. The beneficiary should classify the resulting net assets and changes in those net assets as temporarily restricted (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions) and therefore exclude those changes from the performance indicator. (HC TPA [section 6400.42])

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.36 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)**

*Inquiry*—ABC Hospital, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954<sup>2</sup> and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital. Assume that ABC Hospital can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

During its most recent fiscal year, ABC Foundation's activities resulted in an increase in net assets (before distributions) of \$3,200, comprised of \$2,000 in unrestricted contributions, \$1,000 in temporarily restricted contributions (purpose restrictions), \$500 in unrestricted dividend and interest income, and \$300 in expenses. In addition, ABC Foundation distributed \$2,500 in cash representing unrestricted net assets to ABC Hospital. How should this activity be reported in ABC Hospital's financial statements?

*Reply*—Because ABC Foundation (the recipient entity) and ABC Hospital (the beneficiary) are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires ABC Hospital to recognize its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and periodically adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of ABC Foundation. This is similar to the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323.

In recognizing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and the changes in that interest, ABC Hospital should classify the resulting net assets as if contributions were received by ABC Hospital directly from the donor, because ABC Hospital can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. In other words, the existence of ABC Foundation should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in ABC Hospital's financial statements because ABC Foundation cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (Any instructions given by ABC Foundation are designations, rather than restrictions.)

In the circumstances described previously, ABC Hospital would initially increase its asset, "Interest in Net Assets of ABC Foundation" for the change in ABC Foundation's net assets (\$3,200). ABC Hospital's Statement of Operations would include "Change in Unrestricted Interest in ABC Foundation" of \$2,200 (which would be included in the performance indicator in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605) and "Change in Temporarily Restricted Interest in ABC Foundation" of \$1,000 which would be reported in the Statement of Changes in Net Assets.

---

<sup>2</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 954, *Health Care Entities*. Section 6140.14, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958, *Not-for-Profit Entities*.

The \$2,500 distribution from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital would not be reported as an increase in net assets on ABC Hospital's Statement of Operations or its Statement of Changes in Net Assets. By analogy to equity method accounting, the \$2,500 would be reported in a manner similar to a distribution from a subsidiary to its parent (for example, a dividend). ABC Hospital should report the distribution by increasing cash and decreasing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation.

If the distribution represented restricted net assets, ABC Hospital would not reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted at the time of the distribution. Instead, ABC Hospital would reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted when those restrictions were met.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.37 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)**

*Inquiry*—ABC Hospital, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954<sup>3</sup> and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital. Assume that ABC Hospital cannot, however, influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

During its most recent fiscal year, ABC Foundation's activities resulted in an increase in net assets (before distributions) of \$3,200, comprised of \$2,000 in unrestricted contributions, \$1,000 in temporarily restricted contributions (purpose restrictions), \$500 in unrestricted dividend and interest income, and \$300 in expenses. In addition, ABC Foundation elected to distribute \$2,500 in cash representing unrestricted net assets to ABC Hospital. How should this activity be reported in ABC Hospital's financial statements?

*Reply*—Because ABC Foundation (the recipient entity) and ABC Hospital (the beneficiary) are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires ABC Hospital to recognize its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and periodically adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of ABC Foundation. This is similar to the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323.

ABC Hospital cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation. Therefore, an implied time restriction exists on ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation (in addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, in recognizing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and the changes in that interest, ABC Hospital should classify the resulting net assets as

---

<sup>3</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954. Section 6140.15, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958.

changes in temporarily restricted net assets (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions).

In the circumstances previously described, ABC Hospital would initially increase its asset, "Interest in Net Assets of ABC Foundation" for the change in ABC Foundation's net assets (\$3,200). ABC Hospital's Statement of Changes in Net Assets would include "Change in Temporarily Restricted Interest in ABC Foundation" of \$3,200 as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets.

The \$2,500 distribution from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital would not be reported as an increase in net assets on ABC Hospital's Statement of Operations or its Statement of Changes in Net Assets. By analogy to equity method accounting, the \$2,500 would be treated similar to a distribution from a subsidiary to its parent (for example, a dividend). ABC Hospital should report the distribution by increasing cash and decreasing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation.

ABC Hospital would reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted at the time of the distribution, because the time restriction would expire at the time of the distribution. The reclassification would be reported as "net assets released from restrictions" and included in the performance indicator in the statement of operations. (If those net assets were subject to purpose or time restrictions that remained even after the net assets had been distributed to ABC Hospital, ABC Hospital would not reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted at the time of the distribution. Instead, ABC Hospital would reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted when those restrictions were met and the reclassification would be included in or excluded from the performance indicator in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, FASB ASC 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.38 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation—Does Common Control Lead to the Conclusion That the Beneficiary Can Determine the Timing and Amount of Distributions from the Recipient?**

*Inquiry*—ABC Holding Company (a not-for-profit entity) has two not-for-profit subsidiaries (ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation) that it controls and consolidates in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-605, and FASB ASC 954-810. ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation are brother-sister entities that are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Hospital issues separate financial statements in connection with a loan agreement. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital.

Because ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation are under common control, does that lead to the conclusion that ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital?

*Reply*—In some circumstances ABC Hospital, though a subsidiary of ABC Holding Company, may be able to influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. For example, if ABC Hospital formed ABC Holding Company as

a nominally-capitalized shell with no real operating powers, a rebuttable presumption exists that ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. On the other hand if, for example, ABC Hospital formed ABC Holding Company to be an operating entity with substance, other factors would need to be considered in determining whether ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. Therefore, it is necessary to consider the facts and circumstances surrounding the relationships between ABC Holding Company and ABC Hospital, and ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation, to determine whether ABC Hospital exerts enough influence over ABC Foundation to determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. Indicators to consider may include, but are not limited to, the following:

- What is the extent of overlap among the boards of ABC Hospital, ABC Holding Company, and ABC Foundation (for example, do a majority of the individuals who govern ABC Hospital also govern ABC Foundation; do a majority of the individuals who govern ABC Hospital also govern ABC Holding Company; are the boards of ABC Hospital, ABC Foundation and ABC Holding Company substantially independent of one another)? The greater the overlap among the boards of ABC Hospital and either ABC Holding Company or ABC Foundation, the more likely that ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.
- What is the extent of overlap among management teams of ABC Hospital, ABC Holding Company, and ABC Foundation (for example, do the individuals who manage ABC Hospital also manage ABC Foundation; do the individuals who manage ABC Hospital also manage ABC Holding Company; does ABC Holding Company have a separate management team that exercises significant authority over both ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation)? The greater the overlap between ABC Hospital's management and management of either ABC Holding Company or ABC Foundation, the more likely that ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.
- What are the origins of the parent/holding company structure? For example, were ABC Holding Company and ABC Foundation created by ABC Hospital through a corporate restructuring, which may indicate that ABC Hospital, as the original entity, can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. Alternatively, were ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation independent entities that merged and created ABC Holding Company to govern the combined entity, which may indicate that ABC Hospital cannot influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

- What is the number of entities under common control? The greater the number of entities under ABC Holding Company's control, the less likely it is that any one subsidiary, such as ABC Hospital, can influence the financial decisions of another brother-sister subsidiary, such as ABC Foundation, (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital

Other relevant facts and circumstances should also be considered.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.39 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated)**

*Inquiry*—DEF Health Entity is the parent company of three brother-sister not-for-profit entities: Health A, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954<sup>4</sup> Health B, and Foundation. Foundation is organized for the purpose of raising contributions for the benefit of both Health A and Health B. The four entities are legally separate not-for-profit entities that are financially interrelated pursuant to the guidance in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. Assume that Health A can influence the financial decisions of Foundation to such an extent that Health A can determine the timing and amount of distributions from Foundation to Health A.

A donor contributes \$5,000 cash to Foundation and stipulates that the contribution is for the benefit of Health A. Foundation would record the contribution as temporarily restricted revenue because Foundation must use the contribution for the benefit of Health A. In its separately issued financial statements, Health A would recognize its interest in the net assets attributable to that contribution by debiting "Interest in Net Assets of Foundation" for \$5,000. Would the offsetting credit be reported as temporarily restricted revenue (because the net assets attributable to the contribution are restricted on Foundation's Balance Sheet) or unrestricted revenue (because there are no donor-imposed time restrictions or purpose restrictions on how Health A must use the contribution)?

*Reply*—Health A should report the offsetting credit as unrestricted revenue. Because Health A can influence the financial decisions of Foundation to such an extent that Health A can determine the timing and amount of distributions from Foundation to Health A, no implied time restriction exists on Health A's net assets attributable to its interest in the net assets of Foundation. Accordingly, in recognizing its interest in the net assets of Foundation and the changes in that interest, Health A should classify the resulting net assets as if contributions were received by Health A directly from the donor. In other words, the existence of Foundation should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in Health A's separately issued financial statements because Foundation cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (Any instructions given by Foundation are designations, rather than restrictions.)

---

<sup>4</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954. Section 6140.16, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958.

Because no donor-imposed restrictions exist on how Health A must use the contribution, Health A should report the change in its interest in the net assets attributable to the contribution as an increase in unrestricted net assets that is included in its performance indicator (in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, FASB ASC 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605) in its separately issued Statement of Operations. When Foundation actually distributes the funds, Health A should increase cash and decrease its interest in net assets of Foundation; the distributions would have no effect on Health A's Statement of Operations or its Statement of Changes in Net Assets.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.40 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)**

*Inquiry*—ABC Hospital, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954<sup>5</sup> and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital. Assume that ABC Hospital can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

ABC Foundation's net assets consist of \$3,000,000 resulting from cash contributions restricted for the purchase of property, plant, and equipment (PPE) by ABC Hospital. ABC Hospital has recorded its interest in those net assets by debiting "Interest in net assets of ABC Foundation" and crediting "Change in interest in ABC Foundation," which is reported as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets. ABC Hospital's accounting policy is to not imply a time restriction that expires over the useful life of the donated long-lived assets pursuant to FASB ASC 958-605-45-6 and it has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE.<sup>6</sup> ABC Hospital subsequently purchased and placed into service \$3,000,000 of PPE that meets those donor restrictions prior to receiving a distribution from ABC Foundation. Should ABC Hospital reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the \$3,000,000 of PPE?

*Reply*—Because ABC Foundation (the recipient entity) and ABC Hospital (the beneficiary) are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires ABC Hospital to recognize its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and periodically adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of ABC

<sup>5</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954. Section 6140.17, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958.

<sup>6</sup> The assumption that ABC Hospital has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE is intended to avoid establishing a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary. That issue is not addressed in this TPA.

Foundation. This is similar to the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323.

In recognizing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and the changes in that interest, ABC Hospital should classify the resulting net assets as if contributions were received by ABC Hospital directly from the donor, because ABC Hospital can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. Accordingly, the net assets representing contributions restricted for the purchase of PPE should be reported as temporarily restricted net assets (purpose restricted) in ABC Hospital's financial statements. Upon purchasing and placing into service the PPE, ABC Hospital (and ABC Foundation) should reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily restricted to unrestricted net assets,<sup>7</sup> reported separately from the performance indicator in the statement of operations in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, FASB AC 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605. In other words, the existence of ABC Foundation should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in ABC Hospital's financial statements because ABC Foundation cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (Any instructions given by ABC Foundation are designations, rather than restrictions.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.41 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)**

*Inquiry*—ABC Hospital, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954<sup>8</sup> and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital. Assume that ABC Hospital cannot, however, influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

---

<sup>7</sup> In this fact pattern, ABC Research Institute's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation is subject to only purpose restrictions because the net assets arose from cash contributions with no time restrictions. If instead the net assets arose from promises to give rather than from cash contributions, the net assets might be subject to time restrictions in addition to the purpose restrictions. In determining whether net assets that arose from promises to give are subject to time restrictions, NPEs should consider the guidance in section 6140.04, *Lapsing of Restrictions on Receivables if Purpose Restrictions Pertaining to Long-Lived Assets are Met Before the Receivables are Due*, which discusses whether restrictions on net assets arising from promises to give that are restricted by donors for investments in long-lived assets are met when the assets are placed in service or when the receivables are due.

<sup>8</sup> This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954. Section 6140.18, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958.

ABC Foundation's net assets consist of \$3,000,000 resulting from cash contributions restricted for the purchase of property, plant, and equipment (PPE) by ABC Hospital. ABC Hospital has recorded its interest in those net assets by debiting "Interest in net assets of ABC Foundation" and crediting "Change in interest in ABC Foundation," which is reported as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets. ABC Hospital has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE.<sup>9</sup>

ABC Hospital subsequently built and placed into service the New Modern Hospital Wing (at a cost of \$3,000,000) prior to receiving a distribution from ABC Foundation or any indication from ABC Foundation that it intends to support building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing. Should ABC Hospital reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing?

*Reply*—From ABC Hospital's perspective, its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation has two restrictions—a purpose restriction (the purchase of the PPE) and an implied time restriction. (ABC Hospital cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital, including distributions pertaining to expenditures by ABC Hospital that meet the donor-imposed purpose restrictions. Therefore, an implied time restriction exists on ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation.) FASB ASC 958-205-45-9 provides, in part, as follows:

If two or more temporary restrictions are imposed on a contribution, the effect of the expiration of those restrictions is recognized in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired.

FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 further provides, in part:

Temporarily restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired.

In considering whether the purpose restriction on ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation is met, ABC Hospital should determine whether ABC Foundation has discretion in deciding whether an expenditure by ABC Hospital that is consistent with the purpose restriction satisfies that purpose restriction. For example, if the restricted net assets arose from a contribution that was restricted for "building projects of ABC Hospital," with no particular building project specified, purchasing and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing is consistent with the purpose restriction but may or may not meet it, because ABC Foundation has some discretion in deciding which building project releases the purpose restriction. In other words, ABC Foundation may, at its discretion, either release restricted net assets in support of building the New Modern Hospital Wing or not, because the purpose restriction imposed by the donor was broad enough to give ABC Foundation discretion in deciding which building projects meet the purpose restriction. If ABC Foundation has such discretion, a purpose restriction and an implied time restriction on ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation exist. Therefore, ABC Hospital should not reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing unless ABC Foundation distributes or obligates itself to distribute to ABC Hospital amounts

---

<sup>9</sup> The assumption that ABC Hospital has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE is intended to avoid establishing a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary. That issue is not addressed in this TPA.

attributable to net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE by ABC Hospital, or ABC Foundation otherwise indicates that it intends for those net assets to be used to support the building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing as an activity of the current period (assuming that ABC Hospital had no other net assets that were restricted for the purchase of PPE).<sup>10 11</sup>

In contrast to the example in the previous paragraph, if the restricted net assets arose from a contribution that was restricted for “building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing,” ABC Foundation has no discretion in deciding whether that purpose restriction is met by building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing. Therefore, if ABC Hospital builds and places into service the New Modern Hospital Wing, the purpose restriction is met (assuming that ABC Hospital had no other net assets that were restricted for building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing). In addition, the implied time restriction is met because ABC Foundation is required to distribute the funds to ABC Hospital in order to meet the donor’s stipulation. Therefore, ABC Hospital (and ABC Foundation) should reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing.

In summary, ABC Hospital should not reclassify \$3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing until both the

---

<sup>10</sup> In this fact pattern, the expenditure is made prior to meeting the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction that exists because ABC Hospital cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 provides that in circumstances in which both purpose and time restrictions exist, expenditures meeting the purpose restriction must be made simultaneous with or after the time restriction has expired in order to satisfy both the purpose and time restriction and result in a reclassification of net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted. In other words, time restrictions, if any, must be met before expenditures can result in purpose restrictions being met. In this fact pattern, however, the time restriction is an implied time restriction that exists because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, rather than an implied time restriction that exists because a promise to give is due in a future period or because of an explicit donor stipulation. Accordingly, in this fact pattern, temporarily restricted net assets with implied time restrictions are available to support expenditures made before the expiration of the time restrictions and the net assets should be reclassified from temporarily restricted to unrestricted in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired. In other words, in this fact pattern, if the expenditure that meets the purpose restriction is made before meeting the implied time restriction that exists because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, all the restrictions should be considered met once the implied time restriction is met.

<sup>11</sup> In this fact pattern, ABC Hospital’s interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation is subject to an implied time restriction that exists because ABC Hospital cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital and a purpose restriction. Because the net assets arose from cash contributions with no other donor-imposed time restrictions, no time restrictions other than those imposed by ABC Foundation exist. If instead the net assets arose from promises to give rather than from cash contributions, the net assets might be subject to donor-imposed time restrictions in addition to the time restriction imposed by ABC Foundation and the purpose restriction. In determining whether net assets that arose from promises to give are subject to donor-imposed time restrictions in addition to the time restrictions imposed by ABC Foundation, NPEs should consider the guidance in section 6140.04, *Lapsing of Restrictions on Receivables if Purpose Restrictions Pertaining to Long-Lived Assets are Met Before the Receivables are Due*, which discusses whether restrictions on net assets arising from promises to give that are restricted by donors for investments in long-lived assets are met when the assets are placed in service or when the receivables are due. In circumstances in which the net assets are subject to (a) donor-imposed time restrictions in addition to the (b) implied time restrictions that exist because ABC Hospital cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital and (c) purpose restrictions, the last remaining time restriction should be considered in applying the guidance in FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 that provides that temporarily restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired.

purpose restriction and the implied time restriction are met. If both the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction are met, ABC Hospital should decrease its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and increase cash (or a receivable, if the Foundation has merely obligated itself to make the distribution) by the amount of the distribution, and simultaneously reclassify the same amount from temporarily restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets. The reclassification should be reported separately from the performance indicator in the statement of operations in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, FASB ASC 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.42 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity)—Accounting for Unrealized Gains and Losses on Investments Held by the Foundation**

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 958 provides that if entities are financially interrelated, the balance sheet of the beneficiary entity should reflect that entity's beneficial interest in the net assets of the recipient entity, and that that interest should be adjusted periodically to reflect the changes in the net assets of the recipient entity. This accounting is similar to the equity method of accounting. FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205-45, FASB ASC 954-320-45, FASB ASC 954-320-55, and FASB ASC 954-605 provide guidance pertaining to the classification of investment returns in the financial statements of health care entities.

ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities. How should changes in ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation attributable to unrealized gains and losses on Foundation's investments be classified in ABC Hospital's financial statements?

*Reply*—In circumstances in which ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from Foundation to ABC Hospital, changes in ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments should be classified in the same manner that they would have been had ABC Hospital held the investments and had the transactions itself. In accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205-45, FASB ASC 954-320-45, FASB ASC 954-320-55, and FASB ASC 954-605, ABC Hospital should include in the performance indicator the portion of the change attributable to unrealized gains and losses on trading securities that are not restricted by donors or by law, and should exclude from the performance indicator the portion of the change attributable to all other unrealized gains and losses.

In circumstances in which ABC Hospital cannot influence the financial decisions of Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions ABC Hospital receives from Foundation, an implied time restriction exists on ABC Hospital's net assets attributable to its interest in the net assets of Foundation (in addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, ABC Hospital should classify all changes in that interest, including the portion of the change attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments, as changes in temporarily restricted net assets (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on investment gains and losses pertaining to their contributions) and therefore should exclude those changes from the performance indicator.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.43 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of Distributions From a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity) to a Health Care Beneficiary**

*Inquiry*—How should a fund-raising foundation (recipient), a not-for-profit entity subject to FASB ASC 958 report (in its separately issued financial statements) distributions to a financially interrelated beneficiary that is a health care entity? In other words, should such distributions be reported following (a) the guidance on reporting transfers among affiliated health care entities in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-605, and FASB ASC 954-810 or (b) the guidance in FASB ASC 958.

*Reply*—FASB ASC 958 applies to all not-for-profit entities, except those that are providers of health care services (FASB ASC 958-10-15-3). Therefore, the guidance in FASB ASC 954 generally does not apply to financial statements of recipient entities that are financially interrelated fund-raising foundations. The foundation should follow the accounting and reporting requirements of FASB ASC 958 rather than FASB ASC 954 in the foundation's separately issued financial statements. The foundation should report distributions to beneficiary entities as expenses or distributions to related entities. The guidance in the previous sentence applies regardless of whether the recipient entity and the beneficiary are under common control or whether one controls the other in a parent-subsidiary relationship.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.45 Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others**

*Inquiry*—In order to attract a physician into a community to meet community needs, a hospital may loan the physician an amount to be forgiven over a set period as long as the physician remains in practice in the community. The hospital (generally a not-for-profit) is precluded from requiring the physician to refer patients to or treat patients at that facility, although the hospital hopes to be the primary referral location. Is this arrangement subject to FASB ASC 460, *Guarantees*?

*Reply*—No. The contract does not constitute a guarantee contract under FASB ASC 460-10-15-4.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.46 Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Guarantor's Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others—Mortgage Guarantees**

*Inquiry*—In order to recruit a physician, a hospital may guarantee the physician's home mortgage. The physician may be recruited either as an employee of the hospital or as an independent contractor. Is this arrangement considered a guarantee under FASB ASC 460?

*Reply*—If the physician becomes an employee of the hospital, the arrangement is not covered by FASB ASC 460; see the discussion of "other employment-related costs" in FASB ASC 460-10-55-17. If the physician is not an employee, then the arrangement is considered a guarantee under FASB ASC 460. The contract requires the guarantor (hospital) to make a payment (in cash) to the

guaranteed party (mortgage lender) based on changes in an underlying (occurrence or nonoccurrence of a specified event such as a scheduled payment under mortgage contract not made by physician) that is related to an asset (mortgage loan) of the guaranteed party (mortgage lender).

As an example, a physician obtains a mortgage guarantee from a hospital. The presence of the hospital's guarantee, obtained through a local bank, reduces the interest rate on the physician's mortgage loan by one-half point. No loan default is expected to occur (and as a result, no cash is expected to be paid out). At inception, the hospital would record an obligation to stand ready to perform in an amount equal to the fair value of the guarantee. FASB ASC 460 does not prescribe where the offsetting debit should go (for example, expense, asset, or adjustment to a gain or loss on sale), instead stating that it depends on the circumstances in which the guarantee was issued (FASB ASC 460-10-55-23).

FASB ASC 460 does not describe in detail how the guarantor's liability for its obligations under the guarantee would be measured subsequent to initial recognition, but notes (paragraph 12) that the liability typically would be reduced by a credit to earnings as the guarantor is released from risk under the guarantee. In the situation described previously, the hospital would be released from risk as the physician's outstanding mortgage obligation is reduced.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 5841.]

## Section 6500

### *Extractive Industries*

#### **.03 Disclosure of Contingent Liability for Royalties**

*Inquiry*—A company is forming a new subsidiary company which is purchasing the assets of an existing coal mining partnership. The total consideration is \$2,000,000, which is to be paid in the following manner:

- (1) \$750,000 in cash at the time of closing, which is considered as payment for coal land owned in fee, mining equipment, supplies, and other real estate, all of which have a fair market value of at least \$750,000.
- (2) \$1,250,000 to be paid as an overriding royalty of 10 cents per ton for all coal mined by the purchaser on the properties both owned and leased, acquired from the sellers or on any subsequently acquired properties.

Should the \$1,250,000 be recorded as a liability on the statement of financial position? If the \$1,250,000 is recorded as a liability and reduced monthly at the time that the 10 cents per ton overriding royalty is paid, how should the asset account be amortized?

*Reply*—It would be improper to reflect the total amount of the stipulated overriding royalty as a liability in the financial statements with a correlative charge being made to an asset account. The only possible rationale for setting these amounts up immediately, is to base such treatment on the contentions that (a) from a going concern standpoint, it is likely the total amount in question will eventually be paid; and (b) the transaction is viewed as involving a *premium* or *purchase price* undertaken to be paid for the acquisition of a leasehold. This rationale is erroneous since no immediate payment for the leasehold rights is made.

The \$1,250,000 is a contingent liability—a commitment entirely conditioned on the actual mining of coal. Accordingly, royalties should be accrued as a liability only when, and to the extent that, tonnage (to which the royalty applies) is actually mined. In the purchase agreement, there is a liability on the overriding royalty if no coal is mined.

The rule of informative disclosure requires that the essential facts concerning the property acquisitions be indicated in a footnote to the statements, including an adequate explanation as to the nature and amount of the company's contingent liability.

Although there are instances where royalty payments are reflected as administrative or selling expense, in this case the royalties are paid for the right to mine the coal. The royalty cost may be viewed as a direct burden on production cost and should be accumulated as part of the cost of coal mined. The royalty cost then would be matched with revenues at the point of sale, as part of the cost of coal sold.

---

[The next page is 5941.]



## Section 6600

### Real Estate

#### .01 Method of Recognizing Revenue From Commissions by Real Estate Brokerage Firm

*Inquiry*—A client is a real estate broker and also manages real estate. The client is the exclusive broker for all its affiliates and acts as broker for outside parties as well. All of the affiliates invest in raw land for appreciation and occasionally improve and subdivide parcels. None of the properties are extensive enough to be considered “retail land sales companies.” Sales are probably half for second home sites and half for larger parcels bought for investment. Sales are usually for cash with an occasional mortgage taken by the seller. The client usually receives a gross brokerage commission of 10 percent to 15 percent, which is shared with its salesmen and cobrokers, retaining an average of 5 percent. Commissions are received at closing and cobrokers are paid shortly after the closing. Salesmen draw against firm purchase and sale agreements and are credited with the commission on closing. If a buyer fails to complete a purchase, his deposit is usually retained by the client in lieu of the brokerage commission, which legal counsel indicates is permitted under law.

The client records brokerage commission income when a firm purchase and sale agreement is accepted. This is an agreement which specifies price and all terms of sale, has no unusual or difficult conditions, and is secured by a deposit of 10 percent or more of the purchase price. This method was adopted by the client to more closely match revenues and expenses. Indirect selling expenses, including advertising, are treated as period costs. The costs of cobrokerage and salesmen’s commissions are also accrued at that time. The client’s contention is that the earnings process has been substantially completed, and the wait until closing (usually 30–90 days but occasionally longer) is a legal formality rather than an integral part of the broker’s work. Very few sales are not closed, and the price and terms of sale rarely change. From an audit point of view, many of the open sales at year-end have closed by completion of the audit field work. The client’s financial statements do disclose the method of accounting employed for brokerage commissions.

Is this present method of accounting for brokerage commissions considered acceptable?

*Reply*—Revenue recognition is discussed in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Concepts Statement No. 5, *Recognition and Measurement of Business Enterprises*, paragraphs 83–84. Paragraph 83 states in part:

“Revenues are not recognized until earned. An entity’s revenue-earning activities involve delivering or producing goods, rendering services, or other activities that constitute its ongoing major or central operations, and revenues are considered to have been earned when the entity has substantially accomplished what it must do to be entitled to the benefits represented by the revenues.”

Therefore, the client’s method of accounting for commission income at the time when a firm purchase and sale agreement is entered into would be acceptable. However, because of state laws governing real estate operations, recognition of commission income might have to be postponed, depending on the particular legal requirements of a given state, until such time as the broker is legally entitled to receive that commission.

**.03 Accounting for Sale of Property With Option to Repurchase**

*Inquiry*—A corporation sold a parcel of land to a bank. The corporation has an option to repurchase the land for a period of three years. The corporation received the full purchase price at the time of sale.

What is the proper accounting treatment for this transaction?

*Reply*—The conclusion in FASB *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 360-20-40-38 is that a transaction whereby a seller has an obligation or an option to repurchase the property must be accounted for as a financing, leasing, or profit sharing arrangement. A right of first refusal based on a bona fide offer by a third party is ordinarily not an obligation or an option to repurchase.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.04 Method of Recognizing Profit on Sale of Undeveloped Land With a Release Provision**

*Inquiry*—One hundred acres of undeveloped land was sold for \$10,000 per acre for a total consideration of \$1,000,000. The buyer made a cash down payment of \$250,000, and the balance of \$750,000 is payable in three annual installments of \$250,000. The agreement has a release provision that title to the acreage will be released to the buyer on a basis of 115 percent of the sales price. Therefore, of the \$250,000 down payment, \$217,000 would be applicable to the release of 21.7 acres, and the balance of \$33,000 would be applicable to the remaining acreage. At this point, there would be a balance due on the sales agreement of \$750,000 against which \$33,000 would apply. The buyer would have this privilege every year, and the only security would be the land underlying the agreement.

What is the proper accounting treatment?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 360-20-40-23 states the following:

If the amounts applied to unreleased portions do not meet the initial and-continuing-investment criteria as applied to the sales value of those unreleased portions, profit shall be recognized on each released portion when it meets the criteria in paragraph 360-20-40-5 as if each release were a separate sale.

FASB ASC 360-20-40-5 states, in part:

Profit on real estate sales transactions shall not be recognized by the full accrual method until all of the following criteria are met:

- a. A sale is consummated.
- b. The buyer's initial and continuing investments are adequate to demonstrate a commitment to pay for the property.
- c. The seller's receivable is not subject to future subordination.
- d. The seller has transferred to the buyer the usual risks and rewards of ownership in a transaction that is in substance a sale and does not have a substantial continuing involvement with the property.

Presumably, the tests referred to would have to be met continuously; that is, at the time of closing and at each release date.

The relationship of the \$33,000 to the \$750,000 is not sufficient "to constitute an adequate initial and continuing investment" related to the unreleased property. Therefore, "profit shall be recognized on each released

portion when it meets the criteria in paragraph 360-20-40-5 as if each release were a separate sale” as stated in FASB ASC 360-20-40-23.

[Amended; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 6151.]**



## Section 6700

### Construction Contractors

#### **.01 Distinction Between Long-Term and Short-Term Construction Contracts**

*Inquiry*—A construction company considers all contracts that are less than one year in duration as short-term contracts and accounts for them on a completed contract method. Long-term contracts are accounted for on the completed-contract method or the percentage of completion method depending on other factors.

Does the distinction made by the company conform with generally accepted accounting principles?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 605-35-25-92 states that the completed-contract method may be used as the basic accounting method only if the financial position and results of operations reported on that basis would not vary from those resulting from the use of the percentage-of-completion method, “for example, in circumstances in which an entity has primarily short-term contracts.” FASB ASC 605-35-25-95 also states that an entity using the completed-contract method as its basic accounting method should depart from that policy for a single contract or a group of contracts not having the features described in paragraphs 92–93 of FASB ASC 605-35-25. Thus, it appears that the distinction made by the company conforms to generally accepted accounting principles.

[Amended; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.10 Payments for Landfill Rights**

*Inquiry*—A construction contractor pays for rights allowing the contractor to extract a specified volume of landfill from a third party’s property for a period of three years. How should the payment for landfill rights be classified in the contractor’s balance sheet?

*Reply*—Until the landfill is extracted, the contractor should classify the payment for landfill rights as a deferred charge. The portion of the landfill payment related to the volume of landfill extracted should be reclassified as project costs. A deferred charge remaining at the termination of the agreement should be written off as an expense.

---

[The next page is 6351.]



## Section 6910

### *Investment Companies*

#### **.16 Presentation of Boxed Investment Positions in the Condensed Schedule of Investments of Nonregistered Investment Partnerships**

*Inquiry*—Should long and short positions in the same security (*boxed positions*) be disclosed on a gross or net basis in the schedule of investments?

*Reply*—Although there may be a perfect economic hedge in boxed positions, the determination of which components of the boxed position would be required to be presented in the schedule of investments should be evaluated on a gross basis for the purposes of the 5 percent of net assets test as described in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 946-210-50-6. To the extent that one (or both) of the components is (are) required to be disclosed, such component(s) should be disclosed on the schedule of investments because there may be market risk if one position is removed before the other or experiences settlement costs or losses upon disposition. In the event that only one of the positions is required to be disclosed, a nonregistered investment partnership is not precluded from disclosing both positions.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.17 Disclosure of Long and Short Positions**

*Inquiry*—If a nonregistered investment partnership has a long position that exceeds 5 percent of net assets and a short position in the same issuer that is less than 5 percent of net assets, is the investment partnership required to disclose both the long and short position in the condensed schedule of investments?

*Reply*—No. The guidance in FASB ASC 946-210-50-6 indicates that, in applying the 5 percent test to determine the investments to be disclosed in the condensed schedule of investments, total long and total short positions in any one issuer should be considered separately. Because the value of the long position exceeds 5 percent of net assets, disclosure of the long position is required; however, disclosure of the short position is not required because the short position does not exceed 5 percent of net assets. Although not required, a nonregistered investment partnership is not precluded from disclosing both positions

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.18 Disclosure of an Investment in an Issuer When One or More Securities and/or One or More Derivative Contracts Are Held**

*Inquiry*—A nonregistered investment partnership may hold one or more securities of the same issuer and one or more derivative contracts for which the underlying is a security of the same issuer. How should such securities and derivative contracts be presented in the condensed schedule of investments when applying FASB ASC 946-210-50-6?

*Reply*—When applying the guidance in FASB ASC 946-210-50-6, the disclosure on the condensed schedule of investments should be consistent with the classification of the securities or contracts on the statement of assets and

liabilities. Those securities (market value) and derivative contracts (appreciation or fair value) that are classified as assets should be aggregated. To the extent that the sum constitutes more than 5 percent of net assets, each position must be presented separately in the condensed schedule of investments. The investment company should similarly sum all of the positions classified as liabilities and determine whether or not they exceed 5 percent. The netting concepts allowed by FASB ASC 210-20 and FASB ASC 815-10 are not considered when determining disclosures in the condensed schedule of investments.

The following are illustrative examples of how to apply the disclosure guidelines.

U.S. Treasury Bond (Long)—4 percent of net assets

U.S. Treasury Bond (Short)—1 percent of net assets

U.S. Treasury Bond Futures Contract—appreciation equals 2 percent of net assets

In the previous example, the investment company should present separately the long bond and the futures contract in the condensed schedule of investments, because in aggregate they exceed 5 percent of net assets. The short bond position, which represents the only liability position associated with the issuer, is not required to be disclosed separately because the position is less than 5 percent of net assets. This assessment for derivatives is made regardless of whether the exposure to the underlying is long or short. Assessments are based solely on the value of the derivative contract (that is, either a long or short position with depreciation or a negative fair value would be considered a liability and aggregated with other liabilities for the purpose of this test). The preparer may consider whether disclosure of all positions, including those under 5 percent, would be appropriate in the circumstances.

Example 2:

Bond of X Company (Long)—3 percent of net assets

Stock of X Company (Short)—1 percent of net assets

Swap (X Company is the underlying)—fair value equals 2 percent of net assets

In the previous example, the investment company would not be required to present any of the positions in the condensed schedule of investments because the total asset position of the issuer (represented by the bond) is less than 5 percent of net assets and the total liability position (represented by the combined total of values of the short stock position and the swap) is also less than 5 percent of net assets.

Example 3:

Bond of X Company (Long)—4 percent of net assets

Stock of X Company (Short)—2 percent of net assets

Swap (X Company is the underlying)—fair value equals 2 percent of net assets

Swap (X Company is the underlying)—fair value equals 4 percent of net assets

In the previous example, the investment company should present each of the positions in the condensed schedule of investments because the total asset position of the issuer (represented by the combined total of values of the bond and the appreciated swap) and the total liability position of the

issuer (represented by the combined total of values of the short stock position and the depreciated swap) are both greater than 5 percent of net assets.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.19 Information Required to Be Disclosed in Financial Statements When Comparative Financial Statements of Nonregistered Investment Partnerships Are Presented**

*Inquiry*—When comparative financial statements of a nonregistered investment partnership are presented, should the schedule of investment be presented as of the end of each period presented, or only as of the most recent date of the statement of assets and liabilities? Additionally, when comparative financial statements of a nonregistered investment partnership are provided, should the financial highlights be presented for each period provided, or only for the most recent period?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 946 does not require comparative financial statements for nonregistered investment partnerships. However, if an entity elects to prepare comparative financial statements, the general guidance for the presentation of comparative financial statements as found in paragraphs 2 and 4 of FASB ASC 205-10-45 indicate the following:

In any one year it is ordinarily desirable that the statement of financial position, the income statement, and the statement of changes in equity be presented for one or more preceding years, as well as for the current year.

Notes to financial statements, explanations, and accountants' reports containing qualifications that appeared on the statements for the preceding years shall be repeated, or at least referred to, in the comparative statements to the extent that they continue to be of significance.

Because the schedule of investments would continue to be considered of significance relative to the statement of assets and liabilities for the prior year, the schedule of investments for the prior year should be included as a part of the comparative statements. Additionally, FASB ASC 946-205-45-1 states that "at a minimum, a condensed schedule of investments (as discussed in paragraphs 946-210-50-4 through 50-10) should be provided for each statement of assets and liabilities." Therefore, comparative schedules of investments are required to be presented when comparative statements of assets and liabilities are reported.

Consistent with the requirements of FASB ASC 205-10-45, comparative financial highlights should be presented when comparative statements of operations are provided because they would also be considered a significant disclosure for the prior periods of operation included in the financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.20 Presentation of Purchases and Sales/Maturities of Investments in the Statement of Cash Flows**

*Inquiry*—Should the value of securities purchased by a nonregistered investment partnership during the period presented be reported in the statement of cash flows separately from the proceeds received on the sale/maturity of securities by the nonregistered investment partnership or may the nonregistered investment partnership report only the net difference?

*Reply*—In general, a nonregistered investment partnership should present purchases and sales/maturities of long-term investments (securities purchased with no stated maturity or with a stated maturity of greater than one year at the date of acquisition) on a gross basis in the statement of cash flows pursuant to FASB ASC 230, *Statement of Cash Flows*, although the nonregistered investment partnership may consider the provisions in FASB ASC 230-10-45-9 in determining whether or not certain purchases and sales/maturities qualify for net reporting. Purchases and sales/maturities of short-term investments (securities purchased with a stated remaining maturity of one year or less at the date of acquisition), however, may be presented on a net basis, as described in FASB ASC 230-10-45-18. Additionally, proceeds and costs reported for transactions in short positions are reflected separately from proceeds and costs associated with long positions.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.21 Recognition of Premium/Discount on Short Positions in Fixed-Income Securities**

*Inquiry*—An investment company enters into short positions on various fixed-income securities, where the short sale price is at a premium or discount to the par value of the bond. The Audit and Accounting Guide *Investment Companies* discusses, in chapter 2, the requirement that an investment company amortize premiums/discounts on its investments, referring to long positions, but is silent as to whether similar accounting is required for short positions. The investment company currently recognizes all payments of coupon interest as interest expense on its short positions. Is the investment company also required under generally accepted accounting principles to amortize the premium and discount on the short position?

*Reply*—Yes. As when recognizing interest income on long positions, when recognizing interest expense on short positions, the investment company should recognize all economic elements of interest, including premium and discount.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.22 Presentation of Reverse Repurchase Agreements**

*Inquiry*—An investment company enters into a *reverse repurchase agreement*, which is defined in chapter 3 of the Audit and Accounting Guide *Investment Companies* as “the sale of a security at a specified price with an agreement to purchase the same or substantially the same security from the same counterparty at a fixed or determinable price at a future date.” The investment company receives cash and initially records the amount payable as a liability. Should reverse repurchase agreements be presented in the financial statements of investment companies at the amount payable or at fair value?

*Reply*—Investment companies present their debt obligations at amounts payable. Because reverse repurchase agreements represent a fixed, determinable obligation of the investment company, such agreements should also be presented at amounts payable. A reverse repurchase agreement denominated in a currency that differs from the reporting currency should be translated at the current exchange rate.

## **.23 Accounting Treatment of Offering Costs Incurred by Investment Partnerships**

*Inquiry*—According to FASB ASC 946-20-25-6 and FASB ASC 946-20-35-5, all open-end registered investment companies and those closed-end registered

investment companies with a continuous offering period should defer offering costs and amortize them to expense over 12 months on a straight-line basis. However, FASB ASC 946-20-25 does not indicate whether an investment partnership should apply the same treatment. Should an investment partnership that continually offers its interests also defer and amortize such costs over 12 months?

*Reply*—Yes, an investment partnership that continually offers its interests should defer offering costs incurred prior to the commencement of operations and then amortize them to expense over the period that it continually offers its interests, up to a maximum of 12 months. The straight-line method of amortization should generally be used. If the offering period terminates earlier than expected, the remaining deferred balance should be charged to expense.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.24 Meaning of “Continually Offer Interests”**

*Inquiry*—How should an investment partnership determine if it continually offers its interests?

*Reply*—An investment partnership is deemed to continually offer its interests if an eligible, new investor may enter into an agreement to purchase an interest in the partnership on any business day or on a series of specified business days over a continuous period of time. A new investor is one that does not already own any interest in the investment partnership at the time of purchase.

Some investment partnerships may offer their interests at a single point in time and require new investors to commit to providing capital contributions over a period of time. As interests are not available for purchase over a continuous period, such investment partnerships would not be deemed to have a continuous offering period.

#### **.25 Considerations in Evaluating Whether Certain Liabilities Constitute “Debt” for Purposes of Assessing Whether an Investment Company Must Present a Statement of Cash Flows**

*Inquiry*—FASB ASC 230-10-15-4 exempts investment companies (both registered and unregistered) from the requirement to provide a statement of cash flows, if all of the following conditions are met:

- a. During the period, substantially all of the enterprise’s investments were highly liquid (for example, marketable securities and other assets for which a market is readily available).
- b. Substantially all of the enterprise’s investments are carried at market value.<sup>1</sup>
- c. *The enterprise had little or no debt, based on the average debt outstanding<sup>2</sup> during the period, in relation to average total assets. (emphasis added)*

---

<sup>1</sup> Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 230-10-15-4(c)(2) states, in part, “Securities for which market value is determined using matrix pricing techniques would meet this condition. Other securities for which market value is not readily determinable and for which fair value must be determined in good faith by the board of directors would not.” Matrix pricing techniques are described in FASB ASC 820-10-35-31.

<sup>2</sup> FASB ASC 230-10-15-4(c)(3) states, “For the purpose of determining average debt outstanding, obligations resulting from redemptions of shares by the entity from unsettled purchases of securities or similar assets, or from covered options written generally may be excluded.

- d. The enterprise provides a statement of changes in net assets.<sup>3</sup>

Because FASB ASC 230-10-15-4(c)(3) specifically states that covered options written would generally not be considered debt for purposes of determining whether an investment company meets these conditions, does that imply that *uncovered options* and *short sales of securities and reverse repos* must, by inference, be treated as debt? If not, under what circumstances may they be excluded from *debt* in determining whether the investment company must present a statement of cash flows?

*Reply*—Although presented in the liabilities section of the statement of assets and liabilities, options sold/written (whether covered or uncovered), short sales of securities, and other liabilities recorded as a result of investment practices are not necessarily debt; rather, their classification depends on the nature of the activity. Certain transactions (for example, securities lending, mortgage dollar rolls, or short sale transactions) may have a practice of being entered into solely for operating purposes (similarly to unsettled purchases of securities) or as an investing strategy (similarly to covered options written), and the investment company either retains the proceeds in cash accounts or uses them to invest in securities that are cash equivalents under FASB ASC 230. In such cases, the proceeds from the transaction would not be considered debt for purposes of assessing whether the conditions in FASB ASC 230 are met.

[Issue Date: May 2008; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.26 Additional Guidance on Determinants of Net Versus Gross Presentation of Security Purchases and Sales/Maturities in the Statement of Cash Flows of a Nonregistered Investment Company**

*Inquiry*—Under what circumstances, if any, may purchases and sales/maturities of securities presented in the operating section of the statement of cash flows of a nonregistered investment company be shown on a *net*, rather than a *gross*, basis?

*Reply*—Chapter 7 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Investment Companies* states:

Cash flows from operating activities should include the fund's investing activities. Cash flows from operating activities include (***bold ital*** added for emphasis)—

- a. Interest and dividends received.
- b. Operating expenses paid.
- c. ***Purchases of long-term investments*** (at cost).
- d. ***Sales of long-term investments*** (proceeds).
- e. ***Net sales or purchases of short-term investments***.
- f. Cash flows for other types of investing activities related to changes in margin accounts and collateral status, such as written options, financial futures contracts, securities lending, and so forth.

Section 6910.20 provides the following guidance:

---

*However, any extension of credit by the seller that is not in accordance with standard industry practices for redeeming shares or for settling purchases of investments shall be included in average debt outstanding."*

<sup>3</sup> FASB ASC 946-205-45-5 states, "For investment partnerships, the statement of changes in net assets may be combined with the statement of changes in partners' capital if the information in paragraph 946-205-45-3 is presented."

In general, a nonregistered investment partnership should present purchases and sales/maturities of long-term investments (securities purchased with no stated maturity or with a stated maturity of greater than one year at the date of acquisition) on a gross basis in the statement of cash flows pursuant to FASB ASC 230, *Statement of Cash Flows*, although the nonregistered investment partnership may consider the provisions in FASB ASC 230-10-45-9 in determining whether or not certain purchases and sales/maturities qualify for net reporting. Purchases and sales/maturities of short-term investments (securities purchased with a stated remaining maturity of one year or less at the date of acquisition), however, may be presented on a net basis, as described in FASB ASC 230-10-45-18. Additionally, proceeds and costs reported for transactions in short positions are reflected separately from proceeds and costs associated with long positions.

One of the requirements of FASB ASC 230-10-45-9 is that the original maturity of assets and liabilities qualifying for net reporting is 3 months or less. However, FASB ASC 230-10-45-18 permits “banks, brokers and dealers in securities, and other entities [that] carry securities and other assets in a trading account” to classify cash receipts and cash payments from such activities as operating cash flows, while cash flows from transactions in “available for sale” securities are reported gross as investing activities.<sup>4</sup> In other industries, operating cash flows relating to trading account securities typically are reported on a net basis.

If a nonregistered investment company presents a statement of cash flows, the investment company’s trading style, investment objectives stated in its offering memorandum, and portfolio turnover should be the primary determinants of net versus gross reporting. Where the investment company’s overall activities comport with *trading*, as discussed in FASB ASC 230 and FASB ASC 320, *Investments—Debt and Equity Securities*,<sup>5</sup> netting is permissible; otherwise, gross reporting of purchases and sales/maturities is required.

Regardless of whether net or gross reporting is appropriate based on the stated criteria, an entity should separately report its activity related to long positions from activity related to short positions; that is, changes/activity in account balances reported as assets should not be netted against changes/activity in account balances reported as liabilities.

[Issue Date: May 2008; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.27 Treatment of Deferred Fees**

*Inquiry*—The governing documents of an offshore fund provide that the investment adviser may elect to defer payment of its management fee, incentive fee, or both. Based on the documents, the deferred fees that are payable to the

<sup>4</sup> Refer to paragraphs 11 and 18–20 of FASB ASC 230-10-45 and FASB ASC 310-10-45-11 for additional guidance.

<sup>5</sup> FASB ASC glossary defines *trading securities* as follows:

Securities that are bought and held principally for the purpose of selling them in the near term and therefore held for only a short period of time. Trading generally reflects active and frequent buying and selling, and trading securities are generally used with the objective of generating profits on short-term differences in price.

Although investment companies do not apply FASB ASC 320 and, therefore, do not normally categorize securities as trading, available for sale, or held to maturity, the concepts of whether the securities are held for trading purposes and whether the related cash flows would be classified as operating cash flows under paragraphs 11 and 18–20 of FASB ASC 230-10-45 and FASB ASC 310-10-45-11 are relevant in determining whether cash flows from purchases and sales of securities should be presented gross or net by investment companies.

investment adviser do not take the form of a legal capital account and are settled exclusively in cash. Under this arrangement, the fund retains the fee amount and is obligated to pay the investment adviser the deferred fees at a later date adjusted for the fund's rate of return (whether positive or negative). How should the deferred fees and the appreciation or depreciation on the deferred fees be presented on the statement of assets and liabilities, on the statement of operations, and on the financial highlights? What additional disclosures, if any, should be included in the financial statements or the notes to the financial statements?

*Reply*—In accordance with guidance from paragraph 35 of FASB Statement of Financial Accounting Concepts No. 6, *Elements of Financial Statements*, the fund should record the cumulative deferred fees as a liability. The indexing of this liability to the fund's rate of return represents a hybrid instrument that has a host debt instrument with an embedded derivative, which has attributes of a total return contract. Although FASB ASC 815-15-25-1 and FASB ASC 815-15-55-190 require the embedded total return contract to be bifurcated from the host debt instrument, the Securities and Exchange Commission staff has previously indicated<sup>6</sup> that the bifurcation requirements of FASB ASC 815 do not extend beyond measurement to financial statement presentation, if the embedded derivative and host debt instrument, together, represent the principal and interest obligations of a debt instrument. While the fund should fair value the embedded return component of the deferral arrangement according to the guidance from FASB ASC 815-10-25-1, FASB ASC 815-10-30-1, and FASB ASC 815-10-35-1, generally, the fair value of such return component would be the same as the appreciated or depreciated return of the fund because (1) the fund fair values all of its investments, whether assets or liabilities, which generally represent substantially all of its net assets, and (2) if the deferred fee liability was transferred, the transfer would likely be transacted at the current net asset value.<sup>7</sup> The deferred fees and the embedded total return contracts associated with deferred fees that are at an appreciated or depreciated position as of the reporting date may be presented as one amount titled "Deferred incentive fees payable" on the statement of assets and liabilities.

FASB ASC 946-225-45-1 states, in part, "The objective of the statement of operations is to present the increase or decrease in net assets resulting from all of the company's investment activities, by reporting investment income from dividends, interest, and other income less expenses, the amounts of realized gains or losses from investment and foreign currency transactions, and changes in unrealized appreciation or depreciation of investments and foreign-currency-denominated assets and liabilities for the period." Because the fund directly earns or incurs the income, expenses, net realized gains or losses, and unrealized appreciation or depreciation on the deferred fee retained in the fund, such amounts should be presented within their respective line items in the investment company's statement of operations. The net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation on the total return contracts associated with the deferred fees should be reported in earnings; that is, reflected as an expense (appreciation of deferred fees) or negative expense (depreciation of deferred fees) of the fund rather than as an allocation of earnings or losses and, following the guidance from FASB ASC 850, *Related Party Disclosures*, should be presented separately from the current period management or incentive fee.

<sup>6</sup> Twenty-Eighth Annual National Conference on Current SEC Developments December 4–6, 2000. Remarks by E. Michael Pierce.

<sup>7</sup> All concepts of FASB ASC 820, *Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*, should be considered.

FASB ASC 946-205-50-7 states, in part, “the caption descriptions in the per-share data shall be the same captions used in the statement of operations . . . to allow the reader to determine which components of operations are included in or excluded from various per-share data.” FASB ASC 946-205-50-14 adds “generally, the determination of expenses for computing those ratios shall follow the presentation of expenses in the fund’s statement of operations.” The per share information, net investment income ratio, and net expense ratio included in the financial highlights should reflect the amounts presented on the statement of operations including the adjustment associated with the deferred fee amount. In order to reflect the effect of the adjustment on the fund’s expense ratio, the fund may also present an expense ratio that excludes the amount of deferred fee expense or negative expense reported in the statement of operations. Consistent with guidance from FASB ASC 946, Financial Services—Investment Companies, the fund should disclose the nature of the deferred fee arrangement, including the priority of claim in the event of liquidation, the current period and cumulative amounts deferred, the cumulative earnings or losses on the deferral, the terms of payment, the date that the deferral payments commence (or the next payment date), and the manner in which the deferral will be invested.

The following is an illustration of a deferred incentive fee presentation in the financial statements and the related disclosures:

### ***Statement of Assets and Liabilities***

#### **Assets**

Cash and cash equivalents	\$206,000
Investments, at fair value	166,585,000
Total assets	<u>\$166,791,000</u>

#### **Liabilities**

Management fee payable	\$400,000
Redemptions payable	1,000,000
Accrued expenses	100,000
Deferred incentive fees payable	4,800,000
Total liabilities	<u>6,300,000</u>
Net assets	<u>\$160,491,000</u>

### ***Statement of Operations***

#### **Investment income**

Interest income	\$5,576,000
Dividend income	1,766,000
Total investment income	<u>\$7,342,000</u>

#### **Expenses**

Incentive fee	\$2,680,000
Management fee	1,831,000
Change in net appreciation on deferred incentive fees	650,000
Administration fee	60,000
Professional fees and other	75,000
Total expenses	<u>5,296,000</u>
Net investment income	<u>\$2,046,000</u>

(continued)

**Realized and unrealized gains (losses) from investment activities**

Net realized gain on securities	\$2,773,000
Net realized gain on swap and forward contracts	509,000
Net change in unrealized appreciation on securities	1,515,000
Net change in unrealized appreciation on swap and forward contracts	852,000
Net realized and unrealized gain from investment activities	<u>\$5,649,000</u>

**Net increase in net assets resulting from operations** \$7,695,000

*Notes to Financial Statements*

*Note X – Investment Management and Incentive Fees*

Pursuant to an investment advisory agreement, the Fund pays to the Adviser a quarterly management fee of  $\frac{1}{4}$  of 1 percent (1 percent per annum) of the net assets of the Fund on the last day of each quarter. The Adviser also is entitled to an annual incentive fee equal to 20 percent of the net profits attributable to each series of common shares, subject to a loss carry forward. If there is a net loss for the year, the incentive fee will not apply to future years until such net loss has been recovered, adjusted for redemptions.

The Adviser may elect to defer receipt of all or a portion of the management or incentive fees earned for a particular fiscal year, and such amounts will be indexed to the Fund's return. In the event of liquidation of the Fund, any deferred amount, as adjusted for the appreciation or depreciation resulting from indexing, the deferred fee to the Fund's return has a priority claim over the interests of the equity holders of the Fund.

For the [year/period] ended December 31, 20XX, payment of 50 percent of the incentive fee incurred by the Fund was deferred for X years. Cumulative deferred incentive fees as of December 31, 20XX totaled \$3,850,000, and cumulative net appreciation on such amounts totaled \$950,000. The net change in appreciation or depreciation of deferred incentive fees is recorded on a separate line item under "Expenses" within the statement of operations. Distributions of 20XX and prior year deferred incentive fees are scheduled for the period from [DATE RANGE]. During the year ended December 31, 20XX, the distribution of previously deferred incentive fees amounted to \$500,000.

*The following is an example disclosure of a roll forward of deferred incentive fees payable, which is a best practice disclosure.*

The deferred incentive fees payable balance as of December 31, 20XX is comprised of the following:

Deferred incentive fees payable at January 1, 20XX	\$3,310,000
Appreciation on deferred incentive fees for the year ended December 31, 20XX	650,000
Incentive fees deferred for the year ended December 31, 20XX	1,340,000
Deferred incentive fees paid for the year ended December 31, 20XX	(500,000)
Deferred incentive fees payable at December 31, 20XX	<u><u>\$4,800,000</u></u>

*Note X – Financial Highlights*

The following represents the per share information, ratios to average net assets, and other supplemental information for the year ended December 31, 20XX:

	Class A Initial series	Class B Initial series
Per share operating performance:		
Beginning net asset value	\$1,130.35	\$1,123.80
Income from investment operations:		
Net investment income	11.01	6.76
Net realized and unrealized gain from investment activities	141.50	145.64
Total income from operations	152.51	152.40
Ending net asset value	<u>\$1,282.86</u>	<u>\$1,276.20</u>
Ratios to average net assets:		
Expenses other than incentive fee	1.43%	1.46%
Incentive fee	1.46	1.49
Total expenses	2.89	2.95
Change in net appreciation on deferred incentive fees	(0.40)	(0.43)
Total expense excluding change in net appreciation on deferred incentive fees	<u>2.49%</u>	<u>2.52%</u>
Net investment income	<u>1.12%</u>	<u>1.09%</u>
Total return prior to incentive fee	17.07%	16.93%
Incentive fee	(3.58)	(3.37)
Total return after incentive fee	<u>13.49%</u>	<u>13.56%</u>

The per share operating performance and total return are calculated for the initial series of each share class. The ratios to average net assets are calculated for each class taken as a whole. An individual investor's per share operating performance, total return, and ratios to average net assets may vary from these per share amounts and ratios based on participation in new issues and different management fee and incentive fee arrangements and the timing and amount of capital transactions.

[Issue Date: May 2008; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.28 Reporting Financial Highlights, Net Asset Value (NAV) Per Share, Shares Outstanding, and Share Transactions When Investors in Unitized Nonregistered Funds Are Issued Individual Classes or Series of Shares**

*Inquiry*—Some unitized nonregistered funds issue a separate series of shares to each individual investor in the fund, which remains outstanding so long as the investor maintains its investment in the fund and is not closed until the investor fully redeems. These series may be issued within multiple classes of shares with each series within a class bearing the same economic characteristics. The shares are legally issued and outstanding until redemption (that is, they are not notional interests), but will not be converted or otherwise consolidated into an identifiable “permanent” series of shares in a “series roll-up.”<sup>8</sup> Essentially, these unitized funds apply partnership accounting.

---

<sup>8</sup> A series roll up typically occurs at the end of the year when a temporary series of shares has increased above its high watermark (for example, the highest level in value a series has achieved, adjusted for subscriptions and redemptions) at which time the outstanding shares of a temporary series of shares are converted (or rolled up) into the permanent series of shares.

How should financial highlights (per share data, ratios, and total return) be presented in this situation, and how should each series of shares outstanding at period-end and share transactions during the period be disclosed in the financial statements?

*Reply—*

Presentation of Financial Highlights

The issuance of a separate series of shares to each individual investor is done for operational purposes because this enables a fund to allocate profit and loss to each investor in the same manner as a limited partnership allocates profit and loss to an individual partner's capital account. The definition of *nonregistered investment partnership—financial highlights* in the FASB ASC glossary—states, in part, that for unitized funds, “permanent series of a class of share shall be the basis for which that share’s financial highlights are determined and presented.” When a separate series of shares is issued to each individual investor and remains outstanding until the investor fully redeems, reporting the financial highlights for each outstanding series of shares could result in financial highlights presented for up to 500 investors and would be the substantive equivalent of presenting the financial highlights in a limited partnership for each limited partner.

The financial highlights should be presented at the aggregate level for the entire permanent series of shares from which the individual series of shares has been issued. Because the fund operates like a partnership, the financial highlights should include only those financial highlights applicable to a partnership, which are the ratios to average net assets and total return, but not per share data.

When a separate series of shares is issued to each individual investor and remains outstanding until the investor fully redeems, the permanent series of shares will be the fund as a whole, excluding managing investor interests, if the shares otherwise have substantially similar terms. There are situations when a fund will issue multiple classes of shares, which contain multiple series of shares, due to differing fee arrangements or restrictions affecting an investor's ability to participate in the profits and losses generated by “new issue” securities. When a fund issues multiple classes of shares, and in each class of shares, a series of shares is issued to each individual investor and remains outstanding until the investor fully redeems, financial highlights should be presented at the aggregate level for each permanent class of shares from which the individual series of shares have been issued. For example, if a fund has outstanding, at year-end, Class A shares, Series 1–40, which have a 1 percent management fee; Class B shares Series 1–300, which have a 2 percent management fee; and Class C shares, which are only held by the managing investor, the fund would present financial highlights information for Class A, taken as a whole and Class B, taken as a whole. There is no requirement to present financial highlights for Class C because FASB ASC 946-205-50-4 requires financial highlights to be presented only for nonmanaging investors.

It would be acceptable for a fund to present supplemental financial highlights data for a single series of shares, which the fund determines to be “representative.” Such financial highlights may be labeled as representing supplemental information and may only be presented in addition to those financial highlights that are required. Factors to consider when determining the representative series of shares include the following:

1. The series of shares was outstanding for the entire fiscal period (or, if all units of a series of shares outstanding at the beginning of the fiscal

period were redeemed during the period, the series of shares at period-end outstanding for the longest period of time).

2. The fees and other offering terms of the series of shares most closely conform to those which may be described in the fund's offering documents.
3. The series of shares represent the largest ownership interest in the fund.

The basis of presentation of the financial highlights and the criteria used to determine the most representative series of shares should be disclosed in a note to those highlights and should be consistently applied.

If appropriate, a fund may present other supplemental information if determined to be informative and not misleading.

#### Presentation of Shares Outstanding and Share Transactions

FASB ASC 946-210-45-4 indicates that net asset value per share and shares outstanding should be reported for each class. Because a fund which issues a separate series of shares to each investor operates like a partnership, presenting the net asset value per share and the shares outstanding for each series of shares would be the substantive equivalent of presenting each partner's capital balance in the financial statements of a partnership, which is not required by FASB ASC 946 for nonunitized partnership interests. Chapter 7 of the guide discusses the requirement for the unitized funds to disclose units of capital, including the title and par value of each class of shares, and the number of shares authorized, outstanding, and dollar amount of such shares. FASB ASC 946-505-50-2 requires disclosure of the number and value of shares sold, the number and value of shares issued in reinvestment of distributions, the number and cost of shares reacquired, and the net change in shares. For funds which issue a separate series of shares to each investor, such funds should satisfy the disclosure requirements in FASB ASC 946-210-45-4 and 946-505-50-2 by presenting such disclosures on an aggregate share basis. For funds which issue multiple classes of shares which contain multiple series of shares, such disclosure requirements should be presented at the aggregate level for each permanent class of shares from which the individual series of shares have been issued.

#### EXAMPLE

A fund issues Class A and Class B nonvoting shares to investors and, within each class, a separate series of shares is issued to each individual investor. Class A shares have a 1 percent management fee and a 20 percent incentive fee, while Class B shares are issued to related party investors and, therefore, are not charged a management fee or an incentive fee. Class C voting shares are management shares and do not participate in the profits or losses of the fund. As of December 31, 20X7, there are 15,100 total shares outstanding totaling \$1,517,600. The following shows such amounts outstanding as of December 31, 20X7 by class and series:

Class A Series 1—5,000 shares outstanding, NAV \$500,000

Class A Series 2—7,500 shares outstanding, NAV \$765,000

Class B Series 1—2,500 shares outstanding, NAV \$252,500

Class C—100 shares outstanding, NAV \$100

In the prior year, as of December 31, 20X6, there were 10,100 total shares outstanding totaling \$970,100. The following shows such amounts outstanding as of December 31, 20X6 by class and series:

Class A Series 1–6,000 shares outstanding, NAV \$588,000

Class B Series 1–3,000 shares outstanding, NAV \$288,000

Class B Series 2–1,000 shares outstanding, NAV \$94,000

Class C–100 shares outstanding, NAV \$100

### Example Statement of Assets and Liabilities

#### *Statement of Assets and Liabilities*

*December 31, 20X7*

#### **Assets**

Cash and cash equivalents	\$100,100
Investments, at fair value	<u>1,550,000</u>
Total assets	<u>\$1,650,100</u>

#### **Liabilities**

Redemptions payable	94,000
Management fees payable	4,000
Incentive fee payable	3,000
Accrued expenses	31,500
Total liabilities	<u>132,500</u>
Net assets (based on 12,500 Class A shares, 2,500 Class B shares, and 100 Class C shares outstanding)	<u>\$1,517,600</u>

### Example Footnote Disclosures

#### Capital Share Transactions

As of December 31, 20X7, 5,000,000 shares of capital stock were authorized. Class A and Class B shares have \$0.01 par value, and Class C shares have \$1.00 par value. Transactions in capital stock were as follows:

<u>Class A</u>	<u>Shares</u>		<u>Amount</u>	
	<u>20X7</u>	<u>20X6</u>	<u>20X7</u>	<u>20X6</u>
Shares sold	7,500	6,000	\$750,000	\$600,000
Shares redeemed	<u>(1,000)</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>\$(99,500)</u>	<u>—</u>
Net increase	<u>6,500</u>	<u>6,000</u>	<u>\$650,500</u>	<u>\$600,000</u>

<u>Class B</u>	<u>Shares</u>		<u>Amount</u>	
	<u>20X7</u>	<u>20X6</u>	<u>20X7</u>	<u>20X6</u>
Shares sold	—	4,000	—	\$400,000
Shares redeemed	<u>(1,500)</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>\$(148,750)</u>	<u>—</u>
Net increase	<u>(1,500)</u>	<u>4,000</u>	<u>\$(148,750)</u>	<u>\$400,000</u>

<u>Class C</u>	<u>Shares</u>		<u>Amount</u>	
	<u>20X7</u>	<u>20X6</u>	<u>20X7</u>	<u>20X6</u>
Shares sold	—	100	—	\$100
Shares redeemed	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>
Net increase	<u>—</u>	<u>100</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>\$100</u>

### **Financial Highlights**

The ratios to average net assets and total return are presented below for each class taken as a whole, excluding managing shareholder interests, for the year ended December 31, 20X7. The ratios and total return are not annualized. The computation of similar financial information for other participating shareholders may vary based on the timing of their respective capital transactions.

Annual ratios to average net assets and total return for the year ended December 31, 20X7 are as follows:

	<b><u>Class A</u></b>	<b><u>Class B</u></b>
Ratios to average net assets:		
Expenses other than incentive fee	2.26%	1.26%
Incentive fee	<u>0.31%</u>	<u>0.00%</u>
Total expenses	<u>2.57%</u>	<u>1.26%</u>
Net investment income	<u>0.93%</u>	<u>1.93%</u>
Total return prior to incentive fee	3.48%	5.02 %
Incentive fee	<u>(0.40)%</u>	<u>(0.00)%</u>
Total return after incentive fee	<u>3.08%</u>	<u>5.02%</u>

[Issue Date: May 2008; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.29 Allocation of Unrealized Gain (Loss), Recognition of Carried Interest, and Clawback Obligations**

*Inquiry*—The governing documents of some nonregistered investment partnerships (as defined in chapter 7 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Investment Companies*), may contain provisions which do not allow allocations of unrealized gains or losses, or do not require the recognition of carried interest (also referred to as *carry*, *incentive*, or *performance fees and allocations*), and clawback obligations (also referred to as *lookback*, *negative carried interest*, or *general partner*<sup>9</sup> *giveback*) until a specified date or time (for example, at the time of the partnership's liquidation or termination), or until the occurrence of a specific event (such as the actual disposition of an investment). Often, in these cases, the partnership's investments are either not marketable or are of such limited liquidity that interim valuations are highly subjective, and the intent of the provision is to delay the general partner's receipt of incentive allocations in cash until the gains can be measured objectively. In preparing financial statements of an investment partnership in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles, in which capital is reported by investor class, how should cumulative unrealized gains (losses), carried interest, and clawback be reflected in the equity balances of each class of shareholder or partner at the balance sheet date? In particular, should cumulative period-end unrealized gains and losses, nonetheless, be allocated as if realized in accordance with the partnership's governing documents prior to the date, time, or event specified in the partnership agreement?

---

<sup>9</sup> Various terms may be used by different legal structures as the equivalents of *general partner* and *limited partner* (for example, *managing member* and *member* for limited liability companies). For convenience, the terms *partnership*, *general partner*, and *limited partner* are used throughout, but are intended to refer to any equivalent structure.

*Reply*—If a nonregistered investment partnership reports capital by investor class, cumulative unrealized gains (losses), carried interest, and clawback provisions would be reflected in the equity balances of each class of shareholder or partner at the balance sheet date, as if the investment company had realized all assets and settled all liabilities at the fair values reported in the financial statements, and allocated all gains and losses and distributed the net assets to each class of shareholder or partner at the reporting date consistent with the provisions of the partnership's governing documents. Further discussion of the presentation of each item follows.

Certain partnerships record an expense for fees (including incentive fees) due a general partner, whereas others allocate net income from limited partner capital accounts to the general partner capital account. These amounts could either be considered a disproportionate income allocation or a compensation arrangement, and the accounting should conform to the structure of the partnership agreement, with the financial statement disclosures set forth in FASB ASC 946.

A basic premise for the preparation and presentation of the financial statements of an investment company is to reflect each class of shareholders' or partners' interest in the net assets of the reporting entity as of the reporting date. Another objective is to present total return for nonmanaging investor classes after incentive allocations and fees, as expressed in FASB ASC 946.

Other accounting literature related to the presentation of data similar to total return is consistent with FASB ASC 946. FASB ASC 260, *Earnings per Share*, refers to allocating earnings or undistributed earnings for a period to participating securities "as if all of the earnings for the period had been distributed."

Although this guidance does not relate specifically to the presentation of capital accounts, measuring period-end capital balances for those classes under the same methodology appears consistent with this guidance. Accordingly, if an entity reports capital by investor class, cumulative unrealized gains (losses), carried interest, and clawback provisions would be reflected in the equity balances of each class of shareholder or partner at the balance sheet date, as if the investment company had realized all assets and settled all liabilities at the fair values reported in the financial statements, and allocated all gains and losses and distributed the net assets to each class of shareholder or partner at the reporting date consistent with the provisions of the partnership's governing documents. Further discussion of the presentation of each item follows.

### **Cumulative Unrealized Gains (Losses)**

Cumulative unrealized gains (losses) would be included in the ending balances of each class of shareholders' or partners' interest in the reporting entity at the reporting date, and the changes in such amounts would be reported in the changes in net asset value and partners' capital for the reporting period.

### **Carried Interest**

The carried interest generally is due to the investment manager, an affiliated entity, or both, and is either in the form of a fee (usually for offshore funds) or as an allocation from the limited partners' capital accounts, pro rata, to the general partner's capital account (usually for domestic funds). Although many variations exist, the investment manager is often entitled to receive its carry on a "deal-by-deal" basis. On this basis, as individual investments are sold, the investment proceeds are allocated based on a specific methodology

defined in the governing documents to determine the amount of carry, if any, to which the investment manager is entitled.

In presenting each class of shareholders' or partners' interest in the net assets as of the reporting date, the financial statements would consider the carry formula as if the investment company had realized all assets and settled all liabilities at their reported fair value, and allocated all gains and losses and distributed the net assets to each class of shareholder or partner at the reporting date.

### **Clawback**

Although all classes of shareholder or partner may be subject to clawback provisions in the governing documents, a clawback most frequently involves an obligation on the part of the investment manager to return previously received incentive allocations to the investment fund due to subsequent losses. Such clawback amounts, when paid, are typically distributed to other investors.

Consistent with the previously discussed principle to reflect each class of shareholders' or partners' interest in the net assets of the reporting entity as of the reporting date, the impact of a clawback would be calculated as of each reporting date under the methodology specified in the fund's governing documents.

Consistent with FASB ASC 310-10-45-14, such an obligation would not be recognized as an asset (receivable) in the entity's financial statements unless substantial evidence exists of ability and intent to pay within a reasonably short period of time. Rather, in most instances, the obligation would be reflected as a deduction from the general partner's capital account.

The specific circumstances, including whether the clawback represents a legal obligation to return or contribute funds to the reporting entity, require consideration before determining whether a clawback, resulting in a negative general partner capital balance (that is, contra-equity), is recognized in the financial statements. A careful reading of the governing documents ordinarily is required. Additionally, it may not be appropriate to reflect a negative general partner capital balance (and a corresponding increase to limited partner capital balances) if the general partner does not have the financial resources to make good on its obligation. It may be helpful to consult with the entity's legal counsel for clarification before recording a negative general partner capital balance.

Even if not recognized within the capital accounts, at a minimum, it would be appropriate to disclose the existence of a clawback in the footnotes to the financial statements because in almost all cases, the existence of the clawback would modify the manner in which future distributions are made.

[Issue Date: January 2009; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 6471.]



## Section 6930

### *Employee Benefit Plans*

#### **.01 When Does a Plan Have to File a Form 11-K?**

*Inquiry*—When is a plan subject to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, thus requiring a Form 11-K filing under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934?

*Reply*—Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933 provides exemptions from registration requirements for defined benefit plans and defined contribution plans not involving the purchase of employer securities with employee contributions. All other plans are subject to the requirements, provided they are both voluntary and contributory. For further guidance, see the “Securities and Exchange Commission Reporting Requirements” section in chapter 12 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*. Advice of ERISA counsel should be obtained to determine if the registration requirements apply to the plan.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

---

[The next page is 6475.]



**Section 6931****Financial Statement Reporting and Disclosure—Employee Benefit Plans****.01 Computation of Net Appreciation/Depreciation in Fair Value of Investments**

*Inquiry*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 960-30-45-2 requires the statement of changes in net assets available for benefits to include separate disclosure of the net appreciation (depreciation) in fair value for each significant class of investments. FASB ASC 962-205-45-7 requires the same disclosure for defined contribution plans and employee health and welfare benefit plans. How can this amount be computed?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 960-30-45-2 states that the net appreciation (depreciation) in the fair value of investments should include both realized and unrealized gains (losses). This amount may be computed by aggregating the realized and unrealized gains and losses for each individual security. However, this would be quite time-consuming if the plan has a large portfolio of investments. As an alternative, the following formula may be used to compute the net appreciation (depreciation) in the fair value of each type of investment:

Market value at 12/31/X1 .....	\$ XXX
Total proceeds of assets sold in 20X2 .....	<XX>
Add: Total cost of assets purchased in 20X2 .....	XX
Market value at 12/31/X2 .....	<XXX>
Net appreciation/depreciation in fair value of investments .....	<u>\$ XXX</u>

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.02 Benefits Payable to Terminated Participants of a Defined Contribution Plan**

*Inquiry*—Should benefits payable to terminated participants of a defined contribution [such as profit sharing or 401(k)] plan be classified as a liability in the plan financial statements?

*Reply*—No. Classifying benefits payable to participants as a liability is inappropriate because, by definition, net assets available for benefits (the difference between plan assets and liabilities) represent benefits owed to all participants—both active and terminated. Therefore, only amounts owed to nonparticipants (that is, third parties) should be classified as liabilities.

However, benefits payable to terminated participants should be disclosed in accordance with FASB ASC 962-205-50-1, which states the following, in part:

The financial statements shall also disclose, if applicable,

- m. Amounts allocated to accounts of persons who have elected to withdraw from the plan but have not yet been paid. These amounts shall not be reported as a liability on the statement of net assets available for benefits in financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. A footnote to reconcile the

audited financial statements to Form 5500 may be necessary to comply with ERISA . . . .

[Amended, June 1995; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.03 Should the Sale of Real Estate Investments Held by Employee Benefit Plans Be Treated as Discontinued Operations?**

*Inquiry*—Many employee benefit plans invest directly in real estate (for example, a building) that generates rental income and operating expenses for the plan. Generally, these plans are defined benefit plans but certain defined contribution plans may also hold these investments.

The FASB ASC glossary provides that a *component of an entity* comprises operations and cash flows that can be clearly distinguished, operationally and for financial reporting purposes, from the rest of the entity. A component of an entity may be a reportable segment or an operating segment, a reporting unit, a subsidiary, or an asset group.

FASB ASC 205-20-45-1 provides that the results of operations of a component of an entity that either has been disposed of or is classified as held for sale shall be reported in discontinued operations in accordance with FASB ASC 205-20-45-3 if both of the following are met:

- a. The operations and cash flows of the component have been (or will be) eliminated from the ongoing operations of the entity as a result of the disposal transaction and
- b. The entity will not have any significant continuing involvement in the operations of the component after the disposal transaction.

FASB ASC 205-20-45-3 states that in a period in which a component of an entity either has been disposed of or is classified as held for sale, the income statement of a business enterprise (or statement of activities of a not-for-profit entity) for current and prior periods shall report the results of operations of the component, including any gain or loss recognized in accordance with FASB ASC 360-10-35-40, in discontinued operations.

Because employee benefit plans are not specifically scoped out of FASB ASC 360, if an employee benefit plan invests in real estate that generates rental income and operating expenses for the plan and then sells that property, is the sale of the real estate investment considered a discontinued operation of the plan?

*Reply*—No. For many entities, an investment in real estate (such as a building) that generates rental income and operating expenses would meet the definition of a *component of an entity* (as defined in the FASB ASC glossary) and, therefore, any gains or losses relating to the disposal of that *component* would be reported in discontinued operations. However, employee benefit plan financial statements show financial status or net assets available for benefits and changes in financial status or net assets available for benefits. Because they do not show a statement of operations or activities, distinguishing between continuing and discontinued operations is not meaningful. Rather, real estate in an employee benefit plan should be treated as an investment carried at fair value and the related income/expenses and net appreciation/depreciation should be included in the statement of changes in financial status or statement of changes in net assets available for benefits. No distinction should be made between continuing and discontinued operations.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.04 Depreciation of a Real Estate Investment Owned by a Defined Benefit Pension Plan**

*Inquiry*—A defined benefit pension plan has invested in real estate which owns and receives rents from various stores in a shopping center. The financial statements include an expense for depreciation based on original cost. FASB ASC 960-325-35-1 requires that plan investments in real estate be presented at their fair value at the reporting date. Consequently, by providing for depreciation expense, the unrealized appreciation on this asset is increased.

Should depreciation expense be reflected for this plan investment?

*Reply*—No. Depreciation expense is normally an adjustment of the valuation of fixed assets reported at cost, in accordance with FASB ASC 960-360-35-1, which requires plan assets used in plan operations to be presented at cost less accumulated depreciation or amortization. Accordingly, since plan investments in real estate are to be reported at fair value, there is no requirement to provide for depreciation expense.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.05 Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Single-Employer Employee Benefit Plans Related to the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement and Modernization Act of 2003**

*Inquiry*—On December 8, 2003, the president signed into law the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement and Modernization Act of 2003 (the act) for employers that sponsor postretirement health care plans that provide prescription drug benefits. The Act introduces a prescription drug benefit under Medicare (Medicare Part D) as well as a federal subsidy to sponsors of retiree health care benefit plans that provide a benefit that is at least actuarially equivalent to Medicare Part D.1. FASB ASC 715-60 and FASB ASC 740-10 address the issue of whether an employer that provides postretirement prescription drug coverage should recognize the effects of the act on its accumulated postretirement benefit obligation (APBO) and net postretirement benefit costs and, if so, when and how to account for those effects. FASB ASC 715-60 and FASB ASC 740-10 say that the APBO and net periodic postretirement benefit costs should reflect the effects of the act. FASB ASC 715-60 and FASB ASC 740-10 do not address accounting for the subsidy by health and welfare benefit plans.

For a single-employer health and welfare benefit plan, should the effects of the plan sponsor's (employer's) Medicare prescription drug subsidy (Medicare subsidy) be taken into consideration when calculating the health and welfare plan's postretirement benefit obligation?

*Reply*—No, the effects of the employer's Medicare subsidy should not be reflected in the plan's obligations. The primary objective of the financial statements of a health and welfare benefit plan is to provide financial information that is useful in assessing the plan's present and future ability to pay its benefit obligations when due. The Medicare subsidy amount is paid to the plan sponsor and does not flow into the plan. The plan sponsor is not required to use the subsidy amount to fund the postretirement benefits and may use the subsidy for any valid business purpose. As a result, the Medicare subsidy does not reduce the amount of benefits that need to be covered by plan assets and future employer contributions. Therefore, the APBO, without reduction for the Medicare subsidy, is a more meaningful measure of the benefits. Further, the information necessary to calculate the gross measure should be readily available for sponsors who are subject to income taxes, because those plan sponsors

should maintain gross and net measures of the APBO in order to properly account for income taxes under FASB ASC 740.

### **Disclosures.**

The plan should disclose the following:

- a. The existence of the act
- b. The fact that the APBO and the changes in the benefit obligation do not reflect any amount associated with the Medicare subsidy because the plan is not directly entitled to the Medicare subsidy
- c. Until the plan sponsor (employer) is able to determine whether benefits provided by its plan are actuarially equivalent to Medicare Part D.1, that the employer is not able to determine whether the benefits provided by its plan are actuarially equivalent to Medicare Part D.1. If the plan sponsor (employer) has included the effects of the Medicare subsidy in measuring its APBO and changes in benefit obligation, the plan should disclose the fact that the amount of the APBO differs from that disclosed by the plan sponsor (employer) because the plan sponsor's amounts are net of the Medicare subsidy.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.06 Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Multiemployer Employee Benefit Plans Related to the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement and Modernization Act of 2003**

*Inquiry*—On December 8, 2003, the president signed into law the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement and Modernization Act of 2003 (the act) for employers that sponsor postretirement health care plans that provide prescription drug benefits. The Act introduces a prescription drug benefit under Medicare (Medicare Part D) as well as a federal subsidy to sponsors of retiree health care benefit plans that provide a benefit that is at least actuarially equivalent to Medicare Part D.1. FASB ASC 715-60 and FASB ASC 740-10 address the issue of whether an employer that provides postretirement prescription drug coverage should recognize the effects of the act on its accumulated postretirement benefit obligation (APBO) and net postretirement benefit costs and, if so, when and how to account for those effects. FASB ASC 715-60 and FASB ASC 740-10 say that the APBO and net periodic postretirement benefit costs should reflect the effects of the act. FASB ASC 715-60 and 740-10 do not address accounting for the subsidy by multiemployer health and welfare benefit plans or by the sponsors or participating employers of those plans.

For multiemployer health and welfare benefit plans, should the effects of the Medicare prescription drug subsidy (Medicare subsidy) be taken into consideration when calculating the health and welfare plan's postretirement benefit obligation?

*Reply*—Yes, the multiemployer plan's benefit obligations should be reduced by the effects of the Medicare subsidy because the multiemployer plan trust receives the subsidy amount directly and not the individual employers. Because the primary objective of the financial statements of a health and welfare benefit plan is to provide financial information that is useful in assessing the plan's present and future ability to pay its benefit obligations when due, and because the Medicare subsidy amount flows into the multiemployer plan trust, the APBO net of the Medicare subsidy is a more meaningful measure of those benefits.

### **Disclosures.**

Until the multiemployer plan is able to determine whether benefits provided by its plan are at least actuarially equivalent to Medicare Part D.1, the plan should disclose the following in the notes to its financial statements:

- a. The existence of the act
- b. The fact that measures of the APBO and changes in the benefit obligation do not reflect any amount associated with the subsidy because the plan is unable to conclude whether the benefits provided by the plan are actuarially equivalent to Medicare Part D under the act.

If the multiemployer plan has included the effects of the Medicare subsidy in measuring its APBO and changes in the benefit obligation, the plan should disclose the following:

- a. The existence of the act
- b. The reduction in the APBO for the subsidy related to benefits attributed to past service
- c. The effect of the subsidy on the changes in the benefit obligation for the current period
- d. An explanation of any significant change in the benefit obligation or plan assets not otherwise apparent in the other disclosures
- e. The gross benefit payments (paid and expected, respectively) including prescription drug benefits, and separately the gross amount of the subsidy receipts (received and expected, respectively).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.07 Financial Statement Presentation of Underwriting Deficits**

*Inquiry*—The administrator of an employee health and welfare benefit plan has questioned an item on the plan's statement of net assets available for benefits. The item appears in the liabilities section as follows:

Reserve for underwriting deficit—(Note 3) \$10,000

Note 3 reads as follows:

Reserve for underwriting deficit represents a liability with the XYZ Life Insurance Company for claims paid in excess of premiums during the current policy year. This liability will be applied to reduce any refunds which may accrue in the future. Such a refund was received during the current year.

The related debit to the credit setting up the liability was to "Underwriting Deficit," and is included in health claims deductions in the "Statement of Changes in Net Assets Available for Benefits."

The administrator takes the position that this item should be excluded entirely from the financial statements because:

1. The policy provides that any underwriting deficit in one policy year is not immediately recoverable by the insurance company but only recoverable against underwriting "gains" of succeeding years, if any.
2. Upon cancellation of the policy by the underwriter, the fund is relieved of any liability for any unrecovered underwriting deficit existing on date of cancellation.
3. Although there were usually underwriting "gains" in past years, there is no assurance that future underwriting "gains" will occur to permit recovery of the deficit.

Should the underwriting loss be reflected in the financial statements in the year in which it occurs?

*Reply*—Yes, if certain criteria are met. FASB ASC 965-30-35-11 states experience ratings determined by the insurance company or by estimates, may result in a premium deficit. Premium deficits should be included in the benefit obligations if (a) it is probable that the deficit will be applied against the amounts of future premiums or future experience-rating refunds and (b) the amount can be reasonably estimated. If no obligation is included for a premium deficit because either or both of the conditions are not met, or if an exposure to loss exists in excess of the amount accrued, disclosure of the premium deficit should be made if it is reasonably possible that a loss or an additional loss has been incurred.

A footnote states that considerations in determining whether it is probable that a premium deficit will be applied against future premiums or refunds include (a) the extent to which the insurance contract requires payment of such deficits and (b) the plan's intention, if any, to transfer coverage to another insurance company.

They should not be shown as liabilities on the plan's statement of net assets available for benefits.

[Amended, June 1995; Amended, June 2001; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.08 Types of Investments Subject to FASB ASC 962**

*Inquiry*—What types of investments are subject to the financial statement presentation and disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 962?

*Reply*—FASB ASC 946-210-45-10 refers to investment contracts as (a) a traditional or separate account guaranteed investment contract (GIC contract), (b) a bank investment contract (BIC contract), (c) a synthetic GIC contract composed of a wrapper contract and the underlying wrapped portfolio of individual investments, or (d) a contract with similar characteristics.

Plans may hold stable value investments through direct contracts with issuers or through a specifically plan-managed account. Plans may also hold stable value investments through beneficial ownership of bank collective funds (which own investment contracts). Insurance company pooled separate accounts that hold investment contracts also have similar characteristics.

It is important for the auditor to gain an understanding of the types of investments being held by the plan; this can be achieved by obtaining the underlying documents for the investments. Typically, investments have some form of underlying documentation to help determine the type of investment. For example, if a plan is invested in common collective trust funds (CCTs), then there should be a trust declaration for that CCT, which would generally have audited financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.09 Financial Statement Presentation When a Plan Invests in a Common Collective Trust Fund or in a Master Trust That Holds Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts**

*Inquiry*—Do the financial statement presentation requirements in paragraphs 2–3 of FASB ASC 962-205-45 apply to a plan's investment in a CCT, or master trust that holds fully benefit-responsive investment contracts?

*Reply*—Yes. Paragraphs 2–3 of FASB ASC 962-205-45 require the following presentation for fully benefit-responsive investment contracts:

The statement of net assets available for benefits of the plan shall present amounts for all of the following:

- a. Total assets
- b. Total liabilities
- c. Net assets reflecting all investments at fair value
- d. Net assets available for benefits.

The amount representing the difference between net assets reflecting all investments at fair value and net assets available for benefits shall be presented on the face of the statement of net assets available for benefits as a single amount, calculated as the sum of the amounts necessary to adjust the portion of net assets attributable to each fully benefit-responsive investment contract.

When the plan invests in a CCT (or similar vehicle), or a master trust that holds fully benefit-responsive investment contracts, the fair value of the investment in the CCT or master trust should be reported in investments on the face of the statement of net assets available for benefits. The amount representing the difference between the fair value and the contract value of the fully benefit-responsive investment contracts held by the CCT or master trust should be presented on the face of the statement of net assets available for benefits, and calculated as the sum of the amounts necessary to adjust the portion of net assets attributable to the plan's investment in the CCT or master trust from fair value to contract value. For the master trust, the adjustment only relates to the plan's portion of the master trust invested in the fully benefit-responsive investment contracts.

A CCT is a trust for a collective investment and reinvestment of assets contributed from employee benefit plans maintained by more than one employer or a controlled group of corporations that is maintained by a bank, trust company, or similar institution that is regulated, supervised, and subject to periodic examination by a state or federal agency. Such CCTs allow several smaller unaffiliated plans to gain the economies of scale necessary to participate in the stable value marketplace. These CCTs generally issue separate, stand-alone financial statements, and are considered investment companies subject to FASB ASC 946.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.10 Financial Statement Disclosure Requirements When a Plan Invests in a Common Collective Trust Fund or in a Master Trust That Holds Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts**

*Inquiry*—Do plans that directly invest in CCTs, or in master trusts that hold fully benefit-responsive investment contracts, need to include in the plan's financial statements, the disclosures in paragraphs 2–3 of FASB ASC 962-205-45?

*Reply*—Plans that directly invest in CCTs, or similar vehicles that hold fully benefit-responsive investment contracts, do not need to include the disclosures detailed in the FSP in the plan's financial statements. Such disclosures would be included in the financial statements of the CCT, in accordance with FASB ASC 946-210-50-14.

For plans that invest in a master trust that holds fully benefit-responsive investment contracts, the notes to the financial statements should include the disclosures required in paragraphs 2–3 of FASB ASC 962-205-45 related to the fully benefit-responsive investment contracts held by the master trust. These disclosures are necessary because, unlike a CCT (as discussed in section 6931.09), master trust financial statements are not required, and the related disclosure information would not be readily available.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### .11 Fair Value Measurement Disclosures for Master Trusts

*Inquiry*—Employee benefit plans often hold investments under master trust arrangements. According to the Department of Labor’s Form 5500 instructions, a *master trust* is a trust for which a regulated financial institution serves as trustee or custodian and in which assets of more than one plan, sponsored by a single employer or by a group of employers under common control, are held.

In a typical master trust arrangement, the plan does not hold units or shares of the master trust but has an undivided interest in the assets of the master trust. However, for participant directed defined contribution plans, the plan typically has a divided interest in the individual assets of the master trust based upon participant direction. The “Additional Financial Statement Disclosures” sections in chapters 2 and 3 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans* (guide) discusses the requirement for investments in master trusts to be shown as a single line item on the statement of net assets available for benefits; however, the plan does not “purchase” and “dispose” of its interest in the master trust but is allocated an interest once the plan sponsor chooses to transfer the plan’s assets into the master trust. The guide also discusses the requirement for master trust investments to be shown by general type in the footnotes.

For employee benefit plan financial statements, are the disclosure requirements of paragraphs 1–3, 5, and 8 of FASB ASC 820-10-50 required for the plan’s total interest in the master trust or the individual investments under the master trust arrangement?

*Reply*—The disclosures required by paragraphs 1–3, 5, and 8 of FASB ASC 820-10-50 are required for individual investments under a master trust arrangement and are not required for the plan’s total interest in the master trust.

According to paragraphs 1–3 of FASB ASC 820-10-50, for assets that are measured at fair value on a recurring basis in periods subsequent to initial recognition, the reporting entity shall disclose information that enables users of its financial statements to assess the inputs used to develop those measurements, and for recurring fair value measurements using significant unobservable inputs (level 3), the effect of the measurements on earnings (or changes in net assets) for the period.

Because of the nature of the plan’s ownership interest in the master trust—that is, the plan does not hold units or shares of a master trust—the disclosures in FASB ASC 820 should be presented for the underlying master trust investments. Therefore, the plan should disclose separately the following information for each period for each major category of master trust assets and liabilities (quantitative disclosures should be made in tabular format):

- a. The fair value measurements recorded during the period and the reasons for the measurements

- b.* The level within the fair value hierarchy in which the fair value measurements in their entirety fall, segregating fair value measurements using quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities (level 1), significant other observable inputs (level 2), and significant unobservable inputs (level 3)
- c.* For fair value measurements using significant unobservable inputs (level 3), a description of the inputs and the information used to develop the inputs
- d.* In annual periods only, the valuation technique(s) used to measure fair value and a discussion of changes, if any, in the valuation technique(s) used to measure similar assets or liabilities, or both, in prior periods.

Consideration should be given to combining, or reconciling, or both, the master trust FASB ASC 820 disclosures as described previously with the current master trust disclosures as described in chapters 2–3 of the guide.

[Issue Date: March 2009; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 6491.]**



## Section 6932

# ERISA Reporting and Disclosures

### **.01 Employee Benefit Security Administration Guidance on Insurance Company Demutualizations**

*Inquiry*—During the past few years there have been a number of insurance companies that have demutualized, resulting in the insurance contract policyholder receiving demutualization proceeds. What alternatives are available with respect to receipt by policyholders of demutualization proceeds?

*Reply*—On February 15, 2001, Employee Benefit Security Administration (EBSA) issued a letter regarding alternatives available under the trust requirement of Title I of ERISA with respect to receipt by policyholders of demutualization proceeds belonging to an ERISA-covered plan in connection with the proposed plan of demutualization of an insurance company (the company). In its letter, the DOL noted that the application of ERISA's trust requirements would depend on whether demutualization proceeds received by a policyholder constitute plan assets. The DOL stated that, in the case of an unfunded or insured welfare plan in which participants pay a portion of the premiums, the portion of the demutualization proceeds attributable to participant contributions must be treated as plan assets. In the case of a pension plan, or where any type of plan or trust is the policyholder or where the policy is paid for out of trust assets, the DOL stated that all of the proceeds received by the policyholder in connection with the demutualization would constitute plan assets. Auditors should take care to identify those plans with contracts with insurance companies that have demutualized and ensure that the proceeds are properly recorded as plan assets. Plan sponsors may not be familiar with EBSA's letter regarding alternatives available with respect to receipt by policyholders of demutualization proceeds. In addition, it has been noted that demutualization proceeds are often deposited into a separate account or trust and may be overlooked in financial reporting for the plan.

### **.02 When Should Participant Contributions Be Considered Late Remittances?**

*Inquiry*—For purposes of reporting on line 4(a) of Form 5500, from what date should remittances be deemed late; the date the remittances can reasonably be made, or 15 days after the end of the month in which the funds were withheld?

*Reply*—Participant contributions are required to be remitted as soon as they can reasonably be segregated from an employer's general assets. DOL Regulation 2510.3-102 states that an employer is required to segregate employee contributions from its general assets as soon as practicable, but in no event more than (a) 90 days after the contributions are paid by employees or withheld from their wages for a welfare benefit plan or (b) the 15th business day following the end of the month in which amounts are contributed by employees or withheld from their wages for a pension benefit plan. The definition of what constitutes as soon as practicable will vary from plan sponsor to plan sponsor. DOL Field Assistance Bulletin 2003-2 states that the process for segregating participant contributions must be taken into account when determining when participant contributions can be reasonably segregated from the employer's general assets. Plan sponsors, under their fiduciary responsibility, also should consider how costly to the plan a more expeditious process

would be. Those costs should be balanced against any additional income and security the plan and plan participants would realize from a faster system.

In considering whether remittances are delinquent, an understanding of the plan sponsor's process to segregate and remit contributions should be obtained. If the plan has several entities and payroll processes that comprise the remittance process, their timeframe to remit may be longer than a plan sponsor with only one location and one payroll system. Similarly, facts and circumstances that occur in the year (for example, a change in payroll processing or new service provider) may change the timeframe in which remittances are made. If a process has been established and the plan sponsor deviates from such a process, an understanding of the reasons why the remittance of the contributions for the period or periods did not comply with the established process should be obtained. Based on that understanding, a determination as to whether the plan sponsor remitted contributions as soon as it could reasonably segregate them from general assets should be made. The plan sponsor also may want to consult ERISA counsel in making that determination. In any case, any contributions remitted after the 15th business day after the end of the month in which the funds were withheld should be reported on Form 5500, Schedule H, Line 4a.

### **.03 How Should Delinquent Loan Remittances Be Reported on the Form 5500?**

*Inquiry*—How should delinquent loan remittances be reported on the Form 5500?

*Reply*—In Advisory Opinion 2002-02A, the DOL stated that participant loan repayments paid to or withheld by an employer for purposes of transmittal to an employee benefit plan are sufficiently similar to participant contributions to justify, in the absence of regulations providing otherwise, the application of principles similar to those underlying the participant contribution regulation for purposes of determining when such repayments become assets of the plan. Delinquent forwarding of participant loan repayments is eligible for correction under the Voluntary Filer Correction Program and PTE 2002-51 on terms similar to those that apply to delinquent participant contributions. Accordingly, the DOL will not reject a Form 5500 report based solely on the fact that delinquent forwarding of participant loan repayments is included on Line 4a of the Schedule H or Schedule I. Filers that choose to include such participant loan repayments on Line 4a must apply the same supplemental schedule and independent public accountant disclosure requirements to the loan repayments as apply to delinquent transmittals of participant contributions. If the plan does not report delinquent loan remittances on Line 4a, those payments should be reported on Schedule G.

### **.04 How Should Participant Loans Be Reported on Defined Contribution Plan Master Trust Form 5500 Filings?**

*Inquiry*—How should participant loans be reported on defined contribution plan master trust Form 5500 filings?

*Reply*—The face of Schedule H Form 5500 instructs master trust investment accounts not to complete line 1c(8) participant loans. In practice, many master trusts for defined contribution plans include participant loans as part of their master trust agreement. However, even though these loans may be included as part of the master trust agreement, the Form 5500 instructs the preparer not to include them as part of the master trust assets. Thus, the plan's financial statements would require a supplemental schedule, Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year), to report participant loans as a nonmaster trust

investment. The plan's Form 5500 filing would require the participant loans to be broken out separately from the investment in the master trust on the Schedule H.

**.05 How Should Investments in Brokerage Accounts Be Reported in the Financial Statements and Form 5500?**

*Inquiry*—Investments in individually directed brokerage accounts can be aggregated in a single line item on the Form 5500. Can they be listed as a single line item on the supplemental schedule of assets, or do the individual underlying investments have to be listed?

*Reply*—As described in the Form 5500 instructions, individually directed brokerage accounts may be aggregated in a single line item on the statement of net assets available for benefits and on the supplemental schedule of assets, provided the investments are not loans, partnership or joint-venture interests, real property, employer securities, or investments that could result in a loss in excess of the account balance of the participant or beneficiary who directed the transaction. However, the notes to the financial statements must disclose any individual investment that is over 5 percent of net assets available for benefits at the end of the year. In addition, the total investment income or loss for individually directed brokerage accounts may be aggregated in a single line item in the Form 5500; however, the financial statements must separate interest and dividends from net appreciation (depreciation) in fair value on the statement of changes in net assets available for benefits and disclose net appreciation (depreciation) by type of investment in the notes to the financial statements.

**.06 Do All Types of Reconciling Items Between the Financial Statements and the Form 5500 Require a Reconciling Footnote in the Financial Statements?**

*Inquiry*—Does ERISA require a footnote to the audited financial statements reconciling amounts reported in the Statement of Changes in Net Assets Available for Benefits to those reported in the Form 5500 for differences in the way income and expense amounts are classified in the two reports?

*Reply*—Generally, a reconciliation would be required for differences occurring because certain income and expense items are netted against each other and disclosed as one amount in one statement and reported separately in the other (for example, the amount reported as contributions in the financial statements may differ from that reported in the 5500 because excess contributions are recorded net on the financial statements but gross on the Form 5500). However, frequently the classification of line items comprising certain income and expense items (for example, investments and investment interest, dividends, gains and losses, and self-directed brokerage accounts) reported in the Form 5500 differ from the classifications shown in the financial statements. In such situations, a reconciling footnote may not be necessary.

For further guidance, see the “Reports Issued Prior to Form 5500 Filing” section in chapter 12 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.07 What is the Requirement to Report Certain Transactions Under Individual Account Plans on the Schedule of Reportable Transactions?**

*Inquiry*—Under Form 5500 (Schedule H, Part IV, line 4j), there is a special rule whereby transactions under an individual account plan that a participant directs should not be taken into account for purposes of preparing the Schedule

of Reportable Transactions. What about situations where an individual account plan is participant-directed but has certain transactions that appear to be nonparticipant-directed (for example, pass-through account for contributions)?

*Reply*—If the plan is an individual account plan and the overall structure of the plan is participant-directed, pass-through account transactions would not be required to be included on the Schedule of Reportable Transactions. Another example would be a participant-directed individual account plan that liquidates its investment options as a result of a plan termination, merger, or change in service provider. Often such changes result in the plan sponsor directing the plan trustee to liquidate the current balance in the participant-directed investment options into a short-term fund before the transfer to new investment options. Such transactions would be not be required to be included on the Schedule of Reportable Transactions.

**.08 Is Noninterest-Bearing Cash an Asset on the Supplemental Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year)?**

*Inquiry*—Should noninterest-bearing cash be included as an asset on the supplemental Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year)?

*Reply*—Generally, only assets held for investment are included on the supplemental Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year); thus noninterest-bearing cash would not be included. Interest-bearing cash accounts would be included on the supplemental schedule.

**.09 Is Netting of Investments on the Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year) Permitted?**

*Inquiry*—Can immaterial investments be netted together as “other” on the supplemental Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year)?

*Reply*—No, each investment must be separately listed on the supplemental schedule.

**.10 Is the Schedule of 5 Percent Reportable Transactions Required for Defined Benefit Plans?**

*Inquiry*—Is the schedule of 5 percent reportable transactions required for defined benefit plans?

*Reply*—As defined benefit plans generally are not participant-directed, the reportable transactions schedule would be required.

---

[The next page is 6501.]

## Section 6933

# Auditing Employee Benefit Plans

### .01 Initial Audit of a Plan

*Inquiry*—In an initial audit of a plan that has been in existence for several years, to what extent does the auditor need to audit information from previous years?

*Reply*—In an initial audit of a plan which has been in existence in previous years, ERISA requires that the audited financial reports contain a comparative Statement of Net Assets Available for Benefits and, as such, there should be some consideration of the accumulation of data from prior years, and the effect on current year balances. The auditor can choose to compile, review, or audit the opening Statement of Net Assets Available for Benefits. It is important to note, however, that if the opening Statement of Net Assets Available for Benefits is not audited, the auditor must satisfy himself or herself as to the reasonableness of the amounts reported in that statement because material errors in that information may materially impact the Statement of Changes in Net Assets Available for Benefits under audit.

The auditor should apply appropriate audit tests and procedures to the opening balances in the Statement of Net Assets Available for Benefits to determine that those balances are not materially misstated. The auditor should make inquiries of the plan's management and outside service providers, as applicable, regarding the plan's operations during those earlier years. The auditor also may wish to obtain relevant information (for example, trust statements, recordkeeping reports, reconciliations, minutes of meetings, and Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 70, *Service Organizations* [AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AU sec. 324], reports) for earlier years, as applicable, to determine whether there appears to be any errors during those years that could have a material effect on current year balances. Further, the auditor should gain an understanding of the accounting practices that were followed in prior years to determine that they have been consistently applied in the current year. Based on the results of the auditor's inquiries, review of relevant information, and evidence gathered during the current year audit, the auditor would determine the necessity of performing additional substantive procedures (including detailed testing or substantive analytics) on earlier years' balances.

See the "Initial Audits of Plans" sections in chapters 5 and 13 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### .02 Investment Allocations Testing in an Electronic Environment

*Inquiry*—How should the auditor test for proper investment allocation in situations where changes may be made by participants electronically, via phone or internet, on a daily basis?

*Reply*—Where participants make contributions or investment elections by telephone or electronic means (such as the Internet), the auditor should consider confirming the contribution percentage, source, and investment election directly with the participant, or compare that information to detail of the transaction (for example, a copy of the transaction confirmation) if maintained

by the plan sponsor or service provider. Alternatively, if a service provider has a type II SAS No. 70 report that provides evidence that the service auditor has tested investment allocations, the auditor may place some reliance on the SAS No. 70 report to reduce (not eliminate) substantive testing.

See the “General Auditing Procedures” section in chapter 7 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### **.03 Auditor’s Responsibility for Detecting Nonexempt Transactions**

*Inquiry*—What is the auditor’s responsibility for detecting nonexempt transactions resulting from participant contributions that are not remitted to the plan within the guidelines established by DOL regulations?

*Reply*—An audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) cannot be expected to provide assurance that all party-in-interest transactions will be discovered. Nevertheless, during the audit the auditor should be aware of the possible existence of party-in-interest transactions. During the planning phase of the audit, the auditor should inquire about the existence of any party-in-interest or nonexempt transactions. If any issues relating to late remittances are brought to the auditor’s attention, the auditor may consider obtaining a schedule of employee contributions detailing payroll withholding date and date of deposit to the plan. A sample of deposits can then be traced to the supporting payroll register and wire transfer advice or check. Further, the auditor should have the client include in the management representation letter a representation that there are no party-in-interest transactions that have not been disclosed in the supplemental schedules.

### **.04 Nonexempt Transactions**

*Inquiry*—If a nonexempt transaction related to the preceding is noted, is materiality of the transaction taken into consideration in determining the need for the supplemental schedule of nonexempt transactions?

*Reply*—There is no materiality threshold for the inclusion on the supplemental schedule. All known events must be reported.

### **.05 Testing of Plan Qualification Tests Prepared by TPA**

*Inquiry*—What responsibility does the auditor have in testing plan qualification tests (for example, ACP and ADP) prepared by a client’s third-party administrator?

*Reply*—An audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) is not designed to ensure compliance with all legislative and regulatory provisions. However, plans must be designed and comply with certain operating tests to maintain their qualified status. If specific information comes to the auditor’s attention that provides evidence concerning the existence of possible violations affecting the financial statements, the auditor should apply auditing procedures specifically directed to ascertaining whether a violation has occurred. The auditor is also expected to inquire of, and obtain representation from, management concerning compliance with laws and regulations and the prevention of violations that may cause disqualification.

### **.06 Audit Procedures for Plan Mergers**

*Inquiry*—What audit procedures should be performed for material plan mergers into a plan? What audit procedures are required when the prior plan was audited? What if the prior plan was never audited?

*Reply*—If the prior plan was audited, the auditor should obtain the audited financial statements to ensure that the balance transferred from the prior plan reconciles to the balance that is reflected on the new plan's financial statements. Also, the auditor will generally perform procedures to ensure that participant accounts were properly set up under the new plan. If the prior plan was not audited, the auditor will generally perform audit procedures to determine that the equity that is transferred from the prior plan is reasonable based upon an analysis of historical activity. (Other audit procedures relating to plan mergers can be found in the "Plan Mergers" section in chapter 12 of AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

#### **.07 Audit Requirements for Remaining Portion of a Split Plan**

*Inquiry*—For the year ended December 31, 20X1, an audit was performed for AB Plan with more than 100 participants that covered two related companies (Company A and Company B). In July 20X2, Company A was sold, and the plan assets related to those participants were transferred to a new unrelated plan (Plan C). What are the audit requirements for the remaining portion of the AB Plan which, as of July 20X2, covers only employees at Company B and had fewer than 100 participants?

*Reply*—Audit for the AB Plan is required for the year ended December 31, 20X2, because the plan had over 100 participants at the beginning of the plan year. For the year ended December 31, 20X3, an audit of plan AB may not be required if the number of participants at January 1, 20X3, is under 100 and the plan meets the criteria for the Small Pension Plan Audit Waiver.

#### **.08 Audit Requirements for Frozen and Terminated Plans**

*Inquiry*—Are frozen and terminated plans that are still paying out benefits required to have an audit?

*Reply*—An audit is required if the plan has more than 100 participants at the beginning of the plan year. Chapter 5 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*, provides guidance with regard to the definition of "participants." When a plan has been terminated or frozen, complete and prominent disclosure of the relevant circumstances is essential in all subsequent financial statements issued by the plan. If the number of participants falls below 100, auditors should consider whether the plan meets the criteria for the Small Pension Plan Audit Waiver.

For further guidance, see the "Terminating Plans" section in chapter 2 and the "Small Pension Plan Audit Waiver (SPPAW) Summary" flowchart in chapter 5 of the guide.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

#### **.09 Audit Procedures When Plan Operates in a Decentralized Environment**

*Inquiry*—When a plan operates in a decentralized environment, what additional audit procedures should be considered?

*Reply*—The auditor should consider the controls at each decentralized location as well as the overall mitigating controls that may be performed on a centralized basis. Taking into consideration the materiality of the activity at each decentralized location, the auditor may choose to expand participant level and substantive testing to incorporate these decentralized locations.

**.10 Is the Master Trust Required to Be Audited?**

*Inquiry*—Is the master trust required to be audited?

*Reply*—While the DOL does not require the master trust to be audited, the plan administrator normally engages an auditor to report only on the financial statements of the individual plans. If the master trust is not audited, the plan auditor should perform those procedures necessary to obtain sufficient audit evidence to support the financial statement assertions as to the plan's investments or qualify or disclaim his or her report.

---

[The next page is 6511.]

## Section 6934

# Limited-Scope Audits—Employee Benefit Plans

### .01 Certifications by “Agent of”

*Inquiry*—Can the plan sponsor accept a certification from the plan’s recordkeeper if the recordkeeper certifies the investment information to be complete and accurate on behalf of the plan’s trustee/custodian as “agent for”?

*Reply*—According to the Department of Labor, such a certification generally would be acceptable if there is in fact a legal arrangement between the trustee and the recordkeeper to be able to provide the certification on the trustee’s behalf. Care should be taken by the plan administrator to obtain such legal documentation. Additionally the plan auditor might consider adding wording to the standard limited-scope report to include reference to such an arrangement. Sample language might include the following: “...any auditing procedures with respect to the information described in Note X, which was certified by ABC, Inc., the recordkeeper of the Plan as agent for XYZ Bank, the trustee of the Plan, . . . We have been informed by the plan administrator that the trustee holds the Plan’s investment assets and executes investment transactions. The plan administrator has obtained a certification from the agent on behalf of the trustee, as of and for the year ended December 31, 20XX, that the information provided to the plan administrator by the agent for the trustee is complete and accurate.” The third paragraph of the report should also be modified.

### .02 Limited-Scope Audit on a Portion of the Plan’s Investments

*Inquiry*—Is it permissible to perform a limited-scope audit on a portion of the plan’s investments but not all (some investments did not meet the DOL 29 CFR 2520.103-8 criteria for a limited-scope audit)? If yes, what form does the auditors’ report take?

*Reply*—Yes, it is permissible to perform a limited-scope audit on only a portion of a plan’s investments and audit the remaining investments. The auditors’ report is the same as that used for a limited-scope audit. However, the note that is referenced in the auditor report should clearly identify the investments that were not audited.

### .03 Limited-Scope Audit—Plan Certifications for Master Trusts

*Inquiry*—If a limited-scope audit is to be performed for a plan funded under a master trust arrangement or other similar vehicle, should separate individual plan certifications from the trustee or the custodian be obtained for the allocation of the assets and the related income activity to the specific plan?

*Reply*—Yes, if a limited-scope audit is to be performed for a plan funded under a master trust arrangement or other similar vehicle, separate individual plan certifications from the trustee or the custodian should be obtained for the allocation of the assets and the related income activity to the specific plan.

[DOL regulation 2520.103-8]

**.04 In a Limited-Scope Audit Is it Necessary to Test the Allocation of Investment Earnings at the Participant Account Level?**

*Inquiry*—For a DOL limited-scope audit, is it necessary to test the allocation of investment earnings at the participant account level?

*Reply*—The testing of allocation of investment earnings at the participant level is part of the participant data testing and is recommended for a limited-scope audit.

---

**[The next page is 6515.]**

## Section 6935

# **SAS No. 70 Reports—Employee Benefit Plans**

### **.01 Audit Procedures When SAS No. 70 Reports Are Not Available**

*Inquiry*—What procedures need to be performed in audits where the plan doesn't receive a Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 70, *Service Organizations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AU sec. 324), report from the service provider?

*Reply*—Service providers are not required to furnish SAS No. 70 reports. However, this does not relieve the auditor of his or her responsibility to obtain a sufficient understanding of internal control relevant to transactions executed by the service organization to plan the audit and to determine the nature, timing, and extent of testing to be performed by considering those components of internal control maintained by the service organization. In situations where a SAS No. 70 report is not available, other sources, such as user manuals, system overviews, technical manuals, the contract between the user organization and the service organization, and reports on the service organization's controls issued by internal auditors or regulatory authorities, may provide sufficient information about the nature of the services provided by the service organization that are part of the user organization's information system and the service organization's controls over those services. If both the services provided and the service organization's controls over those services are highly standardized, information obtained through the plan auditor's prior experience with the service organization may be helpful in planning the audit. The plan auditor may wish to consider the specific control objectives and selected controls outlined in exhibit B-1 of appendix B of the AICPA Accounting and Audit Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*, in obtaining his or her understanding. If the user auditor concludes that the available information is not adequate to obtain a sufficient understanding of the service organization's controls to plan the audit, consideration should be given to contacting the service organization through the user organization to obtain adequate internal control information, or request that a service auditor be engaged to perform procedures at the service organization.

The level of substantive testing that should be performed depends on the amount of reliance the auditor can place on internal controls. Thus, if a type 2 SAS No. 70 report is not available, the auditor would need to increase substantive testing or consider testing controls at the service provider.

Auditing procedures applied to data maintained by the service provider may include tests of participant data, payroll data, or benefits data to determine that they agree with the information obtained and maintained by the employer. If the data is not available at the employer, consideration should be given to confirming the information directly with participants or to reviewing hard copy information obtained from the service provider, if available.

Individual participant accounts in 401(k) plans or other defined contribution pension plans should be tested for proper allocation of plan assets, contributions, income, and expenses. As such, the auditor should consider confirming contribution percentages and investment elections directly with the participants in situations where transactions are performed electronically or by phone. In addition, record keepers may maintain back up documentation of

participant transactions, which may be requested as audit evidence to test participant data.

Procedures that should be considered in the audit of benefit payments, particularly those initiated by telephone or electronic methods, include confirming disbursements directly with participants, or comparing the disbursement to a transaction report if one is maintained, and testing the documentation underlying the benefit payment transactions.

For further guidance, see chapters 7 and 9–10 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.02 Allocations Testing of Investment Earnings When a Type 2 SAS No. 70 Report Is Available**

*Inquiry*—In plan audits where a type 2 SAS No. 70 report is used, how extensively should the allocation of investment earnings at the participant level be tested? What are commonly used methods for testing this information?

*Reply*—In audits where a type 2 SAS No. 70 report is relied upon, the extent of testing of the allocation of investment earnings at the participant level will be determined based on the assessed level of the plan's control risk in this area. The type 2 SAS No. 70 report can provide information about the controls in place within the service organization to help the auditor assess this risk. However, the auditor should not use the type 2 SAS No. 70 report to completely eliminate substantive testing.

One commonly used method of testing this information is comparing the yield in the participants' accounts (selecting a sample of funds) for a certain period of time to the yield that the plan reported as a whole (as compared to published sources) for those funds for the same period of time.

---

[The next page is 6521.]

## Section 6936

### ***Auditing Defined Contribution Plans***

#### **.01 Auditor's Responsibility for Testing a Plan's Compliance With Qualification Issues**

*Inquiry*—What is the auditor's responsibility for testing a plan's compliance with top heavy rules, the Average Deferral Percentage Test, and other qualification issues?

*Reply*—An audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) is not designed to ensure compliance with all legislative and regulatory provisions. However, a plan must be designed to comply with all provisions, and must meet certain operating tests in order to maintain its qualified status. If specific information comes to the auditor's attention that provides evidence concerning the existence of possible violations of provisions that may affect the financial statements, he or she should apply auditing procedures specifically directed to ascertaining whether a violation has occurred. The auditor also is expected to inquire of, and obtain representation from, management concerning compliance with laws and regulations, and the controls in place to prevent violations of those laws and regulations that may cause the plan to lose its qualified status.

For further guidance, see chapter 11 and the "Plan Tax Status" section of chapter 12 of AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

#### **.02 Merger Date for Defined Contribution Plans**

*Inquiry*—If a defined contribution plan has an effective merger date, per the merger agreement, of December 31, 20X1, but a significant portion of the plan's assets have not been transferred as of December 31, 20X1, should the audit be done as of the December date, or when the majority of the assets were transferred? Would the answer be any different for a defined benefit plan? Would a liability representing the assets due to the acquiring plan be reflected on the statement of net assets if the audit date is December 31, 20X1?

*Reply*—For defined contribution plans, if there is a significant difference between the effective merger date per the merger agreement and the actual date assets were transferred, consideration should be given to performing an audit through the date of the actual transfer. However, all facts and circumstances should be considered, including management's intent, before determining the proper merger date.

For defined benefit plans, the merger typically is recorded on the effective merger date per the merger agreement because legal title to the assets, liabilities, and benefit obligations has transferred. In certain circumstances, it may be appropriate to record a liability representing the assets due the acquiring plan at year-end (for example, if the physical transfer from one plan to another has been requested and is pending).

---

[The next page is 6525.]



## Section 6937

### ***Auditing Defined Benefit Plans***

#### **.01 General Conditions Requiring an Audit of Pension Plan Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—What are the general conditions requiring an audit of pension plan financial statements?

*Reply*—An audit generally is required if the plan is covered under Title I of ERISA and there are over 100 participants as of the beginning of the plan year. Exhibit 5-2 in chapter 5 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans* provides guidance on determining who is considered a participant. In addition, DOL regulations permit plans that have between 80 and 120 participants at the beginning of the plan year to complete the Form 5500 in the same category (large plan or small plan) as was filed in the previous year.

---

**[The next page is 6531.]**



## Section 6938

### ***Auditing Health and Welfare Plans***

#### **.01 When Does a Health and Welfare Plan Require an Audit?**

*Inquiry*—When does a health and welfare plan require an audit?

*Reply*—A health and welfare plan is required to have an audit when the plan has more than 100 participants at the beginning of the plan year (this can be expanded to 120 if the 80–120-participant rule applies) and the plan is funded. According to DOL Regulation 2520.104-44, the existence of a separate fund or account for the plan by the employer or a third-party administrator can cause the requirement that funds be paid directly from the general assets of the sponsor not to be met. For example, if a separate account is maintained that would be deemed to be a trust under state law, the related plan would be deemed to be funded under ERISA. It is not always easy to determine when a plan is considered funded. The auditor may wish to consult with legal counsel, plan actuaries, or the DOL to determine if a plan meets the definition of funded.

#### **.02 Audit Requirements for Health and Welfare Plans**

*Inquiry*—Assume a partially insured H&W plan where the employer pays claims to a certain level and then reinsurance assumes the liability. There are over 100 participants, and the employer and employees each pay a portion of the premiums. The employee's share is paid on a pretax basis through a Section 125 plan. There is no trust established, but at year end there may be a minimal payable to the third party administrator for regular monthly charges and a small reinsurance receivable, depending on timing. Does this plan require an audit?

*Reply*—No, the plan does not require an audit. According to the fact pattern described, no separate trust exists to hold the assets of this plan, and therefore it is not a funded plan for ERISA purposes. ERISA exempts unfunded plans from the requirement to perform an annual audit. Participant contributions made through a Section 125 cafeteria plan are not required to be held in trust per DOL Technical Release 92-1, and as long as no trust is being utilized, no audit requirement exists.

For further guidance, see the “Welfare Benefit Plans” and “PWBA Technical Release 92-1” sections in appendix A of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

#### **.03 HIPAA Restrictions**

*Inquiry*—In recent audits of health and welfare plans, our firm has been denied access to personnel files because of Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA) rules. In such cases, it has prohibited us from performing certain procedures necessary to render our opinion on the financial statements, such as testing of birth date, hire date, elections, and other such information. How can we overcome this obstacle?

*Reply*—The items mentioned (birth date, hire date, elections) are not “protected health information” (PHI) under the HIPAA rules.

PHI is individually identifiable health information that is created or received from a health care provider, health plan, employer, or health care

clearinghouse; that either identifies or can be used to identify an individual; and relates to the individual's past, present, or future physical or mental health, to the provision of health care to an individual, or to the payment for the provision of health care to the individual. In other words, there are two components to PHI: (a) the identification of an individual, and (b) health information. Identification of an individual without the corresponding health information is not PHI, nor is health information without identifying the corresponding individual to whom it relates.

The first step is to understand what information is needed for the audit and whether it constitutes PHI. If access to PHI is necessary for the audit, HIPAA regulations allow for that access.

HIPAA privacy regulations indicate that a plan sponsor may not use or disclose protected health information except as permitted or required by the regulations. The regulations permit use of the "minimum necessary" information for use in health care operations, including conducting audits. If the auditor has signed a business associate agreement with the plan sponsor, then that auditor is considered a business associate under the regulations, and access to such minimum necessary information required for the audit should not be restricted by HIPAA.

Discussion with the plan sponsor may be necessary to demonstrate that the requested information is the minimum necessary for the audit and, if such information is not obtained, would result in a disclaimer of opinion.

For more information, call the Department of Labor Office of Health Plan Standards and Compliance Assistance at (202) 693-8335, or call EBSA's toll free inquiry line at 1-866-444-EBSA (3272). Health and Human Service (HHS) also has a toll-free number dealing with HIPAA privacy related issues. That number is 1-866-627-7748. You also may wish to visit the HHS Web site, [www.hhs.gov/ocr/hipaa](http://www.hhs.gov/ocr/hipaa).

#### **.04 Is a Health and Welfare Plan Required to Be Audited if Participants Are Contributing to the Plan?**

*Inquiry*—If participants are contributing to a health and welfare plan, is an audit required?

*Reply*—According to DOL Technical Release Nos. 88-1 and 92-1, participant contributions to a welfare plan that has an Internal Revenue Code (IRC) Section 125 cafeteria plan feature do not have to be held in trust. If contributions are not through a Section 125 plan and they are not used for the payment of insurance or health maintenance organization (HMO) premiums, generally, they will be required to be held in trust. If the plan is funded voluntarily or as required by DOL regulation, then the plan would require an audit.

#### **.05 Audit Requirement When Only Medical Is Funded Through a VEBA Trust**

*Inquiry*—If a plan offers several benefits under the plan document, and only the medical component is funded through the voluntary employees' beneficiary association (VEBA) trust, what is the audit requirement?

*Reply*—The reporting entity and thus the audit requirement is of the entire plan; not the trust. All benefits covered by the plan should be included in the audited financial statements.

#### **.06 Audit of Plan When VEBA Trust Is a Pass-Through**

*Inquiry*—If a VEBA trust is used as a pass-through for claims payment during the year, but there are no monies in the VEBA trust at year end, is an audit of the plan required?

*Reply*—If a plan is deemed to be funded for a part of a plan year, the entire plan year is subject to the audit requirement. All plan activity for the entire year would have to be included in the audited financial statements.

**.07 When Multiple Plans Use a VEBA Trust, Can the Audit Be Performed At the Trust Level?**

*Inquiry*—If multiple plans use a VEBA trust, can an audit be performed at the VEBA trust level?

*Reply*—The audit requirement is of the plan, not the trust. Each plan would require a separate audit if it individually met the audit requirement (see previous question). The auditor may be engaged to audit the VEBA trust in order to assist with the plan level allocation reporting, but this would not fulfill the plan level audit requirement.

**.08 Audit Requirement for Health and Welfare Plan Funded Through a 401(h) Account**

*Inquiry*—Does the funding of a health and welfare benefit plan through a 401(h) account, when the plan was otherwise unfunded, cause the plan to require an audit?

*Reply*—If the plan was otherwise unfunded, the 401(h) account association will not cause the health and welfare benefit plan to be considered funded for audit determination purposes.

---

[The next page is 6535.]



## Section 6939

### ***Auditor's Reports—Employee Benefit Plans***

#### **.02 Audit Opinion to Be Issued When Discrimination Testing Has Not Been Completed**

*Inquiry*—We have completed the audit of a plan except for reviewing the 401(k) and 401(m) discrimination testing, which has not yet been done and, quite possibly may not ever be done. If such testing is not performed, what type of audit opinion should be issued?

*Reply*—Independent auditors should inquire if the plan has complied with the annual limitation tests to determine if the plan has met the requirements in order to maintain its tax exempt status. Since the nondiscrimination requirements under 401(k) and 401(m) are required to be met annually, the independent auditor should understand the results of similar tests performed in the past and the reasons why the associated testing has not been performed in the current year. The auditor should be aware that any corrections, corrective distributions, or qualified nonelective contributions (QNECs) that would result from the failure of these compliance tests must be made before the end of the following plan year to preserve the plan's qualified status. If correction is to be made through refunds then a correction made within two and a half months after the plan's year end will avoid potential excise tax and preserve the plan's qualified tax status. In contrast, a refund after two and a half months triggers an excise tax payable by the plan sponsor. In the event that testing has not been completed for the year under audit, the auditor should consider the results of testing performed in the past and any corrections that were made and whether significant changes in the plan's demographics have occurred. The client should determine whether or not it is expected that a correction will be necessary, and should make an estimate for accrual purposes of the amount required for correction. Consideration should be given to modifying the tax note in the financial statements to indicate that the plan sponsor will take the necessary steps, if any, to bring the plan's operations into compliance with the Code. Similar wording also should be included in the management representation letter. If the results of the testing, when completed, are expected to be material based on similar issues in the past or discussions with the client and a correction amount cannot be reasonably estimated, the auditor should consider withholding his or her report until the testing is completed and the appropriate accruals recorded. If, however, the financial statements are issued and the client doesn't remedy or complete the tests by the next audit, the auditor should consider the effect on the financial statements as well as other implications as described in AU section 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), since the plan's tax qualified status may be in jeopardy.

For further guidance, see the "Plan Tax Status" section in chapter 12 of AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

---

[The next page is 6551.]



## Section 6940

### Franchisors

#### .01 Method of Accounting for Sale of Territorial Franchise Right

*Inquiry*—A client sells territorial franchise rights to region managers for \$30,000 with ten percent taken in cash and the remainder as a note. The region manager in turn sells franchises in his territory. The note is payable at the rate of \$1,000 per franchise sold in the territory but is due in three years regardless of the number of franchises sold.

The collectibility of the notes depends on the performance of the region managers. The company has been able to resell territories of managers who have been unsuccessful, and the down payments have been refunded in these instances.

What is the proper method of accounting for these franchise fees and the related costs of selling the territories?

*Reply*—In discussing initial franchise fees for area franchises, Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 952-605-25-5 states, in part: “. . . revenue ordinarily shall be recognized when all material services or conditions relating to the sale(s) have been substantially performed or satisfied by the franchisor.” FASB ASC 952-605-25-2 describes substantial performance as follows:

Substantial performance for the franchisor means that all of the following conditions have been met:

- a. The franchisor has no remaining obligation or intent—by agreement, trade practice, or law—to refund any cash received or forgive any unpaid notes or receivables.
- b. Substantially all of the initial services of the franchisor required by the franchise agreement have been performed.
- c. No other material conditions or obligations related to the determination of substantial performance exist.

Therefore, the sale of the regions is not a completed transaction which would allow the recognition of income when the sale is made (for example, when the down payment and notes are received) since the company's practice of refunding down payments to region managers and, in effect, excusing nonpayment of their notes would violate item (a).

Since payment of the notes is on the basis of specific performance (for example, at the rate of \$1,000 per franchise sold in the region), as a practical matter, a reasonable basis for recognizing deferred revenue would be over the estimated number of franchises to be opened in a region.

With regard to the costs of selling the territories, paragraphs 1–3 of FASB ASC 952-340-25 state the following:

Direct (incremental) costs relating to franchise sales for which revenue has not been recognized shall be deferred until the related revenue is recognized.

Deferred costs shall not exceed anticipated revenue less estimated additional related costs.

Costs yet to be incurred shall be accrued and charged against income no later than the period in which the related revenue is recognized . . .

Therefore, deferral and amortization of costs “incurred to produce the region sales” could be accounted for in a manner similar to the deferral and recognition

of revenue discussed in the preceding paragraph. The operating expenses of the company should be charged off as a period cost.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.02 Revenue Recognition for Franchisors**

*Inquiry*—A franchise agreement is entered into whereby the franchisor agrees to provide to a franchisee the technical information necessary to manufacture a product. In addition, the franchisor agrees to provide consultation needed to produce the product for the next five years. The agreement states that 80 percent of the franchise fee is to be paid in the first year of the agreement, and five percent is to be paid in each of the next four years. How should the franchisor recognize the revenue from this agreement?

*Reply*—This issue is addressed in FASB ASC 952. FASB ASC 952-605-25-4 states that “if it is probable that the continuing fee will not cover the cost of the continuing services to be provided by the franchisor and a reasonable profit on those continuing services, then a portion of the initial franchise fee shall be deferred and amortized over the life of the franchise. The portion deferred shall be an amount sufficient to cover the estimated cost in excess of continuing franchise fees and provide a reasonable profit on the continuing services.” The FASB ASC glossary defines *continuing franchise fees* as “consideration for the continuing rights granted by the franchise agreement and for general or specific services during its life.”

In the preceding situation, it is unlikely the five percent of revenues the franchisor will receive in years two through five is sufficient to cover the costs, and a reasonable profit, on the raw materials and services provided. Therefore, the franchisor should defer a portion of the first year’s franchise fee and amortize it over the next four years at a rate that will cover costs and provide a reasonable profit.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 6601.]

## Section 6950

### State and Local Governments

#### **.18 Accounting for the Issuance of Zero-Coupon Bonds and Other Deep Discount Debt by a Governmental Entity**

*Inquiry*—A governmental entity issues zero-coupon bonds due in 10 years. Even though bond interest and principal is not due until the end of the bond's term, a sinking fund was established. When should interest expense be recognized and principal payments be deducted from the debt?

*Reply*—The treatment by governmental entities of the bond discount related to deep-discount debt has not been specifically addressed in authoritative literature. As discussed in *Governmental Accounting, Auditing and Financial Reporting*, by the Government Finance Officers Association, the accrual of principal and interest payments for zero-coupon bonds and other deep-discount debt is not recommended because the requirement that payments be due "early in the next year" is not met. The face amount of the debt less the discount presented as a direct deduction should be presented in the general long-term debt account group. The net value of the bonds should be accreted (the discount reduced) over the life of the bonds in the long-term debt account group. This presentation shows what amount would be payable if the debt were required to be paid today. The interest method provides an acceptable means of amortizing the discount. However, the straight line amortization method may also be used if its application would not produce amounts that differ materially from those that would be achieved if the interest method were applied.

#### **.21 Auditor's Reports on Local Governments**

*Inquiry*—A state law referring to the audit of local governments requires every auditor's report to state that the audit was conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and with the auditing standards prescribed by the state auditor. The law also requires the auditor's report to conform with the standard report form and to contain a reference to a report of comments and recommendations.

May a CPA include such wording in the opinion if he or she has followed the standards prescribed by the state auditor and he or she has included a report of comments and recommendations?

*Reply*—A CPA may state in the report that the audit has been conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and with the standards prescribed by the state treasurer if the audit was in fact conducted in conformity with these standards.

Also a CPA may include in the auditor's report a reference to a report of comments and recommendations if such a report has in fact been issued. [Amended June 1995.]

#### **.22 State Accounting Guide Differs From GAAP**

*Inquiry*—Are reports on financial statements conforming to the State accounting guide requirements considered special reports under AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1)?

*Reply*—Yes. Reports on financial statements conforming to the State accounting guide requirements are considered special reports. Paragraph .04 of

AU section 623 states that a basis of accounting that an entity uses to comply with the requirements or financial reporting provisions of a government regulatory agency to whose jurisdiction it is subject is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles. Paragraph .08 of AU section 623 illustrates a special report for financial statements filed solely with the regulatory agency. In addition, chapter 14 of Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* discusses auditor reporting when law or regulation requires a government to prepare and file with a regulatory agency financial statements that do not constitute a complete presentation of all the financial statements required by GASB Statement No. 34, *Basic Financial Statements—and Management's Discussion and Analysis—for State and Local Governments*, but that otherwise are prepared in conformity with GAAP.

[Amended, June 1995; Amended, December 2004.]

---

[The next page is 6701.]

## Section 6960

### *Colleges and Universities*

#### **.12 Allocation of Overhead**

*Inquiry*—A private college has many individual restricted programs funded from federal, state and private contributions. One of the programs was charged a \$97,000 overhead expense amount, with the credit going to revenue in another program. Is it appropriate under generally accepted accounting principles to record revenue based on the overhead allocation?

*Reply*—No, it is inappropriate. The allocation of overhead is an interprogram transaction that should not be reported as revenue of the program providing the services but rather as a reduction of expense of such program. For additional information related to this topic, see chapter 16 of Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Entities*.

[Amended, June 1995.]

---

[The next page is 6751.]



## Section 6970

### *Entertainment Industry*

#### **.01 Changes in Film Impairment Estimates During Quarters Within a Fiscal Year (Part I)**

*Inquiry*—Company A produced a film that is subject to the requirements of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 926, *Entertainment—Films*. In accordance with paragraphs 12–17 of FASB ASC 926-20-35, Company A determined at the end of the first quarter of 20X1 that the film was impaired. Company A wrote down the film’s cost basis by \$2 million, which represents the amount that the film’s net book value exceeded the film’s fair value. Company A determined the film’s fair value by using a discounted cash flow model. At the end of the second quarter of 20X1, Company A determines based on updated information that the film’s estimated net cash flows will be greater than anticipated at the end of the first quarter. Is the change in the estimated net cash flows a circumstance under FASB ASC 926 that requires Company A to restore all or a portion of the film’s cost basis that was written off in the first quarter of 20X1?

*Reply*—Yes. FASB ASC 926-20-35-3 requires that changes in estimates during the fiscal year be applied retroactively from the beginning of the fiscal year.

In this situation, Company A would use the new information regarding the film’s estimated net cash flows gathered in the second quarter as if it were available in the first quarter to determine what the amount of the impairment loss would have been in the first quarter. Company A would record this adjustment to the impairment loss in the second quarter. Company A also would adjust the film’s cost amortization for the first and second quarters to reflect the revised impairment loss. Company A should not restate the first quarter. In accordance with FASB ASC 926-20-35-13, the amount of the impairment write down restored cannot result in the adjusted net book value exceeding the film’s fair value at the end of the second quarter. For example, if the revised first quarter calculation indicates that the impairment loss was only \$1 million at the end of the first quarter, the actual adjustment at the end of the second quarter would be different than the \$1 million because of the effect on the film’s cost amortization using the individual-film-forecast-computation method, and possibly the film’s fair value at the end of the second quarter. In addition, restorations of impairment write downs on a film should not exceed previous impairment write downs taken on that film.

FASB ASC 270-10-45-14 requires that Company A disclose the effect of the change in estimate in the period that the change occurred. For public registrants, the Management Discussion and Analysis should address material restorations of prior impairment write downs.

Note that had the change in estimated net cash flows occurred in the subsequent fiscal year, FASB ASC 926-20-35-13 would prohibit Company A from adjusting the impairment write down taken in 20X1.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

**.02 Changes in Film Impairment Estimates During Quarters Within a Fiscal Year (Part II)**

*Inquiry*—Assume the same facts in section 6970.01 with the following exception. The film's actual net cash inflow for the second quarter was as expected by Company A at the end of the first quarter. Company A, as expected, spent most of its advertising budget to promote the film during the second quarter. The film's estimated net cash inflow for subsequent periods also did not change. As a result of the advertising expenditures, using a discounted cash flow model at the end of the second quarter, the film's fair value increased from the amount determined at the end of the first quarter. Is that a circumstance under FASB ASC 926, for which Company A should restore all or a portion of the film's cost basis that was previously written off in the first quarter of 20X1?

*Reply*—No. In this situation the film's estimated net cash flows did not change from those used to estimate the film's fair value at the end of the first quarter. Accordingly, the guidance in FASB ASC 926-20-35-3 is not applicable.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 6851.]

## Section 6980

### ***Brokers and Dealers***

#### **.01 Auditor's Report on Internal Control for Broker-Dealer [Amended]**

*Inquiry*—Some state regulatory agencies are requesting that their name be included in the restrictive paragraph of the auditor's report on internal accounting control for broker-dealers. Because most broker-dealers must comply with Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) regulations, the report on internal accounting control from their auditors includes a report on the additional requirements of Rule 17a-5(g) as well as a report on their study and evaluation as part of an audit. The restriction paragraph of the report illustrated in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Brokers and Dealers in Securities* appendix C therefore includes the SEC as a designated recipient of the report and reads as follows:

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the Board of Directors, management, the SEC, *[designated self-regulatory organization]*, and other regulatory agencies that rely on Rule 17a-5(g) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 in their regulation of registered brokers and dealers, and should not be used for any other purpose.

One state agency suggested revising the paragraph to reflect other agencies as recipients as follows:

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the Board of Directors, management, the SEC, *[designated self-regulatory organization]*, and other regulatory agencies and should not be used for any other purpose.

Is this proposed revised wording appropriate in view of the fact that not all regulatory agencies use the SEC's Rule 17a-5(g) criteria or other established criteria for the evaluation of the adequacy of internal accounting control procedures for their purposes?

*Reply*—No. The previous suggested wording is not appropriate because the report would then be distributable to all other non-SEC regulatory agencies, and as stated, most agencies, including those of the 50 states, do not establish criteria in reasonable detail and in terms susceptible to objective application for the auditor's study, evaluation and report on the control procedures for the agencies' purposes.

[Amended, September 1997.]

---

[The next page is 6901.]



## Section 6990

### ***Common Interest Realty Associations***

#### **.01 Personal Property of Timeshares**

*Inquiry*—Should a common interest realty association (CIRA) that is a timeshare development report as assets personal property that it owns and uses as internal unit furnishings for timeshare units?

*Reply*—Yes. Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* 972-360-25-5 states, “Common interest realty associations shall recognize common personal property, such as furnishings, recreational equipment, maintenance equipment, and work vehicles, that is used by the common interest realty association in operating, preserving, maintaining, repairing, and replacing common property and providing other services, as assets.” Personal property that is owned by a CIRA and used as internal unit furnishings for timeshare units is common personal property that is used by the CIRA in providing other services.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 6911.]



## Section 6995

### Credit Unions

#### **.01 Financial Reporting Issues Related to Actions Taken by the National Credit Union Administration on January 28, 2009 in Connection With the Corporate Credit Union System and the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund**

*Inquiry*—On January 28, 2009, the National Credit Union Administration (NCUA) announced certain actions it was taking to stabilize the corporate credit union system. The NCUA indicated that the expense of the actions would be passed on proportionately to all federally-insured credit unions through the partial (currently estimated by NCUA to be 51 percent) write-off of such credit unions' existing deposits with the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund (NCUSIF), as well as the assessment of an insurance premium sufficient to return the NCUSIF's equity to insured shares ratio to 1.30 percent.

Federally insured credit unions (including corporate credit unions) are required to maintain a refundable deposit with the NCUSIF in an amount equal to one percent of the credit union's total insured shares. The amount on deposit in the insurance fund is periodically adjusted for changes in the balance of a credit union's insured shares. In addition, a credit union is required to pay an additional annual insurance premium equal to one-twelfth of one percent of its insured shares.

Credit unions also have their own financial system, the Corporate Credit Union Network, consisting of the U.S. Central Federal Credit Union (USC) and its member corporate credit unions. These state or regional corporate credit unions make available a wide range of investments and correspondent financial services for credit unions, and the USC serves as a financial intermediary for corporate credit unions. The USC and many of the corporate credit unions made investments in asset-backed securities that became impaired during 2008.

In a letter to federally-insured credit unions (NCUA Letter No. 09-CU-02) issued on January 28, 2009, the NCUA stated that the corporate credit union system is now facing unprecedented strains on its liquidity and capital due to credit market disruptions and the current economic climate, and that given the importance of the USC as a liquidity and payment systems provider to both corporate credit unions and, by extension, natural person credit unions, NCUA is taking decisive action to stabilize the USC's financial position and provide stability for the liquidity needs of the corporate system. In the letter, the NCUA announced two significant actions it was taking to address the current status of the corporate credit union system, as follows:

- The NCUA is injecting \$1 billion in cash from the NCUSIF into the USC in the form of capital. The NCUA has stated that while a capital infusion has cost implications for all credit unions, it is a lower cost alternative than liquidation and sale of the distressed securities held by the USC in today's market. The staff notes that in the *unaudited* January 2009 financial statements of the NCUSIF, this investment in the USC was immediately written off.
- The NCUA is offering a voluntary temporary NCUSIF guarantee of member shares in corporate credit unions through December 31, 2010. The guarantee will cover all shares, but does not include paid-in capital and membership capital accounts. The NCUA believes the guarantee

helps provide stability to meet the liquidity needs of the corporate system, which will allow for the orderly pay down of stressed securities and, in turn, reduces the overall resolution cost. The NCUA's initial estimate of the liability attributable to this guarantee is \$3.7 billion, based on current corporate credit union balance sheets (that is, the holdings of impaired asset-backed securities) and the modeling of various market scenarios. The NCUA has indicated that this estimate could change significantly depending on a host of factors including, but not limited to, credit loss estimates.

In consideration of AU section 560, *Subsequent Events* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), do the actions of the NCUA constitute a type 1 or type 2 subsequent event with regard to the valuation of a federally-insured credit union's NCUSIF deposit at December 31, 2008? Secondly, when and how should the obligation for the insurance premium be recognized for financial reporting purposes?

*Reply—*

*Issue 1: NCUSIF Deposit.* The AICPA staff believes that there is diversity in opinion on this issue and based on the facts known at the time this question and answer was issued, the staff does not express a preference for either of the views discussed in the following paragraphs.

Existing authoritative guidance for the accounting for the NCUSIF deposit is in Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 942-325-25-3, which states the following:

For credit unions and corporate credit unions, amounts deposited with the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund shall be accounted for and reported as assets as long as such amounts are fully refundable.

FASB ASC 942-325-35-4 further states the following:

The refundability of National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund deposits shall be reviewed for impairment. When the refundability of a deposit is evaluated, the financial condition of both the credit union and of the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund shall be considered. Deposits may be returned to solvent credit unions for a number of reasons, including termination of insurance coverage, conversion to insurance coverage from another source, or transfer of operations of the insurance fund from the National Credit Union Administration Board. However, insolvent or bankrupt credit unions shall not be entitled to a return of their deposits. To the extent that National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund deposits are not refundable, they shall be charged to expense in the period in which the deposits are made or the assets become impaired.

- **Alternative A—Type 1 Subsequent Event**

AU section 560 states that a type 1 subsequent event is an event that provides additional evidence with respect to conditions that existed at the date of the balance sheet and affects the estimates inherent in the process of preparing financial statements. It further states, "All information that becomes available prior to the issuance of the financial statements should be used by management in its evaluation of the conditions on which the estimates were based. The financial statements should be adjusted for any changes in estimates resulting from the use of such evidence." AU section 560 also states that subsequent events affecting the realization of assets, such as receivables and inventories or the settlement of estimated liabilities, ordinarily will require adjustment of the financial statements because

such events typically represent the culmination of conditions that existed over a relatively long period of time.

Proponents of type 1 subsequent event accounting maintain that the actions taken by the NCUA on January 28, 2009 constitute additional evidence regarding strained liquidity and capital deterioration conditions that existed at December 31, 2008, and that the NCUA announcement on January 28, 2009 of the partial write-off of the NCUSIF deposit is a confirmation of those conditions at December 31, 2008.

Proponents of this view also believe that Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF) Issue No. 87-22, "Prepayments to the Secondary Reserve of the FSLIC," addresses a situation that may be considered relevant. Similar to the NCUSIF, the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation (FSLIC) required insured institutions to make annual prepayments of their regular future insurance premiums. In May 1987, the Federal Home Loan Bank Board eliminated the secondary reserve of the FSLIC as of December 31, 1986. The Task Force reached a consensus that the impairment of the secondary reserve of the FSLIC was a type 1 subsequent event.

- **Alternative B—Type 2 Subsequent Event**

AU section 560 states that a type 2 subsequent event consists of those events that provide evidence with respect to conditions that did not exist at the date of the balance sheet being reported on, but arose subsequent to that date. These events should not result in adjustment of the financial statements.

Proponents of type 2 subsequent event accounting refer to the NCUA's disclosures that it had no obligation to undertake the actions approved on January 28, 2009, and that the NCUSIF deposits were refundable under the circumstances noted in FASB ASC 942-325-25 and FASB ASC 942-325-35 until January 28, 2009. As such, proponents of this view believe that the NCUSIF deposits did not become impaired until January 28, 2009.

Proponents of this view also believe that EITF Topic No. D-47, "Accounting for the Refund of Bank Insurance Fund and Savings Association Insurance Fund Premiums," in which the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) staff expressed their belief that insured institutions should not accrue a liability for a potential special assessment of deposit insurance premium until the period in which any proposed legislation is enacted, can be used by analogy to support their view regarding the NCUSIF deposit.

*Issue 2: Premium Assessment.*

- **View A—Record in 2009.** Proponents of this view support recognition of the obligation to pay the insurance premium when assessed, at January 28, 2009, and refer to FASB ASC 942-325-35-4(c), which states that to the extent that the NCUA Board assesses premiums to cover prior operating losses of the insurance fund or to increase the fund balance to "normal operating levels," credit unions should expense those premiums when assessed.

Further reference is made to the aforementioned EITF Topic No. D-47, in which the FASB staff expressed their belief that insured institutions should not accrue a liability for a potential special assessment of deposit insurance premium until the period in which any proposed legislation is enacted.

- **View B—Record in 2008.** If NCUSIF deposit impairment is recognized in 2008, proponents of view B believe that both the NCUSIF deposit impairment and the additional premium assessment relate to the

same event and conditions that caused the deposit impairment that existed at December 31, 2008, and that both should be recorded as of December 31, 2008.

[Issue Date: March 2009; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

## **.02 Evaluation of Capital Investments in Corporate Credit Unions for Other-Than-Temporary Impairment**

*Inquiry*—In a letter to its shareholders on February 2, 2009, the U.S. Central Federal Credit Union (USC) explained its financial position to other corporate credit unions that have direct capital investments in the USC in the form of membership capital shares (MCS) and paid-in capital (PIC). The letter also explained that on December 31, 2008, \$450 million of members' MCS were converted to a new form of capital, paid-in capital II (PIC II). On January 28, 2009, the USC announced that it would record other-than-temporary impairment (OTTI) charges of approximately \$1.2 billion for 2008 in relation to its portfolio of asset-backed securities as a result of severe deterioration in economic and market data during the fourth quarter of 2008, and that this charge resulted in an accumulated deficit (negative retained earnings) for the USC of approximately \$493 million. The staff notes that audited financial statements of the USC as of and for the year ended December 31, 2008 were not available at the time of issuance of this question and answer. On January 28, 2009, the National Credit Union Administration (NCUA) announced that it was injecting \$1.0 billion from the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund (NCUSIF) in the form of new PIC to the USC, which is senior to all other forms of USC capital. The staff notes that in the *unaudited* January 2009 financial statements of the NCUSIF, this investment in the USC was immediately written off.

According to the NCUA Rules and Regulations, *membership capital* means funds contributed by members that are

- adjustable balance with a minimum withdrawal notice of three years or are term certificates with a minimum term of three years.
- available to cover losses that exceed retained earnings and PIC.
- not insured by the NCUSIF or other share or deposit insurers.
- cannot be pledged against borrowings.

*Paid-in capital* means accounts or other interests of a corporate credit union that are

- perpetual, noncumulative dividend accounts.
- available to cover losses that exceed retained earnings.
- not insured by the NCUSIF or other share or deposit insurers.
- cannot be pledged against borrowings.

How should a corporate credit union evaluate its MCS and PIC in the USC for OTTI at December 31, 2008? Similarly, how should a natural person credit union evaluate its MCS and PIC investments in other corporate credit unions for OTTI at December 31, 2008?

*Reply*—The staff believes the following authoritative literature is helpful in making that evaluation.

FASB ASC 320, *Investments—Debt and Equity Securities*, addresses equity securities that have readily determinable fair values. As there is no active market for MCS or PIC investments, FASB ASC 320 would not apply. FASB ASC 323, *Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures*, generally requires

that investments in common stock that result in the investor having the ability to exert significant influence over the issuer be accounted for using the equity method. Otherwise, the cost method would apply. FASB ASC 323 also indicates that a series of operating losses of an investee or other factors may indicate that a decrease in value of the investment has occurred, which is other than temporary and should accordingly be recognized, and reference is then made to FASB ASC 320. MCS and PIC do not represent common stock investments; however, the concepts of FASB ASC 323 can be considered. According to the aforementioned USC letter to corporate credit unions, the ownership of MCS or PIC, or both, by any particular corporate credit union would not provide it the opportunity to exert significant influence over the USC, particularly given "one member, one vote." As such, it appears appropriate to consider investments in MCS and PIC cost method equity investments and that evaluation for impairment by corporate credit unions is required.

Although FASB ASC 320 does not specifically apply to MCS and PIC, FASB ASC 320 addresses issues of impairment and includes within its scope cost method equity investments. FASB ASC 958-325-35-8 states that the guidance in this Subtopic is applicable for investments in equity securities that are not subject to the scope of FASB ASC 320 and not accounted for under the equity method pursuant to FASB ASC 958-810-05-5. FASB ASC 320-10-35-25 provides guidance on how to determine impairment on such cost-basis investments without readily determinable fair values.

Step 1 of the impairment framework detailed in paragraphs 20–29 of FASB ASC 320-10-35 requires an investor to determine whether or not the fair value of the investment is less than its cost basis. FASB ASC 320-10-35-25 regarding cost-method investments (that have no readily determinable fair value) states the following:

Because the fair value of cost-method investments is not readily determinable, the evaluation of whether an investment is impaired shall be determined as follows:

- a. If an entity has estimated the fair value of a cost-method investment (for example, for disclosure under Section 825-10-50, that estimate shall be used to determine if the investment is impaired for the reporting periods in which the entity estimates fair value. If the fair value of the investment is less than its cost, proceed to Step 2.
- b. For reporting periods in which an entity has not estimated the fair value of a cost-method investment, the entity shall evaluate whether an event or change in circumstances has occurred in that period that may have a significant adverse effect on the fair value of the investment (an impairment indicator).

FASB ASC 320-10-35-27 further states the following:

Impairment indicators include, but are not limited to:

- a. A significant deterioration in the earnings performance, credit rating, asset quality, or business prospects of the investee
- b. A significant adverse change in the regulatory, economic, or technological environment of the investee
- c. A significant adverse change in the general market condition of either the geographic area or the industry in which the investee operates

- d. A bona fide offer to purchase (whether solicited or unsolicited), an offer by the investee to sell, or a completed auction process for the same or similar security for an amount less than the cost of the investment
- e. Factors that raise significant concerns about the investee's ability to continue as a going concern, such as negative cash flows from operations, working capital deficiencies, or noncompliance with statutory capital requirements or debt covenants.

FASB ASC glossary defines *fair value* as "the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date." The staff understands that, in practice, fair value disclosures under FASB ASC 825-10-50 for MCS and PIC have generally reflected redemption values (at par), and have recognized that such investments were interest-earning at assumed market rates of interest. This is similar to historical fair value disclosures for investments in Federal Home Loan Bank stock.

FASB ASC 320-10-35-30 states the following:

When the fair value of an investment is less than its cost at the balance sheet date of the reporting period for which impairment is assessed, the impairment is either temporary or other than temporary. An entity shall apply the following guidance and other guidance that is pertinent to the determination of whether an impairment is other than temporary, such as the guidance in Section 325-40-35, as applicable. *Other than temporary* does not mean permanent.

The staff notes that entities holding MSC or PIC should first determine whether fair values are believed to be less than the cost bases of the respective holdings at the balance sheet date. If so, such impairment is assessed as either temporary or other than temporary. In this regard, SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin Topic 5M indicates the following:

The value of investments in marketable securities classified as either available-for-sale or held-to-maturity may decline for various reasons. The market price may be affected by general market conditions which reflect prospects for the economy as a whole or by specific information pertaining to an industry or an individual company. Such declines require further investigation by management. Acting upon the premise that a write-down may be required, management should consider all available evidence to evaluate the realizable value of its investment.

There are numerous factors to be considered in such an evaluation and their relative significance will vary from case to case. The staff believes that the following are only a few examples of the factors which, individually or in combination, indicate that a decline is other than temporary and that a write-down of the carrying value is required:

- a. The length of the time and the extent to which the market value has been less than cost;
- b. The financial condition and near-term prospects of the issuer, including any specific events which may influence the operations of the issuer such as changes in technology that may impair the earnings potential of the investment or the discontinuance of a segment of the business that may affect the future earnings potential; or

- c. The intent and ability of the holder to retain its investment in the issuer for a period of time sufficient to allow for any anticipated recovery in market value.

Unless evidence exists to support a realizable value equal to or greater than the carrying value of the investment, a write-down to fair value accounted for as a realized loss should be recorded. In accordance with the guidance of paragraph 16 of Statement 115, such loss should be recognized in the determination of net income of the period in which it occurs and the written down value of the investment in the company becomes the new cost basis of the investment.

Accordingly, investors should consider an evaluation of the financial position of the USC and its ability to redeem the MSC or PIC within anticipated time frames. The staff believes the audited financial statements of the USC as of and for the year ended December 31, 2008 would be useful evidence to appropriately evaluate MSC or PIC for other-than-temporary impairment. The evaluation for impairment should consider the specific facts and circumstances, including consideration of the regulatory capital requirements of the USC. However, the staff does not believe that regulatory capital requirements should be the primary consideration for assessing whether impairment is other than temporary. As noted earlier in this question and answer, the NCUSIF has immediately written off the investment in the USC. The staff believes this action by the NCUSIF should be considered in the assessment of whether impairment is deemed to be other than temporary.

The staff also notes that a natural person credit union that invests in a corporate credit union whose direct investment may be impaired, should evaluate that investment for other-than-temporary impairment using the same guidance noted earlier. The staff notes that the evaluation for impairment in any of these cases should be determined in view of the specific facts and circumstances.

[Issue Date: March 2009; Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 7001.]**



**TIS Section 7000****SPECIALIZED ORGANIZATIONAL PROBLEMS**

---

**TABLE OF CONTENTS***Section*

7200	Partnerships
	.01 Balance Sheet Presentation of Drawings in Excess of Capital Contributions
	.02 Provision for Income Taxes on Partnership Income
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	.08 Income Allocation of Limited Partnership
7400	Related Parties
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Exchange of Interest Bearing Note for Non-Interest Bearing Note
7500	Estates and Trusts
	[.01] Reserved
7600	Business Combinations—General
	[.01-.09] Reserved
7610	Purchase Method
	[.01-.24] Reserved
7620	Applicability of Pooling of Interests Method
	[.01-.18] Reserved
7630	Application of Pooling of Interests Method
	[.01-.02] Reserved

---

**[The next page is 7071.]**



## Section 7200

### Partnerships

#### **.01 Balance Sheet Presentation of Drawings in Excess of Capital Contributions**

*Inquiry*—Two partners each contributed capital of \$100 to form a partnership for the construction of a shopping center. The partnership has obtained several loans to fund the construction, but no payments on these loans are due for two years. The partners each withdrew excess funds of \$50,000 from the partnership out of the proceeds of the loans.

How would the balance sheet show the \$200 of capital and \$100,000 of withdrawals?

*Reply*—Whether the \$50,000 payments to the partners are permissible depends on the terms of the construction loan commitment. If the partnership agreement is silent concerning these payments, and they are, in fact, not loans to the partners, the \$50,000 withdrawn by each partner represents drawings in anticipation of profits. As drawing accounts, they would normally be closed to the partners' capital accounts. In the situation presented, it would result in a "negative" capital account for each partner in the amount of \$49,900 in the partners' equity section of the balance sheet. Full disclosure of the circumstances causing the negative balance should also be included.

#### **.02 Provision for Income Taxes on Partnership Income**

*Inquiry*—A partnership agreement provides that in computing net profits, there will be a provision for income taxes, and the amount of the provision for income taxes will be considered an expense of the partnership. In the preparation of the income statement, would the net profit figure after income taxes be considered as having been determined according to generally accepted accounting principles?

*Reply*—Between themselves, partners may agree to compute net profits in any fashion they wish; but for financial presentation purposes, a provision for income taxes should not be set up. The absence of this item in the financial statement can be explained in the form of a footnote to the income statement. If the income statement shows a net profit figure after income taxes, the statement is not prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

**.08 Income Allocation of Limited Partnership**

*Inquiry*—A real estate limited partnership allocates the depreciation deduction entirely to the limited partners in accordance with the provisions of the partnership agreement. This is done in order to induce investment in the venture by the limited partners. Would such an allocation in the financial statements conform with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP)?

*Reply*—Yes. Allocation of partnership income is determined by the partnership agreement. Therefore, in computing the income allocable to the limited and general partners, the depreciation deduction may be allocated entirely to the limited partners, in financial statements prepared in conformity with GAAP.

---

[The next page is 7351.]

## Section 7400

### ***Related Parties***

#### **.06 Exchange of Interest Bearing Note for Non-Interest Bearing Note**

*Inquiry*—Corporation A has an interest bearing note receivable from an officer/shareholder. Corporation A plans to exchange the present note for a non-interest bearing note. Should the non-interest bearing note be discounted in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 835, *Interest*?

*Reply*—Yes. The non-interest bearing note should be discounted in accordance with FASB ASC 835, and there should be recognition of compensation or a dividend distribution, depending on what the unstated right or privilege represents.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

**[The next page is 8301.]**



# TIS Section 8000

## AUDIT FIELD WORK

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Section

8100	Generally Accepted Auditing Standards
	.01 Determining the Effective Date of a New Statement on Auditing Standards for Audits of a Single Financial Statement
	.02 Determining the Effective Date of a New Statement of Auditing Standards for Audits of Interim Periods
8200	Internal Control
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Determining Accuracy of Cash Collections for Coin-Operated Machines
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	.05 Testing the Operating Effectiveness of Internal Control
	.06 The Meaning of Expectation of the Operating Effectiveness of Controls
	.07 Considering a Substantive Audit Strategy
	.08 Obtaining an Understanding of the Control Environment
	.09 Assessing Inherent Risk
	.10 Defaulting to Maximum Control Risk
	.11 Ineffective Controls
	.12 Use of Walkthroughs
	.13 Documenting Internal Control
	.14 Suggesting Improvements in Internal Control
	.15 Identifying Significant Deficiencies
	.16 Examining Journal Entries
8220	Sampling
	.01 Application of SAS No. 39
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Adequate Size for Nonstatistical Samples
	.04 Documentation Requirements of SAS No. 39
	.05 Methods to Select Representative Sample
8310	Audit Evidence: Securities
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Confirmation of Securities Held in Street Name [Amended]

*Section*

- 8320     Audit Evidence: Inventories
- .01 Reliance on Observation of Inventories at an Interim Date
  - .02 Observation of Physical Inventory on a First Audit [Amended]
  - .03 Cost of Inventories Acquired From Principal Stockholder
  - .04 Reliance on Estimates of Coal Inventories by Experts
  - .05 Dates of Observation of Inventories Which Are Kept on Perpetual Records
  - .06 Observation of Consignment Inventories Stored in Public Warehouse [Amended]
- 8330     Audit Evidence: Fixed Assets
- .01 Verification of Real Estate Ownership
  - .02 Examination of Assets of a Rental Company
- 8340     Audit Evidence: Confirmation Procedures
- [.01] Reserved
  - [.02] Reserved
  - .03 Confirmation of Balances Due on Loans
  - [.04] Reserved
  - [.05] Reserved
  - [.06] Reserved
  - [.07] Reserved
  - [.08] Reserved
  - .09 Insurance Claims [Amended]
  - .10 Letter of Inquiry to Client's Attorney [Amended]
  - .11 Receivables in Cash Basis Financial Statements
  - [.12] Reserved
  - [.13] Reserved
  - [.14] Reserved
  - [.15] Reserved
  - .16 Retention of Returned Confirmations When a Schedule of Confirmation Results is Prepared
- 8345     Audit Evidence: Destruction of Documents
- .01 Audit Considerations When Client Evidence and Corroborating Evidence in Support of the Financial Statements Has Been Destroyed by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster
  - .02 Considerations When Audit Documentation Has Been Destroyed by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster
- 8350     Audit Evidence: Audit Documentation
- .01 Current Year Audit Documentation Contained in the Permanent File

*Section*

- 8900 Predecessor/Successor Auditors
- .01 Communications Between Predecessor Accountant and Successor Auditor
  - .02 Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors
  - .03 Communications With a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations
  - .04 Unavailability of the Working Papers of a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations
  - .05 Significant Audit Procedures Performed by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations 2007
  - .06 Successor Auditor Becomes Aware of Information That Leads Him or Her to Believe That Financial Statements Reported On by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations May Be Materially Misstated
  - .07 Reports on Audited Financial Statements Presented With Prior-Period Financial Statements Audited by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations
  - .08 Reports on Audited Financial Statements of a Nonpublic Entity Presented With Prior-Period Financial Statements Compiled or Reviewed by a Predecessor Accountant Who Has Ceased Operations
  - .09 Reports on Compiled or Reviewed Financial Statements Presented With Prior-Period Financial Statements Compiled, Reviewed, or Audited by a Predecessor Accountant Who Has Ceased Operations
  - .10 Successor Accountant's Responsibilities Under SSARSs When He or She Becomes Aware That Prior-Period Financial Statements Reported On by a Predecessor Accountant Who Has Ceased Operations May Require Revision
- 

[The next page is 8331.]



## Section 8100

# Generally Accepted Auditing Standards

### .01 Determining the Effective Date of a New Statement on Auditing Standards for Audits of a Single Financial Statement

*Inquiry*—The Auditing Standards Board issues a Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) and the effective date is as follows: “This standard is effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2006.” If an auditor is engaged to perform an audit of only the balance sheet as of December 31, 2006, would the new standard be effective?

*Reply*—In determining whether the standard is effective to an audit of a single statement, the auditor needs to determine whether the standard would be effective if the auditor was engaged to audit the entity’s complete set of financial statements. If the standard would be effective when auditing a complete set of financial statements, the standard is effective when auditing a single statement. If the standard would not be effective when auditing a complete set of financial statements, the standard is not effective when auditing a single statement. To illustrate, refer to the following examples:

*Example 1*—Entity’s year began January 1, 2006, and ends December 31, 2006; would the standard apply to an audit of only the balance sheet as of December 31, 2006?

No, because the standard is not effective until periods beginning on or after December 15, 2006. Because the standard would not be effective if engaged to audit the complete set of financial statements, the standard is not effective if engaged to audit only the balance sheet.

*Example 2*—Entity’s year begins November 1, 2006, and ends October 31, 2007; would the standard apply to an audit of only the balance sheet as of June 30, 2007 (or as of any date during their year)?

No, for same reason as stated in Example 1.

*Example 3*—Entity’s year begins December 25, 2006, and ends December 21, 2007 (52–53 weeks); would the standard be effective if the auditor is engaged to audit only the balance sheet as of December 31, 2006?

Yes, because the fiscal period began after December 15, 2006, the standard would be effective if engaged to audit a complete set of financial statements for this period. Therefore, the standard is effective for an audit of the balance sheet only.

*Example 4*—Entity’s year begins January 1, 2007, and ends December 31, 2007; would the standard be effective if the auditor is engaged to audit only the balance sheet as of January 31, 2007?

Yes, for the same reason as stated in Example 3.

### .02 Determining the Effective Date of a New Statement of Auditing Standards for Audits of Interim Periods

*Inquiry*—The Auditing Standards Board issues a Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) and the effective date is as follows: “This standard is effective

for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 2006.” If an auditor is engaged to perform an “interim audit” of an entity’s financial statements, would the standard apply?

*Reply*—The auditor should refer to the entity’s normal fiscal year to determine whether the standard is effective. To illustrate, refer to the following examples:

*Example 1*—Entity’s year begins January 1, 2007. The standard would be effective for an audit of financial statements for the three-month period ending March 31, 2007, because the interim period began after December 15, 2006.

*Example 2*—Entity’s year begins October 1, 2006. The standard would not be effective for an audit of financial statements for the six-month period ending March 31, 2007, because the interim period began prior to December 15, 2006.

---

[The next page is 8371.]

## Section 8200

### Internal Control

#### .02 Determining Accuracy of Cash Collections for Coin-Operated Machines

*Inquiry*—How can the accuracy of the cash collections be determined for a chain of laundromats with several thousand machines? The coin-operated machines do not employ the use of meters, counters, locked boxes, or any other devices that would provide a basis for control.

*Reply*—One method to determine if the machines' receipts are being surrendered intact is to occasionally fill selected coin-operated machines with marked coins. The subsequent collections can then be reviewed to make sure the same coins have been turned in. It may also be possible to correlate revenues with consumption of water and electricity by these machines. Furthermore, it may be possible to determine the expected revenues from an installation and the extent to which the machines are being used by observation of the activities of selected installations.

#### .05 Testing the Operating Effectiveness of Internal Control

*Inquiry*—Where the auditor anticipates the entity may not have effective internal control, does AU section 314, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), require the auditor to obtain an understanding of internal control even if he or she intends to design a substantive audit approach and not rely on controls?

*Reply*—Yes. Paragraph .40 of AU section 314 states in part

The auditor should obtain an understanding of the five components of internal control sufficient to assess the risk of material misstatement<sup>1</sup> of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud and to design the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures. The auditor should obtain a sufficient understanding by performing risk assessment procedures to evaluate the design of controls relevant to an audit of financial statements and to determine whether they have been implemented.

An understanding of internal control involves considering whether controls, individually or in combination with other controls, are capable of effectively preventing or detecting and correcting material misstatements. In addition, paragraph .48 of AU section 314 states in part

... it is not necessary to assess all controls in connection with assessing the risks of material misstatement and designing and performing further audit procedures in response to assessed risks. It is a matter of the auditor's professional judgment as to the controls or combination of controls that should be assessed. However, as stated in paragraph .115, for significant risks, to the extent the auditor has not already done so, the auditor should evaluate the design of the entity's related controls, including relevant control activities, and determine whether they have been implemented.

When the auditor believes, based on the understanding of controls, that controls are capable of effectively preventing or detecting and correcting material

---

<sup>1</sup> Footnote 12 in paragraph .26 of AU section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), defines the risk of material misstatement as the product of inherent risk and control risk.

misstatements, the auditor may initially assess control risk at less than maximum during the risk assessment phase of the audit. This initial assessment of control risk is subject to the satisfactory results of the tests of the operating effectiveness of those controls to support that control risk assessment. Whether an auditor initially assesses control risk at less than maximum, and the degree thereof, is a matter of professional judgment.

In contrast, when the auditor believes, based on the understanding of controls, that controls are not capable of preventing or detecting and correcting material misstatements, the auditor would assess control risk as maximum, and the auditor would plan and perform substantive procedures to appropriately respond to the identified risks. In this situation, the auditor may identify missing or ineffective controls. The auditor must evaluate identified control deficiencies and determine whether these deficiencies, individually or in combination, are significant deficiencies or material weaknesses. Control deficiencies identified during the audit that upon evaluation are considered significant deficiencies or material weaknesses under this section must be communicated in writing to management and those charged with governance.<sup>2</sup> Also, in this circumstance, the auditor needs to be satisfied that performing substantive procedures alone would enable the auditor to design and perform an appropriate audit strategy and provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support his or her audit opinion.

#### **.06 The Meaning of Expectation of the Operating Effectiveness of Controls**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph .23 of AU section 318, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), requires auditors to perform tests of controls when the auditor's risk assessment includes an expectation of the operating effectiveness of controls or when substantive procedures alone do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the relevant assertion level. What does *expectation of the operating effectiveness of controls* mean?

*Reply*—The phrase *expectation of the operating effectiveness of controls* means that the auditor's understanding of the five components of internal control has enabled him or her to initially assess control risk at less than maximum; and the auditor's strategy contemplates a combined approach of designing and performing tests of controls and substantive procedures. As stated above, the auditor's initial assessment of control risk is preliminary and subject to the satisfactory results of the tests of the operating effectiveness of those controls.

#### **.07 Considering a Substantive Audit Strategy**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph .08 of AU section 318 states in part

In some cases, the auditor may determine that performing only substantive procedures is appropriate for specific relevant assertions and risks. In those circumstances, the auditor may exclude the effect of controls from the relevant risk assessment. This may be because the auditor's risk assessment procedures have not identified any effective controls relevant to the assertion or because testing the operating effectiveness of controls would be inefficient.

Does this mean that an all substantive audit approach may be followed even if the auditor's understanding of internal control causes him or her to believe that controls are designed effectively?

---

<sup>2</sup> See AU section 325A, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1).

*Reply*—Yes. After the auditor identifies and assesses the risks of material misstatement, the auditor's decision about whether to test the operating effectiveness of controls may be considered within a cost-benefit framework. If the auditor believes that the benefit of testing control operating effectiveness—both in terms of audit efficiency and effectiveness—is less than the cost of testing controls, the auditor may be inclined to adopt an audit strategy (or modify a preliminary strategy) that excludes testing controls. If testing the operating effectiveness of controls would not be effective or efficient, it will then be necessary to perform substantive procedures that respond to the assessed risks for specific assertions.

However, even in smaller entities, there may be well-designed controls that are operating effectively. For example, there may be controls over revenues that, if tested, could reduce the extent of substantive procedures.

The extent of substantive testing cannot be reduced based on the premise of effective controls, unless the effective operation of such controls has been tested.

### **.08 Obtaining an Understanding of the Control Environment**

*Inquiry*—In smaller entities, the control environment might be less formal than larger entities. Is the auditor required to obtain an understanding of these less formal controls, and when do these controls need to be tested?

*Reply*—AU section 314 states that the auditor's understanding of internal control should encompass the five components of internal control as described in *Internal Control-Framework*, published by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. This includes obtaining a sufficient understanding of the design of controls such as those that are part of the control environment to evaluate the design of controls relevant to an audit of financial statements and to determine whether they have been implemented.

Even in audits of smaller entities, auditors may rely on the control environment to determine the nature, timing, and extent of further auditor procedures. If an auditor chooses to rely on these controls, then the auditor is presumptively required<sup>3</sup> to test those controls.<sup>4</sup>

It is preferable to evaluate the control environment early on in the audit process. This is because the results of the auditor's evaluation of these controls could affect the nature, timing, and extent of other planned audit procedures. For example, weaknesses in the control environment may undermine the effectiveness of other control components and, therefore, be negative factors in the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement, in particular in relation to the risks of fraud.

### **.09 Assessing Inherent Risk**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph .21 of AU section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), defines inherent risk as “the susceptibility of a relevant assertion to a misstatement that could be material, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, assuming that there are no related controls.” In situations in which the auditor's methodology makes separate assessments of inherent risk and control risk, does this mean that an auditor can ignore the assessment of control risk

---

<sup>3</sup> See paragraph .23 of AU section 318, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1).

<sup>4</sup> Chapter 4 of the AICPA Audit Guide *Assessing and Responding to Audit Risk in a Financial Statement Audit* provides further guidance about obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control, and about evaluating and testing entity level controls, including the control environment.

in his or her assessment of the combined risks of material misstatement if inherent risk is assessed as low?

*Reply*—No. Paragraph .23 of AU section 312 states, in part

The auditor should assess the risk of material misstatement<sup>5</sup> at the relevant assertion level as a basis for further audit procedures. Although that assessment is a judgment rather than a precise measurement of risk, the auditor should have an appropriate basis for that assessment.

Because an auditor is required to assess the combined risk of material misstatement, an auditor can not ignore control risk regardless of his or her assessment of inherent risk. While auditing standards do not require separate assessments to be performed, they do require an assessment of risk of material misstatement that includes control risk.

While not required by generally accepted auditing standards, some audit methodologies may express the assessment of inherent risk in quantitative terms (for example, percentages) or nonquantitative terms (for example, high, medium, or low). The auditor's assessment of inherent risk should exclude the effect of any related controls. Therefore, if an auditor assesses inherent risk as low, an auditor has to be careful whether his or her judgment was influenced by the effect of certain controls.

For example, assume an auditor is auditing a balance sheet account that he or she expects to have only one adjustment per month posted to it. The auditor believes that the monthly adjustment is relatively easy to calculate. Assume further that the auditor's methodology calls for the auditor, as part of performing risk assessment procedures, to assess inherent risk at the assertion level as high, medium, or low. The auditor assesses the susceptibility of inherent risk as low because the auditor believes that the amount is relatively easy to calculate, but also partially because the auditor has not identified a misstatement in this account in prior year audits and believes that the bookkeeper is capable of recording the correct monthly amount.

In this example, the auditor's professional judgment as to the assessment of inherent risk was influenced by the auditor's belief that the bookkeeper is competent and has never made an error in prior years in posting the monthly adjustment. As a result, the auditor's assessment of inherent risk did not assume that there are no controls because there are some controls in place that the bookkeeper applies in making his or her monthly adjustment.

Therefore, an auditor has to be careful when assessing inherent risk as "low" because he or she may be assuming that certain basic controls are in place and operating effectively. In such cases, the auditor may actually be making a combined assessment of the risks of material misstatement rather than assessing only inherent risk.

As discussed in section 8200.05, *Testing the Operating Effectiveness of Internal Control*, an initial assessment of effective controls (even a basic control) is subject to the satisfactory results of the tests of the operating effectiveness of those controls.

## **.10 Defaulting to Maximum Control Risk**

*Inquiry*—AU section 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit* (superseded by AU sections 314 and 318), paragraph .83 stated in part, "For those financial statement assertions where control risk is assessed at the maximum level, the auditor should document his or her conclusion that

---

<sup>5</sup> See footnote 1 in section 8200.05.

control risk is at the maximum level but need not document the basis for that conclusion.” The need not to document the basis for the conclusion is often referred to as *the ability to default to the maximum level*. Is defaulting to the maximum control risk level still permitted under AU section 314?

*Reply*—No. AU section 314 requires the auditor to obtain a sufficient understanding of the client’s internal control to assess the risk of material misstatement.<sup>6</sup> As the auditor obtains that understanding, he or she may identify material weaknesses in the design of controls and, as a result, end up assessing control risk at maximum for some financial statement accounts and relevant assertions. Also, as discussed in section 8200.07, “Considering a Substantive Audit Strategy” after identifying and assessing the risk of material misstatement at the assertion level, the auditor may adopt a substantive audit strategy because the costs of testing the operating effectiveness of controls exceed their benefits. In this circumstance, the auditor may assess control risk at maximum. Finally, the auditor might initially assess control risk at less than maximum only to find out later, after testing the operating effectiveness of controls, that controls were not effective and would then reassess control risk at maximum.

### **.11 Ineffective Controls**

*Inquiry*—If, based on his or her knowledge of the entity, an auditor believes, in advance of performing risk assessment procedures, that controls over financial reporting are nonexistent or ineffective, could the evaluation and documentation of such controls (including the walkthrough) be skipped?

*Reply*—No. AU section 314 requires the auditor to obtain a sufficient understanding of the five components of internal control to evaluate the design of controls and determine whether they have been implemented. In addition, AU section 314 requires auditors to assess the risks of material misstatement at the assertion level as the basis for designing and performing further audit procedures.

### **.12 Use of Walkthroughs**

*Inquiry*—AU section 314 requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of internal control. An auditor might perform walkthroughs to confirm his or her understanding of internal control. If the auditor decides to use walkthroughs to confirm his or her understanding of internal control, how often do walkthroughs need to occur?

*Reply*—In accordance with AU section 314, the auditor is required to obtain an understanding of internal control to evaluate the design of controls and to determine whether they have been implemented. To do that, performing a walkthrough would be a good practice. Accordingly, auditors might perform a walkthrough of significant accounting cycles every year. In some situations, AU section 314 allows the auditor to rely on audit evidence obtained in prior periods. In those situations, the auditor is required to perform audit procedures to establish the continued relevance of the audit evidence obtained in prior periods (for example, by performing a walkthrough). So, an auditor might perform walkthroughs every year in order to update his or her understanding.

### **.13 Documenting Internal Control**

*Inquiry*—Does a control have to be documented for it to be tested?

*Reply*—No. However, it is recommended that an entity document its controls so that the auditor can efficiently obtain an understanding of controls,

---

<sup>6</sup> See footnote 1 in section 8200.05.

assess the risks of material misstatement, and test them for operating effectiveness and reliance thereon (if he or she chooses to test controls). If the entity does not document a control, and it is an important control, AU section 314 paragraph .122 requires the auditor to document the control as part of the auditor's risk assessment procedures to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement. The auditor is required to perform risk assessment procedures to identify and assess the risks of material misstatements. In addition, it may not be practical to test the operating effectiveness of controls (if the auditor chooses to do so) throughout the audit period without some level of documentation of the control by the client.

#### **.14 Suggesting Improvements in Internal Control**

*Inquiry*—When performing a walkthrough of controls, may an auditor suggest improvements in internal control to the client?

*Reply*—Yes. A byproduct of obtaining an understanding of internal control is making suggestions for improvement to the client. That brings value to the audit process.

#### **.15 Identifying Significant Deficiencies**

*Inquiry*—If the auditor decides not to test controls, does that mean there is a control deficiency that must be evaluated under AU section 325A, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1)?

*Reply*—No, not necessarily. It depends on the reasons the auditor decides not to test the control. The auditor's decisions about the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures are based on the assessment of the risks of material misstatement. Communications under AU section 325A are based on control deficiencies that the auditor has identified. If the auditor decides not to test a control because it is nonexistent or is not properly designed, then that would represent a control deficiency that would need to be assessed as to severity to determine whether it is a significant deficiency or material weakness. If the design of the control is appropriate, but the auditor decides not to test it for another reason (for example, because the control is redundant), then the auditor has not identified a control deficiency.

#### **.16 Examining Journal Entries**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph .52 of AU section 318 states, in part:

The auditor's substantive procedures should include the following audit procedures related to the financial statement reporting process:

- Agreeing the financial statements, including their accompanying notes, to the underlying accounting records; and
- Examining material journal entries and other adjustments made during the course of preparing the financial statements.

Does the phrase *adjustments made during the course of preparing the financial statements* refer to journal entries and other adjustments prepared by the client during the process of drafting the financial statements, or does it refer to journal entries recorded during the year?

*Reply*—The requirement to examine material journal entries and other adjustments made during the course of preparing the financial statements in paragraph .52 of AU section 318 refers to those journal entries and adjustments prepared by the entity during the process of preparing its financial statements (for example, consolidating entries or elimination entries between divisions). It

does not refer to the journal entries recorded by the entity in the general ledger during the year. However, paragraph .58 of AU section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), requires auditors to design audit procedures to test the appropriateness of journal entries recorded by the entity in the general ledger during the year.

---

[The next page is 8491.]



## Section 8220

# Sampling

### .01 Application of SAS No. 39

*Inquiry*—When should the auditor apply the audit sampling principles in SAS No. 39?

*Reply*—Audit sampling is only one of many tools used by auditors to obtain sufficient, appropriate evidence to support an opinion regarding financial statements. SAS No. 39, as amended, outlines design, selection, and evaluation considerations to be applied by the auditor when using audit sampling. As a general rule, audit sampling can be used—

- in performing tests of controls that provide an audit trail of documentary evidence,
- in performing substantive procedures to test details of transactions and balances, and
- in dual purpose tests that test a control that provides documentary evidence of performance and whether the recorded monetary amount of transactions or balances is correct.

Sampling applies when the auditor needs to decide whether the rate of deviation from a prescribed procedure is no greater than a tolerable rate, for example in testing a matching process or an approval process. However, risk assessment procedures performed to obtain an understanding of internal control do not involve sampling. Sampling concepts also do not apply for some tests of controls. Tests of automated application controls are generally tested only once or a few times when effective (IT) general controls are present, and thus do not rely on the concepts of risk and tolerable deviation as applied in other sampling procedures. Sampling generally is not applicable to analyses of controls for determining the appropriate segregation of duties or other analyses that do not examine documentary evidence of performance. In addition, sampling may not apply to tests of certain documented controls or to analyses of the effectiveness of security and access controls. Sampling also may not apply to some tests directed toward obtaining audit evidence about the operation of the control environment or the accounting system, for example, inquiry or observation of explanation of variances from budgets when the auditor does not desire to estimate the rate of deviation from the prescribed control, or when examining the actions of those charged with governance for assessing their effectiveness.

Thus, the portion of SAS No. 39, as amended, pertaining to tests of controls (paragraphs 30 through 37) applies when sampling techniques are used to test the operating effectiveness of the controls. The portion of SAS No. 39, as amended, pertaining to substantive tests (paragraphs 14 through 29) applies when sampling techniques are used to test details of transactions or balances.

SAS No. 39, as amended, defines audit sampling as “the application of an audit procedure to less than 100 percent of the items within an account balance or class of transactions for the purpose of evaluating some characteristic of the balance or class.” A key to understanding that definition is the *intent* of the

auditor in applying the audit procedure. As noted in footnote 1 of SAS No. 39, as amended, the auditor may examine less than 100 percent of the items comprising an account balance or class of transactions for reasons *other than* evaluating a characteristic of the balance or class. For example, the auditor is not performing audit sampling in the following situations:

- An auditor traces several sales transactions through a client's accounting system to gain an understanding of the manner in which transactions are processed. SAS No. 39, as amended, would not apply because the auditor's intent was to gain an understanding of the processing of these transactions by the accounting system, not to evaluate a characteristic of all sales transactions processed by the accounting system.
- The auditor might examine several large sales invoices that comprise a significant portion of the account balance and leave the remaining portion of the balance untested or test the remaining items by other means, such as the application of analytical procedures. Again, SAS No. 39, as amended, does not apply because the auditor does not intend to evaluate all items in the account balance based on the examination of the large items.

Another consideration in determining whether SAS No. 39, as amended, is applicable to circumstances in which an auditor examines less than 100 percent of the items comprising an account balance or class of transactions is the purpose of the test being applied. If he intends to project the test results to the entire account balance or class of transactions for the purpose of evaluating a characteristic of the balance or class, the auditor should follow the guidance in SAS No. 39, as amended. For example, if the auditor intends to examine selected sales invoices to draw a conclusion as to whether sales are overstated, he should apply audit sampling as described in SAS No. 39, as amended—he intends to draw a conclusion about all sales. On the other hand, if the auditor selects several large sales invoices for certain audit tests and then applies analytical procedures to the remaining invoices, he is not sampling according to SAS No. 39—his examination of the large items is not intended to lead him to a conclusion about the other items. In that case, any conclusion about whether sales are overstated would be based on the combined results of the test of large sales invoices, inquiry and observations, analytical procedures, and other auditing procedures performed related to overstatement of sales.

In determining whether SAS No. 39 applies to a given audit procedure, the auditor should also consider the population in which he is interested. The auditor might choose to divide a single reporting line on the financial statements into several populations. For example, accounts receivable might be divided into wholesale receivables, retail receivables and employee receivables. Each of these populations can be tested using a different audit strategy. The sampling concepts in SAS No. 39 apply only to populations for which audit sampling is used. Use of audit sampling on one population does not mandate its use on remaining populations.

(Revised May 2007)

### **.03 Adequate Size for Nonstatistical Samples**

*Inquiry*—Is there a rule-of-thumb for determining an adequate size for nonstatistical samples for substantive audit tests?

*Reply*—There is no rule-of-thumb that is appropriate for all applications. SAS No. 39 imposes no requirement to use quantitative aids, such as sample size tables, to determine sample size. Nor does SAS No. 39 impose a rule regarding

minimum sample size. Just as before the issuance of SAS No. 39, judgment is the key. Auditors often use benchmarks or starting points such as sample sizes used in prior years or in similar circumstances in other audit engagements in determining what sample size is appropriate for a given sampling application. Paragraph .22 of SAS No. 39 lists factors that influence the auditor's judgment in determining sample size. Those factors include—

- Tolerable misstatement.
- The audit risk.
- The characteristics of the population (e.g., the variability of the amounts of items in the population and the expected misstatement in the population).
- The assessed risk of material misstatement (inherent and control risk).
- The assessed risk for other substantive procedures related to the same assertion.

An auditor who applies statistical sampling uses tables or formulas to compute sample size based on these judgments. An auditor who applies nonstatistical sampling uses professional judgments to relate these factors in determining the appropriate sample size.

If the auditor considered factors such as these in determining sample size in prior years or in other engagements, there may be no reason to believe that sample sizes based on these benchmarks or starting points are inadequate. Individual firms or auditors often prefer to set their own rules regarding a benchmark or starting point for determining sample size. SAS No. 39 does not prohibit such policies. It merely alerts the auditor to factors he should consider in judging the adequacy of sample size.

(Revised May 2007)

#### **.04 Documentation Requirements of SAS No. 39**

*Inquiry*—Does SAS No. 39 impose any new documentation requirements?

*Reply*—No, SAS No. 39 contains no new specific documentation requirements. The documentation standards set forth in the statements on auditing standards dealing with documentation apply to audit sampling applications just as they apply to other auditing applications. For example, SAS No. 108, *Planning and Supervision*, states that the auditor must develop a written audit program and SAS No. 103, *Audit Documentation*, requires the auditor to prepare audit documentation in connection with each engagement in sufficient detail to provide a clear understanding of the work performed (including the nature, timing, extent, and results of audit procedures performed), the audit evidence obtained and its source, and the conclusions reached concerning significant findings or issues, actions taken to address them (including any additional evidence obtained), and the basis for the final conclusions reached. Thus, with regard to audit sampling applications, the auditor's audit program might document such items as the objectives of the sampling application and the audit procedures related to those objectives. The auditor's record of the work performed might include—

- The definition of the population and the sampling unit, including how the auditor considered completeness of the population.
- The definition of misstatement.
- The method of sample selection.
- A list of misstatements identified in the sample.

- An evaluation of the result of the sampling application.
- Conclusions reached by the auditor.

(Revised May 2007)

### **.05 Methods to Select Representative Sample**

*Inquiry*—What are some selection methods that can be used to select a representative sample?

*Reply*—There is no requirement in SAS No. 39, as amended, that random sampling selection methods be used. Representative sampling methods used by auditors include—

- Haphazard sampling.
- Systematic sampling.
- Random-number sampling.

Haphazard sampling consists of selecting sampling units without any conscious bias, that is, without any special reason for including or omitting items from the sample. Haphazard sampling does not imply that units can be selected in a careless manner. Rather, a haphazard sample is selected in a manner that can be expected to be representative of the population. For example, where the physical representation of the population is a file cabinet drawer of vouchers, a haphazard sample of all vouchers processed for the year 19XX might include any of the vouchers that the auditor pulls from the drawer, regardless of each voucher's size, shape, location, or other physical features. The auditor using haphazard selection should be careful to avoid distorting the sample by selecting, for example, only unusual or physically small items or by omitting items such as the first or last items in the physical representation of the population.

Systematic sampling consists of determining a uniform interval, and one item is selected throughout the population at each of the uniform intervals from the starting point.

Random-number sampling entails matching random numbers generated by a computer or selected from a random-number table with, for example, document numbers.

Another method sometimes used in practice is block sampling. Block sampling consists of selecting groups of sequential transactions (for example, all vouchers processed on several selected dates). Using block samples may be inefficient because in order for a block sample to be adequate to lead to an audit conclusion, a relatively larger number of blocks should be selected. If an auditor decides to use block sampling, he should exercise special care to control sampling risk in designing his sample.

(Revised May 2007)

---

[The next page is 8521.]

## Section 8310

### ***Audit Evidence: Securities***

#### **.02 Confirmation of Securities Held in Street Name**

*Inquiry*—A CPA firm has been engaged to perform the initial audit of a pension plan and trust. Most of the trust assets are investments held in street name by a brokerage house. Some negotiable bearer bonds, held in a bank, are in denominations not traceable to the trust account since the bond may represent investments by more than one customer. In addition to its monthly account statements the broker will certify details and ownership of investments at the statement date and will permit examination of certain of its internal records. The bank will also certify details and ownership of investments held for the trust.

Would the fact that the securities are held in “street name” and in some cases in denominations which cannot be traced to the trust’s account preclude obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base an opinion on the financial statements of the pension plan and trust?

*Reply*—Statement on Auditing Standards No. 106, Audit Evidence, discusses audit evidence. Physical inspection and count of the securities in this case appear to be impracticable; therefore, audit evidence concerning the securities would presumably consist primarily of confirmations received from the brokerage houses and other financial institutions which have possession of the securities. Whether or not confirmations would represent sufficient appropriate audit evidence is really a matter for the auditor’s professional judgment. [Amended]

(Revised May 2007).

---

[The next page is 8571.]



## Section 8320

# Audit Evidence: Inventories

### .01 Reliance on Observation of Inventories at an Interim Date

*Inquiry*—Although its fiscal year ends on March 31, a client has always counted its physical inventory on December 31. The March 31 ending inventory has always been calculated by the gross profit method which has proven over the past to be quite accurate. No perpetual inventory records are kept.

Can the auditor rely on an observation of inventory that takes place three months prior to the balance sheet date?

*Reply*—SAS No. 1, section 331, *Receivables and Inventories*, paragraphs .09–.12, discusses evidence regarding inventories. SAS No. 1, section 331, paragraph 10, states, “When the well-kept perpetual inventory records are checked by the client periodically by comparisons with physical counts, the auditor’s observation procedures usually can be performed either during or after the end of the period under audit.” SAS No. 1, section 331, paragraph .12, states in part, “. . . it will always be necessary for the auditor to make, or observe, some physical counts of the inventory and apply appropriate test of intervening transactions.”

Normally, observing an inventory-taking on December 31 when a client has a March 31 year-end and perpetual records are used as the basis of the March 31 inventories, would present no unusual problems since the tests of intervening transactions referred to in SAS No. 1, section 331, paragraph .12, usually can be readily applied. However, if the client keeps no perpetual records of inventory, the tests of the intervening transactions would, in effect, cause the auditor to create the perpetual records as a basis for the March 31 inventory.

### .02 Observation of Physical Inventory on a First Audit

*Inquiry*—A company maintains large inventories of tractor parts in five different locations. The quantities of each part may be quite small, averaging six or seven pieces; but there are approximately 5000 different parts on hand, some as much as twenty years old. The company has been taking complete physical inventories at the end of each year. In the past, the parts inventories have been valued at the current catalogue prices.

A CPA has been engaged to perform the company’s first audit. What procedures may be followed in establishing the value of the parts inventory?

*Reply*—It would appear necessary under sections SAS No. 1, section 331, *Receivables and Inventories*, paragraphs 1 (AU 331.01) and 9 (AU 331.09), and SAS No. 58, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraphs 40 through 44 (AU 508.40 through .44), that the auditor observe the client’s count of the parts inventory. Presumably tests should be made in each of the five locations.

Inventory pricing should be based on historical cost, rather than current selling price. While it may not be practicable to determine cost individually for the large number of parts on hand, it might be appropriate to determine the ratio of cost to catalogue price to obtain an approximation of the cost of current

inventory. Also, some allowance, based on experience, should be made for obsolescence. Presumably a part will have little current value if there is a probability it will not be sold within five years. Costs of warehousing items for such a period may often approach the discounted value of the sales price.

Based upon observations and upon discussions with the client's employees, the auditor may be able to obtain some impressions as to the reliability of the earlier inventories. This would be supported by a comparison of this year's inventory with the prior year's, and by knowledge of sales and production in the current year. [Amended]

### **.03 Cost of Inventories Acquired From Principal Stockholder**

*Inquiry*—A corporation purchased merchandise from a stockholder who owns 99 percent of the corporation's stock and executed a chattel mortgage in favor of the stockholder. The merchandise was acquired by the stockholder prior to the formation of the corporation.

How can the CPA be sure the purchase price of this merchandise is reasonable?

*Reply*—The "seller's" cost can be ascertained through the examination of his cost records, invoices, etc., and comparing his total cost with the selling price to the corporation. Also, the taking of inventory can be observed and verified against physical quantities and classifications of inventory, against transfer documents and against the transferor's cost records and invoices. If the latter records are not available, the auditor can price the inventory at the current replacement cost which can be obtained by reference to recent invoices, communication with suppliers, or references to recent merchandise catalogs.

A basic consideration in this case is the fact that, upon incorporation, there is a continuance of beneficial interest in the inventory transferred and in the proceeds from its eventual disposition by virtue of the chattel mortgage and the 99 percent stock ownership. Accordingly, the transferor's cost should be carried over and continued on the books of the newly organized corporation.

### **.04 Reliance on Estimates of Coal Inventories by Experts**

*Inquiry*—An electric utility maintains a large stockpile of coal. The auditors rely on the calculations of an engineering firm in their test of this inventory. The amount of coal by weight is estimated by multiplying the volume of the coal pile, calculated in cubic feet, by the estimated average density of the coal, measured in pounds per cubic foot. The calculated amount is then compared with the utility's perpetual inventory records, and, if the variance is not considered material, the perpetual inventory is accepted as the accurate amount.

Because of the uncertainties involved in this method, particularly in the estimation of the average density of the coal, the engineers are reluctant to render an opinion on the amount of coal on hand. Other methods of calculating the amount of coal such as the "two coal-pile" theory are uneconomical.

In all cases, this inventory is a material item in the accounts of the utility. What alternative auditing procedures might be used in these circumstances?

*Reply*—While a slight change in density of the coal might result in a change in computed quantity of coal on hand, the effect would most likely not be material in relation to the balance sheet or statement of operations of the utility

company. Perhaps, using the criteria of statistical sampling, the engineers would be willing to state that there is a X% probability that the quantity of coal is a certain amount plus or minus X% (or some other measure of variability).

#### **.05 Dates of Observation of Inventories Which Are Kept on Perpetual Records**

*Inquiry*—A retail dealer in tires and tubes has twenty-two stores. Each month the dealer takes inventory at two stores. The dealer's auditor has observed the inventory taking at ten locations. To avoid the need for extra help at year end, January 31, the auditor proposes to visit the remaining locations shortly after December 31 and:

- Count the tires on hand at that time.
- Reconcile the count back to the daily report at December 31.

Do the above described procedures constitute an adequate observation of inventories?

*Reply*—Section 331.09–.14 of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1 discusses audit evidence for inventories. Section 331.10 states:

When the well-kept perpetual inventory records are checked by the client periodically by comparisons with physical counts, the auditor's observation procedures usually can be performed either during or after the end of the period under audit.

Presumably the dealer has the necessary perpetual records which allow the taking of inventory at two stores each month during the year. Therefore, the proposed procedures would be acceptable and meet the requirement for inventory observation.

#### **.06 Observation of Consignment Inventories Stored in Public Warehouse**

*Inquiry*—A sells supplies and equipment for manufacturing jewelry. Silver on consignment from a supplier is kept in a vault adjacent to where Corporation A keeps its silver inventory. The supplier employs an independent warehouse firm to protect the consigned silver. The bonded employee of the warehouse firm has sole access to the consignment silver and performs the duties of warehouse manager for Corporation A. The warehouse firm pays the salary of the bonded employee but is reimbursed by Corporation A. Since the possibility for substitutions between Corporation A's silver inventories and the consignment silver exists, the auditors of Corporation A, in conducting a physical observation of Corporation A's silver inventories, also want to conduct a physical observation of the consignment silver. Is it necessary for the auditors of Corporation A to observe the consignment silver?

*Reply*—SAS No. 1, section 331.14, and SAS No. 1 section 901.24–.28 (as amended by SAS No. 43) deal with controls and auditing procedures for owner's goods stored in public warehouses. Section 901.28 makes reference to section 331.14 which provides that obtaining direct confirmation from the custodian is acceptable, except that supplemental procedures are to be applied in cases where such inventories represent a significant proportion of the client's current assets or total assets. Among the steps recommended for the auditor to follow, to the extent considered necessary, is the observation of physical counts of the goods wherever practicable and reasonable.

Because of the relationship which Corporation A has with the warehouse and the bonded employee, and the possibility for substitutions of inventory between Corporation A and the supplier, the auditors should observe the consignment inventory and Corporation A's inventory at the same time.  
[Amended]

---

**[The next page is 8671.]**

## Section 8330

### ***Audit Evidence: Fixed Assets***

#### **.01 Verification of Real Estate Ownership**

*Inquiry*—What procedures may be followed in the verification of real property accounts? Is it sufficient to examine the documents involved in the purchase of the property, to examine the real estate tax bills, and to communicate with the holders of any mortgages or trusts secured by the property? Should the client be required to assume the expense of a title search by an attorney?

*Reply*—It is generally conceded that examination of public records which contain the history of transactions relating to realty, as well as the current status of that property, is normally the function of an attorney or title company rather than that of an auditor. Accordingly if it is feasible for the client to obtain a letter from an attorney or title company which defines the interest the company holds in the land based upon a title search, this appears to be the best evidence available as to title and encumbrances.

If this procedure is too costly, then the following other audit procedures may supply sufficient indicia of title as to enable the auditor to assume that the client does, in fact, own the land subject to named liens.

1. Compare legal description of land found in deed with that found in the title insurance policy, abstract of deed, tax receipts, etc.
2. Verify current payment of carrying expenses of land in question, such as insurance premiums, tax payments, payments to mortgagee, etc.
3. Examine any rent receipts which may show evidence of continuing ownership.
4. Visit the land in question, if this is practicable.
5. Request an attorney's letter describing any conveyances or encumbrances of real property that may have been effected during the period covered in the audit, as well as his opinion regarding present status of title.
6. Obtain statement from client as to condition of title and encumbrance.
7. Check municipal or county records for evidence of ownership.

Use of a property map in connection with undertaking these procedures would also be helpful.

#### **.02 Examination of Assets of a Rental Company**

*Inquiry*—A lessor is in the business of leasing autos, large trucks, tractors, and trailers. Is it necessary for the auditors to make physical observations of

the rolling stock which is scattered across the country? What other audit procedures might be employed in the verification of this equipment? Must the titles to all equipment be examined?

*Reply*—It is not necessary, unless some extraordinary situation or circumstances were brought to light, to examine titles to all the equipment. Random test verifications of title certificates or proper registration of vehicles should be made. The fact that the client is receiving rent for the vehicles and is currently making payments on its time-purchase contracts would also be verified in regular course. Any tax and insurance payments which the client is required to make in connection with the vehicles can be checked. Also, test confirmations of possession of vehicles with the lessee should be made. Audit responsibility would not necessarily extend to physical observation of the equipment at its numerous shifting locations.

---

[The next page is 8731.]

## Section 8340

# Audit Evidence: Confirmation Procedures

### .03 Confirmation of Balances Due on Loans

*Inquiry*—A bank arranges mortgage loans whereby the borrower instructs the bank to make payments to the contractor or developer. Payment booklets, which specify the periodic amounts due, are sent twice yearly to the borrower. In addition, each borrower receives an annual statement which shows his total yearly payments as well as the various yearly charges. Many of the debtors are unable to verify the correctness of the accrued charges and are unable to check the outstanding balances of their loans because of the complex interest rates. How can these loan balances be confirmed when the debtor cannot determine the total amount of the debt?

*Reply*—While the debtor may not be able to calculate the balance of the loan due, there are details of the loan which he should know and which can be confirmed. A request that the debtor confirm the original amount of the loan and the payments he has made would properly serve the purpose of a confirmation. Confirmation of the interest rate might also be requested as this affects the balance of the loan and should be known by the debtor.

### .09 Insurance Claims

*Inquiry*—Should a CPA communicate with an insurance company, or the insurance company's attorneys, when trying to obtain evidence about insured claims outstanding against a client?

*Reply*—The CPA should obtain evidence about claims outstanding (1) from the client and (2) by communicating with the client's lawyer in accordance with SAS No. 12, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments* (AU 337). The CPA may encounter situations where neither the client nor the client's lawyer is able to provide sufficient information regarding outstanding claims handled by insurance companies. In those situations, he or she may consider communicating directly with the insurance company or its attorneys appropriate. [Amended]

### .10 Letter of Inquiry to Client's Attorney

*Inquiry*—When a CPA requested a client to send a letter of inquiry to the client's attorney, the client objected because the attorney would charge for answering the letter of inquiry. The client also believed that an inquiry about legal matters was not necessary because it had not used the services of its attorney in the current year for any matters concerning litigation, claims or assessments. Rather, the client paid fees to its attorney in connection with other matters such as corporate registrations. Do generally accepted auditing standards require that a letter of inquiry be sent to the attorney?

*Reply*—No. SAS No. 12, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims and Assessments* (AU 337), requires that a letter of inquiry be sent to those attorneys with whom management consulted concerning litigation, claims, and assessments. The auditor should obtain evidence about management's assertions by reviewing invoices received from the attorney and related

cash disbursements and correspondence files. If information contrary to management's assertion is discovered, the auditor should request management to send an inquiry letter to the attorney. Further, the auditor should consider the effects of the erroneous assertion on the ability to rely on other management representations.

In situations where no letter of inquiry is sent to the client's attorney, the auditor should consider including in the client representation letter a specific representation that no attorney had been consulted regarding litigation, claims, and assessments. [Amended]

### **.11 Receivables in Cash Basis Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—If accounts receivable and escrow balances are included in modified cash basis financial statements, should the accounts receivable and escrow balances be confirmed?

*Reply*—The generally accepted auditing standards, including confirmation, that apply to financial statements prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles apply to modified cash basis financial statements.

### **.16 Retention of Returned Confirmations When a Schedule of Confirmation Results is Prepared**

*Inquiry*—SAS No. 67, *The Confirmation Process* (AU 330), provides guidance about the confirmation process in audits performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). Similarly, SAS No. 96, *Audit Documentation* (AU 339), provides guidance as to the form and content of audit documentation. When written confirmations are received, should they be retained as part of audit documentation or is a schedule of confirmation results sufficient?

*Reply*—SAS No. 96, paragraph .07 (AU 339.07), sets forth factors that the auditor should consider in determining the nature and extent of the documentation. While the auditor should apply professional judgment when considering these factors, confirmations are typically used for accounts with higher risks of material misstatement (see AU 330.05–.10), they often serve as significant evidence to the assertions being tested (AU 330.11–.14), and seasoned judgment is often needed in evaluating confirmations that identify the nature and extent of exceptions.

For these reasons, among others, the auditor should ordinarily retain returned confirmations even though a schedule of confirmation results is prepared.

---

[The next page is 8751.]

## Section 8345

# Audit Evidence: Destruction of Documents

### .01 Audit Considerations When Client Evidence and Corroborating Evidence in Support of the Financial Statements Has Been Destroyed by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster

*Inquiry*—Prior to issuance of an auditor’s report on financial statements, and either prior to or after the completion of fieldwork, the audit documentation is destroyed by a fire, flood, or natural disaster. To what extent must the auditor recreate the audit documentation in order to express an opinion on the financial statements?

*Reply*—The third standard of field work of generally accepted auditing standards state: “The auditor must obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence by performing audit procedures to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion regarding the financial statements under audit.”

If substantially all of an entity’s evidence and corroborating evidence in support of their financial statements has been destroyed and the auditor has been unable to complete audit procedures with respect to financial statement amounts and assertions,<sup>1</sup> the auditor should disclaim an opinion on the financial statements as the auditor is unable to form an opinion as to the fairness of presentation of the financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles. If the auditor disclaims an opinion, the auditor’s report should give all of the substantive reasons for the disclaimer. The auditor should not identify any procedures that were performed nor include the paragraph describing the characteristics of an audit (that is, the scope paragraph of the auditor’s standard report); to do so may tend to overshadow the disclaimer.

An example of a report disclaiming an opinion resulting from the destruction due to fire, flood or a natural disaster, of substantially all client evidence or corroborating evidence in support of financial statements is as follows:

#### Independent Auditor’s Report

We were engaged to audit the accompanying balance sheets of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management.<sup>2</sup>

Substantially all of the Company’s books of original entry; the general and subsidiary ledgers; related accounting manuals; records such as work sheets and spreadsheets supporting cost allocations, computations, and reconciliations; as well as substantially all corroborating evidence in support of the financial

---

<sup>1</sup> The auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure.

<sup>2</sup> The wording in the first paragraph of the auditor’s standard report is changed in a disclaimer of opinion because of a scope limitation. The first sentence now states that “we were engaged to audit” rather than “we have audited” since, because of the scope limitation, the auditor was not able to perform an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. In addition, the last sentence of the first paragraph is also deleted, because of the scope limitation, to eliminate the reference to the auditor’s responsibility to express an opinion.

statements were destroyed [in a fire, by a flood, by Hurricane Katrina, etc.] which also destroyed the Company's headquarters. The records that remain are not sufficient to permit the application of auditing procedures that would be adequate for us to express an opinion on the accompanying financial statements.

Since the Company was not able to provide evidence or corroborating evidence in support of the accompanying financial statements and we were not able to apply other auditing procedures to satisfy ourselves as to whether the financial statements are presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, the scope of our work was not sufficient to enable us to express, and we do not express, an opinion on the financial statements.

In the case where the evidence and corroborating evidence is available for some, but not all, of the financial statement accounts and assertions, the auditor would explain which evidence has been destroyed [i.e. evidence supporting the cost of inventory, the valuation of amounts in accounts receivable, etc].

If so engaged by an entity, the auditor may express an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement [i.e. a schedule of accounts receivable or fixed assets]. If the auditor is so engaged, the guidance in AU 623.11–14 should be followed. The auditor should not express an opinion on specified elements, accounts, or items included in a financial statement on which he or she has disclaimed an opinion, if such reporting would be tantamount to expressing a piecemeal opinion on the financial statements. However, an auditor would be able to express an opinion on one or more specified elements, accounts, or items of a financial statement provided that matters to be reported on and the related scope of the audit were not intended to and did not encompass so many elements, accounts, or items as to constitute a major portion of the financial statements. For example, it may be appropriate for an auditor to express an opinion on an entity's schedule of accounts receivable or fixed assets even if the auditor has disclaimed an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole. However, the report on the specified element, account, or item should be presented separately from the financial statements of the entity.

## **.02 Considerations When Audit Documentation Has Been Destroyed by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster**

*Inquiry*—Prior to issuance of an auditor's report on financial statements, and either prior to or after the completion of fieldwork, the audit documentation is destroyed by a fire, flood, or natural disaster. To what extent must the auditor recreate the audit documentation in order to express an opinion on the financial statements?

*Reply*—Audit documentation is the principal record of auditing procedures applied, evidence obtained, and conclusions reached by the auditor in the engagement. In addition, certain Statements on Auditing Standards contain specific documentation requirements. AU section 339.03 states that audit documentation serves mainly to (a) provide the principal support for the auditor's report, including the representation regarding observance of the standards of field work, which is implicit in the reference in the report to generally accepted auditing standards<sup>3</sup> and (b) aid the auditor in the conduct and supervision of the audit.

---

<sup>3</sup> However, there is no intention to imply that the auditor would be precluded from supporting his or her report by other means in addition to audit documentation.

Oral explanations cannot serve as the principal support for the work performed or the conclusions reached.

Since audit documentation is an essential element of an audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the auditor cannot state that he or she has performed an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards without the required audit documentation. In cases where the audit documentation has been destroyed by fire, flood, or a natural disaster prior to the issuance of the auditor's report, the auditor must either recreate the audit documentation in support of the audit procedures performed or re-perform the audit procedures and create new audit documentation.

In making the determination as to whether to recreate the destroyed audit documentation or to re-perform the audit procedures, the auditor should keep in mind the ultimate objective of the auditing procedures. That is, to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to afford a reasonable basis for expressing an opinion on the financial statements. For example, the auditor may be able to recreate the documentation that supports certain assertions about accounts receivable by using information contained in the audit documentation with respect to sales revenue (assuming that the sales documentation was not destroyed). In addition, the auditor may be able to recreate the audit program and prepare memorandums sufficient to explain the procedures performed and the results obtained. When considering the sufficiency of such documentation, the auditor should consider the guidance in AU section 339.06 which states that audit documentation should be sufficient to (a) enable members of the engagement team with supervision and review responsibilities to understand the nature, timing, extent, and results of audit procedures performed, and the evidence obtained; (b) indicate the engagement team member(s) who performed and reviewed the work; and (c) show that the accounting records agree or reconcile with the financial statements or other information being reported on. Except for perhaps the smallest of audits, it will prove difficult for the auditor to amass sufficient audit documentation by referring to documentation for a related account or by recreating the audit documentation. Consequently, the auditor will usually have to re-perform the audit procedures and create new audit documentation.

---

[The next page is 8771.]



## Section 8350

### ***Audit Evidence: Audit Documentation***

#### **.01 Current Year Audit Documentation Contained in the Permanent File**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph 5 of SAS No. 103, *Audit Documentation* (AU section 339.05), states that audit documentation is the record of audit procedures performed, relevant audit evidence obtained, and conclusions the auditor reached. SAS No. 103 (AU section 339) is applicable to all audit documentation supporting the current year's auditor's report. Do the provisions of SAS No. 103 (AU section 339) with respect to documentation completion and retention apply to current year audit documentation maintained in the permanent file?

*Reply*—Yes. SAS No. 103 (AU section 339) applies to current year audit documentation maintained in any type of file if such documentation serves as support for the current year's audit report.

---

[The next page is 8991.]



## Section 8900

### ***Predecessor/Successor Auditors***

#### **.01 Communications Between Predecessor Accountant and Successor Auditor**

*Inquiry*—An accountant is engaged to audit the current year’s financial statements of a company. In the prior year, the company’s financial statements were reviewed by another accountant. Is the successor auditor required to communicate with the predecessor accountant?

*Reply*—No. SAS No. 84, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors* (AU 315), footnote 3, states “When the most recent financial statements have been compiled or reviewed in accordance with the AICPA Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services, the accountant who reported on those financial statements is not a predecessor auditor. Although not required by this Statement, in these circumstances the successor auditor may find the matters described in paragraphs 8 and 9 useful in determining whether to accept the engagement.”

#### **.02 Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors**

*Inquiry*—A client has decided to restate, for comparative purposes, the statement of changes in financial position reported on by the predecessor auditor to a statement of cash flows. The predecessor’s audit report will not be presented.

- (1) Must the successor auditor notify the predecessor auditor as part of his or her procedures to prepare or evaluate restatements permitted or mandated by new accounting standards?
- (2) How will the restatement affect the successor auditor’s report?

*Reply*—SAS No. 84, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, paragraph 21 (AU 315.21), states:

If during an audit, the successor auditor becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor may require revision, the successor auditor should request that the client inform the predecessor auditor of the situation and to arrange for the three parties to discuss this information and attempt to resolve the matter.

In cases where revisions result from an accounting change required or permitted by a new FASB or AICPA Pronouncement, the successor auditor is not required to consult with the predecessor auditor. However, the successor may find that communication with the predecessor auditor is desirable in order to obtain any additional information and/or workpapers that may be needed to prepare or evaluate the restatement. To maintain audit efficiency, such communications may be made as part of the successor auditor’s routine request for review of selected workpapers.

SAS No. 58, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph 83, as amended by SAS No. 64, *Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1990* (AU 508.83), provides guidance for the form and content of the successor auditor's report when the prior period statements have been restated. Additional language may also be included if the successor auditor wishes to comment on the appropriateness of the restatement. Additional illustrations may be found in the AICPA Financial Report Survey, "Illustrations of Departures From the New Standard Auditor's Report on Financial Statements of Business Enterprises" (June 1990), pages 49–50.

### **.03 Communications With a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations<sup>1</sup>**

*Inquiry*—SAS No. 84, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, paragraph 3, requires a successor auditor to attempt certain communications with the predecessor auditor prior to acceptance of an engagement. How should a successor fulfill this responsibility when the predecessor has ceased operations?

*Reply*—Even when the predecessor has ceased operations, SAS No. 84 obligates a successor to attempt certain communications with the predecessor prior to acceptance of an engagement. The successor should attempt the required communications, about matters that the successor believes will assist him or her in determining whether to accept the engagement, with the individual who had final responsibility for the audit (for example, the engagement partner). If the successor is unable to communicate with that individual or receives a limited response, the successor should consider the implications in deciding whether to accept the engagement.

### **.04 Unavailability of the Working Papers of a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations**

*Inquiry*—A successor auditor must obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to afford a reasonable basis for expressing an opinion on the financial statements under audit. The successor's audit may be facilitated by reviewing the predecessor auditor's working papers. What is the effect on the successor's audit when the working papers of a predecessor who has ceased operations are not available for review?

*Reply*—Sufficient appropriate audit evidence to afford a reasonable basis for expressing an opinion on the financial statements includes sufficient evidence about matters of continuing audit and accounting significance, such as beginning balances, consistency in the application of accounting principles and contingencies. When the working papers of a predecessor who has ceased operations are not available, the evidence normally obtained by reviewing the working papers must be obtained by performing other audit procedures. If the successor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to express an opinion on the financial statements, the successor should qualify or disclaim an opinion because of the inability to perform procedures that the successor considers necessary in the circumstances, not because of the unavailability of the predecessor's working papers.

---

<sup>1</sup> SSARS 4, *Communication Between Predecessor and Successor Accountants*, provides guidance to a successor accountant who decides to communicate with a predecessor accountant regarding acceptance of an engagement to compile or review the financial statements of a nonpublic company. In situations in which the predecessor has ceased operations and the successor decides to engage in such communications, the guidance in this paragraph may be useful.

**.05 Significant Audit Procedures Performed by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations**

*Inquiry*—If a predecessor auditor has performed significant audit procedures, such as the observation of inventory or the confirmation of accounts receivable, and subsequently has ceased operations, to what extent may this work be used by the successor auditor?

*Reply*—Because a report on the financial statements has not been issued by the predecessor and the successor cannot complete the procedures required by SAS No. 1, section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*, the successor can neither assume responsibility for the work of the predecessor nor issue a report that reflects divided responsibility for the audit, as described in SAS No. 1, section 543. The successor must perform audit procedures sufficient to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion on the financial statements under audit. However, review of the predecessor's working papers may have an effect on the nature, timing and extent of those procedures.

**.06 Successor Auditor Becomes Aware of Information That Leads Him or Her to Believe That Financial Statements Reported On by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations May Be Materially Misstated**

*Inquiry*—What actions should a successor auditor take when he or she becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that financial statements reported on by a predecessor auditor who has ceased operations may be materially misstated?

*Reply*—When the successor becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that the financial statements reported on by a predecessor who has ceased operations may be materially misstated, the successor should advise management of the information and request that management determine whether the financial statements require restatement. In making such a determination, management may find it useful to discuss the information with the individual who had final responsibility for the audit of those financial statements (for example, the engagement partner). If management determines that the financial statements require restatement, the successor should request that management disclose the information to the party responsible for winding up the affairs of the predecessor firm. The successor also should request that management consider whether action should be taken to prevent future reliance on the financial statements.

If, in the successor's judgment, management does not respond appropriately to his or her requests, the successor should advise the audit committee, or others with equivalent authority and responsibility, regarding the information and management's response. If, in the successor's judgment, the audit committee does not respond appropriately to his or her communication, the successor should consider resigning as the entity's auditor. The successor would be well advised to consult with his or her attorney in determining an appropriate course of action.

**.07 Reports on Audited Financial Statements Presented With Prior-Period Financial Statements Audited by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations**

*Inquiry*—If the prior-period financial statements audited by a predecessor auditor who has ceased operations are presented for comparative purposes with current-period audited financial statements, how is the successor auditor's report affected?

*Reply*—The answer depends on (1) whether the prior-period financial statements have been restated and (2) whether the entity files annual financial statements with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC).

- a. If the prior-period audited financial statements are *unchanged*, the successor should indicate in the introductory paragraph of his or her report (1) that the financial statements of the prior period were audited by another auditor, (2) the date of the predecessor's report, (3) the type of report issued by the predecessor, and (4) if the report was other than a standard report, the substantive reasons therefor. SAS No. 58, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, paragraph 74, indicates that the successor should not name the predecessor in the report. An example of the reference that would be added to the introductory paragraph of the successor's report is presented below.

The financial statements of ABC Company as of December 31, 19X1, were audited by other auditors whose report dated March 31, 19X2, expressed an unqualified opinion on those statements.

A reference to the predecessor's report should be included even when the predecessor's report on the prior-period financial statements is reprinted and accompanies the successor's report, because reprinting does not constitute reissuance of the predecessor's report in accordance with SAS No. 58, paragraph 71.

- b. If the prior-period financial statements *have been restated*, the successor should follow the guidance in the preceding point *a*, indicating that the predecessor reported on the financial statements of the prior period before restatement. In addition, the successor should consider the guidance in paragraph .06.

If the successor is engaged to audit and applies sufficient procedures to satisfy himself or herself as to the appropriateness of the restatement adjustments, the successor may report on the adjustments in accordance with the guidance in SAS No. 58, paragraph 74 (AU 508.74). In determining the nature, timing and extent of procedures, the successor should consider that a predecessor who has ceased operations cannot perform the procedures to evaluate the appropriateness of the restatement adjustments as described in SAS No. 1, section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*.

If the successor does not perform sufficient procedures to satisfy himself or herself as to the restatement adjustments, the note to the financial statements describing the restatement adjustments should be marked *unaudited*.

- c. If the entity files annual financial statements with the SEC, the SEC staff has indicated that, in annual reports (on Form 10-K and to shareholders), the predecessor's report on the prior-period financial statements should be reprinted with a legend, in lieu of the manual signature, indicating (1) that the report is a copy of the report issued by the predecessor and (2) that the predecessor has discontinued performing auditing and accounting services, and, if applicable, that it has filed for protection from creditors under the Bankruptcy Code. A sample legend, for cases in which the predecessor has filed for bankruptcy, is presented below.

The report that appears below is a copy of the report issued by the company's previous independent auditor [*name of firm*]. That firm has filed for protection from creditors under Chapter 11 of the Bankruptcy Code on [*date*], and has discontinued performing auditing and accounting services.

The successor should refer to the predecessor's report in his or her report, as described in the preceding point *a*. If the prior-period financial statements have been restated, the SEC staff has indicated that it is ordinarily sufficient for the successor to audit only the restatement adjustments and report on them in accordance with the guidance in the preceding point *b*; in unusual circumstances, the restated prior-period financial statements may have to be audited.

**.08 Reports on Audited Financial Statements of a Nonpublic Entity Presented With Prior-Period Financial Statements Compiled or Reviewed by a Predecessor Accountant Who Has Ceased Operations**

*Inquiry*—If the prior-period financial statements that have been compiled or reviewed by a predecessor accountant who has ceased operations are presented for comparative purposes with current-period audited financial statements, how is the successor auditor's report affected?

*Reply*—The answer depends on whether the prior-period financial statements have been restated.

- a.* If the prior-period financial statements *are unchanged*, the successor's report should make reference in a separate paragraph to the predecessor's report on the prior-period financial statements. This paragraph should include (1) a statement of the service performed in the prior period, (2) a statement that the predecessor has ceased operations, (3) the date of the report on the service performed, (4) a description of any modifications of that report, and (5) a statement that the service was less in scope than an audit and does not provide the basis for the expression of an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole. Reference to the predecessor's report should not include the name of the predecessor. Examples of additional paragraphs for compiled and reviewed prior-period financial statements are presented below.

*Compiled Prior Period Financial Statements*

The 19X1 financial statements were compiled by other accountants who have ceased operations, and their report thereon, dated February 1, 19X2, stated they did not audit or review those financial statements and, accordingly, express no opinion or other form of assurance on them.

*Reviewed Prior-Period Financial Statements*

The 19X1 financial statements were reviewed by other accountants who have ceased operations, and their report thereon, dated March 1, 19X2, stated they were not aware of any material modifications that should be made to those statements for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. However, a review is substantially less in scope than an audit and does not provide a basis for the expression of an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole.

- b. If the prior-period financial statements *have been restated*, the restated prior-period financial statements should be compiled, reviewed, or audited and reported on accordingly. In addition, the successor should consider the guidance in paragraph .06.

**.09 Reports on Compiled or Reviewed Financial Statements Presented With Prior-Period Financial Statements Compiled, Reviewed, or Audited by a Predecessor Accountant Who Has Ceased Operations**

*Inquiry*—If prior-period financial statements that have been compiled, reviewed, or audited by a predecessor accountant who has ceased operations are presented for comparative purposes with current-period compiled or reviewed financial statements, how is the successor accountant's report affected?

*Reply*—The answer depends on whether the prior-period financial statements have been restated.

- a. If the prior-period financial statements were *compiled or reviewed and are unchanged*, the successor should add a paragraph to his or her report on the current-period financial statements that includes (1) a statement that the financial statements of the prior period were compiled or reviewed by another accountant who has ceased operations, (2) the date of the predecessor's report, (3) a description of the standard form of disclaimer or limited assurance, as applicable, included in the report, and (4) a description or a quotation of any modifications of the standard report and of any paragraphs emphasizing a matter regarding the financial statements. Reference to the predecessor's report should not include the name of the predecessor. Examples of additional paragraphs for compiled and reviewed prior-period financial statements are presented below.

*Compiled Prior-Period Financial Statements*

The 19X1 financial statements of XYZ Company were compiled by other accountants who have ceased operations and whose report dated February 1, 19X2, stated that they did not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on those statements.

*Reviewed Prior-Period Financial Statements*

The 19X1 financial statements of XYZ Company were reviewed by other accountants who have ceased operations and whose report dated March 1, 19X2, stated that they were not aware of any material modifications that should be made to those statements in order for them to be in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

If the prior-period financial statements were *audited and are unchanged*, the successor should add a paragraph to his or her report on the current-period financial statements that indicates (1) that the financial statements of the prior period were audited by another accountant who has ceased operations, (2) the date of the predecessor's report, (3) the type of opinion issued by the predecessor, (4) if the opinion was other than unqualified, the substantive reasons therefor, and (5) that no auditing procedures were performed after the date of the predecessor's report. Reference to the predecessor's report should not include the name of the predecessor. An example of such a paragraph is presented below.

The financial statements for the year ended December 31, 19X1, were audited by other accountants who have ceased operations, and they expressed an unqualified opinion on them in their report dated March 1, 19X2, but they have not performed any auditing procedures since that date.

- b. If the prior-period financial statements *have been restated*, the restated prior-period financial statements should be compiled, reviewed or audited and reported on accordingly. In addition, the successor should consider the guidance in paragraph .10.

**.10 Successor Accountant's Responsibilities Under SSARSs When He or She Becomes Aware That Prior-Period Financial Statements Reported On by a Predecessor Accountant Who Has Ceased Operations May Require Revision**

*Inquiry*—SSARS No. 4, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Accountants*, paragraph 10, provides guidance to a successor accountant who, during an engagement to compile or review current-period financial statements, becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that financial statements reported on by a predecessor accountant may require revision. SSARS 4, paragraph 10 states that the successor should request that his or her client communicate this information to the predecessor. How may the successor fulfill this responsibility when the predecessor has ceased operations?

*Reply*—When the successor becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that financial statements reported on by a predecessor accountant may require revision, the successor should request that the client advise the party responsible for winding up the affairs of the predecessor firm. If the client refuses to communicate with the predecessor or if the successor is not satisfied with the predecessor's course of action, the successor would be well advised to consult with his or her attorney.

---

[The next page is 9051.]



# TIS Section 9000

## AUDITORS' REPORTS

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Section

9030	Accounting Changes
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	.03 Change in Service Lives of Fixed Assets
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	[.08] Reserved
	[.09] Reserved
	.10 Change From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) to an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA) or From OCBOA to GAAP
	[.11] Reserved
	[.12] Reserved
9060	Uncertainties
	[.01] Reserved
	[.02] Reserved
	[.03] Reserved
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Possible Effect of Divorce Proceedings on Credit Rating
	[.07] Reserved
	.08 Going Concern Problem—Financial Statements Prepared on the Income Tax Basis of Accounting
	.09 Audit Report for Development Stage Enterprise

*Section*

- 9070 Subsequent Events
- .01 Failure to Remit Withholding Taxes in Subsequent Period [Amended]
  - .02 Disclosure of Note Receivable Covering Previous Account of Bankrupt Company
  - .03 Discovery of Potential Liability in Subsequent Period
  - [.04] Reserved
  - .05 Consideration of Impact of Losses From Natural Disasters Occurring After Completion of Audit Field Work and Signing of the Auditor's Report But Before Issuance of the Auditor's Report and Related Financial Statements
- 9080 Audited Financial Statements
- [.01] Reserved
  - .02 Going Concern Assumption for Venture With Limited Life [Amended]
  - .03 Opinion on Balance Sheet Only [Amended]
  - .04 Opinion on Balance Sheet With Disclaimer on Income Statement [Amended]
  - [.05] Reserved
  - .06 Reference in Financial Statements to Auditor's Report [Amended]
  - [.07] Reserved
  - [.08] Reserved
  - .09 Arrangement of References to Financial Statements in Auditor's Report [Amended]
  - [.10] Reserved
  - [.11] Reserved
  - [.12] Reserved
  - .13 Classification of Certain Callable Obligations [Amended]
  - .14 Compilation of Supplementary Schedules in Audited Financial Statements
  - .15 Condensed Financial Statements of a Nonpublic Entity
- 9100 Signing and Dating Reports
- .01 Use of Successor Firm Name in Signing Registration Statement [Amended]
  - .02 Reporting on Companies With Different Fiscal Years [Amended]
  - [.03] Reserved
  - [.04] Reserved
  - .05 Signing of Independent Auditor's Report
  - .06 The Effect of Obtaining the Management Representation Letter on Dating the Auditor's Report

*Section*

- 9110 Special Reports
  - .01 Determination of Sales Price Based on Auditor's Report
  - [.02] Reserved
  - .03 Audit of Sales for Percentage-of-Sales Lease Agreements
  - [.04] Reserved
  - [.05] Reserved
  - [.06] Reserved
  - .07 Statement of Cash Receipts and Disbursements [Amended]
  - .08 Statutory Basis Financial Statements Differ From GAAP [Amended]
  - [.09] Reserved
  - [.10] Reserved
  - [.11] Reserved
  - [.12] Reserved
  - .13 Report Distribution Restriction Related to Financial Statements Prepared on a Basis of Accounting Prescribed in an Agreement
  - .14 Liquidation Basis Financial Statements
  - .15 Reporting on Medicaid/Medicare Cost Reports
- 9120 Reliance on Others
  - .01 Definition of "Principal Auditor"
  - .02 Responsibility for Audit of Dividend Fund Managed by Agent
  - [.03] Reserved
  - .04 Reliance on State Grain Inspectors for Inventory Measurements
  - [.05] Reserved
  - .06 Use of Other Auditors' Work When They Are Not Independent
  - .07 Reference to Other Auditors in Accompanying Information Report
  - .08 Part of an Audit Performed in Accordance With International Standards on Auditing
- 9130 Limited Scope Engagements
  - .01 Auditor's Report if Inventories Not Observed—I [Amended]
  - .02 Auditor's Report if Inventories Not Observed—II [Amended]
  - [.03] Reserved
  - [.04] Reserved
  - [.05] Reserved
  - .06 Distinctions Between Scope Limitations [Amended]
  - .07 Inadequate Internal Control Structure and Financial Records [Amended]
  - [.08] Reserved
  - .09 Letter of Audit Inquiry Not Sent to Client's Legal Counsel
  - .10 Effect of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) Departures on Limited Scope Engagements

*Section*

9150	Compilation and Review Engagements
	.01 Compiled Financial Statements Not Adjusted
	.02 Inquiries for a Review Engagement
	[.03] Reserved
	.04 Financial Statements Marked As "Unaudited"
	[.05] Reserved
	[.06] Reserved
	[.07] Reserved
	.08 Supplementary Information
	.09 Application of AR section 300 to Certain Companies Required to File With Regulatory Bodies
	.10 Review of Financial Statements Included in a Prescribed Form
	.11 Computer Generated Financial Statements
	[.12] Reserved
	[.13] Reserved
	[.14] Reserved
	[.15] Reserved
	.16 Reference to Accountant's Report in Notes to Financial Statements
	[.17] Reserved
	.18 Bank Engaged a CPA Firm to Compile a Financial Statement of Another Entity
	[.19] Reserved
	.20 Reissuance When Not Independent
	[.21] Reserved
	[.22] Reserved
	[.23] Reserved
	.24 Issuing a Compilation Report With Substantially All Disclosures Omitted After Issuing a Report on Financial Statements Containing Full Disclosure
	.25 Determining Whether Financial Statements Have Been Prepared by the Accountant
9160	Other Reporting Issues
	[.01] Reserved
	.02 Furnishing Unbound Reports to Clients
	.03 Dates on Cover for Financial Statements
	[.04] Reserved
	[.05] Reserved
	.06 Break-Even Financial Statements
	.07 Financial Statements Cover Period Longer Than Twelve Months
	.08 Title of Auditors' Report

## Section

9160

## Other Reporting Issues—continued

- [.09] Reserved
  - .10 Distinction Between Internal and General Use of Financial Statements
  - [.11] Reserved
  - [.12] Reserved
  - [.13] Reserved
  - .14 Part of Audit Performed by Another Independent Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations
  - [.15] Reserved
  - [.16] Reserved
  - [.17] Reserved
  - [.18] Reserved
  - [.19] Reserved
  - [.20] Reserved
  - .21 Fiscal Years for Tax and Financial Reporting Purposes Differ
  - .22 Location Where Report is Issued
  - .23 Distinction Between Supplemental Information and Basic Financial Statement Information in an Auditor-Submitted Document
  - .24 Required Presentation of the Statement of Stockholders' Equity
  - .25 Use of Singular v. Plural Terminology for Accountants and Auditors
  - .26 Compilation and Review—Comparative Financial Statements
- 

[The next page is 9071.]



## Section 9030

### Accounting Changes

#### .03 Change in Service Lives of Fixed Assets

*Inquiry*—A reevaluation of the lives of depreciable property resulted in an increase in the remaining lives of certain properties. The company would like to include the cumulative, net of tax, effect of this change in income. Is this in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles?

*Reply*—Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 250, Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*, is quite specific regarding the treatment of changes in estimated service lives of depreciable assets. Such a change is considered a change in an accounting estimate and should be recorded prospectively, that is, in the period of the change and future periods as appropriate. Therefore, the proposed accounting would not be in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. If the change in service lives of depreciable property were accounted for as suggested, the independent auditors would have to issue a qualified or adverse opinion depending upon materiality of the item.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### .10 Change From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) to an Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting (OCBOA) or From OCBOA to GAAP

*Inquiry*—A company that has previously issued financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP has decided to change to the income tax basis (or vice versa). How should the change in accounting basis be accounted for and reported in the financial statements and how does the change impact the auditor's or accountant's report?

*Reply*—Accounting issues:

Authoritative literature does not address accounting for a change in accounting basis. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 250, Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*, provides guidance for reporting accounting changes within the same basis. However, the situation described above is considered to be a change in accounting basis rather than an accounting change.

When only current year financial statements are presented, it is common practice to present the effect of the change in the accounting basis by showing beginning retained earnings as previously reported with an adjustment to convert to the new basis. Although not as common in practice, precedent also exists for either showing opening retained earnings on the new basis or showing the effects of the change as a cumulative-effect adjustment in the income statement.

However, if comparative financial statements are presented, the prior year(s) should be restated and presented under the basis to which the company has changed. Restatement is necessary to ensure comparability with all periods presented.

In both cases, the change in accounting basis should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.

—Reporting issues:

Auditing literature states that a change in accounting basis does not represent a lack of consistency and, consequently, that report modification is not required. However, the literature allows for the inclusion of an explanatory paragraph in the auditor's report to emphasize a matter regarding the financial statements.

A summary of the relevant authoritative references follows:

Paragraph .16 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), indicates that the consistency reference in the auditor's report refers to consistent application of principles within a basis of presentation. The standards do not address the consistent use of a basis of presentation; therefore, a change in accounting basis does not require the auditor to modify the report for a lack of consistency.

Also, footnote 35 in paragraph .31 of AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), indicates that a change from GAAP to an OCBOA does not represent a lack of consistency in accounting principles and states, in part, that an auditor may wish to add an explanatory paragraph to highlight a difference in the basis of presentation in the current year from that used in the prior year. Footnote 35 in paragraph .31 of AU section 623 does not address changes from an OCBOA to GAAP or whether an explanatory paragraph is suggested for both single-period and comparative statements. However, the auditor may consider adding an explanatory paragraph in each of these situations.

Paragraph .19 of AU section 508 indicates that an auditor reporting on GAAP financial statements may wish to emphasize an accounting matter affecting the comparability of financial statements with those of the preceding period. Paragraph .31 of AU section 623 provides that an auditor reporting on OCBOA statements may wish to modify the report to emphasize a matter similar to reporting on GAAP statements.

A sample explanatory paragraph for an audit report on comparative financial statements in the year of change to an OCBOA follows:

(explanatory paragraph)

As discussed in Note A to the financial statements, in 20X4 the Company adopted a policy of preparing its financial statements on the accrual method of accounting used for federal income tax purposes, which is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles. Accordingly, the accompanying financial statements are not intended to present financial position and results of operations in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. The financial statements for 20X3 have been restated to reflect the income tax basis of accounting accrual method adopted in 20X4.

Accountants performing review or compilation engagements may also consider adding an explanatory paragraph for these basis changes.

[Amended, February 1995. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 9101.]

## Section 9060

### Uncertainties

#### **.06 Possible Effect of Divorce Proceedings on Credit Rating**

*Inquiry*—A client and his wife who are co-owners and co-managers of a business are involved in divorce proceedings. The auditor believes a divorce will adversely affect the business's credit rating. Is it necessary to include a reference in the financial statements to the divorce proceedings and their potentially adverse effects?

*Reply*—The auditor should not include references in his report to currently litigated divorce proceedings. The independent auditor should refrain from mentioning the client's involvements of a personal nature which might effectively disparage (or even stimulate the slander of) his business reputation or credit standing. It is possible that a divorce settlement could adversely affect the credit standing of the client, but in the absence of a final determination of the litigation or a determinative event which directly affects the financial condition of the entity under audit, the rule of informative disclosure does not compel the independent accountant to contribute in advance to a possible adverse effect on the client's credit standing.

#### **.08 Going Concern Problem—Financial Statements Prepared on the Income Tax Basis of Accounting**

*Inquiry*—A client prepares its financial statements on the income tax basis of accounting. The client is experiencing financial difficulties and its ability to continue as a going concern is questionable. Since the financial statements are prepared on "an other comprehensive basis of accounting," must the CPA's audit report include an explanatory paragraph that refers to this uncertainty?

*Reply*—Yes. Paragraph .31(b) of AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states:

If the auditor has substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time not to exceed one year beyond the date of the financial statements, the auditor should add an explanatory paragraph after the opinion paragraph of the report only if the auditor's substantial doubt is relevant to the presentation.

AU section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), applies to audits of financial statements prepared either in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) or in accordance with other comprehensive bases of accounting. Therefore, when the auditor concludes that there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period, regardless of the basis of accounting, the auditor should include an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) to reflect that conclusion.

#### **.09 Audit Report for Development Stage Enterprise**

*Inquiry*—Is an explanatory paragraph in the auditor's report for a going concern uncertainty always required for a development stage enterprise because there is doubt as to recovery of costs from future operations?

*Reply*—No. A going concern uncertainty does not automatically arise because an enterprise is in the development stage. In accordance with AU section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), the auditor should consider whether the results of the procedures performed (in planning, gathering evidence relative to the various audit objectives, and completing the audit) identify conditions and events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time. If such conditions or events are identified, the auditor should consider management's plan to deal with the adverse effects of the conditions and events (such as financing or additional capital infusion), and assess the likelihood that such plans can be effectively implemented.

If the auditor concludes that substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for one year after the balance sheet date remains after considering conditions, events and management's plans, the going concern issue should be adequately disclosed in the financial statements, and the auditor's report should include an explanatory paragraph to reflect this conclusion.

---

[The next page is 9121.]

## Section 9070

### Subsequent Events

#### **.01 Failure to Remit Withholding Taxes in Subsequent Period**

*Inquiry*—In the course of an examination of the financial statements, the auditor has discovered that in the period subsequent to the balance sheet date the company has not remitted to the appropriate agencies the taxes currently withheld from employees' wages. Assuming the amount is material, is it necessary that this matter be disclosed in the auditor's report?

*Reply*—Paragraph .03 of AU section 560, *Subsequent Events* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states, in part:

The first type [of subsequent events] consists of those events that provide additional evidence with respect to conditions that existed at the date of the balance sheet and affect the estimates inherent in the process of preparing financial statements . . . . The financial statements should be adjusted . . . .

Paragraph .05 of AU section 560 states, in part:

The second type consists of those events that provide evidence with respect to conditions that did not exist at the date of the balance sheet being reported on but arose subsequent to that date. These events should not result in adjustment of the financial statements. Some of these events, however, may be of such a nature that disclosure of them is required to keep the financial statements from being misleading.

Even if it is determined that the financial statements are not directly affected, it is possible that the situation indicated future serious difficulties that might require disclosures.

If the delinquent obligations are not evidence of serious financial difficulties, there usually would be no reason why obligations incurred subsequent to the balance sheet date need be reported in financial statements as of such date. In such a case, it should be expected that the delinquent payments will soon be remitted.

#### **.02 Disclosure of Note Receivable Covering Previous Account of Bankrupt Company**

*Inquiry*—Company A reports on a fiscal year ending January 31. Company A's accounts receivable include a material amount due from a bankrupt company. To avoid legal action, several individuals formed a new company. The new company and the individuals signed a note which would pay the accounts receivable of the bankrupt company over a three year period. The note was signed on March 1, subsequent to the balance sheet date. Should the note receivable, assumed to be collectible, be presented in the balance sheet at January 31?

*Reply*—AU section 560, *Subsequent Events* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), deals with subsequent events. Paragraph .07 of AU section 560 states, in part:

Subsequent events affecting the realization of assets such as receivables and inventories or the settlement of estimated liabilities ordinarily will require adjustment of the financial statements . . . because

such events typically represent the culmination of conditions that existed over a relatively long period of time.

Accordingly, the accounts receivable should be reported as a note receivable at January 31, with adequate disclosure of the financial arrangements made after the balance sheet date.

### **.03 Discovery of Potential Liability in Subsequent Period**

*Inquiry*—In the period subsequent to the balance sheet date, the auditors discovered that an employee of the client had used a company purchase order to obtain merchandise for his personal business. This transaction resulted in a material potential liability of the client. Negotiations with the creditor ensued and the client's attorney was successful in securing a complete release from any obligation on the part of the client.

Is it necessary to disclose this matter on the client's financial statements?

*Reply*—According to paragraphs .03–.04 of AU section 560, *Subsequent Events* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), the resolution of this matter appears to constitute a subsequent event which is evidence of a condition that existed at the balance sheet date, but since no transaction in fact occurred which involved the client, it is not necessary to disclose the matter in the financial statements. However, a condition which did affect the client and which did exist at the balance sheet date is the future legal costs of settling the matter. Provisions for these costs (if they are material) should be made on the financial statements, and the reasons for incurring these costs should be disclosed.

### **.05 Consideration of Impact of Losses From Natural Disasters Occurring After Completion of Audit Field Work and Signing of the Auditor's Report But Before Issuance of the Auditor's Report and Related Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—An auditor completes the field work with respect to an audit of financial statements, performs all of the post-field work procedures required by the firm's quality control standards and signs the audit report but does not immediately issue the auditor's report and the related financial statements to the client. During the period that the report was signed but not issued, the client suffers a significant loss due to a natural disaster. What are the auditor's responsibilities with respect to consideration of a material subsequent event that occurs after completion of field work and after the signing of the auditor's report but before issuance of the auditor's report and the audited financial statements?

*Reply*—Paragraph .04 of AU section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that after the date of the report, the auditor has no obligation to make any further or continuing inquiry or perform any other auditing procedures with respect to the audited financial statements covered by that report, unless new information which may affect the report comes to his or her attention. In addition, paragraph .01 of AU section 560, *Subsequent Events* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), defines a subsequent event as events or transactions which occur subsequent to the balance-sheet date, but prior to the issuance of the financial statements that have a material effect on the financial statements and therefore require adjustment or disclosure in the financial statements.

A loss from a natural disaster occurring after year end would be considered a type II subsequent event. paragraph .05 of AU section 560 defines such a subsequent event as an event that provides evidence with respect to conditions that did not exist at the date of the balance sheet being reported on but arose subsequent to that date. These events should not result in an adjustment to the

financial statements. Some of these events, however, may be of such a nature that disclosure of them is required to keep the financial statements from being misleading. In addition, the auditor should always remember that the financial statements belong to the client and the client may wish to disclose the event in the notes to the financial statements even if not required to do so.

Management and the auditor should consider whether a type II subsequent event would be of such a nature that disclosure of the event is necessary in order to keep the financial statements from being misleading. Management and the auditor should also consider whether the event affects the entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

For example, if the auditee owns a major distribution center in an area that is declared a disaster area by a local, state, or federal government due to natural disaster (e.g. hurricane, earthquake, tornado), management and the auditor should assess the damage done to that asset and the impact on the entity's current and future operations and determine whether disclosure of the impact of the disaster is required to keep the financial statements from being misleading. Occasionally such an event may be so significant that disclosure can best be made by supplementing the historical financial statements with pro forma financial data giving effect to the event as if it had occurred on the date of the balance sheet. It may be desirable to present pro forma statements, usually a balance sheet only, in columnar form on the face of the historical statements.

The auditor may conclude that the event has such a material impact on the entity that it would be appropriate to include an emphasis of matter paragraph in the auditor's report directing the reader's attention to the event and its effects. As paragraph .19 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), notes, emphasis paragraphs are never required and are added solely at the auditor's discretion.

If the auditor concludes that the effects of the disaster are such that substantial doubt exists as to the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, the auditor should include an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) to reflect that conclusion. Paragraph .13 of AU section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), provides an example of such an explanatory paragraph.

---

[The next page is 9141.]



## Section 9080

### ***Audited Financial Statements***

#### **.02 Going Concern Assumption for Venture With Limited Life**

*Inquiry*—A corporation has recently been organized with the sole purpose of constructing a shopping center which will take several years to complete, after which the company will be liquidated. The company uses the completed contract method to recognize income and will have only one operating cycle.

Should there be an explanatory paragraph in the auditor's report now or near the final years of operations on the assumption that after a certain fixed period it will no longer be a "going concern"?

*Reply*—AU section 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), requires that an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) be included in the audit report when the auditor concludes there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time. A reasonable period of time is defined as "a period of time not to exceed one year beyond the date of the financial statements being audited." Therefore, when the auditor has substantial doubt that the corporation will continue as a going concern for one year from the date of the financial statements under audit, an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) reflecting that conclusion should be included in the audit report.

However, if the corporation has presented its financial statements on the assumption of liquidation, AU section 341 does not apply and therefore an explanatory paragraph reflecting the auditor's conclusion that substantial doubt exists about the corporation's ability to continue as a going concern is not necessary.

#### **.03 Opinion on Balance Sheet Only**

*Inquiry*—Occasionally, a client will request from a CPA only an audited balance sheet with footnotes even though the CPA has examined and reported on all the financial statements. The usual purpose of this statement is for presentation by the client to a supplier for securing credit.

In complying with such a request, one CPA furnishes the client with the balance sheet, the notes to all the financial statements, and the following report:

We have audited the accompanying balance sheet of X Company as of December 31, 20XX. This financial statement is the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on this financial statement based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the balance sheet is free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the balance sheet. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall balance sheet presentation. We believe that our audit of the balance sheet provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the balance sheet referred to above presents fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of X Company as of December 31, 20XX, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.

Does such a practice satisfy the CPA's reporting obligation according to AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1)?

**Reply**—Paragraphs .33–.34 of AU section 508 permit the expression of an opinion on a balance sheet only. In expressing such an opinion, the explanatory and scope paragraphs need not refer to the audit of related statements which are not being presented. The only information necessary to the readers of this report would concern the audit of the balance sheet.

The notes to the financial statements which do not pertain to the balance sheet should be omitted. However, if depreciable property is a significant portion of assets, the disclosures required by Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 360-10-50-1 should be considered necessary for fair presentation of the balance sheet. Disclosure as to pension plans, except for the amount of expense for the current year, would also be appropriate.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.04 Opinion on Balance Sheet With Disclaimer on Income Statement**

**Inquiry**—A CPA firm has been engaged to perform the initial audit of a company. Since the firm did not observe the inventory taking at the beginning of the period and it is not practicable for it to satisfy itself by other means as to the beginning inventory, the firm plans to issue an opinion only on the balance sheet and disclaim an opinion on the income statement. Would this be in accordance with paragraph .33 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1)?

**Reply**—Since the engagement involves a scope limitation, paragraph .33 of AU section 508 does not apply because that pertains to audits that are unrestricted. Paragraph .05 of AU section 508, however, would apply and concludes, “The auditor may express an unqualified opinion on one of the financial statements and express a qualified or adverse opinion or disclaim an opinion on another if the circumstances warrant.” If the independent auditor has not satisfied himself by means of other auditing procedures with respect to opening inventories, he should either qualify or disclaim an opinion on the income statement.

If an opinion is disclaimed on the income statement, a disclaimer on the statement of cash flows would also be required as illustrated in paragraph .67 of AU section 508.

#### **.06 Reference in Financial Statements to Auditor's Report**

**Inquiry**—Audited financial statements often contain a note such as:

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this financial statement.

or a note sometimes reads

The accompanying notes and auditor's report are an integral part of this financial statement.

The only difference between the two notes is the inclusion of the phrase, “and auditor’s report.” Is a reference to the auditor’s report necessary?

*Reply*—Paragraph .03 of AU section 110, *Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), in discussing the distinction between responsibilities of the auditor and management, states, in part: “The financial statements are management’s responsibility.” Therefore, the auditor’s report cannot be an integral part of the financial statements, and it is inappropriate to include it by reference.

### **.09 Arrangement of References to Financial Statements in Auditor’s Report**

*Inquiry*—The examples of auditor’s opinions in the Statements on Auditing Standards all seem to refer to the statement of financial position first, followed by the statement of results of operations, and finally the statement of cash flows. Is it necessary that the financial statements be presented in this order and the statements be referred to in the auditor’s report in this order?

*Reply*—The order in which the financial statements are referred to in the independent auditor’s report need not follow the order in which the statements are physically arranged. The suggested standard report such as shown in paragraph .08 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), can be used regardless of the order in which the financial statements are presented.

### **.13 Classification of Certain Callable Obligations**

*Inquiry*—In some situations in which there is a violation of a debt agreement that makes a long-term obligation callable, management continues to classify the obligation as long-term because it asserts that it is probable that the violation will be cured during the grace period, while the auditor does not agree with that assertion. In such a situation, does an uncertainty exist that might cause the auditor to add an explanatory paragraph (after the opinion paragraph) to his report?

*Reply*—No. Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 470-10-45-12 requires that long-term obligations be classified as current liabilities if they are, or will be, callable because of the debtor’s violation of a provision of the debt agreement unless certain conditions are met. These conditions occur when (1) the creditor waives or loses the right to demand payment for more than one year from the balance sheet date or (2) it is probable that the violation will be cured within the grace period specified in the loan agreement.

The circumstances described above do not constitute an uncertainty as described in AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), because they do not involve matters expected to be resolved at a future date (paragraph .29 of AU section 508). If the auditor, on the basis of evidence available to him, disagrees with management’s assertion, a qualified (“except for”) or adverse opinion because of a departure from generally accepted accounting principles should be considered.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

### **.14 Compilation of Supplementary Schedules in Audited Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—When supplementary schedules are included with audited financial statements in an auditor-submitted document, can these schedules be compiled in accordance with paragraph .83 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2)?

*Reply*—No. It would not be appropriate to refer to the accounting and review services literature to report on the accompanying information in this situation. If such schedules accompany financial statements audited in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the guidance in AU section 551, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), should be followed. Paragraph .06(d) of AU section 551 states that the auditor should either express or disclaim an opinion on the information, depending on whether it has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements.

### **.15 Condensed Financial Statements of a Nonpublic Entity**

*Inquiry*—A client prepares condensed financial statements that name the auditor and state that they have been derived from audited financial statements. The condensed statements incorporate the audited financial statements by reference and indicate such statements and auditor's report thereon may be obtained. Must the auditor report on the condensed financial statements?

*Reply*—Paragraph .07 of AU section 552, *Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that an auditor need not report on the condensed financial statements provided they are included in a document containing audited financial statements or incorporating such statements by reference to information filed with a regulatory agency. Many accountants believe that if the condensed financial statements of a nonpublic entity refer to the audited statements and location where they may be obtained, an auditor need not report on such condensed statements.

---

[The next page is 9161.]

## Section 9100

### ***Signing and Dating Reports***

#### **.01 Use of Successor Firm Name in Signing Registration Statement**

*Inquiry*—A CPA firm has been requested to provide an opinion on the consolidated financial statements of a client covering a five-year period. During this five-year period, the CPA firm has undergone several changes in its organization and its name:

1. Opinions for the first two years were issued by John Doe & Co.
2. In the third year, the accounting practice merged with another firm and the opinions for years three and four were signed by Doe, Roe & Co. Primary responsibility for the client was retained by the partners of John Doe & Co.
3. This partnership was later dissolved and the opinion in year five was signed by John Doe & Co., who, under the dissolution agreement, retained the working papers for this client.

Since it is impracticable to obtain the consent of each partner of the dissolved partnership, may the opinion on the five-year statements be issued by John Doe & Co.?

*Reply*—This situation is discussed in footnote 22 in paragraph .65 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). Since the partners of John Doe & Co., as it presently exists, retained primary responsibility for the publicly held company in question during the merger period, and since the firm is a successor in interest to the engagement and has retained all working papers for this client, it appears that, after consideration of these circumstances, the statements of consolidated income for the five-year period may be released solely in the name of John Doe & Co.

#### **.02 Reporting on Companies With Different Fiscal Years**

*Inquiry*—A CPA has a client whose fiscal year ends on June 30. A parent company of this client now wishes to go public and must file consolidated financial statements with the SEC. The parent company, however, observes a fiscal year ending on December 31.

The CPA has been asked by the parent to provide financial statements with an auditor's opinion for the year ending December 31, 20X3. To do this, the auditor must assemble figures for the period January 1, 20X3, to June 30, 20X3, from the financial statements for the year ended June 30, 20X3, and figures for the period July 1, 20X3, to December 31, 20X3, from the financial statements for the year ended June 30, 20X4.

The CPA has been having difficulty in segregating the financial information into these six-month periods because of the condition of the accounting records. Furthermore, the inventories were not observed nor were the receivables confirmed at the December 31 dates.

Under these conditions, should the CPA express his opinion for the year ended June 30, 20X3, and disclaim an opinion for the six months ended December 31, 20X3?

*Reply*—In order for an auditor to express an opinion on financial statements for prior periods, it is generally not necessary to observe all audit procedures required for the most recent financial statements. Footnote 14 in paragraph .24 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), (in referring to absence of confirmation of receivables and observation of inventories) indicates that the omission of these procedures at the beginning of the year is not required to be disclosed in situations where the independent auditor has satisfied himself by other auditing procedures. However, he may wish to disclose the circumstances of the engagement and briefly describe the other procedures.

Generally, if the client's records are reasonably well kept and the auditor has satisfied himself as to year-end financial statements, review of ratios of sales to cost of sales and determination that accruals have been properly recognized at the interim date will enable an auditor to satisfy himself that the financial statements at an intervening interim date are fairly presented. On the other hand, if no perpetual inventory records are kept and if the client has not prepared inventories as of the interim date, it may not be practicable to reconstruct such inventory, and a disclaimer of opinion must be expressed on the reconstructed statements. In such circumstances, it would appear necessary that the auditor indicate in a middle paragraph that, due to the fact that he was not engaged to make an audit of financial statements as of such date until June 30, 20X4, he was not in a position to observe the amount of inventory at such date and is unable to satisfy himself thereto by the application of other auditing procedures. If this be the case, the SEC would probably be willing to accept combined income statements based on statements of the subsidiary company as of a date six months different than the parent and to accept unconsolidated balance sheets, with the balance sheet of the subsidiary being presented as of its appropriate year-end. The absence of correspondence with debtors and creditors would probably not cause similar problems.

#### **.05 Signing of Independent Auditor's Report**

*Inquiry*—Should the independent auditor's report be manually signed?

*Reply*—Paragraph .08 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), indicates that one of the basic elements of the report is "the manual or printed signature of the auditor's firm."

Although AU section 508 does not require a manual signature, Department of Labor and Securities and Exchange Commission regulations require manual signatures in certain circumstances.

#### **.06 The Effect of Obtaining the Management Representation Letter on Dating the Auditor's Report**

*Inquiry*—AU section 333, *Management Representations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), establishes a requirement that the independent auditor obtain written representations from management as part of an audit of financial statements performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Additionally, paragraph .23 of AU section 339, *Audit Documentation* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that the auditor's report should not be dated earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the opinion. Among other things, sufficient appropriate audit evidence includes evidence that the audit documentation has been reviewed, and that the entity's financial statements, including disclosures, have been prepared and that management has asserted that it has taken responsibility for them. Is the auditor required to

have the signed management representation in hand as of the date of the auditor's report?

*Reply*—Paragraph .01 of AU section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states, in part: "The auditor's report should not be dated earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the opinion [footnote omitted]." Such sufficient appropriate audit evidence includes management having asserted responsibility for the final financial statements. The requirement does not mean that the auditor needs to be in physical receipt of the representation letter on the date of the auditor's report. However, management will need to have reviewed the final representation letter and, at a minimum, have orally confirmed that they will sign the representation letter, without exception, on or before the date of the representations. The auditor will need to have the signed management representation letter in hand prior to releasing the auditor's report, since management's refusal to furnish written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the audit sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion (see AU section 333).

---

[The next page is 9181.]



## Section 9110

### *Special Reports*

#### **.01 Determination of Sales Price Based on Auditor's Report**

*Inquiry*—A CPA has been designated by a contract of sales to prepare a statement of “net current assets” and a statement of net income of the selling firm. Both are elements in the determination of the sales price.

A disagreement has arisen between the seller and the buyer as to the pricing of the inventory which represents the major portion of the “net current assets.” The seller relies on a formula represented as “heretofore agreed . . . .” The buyer demands a formula “based upon good accounting practice.”

The CPA believes he may have to submit two inventory values to comply with the contract provisions—one to describe the “net current assets” which will use the formula set forth in the contract, and a second using the normal pricing methods of prior years. There is a major variation between the two. The formula in the contract was not represented as being based on good accounting methods but was developed by management after the date of their latest audit.

Can the CPA express an unqualified opinion on each of the two statements if different price bases are used provided full disclosure is made?

*Reply*—This is a special report situation and these are special circumstances in which the auditor may have a certain reporting latitude he might not otherwise have. Since seller and buyer were both parties to the contract, the CPA was designated by the contract to prepare specified statements, and the contract apparently describes a special formula to be used in pricing inventories, the CPA would ordinarily perform strictly according to the terms of the engagement and report on one set of statements as being fairly presented or correctly presented in accordance with the specified contractual formula.

However, since the CPA is aware of the basic disagreement between seller and buyer, he might be much more helpful towards ultimately resolving the issue if he were to prepare statements on both bases.

The auditor may properly report on the two statements prepared in accordance with different inventory pricing bases, full disclosure, of course, being assumed. A more significant question, under the circumstances, is whether he has (or can obtain) consent from both parties modifying the terms of the engagement to allow preparation of the statements on a dual basis.

#### **.03 Audit of Sales for Percentage-of-Sales Lease Agreements**

*Inquiry*—Tenants' lease agreements with a large shopping center provide for a minimum annual rental plus a percentage rent for sales in excess of a certain dollar amount. In accordance with the leases, the shopping center has engaged the services of a CPA to verify that sales exceeding the specified minimum base are being reported. If the CPA is satisfied that the internal control of a tenant is good, may he rely on copies of sales tax returns filed with the state as sufficient evidence for his examination? Is any further verification necessary if a tenant submits a written confirmation of its annual sales from its CPA?

*Reply*—The degree of reliance which the auditor can place on the work of a tenant's CPA will depend upon many considerations such as those described in AU section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*

(AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). Comparison of the sales figure reported to the client with the figure reported on the tenant's sales tax return would not in itself be sufficient verification, and additional procedures will be necessary.

An audit program suitable for determining the annual sales of the tenants will have to be highly flexible. Flexibility is required so as to enable the field auditors involved to adjust the audit procedures employed from store to store, as dictated by changes in types of merchandise sold, selling policies employed, sufficiency of records maintained, adequacy of internal control, etc. Accordingly, the depth of the examination will vary to some extent with almost every tenant audited.

Procedures might include examining weekly cash reports submitted by store managers and comparing these reports with general ledger entries, bank statements, and state and federal tax returns, and test checking consecutively numbered sales invoices.

Perhaps the most important documents to play a role in such an examination of the tenants' sales will be the lease agreements which provide the very basis for such examination and which may well contain restrictions on the number and type of records and reports that each tenant will be required to make available.

### **.07 Statement of Cash Receipts and Disbursements**

*Inquiry*—What is the appropriate language for audit, review, and compilation reports on a statement of cash receipts and disbursements?

*Reply*—Report language will vary depending on the level of service performed. A statement of cash receipts and disbursements is a financial statement prepared under an other comprehensive basis of accounting (see paragraph .04 of AU section 623, *Special Reports* [AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1], and paragraph .04 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* [AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2]). It is a pure cash-basis financial statement that summarizes cash activity of the entity, including the individual sources and uses of cash, and may be the only financial statement prepared for the period.

Audit reports on this financial statement should contain a separate paragraph that states the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting is being used and that it represents a comprehensive basis of accounting other than GAAP (see paragraph .05(d) of AU section 623). This extra paragraph is not required for full-disclosure compilation and review reports. In an engagement to compile financial statements that omit substantially all disclosures, if the financial statements do not include disclosure of the basis of accounting used, the basis should be disclosed in the accountant's report (see paragraph .20 of AR section 100).

Illustrations of audit, review, and compilation reports on statements of cash receipts and disbursements follow:

#### **A) Audit**

We have audited the accompanying statements of cash receipts and disbursements of XYZ Company for the years ended December 31, 20X2 and 20X1. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the statements of cash receipts and disbursements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining

on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the statements of cash receipts and disbursements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the statements of cash receipts and disbursements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

As described in Note X, the financial statements have been prepared on the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting, which is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the cash receipts and disbursements of XYZ Company for the years ended December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, on the basis of accounting described in Note X.

**B) *Review***

I (We) have reviewed the accompanying statements of cash receipts and disbursements of XYZ Company for the years ended December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, in accordance with Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. All information included in these financial statements is the representation of the management (owners) of XYZ Company.

A review consists principally of inquiries of company personnel and analytical procedures applied to financial data. It is substantially less in scope than an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, I (we) do not express such an opinion.

Based on my (our) review, I am (we are) not aware of any material modifications that should be made to the accompanying financial statements in order for them to be in conformity with the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting described in Note X.

**C) *Compilation With Full Disclosure***

I (We) have compiled the accompanying statements of cash receipts and disbursements of XYZ Company for the years ended December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, in accordance with Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

A compilation is limited to presenting in the form of financial statements information that is the representation of management (owners). I (We) have not audited or reviewed the accompanying financial statements and, accordingly, do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on them.

**D) *Compilation With Substantially All Disclosures Omitted Including Disclosure of the Basis of Accounting Used***

I (We) have compiled the accompanying statements of cash receipts and disbursements of XYZ Company for the years ended December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, in accordance with Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services issued by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The financial statements have been prepared on the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting, which is a comprehensive basis of accounting other than generally accepted accounting principles.

A compilation is limited to presenting in the form of financial statements information that is the representation of management (owners). I (We) have not audited or reviewed the accompanying financial statements and, accordingly, do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on them.

Management has elected to omit substantially all of the informative disclosures ordinarily included in financial statements prepared on the cash receipts and disbursements basis of accounting. If the omitted disclosures were included in the financial statements, they might influence the user's conclusion about the Company's cash receipts and disbursements. Accordingly, these financial statements are not designed for those who are not informed about such matters.

[Amended, February 1995. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### **.08 Statutory Basis Financial Statements Differ From GAAP**

*Inquiry*—Financial statements filed with a state regulatory agency are prepared on a statutory basis which differs from generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). How should the accountant report on the financial statements if he knows they will be distributed to third parties other than the regulatory agency?

*Reply*—A practical way of handling this situation can be found in footnote 5 in paragraph .05 of AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), which refers to AU section 544, *Lack of Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). In accordance with paragraph .04 of AU section 544, the auditor's report would take the following format:

- The first paragraph would be the standard introductory paragraph.
- The second paragraph would be the standard scope paragraph.
- The third paragraph would be an explanation in full of the differences between GAAP and the state mandated policies, or alternatively, a brief description of the differences with a reference to a footnote identifying these differences in detail.
- The fourth paragraph would be the qualified or adverse opinion regarding the application of GAAP.
- The fifth paragraph would be an opinion stating whether the financial statements are presented in conformity with the prescribed basis of accounting mandated by the state regulatory agency.

### **.13 Report Distribution Restriction Related to Financial Statements Prepared on a Basis of Accounting Prescribed in an Agreement**

*Inquiry*—An auditor was asked to report on special purpose financial statements of a corporation prepared in conformity with a basis of accounting that departs from GAAP and that does not constitute an other comprehensive basis of accounting. Certain assets, such as receivables, inventories, and other properties, have been valued on a basis specified in the agreement (fair market value). Must the auditor issue a report containing a paragraph that restricts the distribution of the report?

*Reply*—Yes. Paragraph .29(g) of AU section 623, *Special Reports* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that in such circumstances, a paragraph restricting the distribution of the report to those within the entity, to the parties to the contract or agreement, for filing with a regulatory agency, or to those with whom the entity is negotiating directly is required.

### **.14 Liquidation Basis Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—The stockholders of a corporation adopted a plan of complete liquidation. The liquidation will occur over a period of three years. What constitutes the basic financial statements following the adoption of the plan, and on what basis should those statements be presented?

*Reply*—Auditing Interpretation No. 8, "Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared on a Liquidation Basis of Accounting," of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AU sec.

9508 par. .33–.37), states that a liquidation basis of accounting may be considered generally accepted accounting principles for entities in liquidation or for which liquidation appears imminent.

The financial statements of entities adopting a plan of liquidation may be presented with financial statements of a prior period that were prepared on a going concern assumption. The basic financial statements following the adoption of a plan of liquidation consist of a statement of net assets in liquidation, and the related statement of changes in net assets in liquidation.

### **.15 Reporting on Medicaid/Medicare Cost Reports**

*Inquiry*—Third-party payors may require health care entities to prepare and submit “cost reports” as a condition of participation in a payor’s program. The most common examples are Medicare and Medicaid. Sometimes, a specific payor (such as a state Medicaid program) will require health care entities to obtain an audit of their financial statements and further, will require some form of independent auditor association with or “certification” of cost reports submitted by the health care entity. No standards exist that define or specify what is meant by “certification” of a cost report. A financial statement audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards does not include rendering an opinion or any form of assurance on the entity’s compliance with laws and regulations, nor does it provide any assurance on an entity’s cost report. Consequently, auditors have expressed concern that providing such certification might erroneously imply that they are providing assurance on the entity’s cost report or on its compliance with cost report rules or regulations. When an auditor has been engaged to perform an audit of a health care entity’s basic financial statements, what form of report should the auditor issue to comply with the certification requirement?

*Reply*—The auditor could enter into a separate engagement to examine the cost report under AT section 601, *Compliance Attestation* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). However, typically states do not require such extensive services and therefore, health care entities may be reluctant to engage the auditor to perform such an examination. If a health care entity includes their cost report as accompanying information with their audited basic financial statements, an auditor may report on the cost report as accompanying information in accordance with AU section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*,<sup>1</sup> and AU section 551, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). If certain cost report amounts or statistics have been subjected to auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, the auditor may express an opinion on whether this accompanying information is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to those basic financial statements taken as a whole. The following is an illustration of such an “in relation to” opinion on certain data within a cost report:

Our audit was made for the purpose of forming an opinion on the basic financial statements taken as a whole. The financial and statistical data on pages x through x, designated with the tickmark “#”,<sup>2</sup> that are

---

<sup>1</sup> AU section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), applies if the financial statements and information are contained in a client-prepared document, rather than an auditor-submitted document.

<sup>2</sup> It should be clear from the description in the auditor’s report and/or the specific page numbers referenced as to which data is, and which data is not, covered by the “in relation to” opinion.

excerpted from ABC Health System's [identify title of cost report, such as "Annual Report of Hospitals and Hospital Health Care Complexes"]<sup>3</sup> for the year ended December 31, 200X, identified by Declaration Control Number xxxxxxxx and prepared as of [insert date that cost report was submitted]<sup>4</sup> are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The financial and statistical data, designated with the tickmark "#," has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and, in our opinion, is stated fairly in all material respects in relation to ABC Health System's basic financial statements taken as a whole. Those auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements were not intended to determine compliance with, and therefore would not detect compliance with or deviations from, the applicable instructions furnished by the [identify related regulators, such as "XYZ State Department of Health"] relating to the preparation of the cost report or the reporting requirements contained in the [identify related regulations, such as "XYZ State Medicaid Accounting and Reporting Manual"].<sup>5</sup> None of the other information included in the accompanying schedules excerpted from [identify source] has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in our audit of the basic financial statements referred to above and, accordingly, we express no opinion or any other form of assurance thereon.<sup>6</sup>

This report is intended solely for the information and use of Management and the Board of Directors of ABC Health System and the [identify requesting organization, such as "XYZ State Department of Health"] and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.<sup>7</sup> Because this is a restricted-use report, the auditor should consider the guidance in paragraphs .12-.13 of AU section 532, *Restricting the Use of the Auditor's Report* (AICPA,

---

<sup>3</sup> This wording presumes that the supplementary information is comprised of specific pages or schedules excerpted from the cost report. If the entire cost report is included as supplementary information, this sentence might be reworded to read "Certain supplementary financial and statistical data designated with the tickmark '#' in ABC Health System's [identify title of cost report, such as "Annual Report of Hospitals and Hospital Health Care Complexes"] for the year ended December 31, 200X."

<sup>4</sup> A provider's as-filed cost report may subsequently be revised; therefore, the auditor's report should clearly identify the specific version of the cost report to which the "in relation to" report applies, such as by identifying specific control numbers and/or date of preparation/filing. Doing so will eliminate any future misunderstanding as to the version of the cost report/cost report excerpts covered by the "in relation to" opinion.

<sup>5</sup> An auditor engaged to perform a financial statement audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards would not be in a position to express an opinion, or provide negative assurance, regarding compliance with cost report preparation instructions or rules and regulations covering reimbursement as promulgated by the government program.

<sup>6</sup> A disclaimer should be included as to any other data included in the supplementary information.

<sup>7</sup> Restrictive use language should be included in the report. Paragraph .04 of AU section 532, *Restricting the Use of the Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that the auditor should restrict the use of a report when (a) the subject matter of the auditor's report or the presentation being reported on is based on measurement or disclosure criteria contained in contractual agreements or regulatory provisions that are not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or an other comprehensive basis of accounting or (b) the auditor's report is issued as a by-product of a financial statement audit and is based on the results of procedures designed to enable the auditor to express an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole, not to provide assurance on the specific subject matter of the report.

*Professional Standards*, vol. 1), before deciding whether to combine this report with the auditor's report on the basic financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

---

[The next page is 9201.]



## Section 9120

### Reliance on Others

#### .01 Definition of Principal Auditor

*Inquiry*—In the situation where one auditor relies on the work of another auditor, the term *principal auditor* is used. How is the term *principal auditor* defined?

*Reply*—The *principal auditor* is the auditor expressing an opinion on the financial statements of the parent company or on the consolidated financial statements of several companies, while the *other independent auditor* expresses an opinion on the financial statements of a subsidiary, division, or branch whose statements are being incorporated therein. The term *primary auditor* is also used in this connection as the equivalent of *principal auditor*.

#### .02 Responsibility for Audit of Dividend Fund Managed by Agent

*Inquiry*—A mutual fund employs a management company to act as its dividend disbursing agent and transfer agent. Dividend checks to the individual shareholders of the mutual fund are drawn from a “dividend disbursing agency fund.” This account, however, does not appear as an asset or liability on the books of either the mutual fund or the management company.

Is it the responsibility of the mutual fund’s auditors or the management company’s auditors to audit the dividend disbursing agency fund?

*Reply*—Since it is one of the primary responsibilities of the management company for the mutual fund, to draw and pay individual dividend checks to the fund’s shareholders, it would be appropriate for, if not incumbent upon, the management company’s auditors, in connection with their audit, to see that this function is being properly discharged, even though the account from which these checks are disbursed does not appear as an asset or liability on the books of either the fund or the management company.

#### .04 Reliance on State Grain Inspectors for Inventory Measurements

*Inquiry*—A grain company operates several storage elevators. The company maintains perpetual inventory records for all facilities—both at the elevators and the home office. State grain inspectors measure the stored grain and in effect perform the same audit functions as the CPA firm. Past experience has been that the differences between the measurements of the state inspectors, the CPA firm, and the perpetual inventory records are immaterial. The state inspectors are qualified with years of experience. Can the CPA firm accept the findings of the state inspectors as adequate inventory observation in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards?

*Reply*—Interpretation No. 1, “Report of an Outside Inventory-Taking Firm as an Alternative Procedure for Observing Inventories,” of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AU sec. 9508 par. .01–.06), can be applied to this situation. The CPA firm could use the measurements and calculations of the state grain inspectors but not as a complete substitute for its own independent inventory observation.

#### .06 Use of Other Auditors’ Work When They Are Not Independent

*Inquiry*—AU section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), provides guidance when part

of the audit is performed by other independent auditors. How does the lack of independence of the other auditors affect the use of their work and reports by the principal auditor?

*Reply*—In these circumstances, the work and reports of the other auditors cannot be used in accordance with AU section 543. The responsibility for the audit report on the financial statements rests solely with the principal auditor.

Therefore, judgments about assessments of inherent and control risk, the materiality of misstatements, the sufficiency of tests performed, the evaluation of significant accounting estimates, and other matters affecting the auditor's report should always be those of the principal auditor.

The principal auditor, however, may use his or her judgment in evaluating the work of the other auditors who are lacking in independence in the way he or she would consider the work performed by internal auditors.

#### **.07 Reference to Other Auditors in Accompanying Information Report**

*Inquiry*—An audit report is based in part on the report of other auditors. If the principal auditor makes reference to other auditors' work in the audit report, must the report on accompanying information, which includes data audited by other auditors, include a reference to other auditors' work?

*Reply*—Yes. If a portion of the financial statements was audited by other auditors and the principal auditor's report refers to the other auditors, the principal auditor's report on the accompanying information, which includes data audited by other auditors, also should refer to other auditors' work.

#### **.08 Part of an Audit Performed in Accordance With International Standards on Auditing**

*Inquiry*—AU section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), provides guidance to a principal auditor when part of an audit is performed by other independent auditors, including considerations regarding whether to make reference to another auditor. When the work performed by other independent auditors is conducted in accordance with International Standards on Auditing (or another country's auditing standards) rather than auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America (U.S. GAAS), what are the implications on the audit report of the principal auditor?

*Reply*—The implications to the principal auditor are dependent upon the auditor's decision, made in accordance with AU section 543, to either (a) assume responsibility for the work of the other auditor to the extent that the work relates to the principal auditor's expression of an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole or (b) divide responsibility.

If the principal auditor decides to assume responsibility for the work of the other auditor, the principal auditor or the other auditor may need to perform additional procedures so that the principal auditor has sufficient appropriate audit evidence to express an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole, in accordance with U.S. GAAS.

If the principal auditor decides to divide responsibility, the other auditor would need to perform additional procedures, to the extent necessary, to issue a report stating that the audit was conducted in accordance with U.S. GAAS. The principal auditor's report that makes reference to U.S. GAAS presumes that an audit performed by another auditor also was conducted in accordance with U.S. GAAS, as illustrated in paragraph .09 of AU section 543.

[Issue Date: March 2008]

---

[The next page is 9221.]



## Section 9130

### *Limited Scope Engagements*

#### **.01 Auditor's Report if Inventories Not Observed—I**

*Inquiry*—Clients sometimes impose restrictions on their auditors with regard to the observation and testing of inventory because of the costs involved, yet they still want an opinion from the auditor. What type of opinion can be issued in such circumstances when the inventory is 10 percent or more of total assets?

*Reply*—Paragraphs .20–.26 and .61–.63 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), indicate that if either confirmation of receivables or observation of inventories is omitted because of a restriction imposed by the client, and such inventories or receivables are material, the auditor should modify the scope paragraph and indicate clearly in an explanatory paragraph the limitations on his work and, generally, should disclaim an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole.

The word “generally” may be interpreted to exclude those situations in which inventories or receivables are material, but are not sufficiently material to require a disclaimer of opinion. Paragraph .23 of AU section 508 would appear to govern in such situations. The materiality of inventory would depend on other factors than just the ratio of inventory to total assets, involving among others the ratio of inventory not examined to stockholders’ equity for a statement of financial position and the ratio of inventory to income before taxes for a statement of operations. Unless circumstances are unusual, it is doubtful that inventories could be considered not material if they amount to as much as 10 percent of total assets.

It is conceivable that there might be circumstances where, although the scope of the audit omitted observation of inventories which were in excess of 10 percent of total assets, a qualified opinion on the financial statements might be appropriate.

#### **.02 Auditor's Report if Inventories Not Observed—II**

*Inquiry*—An auditor has been engaged by a corporation on a limited scope basis. The engagement does not include any independent verification of the inventory. The auditor will not be present at any physical inventory taking and the pricing and clerical accuracy of the inventory will not be tested. The inventory is material in relation to the other accounts on the client’s financial statements.

What type of opinion can the auditor give under these circumstances?

*Reply*—The disclaimer of opinion in paragraph .63 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), is appropriate when the scope limitation precludes inventory observation and any other audit tests of the inventories.

The example shown in paragraph .63 of AU section 508 is as follows:

(Introductory paragraph)

We were engaged to audit the accompanying balance sheets of X Company as of December 31, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related statements of income, retained earnings, and cash flows for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management.

(Second (scope) paragraph of standard report should be omitted)

(Explanatory paragraph)

The Company did not make a count of its physical inventory in 20X2 or 20X1, stated in the accompanying financial statements at \$..... as of December 31, 20X2, and at \$..... as of December 31, 20X1. Further, evidence supporting the cost of property and equipment acquired prior to December 31, 20X1, is no longer available. The Company's records do not permit the application of other auditing procedures to inventories or property and equipment.

(Disclaimer paragraph)

Since the Company did not take physical inventories and we were not able to apply other auditing procedures to satisfy ourselves as to inventory quantities and the cost of property and equipment, the scope of our work was not sufficient to enable us to express, and we do not express, an opinion on these financial statements.

## .06 Distinctions Between Scope Limitations

*Inquiry*—Paragraph .24 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states, in part: “When restrictions that significantly limit the scope of the audit are imposed by the client, ordinarily the auditor should disclaim an opinion on the financial statements.”

Footnote 14 in paragraph .24 of AU section 508 states, in part: “Circumstances such as the timing of the work may make it impossible for the auditor to accomplish these procedures. In this case, if the auditor is able to satisfy himself or herself as to inventories or accounts receivable by applying alternative procedures, there is no significant limitation on the scope of the work, and the report need not include a reference to the omission of the procedures or the use of alternative procedures . . . .”

Based on the above excerpts, what is an appropriate auditor's report in each of the following situations:

Auditor is not permitted to confirm receivables but is able to satisfy himself by other means?

Auditor is not permitted to observe inventories but is able to satisfy himself by other means?

Is there a distinction between a client-imposed limitation regarding receivables or inventories and other client-imposed scope limitations?

*Reply*—If a client refuses to permit confirmation of receivables but the auditor is able to satisfy himself by other means, the auditor may express an unqualified opinion.

If a client refuses to permit observation of inventories but the auditor is able to satisfy himself (except as to physical quantities) by other means, the auditor cannot express an unqualified opinion. The client-imposed restriction does not enable the auditor to “make, or observe, some physical counts of the inventory and apply appropriate tests of intervening transactions” in accordance with paragraph .12 of AU section 331, *Inventories* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). Footnote 14 in paragraph .24 of AU section 508 contemplates circumstances that are not related to any client-imposed restrictions, and are not within the control of either the client or the auditor.

Paragraph .23 of AU section 508 states:

The auditor's decision to qualify his or her opinion or disclaim an opinion because of a scope limitation depends on his or her assessment of the importance of the omitted procedure(s) to his or her ability to form an opinion on the financial statements being audited. This assessment will be affected by the

nature and magnitude of the potential effects of the matters in question and by their significance to the financial statements. If the potential effects relate to many financial statement items, this significance is likely to be greater than if only a limited number of items is involved.

Client-imposed limitations on confirmation of receivables and observation of inventories, and scope limitations in other areas should be evaluated on the basis of paragraph .23 of AU section 508. Because AU section 331 is still in effect, the evidence needed to support receivables and inventories would generally cause auditors to treat scope limitations on these items differently from other scope limitations. The final determination of how to report client-imposed scope limitations can only be made by the independent auditor involved after considering all the surrounding circumstances.

[Revised, May 2007.]

#### **.07 Inadequate Internal Control and Financial Records**

*Inquiry*—How should the auditor report that he has been unable, because of inadequate internal control and financial records, to satisfy himself that all transactions were recorded?

*Reply*—Paragraph .22 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), which deals with scope limitations, states, in part:

Restrictions on the scope of the audit, whether imposed by the client or by circumstances such as the timing of his or her work, the inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence, or an inadequacy in the accounting records, may require the auditor to qualify his opinion or to disclaim an opinion. In such instances, the reasons for the auditor's qualification of opinion or disclaimer of opinion should be described in the report.

A disclaimer of opinion in this situation would be appropriate under AU section 508 if the effects of the inadequacy of internal control and the accounting records are sufficiently pervasive. Otherwise, a qualified opinion may be appropriate.

[Revised, May 2007.]

#### **.09 Letter of Audit Inquiry Not Sent to Client's Legal Counsel**

*Inquiry*—If a client refuses to send a letter of audit inquiry to its legal counsel, can the auditor express an unqualified opinion on the client's financial statements?

*Reply*—Paragraph .06 of AU section 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims, and Assessments* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states, in part:

... the auditor should request the client's management to send a letter of inquiry to those lawyers with whom management consulted concerning litigation, claims, and assessments.

Paragraph .07 of AU section 337 indicates certain other procedures that might also disclose litigation, claims, and assessments. Failure to send a letter of audit inquiry to legal counsel, when otherwise indicated, is a scope limitation which would ordinarily require the auditor to express other than an unqualified opinion.

#### **.10 Effect of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) Departures on Limited Scope Engagements**

*Inquiry*—The auditor of a company is unable to observe physical inventory at year end due to a restriction imposed by the client. Because the inventory is material, the auditor plans to issue a disclaimer of opinion on the financial

statements in accordance with paragraph .61 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1).

The auditor also discovers significant mathematical errors in the client's last-in, first-out (LIFO) provision in the prior year. The auditor advises the client to report the error as a prior period adjustment in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification* 250, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*. If the client refuses to do so, the auditor is now faced with a GAAP departure and a disclaimer of opinion—both related to the company's inventory.

How would the GAAP departure affect the auditor's disclaimer of opinion?

*Reply*—Assuming the auditor decided not to withdraw from the engagement, the guidance in paragraph .61 of AU section 508 should be followed. That paragraph discusses disclaimers of opinion and states that the auditor “. . . should also disclose any other reservations he has regarding fair presentation in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.”

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

---

[The next page is 9241.]

## Section 9150

# Compilation and Review Engagements

### .01 Compiled Financial Statements Not Adjusted

*Inquiry*—An accountant processes client input on a computer and produces monthly statements that do not include adjustments for changes in inventories, prepayments, and accruals, and do not include notes. Adjustments are recorded annually. Can the accountant state in his or her report that adjustments to make the statements not misleading have not been made?

*Reply*—No. The specific departures from GAAP must be disclosed. Paragraphs .56–.58 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), state that the accountant should consider whether modification of the standard report is adequate to disclose the departures. Paragraph .57 of AR section 100 describes the form of report when the accountant concludes that a modified report is appropriate. The departures should be disclosed in a separate paragraph, including the effects of the departures on the financial statements if such effects have been determined by management or are known as a result of the accountant's procedures, or the accountant should state that the effects have not been determined.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### .02 Inquiries for a Review Engagement

*Inquiry*—Paragraph .98 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), lists certain suggested inquiries for a review engagement. Is a “yes” or “no” response sought?

*Reply*—Paragraph .98 of AR section 100 states that the list is not intended to serve as a checklist, but to describe the general areas in which inquiries might be made. The inquiries in paragraph .98 of AR section 100 are presented for illustrative purposes only. They do not necessarily apply to every engagement, nor are they meant to be all-inclusive.

The objective of a review engagement is to obtain moderate assurance that there are no material modifications that should be made to the financial statements in order for the statements to be in conformity with the applicable financial reporting framework. The accountant obtains such evidence primarily through the performance of analytical procedures and inquiries of company personnel. Therefore, the accountant's inquiry procedures should not be treated as a mechanical exercise to obtain “yes” or “no” answers to the illustrative inquiries. The accountant should exercise professional judgment based on all relevant circumstances in designing his or her inquiries and evaluating responses.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### .04 Financial Statements Marked As “Unaudited”

*Inquiry*—Should each page of compiled or reviewed financial statements of nonissuers be marked “unaudited”?

*Reply*—No. AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), does not require that each page

of compiled or reviewed financial statements of a nonissuer be marked as "unaudited."

Each page of the financial statements compiled or reviewed by the accountant should include a reference such as "See Accountant's Compilation Report" or "See Accountant's Review Report" (paragraphs .15 and .48 of AR section 100), as appropriate.

[Amended, February 1995. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### **.08 Supplementary Information**

*Inquiry*—Are supporting schedules of balance sheet or income statement accounts considered supplementary information? If so, what are the reporting requirements in a review or compilation engagement?

*Reply*—Paragraph .83 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), pertains to reporting on supplementary information that accompanies the basic financial statements in a review or compilation engagement. Financial and nonfinancial information (other than the financial statements and the accountant's report thereon) that is included in a document containing compiled or reviewed financial statements and the accountant's report thereon is considered to be supplementary information.

If the information does not accompany the basic financial statements, it is not supplementary information and, therefore, the accountant does not have a reporting obligation.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### **.09 Application of AR Section 300 to Certain Companies Required to File With Regulatory Bodies**

*Inquiry*—Some nonissuers, as defined in paragraph .04 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), such as privately owned brokers or dealers in securities, may be required to include unaudited financial statements in a form prescribed by a regulatory body concerned with the sale or trading of securities, such as the National Association of Securities Dealers or the New York Stock Exchange. Does the first sentence of paragraph .02 of AR section 300, *Compilation Reports on Financial Statements Included in Certain Prescribed Forms* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), preclude an accountant from using the alternative form of report illustrated in AR section 300 in those circumstances?

*Reply*—No. Paragraph .03 of AR section 300 excludes from the definition of a prescribed form those forms ". . . concerned with the sale or trading of securities." In that context, "securities" refers to those issued or to be issued by the entity submitting the prescribed form. Accordingly, an accountant is not precluded in the circumstances described in this question from using the alternative form of compilation report illustrated in AR section 300 if the entity is not submitting the prescribed form in connection with the actual or contemplated sale or trading of its own securities.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.10 Review of Financial Statements Included in a Prescribed Form**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph .03 of AR section 300, *Compilation Reports on Financial Statements Included in Certain Prescribed Forms* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), states, in part: “in the absence of a requirement or a request for a review report on the financial statements included in a prescribed form, the following form of standard compilation report may be used when the unaudited financial statements of a nonissuer are included in a prescribed form that calls for departure from generally accepted accounting principles . . .” Can an accountant perform a review of financial statements included in a prescribed form that are presented on a basis other than generally accepted accounting principles?

*Reply*—A review can be performed on the financial statements included in a prescribed form prepared under any comprehensive basis of accounting, but AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), reporting standards would apply, not those in AR section 300. Paragraph .01 of AR section 300 states, in part:

The requirements of AR section 100 and AR section 200 are applicable when the unaudited financial statements of a nonissuer are included in a prescribed form. This Section amends AR section 100 and AR section 200 to provide for an alternative form of standard compilation report when the prescribed form or related instructions call for departure from generally accepted accounting principles by specifying a measurement principle not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or by failing to request the disclosures required by generally accepted accounting principles.

Accordingly, where the prescribed form calls for the departures referred to above, a review report expressing a conclusion under AR section 100 would be appropriate provided that, as required by paragraph .57 of AR section 100, the review report discloses the departures from generally accepted accounting principles, including the departures called for by the prescribed form.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.11 Computer Generated Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—A firm recently purchased a new computer which will enable it to have some of its clients access this computer via a phone terminal in their office. The client will input all information into the firm’s computer including journal entries and will be able to prepare its own financial statements which will be received via the client’s phone terminal. No one in the accounting firm directly inputs data into the computer or sees the financial statements. Is the accounting firm required to attach a compilation report for this type service?

*Reply*—No. If the client directly inputs data from its office into the computer and generates the financial statements in the client’s office directly from the computer, the firm does not have a reporting responsibility. However, if the financial statements are generated by the CPA in the firm’s office, there may be a reporting responsibility as discussed in paragraph .13 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.16 Reference to Accountant's Report in Notes to Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—Paragraphs .15 and .48 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), require that each page of the financial statements compiled or reviewed by the accountant include a reference such as “See Accountant's Compilation (or Review) Report.”

Does this requirement extend to the related notes to the financial statements?

*Reply*—Yes, the related notes to financial statements are an integral part of the basic financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.18 Bank Engaged a CPA Firm to Compile a Financial Statement of Another Entity**

*Inquiry*—A bank has engaged a CPA firm to compile a balance sheet for another entity. The bank has possession of the books and records of the entity. Can the firm issue a compilation report under such circumstances?

*Reply*—There is nothing in the Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services which precludes the CPA firm from issuing a compilation report under such circumstances. However, paragraph .09 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), states, in part: “To compile financial statements, the accountant should possess a general understanding of the nature of the entity's business transactions, the form of its accounting records, the stated qualifications of its accounting personnel, the accounting basis on which the financial statements are to be presented, and the form and content of the financial statements.” Due to the nature of the engagement, the CPA firm may not be able to attain a sufficient level of understanding of the entity's business, as required by paragraph .09 of AR section 100, to issue a compilation report on the balance sheet.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.20 Reissuance When Not Independent**

*Inquiry*—An accountant performed a review in the prior year and a compilation in the current year. The accountant was independent in the prior year but his or her independence was impaired in the current year. May the accountant reissue his or her review report on the prior year financial statements?

*Reply*—Yes. Paragraph .08 of AR section 200, *Reporting on Comparative Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), states, in part: “A continuing accountant who performs a lower level of service with respect to the financial statements of the current period should either (a) include as a separate paragraph of his or her report a description of the responsibility assumed for the financial statements of the prior period . . . or (b) reissue his or her report on the financial statements of the prior period.” The separate paragraph referred to in preceding item (a) includes a statement that the accountant has not performed any procedures in connection with the prior period review engagement after the date of his or her review report as reflected in the example in paragraph .12 of AR section 200.

**.24 Issuing a Compilation Report With Substantially All Disclosures Omitted After Issuing a Report on Financial Statements Containing Full Disclosure**

*Inquiry*—A client wants to submit financial statements with substantially all disclosures omitted to one of its vendors. May the accountant issue a compilation report on those financial statements with substantially all disclosures omitted, if he or she previously issued an audit, review, or compilation report on financial statements with full disclosure for the same reporting period?

*Reply*—Yes. Paragraph .20 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), states that an accountant may compile financial statements that omit substantially all disclosures provided the omission of the disclosure is clearly indicated in the report and is not, to the accountant's knowledge, undertaken with the intention of misleading those who might reasonably be expected to use the financial statements.

If the accountant believes that the client's intent is to mislead users, the accountant should *not* comply with the request. However, if the accountant concludes that it is not the client's intent to mislead users, it would be appropriate to compile financial statements with substantially all disclosures omitted after having compiled, reviewed, or audited full-disclosure financial statements.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.25 Determining Whether Financial Statements Have Been Prepared by the Accountant**

*Inquiry*—Paragraph .01 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), states that the accountant should not submit unaudited financial statements of a nonissuer to his or her client or third parties unless, as a minimum, he or she complies with the provisions of AR section 100 applicable to a compilation engagement. Submission of financial statements is defined in paragraph .04 of AR section 100 as presenting to a client or third parties financial statements that the accountant has prepared either manually or through the use of computer software. If an accountant's work effort results in or contributes to the existence of financial statements, what should an accountant consider in determining whether he or she prepared those financial statements?

*Reply*—Due to computer technology, it is often unclear whether existing financial statements have been “prepared” by an accountant or by management. In considering whether an accountant is deemed to have prepared financial statements, an accountant needs to apply professional judgment to all the facts and circumstances. Some factors that an accountant may consider include the following:

1. *The process used to create the financial statements.* If an accountant takes a client's trial balance and puts the accounts into a format that would represent a financial statement, then an accountant has probably prepared the financial statements. The less an accountant has to do with creating the statements, the less likely an accountant would be deemed to have prepared the statements.
2. *Whether the client engaged the accountant to prepare financial statements or reasonably expected that as part of the professional services engagement the accountant would prepare financial statements.* An

accountant may determine that he or she prepared financial statements even when not so engaged if, as part of an accounting or bookkeeping services engagement, in the accountant's professional judgment, the client reasonably expected that the existing financial statements were prepared as a product of that engagement.

3. *The extent of work effort that an accountant contributed to the existence of the financial statements.* For example, if an accountant is intricately involved in adjusting the general ledger and other accounts that are, in turn, presented in a financial statement format, the more likely an accountant may be viewed as preparing the financial statements. On the other hand, if an accountant is not very involved in the accounting process, the less likely that an accountant would be deemed to have prepared the financial statements.
4. *Where the underlying accounting information resides.* If all the accounting data resides on the accountant's computer, it is more likely that the accountant is deemed to have prepared the financial statements. However, based on the facts and circumstances of the situation, an accountant may conclude that he or she prepared financial statements through the use of accounting or bookkeeping software utilized by the client.

Considerations such as who printed the financial statements or the location at which an accountant's services were performed (for example, at the client's location or the accountant's location) are generally not factors in determining whether the accountant has prepared financial statements.

The previously mentioned factors are not meant to be all-inclusive nor are they meant to be used as a program or checklist for determining whether the accountant has prepared financial statements. They address certain general areas that may be factors in the exercise of professional judgment. The accountant may consider other factors in the exercise of professional judgment.

[Issue Date: December 2008]

---

[The next page is 9261.]

## Section 9160

### Other Reporting Issues

#### .02 Furnishing Unbound Reports to Clients

*Inquiry*—A CPA gets numerous requests from clients for a set of unbound financial statements along with the usual bound sets. The unbound copy is usually reproduced on their copying machines for periodic distribution to suppliers and others. Should the CPA continue to provide these unbound statements?

*Reply*—This practice is dangerous since the CPA is assisting in the reproduction of his report without control over such reproduced copies. It would be preferable if he agreed to provide any additional copies of the report which may be required, thus controlling the assembly of the reproduced reports.

#### .03 Dates on Cover for Financial Statements

*Inquiry*—Paragraph .15 of AU section 504, *Association With Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), specifies that an auditor's report disclose that prior year financial statements presented for comparative purposes are unaudited. Is it appropriate to include the dates of both the current year and prior year financial statements on the cover of the financial statements?

*Reply*—Both years may be included on the cover if the financial statements for the prior year are referred to as unaudited.

#### .06 Break-Even Financial Statements

*Inquiry*—Company A requested compiled financial statements with an inventory reported so that the financial statements would reflect no profit or loss ("break-even financial statements"). How would this affect the accountant's compilation report?

*Reply*—"Break-even financial statements" are not in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Accordingly, the independent accountant would have to express a reservation in his compilation report because of the departure from generally accepted accounting principles as required by paragraph .57 of AR section 100, *Compilation and Review of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2).

#### .07 Financial Statements Cover Period Longer Than Twelve Months

*Inquiry*—Is it acceptable for an auditor to express an opinion on financial statements covering a period longer than twelve months?

*Reply*—It is acceptable provided the title of the financial statements is descriptive of the period covered and the auditor's report clearly indicates the period covered by the financial statements.

#### .08 Title of Auditors' Report

*Inquiry*—Does the auditor's opinion require a title?

*Reply*—Paragraph .08 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states, in part: "... The basic elements of the report are the following: a. A title that includes the word independent ..." Footnote 3 in paragraph .08 of AU section 508 states, in part: "This section does not require a title for an auditor's report if the auditor is not

independent . . .” Therefore, if the auditor is independent, the auditor’s opinion must have a title which includes the word independent.

#### **.10 Distinction Between Internal and General Use of Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—Are financial statements differentiated between internal and general use in the professional reporting literature?

*Reply*—Internal use by management and general use of financial statements are no longer differentiated for historical financial statements. However, the distinction between general and internal use is made for financial forecasts and projections.

#### **.14 Part of Audit Performed by Another Independent Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations**

*Inquiry*—If an auditor who has ceased operations audited the financial statements of one or more subsidiaries, divisions, branches, components, or investments included in an entity’s financial statements, may the principal auditor make reference in his or her report to the audit of that auditor or assume responsibility for that auditor’s work in accordance with AU section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1)?

*Reply*—The principal auditor may make reference to the audit of another auditor, or assume responsibility for that auditor’s work, only if the other auditor has issued an audit report and the principal auditor has completed the procedures required by AU section 543 prior to the time that the other auditor ceased operations. The procedures described in AU section 543 cannot be appropriately performed after the other auditor has ceased operations. In situations in which the principal auditor cannot use the work of the other auditor in accordance with AU section 543, the principal must perform audit procedures sufficient to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion on the financial statements under audit. However, review of the other auditor’s working papers may have an effect on the nature, timing, and extent of those procedures.

#### **.21 Fiscal Years for Tax and Financial Reporting Purposes Differ**

*Inquiry*—Can an entity have different fiscal years for tax and reporting purposes?

*Reply*—There is no requirement in the accounting literature for the tax and the financial reporting year-end to be the same. However, having different fiscal years complicates further any interperiod tax allocation the entity may have.

#### **.22 Location Where Report is Issued**

*Inquiry*—Is there a requirement to indicate the city and state where an accountant’s report is issued?

*Reply*—The AICPA professional standards do not include such a requirement. However, some SEC regulations require the disclosure. For example, SEC Regulation S-X, section 210.2-02, states, in part: “. . . the Accountant’s Report shall indicate the city and state where issued.”

#### **.23 Distinction Between Supplemental Information and Basic Financial Statement Information in an Auditor-Submitted Document**

*Inquiry*—What is an appropriate means of distinguishing between information to be considered a part of the basic financial statements and supplementary information in an auditor-submitted document?

*Reply*—If the basic financial statements refer to specific information (i.e., ‘See Exhibit A—Schedule of Operating Expenses’), such information is considered to be a part of the basic statements and is presumed to have been subjected to the auditing procedures applied to the basic financial statements. This information is therefore not required to be reported on separately and should not be referred to in the auditors’ report. Any additional information presented with the basic financial statements, but not referred to in such statements, should be considered supplementary information unless described otherwise. Such supplementary information should be reported on in accordance with the requirements of AU section 551, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1).

#### **.24 Required Presentation of the Statement of Stockholders’ Equity**

*Inquiry*—Is the statement of stockholders’ equity required when financial position and results of operations are presented?

*Reply*—Disclosure of changes in capital accounts and retained earnings is required. According to Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 505-10-50-2, “if both financial position and results of operations are presented, disclosure of changes in the separate accounts comprising stockholders’ equity (in addition to retained earnings) . . . is required to make the financial statements sufficiently informative. Disclosure of such changes may take the form of separate statements or may be made in the basic financial statements or notes thereto.”

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

#### **.25 Use of Singular v. Plural Terminology for Accountants and Auditors**

*Inquiry*—In reporting on audited, reviewed, or compiled financial statements, should accountants use singular or plural terminology when referring to themselves?

*Reply*—Use of plural or singular terminology is not addressed in the professional standards. Illustrative auditors’ reports in Statements on Auditing Standards use plural terminology, while the accountants’ reports in Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services use both singular and plural.

In practice, sole practitioners often use singular terms; firms that have one partner with professional staff use both singular and plural; and firms that have more than one partner most often use plural. However, the use of singular or plural references to the accountant or auditor is purely discretionary. For ease of report preparation, firms should be consistent in their use of singular or plural in all reports.

#### **.26 Compilation and Review—Comparative Financial Statements**

*Inquiry*—A nonissuer’s financial statements for the year ended December 31, 20X1 were compiled by a predecessor accountant. Management had elected to omit substantially all of the disclosures and the statement of cash flows required by generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

A successor auditor is engaged to audit the 20X2 financial statements, and the client has asked the auditor to include the 20X1 compiled financial statements for comparative purposes with the 20X2 financial statements.

Is the successor auditor permitted to do this?

*Reply*—No. Paragraph .05 of AR section 200, *Reporting on Comparative Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2), states that compiled financial statements that omit substantially all of the disclosures required by GAAP are not comparable to financial statements that include such disclosures.

The 20X1 financial statements would need to be revised to include the statement of cash flows and all disclosures required by GAAP. Either the predecessor or the successor accountant would then need to at least compile the full disclosure financial statements for 20X1.

---

[The next page is 9501.]

**TIS Section 9500****ATTESTATION ENGAGEMENTS**

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

*Section*

9510	Attestation Reports
	.01 Testing Prospective Financial Information as Part of Performing Auditing Procedures
	.02 Availability of Criteria for a Fee
	.03 Reporting on New York State Medicaid Cost Reports

---

**[The next page is 9521.]**



## Section 9510

### ***Attestation Reports***

#### **.01 Testing Prospective Financial Information as Part of Performing Auditing Procedures**

*Inquiry*—Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) require that certain accounts be carried at or adjusted to fair value. Many fair value models are based on the present value of future cash flows or earnings. In making those fair value calculations, management may seek the auditor's assistance in developing what may be considered either a full or partial financial forecast. In testing an entity's fair value calculation, an auditor might test management's assumptions including, for example future cash flows for the next five years. Similarly, the auditor may make an independent estimate of fair value, for example, by using a cash flow model developed and prepared by the auditor.

Does the auditor's assistance in developing or preparing prospective cash flows require the auditor to examine or compile such information in accordance with Statements on Standards for Attest Engagements (SSAEs)?

*Reply*—No. SSAE 10, Chapter 1, paragraph .01 (AT 101.01), states that the attest standards apply when a practitioner is "engaged to issue or does issue an examination...." Accordingly, the auditor would not be required to follow the SSAEs unless the auditor has also been engaged to examine, compile, assemble or apply agreed upon procedures to prospective financial information or the auditor issues an examination, compilation, assembly or agreed upon report on prospective financial information.

#### **.02 Availability of Criteria for a Fee**

*Inquiry*—A practitioner may perform an attestation engagement only if he or she has reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to users. Statement on Standards of Attest Engagements (SSAE) 10, Chapter 1, paragraph .33 (AT 101.33), states in part that criteria should be available to users in one or more of a number of ways, including available publicly. Paragraph .34 (AT 101.34) goes on to say "If criteria are only available to specified parties, the practitioner's report should be restricted to those parties who have access to the criteria as described in paragraphs .78 and .80 (AT 101.78 and .80)." If criteria is only available for a fee, is it considered available publicly for the purpose of paragraphs AT 101.33–.34?

*Reply*—Yes, as long as the criteria is available to any person in the normal course of business, it is considered available publicly. This would include certain industry associations and other organizations that make criteria available free of charge to their members but charge a fee to nonmembers.

#### **.03 Reporting on New York State Medicaid Cost Reports**

On June 27, 2006, the New York State Department of Health ("DOH") issued a prescribed "Opinion of Independent Accountant" (the "Cost Report Opinion") that is required to be utilized by CPAs reporting on audits and attestation engagements associated with a nursing home's filing of its Annual Report of Residential Health Care Facility (RHCF-4). The purpose of this Technical

Practice Aid (“TPA”) is to provide clarity to CPAs performing these engagements. This TPA also may be useful to a CPA performing audits and attestation engagements for the purpose of reporting on an Annual Institutional Cost Report of Hospitals and Hospital Healthcare Complexes and other cost reports filed with the New York State Department of Health or other New York State agencies.

The Cost Report Opinion as prescribed by the DOH references certain data in the facility’s RHCF-4 cost report (the “supplemental data”). The Cost Report Opinion includes three separate opinions:

1. An opinion on the facility’s financial statements (displayed as schedules within the cost report) based on an audit conducted in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards.
2. A SAS No. 29, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor Submitted Documents* (AU 551), opinion on whether the supplemental data is stated fairly in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements taken as a whole.
3. An opinion under the attestation standards (the “attestation opinion”) on the supplemental data’s conformity with the DOH cost report instructions.

The required format of the Cost Report Opinion, as prescribed by the DOH, is attached as Exhibit A. The AICPA staff understands that all DOH Cost Reports, including the Annual Institutional Cost Report of Hospitals and Hospital Healthcare Complexes, within New York State will include similar language.

The Cost Report Opinion contains certain terminology that differs from the language found in AICPA professional standards and therefore may be unclear to practitioners. AICPA staff held conversations with the DOH for the purpose of better understanding their views about these wording differences and their expectations about the procedures a CPA would perform to issue the Cost Report Opinion. The following responses are those of AICPA staff based on their understanding of the requirements and expectations of the DOH.

Four issues are addressed in this Technical Practice Aid:

1. The CPA’s consideration of materiality in completing the attestation engagement.
2. The meaning of the term “certification” in the Cost Report Opinion, and its impact on the CPA’s procedures.
3. The Independence Standards that the CPA is expected to adhere to in the performance of the engagement.
4. Dating the CPA’s report.

**Inquiry**—The attestation opinion contained in the Cost Report Opinion reads as follows:

In our opinion, the above supplemental data are in all material respects in conformity with the applicable instructions relating to the preparation of the RHCF-4 as furnished by the New York State Department of Health for the year ended Month XX, 20XX.

With respect to the attestation opinion’s phrase, “in all material respects,” may a CPA utilize materiality applied at the financial statement level to plan the scope of the attestation procedures, or in the evaluation of misstatements, if any, that are identified through the attestation procedures?

*Reply*—No. The AICPA staff understands that the DOH believes that the use of materiality applied at the financial statement level would not be appropriate for planning or performing attestation procedures related to cost report instructions, or for evaluating any misstatements identified related to conformity with cost report instructions. Rather, the AICPA staff's understanding is that materiality should be determined and applied at the individual schedule level. Accordingly, the DOH expects the CPA to perform procedures on line items, columns, and totals in the specific schedules covered by the CPA's attestation opinion to be able to opine that the financial and statistical data presented on each schedule has been prepared in conformity, in all material respects as determined at the individual schedule level, with the applicable instructions. As a result, the CPA ordinarily will perform procedures beyond those performed in the audit of the financial statements with respect to certain amounts included in the supplemental data. These additional procedures result from the application of a lower materiality level for procedures performed on information included in the individual schedules as compared to the materiality level applied in the financial statement audit.

The CPA may consider attestation risk and materiality in applying his or her professional judgment in determining the nature, timing and extent of attestation procedures for testing the financial and statistical data. The CPA's risk assessment should give consideration to the effects of whether amounts in a particular schedule are either understated or overstated. The quantity of attestation evidence needed is affected by the risk of misstatement (items presenting greater risk likely will require evaluation of attestation evidence beyond that deemed necessary for purposes of the financial statement audit) and by the quality of such attestation evidence. In determining the nature, timing and extent of attest procedures to perform, the CPA may give consideration to:

1. His or her assessment of the facility's policies and procedures related to the preparation of the cost report in accordance with the applicable instructions and,
2. Deficiencies related to internal control over the preparation of the cost report (which may differ from internal control over financial reporting evaluated for purposes of the financial statement audit).

In addition to the above considerations, the CPA may focus his or her testing on those amounts, line items, or schedules that impact the facility's reimbursement or rate setting most significantly.

The purpose of testing the supplemental data is to obtain sufficient appropriate attestation evidence to provide a reasonable basis for the CPA's opinion on whether the financial and statistical data in the schedules is in conformity, in all material respects as determined at the individual schedule level, with the applicable instructions. The CPA will have performed audit procedures directed toward evaluating certain amounts included in the supplemental data in connection with the audit of the facility's financial statements. The CPA may consider the results of those procedures in determining the nature, timing and extent of additional work necessary because of a lower materiality level for individual schedules compared to the materiality level for the financial statements.

The CPA ordinarily would select individual amounts from the supplemental data to examine based on the risk of misstatement or departure from the cost report instructions or by applying sampling. A combination of both selection techniques as described below may be necessary to provide the CPA with sufficient appropriate attestation evidence relative to the supplemental data.

The CPA may select amounts to test based on the risk of material misstatement associated with the reimbursement or rate-setting impact of a particular amount, line item, or schedule. For example, the costs associated with non-moveable equipment may have a greater impact on rate setting when compared with major moveable equipment. Accordingly, the CPA may determine that it is necessary to obtain more attestation evidence related to costs for non-moveable equipment. Factors influencing the CPA's assessment of risk might include the facility's history of misstatements in the cost report, the complexity associated with the preparation of a schedule and the effectiveness of management's internal control over the preparation of the applicable cost report schedules.

The CPA may select amounts to test utilizing sampling. The CPA uses his or her professional judgment to determine when it may be appropriate to use sampling and the sample size.

The CPA's procedures ordinarily will include agreeing individual supplemental data amounts, as appropriate, to related audit documentation or the audited financial statements, or to the general ledger, sub-ledgers, or client analyses prepared in support of the cost report schedules. In addition, the CPA's procedures ordinarily will include substantive procedures applied to selected supplemental data amounts, which are designed to identify material misstatements at the individual schedule level. Substantive procedures include tests of details and substantive analytical procedures. For example, the CPA might select supplemental data amounts and compare them to vendor's invoices or analytically compare the relationship of amounts and current year expectations.

As a result of procedures performed, the CPA may identify departures from the cost report instructions. In that case, the CPA would need to re-consider his or her initial risk assessment and determine whether additional procedures need to be performed. If departures from the cost report instructions are not corrected by facility management, the CPA would consider whether such departures result in the CPA opining that there is a material departure from the cost report instructions.

*Inquiry*—The Cost Report Opinion includes the following paragraph:

The undersigned hereby certifies this opinion and that I/we have disclosed any and all material facts known to me/us, disclosure of which is necessary to make this opinion, the basic financial statements and the supplemental data not misleading. The undersigned hereby further certifies that I/we will disclose any material fact discovered by me/us subsequent to this certification which existed at the time of this certification and was not disclosed in the basic financial statements or the supplemental data, the disclosure of which is necessary to make the basic financial statements or the supplemental data not misleading and will disclose any material misstatement in said financial statements or supplemental data.

Given that the terms "certifies" and "certification" are not defined in AICPA professional standards, should the CPA perform additional procedures beyond those contemplated by Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs) and Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) in order to provide a "certification"? Additionally, since the financial statements and supplemental schedules are the responsibility of management, what is the CPA's responsibility with respect to information discovered subsequent to the certification's report date?

*Reply*—New York State Public Health Law Section 2808-b states in part "All financial statements or financial information...shall be certified in their entirety by an independent public accountant..." Although the phrase "certifies

this opinion” does not appear in AICPA professional standards, there is nothing in the concept of a certification that would be in conflict with or contrary to those standards. The CPA may consider the phrase “certifies this opinion” to be the equivalent of rendering or expressing an opinion. However, it is the responsibility of the CPA to determine, and take any and all steps that are necessary and proper, in order to be able to appropriately sign the Cost Report Opinion.

Public Health Law 2808-b further states that “Subsequent to such certification (the CPA should disclose) any material fact discovered by him which existed at the time of such certification ...which is necessary to make the financial statements or financial information not misleading ....” If the CPA becomes aware of information, which relates to the audited financial statements or supplemental schedules previously reported on by him or her, but which was not known to the CPA at the date of the Cost Report Opinion, and such subsequently discovered information is deemed to be necessary to make the basic financial statements not misleading, the CPA should ensure that such subsequently discovered information is communicated to the DOH. AU section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor’s Report*, provides that the CPA should request the client to communicate such information to the DOH. However, the CPA retains the responsibility to ensure that such information is communicated to the DOH—whether by the client or the CPA. In fulfilling this responsibility, if the client refuses to make such communication the CPA should notify the DOH of the information and that the Cost Report Opinion should no longer be relied upon.

**Inquiry**—The Cost Report Opinion is titled “Opinion of Independent Accountant” and includes the following paragraph:

During the period of this professional engagement, at the time of expressing this opinion, and during the period covered by the financial statements I/we did not have nor were committed to acquire, any direct financial interest or material indirect financial interest in the ownership or operation of the facility and I/we were not connected in any way with the ownership, financing or operation of the facility as a director, officer or employee, or in any capacity other than as an independent certified public accountant or independent public accountant.

What independence requirements are expected to be followed in conducting the engagements contemplated by the Cost Report Opinion?

**Reply**—The CPA should follow Independence Standards as issued by the AICPA and that are codified in the AICPA *Code of Professional Conduct* as well as any independence standards issued by the N.Y. Board of Accountancy.

**Inquiry**—The engagements underlying the Cost Report Opinion may have different dates for completion of field work. For example, the audits of the financial statements and the supplemental data in relation to the basic financial statements taken as a whole may have been completed (and the CPA’s opinions thereon rendered) before the CPA completes the work related to the attestation opinion. In those situations, may the Cost Report Opinion be dual-dated?

**Reply**—Yes. Although dual-dating is not required, the Cost Report Opinion may be dual dated for the attestation opinion as follows:

[Date], except for our examination of the conformity of specified data with the instructions for the year ended December 31, 20XX, as to which the date is [Date].

Exhibit

FORM RHCF-4 DOH 490 (06/07/06)

PLEASE COMPLETE ALL OF THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION

NAME OF FACILITY

OPERATING CERTIFICATE NUMBER

NAME OF ADMINISTRATOR

NAME OF CONTROLLER OR CHIEF FISCAL OFFICER

Opinion of Independent Accountant

We have audited the balance sheet of \_\_\_\_\_ as of December 31, 2004 and the related statements of operations, changes in net assets or equity and cash flows for the year then ended included as Exhibits A through E (the basic financial statements), except for lines 041, 042 and 043 of Exhibit E of Part IV of the accompanying Annual Report of Residential Health Care Facility (RHCF-4) identified by Declaration Control Number \_\_\_\_\_. These financial statements are the responsibility of the facility management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the aforementioned financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of \_\_\_\_\_ as of December 31, 2004 and the results of its operations, changes in net assets or equity and its cash flows for the year then ended, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the basic financial statements taken as whole. The following supplemental data, which are the responsibility of the facility management, are presented for the purpose of additional analysis and are not required as part of the basic financial statements identified by Declaration Control Number \_\_\_\_\_.

PART I—STATISTICAL DATA  
Bed Capacity—Patient Days, Line 017

PART II—CROSSWALK  
Schedule 7, Column 0161  
Schedules 8 through 11, except for Schedule 8C, Lines 010 through 035

**PART IV—UNIFORM REPORT**

Exhibit H, except Columns 0034–0044, Lines 054–057, 060–069 and 090

Exhibit I

Schedule 4, except Columns 0114–0122, Lines 054–057, 060–069 and 090

Schedule 6

The above supplemental data have been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and, in our opinion, are stated fairly in all material respects when considered in conjunction with the basic financial statements included as Exhibits A through E of the RHCF-4, taken as a whole.

Our procedures were not intended to determine compliance with, and therefore would not necessarily disclose deviations from, reporting requirements contained in the New York State Residential Health Care Facility Accounting and Reporting Manual.

The other information included on Parts I, II, III and IV of the Annual Report of Residential Health Care Facility (RHCF-4) identified by Declaration Control Number \_\_\_\_\_, (not detailed in the preceding paragraphs), was not audited by us and, accordingly, we express no opinion thereon.

We have examined the above supplemental data for the year ended December 31, 2004. [Facility name] \_\_\_\_\_ management is responsible for the preparation of the supplemental data in conformity with the applicable instructions relating to the preparation of the RHCF-4 as furnished by the New York State Department of Health for the year ended December 31, 2004. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the supplemental data's conformity with those instructions based upon our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the supplemental data's conformity with the applicable instructions and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the above supplemental data are in all material respects in conformity with the applicable instructions relating to the preparation of the RHCF-4 as furnished by the New York State Department of Health for the year ended December 31, 2004.

This RHCF-4 report, including this accountant's opinion, is intended solely for the information and use of the management and ownership of the facility and the officers and agencies of the State of New York, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

The undersigned hereby certifies this opinion and that I/we have disclosed any and all material facts known to me/us, disclosure of which is necessary to make this opinion, the basic financial statements and the supplemental data not misleading. The undersigned hereby further certifies that I/we will disclose any material fact discovered by me/us subsequent to this certification which existed at the time of this certification and was not disclosed in the basic financial statements or the supplemental data, the disclosure of which is necessary to make the basic financial statements or the supplemental data not misleading and will disclose any material misstatement in said financial statements or supplemental data.

During the period of this professional engagement, at the time of expressing this opinion, and during the period covered by the financial statements I/we did not have nor were committed to acquire, any direct financial interest or

material indirect financial interest in the ownership or operation of the facility and I/we were not connected in any way with the ownership, financing or operation of the facility as a director, officer or employee, or in any capacity other than as an independent certified public accountant or independent public accountant.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Accounting Firm

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Accounting Firm

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of CPA Partner-in-Charge

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of CPA

\_\_\_\_\_  
CPA License Number

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date of CPA Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Address

\_\_\_\_\_  
City/State/ZIP

\_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone

DOH 490

\_\_\_\_\_  
**[The next page is 10,001.]**

# TIS TOPICAL INDEX

## TECHNICAL INFORMATION SERVICE

### QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

References are to section numbers.

#### A

#### ACCOUNTING CHANGES

- Accounting Principles . . . . . 2220.13
- Change From GAAP to Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 9030.10
- Change From Other Comprehensive Basis to GAAP . . . . . 9030.10
- Change in Amortization Method . . . . . 5220.05
- Change in License Mix on Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.45
- Changes in Film Impairment Estimates . . . . . 6970.01-02
- Depreciable Life . . . . . 9030.03
- Estimates . . . . . 3200.06; 9030.03
- Fiscal Year Change . . . . . 1800.03
- Premiums on Life Insurance . . . . . 2240.04
- Refinanced Debt . . . . . 3200.06
- Versus Change in Circumstances . . . . . 2220.13

#### ACCOUNTING METHODS

- Accounting for Significant Incremental Discounts in Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.51
- Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.38-76

#### ACCOUNTING POLICIES

- Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.25

#### ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES—See Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

#### ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE—See Receivables

#### ACCRUAL BASIS

- Audit Fee . . . . . 5290.05
- Change From Cash Basis . . . . . 9030.10
- Compensated Absences . . . . . 3100.10
- Deferred Compensation Contract . . . . . 5230.06
- "Excess of Loss" Medical Insurance for Employees . . . . . 3100.09
- Relation to Cash Basis . . . . . 1500.05
- Sales Price Based on Future Revenue . . . . . 5100.37

#### ADVERSE OPINIONS

- Change in Estimate . . . . . 9030.03
- Departure From GAAP . . . . . 2210.18; 9080.13

#### AFFILIATED COMPANIES

- Business Combinations—See Business Combinations
- Capitalization of Interest Costs Incurred by Subsidiary . . . . . 2210.25
- Combined Financial Statements—See Combined Financial Statements

#### AFFILIATED COMPANIES—continued

- Consolidated Financial Statements—See Consolidated Financial Statements
- Control of Board of Directors . . . . . 1400.07
- Differing Fiscal Years . . . . . 1400.22; 9100.02
- Earnings Per Share . . . . . 5500.02
- Equity Method—See Equity Method
- Foreign Currency Translation for Consolidation . . . . . 4200.01
- Intercompany Transactions
  - Between Subsidiary's and Parent's Year End . . . . . 1400.22
- Elimination of Profit in Health Care Entities . . . . . 6400.17
- Payroll Expense Reimbursement . . . . . 1200.05
- Inventory Acquired From Stockholder . . . . . 8320.03
- Inventory Cost Method . . . . . 1400.23; 2140.11
- Offsetting Limited Use Assets Against Related Liabilities . . . . . 6400.19
- Option to Acquire Control . . . . . 1400.07
- Subsidiary-Only Financial Statements . . . . . 1400.27
- Transfers From Subsidiary to Minority Stockholder of Parent . . . . . 6400.26

#### AGGREGATION

- Level Determined by Insurance Companies . . . . . 6300.10

#### AGREEMENTS—See Contracts

#### AIRPLANES

- Chartered While Held for Sale . . . . . 2140.04

#### AMORTIZATION

- Cash Flows Presentation of Negative Amortization of Long-Term Debt . . . . . 1300.22
- Change in Method . . . . . 5220.05
- Commissions on Insurance . . . . . 6130.04
- Discount or Premium on Investment Securities With an Early Call Date . . . . . 3200.16
- Discounts on Loans . . . . . 6130.01
- Interest Income on Zero Coupon Bonds . . . . . 5100.31
- Inventories . . . . . 2140.12
- Loan Costs . . . . . 4130.03
- Log Pond Dredging Cost . . . . . 2210.15
- Mortgage Placement Fee . . . . . 3200.06
- Negative . . . . . 1300.22
- Offering Costs Incurred by Investment Partnerships . . . . . 6910.23
- Operating Leases— See Leasehold Improvements

**AMORTIZATION—continued**

- Recognition of Premiums/Discounts on Short Positions . . . . . 6910.21

**ANNUITIES**

- Accounting for Contracts That Provide Annuity Benefits . . . . . 6300.13
- Deferred Compensation Contract . . . . . 5230.06

**APPRAISAL VALUE**

- Fixed Assets . . . . . 2210.18

**APPRECIATION**

- Computation of Net Change in Fair Value of Investments . . . . . 6931.01
- Fixed Assets . . . . . 2210.18

**ASSESSMENTS**

- Audit Inquiry Not Sent . . . . . 9130.09
- Insurance Companies . . . . . 6300.09

**ASSETS**

- Classification—See Classification of Accounts
- Current—See Current Assets
- Fixed—See Fixed Assets
- Fund-Raising Foundations—See Fund-Raising Foundations
- Intangible—See Intangible Assets
- Land—See Land
- Landfill Rights . . . . . 6700.10
- Law Firm's Recoverable Costs . . . . . 2130.05
- Noncurrent—See Noncurrent Assets
- Nondiscretionary Assistance Programs . . . . . 6140.12
- Offsetting Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance Policy . . . . . 5230.09
- Offsetting Limited Use Assets Against Related Liabilities . . . . . 6400.19
- Presentation at Current Values . . . . . 1600.04
- Revaluation . . . . . 2210.18
- Social Security Benefits . . . . . 1600.03
- Timber Purchase Contracts . . . . . 3500.01
- Transfers Between Related Entities . . . . . 6400.25-26; 6400.29
- Valuation—See Valuation

**ATTESTATION ENGAGEMENTS**

- Attestation Reports . . . . . 9510.01-03
- Availability of Criteria for a Fee . . . . . 9510.02
- Testing Prospective Financial Information . . . . . 9510.01

**ATTESTATION STANDARDS**

- Attestation Reports . . . . . 9510.01-03
- Criteria—Available for a Fee . . . . . 9510.02
- Criteria—Publicly Available . . . . . 9510.02
- Evaluation of Subject Matter . . . . . 9510.02
- Testing Prospective Financial Information . . . . . 9510.01

**ATTORNEYS—See Lawyers****AUDIT DOCUMENTATION**

- Destruction of Documents by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster . . . . . 8345.02
- Permanent File, Current Year . . . . . 8350.01
- Schedule of Confirmation Results . . . . . 8340.16
- Written Confirmations, Retention of . . . . . 8340.16

**AUDIT ENGAGEMENT**

- Accrual of Audit Fee . . . . . 5290.05
- Communication Between Predecessor and Successor Accountants . . . . . 8900.01-03
- Employee Benefit Plans—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Part of an Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors . . . . . 9120.08
- Part of an Audit Performed in Accordance With International Standards on Auditing . . . . . 9120.08
- Schedule of Confirmation Results . . . . . 8340.16
- Significant Procedures Performed by Predecessor Prior to Ceasing Operations . . . . . 8900.05; 9160.14
- Use of Other Auditors' Work When They Are Not Independent . . . . . 9120.06
- Written Confirmations, Retention of . . . . . 8340.16

**AUDIT EVIDENCE**

- Audit Sampling . . . . . 8220.01; 8220.03-05
- Confirmations—See Confirmations
- Current Year Audit Documentation Contained in Permanent File . . . . . 8350.01
- Destruction of Documents by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster . . . . . 8345.01-02
- Fixed Assets—See Fixed Assets
- Insurance Claims . . . . . 8340.09
- Inventories—See Inventories
- Planning and Supervision . . . . . 8220.04
- Receivables—See Confirmations
- Representations—See Representation Letters
- Sampling—See Statistical Sampling
- Securities—See Securities
- Special Audit of Sales . . . . . 9110.03
- Unavailability of Working Papers of Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations . . . . . 8900.04
- Unremitted Withholding Taxes . . . . . 9070.01
- Violation of Debt Agreement . . . . . 9080.13
- Working Papers . . . . . 8220.04

**AUDIT PROGRAMS**

- Audit Sampling . . . . . 8220.04

**AUDIT SAMPLING**

- Applicability of SAS No. 39 . . . . . 8220.01-05
- Block Sampling . . . . . 8220.05
- Definition . . . . . 8220.01
- Design of Sample . . . . . 8220.01-05
- Dual-Purpose Tests . . . . . 8220.01
- Evidential Matter . . . . . 8220.03-05
- Haphazard Sampling . . . . . 8220.05
- Illustrations . . . . . 8220.01
- Internal Control . . . . . 8220.01
- Judgment . . . . . 8220.03
- Misstatements . . . . . 8220.03-05
- Nonstatistical—See Nonstatistical Sampling
- Objectives of Audit . . . . . 8220.04
- Population . . . . . 8220.03
- Random-Number Sampling . . . . . 8220.05
- Risk—See Risk
- Sample Evaluation . . . . . 8220.01; 8220.03-04
- Sample Selection . . . . . 8220.03-05
- Size of Sample . . . . . 8220.03

**AUDIT SAMPLING—continued**

- Statistical—See Statistical Sampling
- Substantive Tests . . . . . 8220.01; 8220.03
- Systematic Sampling . . . . . 8220.05
- Tests of Controls . . . . . 8220.01
- Tolerable Error . . . . . 8220.03
- Working Papers . . . . . 8220.04

**AUDIT STRATEGY**

- Operating Effectiveness . . . 8200.07; 8200.10

**AUDITING**

- Destruction of Documents by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster . . . . . 8345.02
- Employee Benefit Plans—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Entity's Financial Forecast, Assisting in Developing . . . . . 9510.01
- Entity's Financial Forecast, Testing of 9510.01
- Evidential Matter—See Evidential Matter
- First Audits . . . . . 9080.04
- Responsibility to Audit Dividend Fund 9120.02
- Sampling—See Audit Sampling
- Schedule of Confirmation Results . . . 8340.16
- Scope Limitations—See Scope Limitations
- Special Audit of Sales . . . . . 9110.03
- Standards—See Generally Accepted Auditing Standards
- Statistical Sampling—See Statistical Sampling
- Written Confirmations, Retention of . 8340.16

**AUDITORS, INDEPENDENT**

- Assessing Inherent Risk . . . . . 8200.09
- Disagreement With Management . . . 9080.13
- Engagement Fee . . . . . 5290.05
- Judgment . . . . . 9120.06
- Knowledge of Accounting Practices . . 9150.18
- Nonexempt Transactions . . . . . 6933.03-04
- Predecessor—See Predecessor Auditor
- Principal Auditors . . . . . 9120.01
- Reliance on State Inspectors . . . . . 9120.04
- Review Report Reissuance . . . . . 9150.20
- Sample Size . . . . . 8220.03
- Sampling . . . . . 8220.01–05
- Successor—See Successor Auditor
- Testing Employee Benefit Plan Compliance With Qualification Issues . . . . . 6936.01
- Testing Employee Benefit Plan Qualification Tests Prepared by Third Party Administrator . . . . . 6933.05
- Title of Auditor's Report . . . . . 9160.08
- Understanding of Entity . . . . . 9150.18
- Work of Other Auditors . . . . . 8900.05; 9120.06; 9120.08; 9160.14

**AUDITORS' REPORTS**

- Adverse Opinion—See Adverse Opinions
- Affect of Restatement by Predecessor Auditor . . . . . 8900.02
- Balance Sheet Only . . . 1300.05; 9080.03-04
- Basis of Accounting Other Than GAAP . . . . . 9110.08-09
- Change From GAAP to Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 9030.10

**AUDITORS' REPORTS—continued**

- Change to GAAP From Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 9030.10
- Comments and Recommendations Reports . . . . . 6950.21
- Compilation Engagement . . . . . 9150.08
- Compliance Reports—See Compliance Reports
- Condensed Financial Statements of a Nonpublic Entity . . . . . 9080.15
- Cost Report Opinion—See Medicaid Cost Reports
- Dates on Cover of Statements . . . . . 9160.03
- Destruction of Documents by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster . . . . . 8345.01-02
- Development Stage Enterprises . . . . 9060.09
- Disclaimers—See Disclaimers of Opinion
- Disclosure—See Disclosure
- Employee Benefit Plans—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Explanatory Language Added . . . . . 9060.08-09; 9080.02
- Going Concern Uncertainties . . . . . 9060.08-09; 9080.02
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Inadequate Internal Control . . . . . 9130.07
- Included in Financial Statements . . . . 9080.06
- Income Tax Basis Statements . . . . . 9060.08
- Inquiry Letter Not Sent . . . 8340.10; 9130.09
- Internal Control Reports for Broker-Dealers . . . . . 6980.01
- Limited Life Ventures . . . . . 9080.02
- Liquidity Restrictions . . . . . 1100.15
- Location of Issuance . . . . . 9160.22
- Losses From Natural Disasters . . . . . 5400.05; 9070.05
- Management Representation Letter and Effect on Report Date and Release . . . . . 9100.06
- Modified Cash Basis Statements . . . . 1500.05
- Order of References to Statements . . . 9080.09
- Period Longer Than Twelve Months . . 9160.07
- Predecessor Auditor Discontinues Operations . . . . . 8900.03-10; 9160.14
- Prescribed Forms . . . . . 9110.13
- Principal Auditors . . . . . 9120.01; 9120.07–08
- Qualified Opinions—See Qualified Opinions
- Reliance on Others—See Reliance on Other Auditors' Reports
- Reporting on Medicaid/Medicare Cost Reports . . . . . 9110.15
- Reproduction . . . . . 9160.02
- Restatements for Consolidation . . . . 9100.02
- Scope Limitations—See Scope Limitations
- Signature . . . . . 9100.05
- State Prescribed Auditing Standards. 6950.21
- Statement of Cash Receipts and Disbursements . . . . . 9110.07
- Statutory Reporting Requirements . . . . . 9110.08-09
- Successor Firm's Signature . . . . . 9100.01
- Supplemental Information . . . . . 9080.14; 9120.07; 9150.08
- Terminology—Singular Versus Plural. 9160.25
- Titles of Reports . . . . . 9160.08

**AUDITORS' REPORTS—continued**

- Violation of Debt Agreement ..... 9080.13; 1100.15

**B****BAD DEBTS—See Uncollectible Accounts****BALANCE SHEET**

- Classification—See Classification of Accounts
- Corporate Credit Unions. .... 6995.01
- Joint Ventures ..... 2220.03; 2220.05
- Landfill Rights ..... 6700.10
- Liquidity Restrictions ..... 1100.15
- Mandatory Redeemable Preferred Stock ..... 4110.08
- Notes—See Notes to Financial Statements
- Prior Period Adjustment ..... 1300.11
- Report on Balance Sheet Only ..... 1300.05; 9080.03-04
- Revolving Line of Credit ..... 3200.12
- Subordinated Debt ..... 6130.06
- Timber Purchase Contracts ..... 3500.01
- Titles of Financial Statements ..... 1500.04
- Translating Foreign Subsidiary's Accounts for Consolidation ..... 4200.01
- Unclassified ..... 1100.03

**BANK ACCOUNTS—See Cash****BANKRUPTCY**

- Note From Reorganized Debtor .... 9070.02

**BANKS**

- Covenant Violation and Subsequent Bank Waiver ..... 3200.17
- Credit Risk ..... 2110.06
- Disclosure of Cash on Deposit in Excess of FDIC-Insured Limits ..... 2110.06
- Letters of Payment Guarantees .... 3500.02
- Outstanding Checks ..... 1100.08
- "Pay Any Day" Loans ..... 3200.09

**BARGAIN SALES**

- One-Cent Sales ..... 5100.07

**BASE STOCK METHOD**

- Restaurant Dishes ..... 2210.08

**BASIS—See Valuation****BASIS OF ACCOUNTING**

- Break-Even Financial Statements ... 9160.06
- Going Concern Assumption ..... 9060.08
- Interim Prepared on Different Basis Than Annual Statements ..... 8900.04
- Tax Basis—Use of Equity Method... 2220.17

**BENEFIT OBLIGATIONS**

- Postretirement Prescription Drug Coverage ..... 6931.05-06
- Premium Deficits ..... 6931.07

**BENEFIT PLANS—See Employee Benefit Plans****BONDS PAYABLE—See Noncurrent Liabilities****BOOK VALUE**

- Shares of Deceased Stockholders . . 3400.02

**BREAK-EVEN FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Accountants Report ..... 9160.06

**BROKER-DEALERS**

- Internal Control Reports ..... 6980.01

**BROKERAGE FIRMS**

- Prescribed Forms ..... 9150.09

**BURDEN—See Overhead****BUSINESS COMBINATIONS**

- Exchange of Assets of No Book Value ..... 2220.08
- Goodwill—See Goodwill
- Purchase Price Dispute ..... 3400.01

**BUY-SELL AGREEMENTS**

- Disclosure ..... 2240.02

**C****CAPITAL, CONTRIBUTED—See Contributed Capital****CAPITAL LEASES**

- Allocation of Payments for Lease Capitalized at Fair Value ..... 3200.10

**CAPITAL STOCK**

- Common Stock Dividends Received in Form of Preferred Stock ..... 2120.06
- Costs of Issuance ..... 4110.01; 4110.03; 4110.09
- Cumulative Preferred Stock ..... 4210.04
- Default on Stock Subscribed ..... 4110.11
- Discounts ..... 4110.02; 4230.02
- Exchange of Common for Preferred . 4230.02
- Fair Value ..... 4110.03
- Impairment of Capital .... 2210.18; 4120.03
- Investments—See Investments
- Issuance for No Consideration ..... 4110.02
- Liquidating Dividends Written Off ... 4210.01
- Mandatory Redeemable Preferred Stock ..... 4110.08
- Shelf Registration Costs ..... 4110.10
- Stock Dividends—See Stock Dividends and Stock Splits
- Stock Splits—See Stock Dividends and Stock Splits
- Tax Basis Accounting—Use of Equity Method ..... 2220.17
- Treasury Stock—See Treasury Stock
- Warrants—See Warrants

**CAPITALIZATION**

- Accounting Period ..... 2210.20
- Amount to Be Capitalized ..... 2210.20
- Compounding ..... 2210.20
- Interest Costs ..... 2210.20; 2210.25
- Log Pond Dredging Costs ..... 2210.15
- Patent Infringement Litigation ..... 2260.03
- Shelf Registration Costs ..... 4110.10
- Ski Slope Development ..... 2210.07
- Stock Dividends, Closely-Held Companies ..... 4150.01

**CASH**

- Balance Sheet Presentation . . . . . 1100.08
- Balances in Excess of FDIC-Insured Limits . . . . . 2110.06
- Cash Flow Statements . . . . . 1300.15
- Control of Receipts of Vending Machines . . . . . 8200.02
- Deficits—See Deficits
- Distributions From Joint Venture . . . . . 2220.15
- Inclusion in Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year) . . . . . 6932.08
- Note Exchanged . . . . . 5220.07
- Outstanding Checks . . . . . 1100.08
- Presentation of Overdraft on Statement of Cash Flows . . . . . 1300.15
- Undelivered (Held) Checks . . . . . 2110.02

**CASH BASIS—See also Comprehensive Basis of Accounting**

- Change to Accrual Basis . . . . . 9030.10
- Modified—See Modified Cash Basis
- Relation to Accrual Basis . . . . . 1500.05
- Statement of Cash Receipts and Disbursements . . . . . 9110.07

**CASH FLOWS STATEMENT—See Statement of Cash Flows****CASH SURRENDER VALUE**

- Classification . . . . . 2240.01
- Officers' Life Insurance . . . . . 1300.13
- Offset Against Liability for Deferred Compensation Contract . . . . . 5230.09
- Policy on Debtor . . . . . 2240.04
- Reserve for Future Loss . . . . . 2240.03
- Stock Repurchase Plan . . . . . 2240.02

**CATTLE**

- Valuation of Herd . . . . . 2210.06

**CHANGES, ACCOUNTING—See Accounting Changes****CHARITABLE CONTRIBUTIONS—See Contributions****CHARITABLE ENTITIES—See Not-for-Profit Entities****CIRA—See Common Interest Realty Associations****CLAIMS**

- Insurance Companies . . . . . 8340.09

**CLASSIFICATION OF ACCOUNTS**

- Beneficiary's Interest in Net Assets of Fund-Raising Foundation . . . . . 6140.13-18; 6400.35-42
- Cash Surrender Value . . . . . 2240.01
- Cattle Herd . . . . . 2210.06
- Charter Airplanes Held for Sale . . . . . 2140.04
- Convertible Debt . . . . . 1100.14
- Deposit on Equipment to Be Purchased . . . . . 2230.02
- Distributions From Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation . . . . . 6140.19; 6400.43
- Equipment Finance Note Payments . . . . . 1300.19

**CLASSIFICATION OF ACCOUNTS—continued**

- Expenses Which Are Taxable to Employees . . . . . 5290.02
- Fund-Raising Foundations—See Fund-Raising Foundations
- Grain Stored for Others in Elevator . . . . . 1100.12
- Landfill Rights . . . . . 6700.10
- Loan Against Insurance . . . . . 2240.01
- Net Assets of Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation . . . . . 6140.13-18; 6400.35-42
- Nondiscretionary Assistance Programs . . . . . 6140.12
- Outstanding Checks . . . . . 1100.08
- Payroll Expense Reimbursement . . . . . 1200.05
- Rental Revenue . . . . . 5100.16
- Replacement Parts Inventory . . . . . 2140.12
- Restaurant's Dishes . . . . . 2210.08
- Revolving Line of Credit . . . . . 3200.12
- Slow-Moving Inventory . . . . . 2140.13
- Subordinated Debt . . . . . 6130.06
- Timber Purchase Contracts . . . . . 3500.01
- Treasury Stock Acquisition Costs . . . . . 4110.09
- Unclassified Balance Sheets . . . . . 1100.03
- Unearned Revenue . . . . . 3600.01
- Violation of Debt Agreement . . . . . 3200.13; 9080.13

**CLIENT RECORDS**

- Computer-Generated Financial Statements . . . . . 9150.11
- Inadequate . . . . . 9130.07
- Perpetual Inventories . . . . . 8320.05
- Stock Issuance Costs . . . . . 4110.01

**CLIENTS**

- Disagreement With Auditor . . . . . 9080.13
- Records—See Client Records
- Refusal to Send Inquiry . . . . . 8340.10; 9130.09

**CLOSELY HELD COMPANIES**

- Stock Dividends . . . . . 4150.01
- Stock Issuance Costs . . . . . 4110.01
- Stockholder Agreements . . . . . 3400.02

**CLOTHING, RENTAL**

- Depreciation . . . . . 5210.04

**CLUBS**

- Excise Tax on Dues . . . . . 5100.11
- Life Membership Fees . . . . . 5100.08
- Members' Debt Retirement Assessment . . . . . 5100.10
- Revenue Recognition of Membership Dues . . . . . 6140.02

**COAL**

- Estimation of Quantity . . . . . 8320.04
- Production Royalties . . . . . 6500.03

**COIN-OPERATED MACHINES**

- Control of Cash Receipts . . . . . 8200.02

**COLLEGES AND UNIVERSITIES**

- Overhead Allocation . . . . . 6960.12

**COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Commonly Owned Companies ..... 1400.06; 1400.26
- Elimination of Profit on Intercompany Sales of Health Care Entities ..... 6400.17
- Health Care Entities... 6400.17; 6400.19-20
- Versus Consolidated Financial Statements ..... 1400.26; 1400.29

**COMMISSIONS**

- Contingent Commissions ..... 6300.01
- Income Statement Presentation .... 1200.01
- Insurance .. 6130.04; 6300.01-02; 6300.30
- Real Estate Brokers..... 6600.01
- Received as Purchase Price Concession ..... 2210.02

**COMMITMENT LETTERS**

- Revenue Recognition ..... 5100.14

**COMMITMENTS**

- Coal Production Royalties..... 6500.03
- Cotton Futures Contracts..... 5400.02
- Disclosure by Nonpublic Entities of Lines of Credit Available ..... 3500.07
- Guarantees of Investee Losses .... 2220.12
- Landfill Rights ..... 6700.10
- Lease Agreement With Trial Period.. 5290.06
- Letter of Payment Guarantee ..... 3500.02
- Letters of Credit ..... 3500.05
- Purchase Commitment Losses ..... 3500.04
- Stockholder Agreements ..... 2240.02
- Uncertain Timber Contract..... 3500.01

**COMMODITIES**

- Futures Contracts ..... 5400.02

**COMMON INTEREST REALTY ASSOCIATIONS**

- Personal Property of Timeshare.... 6990.01

**COMMON STOCK—See Capital Stock****COMMUNICATION**

- Insurance Claims ..... 8340.09
- Predecessor and Successor Auditors ..... 8900.02-03

**COMPENSATION**

- Absences ..... 3100.10
- Deferred Compensation Contract... 5230.06
- Fund-Raising Contributions ..... 6140.22
- Medicare Fees of Physicians ..... 6400.04
- Payroll Expense Reimbursement... 1200.05
- Stock Option—See Stock Options and Stock Purchase Plans
- Use of Company Auto ..... 5290.02

**COMPILATION ENGAGEMENTS**

- Departures From GAAP ..... 9150.01
- Determining Whether Financial Statements Have Been Prepared by the Accountant ..... 9150.25
- Submission of Financial Statements . 9150.25
- Supplemental Information..... 9150.08

**COMPILATION OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Basic Statements ..... 9150.08
- Break-Even Financial Statements ... 9160.06

**COMPILATION OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS—**

continued

- Departures From GAAP ... 1300.17; 9150.01
- Disclosure Requirements ..... 1300.17
- Marking of Pages ..... 9150.04
- Omission of Disclosures..... 9160.26
- Predecessor Accountant Who Has Ceased Operations..... 8900.08-10
- Subsequent Auditing of Financial Statements ..... 9160.26
- Supplemental Information.. 9080.14; 9150.08

**COMPILATION REPORTS**

- Accountant's Responsibility..... 9150.18
- Break-Even Financial Statements ... 9160.06
- Brokers or Dealers in Securities... 9150.09
- Cash Flows Statement..... 1300.17
- Computer Generated Financial Statements ..... 9150.11
- Knowledge of Accounting Practices . 9150.18
- Omission of Disclosures... 1300.17; 9150.24
- Prescribed Forms ..... 9150.09-10
- Reference to Report in Notes to Financial Statements ..... 9150.16
- Responsibility for Prior Period Reviewed Financial Statements ..... 9150.20
- Statement of Cash Receipts and Cash Disbursements..... 9110.07
- Sufficient Relevant Data..... 9150.18
- Supplemental Information.. 9080.14; 9150.08
- Understanding of Entity ..... 9150.18

**COMPLETED CONTRACT METHOD**

- Expected Loss..... 5260.01
- Investment on Equity Method..... 2220.03
- Long-Term Contracts ..... 6700.01
- Prepaid Funeral Plan ..... 5100.04
- Short-Term Contracts..... 6700.01

**COMPLIANCE REPORTS**

- Prescribed Auditing Standards ..... 6950.21
- Prescribed Forms—See Prescribed Report Forms

**COMPREHENSIVE BASIS OF ACCOUNTING**

- Cash Basis—See Cash Basis
- Change From GAAP ..... 9030.10
- Change to GAAP ..... 9030.10
- Financial Statement Titles and Captions ..... 1500.04
- Modified Cash Basis—See Modified Cash Basis
- Prescribed Forms ..... 9150.10
- Review of Financial Statements ... 9150.10
- Special Reports..... 6950.22
- Statement of Cash Flows Omitted .. 1300.10
- Statutory Basis—See Statutory Reporting Requirements
- Terminology of OCFBA Financial Statements ..... 1500.04

**COMPUTER SYSTEMS/SOFTWARE COSTS**

- Health Care Entities..... 6400.34

**CONCESSIONS**

- Software Revenue Recognition ... 5100.56-57

**CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Filing With a Regulatory Agency . . . . 9080.15
- Interim Financial Statements . . . . . 1900.01
- Form and Content . . . . . 1900.01
- Reporting Framework . . . . . 1900.01
- Nonpublic Enterprises . . . . . 9080.15

**CONFIRMATIONS**

- Inquiries to Client's Attorney . . . . . 8340.10
- Insurance Claims . . . . . 8340.09
- Inventories in Public Warehouse . . . . 8320.06
- Investments in Securities . . . . . 8310.02
- Leased Equipment . . . . . 8330.02
- Modified Cash Basis Statements . . . . 8340.11
- Retention of Written Confirmations . . . 8340.16
- Schedule of Confirmation Results . . . . 8340.16
- Scope Limitations—See Scope Limitations

**CONSIDERATION**

- Issuance of Capital Stock . . . . . 4110.02

**CONSIGNMENTS**

- Inventories in Public Warehouse . . . . 8320.06

**CONSISTENCY**

- Accounting Changes—See Accounting Changes
- Change From GAAP to Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 9030.10
- Change to GAAP From Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 9030.10

**CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Commonly Controlled Companies . . . . 1400.26
- Control of Board of Directors . . . . . 1400.07
- Departure from GAAP . . . . . 1400.31
- Differing Fiscal Years . . . . . 1400.22; 9100.02
- Earnings Per Share . . . . . 5500.02
- Goodwill—See Goodwill
- Health Care Entities . . . . . 6400.17; 6400.20
- Intra-entity Profits . . . . . 2220.08; 6400.17
- Intercompany Transactions
  - Between Subsidiary's and Parent's Year End . . . . . 1400.22
  - Elimination of Profit in Health Care Entities . . . . . 6400.17
- Inventory Method for Subsidiaries . . . . . 1400.23; 2140.11
- Minority Interest . . . . . 1400.02
- Option to Acquire Control . . . . . 1400.07
- Parent Company Only Financial Statements . . . . . 1400.25; 1400.32
- Principal Auditor . . . . . 9120.01
- Proprietorship and Corporation . . . . 1400.02
- Relationship to GAAP . . . . . 1400.32
- Stand-Alone Financial Statements of a Variable Interest Entity . . . . . 1400.30
- Subsidiary-Only Financial Statements . . 1400.27
- Translating Foreign Subsidiary's Financial Statements . . . . . 4200.01
- Versus Combined Financial Statements . . . . . 1400.26; 1400.29

**CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTORS**

- Completed Contract Method—See Completed Contract Method

**CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTORS—continued**

- Drawings in Excess of Capital . . . . . 7200.01
- Joint Ventures—See Joint Ventures
- Long-Term Versus Short-Term Contracts . . . . . 6700.01
- Payments for Landfill Rights . . . . . 6700.10
- Percentage of Completion—See Percentage of Completion Method
- Unclassified Balance Sheet . . . . . 1100.03

**CONTINGENT ASSETS**

- Commissions . . . . . 6300.01
- Gains on Involuntary Conversion . . . . 5100.35
- Requirements for Doubtful Accounts Allowance . . . . . 2130.07
- Sales Price Based on Future Revenue . . . . . 5100.37

**CONTINGENT CONSIDERATION**

- Commitment Letters . . . . . 5100.14

**CONTINGENT LIABILITIES**

- Cents Off Coupons . . . . . 3400.04
- Coal Production Royalties . . . . . 6500.03
- "Excess of Loss" Medical Insurance for Employees . . . . . 3100.09
- Letter of Payment Guarantee . . . . . 3500.02
- Litigation . . . . . 3400.01
- Stockholder Agreements . . . . . 3400.02

**CONTINUALLY OFFER INTERESTS**

- Definition . . . . . 6910.24

**CONTRACT ACCOUNTING**

- Software Arrangements . . . . . 5100.48-49

**CONTRACTORS—See Construction Contractors****CONTRACTS**

- Annuitization Benefits . . . . . 6300.13
- Change in Insurance Risk . . . . . 6300.26; 6300.33
- Completed Contract Method—See Completed Contract Method
- Correction of Errors in Computer Software (Bug Fixes) . . . . . 5100.43
- Cotton Futures . . . . . 5400.02
- Coverage, Changes in . . . . . 6300.33
- Default on Stock Subscription Agreements . . . . . 4110.11
- Deferred Compensation . . . . . 5230.06
- Executory . . . . . 2250.06; 3500.01
- Expected Loss on Contract . . . . . 5260.01
- Extended Payment Terms and Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.42
- Finite Insurance . . . . . 1200.07-08; 6300.15-16
- Franchises—See Franchises
- Insurance . . . . . 6300.25-26; 6300.32-33
- Integrated . . . . . 6300.25
- Investment Return Rights . . . . . 6300.34
- Liquidity Rights . . . . . 6300.34
- Long-Duration Insurance Contracts . . . . . 6300.32; 6300.36
- Long-Term Versus Short-Term . . . . . 6700.01
- Noncompetition Agreement . . . . . 2250.06
- Nonintegrated . . . . . 6300.25
- Parts Completed Not Shipped . . . . . 5100.25

**CONTRACTS—continued**

- “Pay Any Day” Loans . . . . . 3200.09
- Percentage of Completion Method—See Percentage of Completion Method
- Postcontract Customer Support During the Deployment Phase of Computer Software . . . . . 5100.44; 5100.75
- Premium Changes . . . . . 6300.32
- Private Label Sales . . . . . 5100.28
- Property and Liability Insurance . . . . . 1200.06-16; 6300.14-24
- Property, Plant, and Equipment . . . . . 2210.28
- Purchase Commitment Losses . . . . . 3500.04
- Real Estate—See Real Estate
- Redemption of Stock . . . . . 4120.03
- Reinstatement . . . . . 6300.29
- Revenue Recognition Criteria . . . . . 5100.25
- Sales Price Based on Future Revenue . . . . . 5100.37
- Short-Term . . . . . 6700.01
- Software Revenue Recognition for Multiple-Element Arrangements . . . . . 5100.39; 5100.76
- Special Audit . . . . . 9110.01
- Stockholder Agreements . . . . . 2240.02; 3400.02
- Timber Purchase Contract . . . . . 3500.01

**CONTRIBUTED CAPITAL**

- Appropriations . . . . . 5100.10
- Debt Assumed by Stockholders . . . . . 4160.01
- Default on Stock Subscription Agreement . . . . . 4110.11
- Exchange of Common Stock for Preferred . . . . . 4230.02
- Liquidating Dividends Written Off . . . . . 4210.01
- Members’ Debt Retirement Assessment . . . . . 5100.10
- Stock Issuance Costs . . . . . 4110.01
- Stock Warrants Reacquired . . . . . 4130.03

**CONTRIBUTIONS**

- City Owned Hospital . . . . . 6400.12
- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Inventory . . . . . 6140.06
- Medicaid Voluntary Contribution Program . . . . . 6400.30
- Nondiscretionary Assistance Programs . . . . . 6140.12
- Nonprofit Scholarship Funding Organizations . . . . . 5700.01
- Not-for-Profit Entities . . . . . 6140.01; 6140.03-06; 6140.09; 6140.11-12; 6140.20-22
- Participant—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Services . . . . . 6140.11
- Time . . . . . 6140.11

**CONTROL**

- Environment . . . . . 8200.08
- Operating Effectiveness . . . . . 8200.05-.06, .08
- Sampling Risk . . . . . 8220.05

**CONVERTIBLE DEBT—See Noncurrent Liabilities****COST REPORT OPINION—See Medicaid Cost Reports****COSTS**

- Cattle Herd . . . . . 2210.06
- Computer Systems—See Computer Systems/Software Costs
- Contributed Inventory . . . . . 6140.06
- Depreciation in Overhead . . . . . 5210.02
- Direct-Donor Benefit . . . . . 6140.08
- Film Impairment Estimates . . . . . 6970.01-02
- Franchisers . . . . . 6940.01
- Fund-Raising . . . . . 6140.07-08; 6140.11
- Health Care Entities . . . . . 6400.34
- Historical—See Historical Cost
- Interest Costs . . . . . 2210.25
- Inventory Methods . . . . . 1400.23; 2140.11
- Issue—See Issue Cost
- Landfill Rights . . . . . 6700.10
- Leasehold Improvements . . . . . 5210.09
- Log Pond Dredging Costs . . . . . 2210.15
- Medicaid/Medicare Cost Reports . . . . . 9110.15
- Product Costs . . . . . 2140.01
- Research and Development . . . . . 5240.10
- Shelf Registration Costs . . . . . 4110.10
- Ski Slope Development . . . . . 2210.07
- Software Development—See Computer Systems/Software Costs
- Soliciting Contributed Services and Time . . . . . 6140.11
- Standard Cost Inventory Valuation . . . . . 2140.09
- Treasury Stock Acquisition . . . . . 4110.09

**COVENANT NOT TO COMPETE**

- Agreement With Former Officer . . . . . 2250.06
- Violation of Debt Agreement . . . . . 1100.15; 9080.13

**CREDIT UNIONS**

- Balance Sheet . . . . . 6995.01
- Credit Union Expensing—FASB ASC 942-325 . . . . . 6995.01
- Evaluation of Capital Investments for Other-Than-Temporary Impairment . . . . . 6995.02
- Existing Authoritative Guidance for the Accounting for the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund Deposit—FASB ASC 942-325 . . . . . 6995.01
- Financial Reporting Issues in Connection With the Corporate Credit Union System and the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund . . . . . 6995.01
- Financial Statements . . . . . 6995.01
- Investments . . . . . 6995.02
- Refundable Deposits—FASB ASC 942-325 . . . . . 6995.01
- Terminology—Membership Capital . . . . . 6995.02
- Terminology—Paid-in Capital . . . . . 6995.02

**CURRENT ASSETS**

- Classification—See Classification of Accounts
- Definition . . . . . 2140.13
- Inventories—See Inventories

**CURRENT ASSETS—continued**

- Investments—See Investments
- Liquidity Restrictions . . . . . 1100.15
- Receivables—See Receivables
- Unclassified Balance Sheet . . . . . 1100.03

**CURRENT LIABILITIES**

- Coal Production Royalties. . . . . 6500.03
- Debt in Violation of Agreement  
    . . . . . 3200.13; 9080.13
- Deposits on Leased Equipment . . . . 3100.03
- Estimated Unemployment Claims . . . 3100.01
- Expected Loss on Contract . . . . . 5260.01
- Interest Payable Computation. . . . . 5220.03
- Liquidity Restrictions . . . . . 1100.15
- Litigation Refunds . . . . . 6300.03
- Medicare Fees of Physicians . . . . . 6400.04
- Revolving Line of Credit. . . . . 3200.12
- Unclassified Balance Sheets. . . . . 1100.03
- Undelivered Payments . . . . . 2110.02
- Unearned Revenue. . . . . 3600.01

**CUSTODIANS**

- Inventories in Public Warehouse . . . . 8320.06
- Parts Completed Not Shipped . . . . . 5100.25

**CUSTOMER ACCEPTANCE**

- Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.67

**CUSTOMER FINANCING**

- Software Revenue Recognition . . . 5100.60-66

**D****DATE**

- Change in Fiscal Year . . . . . 1800.03
- Cover for Financial Statements. . . . . 9160.03
- Different Fiscal Years . . . . . 9100.02; 9160.21
- Effect of Obtaining Management  
    Representation Letter on Auditor's  
    Report. . . . . 9100.06

**DATE OF REPORT**

- Dual Dating . . . . . 9510.03
- Reporting on New York State Medicaid Cost  
    Reports. . . . . 9510.03

**DEBT—See Loans****DEFALCATIONS—See Fraud and Irregularities****DEFERRALS**

- Debt Issuance Costs . . . . . 3200.06
- Depreciation—See Tax Allocation
- Franchises. . . . . 6940.01
- Interest Expense . . . . . 5220.01
- Investment Tax Credit—See Tax Allocation
- Landfill Rights . . . . . 6700.10
- Loan Costs . . . . . 4130.03
- Mortgage Placement Fees . . . . . 3200.06
- Offering Costs Incurred by Investment  
    Partnerships . . . . . 6910.23
- Taxes—See Tax Allocation

**DEFICITS**

- Premium—See Premium Deficits
- Purchase of Treasury  
    Stock . . . . . 2210.18; 4120.03

**DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS—See Employee Benefit Plans****DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS—See Employee Benefit Plans****DELIVERY TERMS**

- Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.69

**DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION—See State and Local Governments****DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH**

- Reporting on New York State Medicaid Cost  
    Reports—See Medicaid Cost Reports

**DEPARTURES FROM ESTABLISHED PRINCIPLES**

- Break-Even Financial Statements . . . 9160.02
- Prescribed Forms . . . . . 9150.10
- Review of Financial Statements . . . . 9150.10

**DEPOSITS**

- Equipment to Be Purchased. . . . . 2230.02
- Leased Equipment. . . . . 3100.03

**DEPRECIATION**

- Additional First Year Depreciation . . . 5210.08
- Allocation in Limited Partnership. . . . 7200.08
- Cattle Herd . . . . . 2210.06
- Change in Asset Lives . . . . . 9030.03
- Charter Airplanes. . . . . 2140.04
- Computation of Net Change in Fair Value of  
    Investments. . . . . 6931.01
- Definition. . . . . 5210.08
- Depreciation Expense Versus Depreciation  
    Accrual . . . . . 5210.02
- Disclosure on Balance Sheet  
    . . . . . 5210.02; 9080.03
- Golf Courses . . . . . 5210.05
- Included in Inventory Overhead. . . . . 5210.02
- Log Pond Dredging Costs . . . . . 2210.15
- Modified Cash Basis Statements . . . . 1500.05
- Operating Leases—See Leasehold  
    Improvements
- Real Estate Investment of Defined Benefit  
    Plan . . . . . 6931.04
- Rental Clothing . . . . . 5210.04
- Restaurant's Dishes . . . . . 2210.08
- Ski Slopes. . . . . 2210.07

**DEVELOPMENT COSTS—See Research and Development****DEVELOPMENT STAGE ENTERPRISES**

- Auditor's Report. . . . . 9060.09

**DISASTERS**

- Destruction of Documents by Fire, Flood, or  
    Act of Nature. . . . . 8345.01-02
- Losses From Natural Disasters  
    . . . . . 5400.05; 9070.05

**DISCLAIMERS OF OPINION**

- GAAP Departures. . . . . 9130.10
- Income Statement Only . . . . . 9080.04
- Scope Limitations . . . . . 9080.04; 9100.02;  
    9130.01-02; 9130.06-08; 9130.10
- Supplemental Financial Information. . . 9080.14

**DISCLOSURE**

· Accounting Policies .....	5100.25
· Accrual of Preferred Dividends .....	4210.04
· Applicability of FASB ASC 460 to Loan Guarantees .....	6400.45-46
· Arrangements With Reorganized Debtor .....	9070.02
· Arrearage on Cumulative Preferred Stock .....	4210.04
· Benefits Payable to Terminated Participants of Defined Contribution Plans .....	6931.02
· Bond Issuance for City Owned Hospital .....	6400.12
· Cash on Deposit in Excess of FDIC-Insured Limits .....	2110.06
· Change in Accounting Basis .....	9030.10
· Change in Amortization Method ....	5220.05
· Changes in Film Impairment Estimates .....	6970.01-02
· Changes in Stockholders' Equity .....	9160.24
· Commitments .....	3500.01-02
· Comparative Financial Statements ..	1100.07
· Comparative Financial Statements of Nonregistered Investment Partnerships .....	6910.19
· Compilation Reports .....	9110.07
· Compilation When Disclosures Are Omitted .....	9150.24; 9160.26
· Control of Board of Directors .....	1400.07
· Credit Risk Concentration .....	2110.06
· Cumulative Preferred Stock Dividends .....	4210.04
· Debt Covenant Violations/Subsequent Bank Waivers .....	3200.17
· Departures From GAAP .....	1300.17; 9150.01; 9150.10
· Depreciation .....	5210.02; 9080.03
· Destruction of Documents by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster .....	8345.01-02
· Divorced Co-Owners .....	9060.06
· Drawings in Excess of Capital .....	7200.01
· Employee Benefit Plans—See Employee Benefit Plans	
· Employee Defalcation .....	9070.03
· Exchange of Common Stock for Preferred .....	4230.02
· Expected Loss on Contract .....	5260.01
· Fiscal Year Change .....	1800.03
· Five-Year Maturities on Long-Term Debt .....	3200.15
· Fund-Raising Expenses .....	6140.20
· GAAP Departures .....	9130.10
· Guarantee of Debt .....	2220.13
· Hospital as Guarantor of Indebtedness of Others .....	6400.45-46
· Imputed Interest on Demand Loans ..	5220.06
· Interest Cost on Loan From Parent ..	2210.25
· Inventory Cost Methods .....	2140.11
· Inventory Not Observed .....	9100.02
· Investment in an Issuer When One or More Securities and/or Derivative Contracts Are Held .....	6910.18

**DISCLOSURE—continued**

· Investment in Common Collective Trust Fund or Master Trust That Holds Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts .....	6931.10
· Letters of Credit .....	3500.05
· LIFO Reserve .....	2140.14
· Lines of Credit Available .....	3500.07
· Litigation .....	3400.01; 9060.06
· Loan Against Insurance .....	2240.01
· Location of Auditor's Report Issuance .....	9160.22
· Long and Short Positions .....	6910.17
· Losses From Natural Disasters ....	5400.05
· Losses of Investees .....	2220.12
· Maturities of Loans .....	6130.05
· Multiemployer Employee Benefit Plans .....	6931.06
· Net Appreciation/Depreciation in Fair Value of Investments .....	6931.01
· Noncompetition Agreement With Former Officers .....	2250.06
· Option to Acquire Control .....	1400.07
· Patent License Termination .....	5100.20
· "Pay Any Day" Loans .....	3200.09
· Pensions .....	9080.03
· Postretirement Prescription Drug Coverage .....	6931.05-06
· Premium Deficits .....	6931.07
· Prior Period Adjustment .....	1300.11
· Purchase Commitment Losses .....	3500.04
· Report on a Statement of Cash Receipts and Disbursements .....	9110.07
· Restrictive Covenants .....	3500.06
· Royalty Agreement .....	6500.03
· Sale of Research and Development Technology .....	5240.10
· Single-Employer Employee Benefit Plans .....	6931.05
· Standard Cost Inventory Valuation ..	2140.09
· Stock Redemption Contract .....	4120.03
· Stockholder Agreements ..	2240.02; 3400.02
· Subsidiary-Only Financial Statements	1400.27
· Titles of Financial Statements .....	1500.04
· Types of Investments Subject to FASB ASC 962 .....	6931.08
· Unremitted Taxes .....	9070.01

**DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS**

· Audit, Review, and Compilation Considerations When Predecessor Accountant Ceases Operations .....	8900.03-10; 9160.14
· Sale of Real Estate Held by Employee Benefit Plans .....	6931.03

**DISCOUNTS**

· Capital Stock .....	4110.02; 4230.02
· Consumer Loans .....	6130.01
· More-Than-Insignificant Discount and Software Revenue Recognition .....	5100.50
· Notes Receivable .....	7400.06
· Prepaid Funeral Plans .....	5100.04
· Present Value—See Present Value	

**DISCOUNTS—continued**

- Short Positions in Fixed-Income Securities, Recognition of ..... 6910.21
- Significant Incremental Discounts in Software Revenue Recognition ..... 5100.51
- Software Revenue Recognition ..... 5100.50-51; 5100.74
- Trade-Ins ..... 5100.01

**DIVIDENDS**

- Cumulative Preferred Stock ..... 4210.04
- Funding on Participating Policies ... 6300.31
- In Arrears ..... 4210.04
- Liquidating ..... 4210.01
- Responsibility to Audit Dividend Fund 9120.02
- Restrictive Covenants ..... 3500.06
- Stock Dividends—See Stock Dividends and Stock Splits
- Transfers From Subsidiary to Minority Stockholder of Parent ..... 6400.26

**DIVISIONS—See Affiliated Companies****DONATIONS—See Contributions****DRAWING ACCOUNTS**

- Drawings in Excess of Capital ..... 7200.01

**DUES—See Memberships****E****EARNINGS PER SHARE**

- Consolidated Financial Statements .. 5500.02
- Cumulative Preferred Stock ..... 4210.04
- Interim Financial Statements ..... 5500.03
- Stock Dividends ..... 5500.15
- Weighted Average Shares Outstanding ..... 5500.03

**EARNINGS PROCESS**

- Realization Criterion ..... 5100.25

**EFFECTIVE DATES**

- Illustrations—See Illustrations
- Statement on Auditing Standards for Financial Statement Audit ..... 8100.01
- Statement on Auditing Standards for Interim Period Audit ..... 8100.02

**EFFICIENCY**

- Audit Sampling ..... 8220.05

**EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS**

- Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Single and Multi Employer Plans Related to the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement and Modernization Act of 2003 . 6931.05-06
- Allocations Testing of Investment Earnings When Type 2 SAS No. 70 Report is Available ..... 6935.02
- Audit Opinion When Discrimination Testing Has Not Been Completed ..... 6939.02
- Audit Procedures
  - Plan Mergers ..... 6933.06
  - Plan Operates in a Decentralized Environment ..... 6933.09
  - SAS No. 70 Reports are Not Available ..... 6935.01

**EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS—continued**

- Audit Requirements
  - Frozen and Terminated Plans ..... 6933.08
  - Health and Welfare Plans ..... 6938.01-02
  - Health and Welfare Plans Funded Through 401(h) Account ..... 6938.08
  - Health and Welfare Plans With Participant Contributions ..... 6938.04
  - Multiple Plans That Use VEBA Trust 6938.07
  - Only Medical is Funded Through VEBA Trust ..... 6938.05
  - Remaining Portion of a Split Plan .. 6933.07
  - VEBA Trust is a Pass-Through .... 6938.06
- Auditing ..... 6933.01-10
- Defined Benefit Plans ..... 6937.01
- Defined Contribution Plans ..... 6936.01-02
- Health and Welfare Plans ..... 6938.01-08
- Master Trust ..... 6931.11, 6933.10
- Pension Plan Financial Statements . 6937.01
- Auditor's Reports ..... 6939.02
- Auditor's Responsibility for Detecting Nonexempt Transactions ..... 6933.03
- Auditor's Responsibility for Testing Plan's Compliance With Qualification Issues ..... 6936.01
- Benefits Payable to Terminated Participants of Defined Contribution Plans ..... 6931.02
- Certifications by "Agent of" ..... 6934.01
- Depreciation of Real Estate Investment Owned by Defined Benefit Pension Plan... 6931.04
- Employee Benefit Security Administration Guidance on Insurance Company Demutualizations ..... 6932.01
- ERISA Reporting and Disclosure .. 6932.01-10
- Financial Statement Disclosure When a Plan Invests in Common Collective Trust Fund or in Master Trust That Hold Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts ..... 6931.10
- Financial Statement Presentation of Underwriting Deficits ..... 6931.07
- Financial Statement Presentation When a Plan Invests in Common Collective Trust Fund or in Master Trust That Hold Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts ..... 6931.09
- Financial Statement Reporting and Disclosure ..... 6931.01-11
- Form 11-K Filing Requirements ..... 6930.01
- Form 5500 Reporting ..... 6931.02; 6932.02-10; 6937.01
- HIPAA Restrictions ..... 6938.03
- Initial Audit of Plan, Information From Prior Years ..... 6933.01
- Investment Allocations Testing in Electronic Environment ..... 6933.02
- Investments Held Under Master Trusts ..... 6931.11
- Investments Subject to FASB ASC 962 ..... 6931.08
- Late Remittances of Participant Contributions ..... 6932.02
- Limited-Scope Audits ..... 6934.01-04
- Plan Certifications for Master Trusts 6934.03

**EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS—continued**

- Portion of the Plan's Investments . . . 6934.02
- Testing Allocation of Investment Earnings at Participant Account Level . . . . . 6934.04
- Merger Date for Defined Contribution Plans . . . . . 6936.02
- Nonexempt Transactions . . . . . 6933.03-04
- Reconciliation of Items Between Financial Statements and Form 5500 . . . . . 6932.06
- Reporting
  - Delinquent Loan Remittances on Form 5500 Filings . . . . . 6932.03
- Investments in Brokerage Accounts in Financial Statements and Form 5500 . . . . . 6932.05
- Participant Loans on Defined Contribution Plan Master Trust Form 5500 Filings . . . . . 6932.04
- Requirement for Certain Transactions Under Individual Account Plans on the Schedule of Reportable Transactions . . . . . 6932.07
- Sale of Real Estate Investments Held by Employee Benefit Plans Treated as Discontinued Operations . . . . . 6931.03
- SAS No. 70 Reports . . . . . 6933.01-02; 6935.01-02
- Schedule of 5% Reportable Transactions for Defined Benefit Plans . . . . . 6932.10
- Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year), Netting of Investments . . . . . 6932.09
- Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year), Noninterest-Bearing Cash . . . . . 6932.08
- Testing of Plan Qualified Tests Prepared by Third Party Administrator . . . . . 6933.05

**EMPLOYEE BENEFIT SECURITY ADMINISTRATION—See ERISA****EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT INCOME SECURITY ACT—See ERISA****EMPLOYEES**

- Compensated Absences . . . . . 3100.10
- Deferred Compensation Contract . . . 5230.06
- Taxable Expenses . . . . . 5290.02

**EMPLOYERS**

- "Excess of Loss" Medical Insurance Expense for Employees . . . . . 3100.09
- Expenses Taxable to Employees . . . 5290.02
- Noncompetition Agreement With Former Officer . . . . . 2250.06

**ENTERTAINMENT INDUSTRY**

- Film Impairment Estimates During Quarters Within a Fiscal Year . . . . . 6970.01-02

**ENTITY, ACCOUNTING**

- Differing Fiscal Years for Tax and Financial Reporting . . . . . 9160.21

**EQUIPMENT—See Fixed Assets****EQUITY METHOD**

- Change in Circumstances . . . . . 2220.13
- Elimination of Material Variances . . . 2220.03
- GAAP Basis Versus Tax Basis Accounting . . . . . 2220.17
- Guarantee of Debt . . . . . 2220.13

**EQUITY METHOD—continued**

- Intra-entity Profits . . . . . 2220.08
- Investee Using Completed Contract Method . . . . . 2220.03
- Joint Operating Agreement . . . . . 6400.33
- Joint Ventures . . . 2220.03; 2220.05; 2220.15
- Method of Reporting . . . . . 2220.05
- Ownership Less Than 20 Percent . . . 2220.01
- Real Estate Ventures . . . . . 2220.12

**ERISA**

- Employee Benefit Security Administration Guidance on Insurance Company Demutualizations . . . . . 6932.01
- Late Remittances of Participant Contributions . . . . . 6932.02
- Reconciliation of Items Between Financial Statements and Form 5500 6932.06
  - Reporting and Disclosure . . . . . 6932.01-10
- Reporting Delinquent Loan Remittances on Form 5500 Filings . . . . . 6932.03
- Reporting Investments in Brokerage Accounts in Financial Statements and Form 5500 . . . . . 6932.05
- Reporting Participant Loans on Defined Contribution Plan Master Trust Form 5500 Filings . . . . . 6932.04
- Reporting Requirement for Certain Transactions Under Individual Account Plans on the Schedule of Reportable Transactions . . . . . 6932.07
- Schedule of 5% Reportable Transactions for Defined Benefit Plans . . . . . 6932.10
- Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year), Netting of Investments . . . . . 6932.09
- Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year), Noninterest-Bearing Cash . . . . . 6932.08

**ERROR CORRECTION**

- Change in Amortization Method . . . . 5220.05
- Premiums on Life Insurance . . . . . 2240.04
- Statement of Cash Flows . . . . . 1300.11

**ESCHEAT LAWS**

- Unclaimed Refunds . . . . . 6300.03

**ESCROW AGREEMENTS**

- Confirmations . . . . . 8340.11

**ESTATES**

- Valuation of Capital Stock . . . . . 4230.02

**EVIDENTIAL MATTER—See Audit Evidence****EXCHANGE**

- Common Stock for Preferred Stock . . 4230.02
- Realization Criterion . . . . . 5100.25

**EXCISE TAXES**

- Club Dues . . . . . 5100.11

**EXECUTORY CONTRACTS—See Contracts****EXPENDITURES**

- Accounting for Expenses Taxable to Employees . . . . . 5290.02
- Contributions to Employee Benefit Plans . . . . . 9080.03
- Dredging Log Pond . . . . . 2210.15
- Joint Ventures . . . . . 2220.03; 2220.05

**EXPENDITURES—continued**

- Overhead Allocation of Colleges . . . 6960.12
- Recoverable Costs . . . . . 2130.05
- Research and Development . . . . . 5240.10

**EXPLANATORY LANGUAGE**

- Going Concern Uncertainties . . . 9060.08.09
- Limited Life Venture . . . . . 9080.02

**EXPLORATION COSTS—See Research and Development****EXTENDED PAYMENT TERMS AND/OR ARRANGEMENTS**

- Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.42; 5100.57; 5100.59

**EXTINGUISHMENT OF DEBT—See Noncurrent Liabilities****EXTRACTIVE INDUSTRIES**

- Royalty Commitment . . . . . 6500.03

**EXTRAORDINARY AND UNUSUAL ITEMS**

- Definition . . . . . 5400.04
- Destruction of Documents by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster . . . . . 8345.01-02
- Life Insurance Proceeds of Officer . . 5400.04
- Losses From Natural Disasters . . . . 5400.05
- Sale of Cotton Futures . . . . . 5400.02

**F****FAIR VALUE**

- Allocation of Capital Lease Payments 3200.10
- Computation of Net Appreciation/Depreciation of Investments . . . . . 6931.01
- Disclosures for Master Trusts . . . . . 6931.11
- Fair Value Calculations, Testing of . . 9510.01
- Fair Value Model, Testing of . . . . . 9510.01
- Independent Estimate by Auditor . . . 9510.01
- Investment in Common Collective Trust Fund or Master Trust That Holds Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts . . . . . 6931.09
- Nonreciprocal Transfers . . . . . 5100.36
- Plan Investments in Real Estate . . . . 6931.04
- Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.52-55; 5100.68; 5100.75-76
- Stock Dividends . . . . . 2120.06; 4150.02
- Stock Issuance . . . . . 4110.03
- Vendor-Specific Objective Evidence for Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.38; 5100.75-76

**FASB ASC 310-30**

- Accounting for Loans With Cash Flow Shortfalls That Are Insignificant . . . . . 2130.21
- Acquired Loans Where Purchase Price Is Greater Than Fair Value . . . . . 2130.19
- Acquired Loans Where Purchase Price Is Less Than Fair Value . . . . . 2130.20
- Acquired Non-Accrual Loans . . . . . 2130.13
- Application to Debt Securities . . . . . 2130.09; 2130.17
- Application to Cash Flows From Collateral and Other Sources . . . . . 2130.35

**FASB ASC 310-30—continued**

- Application to Fees Expected to Be Collected . . . . . 2130.34
- Carrying Over the Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses (ALLL) . . . . . 2130.22-24
- Consumer Loans on Non-Accrual Status . . . . . 2130.14
- Determining Evidence of Deterioration of Credit Quality and Probability of Contractual Payment Deficiency . . . . . 2130.12
- Determining Evidence of Significant Delays and Shortfalls . . . . . 2130.11
- Implications of FASB ASC 310-20-35-11 With a Restructured or Refinanced Loan Under FASB ASC 310-30 . . . . . 2130.29-30
- Estimating Cash Flows . . . . . 2130.28
- Impact on Cash Flows on a Group of Loans Accounted for as a Pool if There Is a Confirming Event, and One Loan Is Removed as Expected . . . . . 2130.36
- Impact on Cash Flows on a Group of Loans Accounted for as a Pool if There Is a Confirming Event, One Loan Is Removed From the Pool, and the Investor Decreases Its Estimate of Expected Cash Flows . . . . . 2130.37
- Income Recognition for Non-Accrual Loans Acquired . . . . . 2130.25-27
- Instruments Accounted for as Debt Securities . . . . . 2130.10
- Loans Held for Sale . . . . . 2130.15
- Loans Reacquired Under Recourse . . 2130.18
- Pool Accounting . . . . . 2130.32-33
- Treatment of Commercial Revolving Loans . . . . . 2130.16
- Variable Rate Loans and Changes in Cash Flows . . . . . 2130.31

**FASB ASC 942-325**

- Credit Union Expensing . . . . . 6995.01
- Existing authoritative guidance for the accounting for the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund deposit . . . 6995.01
- Refundable Deposits . . . . . 6995.01

**FASB ASC 944-30**

- Change in Insurance Risk . . 6300.26; 6300.33
- Commissions Paid on an Increase in Insurance Coverage or Incremental Deposits . 6300.30
- Contract Reinstatements . . . . . 6300.29
- Coverage, Changes in . . . . . 6300.33
- Integrated/Nonintegrated Contract Features . . . . . 6300.25
- Investment Management Fees and Other Administrative Charges . . . . . 6300.27
- Investment Return Rights . . . . . 6300.34
- Limited Examination Procedures in Conjunction With Election of Benefits . . . . . 6300.28
- Participating Dividends . . . . . 6300.31
- Premium Rate Changes for Group Long-Duration Insurance Contracts . 6300.32

**FEES**

- Accounting . . . . . 4110.01; 4110.03
- Accrual of Audit Fee . . . . . 5290.05
- Franchises—See Franchises

**FEES—continued**

- Investment Management . . . . . 6300.27
- Legal—See Legal Fees
- Underwriting . . . . . 4110.03

**FILM INDUSTRY—See Entertainment Industry****FINANCE COMPANIES**

- Commissions on Loan Insurance . . . 6130.04
- Disclosure of Maturities of Loans . . . 6130.05
- Discount Amortization . . . . . 6130.01
- Revenue Recognition . . . . . 6130.02-03
- Subordinated Debt Classification . . . 6130.06

**FINANCIAL POSITION STATEMENTS—See****Balance Sheet****FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Allowance for Doubtful Accounts . . . 2130.07
- Balance Sheet—See Balance Sheet
- Balance Sheet Only . . . . . 1300.05
- Basic Statements . . . . . 9150.08; 9160.23
- Basic vs. Supplemental Information in Auditor-Submitted Document . . . . . 9160.23
- Basis of Accounting Prescribed in an Agreement . . . . . 9110.13
- Beneficiary's Interest in Net Assets of Fund-Raising Foundation . . . . . 6140.13-18; 6400.35-42
- Benefits Payable to Terminated Participants of Defined Contribution Plans . . . . . 6931.02
- Break-Even . . . . . 9160.02
- Cash Basis—See Cash Basis
- Cash Receipts and Disbursements . . . 9110.07
- Change From GAAP to Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 9030.10
- Change From Other Comprehensive Basis to GAAP . . . . . 9030.10
- Combined—See Combined Financial Statements
- Comparative Statements . . . 1100.07; 1300.03; 9030.10; 9150.20; 9160.03
- Compilation—See Compilation of Financial Statements
- Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 1300.10; 2220.03; 9030.10; 9060.08
- Computer Generated . . . . . 9150.11
- Condensed—See Condensed Financial Statements
- Consolidated—See Consolidated Financial Statements
- Credit Unions . . . . . 6995.01
- Dates on Cover . . . . . 9160.03
- Departure From GAAP . . . . . 1300.17; 5210.08; 9110.13; 9150.01
- Depreciation—See Depreciation
- Destruction of Documents by Fire, Flood, or Natural Disaster . . . . . 8345.01-02
- Disclosure by Nonpublic Entities of Lines of Credit Available . . . . . 3500.07
- Exchange of Common Stock for Preferred . . . . . 4230.02
- Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation, Classification of Net Assets . . . . . 6140.13-18; 6400.35-42
- Health Care Entities . . . 6400.17; 6400.19-20

**FINANCIAL STATEMENTS—continued**

- Income Statement—See Income Statement
- Income Tax Basis . . . . . 1500.06
- Income Taxes—See Taxes
- Interest Cost on Loan From Parent . . . 2210.25
- Interim—See Interim Financial Statements
- Internal and General Use Distinction . . 9160.10
- Investments in Brokerage Accounts in Financial Statements and Form 5500 . . . . . 6932.05
- Investment in Common Collective Trust Fund or Master Trust That Holds Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts . . . . . 6931.09-10
- Journal Entries . . . . . 8200.16
- Letters of Credit . . . . . 3500.05
- Liquidation Basis of Accounting . . . . 9110.14
- Liquidity Restrictions . . . . . 1100.15
- Litigation Settlements . . . . . 2260.03
- Losses From Natural Disasters . . . . . 5400.05; 9070.05
- Modified Cash Basis—See Modified Cash Basis
- Notes—See Notes to Financial Statements
- OCOBA . . . . . 1500.06; 1500.07
- Order of Presentation . . . . . 9080.09
- Out-of-Pocket Costs . . . . . 2130.05
- Parent Company Only . . . . . 1400.25; 1400.32
- "Pay Any Day" Loans . . . . . 3200.09
- Period Covered . . . . . 9160.07
- Personal—See Personal Financial Statements
- Postretirement Prescription Drug Coverage . . . . . 6931.05-06
- Prescribed Forms—See Prescribed Report Forms
- Prior Period Adjustments . . . . . 8900.07-08
- Prior Year Unaudited . . . . . 9160.03
- Prospective Financial Statements—See Prospective Financial Statements
- Readily Available . . . . . 1900.01
- Reconciliation of Items Between Financial Statements and Form 5500 . . . . . 6932.06
- Reference to Auditor's Report . . . . . 9080.06
- Reference to Notes to Financial Statements . . . . . 9150.16
- Reporting and Disclosure—Employee Benefit Plans . . . . . 6931.01-10
- Reporting Bad Debt Losses for Not-for-Profit Entities . . . . . 6140.09
- Reproduction . . . . . 9160.02
- Restatements . . . . . 8900.06-10; 9100.02
- Review—See Review of Financial Statements
- Single Period Statements . . . . . 1300.11
- Stand-Alone . . . . . 1400.30
- Statement of Cash Flows Omitted . . . . . 1300.05; 1300.10; 6910.25
- Statement of Stockholders' Equity . . . 9160.24
- Statutory Reporting Requirements . . . 9110.08
- Submission of . . . . . 9150.25
- Subsidiary-Only . . . . . 1400.27
- Supplemental Information . . . . . 9160.14; 9150.08; 9160.23
- Tax Basis Accounting—Use of Equity Method . . . . . 2220.17

**FINANCIAL STATEMENTS—continued**

- Titles of Statements . . . . . 1500.04
- Types of Investments Subject to FASB ASC 962 . . . . . 6931.08
- Unaudited—See Unaudited Financial Statements
- Unbound Statements . . . . . 9160.02

**FINANCING**

- Charges . . . . . 6130.02.03
- Equipment Finance Note Payments. . . 1300.19
- “Pay Any Day” Loans . . . . . 3200.09
- Purchase of Inventory . . . . . 1300.16
- Purchase of Real Estate. . . . . 1300.21

**FIRM NAME**

- Successor Firm's Signature . . . . . 9100.01

**FIRST-IN, FIRST-OUT**

- Inventory Method . . . . . 1400.23

**FISCAL YEARS**

- Consolidation With Differing Year-Ends . . . . . 1400.22
- Consolidation With Differing Years . . 9100.02
- Differing for Tax and Financial Reporting . . . . . 9160.21
- Disclosure of Change. . . . . 1800.03
- Longer Than Twelve Months. . . . . 9160.07

**FIXED ASSETS**

- Capitalizing Foreign Currency Transaction Gains and Losses as Cost of Asset. . . . . 2210.27
- Cattle Herd . . . . . 2210.06
- Charter Airplanes. . . . . 2140.04
- Commission Received by Purchaser. . 2210.02
- Deposit on Equipment to Be Purchased. . . . . 2230.02
- Depreciation—See Depreciation
- Equipment Leasing Company . . . . . 5220.05
- Golf Course. . . . . 5210.05
- Involuntary Conversion . . . . . 5100.35
- Liquidated Damages . . . . . 2210.28
- Log Pond Dredging Costs . . . . . 2210.15
- “Pay Any Day” Loans . . . . . 3200.09
- Real Estate Title Verification. . . . . 8330.01
- Rental Assets Verification. . . . . 8330.02
- Rental Clothing . . . . . 5210.04
- Rental Payments Rebated Against Purchase Price. . . . . 5100.33
- Restaurant Dishes . . . . . 2210.08
- Ski Slopes. . . . . 2210.07
- Trade-Ins . . . . . 5100.01
- Write-Ups. . . . . 2210.18

**FOOTNOTES—See Notes to Financial Statements****FOREIGN LOANS**

- Capitalizing Transaction Gains and Losses as Cost of Asset . . . . . 2210.27

**FOREIGN OPERATIONS**

- Translating Foreign Subsidiary's Retained Earnings for Consolidation . . . . . 4200.01

**FORM 5500**

- Certain Transactions Under Individual Account Plans on the Schedule of Reportable Transactions . . . . . 6932.07
- Delinquent Loan Remittances . . . . . 6932.03
- Investments in Brokerage Accounts . . 6932.05
- Late Remittances of Participant Contributions . . . . . 6932.02
- Participant Loans on Defined Contribution Plan Master Trust Filings . . . . . 6932.04
- Reconciliation of Items in Financial Statements . . . . . 6932.06
- Schedule of 5% Reportable Transactions for Defined Benefit Plans. . . . . 6932.10
- Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year), Netting of Investments . . . . . 6932.09
- Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year), Noninterest-Bearing Cash . . . . . 6932.08

**FORMS**

- Prescribed Reports—See Prescribed Report Forms

**FRANCHISES**

- Revenue Recognition . . . . . 6940.02
- Sales of Area Franchises . . . . . 6940.01
- Substantial Performance . . . . . 6940.01

**FRAUD AND IRREGULARITIES**

- Subsequently Discovered Defalcation . 9070.03

**FUND ACCOUNTING**

- Employee Benefit Plans—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Health Care Entities, Agency Relationships . . . . . 6400.04
- Overhead Allocation of Colleges. . . . 6960.12
- Responsibility to Audit Dividend Fund . 9120.02

**FUND-RAISING FOUNDATIONS**

- Application of FASB ASC 958 . . . . . 6140.14-19; 6140.22; 6400.36-43
- Beneficiary Can Influence Operating and Financial Decisions . . . . . 6140.14; 6140.17; 6400.36
- Beneficiary Cannot Influence Operating and Financial Decisions . . . . . 6140.15; 6140.18; 6400.37; 6400.41
- Beneficiary Expenditure Meeting Purpose Restriction on Net Assets . . . . . 6140.17-18; 6400.40-41
- Beneficiary Interest in Net Assets. 6140.13-18
- Beneficiary's Interest in Net Assets Considered Common Control . . . . . 6400.38
- Classification of Distributions . . . . . 6140.19; 6400.43
- Classification of Net Assets . . . . . 6140.13-18; 6400.35-42
- Compensation Reporting . . . . . 6140.22
- Distribution From Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation. . . 6140.19; 6400.43
- Health Care Beneficiary . . . 6140.19; 6400.43
- Investments Held . . . . . 6400.42
- More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated . . . . . 6140.16; 6400.39

**FUND-RAISING FOUNDATIONS—continued**

- Net Assets of Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation . . . . . 6140.13-18; 6400.35-42
- Note on Implementation of FASB ASC 958 . . . . . 6140.13; 6400.35

**FUNERAL DIRECTORS**

- Prepaid Funeral Plans . . . . . 5100.04

**G****GAINS**

- Cotton Futures Contracts . . . . . 5400.02
- Foreign Currency Transaction—Capitalizing as Cost of Asset . . . . . 2210.27
- Fund-Raising Foundations, Unrealized Gains on Investments . . . . . 6400.42
- Investment Partnerships, Unrealized Gains . . . . . 6910.29
- Involuntary Conversion . . . . . 5100.35
- Sale of Investment to Minority Stockholder . . . . . 5100.36

**GENERALLY ACCEPTED ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES**

- Basic Financial Statements . . . . . 1300.10
- Break-Even Financial Statements . . . . . 9160.02
- Change From Other Comprehensive Basis . . . . . 9030.10
- Change to Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 9030.10
- Changes—See Accounting Changes
- Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 1300.10; 2220.03
- Construction Contracts . . . . . 6700.01
- Departures . . . . . 1300.17; 1400.31; 1500.05; 2210.18; 2220.17; 5210.08; 9080.13; 9130.10; 9150.01; 9150.10; 9160.02
- Depreciation . . . . . 5210.08; 7200.08
- Imputed Interest on Demand Loans . . . . . 5220.06
- Inquiries of Predecessor Auditor . . . . . 8900.01
- Modified Cash Basis Statements . . . . . 8340.11
- Overhead Allocation of Colleges . . . . . 6960.12
- Parent Company Only Financial Statements and Relationship to . . . . . 1400.32
- Requirements for Doubtful Accounts Allowance . . . . . 2130.07
- Requirement That Certain Accounts Be Carried at/ Adjusted to Fair Value . . . . . 9510.01
- Versus Tax Basis Accounting—Use of Equity Method . . . . . 2220.17

**GENERALLY ACCEPTED AUDITING STANDARDS**

- Confirmation Procedures . . . . . 8340.11
- Effective Date of Statement on Auditing Standards for Financial Statement Audit . . . . . 8100.01
- Effective Date of Statement on Auditing Standards for Interim Period Audit . . . . . 8100.02
- Inquiries of Predecessor Auditor . . . . . 8900.01
- Inquiries to Client's Attorneys . . . . . 8340.10
- Reliance on State Inspectors . . . . . 9120.04
- Schedule of Confirmation Results . . . . . 8340.16
- State Prescribed Standards . . . . . 6950.21

**GENERALLY ACCEPTED AUDITING****STANDARDS—continued**

- Written Confirmations, Retention of . . . . . 8340.16

**GIFTS—See Contributions****GOING CONCERN**

- Development Stage Enterprises . . . . . 9060.09
- Financial Statements Prepared on Other Comprehensive Basis of Accounting . . . . . 9060.08
- Limited Life Ventures . . . . . 9080.02
- Liquidity Restrictions . . . . . 1100.15

**GOLD—See Precious Metals****GOLF COURSES**

- Depreciation . . . . . 5210.05

**GOODWILL**

- Issuance of Capital Stock . . . . . 4110.02

**GOVERNMENTAL ACCOUNTING—See State and Local Governments****GRAIN**

- Inventory Classification . . . . . 1100.12
- Inventory Measurement . . . . . 9120.04

**GUARANTEES**

- Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Hospitals . . . . . 6400.45-46
- Applicability of FASB ASC 460 . . . . . 6400.45-46
- Debt of Investees . . . . . 2220.13
- Hospital as Guarantor of Indebtedness of Others . . . . . 6400.45-46
- Losses of Investees . . . . . 2220.12
- Mortgage . . . . . 6400.46

**H****HEALTH AND WELFARE BENEFIT PLANS—See Employee Benefit Plans****HEALTH CARE ENTITIES**

- Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees . . . . . 6400.45-46
- Agency Relationships . . . . . 6400.04
- Applicability of FASB ASC 460 to Loan Guarantees . . . . . 6400.45-46
- City Owned . . . . . 6400.12
- Combined or Consolidated Financial Statements . . . . . 6400.17; 6400.19-20
- Computer Systems, Upgrading and Maintaining . . . . . 6400.34
- Distributions From Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation . . . . . 6140.19; 6400.43
- Elimination of Profit on Intercompany Sales . . . . . 6400.17
- Fund-Raising Foundations—See Fund-Raising Foundations
- Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others . . . . . 6400.45-46
- Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA) . . . . . 6400.34
- Compliance Costs, Accounting for . . . . . 6400.34
- Computer Systems, Upgrading and Maintaining . . . . . 6400.34
- Maintenance Costs . . . . . 6400.34
- Upgrades and Enhancements . . . . . 6400.34

**HEALTH CARE ENTITIES—continued**

- Issuance of General Obligation Bonds . . . . . 6400.12
- Joint Operating Agreement . . . . . 6400.33
- Medicare Fees of Physicians . . . . . 6400.04
- Mortgage Guarantees . . . . . 6400.46
- Reporting on New York State Medicaid Cost Reports—See Medicaid Cost Reports
- Voluntary Contributions or Taxation Programs . . . . . 6400.30

**HEALTH INSURANCE PORTABILITY AND ACCOUNTABILITY ACT OF 1996 (HIPAA)**

- Auditing Health and Welfare Plans . . 6938.03
- Compliance Costs, Accounting for . . 6400.34
- Computer Systems, Upgrading and Maintaining . . . . . 6400.34
- Maintenance Costs . . . . . 6400.34
- Upgrades and Enhancements 6400.34

**HISTORICAL COST**

- Basis for Asset Valuation . . . . . 2210.18

**I****ILLUSTRATIONS**

- Effective Date of Statement on Auditing Standards for Financial Statement Audit . . . . . 8100.01
- Effective Date of Statement on Auditing Standards for Interim Period Audit . . 8100.02
- Income Tax Accounting for Contributions to Certain Nonprofit Scholarship Funding Organizations . . . . . 5700.01
- Insurance Transactions, Identifying Accounting Model . . . . . 1200.16; 6300.24
- Reporting on New York State Medicaid Cost Reports . . . . . 9510.03

**IMPAIRMENT**

- Evaluation of Capital Investments in Corporate Credit Unions for Other-Than-Temporary Impairment . . . . . 6995.02
- Film Impairment . . . . . 6970.01-02
- Legal Capital . . . . . 2210.18; 4120.03

**IMPUTED INTEREST**

- Notes Payable Exchanged for Cash . . 5220.07
- Shareholder Loans . . . . . 5220.06

**INCOME STATEMENT**

- Accounting by Noninsurance Enterprises for Property and Casualty Insurance Arrangements That Limit Insurance Risk . . . . . 1200.06-16; 6300.14-24
- Commissions Income Presentation . . 1200.01
- Disclaimer of Opinion . . . . . 9080.04
- Joint Ventures . . . . . 2220.03; 2220.05
- Life Insurance Proceeds of Officer . . 5400.04
- Notes—See Notes to Financial Statements
- Partners' Income Taxes . . . . . 7200.02
- Purchase Commitment Losses . . . . 3500.04
- Supplemental Information . . . . . 9150.08
- Supporting Schedules . . . . . 9150.08
- Title . . . . . 1200.04
- Translating Foreign Subsidiary's Retained Earnings for Consolidation . . . . . 4200.01

**INCOME TAXES—See Taxes****INDEPENDENCE**

- Dual Dating . . . . . 9510.03
- Reporting on New York State Medicaid Cost Reports . . . . . 9510.03
- Review Report Reissuance . . . . . 9150.20
- Title of Auditor's Report . . . . . 9160.08
- Work of Other Auditors . . . . . 9120.06

**INDUSTRIAL REVENUE BONDS—See Noncurrent Liabilities****INHERENT RISK**

- Assessing . . . . . 8200.09

**INQUIRIES**

- Insurance Companies . . . . . 8340.09
- Legal Counsel . . . . . 8340.10; 9130.09
- Predecessor Auditor . . . . . 8900.01
- Review Engagements . . . . . 9150.02

**INSTALLMENT METHOD**

- Disclosure Installment Amounts . . . 6130.05

**INSTITUTIONALLY RELATED FOUNDATIONS—See Fund Raising Foundations****INSURANCE**

- Cash Value of Officers' Life Insurance . . . . . 1300.13
- Commissions on Loan Insurance . . . 6130.04
- Commissions Paid on an Increase in Insurance Coverage . . . . . 6300.30
- Contracts . . . . . 6300.25-26; 6300.32-33
- Credit Life . . . . . 6300.02
- Employer's "Excess of Loss" Medical Coverage for Employees . . . . . 3100.09
- Estimated Unemployment Claims . . . 3100.01
- Loan Against Insurance . . . . . 2240.01
- Offsetting Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance . . . . . 5230.09
- Policy on Debtor . . . . . 2240.04
- Proceeds From Officer's Death . . . . 5400.04
- Property and Casualty Arrangements That Limit Risk . . . . . 1200.06-16; 6300.14-24
- Prospective Versus Retroactive . . . . 1200.11-13; 6300.19-21
- Recoveries to Cover Losses Sustained in a Natural Disaster . . . . . 5400.05
- Revenue Recognition by Brokers and Agents . . . . . 6300.01
- Risk, Changes in . . . . . 6300.26; 6300.33
- Risk, Limiting Features . . . . . 1200.08; 6300.16
- Risk, Transfer of . . . . . 1200.09-10; 6300.17-18
- Surrender Value—See Cash Surrender Value

**INSURANCE COMPANIES**

- Accounting by Noninsurance Enterprises for Property and Casualty Insurance Arrangements That Limit Insurance Risk . . . . . 1200.06-16; 6300.14-24
- Annuitization Benefits . . . . . 6300.13
- Commission Income . . . . . 6130.04
- Contract Reinstatements . . . . . 6300.29
- Definition of an Assessment . . . . . 6300.09
- Demutualizations, Employee Benefit Security Administration Guidance . . . . . 6932.01

**INSURANCE COMPANIES—continued**

- Inquiry on Insurance Claims . . . . . 8340.09
- Insurance Benefit Feature . . . 6300.08; 6300.25
- Investment Management Fees . . . . . 6300.27
- Investment Return Rights . . . . . 6300.34
- Level of Aggregation of Additional Liabilities . . . . . 6300.10
- Limited Examination Procedures in Conjunction With Election of Benefits . . . . . 6300.28
- Long-Duration Insurance Contract Premium Changes . . . . . 6300.32
- Long-Duration Insurance Contracts . . . 6300.36
- Losses Followed by Losses . . . . . 6300.11
- Participating Dividends . . . . . 6300.31
- Prospective Unlocking . . . . . 6300.36
- Reinsurance . . . . . 6300.12
- Reserve for Future Claims . . . . . 6300.04
- Risk, Changes in . . . . . 6300.26; 6300.33
- Unclaimed Refunds . . . . . 6300.03

**INTANGIBLE ASSETS**

- Goodwill—See Goodwill
- Landfill Rights . . . . . 6700.10
- Mortgage Placement Fee . . . . . 3200.06
- Noncompetition Agreement . . . . . 2250.06
- Patents—See Patents

**INTERCOMPANY TRANSACTIONS—See Affiliated Companies****INTEREST EXPENSE**

- Capitalization—See Capitalization
- Contract to Repurchase Stock . . . . . 4120.03
- Deferred Interest . . . . . 5220.01
- Demand Loans to Shareholders . . . . . 5220.06
- Imputed Interest . . . . . 5220.06; 5220.07
- Interest Credit Received on Mortgage Loan Between Interest Dates . . . . . 2210.01
- Notes Payable Exchanged for Cash Only . . . . . 5220.07
- “Pay Any Day” Loans . . . . . 3200.09
- Rate Changes . . . . . 5220.03
- Zero Coupon Bonds . . . . . 6950.18

**INTEREST METHOD**

- Allocation of Capital Lease Payments . . . 3200.10
- Amortization of Prepaid Interest . . . . . 5220.05
- Consumer Loan Discounts . . . . . 6130.01
- Revenue Recognition From Finance Charges . . . . . 6130.02
- Service Charges . . . . . 6130.03
- Zero Coupon Bonds . . . . . 5100.31

**INTEREST REVENUE**

- Confirmation of Receivables . . . . . 8340.03
- Zero Coupon Bonds . . . . . 5100.31

**INTERIM FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Audit Strategy . . . . . 8200.07
- Condensed . . . . . 1900.01
- Form and Content . . . . . 1900.01
- Reporting Framework . . . . . 1900.01
- Earnings Per Share . . . . . 5500.03
- Effective Date of Statement on Auditing Standards . . . . . 8100.02
- Recognition and Measurement . . . . . 1900.01

**INTERIM FINANCIAL STATEMENTS—continued**

- Restatement for Consolidation . . . . . 9100.02

**INTERNAL CONTROL**

- Assessing Inherent Risk . . . . . 8200.09
- Audit Sampling . . . . . 8220.01
- Cash Control of Vending Machines . . . . . 8200.02
- Control Risk at Maximum . . . . . 8200.10
- Deficiencies . . . . . 8200.15
- Documentation . . . . . 8200.13
- Inadequate . . . . . 9130.07
- Ineffective . . . . . 8200.11
- Inventories in Public Warehouse . . . . . 8320.06
- Material Weakness . . . . . 8200.10
- Operating Effectiveness 8200.05–.06; 8200.08; 8200.10; 8200.13
- Reliability . . . . . 8220.01
- Walkthroughs . . . . . 8200.11–.12; 8200.14

**INTERNAL CONTROL REPORTS**

- Broker-Dealers . . . . . 6980.01

**INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ON AUDITING**

- Part of an Audit Performed in Accordance With International Standards on Auditing . . . 9120.08

**INVENTORIES**

- Average Cost Method for Subsidiary . . . 2140.11
- Base Stock Method . . . . . 2210.08
- Beginning Inventory Not Observed . . . . . 9080.04; 9100.02
- Break-Even Financial Statements . . . . . 9160.06
- Cattle . . . . . 2210.06
- Charter Airplanes . . . . . 2140.04
- Classification of Slow-Moving Inventory . . . . . 2140.13
- Coal Pile Quantity . . . . . 8320.04
- Contributed . . . . . 6140.06
- Depreciation Included in Overhead . . . . . 5210.02
- Different Pricing Methods for Parent and Subsidiary . . . . . 1400.23
- Direct Financing . . . . . 1300.16
- FIFO—See First-In, First-Out
- GAAP Departures . . . . . 9130.10
- Grain . . . . . 1100.12; 9120.04
- LIFO—See Last-In, First-Out
- Materiality . . . . . 9130.01
- Meat Packer . . . . . 2140.06
- Not-for-Profit Entities . . . . . 6140.01
- Observation Before Year-End . . . . . 8320.01; 8320.05
- Obsolescence . . . . . 2140.02-.03; 2140.12; 8320.02
- Overhead—See Overhead
- Parts Inventories . . . . . 8320.02
- Perpetual Records . . . . . 8320.01; 8320.05
- Precious Metals Used in Manufacturing . . . . . 2140.08
- Purchase Commitment Losses . . . . . 3500.04
- Purchase From Stockholder . . . . . 8320.03
- Reliance on State Inspectors . . . . . 9120.04
- Replacement Parts . . . . . 2140.12
- Restaurant Dishes . . . . . 2210.08

**INVENTORIES—continued**

- Scope Limitations ..... 9080.04; 9130.06; 9130.10
- Silver ..... 8320.06
- Standard Cost ..... 2140.09
- Statements Using Differing Methods ..... 9110.01
- Stored in Public Warehouse ..... 8320.06
- Trade-Ins ..... 5100.01
- Valuation for a Not-for-Profit Scientific Entity ..... 6140.01
- Warehousing Costs ..... 2140.01

**INVESTMENT COMPANIES**

- Allocation of Unrealized Gain (Loss), Recognition of Carried Interest, and Clawback Obligations ..... 6910.29
- Boxed Investment Positions in the Condensed Schedule of Investments of Nonregistered Investment Partnerships ..... 6910.16
- Continual Offer of Interests ..... 6910.24
- Deferral and Amortization of Offering Costs Incurred ..... 6910.23
- Determinants of Net vs. Gross Presentation of Security Purchases and Sales/Maturities in the Statement of Cash Flows of a Nonregistered Investment Company ..... 6910.26
- Disclosure Requirements When Comparative Financial Statements of Nonregistered Investment Partnerships Are Presented ..... 6910.19
- Investment in an Issuer When One or More Securities and/or Derivative Contracts Are Held ..... 6910.18
- Long and Short Positions ..... 6910.17
- Omitting a Statement of Cash Flows ..... 6910.25
- Presentation of Purchases and Sales/Maturities of Investments ..... 6910.20
- Presentation of Reverse Repurchase Agreements ..... 6910.22
- Recognition of Premiums/Discounts on Short Positions in Fixed-Income Securities ..... 6910.21
- Reporting Requirements When Investors in Unitized Nonregistered Funds Are Issued Individual Classes or Series of Shares ..... 6910.28
- Requirement to Present a Statement of Cash Flows ..... 6910.25
- Responsibility to Audit Dividend Fund ..... 9120.02
- Treatment of Deferred Fees ..... 6910.27

**INVESTMENT TAX CREDIT—See Taxes****INVESTMENTS**

- Allocations Testing in Electronic Environment ..... 6933.02
- Allocations Testing of Investment Earnings When Type 2 SAS No. 70 Report is Available ..... 6935.02
- Audit Evidence—See Securities
- Brokerage Accounts ..... 6932.05
- Common Collective Trust Fund or Master Trust That Holds Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts ..... 6931.09
- Common Stock Dividends Received in Form of Preferred Stock ..... 2120.06

**INVESTMENTS—continued**

- Computation of Net Appreciation/Depreciation ..... 6931.01
- Consolidated Statements—See Consolidated Financial Statements
- Control of Investee ..... 2220.01
- Distribution From Investees With Operating Losses ..... 1300.18
- Employee Benefit Plans—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Equity Method—See Equity Method
- Evaluation of Capital Investments in Credit Unions ..... 6995.02
- Held by Fund-Raising Foundations—Unrealized Gains and Losses ..... 6400.42
- Insurance on Debtor ..... 2240.04
- Intercompany Profits ..... 2220.08
- Investment Contracts, Defined ..... 6931.08
- Joint Operating Agreement ..... 6400.33
- Joint Ventures—See Joint Ventures
- Limited-Scope Audit on Portion of Employee Benefit Plan ..... 6934.01-04
- Losses in Excess of Investment ..... 2220.12
- Management Fee Changes ..... 6300.27
- Master Trust Arrangements ..... 6931.11
- Minority Interest—See Minority Interest
- Not-for-Profit Entity's Additional Investment in For-Profit Entity ..... 6400.25
- Return Rights ..... 6300.34
- Sale of Real Estate Held by Employee Benefit Plans ..... 6931.03
- Sale to Minority Stockholder ..... 5100.36
- Schedule of Assets (Held at End of Year), Netting of ..... 6932.09
- Tax Basis Accounting—Use of Equity Method ..... 2220.17
- Types Subject to FASB ASC 962 ... 6931.08

**IRREGULARITIES—See Fraud and Irregularities****ISSUE COST**

- Withdrawn Public Offering ..... 4110.07

**J****JOINT VENTURES**

- Cash Distribution ..... 2220.15
- Equity Method ... 2220.03; 2220.05; 2220.15
- Health Care Entities ..... 6400.33
- Joint Operating Agreement ..... 6400.33
- Limited Life Venture ..... 9080.02
- Real Estate ..... 2220.12
- Unclassified Balance Sheet ..... 1100.03

**JUDGMENT**

- Sample Size ..... 8220.03
- Use of Other Auditors' Work When They Are Not Independent ..... 9120.06

**L****LAND**

- Golf Course Depreciation ..... 5210.05
- Ski Slopes ..... 2210.07

**LANDFILL RIGHTS**

- Classification in Balance Sheets . . . . 6700.10

**LAST-IN, FIRST-OUT**

- Disclosure of LIFO Reserve . . . . . 2140.14
- Inventory Method . . . . . 1400.23; 2140.11

**LAUNDROMATS**

- Control of Cash Receipts . . . . . 8200.02

**LAWYERS**

- Audit Inquiry Not Sent . . . . 8340.10; 9130.09
- Inquiry on Insurance Claims . . . . . 8340.09
- Issuance of Capital Stock . . . . . 4110.02
- Legal Fees—See Legal Fees
- Out-of-Pocket Costs . . . . . 2130.05

**LEASEHOLD IMPROVEMENTS**

- Accounting for . . . . . 5210.09
- Amortization and Depreciation . . . . . 5600.14
- Definition . . . . . 5210.09
- Lease Term . . . . . 5600.15

**LEASES**

- Accounting for a Trial Period . . . . . 5290.06
- Accounting for Subleases . . . . . 5600.04
- Accounting for Terms . . . . . 5600.07–.09
- Asset Ownership Verification . . . . . 8330.02
- Capital—See Capital Leases
- Classification of Rental Revenue . . . . 5100.16
- Deposits on Equipment . . . . . 3100.03
- Effect of Sales Taxes on Minimum Lease Payments . . . . . 3200.11
- Operating—See Operating Leases
- Percentage of Sales Leases . . . . . 9110.03

**LEGAL FEES**

- Defense Costs . . . . . 2260.03
- Employee Defalcation . . . . . 9070.03
- Stock Issuance Costs . . . . 4110.01; 4110.03
- Treasury Stock Acquisition Costs . . . 4110.09

**LEGAL REQUIREMENTS**

- Exchange of Common Stock for Preferred . . . . . 4230.02
- Impairment of Legal Capital . . . . . 2210.18; 4120.03
- Stock Dividends, Closely-Held Companies . . . . . 4150.01

**LETTERS OF CREDIT**

- Disclosure Requirement . . . . . 3500.05
- Payment Guarantees . . . . . 3500.02

**LIABILITIES**

- Amortization of Premium or Discount on Investment Securities With an Early Call Date . . . . . 3200.16
- Classification of Convertible Debt . . . 1100.14
- Contingent—See Contingent Liabilities
- Current—See Current Liabilities
- Debt in Violation of Agreement . . . . . 3200.13
- Deferred Compensation Contract . . . 5230.06
- Disclosure of Covenant Violation and Subsequent Bank Waiver . . . . . 3200.17
- “Excess of Loss” Medical Insurance for Employees . . . . . 3100.09

**LIABILITIES—continued**

- Level of Aggregation Determined by Insurance Companies . . . . . 6300.10
- Loan Against Insurance . . . . . 2240.01
- Losses of Investees . . . . . 2220.12
- Negative Amortization in Cash Flows Statement . . . . . 1300.22
- Noncurrent—See Noncurrent Liabilities
- Offsetting Against Cash Surrender Value of Life Insurance . . . . . 5230.09
- Offsetting Limited Use Assets Against Related Liabilities . . . . . 6400.19
- “Pay Any Day” Loans . . . . . 3200.09
- Presentation at Current Amounts . . . 1600.04
- Revolving Line of Credit . . . . . 3200.12
- Timber Purchase Contracts . . . . . 3500.01
- Unclassified Balance Sheet . . . . . 1100.03
- Unremitted Withholding Taxes . . . . . 9070.01

**LICENSING ARRANGEMENTS**

- Effect Upon Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.70-76
- Software Customer With Perpetual License . . . . . 5100.75-76

**LIFE ESTATES—See Estates****LIFE INSURANCE—See Insurance****LIMITED ASSURANCE**

- Review of Financial Statements . . . . 9150.10

**LIMITED PARTNERSHIPS**

- Income Allocation . . . . . 7200.08

**LIMITED SCOPE—See Scope Limitations****LIQUIDATION**

- Basis of Accounting . . . . . 9110.14
- Financial Statement Format . . . . . 9110.14

**LITIGATION**

- Co-Owners in Divorce Suit . . . . . 9060.06
- Defense Costs . . . . . 2260.03
- Disclosure of Possible Suit . . . . . 3400.01
- Inquiry Not Sent . . . . . 8340.10; 9130.09
- Patent Infringement . . . . . 2260.03

**LOANS**

- Application of FASB ASC 310-30—See FASB ASC 310-30
- Amortization of Premium or Discount on Investment Securities With an Early Call Date . . . . . 3200.16
- Applicability of FASB ASC 460 to Loan Guarantees . . . . . 6400.45-46
- Classification of Convertible Debt . . . 1100.14
- Consumer Loan Discounts . . . . . 6130.01
- Demand Loans to Shareholders . . . . 5220.06
- Disclosure of Contractual Maturities . . 6130.05
- Disclosure of Five-Year Maturities on Long-Term Debt . . . . . 3200.15
- Disclosure of Restrictive Covenants . . 3500.06
- Employee Benefit Plans—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Finance Companies . . . . . 6130.02
- Foreign—See Foreign Loans

**LOANS—continued**

- Hospital as Guarantor of Indebtedness of Others . . . . . 6400.45-46
- Interest Costs on Loans From Parent 2210.25
- Participant—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Revolving Line of Credit . . . . . 3200.12
- Service Charges . . . . . 6130.03
- Stockholder's Assets Used to Repay Corporate Loan . . . . . 4230.03
- Violation of Agreement . . . 3200.13; 3200.17; 9080.13

**LOGGING—See Timber****LOSSES**

- Allowances for Estimated Losses . . . 5100.04
- Expected Losses . . . . . 5260.01
- Effect on Income Statement Title . . . 1200.04
- Foreign Currency Transaction—Capitalizing as Cost of Asset . . . . . 2210.27
- Fund-Raising Foundations, Investments Held by . . . . . 6400.42
- Fund-Raising Foundations, Unrealized Losses on Investments . . . . . 6400.42
- Insurance Companies . . . . . 6300.11
- Investment Partnerships, Unrealized Losses . . . . . 6910.29
- Investor's Statement of Cash Flows of Distribution From Investees With Operating Losses . . . . . 1300.18
- Natural Disasters . . . . . 5400.05; 9070.05
- Purchase Commitments . . . . . 3500.04
- Real Estate Venture . . . . . 2220.12
- Uncollectible Accounts—See Uncollectible Accounts

**M****MAINTENANCE COSTS**

- Ski Slope . . . . . 2210.07

**MANAGEMENT**

- Disagreement With Auditor . . . . . 9080.03
- Responsibility for Financial Statements . . . . . 9080.06

**MARKET VALUE**

- Revaluation of Assets . . . . . 2210.18

**MATERIALITY**

- Change in Amortization Method . . . . 5220.05
- Inventories in Public Warehouse . . . . 8320.06
- Inventory Not Observed . . . . . 9130.01
- Nonexempt Transactions . . . . . 6933.04
- Purchase Commitment Losses . . . . . 3500.04
- Reporting on New York State Medicaid Cost Reports . . . . . 9510.03

**MEASUREMENT**

- Departures From GAAP . . . . . 9150.10
- Grain Inventory . . . . . 9120.04
- Purchase Commitment Losses . . . . . 3500.04

**MEAT PACKERS**

- Inventory . . . . . 2140.06

**MEDICAID**

- Cost Reports—See Medicaid Cost Reports

**MEDICAID—continued**

- Reporting on Medicaid/Medicare Cost Reports . . . . . 9110.15; 9510.03
- Voluntary Contribution or Taxation Programs . . . . . 6400.30

**MEDICAID COST REPORTS**

- Dating and Dual Dating . . . . . 9510.03
- Definitions . . . . . 9510.03
- Illustrations—See Illustrations . . . . . 9510.03
- Independence Requirements . . . . . 9510.03
- Materiality Considerations . . . . . 9510.03
- Reporting on New York State Department of Health . . . . . 9510.03
- Subsequent Events . . . . . 9510.03

**MEDICARE**

- Fees of Hospital-Based Physicians . . . 6400.04
- Medicare Prescription Drug Improvement and Modernization Act of 2003 . . . 6931.05-06
- Prescription Drug Subsidy . . . . . 6931.05-06
- Reporting on Medicaid/Medicare Cost Reports . . . . . 9110.15

**MEMBERSHIPS**

- Assessment for Debt Retirement . . . 5100.10
- Excise Tax on Dues . . . . . 5100.11
- Life Membership Fees . . . . . 5100.08
- Revenue Recognition . . . . . 6140.02
- Unearned Revenue Classification . . . 3600.01

**MERGERS—See Business Combinations****MINORITY INTEREST**

- Nonreciprocal Transfers . . . . . 5100.36
- Presentation on Consolidated Statements . . . . . 1400.02

**MISSTATEMENTS**

- Audit Sampling . . . . . 8220.03-05
- Higher Risk Accounts—Documentation . . . . . 8340.16
- Inherent Risk . . . . . 8200.09
- Tolerable Error . . . . . 8220.03

**MODIFIED CASH BASIS—See also****Comprehensive Basis of Accounting**

- Confirmations . . . . . 8340.11
- Income Tax Expense . . . . . 1500.05
- Support for Modifications . . . . . 1500.05

**MORTGAGES—See Noncurrent Liabilities****MORTUARIES—See Funeral Directors****MUNICIPALITIES—See State and Local Governments****MUTUAL FUNDS—See Investment Companies****N****NAME OF FIRM—See Firm Name****NATURAL DISASTERS—See Disasters****NET REALIZED VALUE**

- Trade-Ins . . . . . 5100.01

**NONCASH TRANSACTIONS**

- Classifications of Payments on Equipment Finance Note . . . . . 1300.19

**NONCURRENT ASSETS**

- Deposit on Equipment to Be Purchased . . . . . 2230.02
- Slow-Moving Inventory . . . . . 2140.13

**NONCURRENT LIABILITIES**

- Amortization of Placement Fee . . . . . 3200.06
- Classification of Convertible Debt . . . . . 1100.14
- Classification of Subordinate Debt . . . . . 6130.06
- Debt Assumed by Stockholders . . . . . 4160.01
- Disclosure of Five-Year Maturities on Long-Term Debt . . . . . 3200.15
- Extinguishment of Debt . . . . . 3200.06;
- Interest—See Interest Expense
- Interest Credit Received on Mortgage Loan Between Interest Dates . . . . . 2210.01
- Members' Debt Retirement Assessment . . . . . 5100.10
- Mortgage Placement Fees . 3200.06; 5100.14
- Notes Payable Exchanged for Cash . 5220.07
- "Pay Any Day" Loans . . . . . 3200.09
- Placement Fee on Extinguished Debt 3200.06
- Refinanced Debt . . . . . 3200.06
- Subordinated Note With Warrants . . . . . 4130.03

**NONDISCRETIONARY ASSISTANCE PROGRAMS**

- Assets Held or Transferred . . . . . 6140.12
- Beneficiary . . . . . 6140.12
- Contributions . . . . . 6140.12
- Donor (Resource Provider) . . . . . 6140.12
- Financial/Nonfinancial Assets . . . . . 6140.12
- Recipient Entity . . . . . 6140.12
- Transfers . . . . . 6140.12

**NONEXEMPT TRANSACTIONS**

- Auditor's Responsibility for Detection 6933.03
- Materiality . . . . . 6933.04

**NONINSURANCE ENTERPRISES**

- Accounting for Property and Casualty Insurance Arrangements That Limit Insurance Risk . . . . . 1200.06-16; 6300.14-24

**NONMONETARY TRANSACTIONS**

- Common Stock Dividends Received in Form of Preferred Stock . . . . . 2120.06
- Exchanges of Software . . . . . 5100.46-47
- Transfer of Investment to Minority Stockholder to Common Stock . . . . . 5100.36

**NONPUBLIC ENTERPRISES**

- Condensed Financial Statements . . . . . 9080.15
- Disclosure of Lines of Credit Available . . . . . 3500.07
- Prescribed Forms . . . . . 9150.09-10
- Prior Period Financial Statements Compiled or Reviewed by Predecessor Who Has Ceased Operations . . . . . 8900.08
- Review of Financial Statements . . . . . 9150.10
- Unaudited Financial Statements . . . . . 9150.04; 9150.09

**NONRECIPROCAL TRANSFERS**

- Common Stock Dividend Received in Form of Preferred Stock . . . . . 2120.06

**NONRECIPROCAL TRANSFERS—continued**

- Investment in Exchange for Common Stock . . . . . 5100.36

**NONSTATISTICAL SAMPLING**

- Audit Risk . . . . . 8220.03
- Size of Sample . . . . . 8220.03
- Substantive Tests . . . . . 8220.03
- Tolerable Error . . . . . 8220.03

**NOT-FOR-PROFIT ENTITIES**

- Applicability of FASB ASC 460 to Loan Guarantees . . . . . 6400.45-46
- Application of FASB ASC 958 . . . . . 6140.14-19
- Bad Debt Losses . . . . . 6140.09
- Compensation for Fund-Raising . . . . . 6140.22
- Contributions—See Contributions
- Direct Donor Benefit, Costs . . . . . 6140.08
- Fund-Raising Costs . . . 6140.07-08; 6140.11; 6140.20-21
- Fund-Raising Foundations—See Fund-Raising Foundations
- Funds—See Fund Accounting
- Health Care Entities—See Health Care Entities
- Hospital as Guarantor of Indebtedness of Others . . . . . 6400.45-46
- Inventory Pricing . . . . . 6140.01
- Membership Dues . . . . . 6140.02
- Nondiscretionary Assistance Programs . . . . . 6140.12
- Note on Implementation of FASB ASC 958 . . . . . 6140.13
- Overhead Allocation . . . . . 6960.12
- Political Action Committees, Consolidation . . . . . 6140.10
- Reporting Bad Debt Losses for Not-for-Profit Entities . . . . . 6140.09
- Reporting of Fund-Raising Costs . . . . . 6140.07
- Restrictions on Receivables . . . . . 6140.03-04
- Soliciting Contributed Services and Time, Costs . . . . . 6140.11
- Transfer of Assets as Additional Investment in For-Profit Entity . . . . . 6400.25
- Transfers From Subsidiary to Minority Stockholder of Parent . . . . . 6400.26

**NOTES PAYABLE—See Noncurrent Liabilities****NOTES RECEIVABLE**

- Interest Bearing Exchanged for Non-Interest Bearing . . . . . 7400.06
- Interest on Discounted Notes . . . . . 5220.05
- Mortgage Placement Fees . . . . . 5100.14
- Note From Reorganized Debtor . . . . . 9070.02
- Officer/Shareholder . . . . . 7400.06
- Sales of Area Franchises . . . . . 6940.01

**NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Comparative Statements . . . . . 1100.07
- Disclosure by Nonpublic Entities of Lines of Credit Available . . . . . 3500.07
- Error Corrections . . . . . 1300.11
- Inclusion of Auditor's Opinion . . . . . 9080.06

**NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS—**

continued

- Investment in Common Collective Trust Fund or Master Trust That Holds Fully Benefit-Responsive Investment Contracts . . . . . 6931.10
- Losses of Investees . . . . . 2220.12
- Multiemployer Employee Benefit Plan Disclosures . . . . . 6931.06
- Noncompetition Agreement With Former Officer . . . . . 2250.06
- Premium Deficits . . . . . 6931.07
- Reconciliation of Items Between Financial Statements and Form 5500 . . . . . 6932.06
- Reference to Compilation or Review Report . . . . . 9150.16
- Relation to Financial Statements . . . . . 9150.08
- Stockholder Agreements . . . . . 2240.02; 3400.02

**O****OFFSET RIGHTS**

- Loan Against Insurance . . . . . 2240.01

**OIL COMPANIES—See Extractive Industries****OPERATING EFFECTIVENESS**

- Expectation . . . . . 8200.06
- Testing . . . . . 8200.05

**OPERATING LEASES**

- Accounting for Subleases . . . . . 5600.04
- Amortization/Depreciation of Leasehold Improvements . . . . . 5600.14
- Landlord Incentive Allowance . . . . . 5600.16-17
- Leasehold Improvements and Lease Term . . . . . 5600.15
- Rent Expense and Revenue . . . . . 5600.10-13
- Rent Holiday . . . . . 5600.12
- Rent Increases . . . . . 5600.13
- Rental Payments Rebated Against Purchase Price . . . . . 5100.33
- Rental Space Increase . . . . . 5600.11

**OPINIONS, AUDITORS'—See Auditors' Reports****OPTIONS**

- Acquisition of Control . . . . . 1400.07
- Sale With Repurchase Option . . . . . 6600.03
- Software Revenue Recognition—Option to Extend Time-Based License . . . . . 5100.73

**ORGANIZATION COSTS**

- Paid With Capital Stock . . . . . 4110.03

**OTHER AUDITORS—See Reliance on Other Auditors' Reports****OVERHEAD**

- Coal Production Royalties . . . . . 6500.03
- College's Overhead Allocation . . . . . 6960.12
- Depreciation Included in Inventory . . . . . 5210.02
- Standard Cost Inventory Valuation . . . . . 2140.09
- Warehousing Costs . . . . . 2140.01

**P****PAID-IN CAPITAL—See Contributed Capital****PARENT COMPANY**

- Differing Fiscal Year From Subsidiary . . . . . 1400.22
- Inventory Cost Method . . . . . 1400.23
- Issuance of Financial Statements . . . . . 1400.25
- Subsidiaries' Interest Cost on Loans . . . . . 2210.25
- Translating Foreign Subsidiary's Retained Earnings for Consolidation . . . . . 4200.01

**PARTICIPANT LOANS—See Employee Benefit Plans****PARTNERSHIPS**

- Drawings in Excess of Capital . . . . . 7200.01
- Investment—See Investment Companies
- Joint Ventures—See Joint Ventures
- Limited—See Limited Partnerships
- Provision for Income Taxes . . . . . 7200.02

**PARTS INVENTORIES**

- Observation of Inventory . . . . . 8320.02

**PATENTS**

- Infringement Suit Legal Expenses . . . . . 2260.03
- License Termination Fee . . . . . 5100.20

**"PAY ANY DAY" LOANS**

- Financial Statement Presentation . . . . . 3200.09

**PAYABLES—See Current Liabilities****PENSIONS AND RETIREMENT PLANS**

- Depreciation of Real Estate Investment . . . . . 6931.04
- Disclosure . . . . . 9080.03
- Postretirement Prescription Drug Coverage . . . . . 6931.05-06
- Securities Held in Street Name . . . . . 8310.02

**PERCENTAGE OF COMPLETION METHOD**

- Investment on Equity Method . . . . . 2220.03
- Long-Term Contracts . . . . . 6700.01
- Short-Term Contracts . . . . . 6700.01

**PERCENTAGE OF SALE LEASES**

- Special Audit of Sales . . . . . 9110.03

**PERMANENT DIFFERENCES**

- Imputed Interest on Demand Loans . . . . . 5220.06

**PERSONAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Presentation of Assets at Current Values and Liabilities at Current Amounts . . . . . 1600.04
- Social Security Benefits . . . . . 1600.03

**PERSONNEL FILES**

- Access in Employee Benefit Plans Audits . . . . . 6938.03

**PLANNING**

- Documentation Requirements . . . . . 8220.04

**POLITICAL CONTRIBUTIONS—See Contributions****POSTCONTRACT CUSTOMER SUPPORT**

- Renewals Based on Software Users Deployed . . . . . 5100.75
- Software Customer With Perpetual License . . . . . 5100.75-76

**POSTCONTRACT CUSTOMER SUPPORT—**

continued

- Software Licensing Fees and Estimation . . . . . 5100.75-76
- Software Revenue Recognition and Fair Value . . . . . 5100.75-76
- Software Vendor Multiple-Element Arrangements . . . . . 5100.76
- Software Vendor-Specific Objective Evidence of Fair Value . . . . . 5100.75-76

**PRECIOUS METALS**

- Inventory Valuation in Manufacturing Applications . . . . . 2140.08

**PREDECESSOR AUDITOR**

- Discontinued Operations
- Communication With Successor . . . 8900.03
- Material Misstatements in Financial Statements Reported on . 8900.06; 8900.10
- Prior Period Financial Statements . . . . . 8900.07-10
- Significant Procedures Performed . . . . . 8900.05; 9160.14
- Working Papers Unavailable . . . . . 8900.04
- Inquiries From Successor . . . . . 8900.01-02

**PREFERRED STOCK—See Capital Stock****PREPAID EXPENSES**

- Interest on Discounted Notes . . . . . 5220.05
- Shelf Registration Costs . . . . . 4110.10

**PREPAID REVENUE—See Unearned Revenue****PREPAYMENTS**

- Software Revenue Recognition . . . 5100.41; 5100.58; 5100.61

**PRESCRIBED REPORT FORMS**

- Auditors' Opinions . . . . . 6950.21
- Brokers or Dealers in Securities . . . 9150.09
- Departures From Established Principles . . . . . 9150.10
- Report of Comments/Recommendations . . . . . 6950.21
- Review of Financial Statements . . . 9150.10

**PRESENT VALUE**

- As Basis of Fair Value Model . . . . . 9510.01
- Deferred Compensation Contract . . . 5230.06
- Determination of Capital Lease Payments . . . . . 3200.10
- Imputed Interest Rates . . . . . 3200.10

**PRINCIPAL AUDITORS**

- Definition . . . . . 9120.01
- Reference to Other Auditors in Accompanying Information Report . . . . . 9120.07

**PRIOR PERIOD ADJUSTMENTS**

- Changes in Film Impairment Estimates . . . . . 6970.01-02
- Correction of Error—See Error Correction
- Financial Statements Audited by Predecessor Who Has Ceased Operations . . . . . 8900.07; 8900.09

**PRIOR PERIOD ADJUSTMENTS—continued**

- Financial Statements Compiled or Reviewed by Predecessor Who Has Ceased Operations . . . . . 8900.08-09

**PROGRAMS, AUDIT—See Audit Programs****PROPRIETORSHIPS**

- Consolidation With Corporation . . . . 1400.02

**PROSPECTIVE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Internal and General Use Distinction . 9160.10

**PUBLIC WAREHOUSES—See Warehouses****PUBLICLY TRADED COMPANIES**

- Unaudited Financial Statements . . . . 9150.04

**Q****QUALIFIED OPINIONS**

- Change in Estimate . . . . . 9030.03
- Departure From GAAP . . . . 2210.18; 9080.13
- Scope Limitations . . . . 9080.04; 9130.07-08

**R****RADIO**

- Broadcast Time . . . . . 5100.02

**REAL ESTATE**

- Commission Received by Purchaser . 2210.02
- Common Interest Realty Associations—See Common Interest Realty Associations
- Full Accrual Method . . . . . 6600.04
- Golf Course Depreciation . . . . . 5210.05
- Investments . . . . . 6931.04
- Joint Ventures . . . . . 2220.05
- Losses in Excess of Investment . . . . 2220.12
- Recognition of Revenue . . . . . 6600.04
- Release Provisions . . . . . 6600.04
- Sale by Employee Benefit Plans . . . . 6931.03
- Sale With Repurchase Option . . . . . 6600.03
- Title Verification . . . . . 8330.01

**REAL ESTATE COMPANIES**

- Brokerage Commissions . . . . . 6600.01

**REALIZABLE VALUE—See Net Realizable Value****REALIZATION**

- Criteria . . . . . 5100.25

**RECEIVABLES**

- Accounting for Loans With Cash Flow Shortfalls That Are Insignificant Under FASB ASC 310-30 . . . . . 2130.21
- Acquired Loans Where Purchase Price Is Greater Than Fair Value Under FASB ASC 310-30 . . . . . 2130.19
- Acquired Loans Where Purchase Price Is Less Than Fair Value Under FASB ASC 310-30 . . . . . 2130.20
- Acquired Non-Accrual Loans Under FASB ASC 310-30 . . . . . 2130.13
- Application of FASB ASC 310-30 to Debt Securities . . . . . 2130.09; 2130.17

**RECEIVABLES—continued**

- Application to Cash Flows From Collateral and Other Sources Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.35
- Application to Fees Expected to Be Collected Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.34
- Carrying Over the Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses (ALLL) Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.22-24
- Commission Income ..... 6300.01
- Commitment Letters ..... 5100.14
- Confirmations—See Confirmations
- Consumer Loans on Non-Accrual Status Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.14
- Determining Evidence of Deterioration of Credit Quality and Probability of Contractual Payment Deficiency in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.12
- Determining Evidence of Significant Delays and Shortfalls Relative to FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.11
- Disclosure of Loan Maturities ..... 6130.05
- Estimating Cash Flows Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.28
- Impact on Cash Flows on a Group of Loans Accounted for as a Pool in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30 if There Is a Confirming Event, and One Loan Is Removed as Expected ..... 2130.36
- Impact on Cash Flows on a Group of Loans Accounted for as a Pool in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30 if There Is a Confirming Event, and One Loan Is Removed From the Pool, and the Investor Decreases Its Estimate of Expected Cash Flows ..... 2130.37
- Implications of FASB ASC 310-20-35-11 With a Restructured or Refinanced Loan Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.29-30
- Income Recognition for Non-Accrual Loans Acquired Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.25-27
- Instruments Accounted for as Debt Securities Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.10
- Loans Held for Sale in Accordance With FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.15
- Loans Reacquired Under Recourse Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.18
- Loans to Officers and Directors .... 7400.06
- Modified Cash Basis Statements ... 8340.11
- Notes ..... 5100.14; 9070.02
- Out-of-Pocket Costs ..... 2130.05
- Pool Accounting Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.32-33
- Scope Limitations ..... 9130.01; 9130.06
- Treatment of Commercial Revolving Loans Under FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.16
- Uncollectible Accounts—See Uncollectible Accounts
- Variable Rate Loans and Changes in Cash Flows and FASB ASC 310-30 ..... 2130.31

**RECORDS**

- Audit Sampling ..... 8220.04

**RECORDS, CLIENT—See Client Records**

- Audit Sampling ..... 8220.04

**REFUNDS**

- Deposits on Leased Equipment .... 3100.03
- Sales of Area Franchises ..... 6940.01
- Unclaimed ..... 6300.03

**REGULATORY AGENCIES**

- Condensed Financial Statements ... 9080.15
- Internal Control Reports for Broker-Dealers ..... 6980.01
- Statutory Reporting Requirements ..... 6950.21-22; 9110.08

**REINSURANCE**

- Insurance Companies ..... 6300.12

**RELATED PARTIES**

- Capitalization of Interest Costs Incurred by Subsidiary ..... 2210.25
- Demand Loans to Shareholders .... 5220.06
- Not-for-Profit Entity's Additional Investment in For-Profit Entity ..... 6400.25
- Timing of Recording Transfers Between Related Entities ..... 6400.29
- Transfers to Entities Under Common Control ..... 6400.29

**RELIABILITY**

- Internal Control ..... 8220.01

**RELiance ON OTHER AUDITORS' REPORTS**

- Audit Procedures Performed by Predecessor Audit Who Has Ceased Operations ..... 8900.06; 9160.14
- Definition of Principal Auditor ..... 9120.01
- Lack of Independence of Other Auditors ..... 9120.06
- Reference to Other Auditors in Accompanying Information Report ..... 9120.07
- Responsibility to Audit Dividend Fund 9120.02
- Special Audit of Sales ..... 9110.03

**REPLACEMENT COST**

- Inventory Purchased From Stockholder ..... 8320.03
- LIFO Inventory ..... 2140.14

**REPORTS, AUDITORS'—See Auditors' Reports****REPRESENTATION LETTERS**

- Effect on Dating and Releasing Auditor's Report ..... 9100.06
- Insurance Claims ..... 8340.09

**RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT**

- Sale of Technology ..... 5240.10
- Ski Slopes ..... 2210.07

**RESERVES**

- Uncollectible Accounts—See Uncollectible Accounts

**RESTATEMENTS**

- Change From GAAP to Comprehensive Basis of Accounting ..... 9030.10
- Change From Indirect Cash Flow Statement in Prior Year ..... 1300.20
- Change From Other Comprehensive Basis to GAAP ..... 9030.10
- Communication Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors ..... 8900.02

**RESTAURANTS**

- One-Cent Sales ..... 5100.07
- Valuation of Dishes ..... 2210.08

**RETAIL STORES**

- Observation of Inventories ..... 8320.05
- Supermarket Leases Space to Liquor Store..... 5100.16

**RETAINED EARNINGS**

- Deficits—See Deficits
- Dividends—See Dividends
- Foreign Currency Translation for Consolidation..... 4200.01
- Liquidating Dividends Written Off ... 4210.01
- Prior Period Adjustments ..... 1300.11
- Restrictive Covenants..... 3500.06
- Stock Dividends, Closely-Held Companies ..... 4150.01
- Stock Warrants Reacquired ..... 4130.03

**RETIREMENT PLANS—See Pensions and Retirement Plans****REVENUE**

- Broadcast Time ..... 5100.02
- Cents Off Coupons ..... 3400.04
- City Owned Hospital..... 6400.12
- Commissions—See Commissions
- Contingent Commissions ..... 6300.01
- Discounts—See Discounts
- Excise Tax on Club Dues ..... 5100.11
- Financing Charges—See Financing
- Franchise Fees—See Franchises
- Interest—See Interest Revenue
- Joint Ventures ..... 2220.03; 2220.05
- Life Insurance Proceeds of Officer . . 5400.04
- Medicare Fees of Physicians ..... 6400.04
- Members' Debt Retirement Assessment..... 5100.10
- Membership Fees ..... 3600.01; 5100.08; 5100.10-11; 6140.02
- Mortgage Placement Fee..... 5100.14
- One-Cent Sales ..... 5100.07
- Operating Leases—See Operating Leases
- Overhead Allocation of Colleges.... 6960.12
- Parts Completed Not Shipped ..... 5100.25
- Prepaid Funeral Plans ..... 5100.04
- Private Label Sales ..... 5100.28
- Real Estate Sales ..... 6600.04
- Recognition From Finance Charges... 6130.02
- Recognition of Franchise Fees ..... 6940.02
- Rent ..... 5100.16
- Rental Payments Rebated Against Purchase Price..... 5100.33
- Reserve for Insurance Claims..... 6300.04
- Sales Price Based on Percentage of Future Revenue ..... 5100.37
- Service Charges ..... 6130.03
- Software Revenue Recognition—See Software Revenue Recognition
- Termination of Patent License ..... 5100.20
- Trade-Ins ..... 5100.01
- Unclaimed Refunds ..... 6300.03

**REVENUE—continued**

- Unearned Revenue Classification ... 3600.01

**REVIEW ENGAGEMENTS**

- Illustrative Inquiries ..... 9150.02
- Supplemental Information..... 9150.08

**REVIEW OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Basic Statements ..... 9150.08
- Communication With Successor Auditor ..... 8900.01
- Departures From Established Principles ..... 9150.10
- Inquiries ..... 9150.02
- Limited Assurance ..... 9150.10
- Marking of Pages ..... 9150.04
- Predecessor Accountant Who Has Ceased Operations..... 8900.08-10
- Prescribed Forms ..... 9150.10
- Supplemental Information..... 9150.08

**REVIEW REPORTS**

- Reference to Report in Financial Statement Notes ..... 9150.16
- Reissuance When Not Independent.. 9150.20
- Statement of Cash Receipts and Disbursements..... 9110.07

**RISK**

- Cash on Deposit in Excess of FDIC-Insured Limits ..... 2110.06
- Credit Risk Concentration..... 2110.06
- Financial Instruments ..... 2110.06
- Inherent Risk ..... 8200.09
- Insurance ..... 1200.06-16; 6300.14-24; 6300.26; 6300.33
- Sampling ..... 8220.03-05

**ROYALTY AGREEMENTS**

- Coal Production Royalties..... 6500.03
- Patent License Termination Fee ... 5100.20

**S****SALARY EXPENSE—See Compensation****SALES**

- Auto Sales Commissions ..... 1200.01
- Bargain—See Bargain Sales
- Classification of Rental Revenue.... 5100.16
- Discounts—See Discounts
- Franchises..... 6940.01
- Not-for-Profit Scientific Entity ..... 6140.01
- One-Cent Sales ..... 5100.07
- Option to Repurchase ..... 6600.03
- Parts Completed Not Shipped ..... 5100.25
- Percentage-of-Sales Rent ..... 9110.03
- Price Based on Future Revenue ... 5100.37
- Private Label Sales ..... 5100.37
- Real Estate ..... 6600.04
- Release Provisions..... 6600.04
- Rental Payments Rebated Against Purchase Price..... 5100.33
- Sale and Leaseback—See Leases
- Special Audit of Sales ..... 9110.03

**SAMPLING**

- Audit—See Audit Sampling
- Nonstatistical—See Nonstatistical Sampling
- Statistical—See Statistical Sampling

**SAS NO. 70 REPORTS**

- Allocations Testing of Investment Earnings  
When Type 2 Report is Available . . . 6935.02
- Audit Procedures When Reports Are Not  
Available . . . . . 6935.01
- Employee Benefit  
Plans . . . . . 6933.01-02; 6935.01-02
- Initial Audit of Plan, Information From Prior  
Years . . . . . 6933.01
- Investment Allocations Testing in Electronic  
Environment . . . . . 6933.02

**SCHOOLS**

- Colleges—See Colleges and Universities

**SCOPE LIMITATIONS**

- Distinction Between Scope  
Limitations . . . . . 9130.06
- Effects on Auditor's Opinion . . . . . 9130.10
- Employee Benefit Plans—See Employee  
Benefit Plans
- Failure to Send Inquiry . . . . . 9130.09
- Inadequate Internal Control . . . . . 9130.07
- Inventories Not  
Observed . . . . . 9080.04; 9130.01-02; 9130.06
- Receivables Not Confirmed . . . . . 9130.06
- Representation Letter Not Furnished . . . . . 9100.06

**SECURITIES**

- Amortization of Premium or Discount on  
Investment Securities With an Early Call  
Date . . . . . 3200.16
- Amortization of Premium or Discount on Short  
Positions in Fixed Income . . . . . 6910.21
- Debt Securities—See Statement of Position  
03-3
- Early Call Date on Investment  
Securities . . . . . 3200.16
- Held in Street Name . . . . . 8310.02

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

- Employee Benefit Plan Filings—See Employee  
Benefit Plans
- Fair Value of Capital Stock . . . . . 4110.03
- Internal Control Reports for  
Broker-Dealers . . . . . 6980.01
- Mandatory Redeemable Preferred  
Stock . . . . . 4110.08
- Prior Period Financial Statements Audited by  
Predecessor Auditor . . . . . 8900.07
- Regulation S-X . . . . . 1900.01
- Shelf Registration Costs . . . . . 4110.10

**SECURITIES DEALERS—See Brokerage Firms****SELLING EXPENSES**

- Coal Production Royalties . . . . . 6500.03
- Franchisors . . . . . 6940.01
- One-Cent Sales . . . . . 5100.07
- Prepaid Funeral Plans . . . . . 5100.04
- Real Estate Broker . . . . . 6600.01
- Warehousing Costs . . . . . 2140.01

**SKI SLOPE**

- Development Costs . . . . . 2210.07

**SOCIAL SECURITY BENEFITS**

- Assets . . . . . 1600.03
- Personal Financial Statements . . . . . 1600.03

**SOFTWARE REVENUE RECOGNITION**

- Accounting for Significant Incremental  
Discounts . . . . . 5100.51
- Additional Product(s) in an Extension/  
License Term . . . . . 5100.72
- Arrangement Containing an Option to Extend a  
Time-Based License Indefinitely . . . . . 5100.73
- Commencement of an Extension/Renewal  
License Term . . . . . 5100.71
- Commencement of an Initial License  
Term . . . . . 5100.70
- Concessions . . . . . 5100.56
- Consideration of Other TPAs on Customer  
Borrowing When Customer Is a  
Reseller . . . . . 5100.66
- Contingent Usage-Based Fees . . . . . 5100.76
- Contract Accounting in Software  
Arrangements, Application of . . . . . 5100.48-49
- Correction of Errors in Software . . . . . 5100.43
- Customer Acceptance . . . . . 5100.67
- Customer Financing With No Software Vendor  
Participation . . . . . 5100.60
- Delivery Terms . . . . . 5100.69
- Discounts on Future Products and the Residual  
Method . . . . . 5100.74
- Effect of Change in License Mix . . . . . 5100.45
- Effect of Prepayments . . . . . 5100.58
- Effect of Prepayments—When Vendor  
Participates in Customer Financing . . . . . 5100.61
- Extended Payment Term Arrangement—  
Subsequent Cash Receipt . . . . . 5100.59
- Extended Payment Terms . . . . . 5100.42
- Fair Value in Multiple-Element Arrangements  
That Include Contingent Usage-Based  
Fees . . . . . 5100.76
- Fair Value of PCS in a Multi-Year Time-Based  
License . . . . . 5100.54
- Fair Value of PCS in a Perpetual  
License . . . . . 5100.52
- Fair Value of PCS in a Short-Term Time-Based  
License . . . . . 5100.53
- Fair Value of PCS in Perpetual and Multi-Year  
Time-Based Licenses . . . . . 5100.68
- Fair Value of PCS Renewals Based on Users  
Deployed . . . . . 5100.75
- Fair Value of PCS With a Consistent Renewal  
Percentage (But Varying Renewal Dollar  
Amounts) . . . . . 5100.55
- Indicators of Incremental Risk and Their Effect  
on the Evaluation of Whether a Fee Is Fixed  
or Determinable . . . . . 5100.62
- Indicators of Vendor Participation in Customer  
Financing That Do Not Result in Incremental  
Risk . . . . . 5100.64
- Licensing Arrangements, Effect  
of . . . . . 5100.70-74
- More-Than-Insignificant Discount, Definition  
of . . . . . 5100.50

**SOFTWARE REVENUE RECOGNITION—**

continued

- Multiple-Element Arrangements ..... 5100.39; 5100.76
- Nonmonetary Exchanges of Software ..... 5100.46-47
- Overcoming Presumption of Concessions in Extended Payment Term Arrangements ..... 5100.57
- Overcoming Presumption That a Fee Is Not Fixed or Determinable When Vendor Participates in Customer Financing. 5100.63
- PCS Renewals Based on Users Deployed. .... 5100.75
- Perpetual License ..... 5100.75-76
- Postcontract Customer Support. .... 5100.44; 5100.75-76
- Prepayments, Effect of ..... 5100.41
- Software Vendor Interest Rate Buy Downs on Customer Financing ..... 5100.65
- Subsequent Event Related to Vendor-Specific Objective Evidence. .... 5100.38
- Vendor-Specific Objective Evidence ..... 5100.38; 5100.44
- Year 2000 Compliant Software. .... 5100.40

**SPECIAL REPORTS**

- Brokers or Dealers in Securities. .... 9150.09
- Cash Basis—See Cash Basis
- Cash Receipts and Disbursements .. 9110.07
- Comments and Recommendations Reports ..... 6950.21
- Comprehensive Basis of Accounting. 1300.10
- Distribution Limitations ..... 9110.13
- Modified Cash Basis ..... 1500.05
- Prescribed Forms ..... 9110.13
- Sales Audit ..... 9110.03
- Statutory Reporting Requirements ..... 6950.22; 9110.08

**STANDARD COSTS**

- Inventory Valuation ..... 2140.09

**STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENTS**

- Bond Issuance for City Owned Hospital. .... 6400.12
- Compliance Reports—See Compliance Reports
- Inventory Observed by State Inspectors ..... 9120.04
- Issuance of Zero Coupon Bonds and Other Deep Discount Debt. .... 6950.18
- Prescribed Forms—See Prescribed Report Forms
- Statutory Reporting Requirements ..... 6950.21-22; 9110.08
- Voluntary Contributions or Taxation Programs ..... 6400.30

**STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS**

- Cash Overdraft Presentation. .... 1300.15
- Cash Value of Officer's Life Insurance 1300.13
- Change From Indirect Presentation in Prior Year ..... 1300.20
- Comparative Statements ..... 1300.03
- Direct Financing Transaction ..... 1300.16; 1300.21

**STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS—continued**

- Direct Method ..... 1300.17
- Direct vs. Indirect Method ..... 1300.20
- Disclaimer of Opinion ..... 9080.04
- Distribution From Investees With Operating Losses ..... 1300.18
- Equipment Finance Note Payments.. 1300.19
- Negative Amortization of Long-Term Debt ..... 1300.22
- Omitted From Financial Statement .... 1300.05; 1300.10; 1300.17; 6910.25
- Operating Leases, Landlord Incentive Allowance ..... 5600.17
- Prior Period Adjustments ..... 1300.11
- Purchase of Inventory ..... 1300.16
- Purchases and Sales/Maturities of Investments ..... 6910.20

**STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION—See Balance Sheet****STATEMENT OF INCOME—See Income Statement****STATEMENT OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY**

- Disclosure of Changes ..... 9160.24

**STATEMENTS ON AUDITING STANDARDS**

- Effective Date ..... 8100.01-02

**STATISTICAL SAMPLING**

- Rental Assets Verification ..... 8330.02

**STATUTORY REPORTING REQUIREMENTS**

- Auditor's Report ..... 6950.22; 9110.08

**STOCK DIVIDENDS AND STOCK SPLITS**

- Closely Held Corporations ..... 4150.01
- Common Stock Dividend Received in Form of Preferred Stock ..... 2120.06
- Dividend Decreases Market Price... 4150.02
- Earnings Per Share ..... 5500.15

**STOCK OPTIONS AND STOCK PURCHASE PLANS**

- Stockholder Agreements .. 2240.02; 3400.02

**STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY**

- Capital Appropriations ..... 5100.10
- Characteristics ..... 4110.08
- Contributed Capital—See Contributed Capital
- Default on Stock Subscription Agreement. .... 4110.11
- Deficit From Purchase of Treasury Stock ..... 2210.18
- Exchange of Common Stock for Preferred. .... 4230.02
- Mandatory Redeemable Preferred Stock ..... 4110.08
- Minority Interest—See Minority Interest
- Subordinated Debt. .... 4130.03; 6130.06

**STOCKHOLDERS/OWNERS**

- Agreements With Corporation ..... 2240.02; 3400.02
- Exchange of Common Stock for Preferred ..... 4230.02

**SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

- Defalcation Discovery . . . . . 9070.03
- Disclosure of . . . . . 1500.07
- Evaluation of . . . . . 1500.07
- Liquidity Restrictions . . . . . 1100.15
- Losses From Natural Disasters . . . . . 9070.05
- Note From Reorganized Debtor . . . . . 9070.02
- Reporting on New York State Medicaid Cost Reports . . . . . 9510.03
- Tax Penalties . . . . . 3100.04
- Unremitted Withholding Taxes . . . . . 9070.01
- Vendor-Specific Evidence for Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.38

**SUBSIDIARIES—See Affiliated Companies****SUBSTANTIAL AUTHORITATIVE SUPPORT**

- Modified Cash Basis Financial Statements . . . . . 1500.05

**SUBSTANTIVE TESTS**

- Audit Sampling . . . . . 8220.01
- Nonstatistical Sampling . . . . . 8220.03
- Risk of Misstatements . . . . . 8220.03
- Sampling Risk . . . . . 8220.03
- Tests of Details . . . . . 8220.01

**SUCCESSOR AUDITOR**

- Communication With Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations . . . . . 8900.03
- Inquiries of Predecessor . . . . . 8900.02-10; 9160.14
- Material Misstatements in Financial Statements Reported on by Predecessor . . . . . 8900.06; 8900.10
- Prior Period Financial Statements Reported on by Predecessor . . . . . 8900.07-10; 9160.26
- Responsibilities . . . . . 8900.03-10; 9160.14
- Significant Procedures Performed by Predecessor . . . . . 8900.05; 9160.14
- Unavailability of Predecessor Auditor's Working Papers . . . . . 8900.04

**SUPERVISION**

- Documentation Requirements . . . . . 8220.04

**SUPPLEMENTAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

- Auditors' Reports . . . . . 9080.14
- Compilation Engagement . . . . . 9150.08
- Reference to Other Auditors in Report . . . . . 9120.07
- Review Engagement . . . . . 9150.08
- Schedule of Confirmation Results . . . . . 8340.16
- Versus Basic Information in Auditor-Submitted Document . . . . . 9160.23
- Written Confirmations, Retention of . . . . . 8340.16

**SYSTEMATIC AND RATIONAL ALLOCATION**

- Expense Recognition Principle . . . . . 2210.15

**T****TAX ALLOCATION**

- Expected Loss on Contract . . . . . 5260.01

**TAX-EXEMPT ENTITIES—See Not-for-Profit Entities****TAXES**

- Capitalized During Construction . . . . . 2210.07
- Cash Basis Financial Statements . . . . . 1500.05
- Contributions to Certain Nonprofit Scholarship Funding Organizations . . . . . 5700.01
- Different Fiscal Year for Financial Reporting . . . . . 9160.21
- Excise Tax on Club Dues . . . . . 5100.11
- Medicaid Taxation Programs . . . . . 6400.30
- Modified Cash Basis . . . . . 1500.05
- Partners' Income Taxes . . . . . 7200.02
- Penalties . . . . . 3100.04
- Proprietorship-Corporation Consolidated Statements . . . . . 1400.02
- Sales Tax on Minimum Lease Payments . . . . . 3200.11
- Unremitted Withholding Taxes . . . . . 9070.01
- Valuation of Capital Stock . . . . . 4230.02

**TELEVISION**

- Broadcast Time . . . . . 5100.02

**TERMINOLOGY**

- Audit Sampling . . . . . 8220.01
- Beneficiary . . . . . 6140.12
- Block Sampling . . . . . 8220.05
- Certification (Cost Report Opinion) . . . . . 9510.03
- Common Collective Trust Fund . . . . . 6931.09
- Continually Offer Interests . . . . . 6910.24
- Control . . . . . 6140.20
- Cost Report Opinion . . . . . 9510.03
- Current Assets . . . . . 2140.13
- Depreciation . . . . . 5210.08
- Donor (Resource Provider) . . . . . 6140.12
- Extraordinary Items . . . . . 5400.04
- Financially Interrelated Entities . . . . . 6140.13; 6400.35
- Finite Insurance . . . . . 1200.07; 6300.15
- Fund-Raising Activities . . . . . 6140.20
- Haphazard Sampling . . . . . 8220.05
- Inherent Risk . . . . . 8200.09
- Institutionally Related Foundations . . . . . 6140.13; 6400.35
- Investment Contracts . . . . . 6931.08
- Joint Operating Agreement . . . . . 6400.33
- Leasehold Improvements . . . . . 5210.09
- Liquidated Damages . . . . . 2210.28
- Master Trust . . . . . 6931.11
- Membership Capital . . . . . 6995.02
- More-Than-Insignificant Discount and Software Revenue Recognition . . . . . 5100.50
- Paid-in capital . . . . . 6995.02
- Prospective Versus Retroactive Insurance . . . . . 1200.11; 6300.19
- Random-Number Sampling . . . . . 8220.05
- Recipient Entity . . . . . 6140.12
- Reunderwriting . . . . . 6300.28
- Reverse Repurchase Agreements . . . . . 6910.22
- Singular Versus Plural . . . . . 9160.25
- Systematic Sampling . . . . . 8220.05

**TESTING**

- Operating Effectiveness . . . . . 8200.05-.06

**TIMBER**

- Depreciation of Golf Course . . . . . 5210.05
- Log Pond Dredging Costs . . . . . 2210.15
- Ski Slope Development . . . . . 2210.07
- Uncertain Timber Commitment . . . . . 3500.01

**TIRE DEALER**

- Observation of Inventory by Auditor . . . 8320.05

**TRADE-INS**

- Sales Discounts . . . . . 5100.01

**TRANSACTIONS**

- Audit Tests . . . . . 8220.01-.02
- Nondiscretionary Assistance Programs . . . . . 6140.12

**TREASURY STOCK**

- Acquisition Costs . . . . . 4110.09; 4120.05
- Impairment of Legal Capital . . . . . 2210.18; 4120.03
- Major Stockholder Bought Out . . . . . 4120.03; 4120.05
- Valuation in Excess of Market Price . . 4120.05

**TRUSTS**

- Application of FASB ASC 958 . . . . . 6140.14-.19; 6400.36-.43
- Assets Transferred to Charitable Trusts . . . . . 6140.12-.13
- Common Collective—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Health Care Entities—See Health Care Entities
- Master—See Employee Benefit Plans
- Note on Implementation of FASB ASC 958 . . . . . 6140.13; 6400.35
- Prepaid Funeral Plans . . . . . 5100.04
- Transfers of Assets to Charitable Trusts . . . . . 6140.12
- VEBA—See Employee Benefit Plans

**TUXEDO RENTALS**

- Depreciation . . . . . 5210.04

**U****UNAUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Compiled—See Compilation of Financial Statements
- Dates on Cover . . . . . 9160.03
- Disclaimers—See Disclaimers of Opinion
- Marking of Pages . . . . . 9150.04
- Nonpublic Entities . . . . . 9150.10
- Prescribed Forms . . . . . 9150.09-.10
- Reviewed—See Review of Financial Statements

**UNCERTAINTIES**

- Co-Owners in Divorce Suit . . . . . 9060.06
- Going Concern . . . . . 9150.08-.09; 9080.02
- Unremitted Withholding Taxes . . . . . 9070.01

**UNCOLLECTIBLE ACCOUNTS**

- Bad Debt Losses of Not-for-Profit Entities . . . . . 6140.09
- Out-of-Pocket Costs . . . . . 2130.05

**UNCOLLECTIBLE ACCOUNTS—continued**

- Requirements for Doubtful Accounts Allowance . . . . . 2130.07
- Subsequent Events . . . . . 9070.02

**UNDERWRITING DEFICITS—See Premium Deficits****UNEARNED REVENUE**

- Classification . . . . . 3600.01
- Franchise Fees . . . . . 6940.01
- Funeral Plans . . . . . 5100.04
- Reserve for Insurance Claims . . . . . 6300.04

**UNEMPLOYMENT INSURANCE**

- Estimated Claims . . . . . 3100.01

**V****VALUATION**

- Appraisal—See Appraisal Value
- Business Combinations—See Business Combinations
- Fair Value—See Fair Value
- Inventories—See Inventories
- Market—See Market Value
- Meat Packers' Inventories . . . . . 2140.06
- Notes Payable Exchanged for Cash . . 5220.07
- Obsolete Inventory . . . . . 2140.02-.03
- Stock Dividends—See Stock Dividends and Stock Splits
- Trade-Ins . . . . . 5100.01
- Treasury Stock Purchased in Excess of Market Price . . . . . 4120.05
- Write-Ups—See Write-Ups

**VARIABLE INTEREST ENTITIES**

- Consolidated Versus Combined Financial Statements . . . . . 1400.29
- Departure From GAAP . . . . . 1400.31
- Income Tax Basis . . . . . 1500.06
- Stand-Alone Financial Statements . . . 1400.30

**VENDING MACHINES**

- Control of Cash Receipts . . . . . 8200.02

**VENTURES—See Joint Ventures****VOLUNTARY EMPLOYEES' BENEFICIARY ASSOCIATION (VEBA)—See Employee Benefit Plans****VOLUNTARY HEALTH AND WELFARE ENTITIES—See Not-for-Profit Entities****W****WAREHOUSES**

- Grain Elevator . . . . . 1100.12

**WAREHOUSES**—continued

- Inventories in Public Warehouse . . . . . 1100.12; 8320.06
- Warehousing Costs in Inventory . . . . . 2140.01

**WARRANTS**

- Reacquired . . . . . 4130.03

**WEIGHTED AVERAGE SHARES**

- Interim Periods . . . . . 5500.03

**WORKING CAPITAL**

- Prior Period Adjustments . . . . . 1300.11
- Restrictive Covenants. . . . . 3500.06

**WORKING PAPERS**

- Documentation Requirements . . . . . 8220.04

**WORKING PAPERS**—continued

- Unavailability From Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations. . . . . 8900.04

**WRITE-OFFS**

- Film Impairment. . . . . 6970.01-02
- Landfill Rights . . . . . 6700.10
- Uncollectible Accounts. . . . . 2130.05

**WRITE-UPS**

- Asset Revaluation . . . . . 2210.18

**Z**

**ZERO COUPON BONDS**

- Accounting Treatment . . . . . 5100.31
- Amortization of Interest Income . . . . . 5100.31
- Issuance by Governmental Entity . . . 6950.18

---

**[The next page is 11,001.]**



**PC****PCAOB STAFF QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS  
AND OTHER IMPLEMENTATION GUIDANCE****TABLE OF CONTENTS***Section*

100	PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers
	.01 Audits of Financial Statements of Non-Issuers Performed Pursuant to the Standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, June 30, 2004 (Questions 1-10)
	.02 Attest Engagements Regarding XBRL Financial Information Furnished Under XBRL Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System, May 25, 2005 (Questions 1-8)
	.03 Adjustments to Prior-Period Financial Statements Adjusted by a Predecessor Auditor, June 9, 2006 (Questions 1-11)
	.04 Auditing the Fair Value of Share Options Granted to Employees, October 17, 2006 (Questions 1-22)
	.05 Ethics and Independence Rules Concerning Independence, Tax Services, and Contingent Fees, April 3, 2007 (Questions 1-6)
	.06 Registration of Broker-Dealer Auditors, February 19, 2009 (Questions 1-10)
200	[Reserved]
300	Staff Views
	.01 An Audit of Internal Control That Is Integrated With an Audit of Financial Statements: Guidance for Auditors of Smaller Public Companies, January 23, 2009
400	Staff Audit Practice Alerts
	.01 Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 1, Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants, July 28, 2006
	.02 Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 2, Matters Related to Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments and the Use of Specialists, December 10, 2007
	.03 Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 3, Audit Considerations in the Current Economic Environment, December 5, 2008
	.04 Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 4, Auditor Considerations Regarding Fair Value Measurements, Disclosures, and Other-Than-Temporary Impairments, April 21, 2009

---

**[The next page is 11,011.]**

*PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers and Other Implementation Guidance* Copyright © 2004-2007 by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB).



## Section 100

### ***PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers***

#### **.01 Staff Questions and Answers: Audits of Financial Statements of Non-Issuers Performed Pursuant to the Standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, June 30, 2004**

**Summary:** Staff questions and answers set forth the staff's opinions on issues related to the implementation of the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("PCAOB" or "Board"). The staff publishes questions and answers to help auditors implement, and the Board's staff administer, the Board's standards. The statements contained in the staff questions and answers are not rules of the Board, nor have they been approved by the Board.

The following staff questions and answers related to PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 1, References in Auditors' Reports to the Standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("Auditing Standard No. 1"), were prepared by the Office of the Chief Auditor. Questions should be directed to C. Gregory Scates, Associate Chief Auditor (202/207-9114; scatesg@pcaobus.org), or Thomas Ray, Deputy Chief Auditor (202/207-9112; rayt@pcaobus.org).

\* \* \*

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the "Act") directs the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board to establish auditing and related attestation, quality control, ethics and independence standards, to be used by registered public accounting firms in the preparation and issuance of audit reports of issuers.<sup>1</sup> The Act and PCAOB Rules require audits of issuers to be conducted in accordance with PCAOB standards. When issuing an audit report on the financial statements of an issuer, PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 1 requires registered public accounting firms to include a reference to "the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)." In contexts other than an audit of the financial statements of an issuer, however, auditors, whether registered or not, may be legally required to, or may agree voluntarily to, perform an engagement in accordance with PCAOB standards or some portion of those standards.<sup>2</sup> Auditors and other interested persons have raised questions about the implications of Auditing Standard No. 1, as well as the Act and other PCAOB rules, for such engagements. The following staff questions and answers seek to answer some of those questions.

**Q1.** Must a public accounting firm be registered with the PCAOB to perform an audit of a non-issuer according to PCAOB standards?

---

<sup>1</sup> Section 2(a) of the Act defines "issuer" as "an issuer (as defined in Section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c)), the securities of which are registered under Section 12 of the Act (15 U.S.C. 781), or that is required to file reports under Section 15(d)(15 U.S.C. 780(d)), or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), and that it has not withdrawn."

<sup>2</sup> See, e.g., Securities Exchange Act of 1934 Rule 17i-6(d), 17 CFR 240.17i-6(d) (requiring supervised investment bank holding companies to obtain an audit and review "in accordance with the rules promulgated by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board").

## 11,012 PCAOB Staff Qs & As and Other Implementation Guidance

**A1.** No. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires only that those public accounting firms that prepare or issue, or participate in the preparation or issuance of, audit reports on the financial statements of issuers be registered.<sup>3</sup>

**Q2.** The PCAOB's Auditing Standard No. 1 requires the auditor to include a reference to "the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)" in audit reports on the financial statements of issuers. May an auditor refer to "the auditing standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)" rather than to "the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)" in an audit report on an audit of the financial statements of a non-issuer that was performed in accordance with the Board's auditing standards?

**A2.** Yes. In an audit of the financial statements of a non-issuer, an auditor may wish to be clear that he or she adhered to only the auditing standards of the PCAOB; accordingly, the auditor may include the word "auditing" in the reference to the standards of the PCAOB. Registered public accounting firms, however, are not permitted to limit their reference to the "auditing standards" of the PCAOB in their audit reports on the financial statements of issuers.

**Q3.** What standards are included in a reference to "the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)"?

**A3.** A reference to "the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)" includes the standards of the Board that are applicable in the circumstances of the engagement. For example, in an audit of financial statements that does not involve the use of a specialist, the auditor would not be expected to follow the Board's interim auditing standard, Statement of Auditing Standards No. 73, "Using the Work of a Specialist." Similarly, in an audit of an entity that has immaterial inventory balances, the auditor would not be expected to follow the Board's interim auditing standard, AU Section 331, "Inventories," of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 1, "Codification of Auditing Standards and Procedures." On the other hand, the Board's interim auditing standard, Statement on Auditing Standards No. 99, "Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit," would be applicable in all audits of financial statements conducted pursuant to the Board's standards. As another example, quality control standards generally apply to a firm's system of quality control over its accounting and auditing practice and not to individual audit engagements. Thus, a breakdown in the system of quality control does not necessarily mean that a particular audit was not conducted in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. However, such a breakdown might result in a deficient audit if it caused or contributed to an audit deficiency. In addition, an auditor who states that he or she has performed the audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB must be in compliance with the applicable interim independence standards of the Board. These are examples only, and not an exhaustive list of standards that may be applicable to an engagement. While not required by PCAOB rules, auditors of issuers and other entities subject to the SEC's jurisdiction are reminded that

---

<sup>3</sup> The SEC has ordered that broker-dealers that are not issuers need not file with the Commission, and send to their customers, financial statements certified by a registered public accounting firm until January 1, 2005, unless rules are in place regarding Board registration of auditors of such broker-dealers that set an earlier date. See Notice, Broker-Dealer Financial Statement Requirements under Section 17 of the Exchange Act, Rel. No. 34-48281 (August 4, 2003).

they must also comply with applicable Commission requirements, including the Commission's auditor independence requirements.

**Q4.** By referring to “the auditing standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)” in an audit report on the financial statements of a non-issuer, does the auditor represent that he or she has adhered to the Board's interim independence standards?

**A4.** No. Auditors of the financial statements of non-issuers, including nonprofit organizations, government agencies, municipalities and other governments, should look to relevant state and federal laws and regulations relating to auditor independence. Auditors of nonpublic companies should bear in mind, however, that any company that becomes an issuer, as defined in Section 2(a)(7) of the Act, must file with the SEC an audit report prepared and issued by an independent registered public accounting firm, and therefore it may behoove an auditor of a nonpublic company that intends to become an issuer to comply with SEC and PCAOB independence requirements.

**Q5.** By referring to “the auditing standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)” or to “the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)” in an audit report on the financial statements of a non-issuer, does the auditor represent that he or she has complied with the Commission's auditor independence requirements?

**A5.** No. A Note to the PCAOB's rule on interim independence standards, PCAOB Rule 3600T, reminds auditors of issuers and other entities subject to the SEC's jurisdiction of their separate obligations under the SEC's rule on auditor independence. The PCAOB's rule on interim independence standards does not, however, incorporate the SEC's auditor independence requirements.

**Q6.** What are the PCAOB's independence requirements and to whom do they apply?

**A6.** The PCAOB adopted interim independence standards when it adopted PCAOB Rule 3600T, which is a temporary rule in effect until the Board adopts permanent independence standards. Rule 3600T requires that, when a registered public accounting firm conducts an audit of the financial statements of an issuer, the firm comply with—

- Rule 101 of the AICPA's Code of Professional Conduct, and interpretations and rulings thereunder, as in existence on April 16, 2003; and
- Standards Nos. 1, 2 and 3, and Interpretations 99-1, 00-1, and 002, of the Independence Standards Board.

Registered public accounting firms must also comply with SEC requirements, including its Rule 2-01 of Regulation S-X, relating to auditor independence, when they conduct audits required by the federal securities laws, including audits of financial statements of issuers. The Board did not adopt the SEC's Rule 2-01 because that rule already governs auditor independence from issuers. As a Note to Rule 3600T makes clear, however, in an audit of the financial statements of an issuer, to the extent that a provision of the SEC's rule is more restrictive—or less restrictive—than the Board's interim independence standards, a registered public accounting firm must comply with the more restrictive rule.

**Q7.** Does a reference to “the auditing standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)” or to “the standards of the Public

## **11,014 PCAOB Staff Qs & As and Other Implementation Guidance**

Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)” in an auditor’s report on the financial statements of a non-issuer imply that the non-issuer is subject to, or otherwise complied with, some or all of the provisions of the Act and other securities laws or the Commission’s rules and regulations thereunder?

**A7.** No. An auditor’s reference to PCAOB standards in an audit report on the financial statements of a non-issuer does not subject the auditor or the non-issuer to any laws that the auditor or the non-issuer would not otherwise have been required to comply with. Unless the non-issuer is involved in an activity that subjects it to the Act or other securities laws, such as the laws governing broker-dealers, compliance by the auditor or the non-issuer with the Act or other securities laws would be strictly voluntary.

**Q8.** Does inclusion of a reference to the Board’s standards in an auditor’s report on the financial statements of a non-issuer cause the audit to become eligible for review as a part of a Board inspection?

**A8.** No. An audit of the financial statements of a non-issuer does not become subject to PCAOB inspection solely because the auditor performed and reported on the audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Auditors of the financial statements of non-issuers may, nevertheless, be subject to various forms of state and federal oversight, such as review by federal banking regulators, the U.S. General Accounting Office, or a state board of accountancy.

**Q9.** If a non-issuer elects to have its financial statements audited pursuant to the Board’s standards, must it also have its internal control over financial reporting audited pursuant to the Board’s Auditing Standard No. 2, “An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting Conducted in Conjunction with an Audit of Financial Statement”?

**A9.** No. Only certain issuers that are subject to Section 404 of the Act are required to include within the scope of the audit an audit of internal control over financial reporting. Although the Board’s standards provide for an integrated audit of financial statements and internal control for those issuers that are subject to Section 404 of the Act, the Board’s standards also permit auditors to conduct a financial statement-only audit under circumstances, for example, when Section 404 of the Act is not applicable.

**Q10.** If an auditor refers to either “the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)” or “the auditing standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States)” in an audit report on an audit of the financial statements of a non-issuer, is the auditor also required to subject the audit to a “concurring partner review” as required by the Board’s adoption of certain of the requirements of the AICPA’s former Securities and Exchange Commission Practice Section (“SECPS”)?

**A10.** No. The Board may at some time adopt a standard requiring the performance of a second partner review. At this time, however, the PCAOB interim quality control standards only require registered firms that were members of the SECPS as of April 16, 2003, to have a concurring partner review on audits of issuers. (See PCAOB Release No. 2003-006.)

**.02 Staff Questions and Answers: Attest Engagements Regarding XBRL Financial Information Furnished Under the XBRL Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System, May 25, 2005**

**Summary:** Staff questions and answers set forth the staff's opinions on issues related to the implementation of the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("PCAOB" or "Board"). The staff publishes questions and answers to help auditors implement, and the Board's staff administer, the Board's standards. The statements contained in the staff questions and answers are not rules of the Board, nor have they been approved by the Board.

The following staff questions and answers related to attest engagements regarding XBRL financial information furnished under the XBRL Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System were prepared by the Office of the Chief Auditor. Additional questions should be directed to Keith Wilson, Associate Chief Auditor (202/207-9134; wilsonk@pcaobus.org).

\* \* \*

**Q1. What is XBRL?**

**A1.** XBRL (eXtensible Business Reporting Language) is an open standard for electronic communication of business and financial data. The XBRL standard provides a format for tagging that data so users can extract, exchange, analyze, and present the information.

XBRL information is commonly distributed in the form of XBRL instance documents. These documents are electronic files consisting of financial data along with their corresponding XBRL tags.

To facilitate electronic communication of financial information among many parties, XBRL instance documents must be created using a common set of standards that all parties can understand and use. In XBRL, this is accomplished through taxonomies and specifications. An XBRL taxonomy (or tag list) provides a data structure and vocabulary for interpreting financial information, such as all of the items comprising "net income." An entity may extend the taxonomy by creating additional custom tags for its own use. XBRL specifications have been developed by the XBRL Consortium for creating and extending taxonomies. (See the XBRL website, [www.xbrl.org](http://www.xbrl.org), for more information about XBRL.)

**Q2. What is the XBRL Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System?**

**A2.** The Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") has adopted rule amendments<sup>1</sup> allowing issuers to voluntarily submit supplemental tagged financial information using the XBRL<sup>2</sup> format as exhibits to specified EDGAR filings under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and the Investment Company Act of 1940. The amendments include certain requirements regarding the information in those exhibits. This SEC initiative is referred to in the SEC Release as the "XBRL Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System" (hereinafter referred to as the "SEC Voluntary Program").

---

<sup>1</sup> *Final Rule: XBRL Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System*, Securities and Exchange Commission Release Nos. 33-8529, 34-51129, 35-27944, 39-2432, IC-26747; File Number S7-35-04 (February 3, 2005) [70 FR 6556]

<sup>2</sup> The SEC's website, [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov), has more information about the SEC's XBRL initiative.

The XBRL documents furnished under the SEC Voluntary Program are referred to in the SEC Regulations<sup>3</sup> as “XBRL-Related Documents.” The XBRL-Related Documents must contain only certain specified content (“mandatory content” and “optional content”) that appears in a specified format (“voluntary program format”), as set forth in the SEC Regulations.

According to the EDGAR Filer Manual,<sup>4</sup> issuers who file under the SEC Voluntary Program must create their XBRL-Related Documents using one of the US Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (“US GAAP”) taxonomies, based on XBRL Specification Version 2.1. Issuers also may use one of the Stand Alone Add-on taxonomies provided in the US Financial Reporting Taxonomy Framework for certain content. Any company extensions of those taxonomies must conform to XBRL Specification Version 2.1.

**Q3.** May an auditor<sup>5</sup> examine and report on whether the XBRL-Related Documents accurately reflect the information in the corresponding part of the official EDGAR filings? If so, what are the primary engagement standards that apply to those engagements?

**A3.** Yes, an auditor may be engaged to examine and report on whether the XBRL-Related Documents accurately reflect the information in the corresponding part of the official EDGAR filings. That engagement is an examination under AT section 101 of the PCAOB’s interim attestation standards, *Attest Engagements* (“AT section 101”), as amended.

**Q4.** The second general attestation standard in paragraph .21 of AT section 101 indicates that the engagement shall be performed by an auditor “having adequate knowledge of the subject matter.” How does this general standard apply to examination engagements regarding XBRL-Related Documents?

**A4.** In examination engagements regarding XBRL-Related Documents, the auditor must have sufficient knowledge of the applicable SEC Regulations, EDGAR Filer Manual requirements, and XBRL taxonomies and specifications to perform the examination. The auditor must also have sufficient knowledge of the company’s financial statements and underlying financial records to understand how the financial data in the XBRL-Related Documents relates to the corresponding information in the official EDGAR filing.

**Q5.** The third general attestation standard in paragraph .23 of AT section 101 states that the auditor “shall perform the engagement only if he or she has reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to users.” How does this general standard apply to examination engagements regarding XBRL-Related Documents?

**A5.** Paragraphs .24 through .34 of AT section 101 discuss the attributes of suitable and available criteria. The US GAAP Version 2.1 based taxonomies, Stand Alone Add-on taxonomies, and XBRL Specification Version 2.1 would be considered suitable and available criteria because (a) they were developed

---

<sup>3</sup> §232.401 of Regulation S-T, 17 C.F.R. 232.401; and SEC Final Rule Release No. 33-8529 (February 3, 2005)

<sup>4</sup> EDGARLink Filer Manual, Appendix L. (The EDGARLink Filer Manual comprises Volume 1 of the EDGAR Filer Manual.)

<sup>5</sup> These PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers assume that the auditor who is engaged to perform this examination has also audited, in accordance with PCAOB standards, the financial statements for at least the latest period to which the XBRL financial information relates and the financial statements for the other periods covered by the XBRL financial information have been audited by the auditor or a predecessor auditor. Therefore, the word “auditor” is used instead of “practitioner.”

by a panel of widely recognized experts that follow due process procedures, including exposure for public comment, and (b) they are available free of charge through the XBRL Consortium.

Company extensions of those taxonomies normally do not go through the same development processes as described in the preceding paragraph. Accordingly, the auditor should evaluate whether company extensions represent suitable and available criteria as described in AT section 101.

**Q6.** May the auditor assist a company with the creation or tagging of its XBRL-Related Documents and still perform an examination regarding those documents?

**A6.** The fourth general attestation standard requires the auditor to be independent in order to perform an attest engagement. When evaluating independence, the auditor should apply the independence principles for financial statement audits to the context of the examination engagement. For example, although the auditor may provide technical advice on matters related to the application of the XBRL taxonomy and specifications, the auditor's independence would be impaired (and thus the auditor would be unable to examine a company's XBRL-Related Documents) if he or she prepared those documents or made decisions about the documents for management.

**Q7.** What are the objectives of the examination procedures regarding the XBRL-Related Documents, and what procedures should be performed to achieve those objectives?

**A7.** In performing the examination as set forth in AT section 101, the auditor should apply procedures as necessary to obtain sufficient evidence to provide a reasonable basis for an opinion on whether the XBRL-Related Documents accurately reflect the information in the corresponding part of the official EDGAR filings. Thus, the objectives of the examination procedures are to determine whether—

- a. the XBRL data agrees with the official EDGAR filings, and
- b. the XBRL-Related Documents are in conformity with the applicable XBRL taxonomies and specifications, as well as with the SEC requirements for format and content.

The following are examination procedures that the auditor should consider to achieve the engagement objectives:

- Compare the rendered<sup>6</sup> XBRL-Related Documents to the information in the official EDGAR filing, and agree the corresponding content.
- Determine whether the content in the XBRL-Related Documents conforms to the SEC voluntary program content requirements.
- Determine whether the XBRL-Related Documents (and the related taxonomy documents, as necessary) conform to the SEC voluntary program format requirements. To accomplish this, the auditor should consider the following procedures:
  - Test whether the data elements (i.e., text and line item names and associated values, dates and other labels) in the XBRL-Related Documents reflect the same information as the corresponding official EDGAR filing (i.e., the HTML or ASCII version).

---

<sup>6</sup> A rendered XBRL-Related Document has been converted from machine readable form into human readable form using a software tool.

## 11,018 PCAOB Staff Qs & As and Other Implementation Guidance

- Verify that the data elements in the corresponding official EDGAR filing have not been changed, deleted, or summarized in the XBRL-Related Documents.
  - Evaluate whether the XBRL-Related Documents comply with the appropriate XBRL specification and EDGAR-supported XBRL taxonomies.
  - Evaluate whether any company extensions of the taxonomy are consistent with the SEC voluntary program format requirements, including conformity with XBRL specifications.
  - Test whether data elements in the XBRL-Related Documents are matched with appropriate tags in accordance with the applicable taxonomy.
- Read the EDGAR filing to determine whether it contains the disclosures regarding XBRL-Related Documents required by SEC Regulations.<sup>7</sup>
  - Obtain a representation letter from management that includes a statement that the XBRL-Related Documents comply with SEC requirements.

**Q8.** What are the reporting requirements for examination engagements regarding XBRL-Related Documents?

**A8.** The report for this engagement should comply with the requirements of AT section 101, as amended.

If the underlying information in the XBRL-Related Documents has been audited, the examination report should refer to the audit report. If the underlying information was reviewed, and the review report was filed with the SEC, the examination report should refer to the review report. If the underlying information was reviewed, but the review report was not filed with the SEC, the examination report need not refer to the review report but should indicate that the underlying information has not been audited and no opinion is expressed on it. The auditor should disclaim an opinion on any underlying information in the XBRL-Related Documents that is not covered by an audit report or review report.

The auditor may be engaged to report on management's assertion or on the subject matter of the assertion. The following are examples of examination reports for these engagements.

---

<sup>7</sup> §232.401(d) of Regulation S-T, 17 C.F.R. 232.401(d).

## Report on the Subject Matter of the Assertion

**Report of Independent Registered Public  
Accounting Firm on XBRL-Related Documents**

We have examined the accompanying XBRL-Related Documents of Sample Volunteer Company, presented as Exhibit *[number]* to the Company's *[Identify EDGAR filing, such as Form 10-K]*, which reflect the data presented in the *[Identify corresponding information in the official EDGAR filing]* as of *[Month and Day]*, *[Year]* and *[Year]* and for each of the years in the *[number]*-year period ended *[date]*. Sample Volunteer Company's management is responsible for the XBRL-Related Documents. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the financial statements of Sample Volunteer Company as of *[Month and Day]*, *[Year]* and *[Year]* and for each of the years in the *[number]*-year period ended *[date]*, and in our report dated *[date]*, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.<sup>8</sup> In addition, we have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the effectiveness of Sample Volunteer Company's internal control over financial reporting as of *[Month and Day]*, *[Year]*, based on *[Identify control criteria]*, and our report dated *[date]*, expressed *[Include nature of opinion]*.<sup>9, 10, 11, 12</sup>

Our examination was conducted in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the XBRL-Related Documents. Our examination also included evaluating the XBRL-Related Documents for conformity with the applicable XBRL taxonomies and specifications and the content and format requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

---

<sup>8</sup> If the auditor's opinion on the related financial statements is other than unqualified, this report should disclose that fact along with the reason for the modified report.

<sup>9</sup> This sentence is necessary if (a) the XBRL-Related Documents include information about the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, and (b) that information was covered by an audit report.

<sup>10</sup> If the financial statements have been reviewed and the review report was filed with the SEC, this paragraph should read: "We have also reviewed, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the financial statements of Sample Volunteer Company as of *[date]*, and for the three months then ended, the objective of which was the expression of limited assurance on such financial statements, and issued our report thereon dated *[date]*, *[Describe any modifications of such report]*. A review of financial statements is substantially less in scope than an audit conducted in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion."

<sup>11</sup> If the financial statements have been reviewed but the review report was not filed with the SEC, this paragraph should read: "We did not audit the financial statements of Sample Volunteer Company (or examine *[Identify any other underlying information]*), the objective of which would have been the expression of an opinion on them. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on them."

<sup>12</sup> If the XBRL-Related Documents contain both (a) financial statements that are covered by an audit report or review report filed with the SEC and (b) other information that is not covered by an audit or review report, this paragraph should include a statement such as the following: "We were not engaged to and did not conduct an audit (or review) of *[Identify information]*, the objective of which would have been the expression of an opinion (or limited assurance) on such *[Identify information]*. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other assurance on *[it]* *[them]*."

## 11,020 PCAOB Staff Qs & As and Other Implementation Guidance

In our opinion, the XBRL-Related Documents of Sample Volunteer Company referred to above accurately reflect, in all material respects, the data presented in the *[Identify corresponding information in the official EDGAR filing]* in conformity with *[Identify the criteria—for example, the taxonomy, such as “US GAAP—Commercial and Industrial Taxonomy,” and where applicable, the Stand Alone Add-on Taxonomy such as “US Financial Reporting—Management Report Taxonomy,” and the specifications, such as “XBRL Specifications (Version 2.1)”]*.

*[Signature]*

*[City and State or Country]*

*[Date]*

Report on Management's Assertion<sup>13</sup>**Report of Independent Registered Public  
Accounting Firm on XBRL-Related Documents**

We have examined management's assertion that *[Identify the assertion—for example, the accompanying XBRL-Related Documents, presented as Exhibit [number] to Sample Volunteer Company's [Identify EDGAR filing, such as Form 10-K] accurately reflect the data presented in the [Identify corresponding information in the official EDGAR filing] as of [Month and Day], [Year] and [Year] and for each of the years in the [number]-year period ended [date], in conformity with [Identify the criteria—for example, the taxonomy, such as "US GAAP—Commercial and Industrial Taxonomy," and where applicable, the Stand Alone Add-on Taxonomy such as "US Financial Reporting—Management Report Taxonomy," and the specifications, such as "XBRL Specifications (Version 2.1)"]*. Sample Volunteer Company's management is responsible for the assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the assertion based on our examination.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the financial statements of Sample Volunteer Company as of *[Month and Day], [Year] and [Year]* and for each of the years in the *[number]-year period ended [date]*, and in our report dated *[date]*, we expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements. In addition, we have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the effectiveness of Sample Volunteer Company's internal control over financial reporting as of *[Month and Day], [Year]*, based on *[Identify control criteria]*, and our report dated *[date]*, expressed *[Include nature of opinion]*.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the XBRL-Related Documents. Our examination also included evaluating the XBRL-Related Documents for conformity with the applicable XBRL taxonomies and specifications and the content and format requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, management's assertion referred to above is fairly stated, in all material respects, in conformity with *[Identify the criteria—for example, the taxonomy, such as "US GAAP—Commercial and Industrial Taxonomy," and where applicable, the Stand Alone Add-on Taxonomy such as "US Financial Reporting—Management Report Taxonomy," and the specifications, such as "XBRL Specifications (Version 2.1)"]*.

*[Signature]*

*[City and State or Country]*

*[Date]*

---

<sup>13</sup> See the footnotes to the preceding report example.

**.03 Staff Questions and Answers: Adjustments to Prior-Period Financial Statements Audited by a Predecessor Auditor, June 9, 2006**

**Summary:** Staff questions and answers set forth the staff's opinions on issues related to the implementation of the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("PCAOB" or "Board"). The staff publishes questions and answers to help auditors implement, and the Board's staff administer, the Board's standards. The statements contained in the staff questions and answers are not rules of the Board, nor have they been approved by the Board.

The following staff questions and answers related to adjustments to prior-period financial statements audited by a predecessor auditor were prepared by the Office of the Chief Auditor. Additional questions should be directed to Greg Scates, Associate Chief Auditor (202/207-9114; scatesg@pcaobus.org) or Sam Guzman, Assistant Chief Auditor (202/207-9117; guzmans@pcaobus.org).

\* \* \*

## **General**

**Q1.** Circumstances arise that require a company to make adjustments to prior-period financial statements. Such circumstances include, for example, the reporting of discontinued operations, and the retrospective application of a change in accounting principle or the correction of an error in prior-period financial statements pursuant to Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 154, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections* ("FASB Statement 154").<sup>1</sup>

If the prior-period financial statements that require adjustments were audited by a predecessor auditor, which auditor, the predecessor or the successor, may audit the adjustments to prior-period financial statements?<sup>2</sup>

**A1.** Either the successor auditor or the predecessor auditor may audit the adjustments made to prior-period financial statements so long as the auditor is independent and registered with the PCAOB. Issuers sometimes select the predecessor auditor to audit the adjustments because that auditor has performed the audit of the prior-period financial statements and has knowledge of the transactions that occurred during that period. In addition, the use of the predecessor auditor sometimes can be more cost-effective for performing this work. However, the successor auditor also may audit the adjustments.

## **Predecessor Auditor Audits the Adjustments to Prior-Period Financial Statements**

**Q2.** If the predecessor auditor audits the adjustments to the prior-period financial statements, how should the predecessor auditor date his or her report on the reissued financial statements?

---

<sup>1</sup> Pursuant to Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 154, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections* ("FASB Statement 154"), the retrospective application of a change in accounting principle also is appropriate when there are no transition requirements specific to a particular accounting pronouncement.

<sup>2</sup> The term "adjustments to prior-period financial statements" should be understood for purposes of this set of questions and answers to include, among other things, the reporting of discontinued operations, as well as, restatements to correct errors and retrospective applications of changes in accounting principles, as described in FASB Statement 154.

**A2.** The predecessor auditor should dual-date his or her reissued report in connection with the audit of the adjustments made to the prior-period financial statements. Paragraph .73 of AU section (“sec.”) 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, states that, “A predecessor auditor’s knowledge of the current affairs of his or her former client is obviously limited in the absence of a continuing relationship. Consequently, when reissuing the report on prior-period financial statements, a predecessor auditor should use the date of his or her previous report to avoid any implication that he or she has examined any records, transactions, or events after that date. If the predecessor auditor revises the report or if the financial statements are restated, he or she should dual-date the report.”

**Q3.** If the predecessor auditor audits the adjustments made to the prior-period financial statements, what is the successor auditor’s responsibility with regard to those adjustments?

**A3.** If the predecessor auditor audits the adjustments made to the prior-period financial statements, he or she is responsible for the audit conclusions reached with respect to those adjustments. However, because corrections of errors and the retrospective application of a change in accounting often have the effect of changing the periods in which transactions and events are recognized in the financial statements, the successor auditor should obtain an understanding of the adjustments made to the prior-period financial statements and their effects, if any, on the current-period financial statements.<sup>3</sup>

In addition, the successor auditor should evaluate the consistency of the application of accounting principles from period to period. Paragraph .24 of AU sec. 420, *Consistency of Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, states:

When the independent auditor has not audited the financial statements of a company for the preceding year, he should adopt procedures that are practicable and reasonable in the circumstances to assure himself that the accounting principles employed are consistent between the current and the preceding year.

## Successor Auditor Audits the Adjustments to Prior-Period Financial Statements

**Q4.** What factors are relevant to a successor auditor’s determination as to whether he or she is able to audit only the adjustments to prior-period financial statements or whether a reaudit of those financial statements is necessary?<sup>4</sup>

**A4.** To audit only the adjustments to prior-period financial statements that were audited by a predecessor auditor,<sup>5</sup> a successor auditor must be able to form an opinion that the adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied.<sup>6</sup> In determining whether he or she is able to form such an

---

<sup>3</sup> See the requirement for the auditor to plan and perform his or her work with due professional care in paragraph .02 of AU section (“AU sec.”) 230, *Due Professional Care in the Performance of Work*.

<sup>4</sup> This staff question and answer assumes that the predecessor auditor reissues his or her report on the prior-period financial statements before the effects of the adjustments.

<sup>5</sup> This series of staff questions and answers assumes that the predecessor auditor has not ceased operations as the term “ceased operations” has been defined in footnote 2 of AU sec. 9508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 508*. In cases in which the predecessor auditor has ceased operations, the successor auditor should refer to AU sec. 9508.60–.75.

<sup>6</sup> See paragraph .74 of AU sec. 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*.

opinion without performing a reaudit of the prior-period financial statements, the successor auditor should consider:

- *The extent of the adjustments.* The less extensive and pervasive the adjustments to prior-period financial statements are, the more likely it is that a successor auditor can form an opinion that the adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied without performing a reaudit of those financial statements. More extensive and pervasive adjustments make it more likely that a reaudit is necessary.
- *The reason for the adjustments.* A successor auditor is ordinarily more likely to be able to form an opinion that adjustments to prior-period financial statements are appropriate and have been properly applied when those adjustments are due to the retrospective application of an accounting principle rather than when the adjustments are necessary to correct an error.<sup>7</sup> In the latter situation, the auditor should consider the risk that there may be other undetected misstatements in the prior-period financial statements. In particular, if the adjustments correct an intentional misstatement,<sup>8</sup> it is more likely that a reaudit is necessary.
- *Cooperation of predecessor auditor.* A successor auditor is more likely to be able to form an opinion that adjustments to prior-period financial statements are appropriate and have been properly applied if he or she has the cooperation of the predecessor auditor. For example, a successor auditor may determine that he or she is able to audit adjustments to prior-period financial statements if he or she has access to the audit documentation relating to the prior periods and if the predecessor auditor is responsive to questions relating to those periods.

After a successor auditor has determined that he or she is likely to be able to form an opinion that adjustments to prior-period financial statements are appropriate and have been properly applied, the auditor might obtain evidence indicating, or otherwise might determine, that the prior-period financial statements are materially misstated in other respects. In this circumstance, the successor auditor should reevaluate whether auditing only the adjustments is appropriate or whether a reaudit of the prior-period financial statements is necessary.<sup>9</sup>

**Q5.** If the successor auditor audits adjustments to the prior-period financial statements audited by a predecessor auditor, how should the successor auditor report on the results of the audit of those adjustments?

**A5.** AU sec. 508.74 describes how a successor auditor should report when he or she audits adjustments and the predecessor auditor's report is not presented. The successor auditor may use a similar form of reporting if he or she has audited the adjustments made to prior-period financial statements

---

<sup>7</sup> FASB Statement 154 defines an error in previously issued financial statements as an error in recognition, measurement, presentation, or disclosure in financial statements resulting from mathematical mistakes, mistakes in the application of GAAP, or oversight or misuse of facts that existed at the time the financial statements were prepared. Errors, also referred to as misstatements, include those that are intentional or unintentional.

<sup>8</sup> See paragraph .05 of AU sec. 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

<sup>9</sup> In addition, the successor auditor has responsibilities under paragraphs .21–.22 of AU sec. 315, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, when the successor auditor becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that the prior-period financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor may require revision.

in connection with his or her audit of a subsequent period and if the predecessor auditor also reissues his or her report on the prior-period financial statements. It also is appropriate for the successor auditor to emphasize in the report that he or she was not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the prior-period financial statements other than with respect to the adjustments.

The following are examples of a paragraph the successor auditor may include in his or her report on the audit of the financial statements of a subsequent period:

***Example for retrospective application of a change in accounting***

We also have audited the adjustments to the 20X4 financial statements to retrospectively apply the change in accounting [*describe accounting change*], as described in Note X. In our opinion, such adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied. We were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the 20X4 financial statements of the Company other than with respect to the adjustments and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on the 20X4 financial statements taken as a whole.

***Example for correction of an error***

We also have audited the adjustments described in Note X that were applied to restate the 20X4 financial statements to correct an error. In our opinion, such adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied. We were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the 20X4 financial statements of the Company other than with respect to the adjustments and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on the 20X4 financial statements taken as a whole.

**Q6.** When a successor auditor audits and reports on adjustments made to prior-period financial statements due to the correction of an error, may the predecessor auditor reissue his or her report on the prior-period financial statements?

**A6.** Yes. A predecessor auditor may reissue his or her report on prior-period financial statements when a successor auditor has been engaged to audit and report on adjustments made to those prior-period financial statements, provided that the predecessor auditor has determined that the report on those financial statements is still appropriate, other than with respect to the error correction.<sup>10</sup> When determining whether the report is still appropriate, the predecessor auditor may consider factors such as:

- The nature and extent of the adjustments pertaining to the error correction,
- Whether management has withdrawn the prior-period financial statements, and
- Whether the errors were intentional.

**Q7.** If the predecessor auditor does not reissue his or her report on the prior-period financial statements, may the successor auditor reaudit and report on those financial statements as adjusted?

**A7.** Yes. A successor auditor or another independent auditor may reaudit and report on prior-period financial statements as adjusted.

---

<sup>10</sup> See AU sec. 508.71. The predecessor auditor also may decide to withdraw his or her report on those financial statements. See AU sec. 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*.

**Q8.** In circumstances in which a successor auditor audits and reports on adjustments made to prior-period financial statements audited by a predecessor auditor, what procedures should the predecessor auditor perform prior to reissuing his or her report on those financial statements prior to adjustment?

**A8.** AU sec. 508.71 states that, “a predecessor auditor should (a) read the financial statements of the current period, (b) compare the prior-period financial statements that he or she reported on with the financial statements to be presented for comparative purposes, and (c) obtain representation letters from management of the former client and from the successor auditor. The representation letter from management of the former client should state (a) whether any information has come to management’s attention that would cause them to believe that any of the previous representations should be modified, and (b) whether any events have occurred subsequent to the balance-sheet date of the latest prior-period financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor that would require adjustment to or disclosure in those financial statements [except for the adjustments]. The representation letter from the successor auditor should state whether the successor’s audit revealed any matters that, in the successor’s opinion, might have a material effect on, or require disclosure in, the financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor [other than the adjustments disclosed to the predecessor auditor].”

**Q9.** In circumstances in which a successor auditor audits and reports on adjustments made to prior-period financial statements audited by a predecessor auditor, are there any modifications the predecessor auditor should make to his or her reissued report on the prior-period financial statements?

**A9.** Yes. If the predecessor auditor was not engaged to audit the adjustments to the prior-period financial statements, the predecessor auditor should modify his or her reissued report to indicate that (a) the reissued opinion relates to the prior-period financial statements before the effects of the adjustments, and (b) he or she was not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the adjustments.

The following are examples of how the predecessor auditor may modify his or her report:<sup>11</sup>

---

<sup>11</sup> See PCAOB staff question no. 6.

**Example for retrospective application of a change in accounting**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We have audited, before the effects of the adjustments to retrospectively apply the change in accounting described in Note X, the balance sheet of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X4, and the related statements of income, changes in shareholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended (the 20X4 financial statements before the effects of the adjustments discussed in Note X are not presented herein). The 20X4 financial statements are the responsibility of the company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

*[Same second paragraph as the standard report]*

In our opinion, the 20X4 financial statements, before the effects of the adjustments to retrospectively apply the change in accounting described in Note X, present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X4, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

We were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the adjustments to retrospectively apply the change in accounting described in Note X and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance about whether such adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied. Those adjustments were audited by *[name of successor auditor]*.

*[Signature]*

*[City and State or Country]*

*[Original Date]*

***Example for correction of an error***

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We have audited, before the effects of the adjustments for the correction of the error described in Note X, the balance sheet of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X4, and the related statements of income, changes in shareholders' equity, and cash flows for the year then ended (the 20X4 financial statements before the effects of the adjustments discussed in Note X *[have been withdrawn and]* are not presented herein). The 20X4 financial statements are the responsibility of the company's management.

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit.

*[Same second paragraph as the standard report]*

In our opinion, except for the error described in Note X, the 20X4 financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of ABC Company as of December 31, 20X4, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year then ended in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

We were not engaged to audit, review, or apply any procedures to the adjustments for the correction of the error described in Note X and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance about whether such adjustments are appropriate and have been properly applied. Those adjustments were audited by *[name of successor auditor]*.

*[Signature]*

*[City and State or Country]*

*[Original Date]*

**Q10.** When a successor auditor audits and reports on adjustments made to prior-period financial statements audited by a predecessor auditor, how should the predecessor auditor date his or her report on the reissued financial statements?

**A10.** When the successor auditor has audited and reported on the adjustments made to the prior-period financial statements and the predecessor auditor is reissuing the report on the prior-period financial statements, the predecessor auditor should use the date of the previous report to avoid any implication that he or she has examined any records, transactions, or events after that date.<sup>12</sup>

## Successor Auditor Has Not Completed an Audit

**Q11.** Can a successor auditor audit and report on the adjustments made to the prior-period financial statements if he or she has not yet completed an audit of the current-period financial statements?

**A11.** No. If the prior-period financial statements have been adjusted, the successor auditor may audit and report on the adjustments made to the prior-period financial statements in connection with the successor auditor's audit of the financial statements of the company for a subsequent period.<sup>13</sup> Unless the successor auditor has completed an audit of the financial statements of the company, he or she will not have sufficient knowledge of the company and its financial reporting to adequately plan and perform an audit of the adjustments to conclude on whether they are appropriate and have been properly applied. If the successor auditor has not completed an audit of a subsequent period, the successor auditor, or another independent auditor, may be engaged to reaudit the prior-period financial statements and audit the adjustments to those financial statements.

---

<sup>12</sup> See AU sec. 508.73.

<sup>13</sup> See AU sec. 508.74.

**.04 Staff Questions and Answers: Auditing the Fair Value of Share Options Granted to Employees, October 17, 2006**

**Summary:** Staff questions and answers set forth the staff's opinions on issues related to the implementation of the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("PCAOB" or "Board"). The staff publishes questions and answers to help auditors implement, and the Board's staff administer, the Board's standards. The statements contained in the staff questions and answers are not rules of the Board, nor have they been approved by the Board.

The following staff questions and answers are applicable to audits of financial statements in circumstances in which a company has granted share options to employees that must be accounted for as compensation cost in conformity with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 123 (revised 2004), *Share-Based Payment*, issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board. These staff questions and answers were prepared by the Office of the Chief Auditor. Additional questions should be directed to Greg Fletcher, Assistant Chief Auditor (202/207-9203; fletchergr@pcaobus.org) or Jennifer Rand, Deputy Chief Auditor (202/207-9206; randj@pcaobus.org).

\* \* \*

## General

**Q1.** What is the purpose of these PCAOB staff questions and answers about auditing the fair value of employee share options?

**A1.** The purpose of these questions and answers is to help auditors implement the PCAOB's existing auditing standards when auditing the fair value of share options granted to employees. The Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 123, *Share-Based Payment* (revised 2004) ("FAS 123R"), which established the accounting requirements for companies that grant share options to employees and generally required that companies recognize as compensation cost the grant-date fair value of the award. In addition, the SEC staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin 107 ("SAB 107") in March 2005, which, among other things, provides the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") staff's views regarding the valuation of share-based payment arrangements for public companies. Based on these developments, the PCAOB staff believes that there is a need for guidance for implementing the existing auditing standards related to a company's accounting for the fair value of employee share options.<sup>1</sup>

**Q2.** Which auditing standards of the PCAOB provide direction on auditing the fair value of employee share options and what are the general steps involved in auditing them?

---

<sup>1</sup> This series of PCAOB staff questions and answers addresses the principles and procedures related to auditing the grant-date fair value of employee share options, which is a component of compensation cost associated with the issuance of employee share options. It does not address auditing the other components of determining and reporting compensation cost in the financial statements. Other components include making adjustments for actual pre-vesting forfeitures to arrive at the compensation cost related to the share option grant; determining the periods in which compensation cost is recognized in the financial statements; determining related financial statement effects of employee share options to the company, such as income tax effects; and making the appropriate entries in the general ledger.

**A2.** Because employee share options are complex financial instruments with no available market, companies generally use option-pricing models to estimate the fair value. As such, these valuations are accounting estimates, and AU sec. 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*, and AU sec. 328, *Auditing Fair Value Measurements*, most directly apply. In addition, because fraudulent financial reporting often is accomplished through an intentional misstatement of an estimate, AU sec. 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, also applies.<sup>2</sup>

In general, when auditing the fair value of employee share options, the auditor should:

- Obtain an understanding of the process used to develop the estimated fair value of employee share options;
- Assess the risk of misstatement related to the fair value of employee share options; and
- Perform testing on the company's estimated value of employee share options. Testing includes:
  - Evaluating the consistency of the process,
  - Evaluating the reasonableness of (1) the company's model and (2) the assumptions used in the model, such as expected term and expected volatility, and
  - Verifying the accuracy and completeness of the data underlying the fair value measurements.

The auditor also should evaluate whether he or she possesses the necessary skills and knowledge to plan and perform the audit procedures.

Each of these matters is addressed in the following PCAOB staff questions and answers

## The Company's Process

**Q3.** How should the auditor evaluate the company's process for estimating the fair value of employee share option grants?

**A3.** AU sec. 328.09 requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of the company's process for determining fair value measurements and disclosures and of the relevant controls sufficient to develop an effective audit approach.<sup>3</sup> AU sec. 328.23 states that, based on the auditor's assessment of the risk of material misstatement, the auditor should test the entity's fair value measurements and disclosures. AU sec. 328.23 also identifies three ways in which the auditor may test fair value measurements:

- Testing management's significant assumptions, the valuation model, and the underlying data,

---

<sup>2</sup> The Board adopted as its interim standards generally accepted auditing standards as described in the AICPA Auditing Standards Board's Statement on Auditing Standards No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, as in existence on April 16, 2003, to the extent not superseded or amended by the Board, on an initial transitional basis.

<sup>3</sup> Paragraph .12 of AU sec. 328, *Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*, also provides items that auditors should consider when obtaining an understanding of fair value measurements and disclosures.

- Developing independent fair value estimates for corroborative purposes, or
- Reviewing subsequent events and transactions.<sup>4</sup>

Because of the complexity involved in developing an independent estimate and the limited usefulness of reviewing subsequent events and transactions to evaluate the fair value of employee share options, in many cases, the second and third approaches are not likely to be practical approaches to auditing the fair value of employee share options. In such cases, the auditor should test management's significant assumptions, the valuation model, and the underlying data related to the fair value estimate.

In applying the provisions of AU sec. 328 to the evaluation of the company's process for estimating the fair value of employee share option grants, the auditor should review the procedures used by the company to make the estimates. These procedures include:

- Evaluating how the terms of the share option awards affect the determination of the grant date, selection of model, and the assumptions used;<sup>5</sup>
- Selecting the option-pricing model;<sup>6</sup> (See also PCAOB staff question Nos. 5 and 6.)
- Developing the assumptions used in the valuation, including implementation of the guidance in FAS 123R and SAB 107,<sup>7</sup> that could affect the assumptions;<sup>8</sup> (See also PCAOB staff question Nos. 7–18.)
- Ensuring that the data upon which the fair value measurements are based (including employee exercises and post-vesting cancellations and lapses) are accurate and complete;<sup>9</sup> (See also PCAOB staff question No. 19.) and
- Generating the estimated fair value of the employee share options, including executing the calculations required in the option-pricing model.<sup>10</sup> (See also PCAOB staff question No. 20.)

The auditor also should evaluate whether the process is complete, including whether the company considers the relevant factors identified in the accounting literature that affect the assumptions and whether the company applies the process consistently from period to period.<sup>11</sup>

---

<sup>4</sup> Similarly, in evaluating the reasonableness of an estimate, paragraph .10 of AU sec. 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*, requires the auditor to review and test the process used by management to develop an estimate, develop an independent estimate to corroborate the reasonableness of the company's estimate, or review subsequent events or transactions occurring before the completion of fieldwork.

<sup>5</sup> See Statement of Financial Accounting Standard No. 123, *Share-Based Payment* (revised 2004) ("FAS 123R"), paragraph A2.

<sup>6</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraphs A13–A15.

<sup>7</sup> See SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin 107, *Share-Based Payment* (March 29, 2005).

<sup>8</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph A16.

<sup>9</sup> See AU sec. 328.39.

<sup>10</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>11</sup> AU sec. 328.19 states that the auditor should evaluate whether the company's method (in this case, the company's process) for determining fair value measurements is applied consistently and if so, whether the consistency is appropriate considering possible changes in the environment or circumstances affecting the company, or changes in accounting principles.

In addition, in auditing the financial statements, the auditor may determine that it is not practical or possible to restrict detection risk to an acceptable level by performing only substantive tests for one or more assertions. In such circumstances, the auditor should obtain evidence about the effectiveness of both the design and operation of controls to reduce the assessed level of control risk.<sup>12, 13</sup>

## Risk Factors

**Q4.** What factors affect the auditor's assessment of risk at the financial statement and significant account levels for fair value measurements related to employee share options?

**A4.** Accounts consisting of amounts derived from accounting estimates have a higher inherent risk than do accounts consisting of relatively routine factual data<sup>14</sup> or having readily determinable values. Therefore, compensation cost based on fair value measurements of employee share options, and related disclosures, often will have a high inherent risk. The auditor should be aware of how changes in assumptions and models affect fair value.

The following are examples of circumstances or conditions that indicate increased risk and might indicate a risk of fraud that would require a specific response from the auditor:<sup>15</sup>

- When an assumption that a company uses has the effect of reducing the fair value below what it would have been had the company based the assumption on unadjusted historical information.
- Exclusion of an historical period of time from the inputs to the valuation model, especially when the effect of that exclusion is to lower expected term or expected volatility.<sup>16</sup> (See also PCAOB staff question No. 14.)
- Adjustments to historical exercise behavior or historical share price volatility. For example:
  - The expected term estimate for the current grant of share options is five years when the company has averaged seven years in previous grants of share options;
  - The expected term or expected volatility estimate selected as the most likely was the lowest in a range of possible expected terms or expected volatilities; or
  - The expected term and expected volatility estimates are both lower than the historical averages.
- Adjustments to historical exercise behavior or historical share price volatility are not applied consistently to each option grant in circumstances in which they should have been consistently applied.

---

<sup>12</sup> See AU sec. 319.03.

<sup>13</sup> In an integrated audit of the financial statements and internal control over financial reporting, the auditor must obtain evidence about the effectiveness of internal controls. This series of PCAOB staff questions and answers does not illustrate how the auditor should test the design and operating effectiveness of controls related to employee share option compensation cost and disclosures in an integrated audit.

<sup>14</sup> See AU sec. 312.27a.

<sup>15</sup> See AU sec. 316.48b.

<sup>16</sup> See also SAB 107, interpretive response to question 2, Section D.1. SAB 107 states that valid exclusions of periods would be rare.

## Model Selection

**Q5.** Observable market prices generally are not available for employee share options because employee share options are not traded. As a result, companies ordinarily will need to use an option-pricing model to estimate the fair value of employee share options. What factors should the auditor use to evaluate the reasonableness of a company's selection of an option-pricing model for calculating the fair value of employee share options?<sup>17</sup>

**A5.** The auditor should evaluate whether the model selected by the company

- Is applied in a manner consistent with FAS 123R's fair value measurement objective;
- Is based on established principles of financial economic theory; and
- Reflects all of the substantive characteristics of the share options granted to employees.<sup>18</sup>

The Black-Scholes-Merton formula, a closed-form option-pricing model, was developed for exchange-traded share options. As developed, it assumes that option exercises occur at the end of an option's contractual term, and that the other factors, expected volatility, expected dividends, and risk-free interest rates, are constant over the option's term. Because employees often exercise before the contractual term expires, FAS 123R requires companies to modify the term used as an input to the original formula by estimating an expected term for the employee share options that is less than the contractual term.

A lattice, or binomial, option-pricing model, however, can accommodate dynamic assumptions of expected volatility and dividends over the option's contractual term, and estimates of expected option exercise patterns during the contractual term (for example, the likelihood that an employee will exercise when the share price reaches a certain multiple of the exercise price). Therefore, the design of a lattice model might more fully reflect the substantive characteristics of a particular employee share option.<sup>19</sup>

The auditor should be alert to circumstances in which the selection of the Black-Scholes-Merton formula might not be appropriate. For example, the appropriate model for estimating the fair value of an instrument with a market condition (such as an exercise condition that is satisfied when the share price exceeds a specified value for a specified period of days) must take into account the effect of that market condition.<sup>20</sup> The Black-Scholes-Merton option-pricing formula would not generally be an appropriate valuation model for a share option in which the exercisability is conditional on a specified increase in the price of the underlying shares because it is not designed to take into account that type of market condition.<sup>21</sup>

---

<sup>17</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph A2. The fair value of equity instrument share options granted to employees is measured on the date of the grant.

<sup>18</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph A8, AU sec. 328.18, and AU sec. 328.26b. In addition to the Black-Scholes-Merton formula and a lattice option-pricing model, a Monte Carlo simulation technique also satisfies the requirements in paragraph A8 of FAS 123R. See FAS 123R, footnote 48.

<sup>19</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph A15.

<sup>20</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph A14.

<sup>21</sup> See the interpretive response to question 2, section C of SAB 107.

**Q6.** What steps should the auditor take when a company changes the valuation technique or model chosen to value employee share options?

**A6.** The auditor should evaluate whether the new technique or model meets the fair value measurement objective of FAS 123R. The SEC staff has stated that it would not object to a company changing its valuation technique or model, as long as the new technique or model meets the fair value measurement objective.<sup>22</sup> SAB 107 states that a company should take into account the reason for the change in technique or model in determining whether it meets the fair value measurement objective.<sup>23</sup> However, the SEC staff also has stated that it would not expect that a company would frequently switch between valuation techniques or models, particularly when there has been no significant variation in the form of share-based payments being<sup>24</sup> As noted in SAB 107, changing a technique or model from period to period for the sole purpose of lowering the fair value estimate of a share option would not meet the fair value measurement objective of FAS 123R.<sup>25</sup> Finally, frequent changes in the valuation technique or model also might indicate a risk of fraud that would require a response by the auditor. Accordingly, the auditor should evaluate management's reason for the change.

## Assumptions Used In Option-Pricing Models

**Q7.** Paragraph A18 of FAS 123R states that the valuation technique or model used to estimate the fair value of the share option shall take into account, at a minimum—

- Expected term of the option (in a lattice model, expected term is an output of the model);
- Expected volatility of the price of the underlying share for the expected term of the option;
- Exercise price of the option;
- Current price of the underlying share;
- Risk-free interest rate(s) for the expected term of the option; and
- Expected dividends of the underlying share for the expected term of the option.

How should the auditor assess the possible effect of these six items on the fair value measurement?

**A7.** The expected term and expected volatility assumptions have the highest risk because they involve the greatest amounts of judgment and have a significant effect on the estimated fair value. PCAOB staff question Nos. 8 through 11 provide direction to the auditor regarding expected term. PCAOB staff question Nos. 12 through 17 provide direction to the auditor regarding volatility.

The exercise price of the option and current price of the underlying shares have a significant effect on the fair value measurement and have a high

---

<sup>22</sup> See the interpretive response to question 3, section C of SAB 107.

<sup>23</sup> Ibid.

<sup>24</sup> Ibid.

<sup>25</sup> Ibid.

degree of verifiability. The auditor should verify that the company has properly authorized the share option plan and test whether the company has properly authorized the specific terms of the award, correctly determined the grant date, and accurately entered the exercise price and current share price, as of the measurement date, into the valuation model.

The risk-free interest rate(s) might have an elevated risk because a mathematical computation could be involved. The expected dividends assumption might have an elevated risk because of potential measurer bias. PCAOB staff question No. 18 provides direction to the auditor regarding risk-free interest rate(s) and expected dividends.

## Expected Term of the Option

**Q8.** The expected term assumption is one of the key drivers of fair value in the Black-Scholes-Merton formula.<sup>26</sup> Paragraph A23 of FAS 123R states that assumptions used to estimate the fair value of share options granted to employees should be determined in a consistent manner from period to period. How should the auditor evaluate the reasonableness of the expected term assumption?

**A8.** When a company is using the Black-Scholes-Merton option-pricing formula, the auditor should apply the following procedures to the expected term assumption:<sup>27</sup>

- Obtain an understanding of the company's process for estimating expected term, including the extent to which the company evaluates relevant factors in the accounting literature;<sup>28</sup>
- Verify that the expected term generally is at least equal to the vesting period of the share option grant;<sup>29</sup>
- Verify that the company (1) has taken into account the contractual term of the option and the effects of employees' post-vesting employment termination behavior, in addition to employees' expected exercise behavior, and (2) has not taken into account pre-vesting employee termination behavior;<sup>30</sup>
- Evaluate whether adjustments that the company has made to the historical exercise behavior are reasonable and supportable,<sup>31</sup> including adjustments to the historical exercise behavior of groups (See also PCAOB staff question No. 11); and
- Test the data that the company uses for its estimate, such as data on actual exercise behavior (See also PCAOB staff question No. 19).

---

<sup>26</sup> Expected term usually is an output of lattice models.

<sup>27</sup> See PCAOB staff question No. 10 for a discussion about the "simplified method." If a company's share option plan has the characteristics that are sometimes referred to as "plain vanilla," it may use the simplified method for estimating expected term, as found in SAB 107. However, the SEC staff has stated that it does not expect the simplified method to be used for share option grants after December 31, 2007.

<sup>28</sup> For example, see FAS 123R, paragraphs A26–A30.

<sup>29</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph 42. Some awards have graded vesting schedules. These may be accounted for as in-substance multiple awards.

<sup>30</sup> Paragraphs A27 and A28 of FAS 123R describe factors that may affect expectations about employees' exercise behavior.

<sup>31</sup> See FAS 123R, footnote 50.

The auditor also should evaluate whether the person or persons determining the expected term assumption, including the company's specialists, have experience in valuing employee share options<sup>32</sup> and assess how that evaluation affects the audit procedures.

**Q9.** What should the auditor do to test a company's calculation of its historical exercise experience for employee share options, including consideration of the contractual term and post-vesting employee behavior?

**A9.** Paragraph A21 of FAS 123R states that historical experience generally is the starting point for developing expectations about the future. Because the expected term estimate is the period of time for which the option is expected to be outstanding (that is, generally the period of time from the grant date to the date of expected exercise or other expected settlement), companies may start by calculating a historical weighted average period of time for which previous grants of share options were outstanding.

The auditor should verify that a company's calculations include options that were not exercised during the contractual term. Failure to include such options could significantly understate average time that options were outstanding. For example, if a company calculates historical exercise behavior based only on the 70 percent of the options exercised over a 10 year contractual term, then it will probably significantly understate the average by not considering the 30 percent of options that may have been outstanding for 10 years and never exercised.

The auditor should:

- Evaluate whether the company's calculations are complete; i.e., that the calculations include all vested options, including those that were never exercised;
- Evaluate whether the company's calculations are mathematically correct, including any separate calculations for groups of employees (See also PCAOB staff question No. 11); and
- Test the underlying data upon which the company's calculations are based, for example, the grant date and exercise date (See also PCAOB staff question No. 19).

The auditor also should be aware of situations in which historical information is not sufficiently complete to enable a company to use it as the sole basis for estimating expected term. For example, if a company issues employee share options for the first time in 20X4 with a three-year vesting period and a ten-year contractual term, it cannot use its unadjusted historical experience in estimating the expected term of additional grants in 20X8 because there will have been only one year in which the earlier grants could have been exercised. The earliest it will have a complete history is at the end of the ten-year contractual term.

In situations in which the company calculated the historical exercise behavior based on incomplete historical information, the auditor should evaluate whether the company's rationale for using this calculation in connection with an estimate of expected term is reasonable and supportable.

---

<sup>32</sup> See AU sec. 328.12.

**Q10.** FAS 123R states that expectations based on historical experience should be modified to reflect ways in which currently available information indicates that the future is reasonably expected to differ from the past.<sup>33</sup> What procedures should the auditor perform to evaluate the reasonableness of adjustments to historical exercise behavior?

**A10.** The auditor should evaluate whether the company's rationale for adjustments to historical exercise behavior are reasonable and supportable.<sup>34</sup> The auditor also should evaluate whether the company failed to make a necessary adjustment. For example, if the historical experience is based on grants with one-year vesting, an adjustment would be appropriate if current grants have four-year vesting. The volatility of the company's stock price also can affect whether vested employees (1) exercise the options, (2) terminate from the company and exercise the options, (3) terminate from the company and let the options lapse, or (4) stay with the company through the contractual term and let the options lapse. Announced plans for acquisitions, divestitures, and initial public offerings of stock also could affect employee exercises and forfeitures.

The auditor should evaluate whether the amount of an adjustment is reasonable by reviewing the support for the adjustment. The auditor also should be alert to the risk of management override in the adjustments.

*Range of expected terms.* If a company, after analyzing its historical data, developed a range of possible expected terms that are each equally likely, the auditor should verify that the company selected the average of the amounts in the range (the expected value according to paragraph A20 of FAS 123R).

*Use of SAB 107 "simplified method."* According to SAB 107, the simplified method of estimating expected term is permitted only for "plain vanilla" options.<sup>35</sup> If a company uses the simplified method, the auditor should review the evidence that supports the company's view that it is eligible to use the simplified method. Specifically, the auditor should review the grant documentation to ensure that the terms conform to the "plain-vanilla" requirements, review pre-vesting terminations to ensure that the associated share options were cancelled, and test whether exercises by terminated employees occurred within a limited time after termination (typically 30 to 90 days).

**Q11.** According to FAS 123R, aggregating individual awards into relatively homogenous groups, with respect to exercise and post-vesting employment termination behaviors, and estimating the fair value of the options granted to each group separately, reduces the risk of potential misstatement of the value

---

<sup>33</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph A21.

<sup>34</sup> AU sec. 328 provides general guidance about evaluating a company's assumptions.

<sup>35</sup> The interpretative response to question 5, section D.2 of SAB 107, establishes basic characteristics of share option plans that are sometimes referred to as "plain vanilla." The basic characteristics are: (1) share options are granted at-the-money, (2) exercisability is conditional only on performing service through the vesting date, (3) if an employee terminates service prior to vesting, the employee would forfeit the share options, (4) if an employee terminates service after vesting, the employee would have a limited time to exercise the share options (typically 30 to 90 days), and (5) share options are nontransferable and nonhedgeable. In addition, the SEC staff has stated that it does not expect the simplified method to be used for share option grants after December 31, 2007 (See the interpretative response to question 6, section D.2.).

of the award.<sup>36</sup> How should the auditor evaluate the appropriateness of groups of employees used in the estimate of expected term?

**A11.** If the company segregates the employees into more than one group (such as executives and non-executives), the auditor should perform the following procedures to evaluate the company's employee groups:

- Evaluate whether the company aggregated individual awards into relatively homogeneous groups with respect to exercise and post-vesting employment termination behaviors and the evidence and rationale supporting the determination of the groups is adequate;
- Evaluate the reasonableness and completeness of groups;
- Evaluate the reasonableness and support for adjustments to historical exercise behavior of groups;
- Test the underlying data upon which the groups are based (See also PCAOB staff question No. 19); and
- Evaluate whether the company's calculations of historical exercise behavior for each group are mathematically correct.

## Expected Volatility

**Q12.** Paragraph A23 of FAS 123R states that assumptions used to estimate the fair value of share options granted to employees should be determined in a consistent manner from period to period. Paragraphs A32 and A34 provide further guidance related to the company's estimate of expected volatility. How should the auditor evaluate the reasonableness of a company's estimate of the expected volatility of its share price?

**A12.** The auditor should perform the following procedures to evaluate the reasonableness of a company's estimate of expected volatility:<sup>37</sup>

- Obtain an understanding of the company's process for estimating expected volatility.
- Evaluate whether the company's process considers all of the applicable factors identified in paragraph A32 of FAS 123R in determining its estimate of expected volatility. The auditor also should evaluate whether the process (1) identifies the information necessary to be able to consider the volatility factors and (2) evaluates and weights that information (as required by paragraph A34 of FAS 123R).
- Evaluate the reasonableness of the assumptions, supporting information, judgments, and weightings. Evidence of reasonableness includes whether the company considered all the volatility factors and how such factors might affect the company's estimate of expected volatility. The auditor also should be alert to the risk of management override of the company's process for estimating expected volatility.
- Evaluate the consistency of the company's process for estimating expected volatility from period to period in evaluating the company's

---

<sup>36</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph A30. In addition, the interpretive response to Question 4 of section D.2. of SAB 107 states that an entity may generally make a reasonable fair value estimate with as few as one or two groupings.

<sup>37</sup> AU secs. 342 and 328 provide general guidance for reviewing a company's process and evaluating its assumptions.

compliance with paragraphs A32 and A34 of FAS 123R.<sup>38</sup> However, the auditor also should consider that when circumstances indicate the availability of new or different information which would be useful in estimating expected volatility, SAB 107 directs the company to incorporate that information.<sup>39</sup>

- In general, for historical volatility, verify that the company's process provides for looking back over the expected term (for a closed-form model) or contractual term (for a lattice model)<sup>40</sup> to consider the extent to which currently available information indicates that future volatility will differ from historical volatility.<sup>41</sup> A change in a company's business model that results in a material alteration to the company's risk profile is an example of a circumstance in which the company's future volatility would be expected to differ from its past volatility.<sup>42</sup>
- Test the underlying data used in the estimate (See also PCAOB staff question No. 19).

The auditor also should evaluate whether the person or persons determining the expected volatility assumption, including the company's specialists, have experience in valuing employee share options,<sup>43</sup> and assess how that evaluation affects the audit procedures.

## Historical Volatility

**Q13.** How should the auditor evaluate the reasonableness of a company's estimate of expected volatility when it uses its historical volatility as its expected volatility?

**A13.** As discussed in the answer to PCAOB staff question No. 12, the auditor should evaluate whether the company's process provides for looking backward to determine whether currently available information indicates that expected volatility will differ from historical volatility. The auditor should evaluate whether there is other information that the company did not consider and such information indicates that expected volatility will differ from the past. The auditor could base this evaluation on publicly available information related to the company's corporate history and future plans, and knowledge of the industry. In addition, an indication of the reasonableness of the company's process will be the extent to which the company analyzes each factor with respect to its own facts and circumstances.

Additionally, the auditor should consider the criteria established by SAB 107 for exclusive reliance on historical volatility. The SEC staff has stated that it would not object to a public company placing exclusive reliance on historical volatility when the following factors are present, and the methodology is consistently applied, if the company's common shares have been publicly traded for a sufficient period of time.<sup>44</sup>

---

<sup>38</sup> The interpretative response to question 1, section D.1. of SAB 107 states that the process used to gather and review available information to estimate expected volatility should be applied consistently from period to period.

<sup>39</sup> Ibid.

<sup>40</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph A32a.

<sup>41</sup> See FAS 123R, paragraph A34.

<sup>42</sup> See SAB 107, footnote 55.

<sup>43</sup> See AU sec. 328.12.

<sup>44</sup> See SAB 107, section D.1., "Company B" example.

- The company has no reason to believe that its future volatility over the expected or contractual term, as applicable, is likely to differ from its past;
- The computation of historical volatility uses a simple average calculation method;
- A sequential period of historical data at least equal to the expected or contractual term of the share option, as applicable, is used; and
- A reasonably sufficient number of price observations are used, measured at a consistent point throughout the applicable historical period.

The auditor also should verify that the company has properly calculated the historical volatility.

If a company makes adjustments to historical volatility based on peer company data, the auditor should evaluate the reasonableness of the company's decision to use peer company data. In addition, the auditor should evaluate whether the company is using an appropriate peer group, the company is reasonably comparable to the peer group, and management reasonably blended peer group data and its own company data. The auditor also should be alert to the risk of management override in the area of adjustments to historical volatility.

**Q14.** FAS 123R indicates that a company should consider historical volatility over a period generally commensurate with the expected term or contractual term, as applicable. How should the auditor evaluate whether a company, in determining its expected volatility, has considered the historical volatility of its share price over an appropriate period of time?

**A14.** The auditor should evaluate whether the company considered the volatility of its share price over the most recent period that is generally commensurate with the expected term (or contractual term if a lattice model is used). For example, if a company estimated that the expected term of the options is four years, then the company generally should start with its historical volatility for the most recent four-year period in determining the expected volatility.

The following are circumstances that indicate increased inherent risk and might also indicate increased risk of fraud.

- The company used a period of historical data that is longer than the expected term,<sup>45</sup> and the effect is to lower expected volatility and the resulting fair value, or the company did not consistently use the longer period. Using a period of historical data longer than expected or contractual term is acceptable under SAB 107 if the company reasonably believes that the additional historical information will improve the estimate. However, this situation is similar to the condition described in PCAOB staff question No. 4, in which an adjustment to historical exercise behavior or share price volatility that results in a lower expected term or expected volatility increases inherent risk and might indicate a heightened risk of fraud.

---

<sup>45</sup> See the interpretative response to question 2, section D.1 of SAB 107. SAB 107 also points out that paragraph A32a of FAS 123R indicates companies should consider historical volatility over a period generally commensurate with expected or contractual term.

- The company used a method that weights the most recent periods of a company's historical volatility more heavily than earlier periods, especially if the result is a lowering of expected volatility.<sup>46</sup>
- The company excludes a period of time from the calculation of historical volatility, especially if doing so results in a decrease of expected volatility, and hence a decrease in fair value.<sup>47</sup>

**Q15.** How should the auditor evaluate the company's share price observations for the purpose of determining historical volatility?

**A15.** The auditor should evaluate whether the company used actual observed prices within intervals that were appropriate based on the facts and circumstances and that provide a basis for a reasonable estimate. For example, if a company's shares are thinly traded, then weekly or monthly price observations may be more appropriate than daily price observations.<sup>48</sup> The auditor also should verify that the price observations are taken consistently throughout the period and are consistent with the approach used in prior grants. For example, if a company uses weekly price observations, then the auditor should verify that the company made the observation on the same day of each week. In addition, if the company changes when it makes price observations, for example, from daily price observations to monthly, the auditor should evaluate the reasonableness of the company's rationale for the change.

## Implied Volatility

**Q16.** Implied volatility is inferred by calculating volatility using an option-pricing model (typically Black-Scholes-Merton), where the fair value—the market price of a company's appropriate traded financial instruments—and other variables are known (i.e., share price, exercise price, expected term, risk-free rate, and expected dividends). How should the auditor evaluate a company's use of implied volatility in its estimate of expected volatility?

**A16.** SAB 107 provides items for a company to consider when using implied volatility. Accordingly, in such situations, the auditor should evaluate whether a company with "appropriate traded financial instruments from which they can derive an implied volatility"<sup>49</sup> has appropriately taken into account implied volatility in determining the estimate of expected volatility.

For companies with exchange-traded options, or other appropriate traded financial instruments,<sup>50</sup> the auditor should evaluate whether the company's

---

<sup>46</sup> See SAB 107, interpretative response to question 2, section D.1, including footnote 40. SAB 107 states that such weighting may not be appropriate for longer term employee share options and that an estimate of expected volatility that places "extreme emphasis on the most recent periods" may not be consistent with paragraph A32(a) of FAS 123R.

<sup>47</sup> See SAB 107, interpretative response to question 2, section D.1. SAB 107 states that if a company disregards a period of historical volatility, it should be prepared to support its conclusion that its historical share price during that previous period is not relevant to estimating expected volatility due to one or more discrete and specific historical events and that similar events are not expected to occur during the expected term of the share option. SAB 107 states that these situations would be rare.

<sup>48</sup> See SAB 107, footnote 42.

<sup>49</sup> See SAB 107, interpretative response to question 1, section D.1.

<sup>50</sup> Ibid. Under SAB 107, appropriate traded financial instruments could include actively traded options or financial instruments with embedded options.

process for estimating expected volatility is appropriate and consistent from period to period.<sup>51</sup> A company that considers implied volatility will probably do so as part of its overall process for estimating expected volatility. Therefore, the auditor also should consider the concepts described in PCAOB staff question Nos. 3 and 12.

Regarding exclusive reliance on implied volatility, the SEC staff has stated that it would not object to a public company placing exclusive reliance on implied volatility when certain factors are present and the methodology is consistently applied, if the company's common shares have been publicly traded for a sufficient period of time and the company has multiple options on its shares outstanding that are traded on an exchange.<sup>52</sup>

If the company places exclusive reliance on implied volatility based on its assessment that the factors in SAB 107 are present, the auditor should evaluate that assessment. In addition, the auditor should verify that the company has properly calculated the implied volatility.

## Combined Volatility

**Q17.** How should the auditor evaluate the reasonableness of a company's estimate of expected volatility when it uses a combination of historical and implied volatility in that estimate?

**A17.** The auditor should verify that the company's process for estimating expected volatility includes consideration of the applicable factors for using historical or implied volatility, as discussed in FAS 123R and SAB 107. PCAOB staff question Nos. 13 through 16 provide guidance for the auditor to use when evaluating the company's use of historical volatility, including the effects of any adjustments, and implied volatility in its estimate of expected volatility. In considering the reasonableness of the combined expected volatility, the auditor should evaluate the company's consideration of the factors that affect volatility, including the SEC staff's factors for exclusive use of implied or historical volatility, and the company's support for its conclusions. The factors outlined in SAB 107 for a company's exclusive use of either historical volatility or implied volatility also may provide some relative benchmarks for the auditor to use in evaluating the combined volatility.

## Risk-Free Interest Rate(s) and Expected Dividends

**Q18.** FAS 123R requires that the valuation method, such as the Black-Scholes-Merton formula or lattice models, consider the expected dividends of the underlying shares for the expected term and the risk-free interest rate(s) for the expected term. How should the auditor evaluate whether the company has properly considered these two elements?

**A18.** The risk-free interest rate(s) and the expected dividends assumption generally are less subjective than the expected term and volatility assumptions and also do not have as significant an effect on the estimate of fair value. However, the auditor still should evaluate the reasonableness of those assumptions.

---

<sup>51</sup> See SAB 107, interpretative responses to question 3, section D.1, regarding the use of implied volatility.

<sup>52</sup> See SAB 107, section D.1., Company B example, and interpretative response to question 4, section D.1.

*Risk-free interest rate.* In general, the risk-free rate is the yield on a zero-coupon U.S. Treasury bond with a remaining term equal to the option term. A higher risk-free interest rate increases the option value and hence the estimated fair value, all other factors being equal.

If the company uses the Black-Scholes-Merton formula, the auditor should verify that the company used a traded zero-coupon U.S. Treasury bond with a remaining term equal to the expected term, measured on the grant date. The auditor also should verify that the company properly calculated the yield based on the traded price. If the company interpolated a yield because the expected term fell within the remaining terms of two bonds, the auditor should evaluate the accuracy of the interpolation.

If a company's lattice model incorporates a term structure of expected volatilities, the company might use a yield curve for the contractual period. If the company's lattice model uses a yield curve, the auditor should verify that the company properly calculated the yield curve and accurately entered the yields into the lattice model.

*Expected dividends.* The dividend yield over the option term affects the option value because it reduces the stock price on the ex-dividend date. In general, higher expected dividends decrease the value of the option and hence the estimated fair value. The auditor should:

- Evaluate whether the company has the intent and ability to pay the dividends that are embodied in the expected dividend assumption. Sufficient cash and observable trends provide evidence of the company's intent and ability to pay dividends.<sup>53</sup>
- If the company has adjusted its current or historic dividend yield, evaluate the reasonableness of and support for the expected dividend yield. The auditor should evaluate whether the expected dividend yield is consistent with management's plans and information available to market participants by reviewing evidence such as press releases on dividend policy changes and historical dividend yield rates. This evaluation should include whether the company failed to make an adjustment to expected dividends.
- Test the underlying data (See also PCAOB staff question No. 19).

## Validation of Data and the Option-Pricing Model

**Q19.** How should the auditor test the underlying data that supports a company's estimate of fair value, and the related entries?

**A19.** Pursuant to AU sec. 328.39, the auditor should test the data used to develop the fair value measurements and evaluate whether the fair value measurements have been properly determined from such data and management's assumptions. This includes evaluating whether the data on which the fair value measurements are based, including the data used in the work of a specialist, are accurate, complete, and relevant; and whether fair value measurements have been properly determined using such data and management's assumptions. In considering the controls over data pursuant to

---

<sup>53</sup> AU sec. 328.17 states that the auditor should evaluate management's intent to carry out specific courses of action where intent is relevant to the use of fair value measurement and that the auditor also should evaluate management's ability to carry out those courses of action.

AU sec. 328.12, the auditor should consider the effectiveness of the design of controls intended to safeguard the integrity and reliability of the data.

A number of systems, which can be automated or manual, often provide data relevant to the estimate of fair value. The auditor should identify the automated or manual systems that might be subject to testing. Record-keeping systems for stock plan information and awards are usually critical because information about forfeitures and exercises supports the company's estimate of expected term. Payroll, human resources, and tax systems also could be critical if they contain information about awards, forfeitures, and exercises that is used in the estimation process.<sup>54</sup>

The auditor also should establish that any data used that resides outside the company are reliable, such as peer group data. AU sec. 329.16 provides guidance for evaluating the reliability of such data.

**Q20.** How should the auditor evaluate whether the model has appropriately calculated the fair value estimate for share options?

**A20.** If the company is using the Black-Scholes-Merton formula, the auditor should verify that the company is using the correct formula and recalculate the fair value. If the company is using a lattice option-pricing model, the auditor should obtain evidence that the model is functioning properly.

## Role of Specialists

**Q21.** What is the role of a specialist in auditing estimates of the fair value of employee share option grants?

**A21.** AU sec. 328 provides guidance on auditing fair value measurements and disclosures, including auditing the fair value of employee share option grants. According to AU 328.12, as part of obtaining an understanding of the process management uses to determine fair value, such as the fair value of employee share option grants, the auditor should consider the extent to which management engages or employs specialists.

When testing fair value measurements and disclosures, the auditor should, among other things, perform procedures to evaluate whether management's assumptions are reasonable and to evaluate the source and reliability of evidence supporting management's assumptions.<sup>55</sup> According to AU sec. 328.05, footnote 2, management's assumptions include any assumptions developed by a specialist engaged or employed by management. Thus, the auditor should perform procedures in accordance with AU sec. 328 to evaluate the assumptions developed by a specialist engaged or employed by management.

Pursuant to AU sec. 328.20, the auditor should consider whether to engage a specialist and use the work of that specialist as evidential matter in performing substantive tests to evaluate material financial statement assertions related to the fair value of employee share option grants. In making

---

<sup>54</sup> See AU sec. 328.12. When obtaining an understanding of the company's process for determining fair value measurements and disclosures, the auditor should consider the extent to which the company relies on a service organization to provide data that supports the measurement. When a company uses a service organization, the auditor should consider the requirements of AU sec. 324, *Service Organizations*.

<sup>55</sup> See AU secs. 328.26a and 328.31.

this decision, the auditor<sup>56</sup> should evaluate whether he or she has the necessary skill and knowledge to plan and perform audit procedures related to the fair value of employee share option grants, including the reasonableness of the assumptions that the company or its specialist used.

The following circumstances related to the company's fair value measurement under FAS 123R often are particularly complex, involve assumptions that have a significant effect on fair value and, thus, might result in a higher assessment of risk by the auditor. Accordingly, the auditor should evaluate whether he or she has the necessary skill and knowledge to plan and perform audit procedures in these areas.

- Use of a lattice model, including obtaining evidence that the model is functioning properly. (See PCAOB staff questions No. 5, 18, and 20.)
- Exclusion of periods of historical data. (See PCAOB staff questions No. 4 and 14.)
- Adjustments to historical exercise behavior or historical share price volatility that result in shorter expected term or lower expected volatility than the company's historical experience. (See PCAOB staff questions No. 4, 10, and 14.)
- Use of a method that weights the most recent periods of a company's historical volatility more heavily than earlier periods, especially if the result is a lowering of expected volatility. (See PCAOB staff question No. 14.)
- Use of combined volatility. (See PCAOB staff question No. 17.)

**Q22.** What should the auditor do to satisfy the requirement that he or she evaluate the qualifications of a specialist?

**A22.** Valuation specialists may have certain areas of experience. When evaluating the qualifications of a specialist in accordance with AU sec. 336.08,<sup>57</sup> the auditor should evaluate whether the specialist has experience in valuing employee share options. In doing this, the auditor should evaluate the experience of the specialist's firm and of the individual specialist, or specialists, performing the service.

---

<sup>56</sup> In this context, the term *auditor* includes employees of the auditor's firm who possess relevant special skill or knowledge and who participate in the audit as a member of the audit team.

<sup>57</sup> Pursuant to AU sec. 336.08a and b, the auditor should also consider the specialist's certification, license, or other recognition of competence and the specialist's reputation.

**.05 Staff Questions and Answers: Ethics and Independence Rules Concerning Independence, Tax Services, and Contingent Fees, April 3, 2007**

**Summary:** Staff questions and answers set forth the staff's opinions on issues related to the implementation of the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("PCAOB" or "Board"). The staff publishes questions and answers to help auditors implement, and the Board's staff administer, the Board's standards. The statements contained in the staff questions and answers are not rules of the Board, nor have they been approved by the Board.

The following staff questions and answers related to ethics and independence rules concerning independence, tax services, and contingent fees were prepared by the Office of the Chief Auditor. Questions should be directed to Bella Rivshin, Associate Chief Auditor (202/207-9180; rivshinb@pcaobus.org) or Greg Scates, Associate Chief Auditor (202/207-9114; scatesg@pcaobus.org).

\* \* \*

## **Rule 3522. Tax Transactions**

**Q1.** Does Rule 3522(a), Confidential Transactions, apply when conditions of confidentiality are imposed by tax advisors who are not employed by or affiliated with the registered public accounting firm?

**A1.** Yes. Under Rule 3522(a), a registered public accounting firm is not independent of its audit client if the firm, or any affiliate of the firm, during the audit and professional engagement period, provides any non-audit service to the client related to marketing, planning, or opining in favor of the tax treatment of a confidential transaction. Under Rule 3501(c)(i)(1), a confidential transaction is a transaction that is offered to a taxpayer under conditions of confidentiality and for which the taxpayer has paid an advisor a fee. As stated in the Board's adopting release, PCAOB Release 2004-015 (July 26, 2005), "Rule 3501(c) defines confidential transactions in terms of confidentiality restrictions imposed by tax advisors generally, not specifically auditors." Therefore, Rule 3522(a) applies not only when conditions of confidentiality have been imposed by a tax advisor that is employed by or affiliated with the registered public accounting firm, but also when conditions of confidentiality have been imposed by any tax advisor, including one that has no relationship with the registered public accounting firm.

**Q2.** For purposes of Rule 3522(a), Confidential Transactions, can a registered public accounting firm, when marketing, planning, or opining in favor of the tax treatment of a transaction, rely on representations from its audit client that another tax advisor did not impose conditions of confidentiality in connection with the specific tax transaction?

**A2.** Yes. In determining if any tax advisor imposed conditions of confidentiality in connection with a specific tax transaction, the registered public accounting firm may rely on representations from its audit client, provided that the firm does not know, or have reason to know, that those representations are incorrect or incomplete.

**Q3.** In planning a tax transaction, may a registered public accounting firm advise an audit client on the tax consequences of alternative ways of structuring the transaction?

**A3.** Yes, as long as the auditor does not recommend an alternative tax transaction structure: (1) that is not more likely than not to be allowable under applicable tax laws, and (2) a significant purpose of which is tax avoidance. Rule 3522(b) provides that a registered public accounting firm is not independent of the audit client if the firm, or any affiliate of the firm, provides an audit client any non-audit service related to marketing, planning, or opining in favor of the tax treatment of a transaction that was initially recommended by the firm and a significant purpose of which is tax avoidance, unless the proposed tax treatment is at least more likely than not to be allowable under applicable tax laws. In planning a tax transaction for an audit client that is permitted under Rule 3522(b), the firm may need or want to inform the client about the tax consequences of alternative tax transaction structures, some of which may not be more likely than not to be allowable and have a significant purpose of tax avoidance. As long as the firm does not recommend that the audit client engage in such a transaction, the firm will not violate Rule 3522(b).

**Q4.** How is a registered public accounting firm's independence affected by the Internal Revenue Service's ("IRS") subsequent listing of a transaction that the firm marketed, planned, or opined in favor of, as described in Rule 3522(b), Aggressive Tax Position Transactions?

**A4.** The listing by the IRS of a transaction after the firm marketed, planned, or opined in favor of the tax treatment of the transaction would not retroactively affect the firm's independence. Whether the firm was independent when it planned, marketed, or opined in favor of the transaction would instead depend on the facts available at that time. An analysis under Rule 3522 would consider, among other things, whether the tax treatment of the transaction was, at the relevant time, at least more likely than not to be allowable under applicable tax laws, including whether the transaction was itself listed or substantially similar to a listed transaction.

After a transaction marketed, planned or opined on by the firm becomes listed, however, the firm's independence may, depending on the circumstances, become impaired. For example, even if a firm was independent at the time the tax transaction was executed, because it reasonably and correctly concluded the transaction was not the same as, or substantially similar to, a listed transaction, once a transaction is actually listed (or a substantially similar transaction becomes listed), the firm that participated in the transaction may find its independence impaired. In this situation, a mutuality of interest could be created by the fact that once a transaction is listed, the firm or client, or both, may be required to defend the tax treatment of the transaction and, in some cases, pay penalties. When a tax transaction in which the firm participated is subsequently listed (or is substantially similar to a transaction that is subsequently listed) by the IRS, the firm should evaluate the potential effect on its independence and discuss it, as appropriate, with the audit client's audit committee.

## **Rule 3523. Tax Services for Persons in Financial Reporting Oversight Roles**

**Q5.** Rule 3523 restricts the provision of tax services to a person in a Financial Reporting Oversight Role ("FROR") at an audit client or an immediate family member of such person. FROR is defined under both SEC and PCAOB rules as

a role in which a person is in a position to or does exercise influence over the contents of the financial statements or anyone who prepares them. For purposes of Rule 3522, must the auditor evaluate whether persons are in a FROR at any entities other than the one being audited?

**A5.** Yes. Auditors must evaluate whether a person is in a FROR at an “audit client.” Because Rule 3501(a)(iv) defines “audit client” to include “any affiliates of the audit client,” a person in a financial reporting oversight role at an affiliate of the audit client (and that person’s immediate family members) are covered by Rule 3523, subject to two important exceptions. First, a firm’s independence is not impaired under Rule 3523 if it provides tax services to a person who is in a financial reporting oversight role at the audit client (or an immediate family member of such a person) only because of the person’s relationship to an affiliate whose financial statements are not material to the consolidated financial statements of the entity being audited. See Rule 3523(b)(1). Second, a firm’s independence is not impaired under the rule if it provides tax services to a person who is in a financial reporting oversight role at the audit client (or an immediate family member of such a person) only because of the person’s relationship to an affiliate whose financial statements are audited by an auditor other than the firm. See Rule 3523(b)(2).

**Q6.** What types of situations does the term “other change in employment event” in Rule 3523(c) encompass?

**A6.** Rule 3523(c) provides a time-limited exception to Rule 3523’s restrictions on the provision of tax services to persons in financial reporting oversight roles at an audit client and certain of its affiliates. The exception applies when, among other things, a person becomes subject to the rule through a hiring, promotion, or “other change in employment event.” Whether there has been an “other change in employment event” depends on the changed status of a person at an audit client. A change experienced by a company, such as a change in auditor or a change from a private company to a public one, is not, by itself, an “other change in employment event.”

Some changes experienced by a company could, however, result in an “other change of employment event” for a particular person. For example, a person who is not in a financial reporting oversight role might, as a result of a business combination, be assigned additional duties and responsibilities that put him or her into a financial reporting oversight role. A business combination could also result in a change in a person’s employer – for example, from an acquired company to a surviving company. A change in employer is also an “other change in employment event” under Rule 3523(c). For example, if Company A acquires Company B, a person who was in a financial reporting oversight role at Company B would experience an “other change in employment event” if he or she became an employee of Company A in a financial reporting oversight role as a result of the acquisition. If such a person had been receiving tax services from Company A’s registered public accounting firm pursuant to an engagement in process before the acquisition, the time-limited exception in Rule 3523(c) would apply.

**.06 Staff Questions and Answers, Registration of Broker Dealer Auditors,  
February 19, 2009**

**Summary:** The questions and answers below set forth staff guidance to assist auditors of non-public broker-dealers considering registration with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (“PCAOB” or “Board”). This guidance does not constitute Board rules, nor has it been approved by the Board.

The staff questions and answers below were prepared by the Division of Registration and Inspections to supplement PCAOB Release No. 2003-011B, *Frequently Asked Questions Regarding Registration with the Board*. Questions should be directed to the PCAOB’s registration staff, by emailing registration-help@pcaobus.org or by calling 202-207-9329. The Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) staff and the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (“FINRA”) have also each published guidance on issues related to the requirement that auditors of non-public broker-dealers register with the Board. The SEC staff guidance can be found at [www.sec.gov/divisions/marketreg/faq-pcaobregbdauditors.htm](http://www.sec.gov/divisions/marketreg/faq-pcaobregbdauditors.htm). The FINRA guidance can be found at [www.finra.org/Industry/Regulation/Notices/2009/P117689](http://www.finra.org/Industry/Regulation/Notices/2009/P117689).

\* \* \*

## Overview of Registration

**Q1.** My firm audits broker-dealers but does not audit or participate in audits of public companies. Does my firm have to register with the Board?

**A1.** Yes. Section 17(e) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (as amended by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002) provides that every registered broker or dealer shall annually file with the SEC certain financial statements that are certified by a firm that is registered with the PCAOB. Until recently, an order of the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC Order”) had provided non-public broker-dealers with relief from that requirement. As a result of the SEC Order’s recent expiration, financial statements of non-public broker-dealers for fiscal years ending after December 31, 2008 must be certified by a registered public accounting firm.

**Q2.** What does my firm have to do to become registered with the Board?

**A2.** To register with the Board, your firm must submit a registration application and the Board must approve it. Links to the instructions to Form 1 and to Section 2 of the Board’s rules (which govern the registration process) may be found at [www.pcaobus.org/Rules/Rules\\_of\\_the\\_Board](http://www.pcaobus.org/Rules/Rules_of_the_Board). You may also view a sample registration application by clicking on “Sample Registration Form 1” located on the Registration page of the Board’s website ([www.pcaobus.org/Registration](http://www.pcaobus.org/Registration)). You can read a discussion of the information Form 1 requires by going to [www.pcaobus.org/rules/docket\\_001](http://www.pcaobus.org/rules/docket_001) and clicking on Release 2003-007. The Board has also published answers to frequently asked questions concerning the application process generally, which you can find on the Registration page. This document, PCAOB Release No. 2003-011B, *Frequently Asked Questions Regarding Registration with the Board*, is referred to below as “Board FAQs” and can be found at [www.pcaobus.org/Registration/Registration\\_FAQ.pdf](http://www.pcaobus.org/Registration/Registration_FAQ.pdf).

In addition to submitting the Form 1 registration application, your firm will have to pay a non-refundable registration fee prior to Board consideration of your application. If your firm audited no issuers during the previous

calendar year, the registration fee is \$250. “Issuer” is defined in the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and PCAOB rules and does not include a non-public broker-dealer.

**Q3.** Will PCAOB registration affect the manner in which my firm audits broker-dealers?

**A3.** The Board does not determine, inspect for compliance with, or enforce the standards applicable to audits of entities that are not issuers. In addition, the SEC staff has published guidance indicating that the requirement to register with the PCAOB does not affect the existing requirement, under SEC rules, that audits of the financial statements of non-public broker-dealers be conducted according to generally accepted auditing standards. See “PCAOB Registration of Auditors of Non-Public Broker-Dealers Frequently Asked Questions” (Question 5), available at [www.sec.gov/divisions/marketreg/faq-pcaobregbdauditors.htm](http://www.sec.gov/divisions/marketreg/faq-pcaobregbdauditors.htm).

**Q4.** If my firm becomes registered with the Board, what ongoing obligations will it have to the PCAOB?

**A4.** Board rules currently pending with the SEC would require all registered firms, including those that do not audit issuers, to comply with the PCAOB’s annual and special reporting requirements. Once those rules are effective, you will have to file with the Board an annual report, providing basic information about your firm. You will also have to file a special report if certain, specified events occur. These rules, once effective, will also require firms to pay an annual fee. The amount of that fee has not yet been announced. You can read a full description of the annual and special reporting rules adopted by the Board in PCAOB Release No. 2008-004 at [www.pcaobus.org/Rules/Docket\\_019](http://www.pcaobus.org/Rules/Docket_019).

In any given year, both the requirement to file an annual report and the requirement to pay an annual fee apply only to firms that are registered as of March 31 of that year. Firms that become registered after March 31 of a given year would not file an annual report or pay an annual fee that year.

A firm’s failure to comply with the reporting and fee requirements, as well as a failure to comply with the requirements to provide complete and accurate information in the application process, could result in disciplinary sanctions, potentially including revocation of a firm’s registration.

## Mechanics of Registration

**Q5.** How does my firm submit a registration application?

**A5.** Registration applications are electronic and can only be obtained by accessing the Board’s secure registration system. To gain access to the registration system, go to the Registration page of the Board’s website ([www.pcaobus.org/Registration](http://www.pcaobus.org/Registration)) and click on “Register with the PCAOB” in the gray box on the right. You will be presented with a log-in box and instructions to establish a user ID and password by submitting an “Online Entitlement Request Form.” Follow the instructions to establish a user ID and password, and return to this log-in page to access PCAOB’s secure registration system, where you may download the PDF version of the Form 1 registration application. (Note: The registration system also offers the option to submit Form 1 using XML. See Board FAQ #3 for further information on this option). Complete the application on your computer, making

sure to take careful note of the name and location of the file containing your application.

To submit the registration application, log back into the registration system and follow the instructions to upload your completed Form 1. After Form 1 is uploaded, the system will calculate your firm's registration fee and present you with an invoice. You will be given a link to a site where you can submit your payment electronically. Once you've paid, your application will be deemed submitted.

**Q6.** How long will it take my firm to get registered?

**A6.** The Board has up to 45 days after the date your firm submits its application to take action on the application. The actual number of days until approval will vary depending on the information contained in the application and the number of applications that are pending at the same time as your firm's application. However, if the Board requests additional information concerning the application, a new 45-day period will begin when the additional information is received. In addition, if the Board cannot determine whether it is in the public interest to approve a firm's application, the Board may hold a hearing. While the applicant could elect to treat the hearing notice as a denial, if it does not do so, it will have waived the 45-day requirement for Board action. See Board FAQ #14 for additional information concerning notices of hearing.

## **Content of the Registration Application**

**Q7.** My firm does not participate in audits of issuers. Are there sections of the registration application we can skip?

**A7.** Before responding to any item in the registration application, an applicant should give careful attention to the definitions of terms used in the item. Of particular significance in this context are the definitions of "issuer" (which does not include a non-public broker-dealer), "audit" and "audit report" (which are limited to work and reports relating to the financial statements of issuers), and "associated person" of the applicant (which encompasses only persons that perform work in connection with an audit of an issuer).

If your firm did not, in the current calendar year or in the year preceding submission of its application, participate at all in the audit of an issuer, and your firm does not expect to do so in the current calendar year, it will have no information responsive to Part II (Listing of Applicant's Public Company Audit Clients and Related Fees) or to Item 7.1 (Listing of Accountants Associated with Applicants), and may not have information responsive to other items on the application. The form contains "NA" boxes that you should check to indicate that particular parts of the form do not apply to your firm. A firm that certifies financial statements of broker-dealers, however, should, when filling out an application, also bear in mind the answer to question no. 9 below.

Before concluding that it does not participate in audits of issuers, an applicant should understand that audit work performed for a non-public entity could nevertheless constitute participation in an audit of an issuer if that work is used by another firm in connection with the other firm's audit of an issuer, such as a parent company. In that circumstance, applicants should carefully consider whether they have played, or expect in the current calendar year to play, a "substantial role" in the audit of an issuer as that defined term is used in the registration application.

**Q8.** Part IV of the registration application requires my firm to provide a statement of its quality control policies. How detailed should we be in describing our quality control policies?

**A8.** Your firm's discussion of quality control policies should be a summary description presented in a clear, concise and understandable format. You should not provide us with your entire internal quality control manual, but should prepare a brief document that provides an overview of your firm's policies with respect to independence, integrity and objectivity; engagement performance; personnel management; acceptance and continuance of clients and engagements; and monitoring.

**Q9.** Should my firm provide any specific information relevant to its work for broker-dealers?

**A9.** In light of the expiration of the SEC order, the staff believes that certain specific information may be relevant to the Board's consideration of an application. In order to avoid the Board seeking the information through a formal request for additional information, which could delay Board action on the application until 45 days after all requested additional information is submitted, the staff urges all applicants who have certified financial statements for SEC filings by broker-dealer clients in the two-year period preceding submission of the application and who intend to continue to do so to (a) indicate that fact in the "Applicant Profile" section on the first page of Form 1 by checking the box for item number 2, and (b) provide the following information:

1. Broker-dealer clients: Include in Exhibit 4.1, in addition to a description of the firm's quality control policies, a separate file listing (a) all broker-dealers for which the firm certified financial statements in the current or preceding calendar year, including the business address of each broker-dealer and, as to each, the dates of any such certification by the firm; and (b) any additional broker-dealers for which the firm expects to certify financial statements in the current calendar year, including the business address of each.

2. Individuals' disciplinary histories: Include in Exhibit 5.3 a statement indicating whether any proprietor, partner, principal, shareholder, or officer of the firm, or any accountant employed by the firm who participates in the firm's work relating to certification of broker-dealer financial statements, has a history that meets any of the criteria described in Item 5.1.a. of Form 1. If any of those individuals has such a history, provide as to each matter the information described in Item 5.1.b. of Form 1. In considering the criteria described in Item 5.1.a.1., please give careful attention to Board FAQ #33.

**Q10.** Are registration applications made public? If so, can my firm protect any of the information it provides in the application from public disclosure?

**A10.** The Board makes registration applications available to the public by posting them to its web site as soon as practicable after approving or disapproving them. If your firm wishes to protect information in its registration application from public disclosure, it may request confidential treatment for that information by checking the box labeled "CR" that appears in the application relating to the exact item of information that you want to be treated confidentially. Your firm will be notified of the Board's determination with respect to your request after the Board has acted on your application.

For each request for confidential treatment, your firm must attach, as exhibit 99.1, an explanation as to why you believe the information should be

treated confidentially. Refer to Board Rule 2300 ([www.pcaobus.org/Rules/Rules\\_of\\_the\\_Board/Section\\_2.pdf](http://www.pcaobus.org/Rules/Rules_of_the_Board/Section_2.pdf)) for the test the Board will apply in considering whether to grant your requests.

Requesting confidential treatment of a portion of a text exhibit to Form 1 requires your firm to submit two versions of the exhibit – one version should contain all the information in the exhibit and the other version should redact those portions of the exhibit as to which the firm is seeking confidential treatment and show with a notation each redaction that has been made.

## Further Questions About Registration

**Q11.** What should I do if I have further questions?

**A11.** If you have questions, you should first review the Board's FAQs on Registration, the Board's rules and Instructions to Form 1, and the Instructions for filling out Form 1 that are available for download after you log in to the registration system. If you still have questions, you can email the PCAOB's registration staff at [registration-help@pcaobus.org](mailto:registration-help@pcaobus.org), or call the registration staff's help line at (202) 207-9329. The hours of operation for the help line are 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. EDT, Monday through Friday.

---

[The next page is 11,201.]

**Section 200**

***[Reserved]***

---

**[The next page is 11,301.]**



## Section 300

### Staff Views

#### .01 An Audit of Internal Control That Is Integrated With an Audit of Financial Statements: Guidance for Auditors of Smaller Public Companies

January 23, 2009

### Introduction

The information in this publication is intended to help auditors apply the provisions of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board's ("PCAOB" or "Board") Auditing Standard No. 5, *An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements* ("Auditing Standard No. 5"),<sup>1</sup> to audits of smaller, less complex public companies ("smaller, less complex companies"). If used appropriately, it can help auditors design and execute audit strategies that will achieve the objectives of Auditing Standard No. 5. This publication is not, however, a rule of the Board and does not establish new requirements. All audits of internal control over financial reporting—regardless of the size of the company—must comply with the requirements of Auditing Standard No. 5. Also, this publication does not address all of the requirements and direction in Auditing Standard No. 5 or all issues that may be encountered in audits of smaller, less complex companies.

In adopting Auditing Standard No. 5, one of the Board's objectives was to make the audit of management's assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting ("audit of internal control") more clearly scalable for smaller, less complex companies. Thus, the standard contains direction to auditors on scaling the audit based on a company's size and complexity. This publication discusses how that direction may be applied to audits of smaller, less complex companies, including smaller companies that are not complex, and how auditors may address some of the challenges that might arise in audits of those companies.

### Development of This Publication

This publication was developed by the staff of the Board's Office of the Chief Auditor ("OCA"). To develop the information in this publication, OCA organized a working group composed of auditors who have experience with audits of internal control over financial reporting in smaller, less complex companies. These auditors identified issues that pose particular challenges in auditing internal control in smaller, less complex companies. The auditors provided insights and examples based on their experiences in addressing these issues, and they assisted in drafting a preliminary version of the guidance. In developing that preliminary guidance, OCA also consulted with financial executives from smaller public companies, who helped the staff evaluate whether it appropriately reflected the smaller, less complex company environment.

The staff issued the preliminary guidance for public comment on October 17, 2007, and received 23 comments. After considering those comments, the staff made certain changes in this final version that clarify or enhance the guidance.

---

<sup>1</sup> PCAOB Release 2007-005A, "Auditing Standard No. 5 – *An Audit Of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements and Related Independence Rule and Conforming Amendments*" (June 12, 2007)

Appendix B to this publication discusses comments received and related changes.

## References

This publication assumes that the user is familiar with the provisions of Auditing Standard No. 5 and the following publications:

- Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (“COSO”), *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*<sup>2</sup>
- COSO, *Internal Control over Financial Reporting—Guidance for Smaller Public Companies* (June 2006) (“COSO Small Companies Guidance”)
- SEC Release No. 33-8810, *Commission Guidance Regarding Management’s Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting Under Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934* (June 20, 2007) (“SEC Management Guidance”)

The following publications also provide information that might be relevant to the audit of internal control over financial reporting:

- SEC Release No. 33-8809, *Amendments to Rules Regarding Management’s Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting* (June 20, 2007)
- SEC Release No. 33-8829, *Definition of the Term Significant Deficiency* (August 3, 2007)
- SEC Release No. 33-8238, *Management’s Reports on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and Certification of Disclosure in Exchange Act Periodic Reports* (June 5, 2003)
- SEC Office of the Chief Accountant, Division of Corporation Finance, *Management’s Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and Certification of Disclosure in Exchange Act Periodic Reports: Frequently Asked Questions* (September 24, 2007)

## Internal Control Examples in this Publication

This publication discusses certain types of controls and provides examples of those controls to help auditors understand the types of controls that might be encountered in the audit of a smaller, less complex company and to provide a context for the discussion of audit strategies for evaluating the effectiveness of those controls. The discussions and examples of controls do not establish internal control requirements and are not intended as guidance to management regarding establishing or evaluating internal control over financial reporting.

---

<sup>2</sup> Auditing Standard No. 5 states that the auditor should use the same internal control framework that management uses in its assessment of internal control. Although this publication uses certain terms and concepts from COSO’s *Internal Control—Integrated Framework*, the principles in this publication could be applied to other internal control frameworks.

## Chapter 1

### Scaling the Audit for Smaller, Less Complex Companies

Auditing Standard No. 5 establishes requirements and provides direction that applies when an auditor is engaged to perform an audit of internal control over financial reporting that is integrated with an audit of the financial statements.

The complexity of a company is an important factor in the auditor's risk assessment and determination of the necessary audit procedures. Auditing Standard No. 5 provides direction on scaling the audit of internal control based on the size and complexity of a company. Scaling is important for audits of internal control of all companies, especially smaller, less complex companies. This chapter highlights principles for scaling the audit of internal control over financial reporting set forth in Auditing Standard No. 5 and discusses considerations for applying the principles in audits of smaller, less complex companies.

The audit of internal control should be integrated with the audit of the financial statements, so the auditor must plan and perform the work to achieve the objectives of both audits.<sup>1</sup> This direction applies to all aspects of the audit, and it is particularly relevant to tests of controls. This chapter discusses testing of controls in an integrated audit of a smaller, less complex company. Appendix A illustrates an audit approach for the integrated audit.

### Scaling the Audit of Internal Control

Scaling the audit of internal control involves tailoring the audit approach to fit the individual facts and circumstances of the company. Many smaller companies have less complex operations, and they typically share many of the following attributes:

- Fewer business lines
- Less complex business processes and financial reporting systems
- More centralized accounting functions
- Extensive involvement by senior management in the day-to-day activities of the business
- Fewer levels of management, each with a wide span of control.<sup>2</sup>

The attributes of a smaller, less complex company can affect the particular risks that could result in material misstatement of the company's financial statements and the controls that a company might establish to address those risks. Consequently, these attributes have a pervasive effect on the audit of internal control, including assessing risk, determining significant accounts and disclosures and relevant assertions, selecting controls to test, and testing the design and operating effectiveness of controls. The following are examples of internal control-related matters that might be particularly affected by the attributes of a smaller, less complex company—

- *Use of entity-level controls to achieve control objectives.* In smaller, less complex companies, senior management often is involved in many day-to-day business activities and performs duties that are important to effective internal control over financial reporting. Consequently, the auditor's evaluation of entity-level controls can provide a substantial amount of evidence about the effectiveness of internal control over

---

<sup>1</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 6 and 7.

<sup>2</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 9.

financial reporting. Chapter 2 discusses methods of evaluating entity-level controls and explains how that evaluation can affect the testing of other controls.

- *Risk of management override.* The extensive involvement of senior management in day-to-day activities and fewer levels of management can provide additional opportunities for management to override controls or intentionally misstate the financial statements in smaller, less complex companies. In an integrated audit, the auditor should consider the risk of management override and company actions to address that risk in connection with assessing the risk of material misstatement due to fraud and evaluating entity-level controls.<sup>3</sup> Chapter 3 discusses these considerations in more detail.
- *Implementation of segregation of duties and alternative controls.* By their nature, smaller, less complex companies have fewer employees, which limits the opportunity to segregate incompatible duties. Smaller, less complex companies might use alternative approaches to achieve the objectives of segregation of duties, and the auditor should evaluate whether those alternative controls achieve the control objectives.<sup>4</sup> This is discussed in Chapter 4.
- *Use of information technology (IT).* A smaller, less complex company with less complex business processes and centralized accounting operations might have less complex information systems that make greater use of off-the-shelf packaged software without modification. In the areas in which off-the-shelf software is used, the auditor's testing of information technology controls might focus on the application controls built into the pre-packaged software that management relies on to achieve its control objectives and the testing of IT general controls might focus on those controls that are important to the effective operation of the selected application controls. Chapter 5 discusses IT controls in more detail.
- *Maintenance of financial reporting competencies.* Smaller, less complex companies might address their needs for financial reporting competencies through means other than internal staffing, such as engaging outside professionals. The auditor may take into consideration the use of those third parties when assessing competencies of the company. Chapter 6 discusses the evaluation of financial reporting competencies in more detail.
- *Nature and extent of documentation.* A smaller, less complex company typically needs less formal documentation to run the business, including maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. The auditor may take that into account when selecting controls to test and planning tests of controls. Chapter 7 discusses this in more detail.

In some audits of internal control, auditors might encounter companies with numerous or pervasive control deficiencies. Smaller, less complex companies can be particularly affected by ineffective entity-level controls, as these companies typically have fewer employees and fewer process-level controls. The auditor's strategy can be influenced by the nature of the control deficiencies and factors such as the availability of audit evidence and the effect of the deficiencies on other controls. Chapter 8 discusses these situations in more detail.

---

<sup>3</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 14 and 24.

<sup>4</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 42.

## Tests of Controls in an Integrated Audit

Auditing Standard No. 5 provides direction on selecting controls to test and testing controls in an audit of internal control. The standard also provides direction on testing controls for the audit of the financial statements. The following paragraphs discuss how the auditor might apply the directions in Auditing Standard No. 5 to an audit of a smaller, less complex company.

### ***Selection of Controls to Test***

Appropriate selection of controls helps focus the auditor's testing on those controls that are important to the auditor's conclusion about whether the company's internal control over financial reporting is effective. The decision about whether to select a control for testing depends on which controls, individually or in combination, sufficiently address the assessed risk of misstatement in a given relevant assertion rather than on how the control is labeled (e.g., entity-level control, transaction-level control, control activity, monitoring control, preventive control, or detective control). A practical starting point for identifying these controls is to consider the controls that management relies on to achieve its objectives for reliable financial reporting.

Besides the overriding consideration of whether a control addresses the risk of misstatement, as a practical matter, the auditor might also consider the following factors when selecting controls to test:

- Is the control likely to be effective?
- What evidence exists regarding operation of the control?

When selecting controls to test, the auditor could seek to select controls that are more likely to be effective in addressing the risk of misstatement in one or more relevant assertions.<sup>5</sup> If none of the controls that are intended to address a risk for a relevant assertion is likely to be effective, the auditor can take that into account in determining the evidence needed to support a conclusion about the effectiveness of controls for this assertion.<sup>6</sup> Chapter 8 discusses in more detail how auditors could design their audit strategies in a situation when internal control over financial reporting is likely to be ineffective because of the presence of pervasive control deficiencies that result in one or more material weaknesses.

The auditor needs to be able to obtain enough evidence about a control's operation to conclude on its effectiveness. The auditor could take into account the nature and availability of audit evidence when selecting controls to test and determining the nature, timing, and extent of tests of controls. For example, if two or more controls adequately address the risk of misstatement for a relevant assertion, the auditor may select the control for which evidence of operating effectiveness can be obtained more readily. Chapter 7 discusses documentation and audit evidence in more detail.

### ***Tests of Operating Effectiveness of Controls***

Historically, the approach for financial statement audits of smaller, less complex companies has been to focus primarily on testing accounts and disclosures, with little or no testing of controls. The internal control reporting requirements under Sections 103 and 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the "Act") give

---

<sup>5</sup> There might be more than one control that addresses the assessed risk of misstatement for a particular relevant assertion; conversely, one control might address the assessed risk of misstatement to more than one relevant assertion. It is neither necessary to test all controls related to a relevant assertion nor necessary to test redundant controls, unless redundancy is itself a control objective. See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 40.

<sup>6</sup> Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 47, indicates that, generally, less evidence is needed to support a conclusion that controls are not operating effectively.

auditors the opportunity to re-consider their traditional approach to the financial statement audit portion of the integrated audit. The principles in Auditing Standard No. 5 also give auditors latitude to determine an appropriate testing strategy to—

- (a) Obtain sufficient evidence to support the auditor's opinion on internal control over financial reporting as of year-end, and
- (b) Obtain sufficient evidence to support the auditor's control risk assessments in the audit of the financial statements.<sup>7</sup>

To express an opinion on internal control over financial reporting taken as a whole, the auditor must obtain evidence about the effectiveness of selected controls over all relevant financial statement assertions. Because the auditor's opinion on internal control over financial reporting is as of a point in time, Auditing Standard No. 5 indicates that he or she should obtain evidence that internal control over financial reporting has operated effectively for a sufficient period of time, which may be less than the entire period (ordinarily one year) covered by the company's financial statements.<sup>8</sup>

In an audit of financial statements, the objective of tests of controls is to assess control risk. To assess control risk at less than the maximum, the auditing standards require the auditor to obtain evidence that the relevant controls operated effectively during the entire period upon which the auditor plans to place reliance on those controls.<sup>9</sup> However, the auditor is not required to assess control risk at less than the maximum for all relevant assertions, and, for a variety of reasons, the auditor may choose not to do so.<sup>10</sup>

The auditor's assessment of control risk at the maximum for one or more relevant assertions in an audit of financial statements does not necessarily preclude the auditor from issuing an unqualified opinion in an audit of internal control. The objectives of the two audits are not identical. The auditor could obtain sufficient evidence to support his or her opinion on internal control over financial reporting, even if the auditor decides not to test controls over the entire period of reliance to support a control risk assessment below the maximum. However, if the auditor assesses control risk at the maximum because of identified control deficiencies, the auditor should evaluate the severity of the deficiencies, individually or in combination, to determine whether a material weakness exists.<sup>11</sup>

The auditor's decision about relying on controls in an audit of financial statements may depend on the particular facts and circumstances. In some areas, the auditor might decide to rely on certain controls to reduce the substantive testing of accounts and disclosures. For other areas, the auditor might perform primarily substantive tests of the assertions without relying on controls. For example, the auditor might test a company's controls over billings and cash receipts processing to cover the entire period of reliance in order to reduce the extent of confirmation of accounts receivable balances but might perform primarily substantive tests of the allowance for doubtful accounts. In this case, the auditor might perform the tests of controls over the allowance for doubtful accounts only as necessary for the audit of internal control over financial reporting.

---

<sup>7</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 7.

<sup>8</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph B2.

<sup>9</sup> See paragraph B4 of Auditing Standard No. 5 and paragraph .66 of AU sec. 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*.

<sup>10</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph B4, and AU sec. 319.65.

<sup>11</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 62.

For some significant accounts, the auditor might decide that a relevant assertion can be tested effectively and efficiently through substantive procedures without relying on controls. For example, the auditor might decide to confirm an outstanding loan payable with the lender rather than rely on controls. In that situation, the auditor may test controls of the relevant assertions only as necessary to support his or her opinion on the company's internal control over financial reporting at year-end.

To obtain evidence about whether a selected control is effective, the control must be tested; the effectiveness of a control cannot be inferred from the absence of misstatements detected by substantive procedures. The absence of misstatements detected by substantive procedures, however, is one of a number of factors that inform the auditor's risk assessments in determining the testing necessary to conclude on the effectiveness of a control.<sup>12</sup> See the section entitled Specific Responses—Substantive Procedures and Tests of Controls in Appendix A to this publication for more discussion on this topic.

---

<sup>12</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 47, 58, and B9.

## Chapter 2

### Evaluating Entity-Level Controls

An important aspect of performing an audit of internal control is the process of identifying and evaluating entity-level controls. This chapter discusses entity-level controls and explains how they can affect the nature, timing, and extent of the auditor's procedures in an audit of internal control for a smaller, less complex company.

For the purposes of this discussion, entity-level controls are controls that have a pervasive effect on a company's internal control. These controls include<sup>1</sup> –

- Controls related to the control environment;
- Controls over management override;
- The company's risk assessment process;
- Centralized processing and controls, including shared service environments;
- Controls to monitor results of operations;
- Controls to monitor other controls, including activities of the audit committee<sup>2</sup> and self-assessment programs;<sup>3</sup>
- Controls over the period-end financial reporting process; and
- Policies that address significant business control and risk management practices.

In smaller, less complex companies, senior management often is involved in many day-to-day business activities and performs many controls—including entity-level controls—that are important to effective internal control over financial reporting. When this is the case, the auditor's evaluation of entity-level controls can be an important source of evidence about the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting.

Effective controls related to the control environment and controls that address the risk of management override are particularly important to the effective functioning of controls performed by senior management. Chapter 3 discusses the auditor's evaluation of the risk of management override and mitigating actions.

Auditors might find that limited formal documentation is available regarding the operation of some entity-level controls. Chapter 7 discusses how the auditor can obtain evidence about controls when less formal documentation is available.

### Evaluation of Entity-Level Controls and Testing of Other Controls

Auditing Standard No. 5 requires the auditor to test those entity-level controls that are important to the auditor's conclusion about whether the company has effective internal control over financial reporting. This includes evaluating the company's control environment and period-end financial reporting process.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 24.

<sup>2</sup> If no audit committee exists, all references to the audit committee in this publication apply to the entire Board of Directors of the company. See 15 U.S.C. 78c(a)58 and 7201(a)(3).

<sup>3</sup> Some smaller, less complex companies might have an internal audit function, especially in regulated industries. If the activities of the internal audit function include controls to monitor other controls, those controls also are entity-level controls.

<sup>4</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 22, and 25–27.

## Identifying Entity-Level Controls

The process of identifying relevant entity-level controls could begin with discussions between the auditor and appropriate management personnel for the purpose of obtaining a preliminary understanding of each component of internal control over financial reporting (i.e., control environment, risk assessment, control activities, monitoring, and information and communication).

While evaluating entity-level controls, auditors might identify controls that are capable of preventing or detecting misstatements in the financial statements. The period-end financial reporting process and management's monitoring of the results of operations are potential sources of such controls.

## Assessing the Precision of Entity-Level Controls

Auditing Standard No. 5 indicates that entity-level controls vary in nature and precision—

- Some entity-level controls, such as certain control environment controls, have an important, but indirect, effect on the likelihood that a misstatement will be detected or prevented on a timely basis. These controls might affect the other controls the auditor selects for testing and the nature, timing, and extent of procedures the auditor performs on other controls.
- Some entity-level controls monitor the effectiveness of other controls. Such controls might be designed to identify possible breakdowns in lowerlevel controls, but not at a level of precision that would, by themselves, sufficiently address the assessed risk that misstatements to a relevant assertion will be prevented or detected on a timely basis. These controls, when operating effectively, might allow the auditor to reduce the testing of other controls. [See Example 2-1.]
- Some entity-level controls might be designed to operate at a level of precision that would adequately prevent or detect on a timely basis misstatements to one or more relevant assertions. If an entity-level control sufficiently addresses the assessed risk of misstatement, the auditor need not test additional controls relating to that risk.<sup>5</sup> [See Example 2-2.]

As noted previously, the key consideration in assessing the level of precision is whether the control is designed in a manner to prevent or detect on a timely basis misstatements in one or more assertions that could cause the financial statements to be materially misstated and whether such control is operating effectively.<sup>6</sup> Factors that auditors might consider when judging the level of precision of an entity-level control include the following:

- *Purpose of the control.* A procedure that functions to prevent or detect misstatements generally is more precise than a procedure that merely identifies and explains differences.
- *Level of aggregation.* A control that is performed at a more granular level generally is more precise than one performed at a higher level.

---

<sup>5</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 23.

<sup>6</sup> The auditor should test the design effectiveness of controls by determining whether the company's controls, if they are operated as prescribed by persons possessing the necessary authority and competence, satisfy the company's control objectives and can effectively prevent or detect errors or fraud that could result in material misstatement of the financial statements. The auditor should test the operating effectiveness of a control by determining whether the control is operating as designed and whether the person performing the control has the necessary authority and competence to perform the control effectively. See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 42 and 44.

For example, an analysis of revenue by location or product line normally is more precise than an analysis of total company revenue.

- *Consistency of performance.* A control that is performed routinely and consistently generally is more precise than one performed sporadically.
- *Correlation to relevant assertions.* A control that is indirectly related to an assertion normally is less likely to prevent or detect misstatements in the assertion than a control that is directly related to an assertion.
- *Criteria for investigation.* For detective controls, the threshold for investigating deviations or differences from expectations relative to materiality is an indication of a control's precision. For example, a control that investigates items that are near the threshold for financial statement materiality has less precision and a greater risk of failing to prevent or detect misstatements that could be material than a control with a lower threshold for investigation.
- *Predictability of expectations.* Some entity-level controls are designed to detect misstatements by using key performance indicators or other information to develop expectations about reported amounts. The precision of those controls depends on the ability to develop sufficiently precise expectations to highlight potentially material misstatements.

When forming an opinion on the effectiveness of a company's internal control over financial reporting, the auditor should evaluate evidence obtained from all sources, including misstatements detected during the financial statement audit.<sup>7</sup> Evidence regarding detected misstatements also might be relevant in assessing the level of precision of entity-level controls.

### ***Effect of Entity-Level Controls on Testing of Other Controls***

The auditor's evaluation of entity-level controls can result in increasing or decreasing the testing that the auditor otherwise might have performed on other controls. For example, if the auditor has designed an audit approach with an expectation that certain entity-level controls (e.g., controls in the control environment) will be effective and those controls are not effective, the auditor might re-evaluate the planned audit approach and decide to expand his or her audit procedures.

On the other hand, the auditor's evaluation of some entity-level controls can result in a reduction of his or her testing of other controls, such as controls over corresponding relevant assertions. The degree to which the auditor might be able to reduce testing of controls over relevant assertions in such cases depends on the precision of the entity-level controls.

---

<sup>7</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 71.

---

**Example 2-1 — Monitoring the Effectiveness of Other Controls**

Scenario: A small public video game developer conducts business in the United States and other countries, requiring the company to maintain a multitude of bank accounts. A staff accountant is charged with performing bank reconciliations for the accounts according to a predetermined schedule (some of the accounts have a different closing date). Through inquiries of management, the auditor learns that the company's chief financial officer ("CFO"), who is an experienced accountant, reviews on a monthly basis the bank reconciliations prepared by the staff accountant as a means to determine—

- whether reconciliations are being prepared on a timely basis,
- the nature of reconciling items identified through the process, and
- whether reconciling items are investigated and resolved on a timely basis.

Audit Approach: In this example, the purpose of the control is one of the factors that the auditor considers in assessing precision of the CFO's review. The auditor has noted that the purpose of the CFO's review is to check that the staff has performed the reconciliations as described above. Therefore, the auditor does not expect the CFO's review of the reconciliations to be sufficiently precise to detect misstatements by itself. However, the CFO's review could still influence the auditor's assessment of risk because it provides additional information about the nature and consistency of the reconciliation procedures. The auditor obtains evidence about the CFO's review through inquiry and document inspection, evaluates the review's effectiveness, and determines the amount of direct testing of the reconciliation controls that is needed based on the assessed level of risk. If the auditor concludes that the CFO's review is effective, she could reduce the direct testing of the reconciliation controls, absent other indications of risk.

---

---

**Example 2-2 — Entity-Level Controls Related to Payroll Processing**

---

Scenario: A manufacturer of alternative fuel products and systems for the transportation market has union labor, supervisors, managers, and executives. All plants run two shifts six days a week, with each having approximately the same number of employees.

The chief financial officer (“CFO”) has been with the company for 10 years and thoroughly understands its business processes, including the payroll process, and reviews weekly payroll summary reports prepared by the centralized accounting function. With the company’s flat organizational design and smaller size, the CFO’s background with the company and his understanding of the seasons, cycles, and workflows, and close familiarity with the budget and reporting processes, the CFO quickly identifies any sign of improprieties with payroll and their underlying cause—whether related to a particular project, overtime, hiring, layoffs, and so forth. The CFO investigates as needed to determine whether misstatements have occurred and whether any internal control has not operated effectively, and takes corrective action.<sup>8</sup> Based on the results of audit procedures relating to the control environment and controls over management override, the auditor observes that the CFO demonstrates integrity and a commitment to effective internal control over financial reporting.

Audit Approach: The auditor evaluates the effectiveness of the CFO’s reviews, including the precision of those reviews. She inquires about the CFO’s review process and obtains other evidence of the review. She notes that the CFO’s threshold for investigating significant differences from expectations is adequate to detect misstatements that could cause the financial statements to be materially misstated. She selects some significant differences from expectations that were flagged by the CFO and determines that the CFO appropriately investigated the differences to determine whether the differences were caused by misstatements. Also, in considering evidence obtained throughout the audit, the auditor observes that the results of the financial statement audit procedures did not identify likely misstatements in payroll expense.

The auditor decides that the reviews could detect misstatements related to payroll processing because the CFO’s threshold for investigating significant differences from expectations is adequate. However, she determines that the control depends on reports produced by the company’s IT system, so the CFO’s review can be effective only if controls over the completeness and accuracy of those reports are effective.

After performing the tests of the relevant computer controls, the auditor concludes that the review performed by the CFO, when coupled with relevant controls over the reports, meets the control objectives for the relevant aspects of payroll processing described above. (See Chapter 5 for a discussion of tests of controls over such reports.)

---

---

<sup>8</sup> Adapted from the COSO Small Companies Guidance, Volume II: Guidance, page 90.

## Chapter 3

### Assessing the Risk of Management Override and Evaluating Mitigating Actions

The risk of management override of controls exists in all organizations, but the extensive involvement of senior management in day-to-day activities and fewer levels of management can provide additional opportunities for management to override controls in smaller, less complex companies. Company actions to mitigate the risk of management override are important to the consideration of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting.

In an integrated audit, the auditor should consider the risk of management override in connection with assessing the risk of material misstatement due to fraud, as he or she evaluates mitigating actions in connection with the evaluation of entity-level controls and selecting other controls to test.<sup>1</sup> This chapter discusses the auditor's consideration of the risk of management override of internal control and evaluation of actions that companies take to mitigate that risk.

#### Assessing the Risk of Management Override

AU sec. 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, requires the auditor to assess the risk of material misstatement due to fraud ("fraud risk"). As part of that assessment, the auditor is directed to perform the following procedures to obtain information to be used in identifying fraud risks, which includes procedures to assess the risk of management override<sup>2</sup> —

- *Conducting an engagement team discussion regarding fraud risks.* This discussion includes brainstorming about how and where management could override controls to engage in or conceal fraudulent financial reporting.
- *Making inquiries of management, the audit committee, and others in the company to obtain their views about the risks of fraud and how those risks are addressed.* These inquiries can provide information about the possibility of management override of controls.
- *Considering fraud risk factors.* Fraud risk factors include events or conditions that indicate incentives and pressures for management to override controls, opportunities for management override, and attitudes or rationalizations that enable management to justify override of controls.

After identifying fraud risks, the auditor should assess those risks, taking into account an evaluation of the company's programs and controls that are intended to address those risks.<sup>3</sup>

Because of the characteristics of fraud, the auditor's exercise of professional skepticism is particularly important when considering the risk of material misstatement due to fraud, including the risk of management override of controls.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 14.

<sup>2</sup> See AU sec. 316.14–34.

<sup>3</sup> See AU sec. 316.43–45.

## Evaluating Mitigating Controls

Auditing Standard No. 5 directs the auditor to evaluate whether the company's controls sufficiently address identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud and controls intended to address the risk of management override of other controls as part of the evaluation of entity-level controls.<sup>4</sup>

Smaller, less complex companies can take a number of actions to address the risk of management override. The following are examples of some of the controls that might address the risk of management override—

- Maintaining integrity and ethical values;
- Active oversight by the audit committee;
- Maintaining a whistleblower program; and
- Controls over certain journal entries.

When assessing a company's anti-fraud programs and controls, the auditor should evaluate whether the company has appropriately addressed the risk of management override.<sup>5</sup> Often, a combination of actions might be implemented to address the risk of management override.

## Evaluating Integrity and Ethical Values

An important part of an effective control environment is sound integrity and ethical values, particularly of top management, which are communicated and practiced throughout the company. A code of conduct or ethics policy is one way that a company can communicate its policies with respect to ethical behavior. This type of control can be effective if employees are aware of the company's policies and observe the policies in practice.

Auditors should evaluate integrity and ethical values as part of the assessment of the control environment component of internal control.<sup>6</sup> One approach for testing the effectiveness of the company's communications regarding integrity and ethical values is to gain an understanding of what the company believes it is communicating to employees and interview employees to determine if they are aware of the existence of the company's policies for ethical behavior and what they understand those policies to be. A discussion with employees regarding observed behaviors can assist the auditor further in understanding management's past actions and determining whether management's behavior demonstrates and enforces the principles in its code of conduct. The auditor's experience with the company also can be an important source of information about whether management demonstrates integrity and ethical values in its business practices and supports the achievement of effective internal control in its day-to-day activities.

## Evaluating Audit Committee Oversight

An active and independent audit committee evaluates the risk of management override, including identifying areas in which management override of internal control could occur, and assesses whether those risks are appropriately addressed within the company. As part of their oversight duties, the audit committee might perform duties such as meeting with management to discuss

---

<sup>4</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 14.

<sup>5</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 14 and 24.

<sup>6</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 25.

significant accounting estimates and reviewing the reasonableness of significant assumptions and judgments.<sup>7</sup>

The consideration of the effectiveness of the audit committee's oversight is part of the evaluation of the control environment. In connection with the auditor's inquiries of the audit committee, required by AU sec. 316.22, the auditor may interview audit committee members to determine their level of involvement and their activities regarding the risk of management override. For example, the auditor might read minutes of audit committee discussions on matters related to the committee's oversight or might observe some of those discussions if the auditor attends the meetings in connection with the audit. In addition, the auditor can examine evidence of the board of directors' or audit committee's activities that address the risk of management override, such as monitoring of certain transactions.

### ***Evaluating Whistleblower Programs***

A whistleblower program provides an outlet for employees or others to report behaviors that might have violated company policies and procedures, including management override of controls. A key aspect of an effective whistleblower program is the appropriateness of responses to concerns expressed by employees through the program. The audit committee may review reports of significant matters and consider the need for corrective actions.<sup>8</sup>

Audit procedures relating to a whistleblower program are intended to assess whether the program is appropriately designed, implemented, monitored, and maintained. Such procedures might include inquiry of employees, inspection of communications to employees about the program, and, if tips or complaints have been received, follow-up procedures to evaluate whether remedial actions were taken as necessary.

### ***Evaluating Controls over Journal Entries***

Controls that prevent or detect unauthorized journal entries can reduce the opportunity for the quarterly and annual financial statements to be intentionally misstated. Such controls might include, among other things, restricting access to the general ledger system, requiring dual authorizations for manual entries, or performing periodic reviews of journal entries to identify unauthorized entries.

As part of obtaining an understanding of the financial reporting process, the auditor should consider how journal entries are recorded in the general ledger and whether the company has controls that would either prevent unauthorized journal entries from being made to the general ledger or directly to the financial statements or detect unauthorized entries.<sup>9</sup> Tests of controls over journal entries could be performed in connection with the testing of journal entries required by AU sec. 316.

---

<sup>7</sup> When a company does not have an audit committee, the entire board of directors is considered the audit committee under Section 2(b)(3) of the Act. In such circumstances, Principle 2, *Board of Directors* of COSO Small Companies Guidance states, "[w]hen a board chooses not to have an audit committee, the full board performing the activities described should have a sufficient number of independent members."

<sup>8</sup> Section 10A(m)(4) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 requires audit committees to "establish procedures for (A) the receipt, retention, and treatment of complaints received by the issuer regarding accounting, internal accounting controls, or auditing matters; and (B) the confidential, anonymous submission by employees of the issuer of concerns regarding questionable accounting or auditing matters." The SEC has implemented this provision by adopting rules directing the national securities exchanges and national securities associations to prohibit the listing of any security of an issuer that is not in compliance with the audit committee requirements mandated by the Act.

<sup>9</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 26 and 34; AU sec. 316.58–60.

### ***Considering the Effects of Other Evidence***

The auditor might identify indications of management override in other phases of the integrated audit. For example, AU sec. 316 requires the auditor to perform procedures in response to the risk of management override, including examining journal entries for evidence of fraud, reviewing accounting estimates for bias, and evaluating the business rationale for significant, unusual transactions.<sup>10</sup> Also, if the auditor performs walkthroughs during the audit of internal control,<sup>11</sup> he or she could obtain information about potential management override by asking employees about their knowledge of override. Also, the auditor might identify indications of management override when evaluating the results of tests of controls or other audit procedures.

If the auditor identifies indications of management override of controls, he or she should take such indications into account when evaluating the risk of override and the effectiveness of mitigating actions.<sup>12</sup>

---

#### **Example 3-1 — Audit Committee Oversight**

Scenario: The audit committee of a small utility company discusses in executive session at least annually its assessment of the risks of management override of internal control, including motivations for management override and how those activities could be concealed. The audit committee performs the following procedures to address the risk of management override: (a) reviews the reasonableness of management's assumptions and judgments used to develop significant estimates; and (b) reviews the functioning of the company's whistleblower process and related reports, and from time to time, inquires of managers not directly responsible for financial reporting (including personnel in sales, procurement, and human resources, among others), obtaining information regarding concerns about ethics or indications of management override of internal controls.<sup>13</sup>

Audit approach: In this situation, the auditor can draw upon several sources of evidence to evaluate the audit committee's oversight. The auditor might attend selected meetings of the audit committee where the risks of override and whistleblower programs are discussed or review minutes of meetings where those matters are discussed. In connection with its inquiries of the audit committee about the risk of fraud, as required by AU sec. 316, the auditor can discuss matters relating to the risk of override, including how the audit committee assesses the risk of management override, what information, if any, the audit committee has obtained about possible management override, and how the audit committee's concerns about the risk of management override have been addressed. This information can inform the auditor's consideration of the risk of management override and the testing of mitigating controls.

---

---

<sup>10</sup> See AU sec. 316.57–.66.

<sup>11</sup> Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 34, sets forth the objectives that should be achieved to further understand likely sources of misstatement and as part of selecting controls to test. The standard states that performing walkthroughs will frequently be the most effective way to achieve the objectives in paragraph 34. Paragraphs 37–38 of Auditing Standard No. 5 provide direction on walkthroughs.

<sup>12</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 15.

<sup>13</sup> Adapted from the COSO Small Companies Guidance, Volume II: Guidance, page 26.

## Chapter 4

### Evaluating Segregation of Duties and Alternative Controls

Segregation of duties refers to dividing incompatible functions among different people to reduce the risk that a potential material misstatement of the financial statements would occur without being prevented or detected. Assigning different people responsibility for authorizing transactions, recording transactions, reconciling information, and maintaining custody of assets reduces the opportunity for any one employee to conceal errors or perpetrate fraud in the normal course of his or her duties.<sup>1</sup>

When a person performs two or more incompatible duties, the effectiveness of some controls might be impaired. For example, reconciliation procedures may not effectively meet the control objectives if they are performed by someone who also has responsibilities for transaction recording or asset custody.

#### ***Smaller, Less Complex Companies' Approach to Segregation of Duties***

By their nature, smaller, less complex companies have fewer employees, which limits their opportunities to implement segregation of duties. Due to these personnel restrictions, smaller, less complex companies might approach the control objectives relevant to segregation of duties in a different manner from larger, more complex companies. Despite personnel limitations, some smaller, less complex companies might still divide incompatible functions by using the services of external parties. Other smaller, less complex companies might implement alternative controls intended to achieve the same objectives as segregation of duties for certain processes.

This chapter discusses the auditor's evaluation of the company's approach to achieving the objectives of segregation of duties at a smaller, less complex company.

#### **Audit Strategy Considerations**

It is generally beneficial for the auditor and the company to identify concerns related to segregation of duties early in the audit process to allow the auditor to design procedures that effectively respond to those concerns. Also, management might have already identified, as part of its risk assessment, risks relating to inadequate segregation of duties and alternative controls that respond to those risks. Where walkthroughs are performed, those procedures can help identify matters related to segregation of duties.

When management implements an alternative control or combination of controls that address the same objectives as segregation of duties, the auditor should evaluate whether the alternative control or controls effectively meet the related control objectives.<sup>2</sup> The auditor's approach to evaluating those alternative control or controls depends on the control objectives, the nature of the controls, and the associated risks. The following sections of this chapter discuss how the auditor can evaluate common approaches to the objectives of segregation of duties.

---

<sup>1</sup> See the COSO Small Companies Guidance, Volume II: Guidance, page 5, for discussion of management's actions relevant to segregation of duties issues.

<sup>2</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 42.

### ***Use of External Resources***

Some small companies use external parties to assist with some of their financial reporting-related functions. Use of external parties also can help achieve segregation of certain incompatible duties without investing in additional full-time resources.

A company might use one or more types of external-party arrangements in meeting its control objectives. Consultants, other professionals, or temporary employees can assist companies in performing some controls or other duties. For more complex or specialized portions of internal control, such as cash receipts handling, payroll processing, or securities recordkeeping, the company might use an external party to perform an entire function.

When controls over a relevant assertion depend on the use of an external party to perform a particular function, the auditor could evaluate that function in relation to the company's other relevant controls and procedures. The audit approach used with respect to the externally performed function depends on the circumstances. For those controls that are documented or are observable by the auditor (e.g., controls performed by external professionals at the company's premises), the auditor's evaluation may be similar to what he or she could perform for the company's other controls. For some externally performed functions, the direction relating to use of service organizations may be relevant.<sup>3</sup>

### ***Management Oversight and Review***

A smaller, less complex company might address some segregation of duties matters through alternative controls involving management oversight and review activities, e.g., reviewing transactions, checking reconciliations, reviewing transaction reports, or taking periodic asset counts.<sup>4</sup> Many of those types of management activities could be entity-level controls. Chapter 2 discusses the auditor's evaluation of entity-level controls at a smaller, less complex company.<sup>5</sup> Example 4-1 below, and Example 5-1 in Chapter 5 illustrate the testing of certain types of alternative controls.

When the auditor applies a top-down approach to select the controls to test, starting at the financial statement level and evaluating entity-level controls,<sup>6</sup> the auditor might identify entity-level controls that are designed to operate at a level of precision to effectively address the risk of misstatement for one or more relevant assertions. In those cases, the auditor could select and test those entity-level controls rather than test the process controls that could be affected by inadequate segregation of duties.

---

<sup>3</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs B17 – B27, for discussion of the auditor's consideration of a company's use of a service organization in an audit of internal control.

<sup>4</sup> See the COSO Small Companies Guidance, Volume II: Guidance, page 5, for examples of the types of management actions that might be used as alternatives to segregation of duties.

<sup>5</sup> As discussed in Chapter 2, controls related to the control environment and controls over the risk of management override are particularly important to the effective functioning of the controls performed by senior management. Chapter 3 discusses assessing the risk of management override and evaluating mitigating controls.

<sup>6</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 21.

---

**Example 4-1 — Alternative Controls over Inventory**

Scenario: A provider of office furnishings and equipment uses a locked storeroom to store certain key components. The person responsible for the components has access to both the storeroom and the related accounting records. To address the risks related to undetected loss of components, the manager responsible for purchasing performs periodic spot-checks of the components and reconciles them to the general ledger in addition to the inventory ledger. The components also are included in the company's year-end inventory count. IT access controls are implemented to prevent the person responsible for the components from entering transactions or modifying related account balances in the general ledger.<sup>7</sup>

Audit approach: The auditor observes the company's year-end inventory counting process. He inspects documentation for some of the periodic spot-checks and the related reconciliations. For discrepancies in the counts or reconciliations inspected, he performs inquiries and inspects the accounting records to determine whether those items were appropriately resolved. Relevant IT access controls are evaluated in connection with the evaluation of IT general controls. (See Chapter 5.)

---

---

<sup>7</sup> Adapted from the COSO Small Companies Guidance, Volume II: Guidance, page 60.

## Chapter 5

### Auditing Information Technology Controls in a Less Complex Information Technology Environment

A company's use of information technology (IT) can have a significant effect on the audit of internal control. The IT environment is a consideration in the auditor's risk assessments, selection of controls to test, tests of controls, and other audit procedures.

This chapter discusses the auditor's evaluation of IT controls in a smaller company with a less complex IT environment. It explains how the auditor could decide which IT controls to evaluate and how the auditor could evaluate those controls. In addition, it provides an overview of the major categories of IT controls and related testing considerations for a smaller, less complex IT environment.

#### *Characteristics of Less Complex IT Environments*

In smaller companies, less complex IT environments tend to have the following characteristics:

- *Transaction processing.* Data inputs can be readily compared or reconciled to system outputs. Management tends to rely primarily on manual controls over transaction processing.
- *Software.* The company typically uses off-the-shelf packaged software without programming modification. The packaged software requires relatively little user configuration to implement.<sup>1</sup>
- *Systems configurations and security administration.* Computer systems tend to be centralized in a single location, and there are a limited number of interfaces between systems. Access to systems is typically managed by a limited number of personnel.
- *End-user computing.* The company is relatively more dependent on spreadsheets and other user-developed applications, which are used to initiate, authorize, record, process, and report the results of business operations, and, in many instances, perform straightforward calculations using relatively simple formulas.

The complexity of the IT environment has a significant effect on the risks of misstatement and the controls implemented to address those risks. The auditor's approach in an environment with the preceding characteristics may be different from the approach in a more complex IT environment.

Some smaller, less complex companies outsource certain of their IT functions to service organizations. Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs B17–B27, provides direction on the auditor's consideration of a company's use of a service organization in an audit of internal control.

### Determining the Scope of the Evaluation of IT Controls

The following matters affect the scope of the auditor's evaluation of IT controls in a smaller company with a less complex IT environment—

---

<sup>1</sup> Significant user configuration might create additional risks that require additional controls.

- The risks, i.e., likely sources of misstatement, in the company's IT processes or systems relevant to financial reporting, and the controls that address those risks.<sup>2</sup>
- The reports produced by IT systems that are used by the company for performing important controls over financial reporting.
- The automated controls that the company relies on to maintain effective internal control over financial reporting.

The IT controls that are important to effective internal control over financial reporting generally relate to at least one of the preceding matters, which are discussed in more detail in the following paragraphs. IT control categories and testing procedures are discussed later in this chapter.

### ***IT-Related Risks Affecting Financial Reporting***

Paragraph .19 of AU sec. 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, lists the following types of IT-related risks that could affect the reliability of financial reporting—

- Reliance on systems or programs that are inaccurately processing data, processing inaccurate data, or both;
- Unauthorized access to data that may result in destruction of data or improper changes to data, including the recording of unauthorized or nonexistent transactions or inaccurate recording of transactions;
- Unauthorized changes to data in master files;
- Unauthorized changes to systems or programs;
- Failure to make necessary changes to systems or programs;
- Inappropriate manual intervention;
- Potential loss of data.

The IT-related risks that are reasonably possible to result in material misstatement of the financial statements depend on the nature of the IT environment. In a less complex environment, the auditor could identify many of the risks by understanding the software being used and how it is installed and used by the company.

After understanding the relevant IT-related risks, the auditor should identify the controls that address those risks.<sup>3</sup> These controls could include automated controls and IT-dependent controls and the IT general controls that are important to the effective operation of the selected controls. For example, even the simplest IT environments generally rely on controls that are designed to make sure that necessary software updates are appropriately installed, access controls that are designed to prevent unauthorized changes to financial data, and other controls that address potential loss of data necessary for financial statement preparation.

As the complexity of the software or environment increases, the type and number of potential IT risks increase, which could lead the auditor to devote more attention to IT controls.

---

<sup>2</sup> Auditing Standard No. 5, note to paragraph 36, indicates that the identification of risks and controls within IT is not a separate evaluation. Instead, it is an integral part of the top-down approach used to identify significant accounts and disclosures and their relevant assertions, and the controls to test, as well as to assess risk and allocate audit effort as described by the standard.

<sup>3</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 36.

### ***IT-Dependent Controls***

Many controls that smaller, less complex companies rely on are manual controls. Some of those controls are designed to use information in reports generated by IT systems, and the effectiveness of those controls depends on the accuracy and completeness of the information in the reports. When those IT-dependent controls are selected for testing, it also may be necessary to select controls over the completeness and accuracy of the information in the reports in order to address the risk of misstatement. Example 5-1 presents an illustration involving IT-dependent controls.

### ***Other Automated Controls***

Although smaller, less complex companies tend to rely primarily on manual controls, they could rely on certain automated controls built into the packaged software to achieve some control objectives. For example, software controls can be used to maintain segregation of duties, prevent certain data input errors, or to help make sure that certain types of transactions are properly recorded. The auditor might focus some of his or her testing on these automated controls and the IT general controls that are important to the effective operation of the automated controls.<sup>4</sup>

### ***Consideration of Deficiencies in General Controls on Tests of Other Controls***

IT general controls support operation of the application controls by ensuring the proper access to, and functioning of, the company's IT systems. Deficiencies in the IT general controls may result in deficiencies in the operation of the automated or IT-dependent controls. One of the factors in the auditor's evaluation of the identified deficiencies in the IT general controls, is the interaction of an IT general control and the related automated or IT-dependent controls.<sup>5</sup>

In some situations, an automated or IT-dependent control might be effective even if deficiencies exist in IT general controls. For example, despite the presence of deficient program change controls, the auditor might directly test the related automated or IT-dependent manual control, giving consideration to the risk associated with the deficient change controls in his or her risk assessment and audit strategy. If the testing results were satisfactory, the auditor could conclude that the automated or IT-dependent manual controls operated effectively at that point in time e.g., as of the issuer's fiscal year end. On the other hand, deficient program change controls might result in unauthorized changes to application controls, in which case the auditor could conclude that the application controls are ineffective.

---

<sup>4</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 47.

<sup>5</sup> According to paragraph 65 of Auditing Standard No. 5, one of the risk factors that affects the severity of a deficiency is "The interaction or relationship of the control with other controls, including whether they are interdependent or redundant."

---

**Example 5-1 — IT-Dependent Controls**

Scenario: A company has a small finance department. For the accounting processes that have a higher risk of misstatement, senior management performs a number of business process reviews and analyses to detect misstatements in transaction processing.

The company has a small IT department that supports a packaged financial reporting system whose software code cannot be altered by the user. Since the company uses packaged software, and there have been no changes to the system or processes in the past year, the IT general controls relevant to the audit of the internal control over financial reporting are limited to certain access controls and certain computer operation controls related to identification and correction of processing errors. Management uses several system-generated reports in the business performance reviews, but these reports are embedded in the application and programmed by the vendor and cannot be altered.

Audit Approach: The auditor determines that senior management personnel performing the business process reviews and analyses are not involved with incompatible functions or duties that impair their ability to detect misstatements. Based on the auditor's knowledge of the financial reporting system and understanding of the transaction flows affecting the relevant assertions, the auditor selects for testing certain process reviews and analyses and certain controls over the completeness and accuracy of the information in the reports used in management's reviews. The tests of controls could include, for example –

- Evaluating management's review procedures including assessing whether those controls operate at an appropriate level of precision. (See Chapter 2.)
- Evaluating how the company assures itself regarding the completeness and accuracy of the information in the reports used by management in the reviews. Matters that might be relevant to this evaluation include how the company determines that –

The data included in the report are accurate and complete. This evaluation might be accomplished through testing controls over the initiation, authorization, processing, and recording of the respective transactions that feed into the report.

The relevant computer settings established by the software user are consistent with the objectives of management's review. For example, if management's review is based on items in an exception report, the reliability of the report depends on whether the settings for reporting exceptions are appropriate.

The auditor verifies that the code in the packaged software cannot be changed by the user. The auditor also evaluates the IT general controls that are important to the effective operation of the IT-dependent controls (such as the access controls and operations controls previously described).

---

## Categories of IT Controls

The remaining sections of this chapter discuss major categories of IT controls and considerations for testing them in a smaller, less complex IT environment.

### ***IT General Controls***

IT general controls are broad controls over general IT activities, such as security and access, computer operations, and systems development and system changes.

#### *Security and Access*

Security and access controls are controls over operating systems, critical applications, supporting databases, and networks that help ensure that access to applications and data is restricted to authorized personnel.

In a small, less complex IT environment, security administration is likely to be centralized, and policies and procedures might be documented informally. A small number of people or a single individual typically supports security

administration and monitoring on a part-time basis. Controls for mitigating the risk caused by a lack of segregation of duties over operating systems, data, and applications tend to be detective controls rather than preventive. Access controls tend to be monitored informally.

Tests of security and access controls could include evaluating the general system security settings and password parameters; evaluating the process for adding, deleting, and changing security access; and evaluating the access capabilities of various types of users.

#### *Computer Operations*

Computer operations controls relate to day-to-day operations and help ensure that computer operational activities are performed as intended, processing errors are identified and corrected in a timely manner, and continuity of financial reporting data is maintained through effective data backup and recovery procedures.

A smaller, less complex IT environment might not have a formal operations function. There might not be formal policies regarding problem management or data storage and retention, and backup procedures tend to be initiated manually.

Tests of controls over computer operations could include evaluating the backup and recovery processes, reviewing the process of identifying and handling operational problems, and, if applicable, assessing control over job scheduling.

#### *Systems Development and System Changes*

Systems development and system change controls are controls over systems selection, design, implementation, and configuration changes that help ensure that new systems are appropriately developed, configured, approved, and migrated into production, and controls over changes—whether to applications, supporting databases, or operating systems—that help to ensure that those changes are properly authorized and approved, tested, and implemented. Although they might be viewed as separate categories, in less complex environments, systems development and system change procedures often are combined for ease of implementation, training, and ongoing maintenance.

A smaller, less complex IT environment typically includes a single or small number of off-the-shelf packaged applications that do not allow for modification of source code. Modifications to software are prepared by and, in some cases, implemented by, the software vendor in the form of updates or patches or via a network connection between the vendor and the organization. Typically, a small number of individuals or a single individual (employees or consultants) support all development and production activities.

Examples of possible tests of controls over systems development and system changes include examining the processes for selecting, acquiring, and installing new software; evaluating the process for implementing software upgrades or patches; determining whether upgrades and patches are authorized and implemented on a timely basis; and assessing the process for testing new applications and updates.

### ***Application Controls***

Application controls are automated or IT-dependent controls intended to help ensure that transactions are properly initiated, authorized, recorded, processed, and reported. For example, in a three-way match process, received vendor invoices are entered into the system, which matches them automatically to the purchase order and goods receipt based on the document reference numbers, price, and quantity. The system's simultaneous matching of the

information within the three documents upon their entry to authorize a payment to the vendor is an automated application control. Management's review and reconciliation of an exception report generated by the system is an example of an IT-dependent manual control.<sup>6</sup>

The general nature of application controls tends to be similar in most IT environments, although in less complex environments, the controls tend to be manual and detective rather than automated and preventive. The testing procedures also could be similar. In most IT environments, the auditor could focus on error correction procedures over inputting, authorizing, recording, processing, and reporting of transactions when evaluating application controls. However, in less complex IT environments there might be fewer financial applications affecting relevant assertions and fewer application controls within those applications.

Regardless of the complexity of the IT environment, the audit plan for testing application controls could include a combination of inquiry, observation, document inspection, and re-performance of the controls. Efficiencies can be achieved through altering the nature, timing, and extent of testing procedures performed related to automated and IT-dependent application controls if IT general controls are designed and operating effectively. In some situations, benchmarking of certain automated controls might be an appropriate audit strategy.<sup>7</sup>

### ***End-User Computing Controls***

End-user computing refers to a variety of user-based computer applications, including spreadsheets, databases, ad-hoc queries, stand-alone desktop applications, and other user-based applications. These applications might be used as the basis for making journal entries or preparing other financial statement information. End-user computing is especially prevalent in smaller, less complex companies.

End-user computing controls are controls over spreadsheets and other user-developed applications that help ensure that such applications are adequately documented, secured, backed up, and reviewed regularly for process integrity. Enduser computing controls include general and application controls over user-developed spreadsheets and applications.

Tests of controls over end-user computing could include assessing access controls to prevent unauthorized access; testing of controls over spreadsheet formulas or logic of queries and scripts; testing of controls over the completeness and accuracy of information reported by the end-user computing applications; and reviewing the procedures for backing up the applications and data.

---

<sup>6</sup> See Example 5-1 for an illustration of how those types of controls might be tested in a small, less complex IT environment.

<sup>7</sup> Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs B28–B33, discuss benchmarking of automated controls.

## Chapter 6

### Considering Financial Reporting Competencies and Their Effects on Internal Control

To maintain effective internal control over financial reporting, a company needs to retain individuals who are competent in financial reporting and related oversight roles.<sup>1</sup> Smaller, less complex companies can face challenges in recruiting and retaining individuals with sufficient experience and skill in accounting and financial reporting. Also, resource limitations might prevent a smaller, less complex company from employing personnel who are familiar with the accounting required for unique, complex, or nonroutine transactions or relevant changes in rules, regulations, and accounting practices. Smaller, less complex companies might address their needs for financial reporting competencies through means other than internal staffing, such as engaging outside professionals.

This chapter discusses the auditor's consideration of financial reporting competencies at a smaller, less complex company, including situations in which a smaller, less complex company enlists outside assistance in financial reporting matters.

### Understanding and Evaluating a Company's Financial Reporting Competencies

The evaluation of competence is one aspect of evaluating the control environment and the operating effectiveness of certain controls. For example, when evaluating entity-level controls, such as risk assessment and the period-end financial reporting process, the auditor could obtain information about whether—

- Management identifies the relevant financial reporting issues on a timely basis (e.g., issues arising from new transactions or lines of business or changes to accounting standards); and
- Management has the competence to ensure that events and transactions are properly accounted for and that financial statements and related disclosures are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (“GAAP”).

For recurring clients, the auditor's experience in prior audit engagements can be a source of information regarding management's financial reporting competencies. The auditor could be aware of specific accounts or disclosures that have caused problems in prior engagements, or of management's response to past changes in accounting pronouncements. These experiences can inform the auditor about management's financial reporting competencies, including whether and how management identifies and responds to financial reporting risks. The procedures performed to evaluate the period-end financial reporting process also could be valuable to the evaluation of financial reporting competency.

The auditor's inquiries and observations pertaining to the company's overall commitment to competence, which is part of the evaluation of the control environment, also can inform the auditor's assessment of financial competency. The auditor can consider whether and how the company and management—

---

<sup>1</sup> See e.g., Principle 5 of the COSO Small Companies Guidance.

- Establish and agree on the knowledge, skills and abilities needed to carry out the required responsibilities prior to hiring individuals for key financial reporting positions,
- Train employees involved in financial reporting processes and provide them with the appropriate tools and resources to perform their responsibilities, and
- Periodically review and evaluate employees relative to their assigned roles, including whether the audit committee (or board of directors) evaluates the competencies of individuals in key financial reporting roles, such as the chief executive and financial reporting officers.

Auditors may keep in mind that company financial reporting personnel do not need to be experts in all areas of accounting and financial reporting but need to be sufficiently competent with respect to the accounting for current and anticipated transactions and changes in accounting standards to identify and address the risks of misstatement.

## Supplementing Competencies with Assistance from Outside Professionals

Some smaller, less complex companies might not have personnel on staff with experience in certain complex accounting matters that are encountered. In these circumstances, a company might engage outside professionals to provide the necessary expertise (i.e., an individual or firm possessing special skill or knowledge in the particular accounting and financial reporting matter).<sup>2</sup> When assessing the competence of the personnel responsible for the company's financial reporting and associated controls, the auditor may consider the combined competence of company personnel and other parties that assist with functions related to financial reporting.

When an outside professional provides accounting assistance related to relevant assertions or the period-end financial reporting process, the auditor might begin by considering how the company assures itself that events and transactions are properly accounted for and that financial statements and the related disclosures are free of material misstatement. The company might have differing levels of involvement with outside professionals, depending upon the nature of the services provided. The auditor could evaluate management's oversight to determine whether the company, with the assistance of the professional, is adequately identifying and responding to risks.<sup>3</sup> In performing this evaluation, the auditor can consider—

- Whether management recognizes situations for which additional expertise is needed to adequately identify and address risks of misstatement.
- How management determines that the outside professionals possess the necessary qualifications. For example, management might obtain information from the professional about his or her skills and competence.

---

<sup>2</sup> This section of the chapter does not pertain to management's use of a service organization that supports routine accounting functions, such as processing payroll transactions or supporting the company's information technology systems. It also does not apply to management's use of specialists in matters outside of accounting and financial reporting, such as actuaries, engineers, environmental consultants, and geologists. See Auditing Standard No. 5, AU sec. 324, *Service Organizations*, and AU sec. 336, *Using the Work of Specialists*, for direction on these matters.

<sup>3</sup> If the audit committee has oversight over the use of service providers, the auditor may also consider the nature and extent of that oversight.

- Whom management designates to oversee the services and whether they possess the suitable skill, knowledge, or experience to sufficiently oversee the outside professionals. (Note: Management is not required to possess the expertise to perform or re-perform the services.)
- Whether management has established controls over the work of the outside accounting professional and over the completeness and accuracy of the information provided to the outside professional. For example, in addition to reviewing the work of the outside professional, management might inquire about the professional's monitoring and review procedures related to the work performed by the professional for the company.
- How management participates in matters involving judgment, for example, whether management understands and makes significant assumptions and judgments underlying accounting calculations prepared by an outside professional.
- How management evaluates the adequacy and the results of the services performed, including the form and content of the outside accounting professional's findings, and accepts responsibility for the results of the services.

In gathering evidence to support this evaluation, the auditor could hold discussions with both management and the outside professional, perhaps while obtaining an understanding of the period-end financial reporting process. The auditor also could inspect documentation that provides support for management's oversight of the outside professional.<sup>4</sup>

---

**Example 6-1 — Assistance from Outside Professionals**

**Scenario:** A small developer of analytical software products does not have an individual with strong tax accounting expertise on staff. The company retains a thirdparty accounting firm (not its auditor) to prepare the income tax provision. Management obtains information from the third-party accounting firm about the training and experience of the staff assigned to do this work. The company's CFO, who has basic knowledge of tax accounting, reviews and discusses the tax provision with the accounting firm that prepared it, and compares the provision to CFO's expectations based on past periods, budgets, and knowledge of business operations.<sup>5</sup>

**Audit Approach:** The auditor observes that management identifies risks to financial reporting related to accounting for income taxes and engages an outside professional to provide technical assistance. Further, the auditor evaluates management's oversight to determine whether the company, with the assistance of the professional, is adequately identifying and responding to risks of material misstatement regarding the income tax provision. As part of this evaluation, the auditor inspects the engagement letter, other correspondence between the company and the third-party firm, and the tax schedules and other information produced by the third-party firm. The auditor also evaluates the controls over the completeness and accuracy of the information furnished by the company to the third-party firm. The auditor also assesses whether the third-party accounting firm has the proper skills and staff assigned to do this work.

---

---

<sup>4</sup> Refer to Chapter 7 for discussion of how the auditor can obtain sufficient evidence when less formal documentation is available.

<sup>5</sup> Adapted from the COSO Small Companies Guidance, Volume II: Guidance, page 34.

## Chapter 7

### Obtaining Sufficient Competent Evidence When the Company Has Less Formal Documentation

Implementing and assessing effective internal control over financial reporting by a company's management generally involves some level of documentation. A smaller, less complex company often has different needs for documentation, and the nature of that documentation might differ from that of a larger or more complex organization. Differences in the form and extent of control documentation of smaller, less complex companies generally relate to their operating characteristics, particularly to fewer resources and more direct interaction of senior management with controls.<sup>1</sup>

The nature and extent of a company's documentation of internal control over financial reporting can have a significant effect on the auditor's strategy regarding the audit of internal control. This chapter discusses how the auditor could adapt his or her audit strategy to obtain sufficient competent evidence in an environment with less formal documentation.

#### Audit Strategy Considerations

The auditor must plan and perform the audit to obtain competent evidence that is sufficient to obtain reasonable assurance about whether material weaknesses exist as of the date specified in management's assessment.<sup>2</sup> The auditor can obtain this evidence through direct testing or using the work of others, as appropriate. Procedures the auditor could perform to test operating effectiveness include a mix of inquiry of appropriate personnel, observation of the company's operations, inspection of relevant documentation, and re-performance of the control. The nature, timing, and extent of tests of controls depend on the risk associated with the controls. As the risk associated with the control being tested increases, the evidence that the auditor should obtain also increases.<sup>3</sup>

PCAOB standards establish the documentation requirements for these audits. Those documentation requirements apply only to the auditor.

#### *Documentation of Processes and Controls*

Larger companies with complex operations are more likely to have formal documentation of their processes and controls, such as in-depth policy manuals and systems flowcharts of processes. In a smaller, less complex company, documentation of processes and controls might take a variety of forms. For example, information about processes and controls might be found in other documentation, such as memoranda, questionnaires, software manuals, source documents, or job descriptions. This documentation might not cover every process and might not be in a consistent form across all processes.

Where walkthroughs are performed, auditors could use those procedures to obtain an understanding of the flow of transactions affecting relevant assertions and to assess the design effectiveness of certain controls, even when documentation is limited.

---

<sup>1</sup> The COSO Small Companies Guidance, Volume II: Guidance, pages 12–13, discusses circumstances that affect the need for documentation of internal control.

<sup>2</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 3.

<sup>3</sup> Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 46. Paragraph 47 discusses the factors that affect the risk associated with a control.

### ***Documentation of Operating Effectiveness of Controls***

In a smaller, less complex business, the nature and extent of documentation of the operating effectiveness of controls may vary. Also, evidence of a control's operation might exist only for a limited period.

The type and availability of evidence regarding controls to be tested can affect the auditor's testing strategy.<sup>4</sup> In particular, company documentation can influence the nature and timing of audit procedures performed. For example, the nature of some audit procedures e.g., document inspection, requires documentation. Also, the timing of some tests of controls might be determined, in part, based on when the evidence of the controls' operation is available.

Obtaining sufficient evidence about the operating effectiveness of controls can be challenging when there is limited documentation of their operation. In those situations, inquiry combined with other procedures, such as observation of activities, inspection of documentation produced or used by the controls,<sup>5</sup> and reperformance of certain controls, might provide sufficient evidence about whether a control is effective.

As a practical matter, the auditor also needs to obtain documentation of the work of others to use that work to reduce the auditor's own testing.<sup>6</sup>

### ***Other Considerations***

When auditing a smaller, less complex company with limited documentation, it generally is helpful to obtain an understanding of the nature and availability of audit evidence relating to internal control over financial reporting as early in the audit process as practical. This understanding ordinarily includes consideration of existing documentation regarding—

- Company processes and procedures, particularly for transactions affecting relevant assertions and controls that the auditor is likely to select for testing
- Monitoring of other controls performed by management or others

The auditor can then identify gaps in important documentation so alternatives can be explored. For example, if the CFO prepares contemporaneous documentation of certain controls and retains it for a limited period, the auditor might arrange to obtain access to that documentation for testing purposes. Early conversations with management about these matters can help provide auditors with the most flexibility in developing efficient and effective audit strategies.

If the company does not have formal documentation of its processes and controls, the auditor may consider whether other documentation is available before drafting formal descriptions of processes and controls for the audit documentation. A practical way to identify such other documentation is to look at the information that the company uses to run the business.

As discussed in Chapter 1, one of the practical considerations when selecting controls to test and determining the nature, timing, and extent of testing is the nature and availability of evidence of operating effectiveness. For example, if two or more controls adequately address the risk of misstatement for a relevant

---

<sup>4</sup> As discussed in Chapter 8, a pervasive lack of documentation and other audit evidence could prevent the auditor from being able to obtain sufficient evidence to support an opinion on internal control.

<sup>5</sup> Examples of documentation that might be produced or used by controls include exception reports, memoranda, or documented communications between management and employees.

<sup>6</sup> The auditor's use of the work of others also is dependent on such factors as the nature of the subject matter and the competence and objectivity of the individuals performing the work. See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 16–19.

assertion, the auditor could select the control for which evidence of operating effectiveness can be obtained more readily.

---

**Example 7-1 — Obtaining Information about Processes and Controls**

**Scenario:** A small manufacturer in the electronics industry periodically makes large purchases of specialty components. The company has established procedures covering the initiation, authorization, and recording of these purchases, although the company has not developed an in-depth policies and procedures manual. The company's procedures provide for completion of a form that describes the product requirements and payment terms and indicates how to record the purchase. The forms are reviewed and approved by the CEO and CFO before the purchase is executed. When the goods are received, they are matched with the purchase form and accounted for as indicated on the form.

**Audit Approach:** The auditor inspects a copy of a completed purchase form and related documentation to obtain an initial understanding of the flow of the purchase transactions. She follows up with inquiries of personnel involved in the process of authorizing, sending, and accounting for the purchases and traces the recording of the transactions through the accounting system. She summarizes her understanding of the transaction flow in a memo and includes a copy of a purchase form in the workpapers. The auditor uses her understanding of the purchase process to plan and perform tests of selected controls over the purchases.

---

---

**Example 7-2 — Obtaining Evidence about Operating Effectiveness of Controls**

**Scenario:** One control that management relies on with respect to the period-end financial reporting process is the CFO's review of the quarterly financial statements prepared by the controller. The CFO does not create separate documentation of her review but does retain copies of the financial statements with her handwritten notes and other markings for reference purposes. She sends her review comments to the controller via email, and the company's email system retains the email messages. If errors are identified, the controller prepares adjusting entries, which are approved by the CFO.

Each quarter, the CFO and controller prepare and present to the audit committee a financial package, explaining significant trends in the company's financial condition, operating results, and cash flows, as well as comparisons to budgeted amounts and comparable prior periods.

**Audit Approach:** The auditor can draw upon multiple sources of audit evidence to evaluate whether the control is in place and operating effectively to detect errors in the period-end financial reporting process. He can make inquiries of the CFO to obtain an understanding of the frequency, nature, timing, and level of precision<sup>7</sup> of the CFO's review. He can corroborate this understanding and evaluate the operating effectiveness of the review by, for selected items, inspecting copies of the reviewed drafts of the financial statements, reviewing comments sent to the controller, and reviewing adjusting entries and supporting information. He can also talk to other employees to find out if the CFO contacts them to ask questions, what types of questions are asked, and how those questions are resolved. In addition, he can read the information in the financial package delivered to the audit committee and might observe the CFO's financial review with the audit committee, if the auditor attends the meetings in connection with the audit.

---

---

<sup>7</sup> Level of precision is discussed in more detail in Chapter 2.

## Chapter 8

### Auditing Smaller, Less Complex Companies with Pervasive Control Deficiencies

In some audits of internal control, auditors might encounter companies with numerous or pervasive deficiencies in internal control over financial reporting. Smaller, less complex companies can be particularly affected by ineffective entity-level controls, as these companies typically have fewer employees and fewer process-level controls.

Auditing internal control over financial reporting in companies with pervasive deficiencies can be challenging. The auditor's strategy is influenced by the nature of the control deficiencies and factors such as the effect of the deficiencies on other controls and the availability of audit evidence. Although the facts and circumstances can vary significantly, the auditor might not be able to express an unqualified opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting in some of these situations.<sup>1</sup>

This chapter discusses how auditors could design their audit strategies in response to situations involving pervasive deficiencies.

#### Pervasive Deficiencies that Result in Material Weaknesses

The auditor's objective in an audit of internal control is to express an opinion on the effectiveness of the company's internal control over financial reporting. Because a company's internal control over financial reporting cannot be considered effective if one or more material weaknesses exist, to form a basis for expressing an opinion, the auditor must plan and perform the audit to obtain competent evidence that is sufficient to obtain reasonable assurance about whether material weaknesses exist as of the date specified in management's assessment.<sup>2</sup>

Ordinarily, the auditor's strategy should include tests of controls as necessary to support a conclusion that internal control over financial reporting is effective.<sup>3</sup> However, the auditor's existing knowledge of the company or information obtained early in the audit process might lead an auditor to a preliminary judgment that internal control over financial reporting is likely to be ineffective because of the presence of pervasive control deficiencies that result in one or more material weaknesses. In those situations, the auditor's strategy for testing selected controls may depend on the effect of the pervasive deficiencies on other controls, as discussed in the following paragraphs.

#### *Considering the Effect of Pervasive Control Deficiencies on Other Controls*

When the auditor encounters pervasive control deficiencies, he or she might decide that those deficiencies also impair the effectiveness of other controls by rendering their design ineffective or by keeping them from operating effectively. For example, certain deficient entity-level controls, such as the following, might impair the effectiveness of other controls over relevant assertions:

---

<sup>1</sup> To enable the auditor to express an unqualified opinion on internal control, the company would need to remediate all of its material weaknesses early enough before year-end to enable the auditor to obtain sufficient competent audit evidence about the remediated controls to support an unqualified opinion on internal control over financial reporting.

<sup>2</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 3.

<sup>3</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 39.

- *Ineffective control environment (considering the risk profile of the company).* An ineffective control environment can increase the risk associated with a control by rendering its design ineffective or preventing it from operating effectively. Also, certain controls in the control environment, such as maintaining financial reporting competencies, might be necessary for the effective functioning of other controls.
- *Ineffective IT controls or information systems.* Ineffective information systems could impair the effectiveness of certain IT-dependent controls (e.g., monitoring controls that rely on the reports produced by an ineffective information system).
- *Pervasive lack of segregation of duties without appropriate alternative controls.* When a person performs two or more incompatible duties, the design of some controls might be ineffective without appropriate alternative controls.
- *Frequent management override of controls.* A control that is frequently overridden is less likely to operate effectively. The effectiveness of controls that depend on an overridden control also might be impaired.

The top-down audit approach can help the auditor identify pervasive control deficiencies earlier in the audit process and take them into account in determining the audit approach for testing other controls.

The auditor's preliminary judgments regarding the effect of the pervasive control deficiencies can help determine the approach to gathering audit evidence. When the pervasive control deficiencies adversely affect other controls, the auditor may modify the planned testing of the other controls because less evidence generally is needed to support a conclusion that controls are not effective than a conclusion that controls are effective.<sup>4</sup> For example, if a control is likely to be impaired because of another control's deficiency, the inquiries and observations during walkthroughs might provide enough evidence to conclude that the design of a control is deficient and thus could not prevent or detect misstatements. In some cases, limited testing of a control might be necessary (e.g., if a walkthrough has not been performed) to conclude that a control is not operating effectively. Also, detected misstatements from the audit of the financial statements could indicate that a control is not effective.

Some companies might have pervasive control deficiencies and still have effective controls over some relevant assertions. For the selected controls that are likely to be effective, the auditor should test those controls to obtain the evidence necessary to support a conclusion about their operating effectiveness.<sup>5</sup> The pervasive control deficiencies may affect the risk associated with the controls selected for testing, and, in turn, the amount of audit evidence needed. Example 8-1 discusses the effect of pervasive control deficiencies on tests of controls.

## Scope Limitation Due to Lack of Sufficient Audit Evidence

Pervasive deficiencies in a company's internal control over financial reporting do not necessarily prevent an auditor from obtaining sufficient audit evidence to express an opinion on internal control over financial reporting. If the auditor determines that sufficient evidence is available to express an opinion, the auditor should perform tests of those controls that are important to the auditor's conclusion about the effectiveness of the company's internal control

---

<sup>4</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 46 and 47.

<sup>5</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 39.

over financial reporting and evaluate the severity of the identified control deficiencies.<sup>6</sup>

In some audits of companies with pervasive control deficiencies, the auditor could become aware that there is minimal available evidence about the design and operation of internal control over financial reporting. Such situations could lead the auditor to conclude that the lack of available evidence constitutes a scope limitation that will prevent him or her from obtaining reasonable assurance necessary to express an opinion on internal control over financial reporting, including identification of existing material weaknesses.

The auditor may issue a report disclaiming an opinion on internal control over financial reporting as soon as the auditor concludes that a scope limitation will prevent the auditor from obtaining the reasonable assurance necessary to express an opinion.<sup>7</sup> The auditor is not required to perform any additional work before issuing a disclaimer when the auditor concludes that he or she will not be able to obtain sufficient evidence to express an opinion. The auditor's report should disclaim an opinion on internal control and disclose the substantive reasons for the disclaimer. The report also should disclose the material weaknesses of which the auditor is aware.<sup>8</sup>

Even if the auditor lacks sufficient evidence to express an opinion on internal control, the auditor might still be able to obtain sufficient evidence to perform an audit of the financial statements. The auditor should, however, take into account the control deficiencies and issues encountered in the audit of internal control in assessing control risk and determining the nature, timing, and extent of tests of accounts and disclosures in the audit of the financial statements.<sup>9</sup>

Example 8-2 illustrates a situation in which the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient evidence to express an opinion on internal control over financial reporting.

---

<sup>6</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 22, 39, and 62.

<sup>7</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph C6.

<sup>8</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph C5, for the specific requirements regarding the disclosures of the material weaknesses.

<sup>9</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph B5.

---

**Example 8-1 — Pervasive Deficiencies and Testing of Controls**

Scenario: A small company has a two-person staff that handles all of the accounting and financial reporting duties. The staff is competent in routine financial reporting matters but has difficulty with more complex accounting matters, such as valuation of stock-based compensation and income tax calculations and disclosures. The lack of competencies in these areas has resulted in adjustments based on the auditor's identification of material misstatements.<sup>10</sup>

Audit Approach: Based on the auditor's experience with the company, she expects that controls over the valuation/allocation and disclosures related to stock-based compensation and income taxes will not be effective. For those assertions, the auditor obtains evidence about the respective controls during a walkthrough of the related process. Also, misstatements in those assertions were detected in the financial statement audit, and she observes that the controls failed to prevent or detect those misstatements. Based on this evidence, she concludes that the controls over those assertions are not effective.

With respect to routine financial reporting processes, such as cash receipts and disbursements, the auditor plans to perform tests of the selected controls to obtain enough evidence to support a conclusion that the respective controls are effective.

---

---

**Example 8-2 — Lack of Sufficient Audit Evidence**

Scenario: A development stage company is devoted exclusively to research and development for a new product and currently generates no revenue. The financial staff consists of a CFO and accounting clerk. The company's principal accounting records consist of a checkbook and payroll records, and the company has no documentation of policies and procedures. Most of its controls are undocumented supervisory checks by the CFO.

Late in the fourth quarter, a management dispute results in the resignation of the CFO and termination of the accounting clerk. Management hires an accountant on a temporary contract basis to prepare financial statements from the company's existing records and to help the company establish appropriate controls over its financial reporting functions. However, most of these controls were implemented near or shortly after year-end.

Audit Approach: As the auditor begins trying to obtain an understanding of the company's internal control over financial reporting and evaluate entity-level controls, she notes that there is minimal information available about the controls that existed at yearend. Because of the turnover in financial reporting personnel, the auditor is unable to perform inquiries, observations, or other procedures to understand the flow of transactions and related controls in significant processes. The auditor identifies some material weaknesses, but she determines that the lack of evidence results in a scope limitation because she cannot obtain reasonable assurance that all of the existing material weaknesses are identified.

Accordingly, the auditor ceases further audit procedures in the audit of internal control. The auditor's report on internal control over financial reporting contains a disclaimer of opinion and disclosure of the substantive reasons for the disclaimer and the material weaknesses that she identified.

---

---

<sup>10</sup> Chapter 6 discusses financial reporting competencies in more detail, including approaches that smaller, less complex companies might take to enhance their financial reporting competencies.

## Appendix A

### The Integrated Audit Process

Auditing Standard No. 5 indicates that the audit of internal control should be integrated with the audit of the financial statements. This means that the auditor should plan and perform the work to achieve the objectives of both audits,<sup>1</sup> which are as follows:

- *Audit of the financial statements.* To express an opinion on the fairness with which the financial statements present, in all material respects, financial position, results of operations, and its cash flows in conformity with GAAP.<sup>2</sup>
- *Audit of internal control.* To express an opinion on the effectiveness of the company's internal control over financial reporting.<sup>3</sup>

This appendix illustrates one approach for integrating the audit of internal control with the audit of the financial statements and is not intended to present all of the procedures that are required for a particular audit. Auditors must plan and perform their integrated audits to achieve the objectives of the audits and to comply with standards of the PCAOB.<sup>4</sup>

### Summary of the Illustrative Audit Approach

The integrated audit process can be summarized into the following major components:

- a. Preliminary engagement procedures
- b. Audit planning
- c. Risk assessment procedures
- d. Auditor response, including tests of accounts and controls
- e. Conclusion and wrap-up

### Preliminary Engagement Procedures

Preliminary engagement procedures include the auditor's engagement acceptance process and reaching an understanding with the audit committee about the terms of the engagement, including pre-approval of audit and non-audit services.

During the engagement acceptance process, the auditor might identify matters that could affect the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements or the risk of material weakness in internal control over financial reporting and, thus, could inform the auditor's risk assessments during the audit.

### Audit Planning

During audit planning, the auditor should make a preliminary judgment about materiality. The judgment about materiality is the same for both the audit of the financial statements and the audit of internal control.<sup>5</sup>

The auditor also can develop a preliminary audit strategy and audit plan based on his or her understanding of the company and its environment. The audit

---

<sup>1</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 6 and 7.

<sup>2</sup> See paragraph .01 of AU sec. 110, *Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor*.

<sup>3</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 3.

<sup>4</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 6.

<sup>5</sup> See AU sec. 311.03, AU sec. 312.12–.33, and Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 20.

strategy could cover matters such as general scope and timing of the engagement. The audit strategy and plan could be refined further as the audit progresses.

### ***Risk Assessment Procedures***

Risk assessment procedures are intended to help the auditor identify risks of misstatement and the controls that are in place to address those risks. When performing risk assessment procedures, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the company and its environment, including its internal control.<sup>6</sup> These procedures include walkthroughs, or other procedures, to understand the likely sources of misstatement.<sup>7</sup> It also includes performing preliminary analytical procedures and procedures to assess the risk of material misstatement due to fraud.<sup>8</sup> The auditor's risk identification and assessment should also take into account his or her knowledge about the company and its environment from other sources, such as prior audits.<sup>9</sup>

Based on the auditor's understanding gained through performing the risk assessment procedures and obtaining other evidence, the auditor should assess the identified risks.<sup>10</sup>

The auditor's risk assessments are the basis for the identification of significant accounts and disclosures and relevant assertions as well as the selection of controls to test. Relevant assertions and significant accounts and disclosures should be determined based on whether there is a reasonable possibility that they could contain misstatements that could cause the financial statements to be materially misstated.<sup>11</sup> The identification of relevant assertions and significant accounts<sup>12</sup> is the same for both the audit of internal control and the audit of the financial statements.

Auditing Standard No. 5 states that the auditor should use a top-down approach to the audit of internal control to select the controls to test. A top-down approach begins at the financial statement level and with the auditor's understanding of the overall risks to internal control over financial reporting.<sup>13</sup> The auditor then focuses on entity-level controls and works down to significant accounts and disclosures and their relevant assertions. This approach directs the auditor's attention to accounts, disclosures, and assertions that present a reasonable possibility of material misstatement to the financial statements and related disclosures. The auditor then verifies his or her understanding of the risks in the company's processes and selects for testing those controls that sufficiently address the assessed risk of misstatement to each relevant assertion.

---

<sup>6</sup> See AU sec. 319.25–.61, and Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 9.

<sup>7</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 34–38, for discussion of the objectives of walkthroughs and direction on walkthrough procedures.

<sup>8</sup> See AU sec. 329.06–.08, and AU sec. 316.35–.45.

<sup>9</sup> See AU sec. 311.04 and .08, and AU sec. 319.59.

<sup>10</sup> See AU sec. 312.16 and .26–.33.

<sup>11</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 28–33.

<sup>12</sup> In the financial statement audit, the auditor may perform substantive auditing procedures on financial statement accounts, disclosures, and assertions that are not determined to be significant accounts and disclosures and relevant assertions. This is because his or her assessment of the risk that undetected misstatement would cause the financial statements to be materially misstated is unacceptably high (see AU sec. 312.39 for further discussion about undetected misstatement) or as a means of introducing unpredictability in the procedures performed (see AU sec. 316.50 for further discussion about predictability of auditing procedures).

<sup>13</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 21.

### ***Overall Response to Risks***

Based on the auditor's risk assessment, the auditor should evaluate the need for an overall response to the risks.<sup>14</sup> This evaluation is particularly important for pervasive risks of misstatement, which can affect many financial statement accounts, but it applies to every audit.

The overall responses could affect such aspects of the audit as –

- Assignment of staff
- Level of supervision
- Need for specialists
- Appropriateness of planned audit strategy and scope

### ***Specific Responses – Substantive Procedures and Tests of Controls***

Specific responses to risk relate to the tests of relevant assertions of significant accounts and disclosures (“substantive procedures”) and the controls over those assertions. Auditing Standard No. 5 requires the auditor to obtain evidence about the controls over relevant assertions, and it states that the auditor should perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions, regardless of the assessed level of control risk.<sup>15</sup> The auditor should determine an appropriate mix of the nature, timing, and extent of testing based on the associated risks and other factors.<sup>16</sup> The determination of the nature, timing, and extent of testing includes decisions about using the work of others to test controls in the integrated audit. As the associated risk increases, the evidence that the auditor should obtain also increases.<sup>17</sup>

The relationship between tests of controls and substantive procedures is important to the integration of the audit of internal control with the audit of financial statements. Obtaining sufficient evidence to support control risk assessments of low for purposes of the financial statement audit ordinarily allows the auditor to reduce the amount of substantive procedures that otherwise would have been necessary to opine on the financial statements. On the other hand, deficiencies in the controls that the auditor planned to rely on could lead the auditor to expand his or her substantive procedures.

As discussed in Chapter 1, the results of substantive tests of accounts and disclosures do not provide sufficient evidence for the auditor to conclude on the operating effectiveness of controls. However, the results of substantive tests could affect the auditor's risk assessments associated with the controls. For example, if the results of substantive procedures indicate misstatements in an assertion, evaluating the nature, cause, and significance of the misstatements could lead the auditor to identify a deficiency in the related controls or to modify his or her risk assessments. When no misstatements are detected from substantive procedures for an assertion, the auditor should take that into account along with the factors discussed in paragraphs 46–49 of Auditing Standard No. 5 in considering the risk associated with the related controls, which affects the

---

<sup>14</sup> See AU sec. 312.16.

<sup>15</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph B7.

<sup>16</sup> For example, in the audit of internal control, walkthroughs might provide sufficient evidence of operating effectiveness for some selected controls, depending on the risk associated with the control being tested, the specific procedures performed as part of the walkthrough, and the results of those procedures.

<sup>17</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 46 and 49.

nature, timing, and extent of the testing necessary to conclude on the effectiveness of the controls.<sup>18</sup>

### **Conclusion and Wrap-up**

In the conclusion and wrap-up phase, the auditor should evaluate the results of his or her testing, particularly for identified misstatements and control deficiencies. The auditor should evaluate the misstatements and control deficiencies, individually and in the aggregate. In evaluating the effects of misstatements, the auditor should include both quantitative and qualitative considerations.<sup>19</sup>

Based on the evaluation of the testing results, the auditor should form conclusions about whether—

- The financial statements are materially misstated,
- A material weakness in internal control exists, and
- He or she has obtained sufficient competent evidence to support those conclusions.<sup>20</sup>

The results of each portion of the integrated audit inform the auditor's conclusions about the other portion. For example, the auditor's conclusions about the effectiveness of controls should be based on all of the pertinent information about control effectiveness,<sup>21</sup> including—

- Tests of controls for the audit of internal control,
- Tests of controls for the audit of the financial statements,
- Use of the work of others in either audit, and
- Evidence about control deficiencies resulting from identified misstatements or other sources (e.g., control deficiencies identified by management).

This information could affect the conclusions about control effectiveness as of year-end as well as control risk assessments for the financial statement audit. In some situations, the evaluation of audit results also could lead the auditor to re-evaluate his or her assessments of risk and the sufficiency of the audit procedures performed.

The conclusion and wrap-up phase of the audit also includes completion of the review of the audit and resolution of reviewers' comments.

---

<sup>18</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph B9. This does not mean that the auditor is required to perform substantive procedures for a relevant assertion before performing tests of controls.

<sup>19</sup> See AU sec. 312.34, and Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraphs 62 and B8.

<sup>20</sup> See paragraphs .34–.41 of AU sec. 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraph .01 of AU sec. 326, *Evidential Matter*, and Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 3.

<sup>21</sup> See Auditing Standard No. 5, paragraph 71.

## Appendix B

### Discussion of Comments Received on the Preliminary Staff Views

On October 17, 2007, the staff of the Board's Office of the Chief Auditor published for comment *Preliminary Staff Views – An Audit of Internal Control That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements: Guidance for Auditors of Smaller Public Companies* ("the preliminary guidance"). During the public comment period, 23 comment letters were received from investors, auditors, issuers, and others.

The majority of commenters were supportive of the preliminary guidance. They noted that it appropriately considered the environment of smaller, less complex companies and provided useful examples that will help in designing and executing strategies for the audits of these companies in accordance with the provisions of Auditing Standard No. 5.

The commenters offered suggestions to improve the preliminary guidance. After a careful analysis, certain changes have been made to this publication to further clarify or enhance the guidance. This Appendix describes significant comments received on the preliminary guidance and the related changes that the staff made in this publication.

#### General Comments

The introduction to the preliminary guidance stated that it did not establish new requirements for auditors. However, some commenters suggested reinforcing this statement by providing references to the Board's standards that establish mandatory or presumptively mandatory responsibilities to which this publication refers. As suggested by commenters, this publication includes additional references to the Board's standards.

Several commenters suggested that some or all of the preliminary guidance could be applicable to audits of internal control of larger public companies. As noted in the introduction, this publication was developed specifically to describe how auditors may apply the provisions of Auditing Standard No. 5 to audits of smaller, less complex companies. If auditors of larger public companies find this guidance useful in applying the scalability principles of Auditing Standard No. 5, they may, of course, refer to it. As noted earlier, this guidance does not establish requirements for the audit of internal control. Rather, all audits of internal control—regardless of the size of the company—must comply with the requirements of Auditing Standard No. 5.

#### Chapter 1 – Scaling the Audit for Smaller, Less Complex Companies

The preliminary guidance said that "[i]f none of the controls that are designed to address a risk for a relevant assertion is likely to be effective, the auditor can take that into account in determining the testing of that control." According to one commenter, this statement could suggest that, under such circumstances, the auditor still has an obligation to test a particular control. This sentence has been modified to say that, if none of the controls over an assertion "is likely to be effective, the auditor can take that into account in determining the evidence needed to support a conclusion about the effectiveness of controls for this assertion." Paragraph 47 of Auditing Standard No. 5 indicates that less evidence generally is needed to support a conclusion that controls are not effective. Chapter 8 discusses how this principle may be applied when a company has pervasive control deficiencies.

Several commenters asked the staff to clarify the example in the section entitled Tests of Operating Effectiveness of Controls, in which the auditor was able to use the results of tests of controls to reduce the substantive work on accounts receivable but not revenue. In the commenters' view, it can be difficult to distinguish controls over accounts receivable—specifically, over billing and cash receipt processing—from controls over revenue recognition. In response, the reference to revenue recognition in this example has been replaced with a reference to the allowance for doubtful accounts, the controls over which are more easily distinguishable from controls over billing and cash receipt processing.

Additionally, as suggested by the commenters, the discussion leading to this example has been modified to emphasize that the auditor's decisions about relying on controls, which were illustrated by the example, were related to the audit of the financial statements rather than the audit of internal control. The example is not meant to suggest that the auditor should avoid testing controls in high-risk areas. Rather, the example assumes that the auditor is following the requirements and direction in AU sec. 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, in designing his or her audit strategy.

Another commenter asked for clarification about whether an auditor would be able to issue an unqualified opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting when the auditor assessed control risk at the maximum for one or more relevant assertions in the audit of financial statements. A new paragraph that discusses the relationship between assessing control risk at the maximum and expressing an opinion on internal control over financial reporting has been added to the section entitled Tests of Operating Effectiveness of Controls.

In the last paragraph of Chapter 1, one commenter asked to clarify what impact the absence of misstatements detected by substantive procedures has on the testing of controls. In response, this publication explains that the absence of misstatements is only one of a number of factors that informs the auditor's risk assessment in determining the testing necessary to conclude on the effectiveness of a control. Additionally, as recommended by another commenter, the wording in this paragraph has been revised to better reflect paragraph B9 of Auditing Standard No. 5, to which it refers.

One commenter suggested adding guidance to address situations in which controls changed during the period. The purpose of Chapter 1 is to discuss the principles in Auditing Standard No. 5 for scaling the audit and integrating tests of controls in audits of smaller, less complex public companies. Auditing Standard No. 5 and AU sec. 319, address the auditor's responsibilities for situations in which controls change during the year.

## **Chapter 2 – Evaluating Entity-Level Controls**

Comments on Chapter 2 related primarily to the guidance on the precision of entity-level controls.

Some commenters were concerned that the list of factors that the auditor might consider in judging the level of precision of an entity-level control, in the section entitled Assessing the Precision of Entity-Level Controls, will be used as a checklist by auditors. Other commenters suggested expanding the list. Consistent with the preliminary guidance, this publication uses the phrase “factors include” to indicate that the list of factors is not all-inclusive, and the list of factors is not a list of criteria that the auditor should determine are met for every entity-level control. Not all factors are necessarily applicable to every control (e.g., some are relevant only to detective controls), and some factors might be more important than others for a given control. Examples 2-1 and 2-2

have been modified to better explain which factors the auditor in those examples took into account in evaluating the precision of the company's entity-level controls.

One commenter suggested expanding the guidance in Chapter 2 by discussing auditing considerations related to evaluating design and operating effectiveness of company's entity-level risk assessment component. The risk assessment component of internal control involves identification and analysis of the risks of material misstatement<sup>22</sup> and thus, by itself, would not necessarily prevent or detect misstatements. Chapter 2 focuses on those entity-level controls that are more likely to operate at a sufficient level of precision to result in a reduction of testing of processlevel controls in an audit of a smaller, less complex company.

Additionally, another commenter asked for clarification regarding when the auditor can obtain a substantial amount of evidence about the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting through the evaluation of entity-level controls. In this publication, the discussion following the bullet points at the beginning of Chapter 2, to which the commenter referred, has been revised to state more clearly that the auditor can obtain such evidence if senior management performs many controls—including entity-level controls—that are important to effective internal control over financial reporting.

### ***Chapter 3 – Assessing the Risk of Management Override and Evaluating Mitigating Actions***

Some commenters on Chapter 3 were concerned that the introductory statement to a list of mitigating controls in the section entitled Evaluating Mitigating Controls constituted a requirement for management to implement these controls. As stated in the introduction to this publication, the discussions and examples of controls in this publication do not establish internal control requirements and are not intended as guidance to management regarding establishing or evaluating internal control over financial reporting. Nevertheless, the introductory statement has been revised to remove reference to management's implementation of controls. Additionally, as suggested by some commenters, the fourth item in the list of mitigating controls has been renamed "controls over certain journal entries" to more clearly refer to the related discussion in the subsection entitled Evaluating Controls over Journal Entries later in the chapter.

As recommended by one of the commenters, a statement about the importance of the auditor's exercise of professional skepticism when considering the risk of management override has been added to the section entitled Assessing the Risk of Management Override. Because of the important role that the audit committee may play in mitigating the risk of management override, several commenters suggested providing more details in Example 3-1 about procedures performed by the audit committee. Accordingly, Example 3-1 has been expanded to provide more details on the types of procedures performed by the audit committee to address the risk of management override.

Some commenters suggested adding clarification regarding situations in which a company does not have an audit committee. A footnote reference to COSO Small Companies Guidance has been added to the section entitled Evaluating Audit Committee Oversight for clarification, as suggested.

---

<sup>22</sup> See COSO Small Companies Guidance, Volume II: Guidance, page 43.

## ***Chapter 4 – Evaluating Segregation of Duties and Alternative Controls***

Most comments on Chapter 4 related to perceived inconsistencies in Example 4-1, which illustrates some audit procedures for testing alternative controls over inventory. In response to these comments, the example has been revised to describe more clearly the access rights of both the company's employee who performs certain incompatible duties, and the manager who performs the alternative controls. The paragraph preceding the example has also been revised to clarify that entity-level controls should operate at a necessary level of precision to effectively address the risk of misstatement.

One commenter suggested using the term "compensating controls" instead of "alternative controls" to describe controls that address the same issues as segregation of duties. The term "compensating controls" is not used in this chapter because it is generally applied to situations in which control deficiencies have been identified and the auditor is evaluating whether other controls might compensate for the deficiencies. Chapter 4 of this publication, as well as paragraph 42 of Auditing Standard No. 5, use the term "alternative controls" to apply to situations in which management has designed and implemented controls that achieve the same objectives as segregation of duties.

## ***Chapter 5 – Auditing Information Technology Controls in a Less Complex IT Environment***

Some commenters cautioned against underestimating risks that are associated with pre-packaged software. They indicated that readers might mistakenly perceive prepackaged software to be risk-free. In response to these comments, a footnote has been added to the section entitled Characteristics of Less Complex IT Environments in Chapter 5 to indicate that significant user configuration of the pre-packaged software might create additional risks that require additional controls.

In response to other commenters' suggestions, the following sentence has been added to the discussion in the third bullet point in the section entitled Characteristics of Less Complex IT Environments. "Access to systems is typically managed by a limited number of personnel." In the fourth bullet point, the phrase "in many instances" has been inserted to acknowledge that a smaller, less complex company might perform more complex calculations using spreadsheets and other user-developed applications. In the same bullet point, the phrase "to accumulate, summarize, process, and report" has been replaced with "to initiate, authorize, record, process and report" to more accurately describe tasks included in the end-user computing.

Some commenters asked to clarify how the lack of controls over backups might impact the financial reporting process. In response, the second to last paragraph in the section entitled IT-Related Risks Affecting Financial Reporting of this publication has been reworded to refer, more specifically, to the controls that address the financial reporting risk, i.e., the risk of loss of data necessary to prepare the financial statements, and to acknowledge that there may be different controls to address the potential loss of data.

Several commenters suggested modifying Example 5-1 in order to better illustrate the points made in this chapter. In response, the description of controls and software in the Scenario section of Example 5-1 has been clarified, and controls over authorization have been added to the first sub-bullet in the Audit Approach section.

In general, several commenters were concerned about the potential for auditors to use the lists of controls and audit procedures from Chapter 5 as checklists.

As previously mentioned, the discussions and examples of controls in this publication do not establish internal control requirements and are not intended as guidance to management regarding establishing or evaluating internal control over financial reporting. These examples of controls in Chapter 5 do not represent required controls for management.

One commenter suggested adding guidance relating to testing of controls over spreadsheets. The purpose of this chapter was to discuss general audit strategies that might be employed regarding the evaluation of IT controls in a less complex IT environment rather than to discuss testing of any particular control activities.

### ***Chapter 6 – Considering Financial Reporting Competencies and Their Effects on Internal Control***

Most of the comments on Chapter 6 related to controls over the work performed by outside professionals.

One commenter provided examples of the controls that a company might implement to test work performed by the outside professional. These examples have been added to the discussion of audit considerations in the section entitled Supplemented Competencies with Assistance from Outside Professionals. Additionally, as suggested by commenters, Example 6-1 has been modified to more clearly outline the responsibilities of management and the third-party service provider in a situation typical for a smaller, less complex company. The discussion in the example has also been expanded to provide further details of the procedures performed by the auditor.

Some commenters asked what controls the auditors should expect to see over the work of outside professionals in addition to those over the competence and the accuracy of the information. One commenter asked for specific examples of controls in the situations when the management uses outside professionals in the areas of stock compensation, derivatives and hedging activities, off-balance-sheet accounting, and financial statements preparation. Because of the variety of situations in which outside professionals could be used, including the ones mentioned by the commenters, and the diversity of potential controls that might be implemented by companies using outside professionals, the chapter focuses mainly on the control objectives that might be relevant to those situations rather than the individual controls. However, as noted in the preceding paragraph, some additional examples of controls have been included in this publication as suggested by commenters.

### ***Chapter 7 – Obtaining Sufficient Competent Evidence When the Company Has Less Formal Documentation***

Some commenters on this chapter asked the staff to clarify the differences between the terms “formal” and “less formal” documentation and the impact of the distinction on the audit. One commenter asked about the auditor’s course of action if there is no documentary evidence at all.

“Formal” and “less formal” documentation are relative terms used in this publication to illustrate differences that might exist in the documentation practices of larger and smaller companies. For instance, the section entitled Documentation of Processes and Controls provides examples of more formal documentation and less formal documentation of processes and controls. As stated in this chapter, when auditing a smaller, less complex company, it generally is helpful to obtain an understanding of the nature and availability of documentation as early in the audit process as practical, so that the auditor has sufficient time to explore alternatives if the company has less formal documentation. The section entitled Other Considerations discusses various

types of documentation that auditors might consider using as audit evidence relating to internal control, including the documentation of company processes and procedures and other documentation that the company uses to run the business. The chapter also addresses situations in which only limited documentation exists.

Additionally, in response to one commenter's concern, Example 7-2 has been clarified to explain that the CFO's review represents one control – rather than the only control – that management relies on with respect to the period-end financial reporting process.

### ***Chapter 8 – Auditing Smaller, Less Complex Companies with Pervasive Control Deficiencies***

Several commenters asked for clarification regarding when limited testing of a control that is unlikely to be effective might be necessary. Chapter 8 now includes an example indicating that limited testing of a control might be necessary if walkthrough procedures have not been performed. In response to another commenter's suggestion, the discussion in the section entitled *Considering the Effect of Pervasive Control Deficiencies on Other Controls* has been expanded to clarify how certain deficient entity-level controls might impair the effectiveness of other controls over relevant assertions.

Other commenters suggested changing the discussion of management override of controls to state that a control that has been “inappropriately overridden” instead of “frequently overridden” is either less likely to operate effectively or ineffective. The wording from the preliminary guidance has been retained in this publication because it best describes the risk associated with management override. Although management override might be appropriate in certain circumstances (e.g., manual override of the old credit limits until the new limits are posted in the IT system), frequent management override of a control could impair the effectiveness of the overridden control.

***Appendix A – The Integrated Audit Process***

Some commenters expressed concern that auditors might view the audit approach outlined in Appendix A as the preferred approach because this publication would “formalize” it. Others expressed concern that the audit approach described in the appendix does not cover all of the auditing procedures that might need to be performed. As noted in the Introduction to this publication, the guidance is not a rule of the Board and does not establish new requirements. Rather, it discusses how the auditors of smaller, less complex companies may address some (but not all) of the challenges that might arise in audits of those companies. Thus, this publication does not attempt to “formalize” or endorse any particular approach to the audit of internal control over financial reporting. Auditing Standard No. 5 provides direction on integrating the audit of internal control with the audit of financial statements. Appendix A to this publication has been developed to illustrate one approach for integrating the two audits, and it is not intended to present all of the procedures that are required for a particular audit. Auditors should plan and perform their integrated audits to achieve the objectives of the audits and to comply with standards of the PCAOB.

**Contact Information**

Inquiries concerning this publication may be directed to—

Keith Wilson, Associate Chief Auditor, 202-207-9134, [wilsonk@pcaobus.org](mailto:wilsonk@pcaobus.org)

Dmytro Andriyenko, Associate Chief Auditor 202-207-9130, [andriyenkod@pcaobus.org](mailto:andriyenkod@pcaobus.org)

---

[The next page is 11,401.]

## Section 400

### *Staff Audit Practice Alerts*

#### **.01 Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 1, Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants**

**July 28, 2006**

Audit Practice Alerts highlight new, emerging, or otherwise noteworthy circumstances that may affect how auditors conduct audits under the existing requirements of PCAOB standards and relevant laws. Auditors should determine whether and how to respond to these circumstances based on the specific facts presented. The statements contained in Audit Practice Alerts are not rules of the Board and do not reflect any Board determination or judgment about the conduct of any particular firm, auditor, or any other person.

Recent reports and disclosures about issuer practices related to the granting of stock options, including the “backdating” of such grants, indicate that some issuers’ actual practices in granting options might not have been consistent with the manner in which these transactions were initially recorded and disclosed. Some issuers have announced restatements of previously issued financial statements as a result of these practices. In addition, some of these practices could result in legal and other contingencies that may require recognition of additional expense or disclosure in financial statements.

This practice alert advises auditors that these practices may have implications for audits of financial statements or of internal control over financial reporting (“ICFR”) and discusses factors that may be relevant in assessing the risks related to these matters.

### **Background**

The recorded value of a stock option depends, in part, on the market price of the underlying stock on the date that the option is granted and the exercise price specified in the option. Some issuers may have granted options with exercise prices that are less than the market price of the underlying stock on the date of grant. These options are sometimes referred to as “discounted” or “in-the-money” options. Where discounted options were granted and an issuer failed to properly consider this condition in its original accounting for the option, errors in recording compensation cost, among other effects, may have resulted. These errors may cause an issuer’s financial statements, including related disclosures, to be materially misstated.<sup>1</sup>

While this alert does not attempt to describe all of the variations in circumstances that may result in the issuance of discounted options, a range of practices appears to be involved, including—

- The application of provisions in option plans that allow for:

---

<sup>1</sup> In addition, academic research has suggested the possibility that some issuers may have purposefully granted options immediately before the release of information that the issuer believed would be favorable to its share price. While these practices may not result in the granting of discounted options, they may create legal or reputational risks and raise concerns about the issuer’s control environment.

- the selection of exercise prices based on market prices on dates earlier than the grant date, or
  - the award of options that allow the option holder to obtain an exercise price equal to the lower of the market price of the stock at the grant date or during a specified period of time subsequent to the grant date.
- Preparation, or subsequent modification, of option documentation for purposes of indicating a lower exercise price than the market price at the actual grant date.
  - Treating a date as the grant date when, in fact, all of the prerequisites to a grant had not yet occurred.

Available information suggests that the incidence of these and similar practices may have substantially decreased after the implementation of the shortened filing deadline for reports of option grants specified by Section 403 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. In August 2002, the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) implemented this requirement by requiring the reporting of an option grant on Form 4 within two days of the date of grant. However, periods subsequent to the grant of an option may also be affected by improper accounting for a grant because option cost is generally expensed over the period during which the issuer receives the related services, most commonly its vesting period.

## Matters for Auditor Consideration

Auditors planning or performing an audit should be alert to the risk that the issuer may not have properly accounted for stock option grants and, as a result, may have materially misstated its financial statements or may have deficiencies in its ICFR. For audits currently underway or to be performed in the future, the auditor should acquire sufficient information to allow him or her to assess the nature and potential magnitude of these risks. An auditor must use professional judgment in making these assessments and in determining whether to apply additional procedures in response.

In making these judgments, auditors should be mindful of the following—

*Applicable financial accounting standards.* Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement of Financial Accounting Standards (“SFAS”) No. 123 R (revised 2004), *Share-Based Payment*, applies to issuer reporting periods beginning after June 15, 2005 (December 15, 2005 for small business issuers). Accounting for options was, however, previously governed by other accounting standards and related interpretations, specifically Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 25, *Accounting for Stock Issued to Employees* (APB 25), and SFAS No. 123, *Accounting for Stock-Based Compensation*. If an auditor determines that it is necessary to consider the accounting for option grants and related disclosures in financial statements of a prior period, the auditor should take care to determine the applicable generally accepted accounting principles in effect in those periods and to consider the specific risks associated with these principles.

- *Accounting for discounted options.* For periods in which an issuer used the provisions of APB 25 to determine compensation cost related to stock

options, the issuer may have been required to record additional compensation cost equal to the difference in the exercise price and the market price at the measurement date (as defined in APB 25). In periods in which the issuer has recorded option compensation cost using the fair value method as allowed by SFAS No. 123, or as required by SFAS No. 123 R (revised 2004), the impact on the calculated fair value of options of using an incorrect date as the grant date would depend on the nature and magnitude of changes in conditions that affect option valuation between the incorrect date used and the actual grant date. In all cases, the compensation cost of options should be recognized over the period benefited by the services of the option holder.

- *Accounting for variable plans.* For periods in which an issuer used the provisions of APB 25 to determine compensation cost related to stock options, an option with terms allowing a modification of the exercise price, or whose exercise price was modified subsequent to the grant date may require variable plan accounting. Variable option accounting requires that compensation cost be recorded from period to period based on the variation in current market prices. In periods in which the issuer records option compensation cost using the fair value method as allowed by SFAS No. 123, or as required by SFAS No. 123 R, the right to a lower exercise price may constitute an additional component of value of the option that should be considered at the grant date. In all cases, the cost of options should be recognized over the period benefited by the services of the option holder.
- *Accounting for contingencies.* If the consequences of the issuer's practices for stock option grants or its accounting for, and disclosure of, option grants result in legal or other contingencies, the application of SFAS No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*, may require that the issuer record additional cost or make additional disclosures in financial statements.
- *Accounting for tax effects.* The grant of discounted stock options may affect the issuer's ability to deduct expenses related to these options for income tax purposes, thereby affecting the issuer's cash flows and the accuracy of the related accounting for the tax effects of options.

*Consideration of materiality.* In evaluating materiality, auditors should remember that paragraph .11 of AU sec. 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, and SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin: No. 99—*Materiality* emphasize that both quantitative and qualitative considerations must be assessed. Quantitatively small misstatements may be material when they relate to unlawful acts or to actions by an issuer that could lead to a material contingent liability. In all cases, auditors should evaluate the adequacy of related issuer disclosures.

*Possible illegal acts.* Auditors who become aware that an illegal act may have occurred must comply with the applicable requirements of AU section ("AU sec.") 317, *Illegal Acts*, and Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Section 10A, among other things, requires a registered public accounting firm to take certain actions if it "detects or otherwise becomes aware of information indicating that an illegal act (whether or not perceived to have a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer) has or may have occurred . . ." If it is likely that an illegal act has occurred, the registered public accounting firm must "determine and consider the possible

effect of the illegal act on the financial statements of the issuer, including any contingent monetary effects, such as fines, penalties, and damages.” The registered public accounting firm must also inform the appropriate level of management and assure that the audit committee is adequately informed “unless the illegal act is clearly inconsequential.” The auditor may, depending on the circumstances, also need to take additional steps required under Section 10A if the issuer does not take timely and appropriate remedial actions with respect to the illegal act.

## A. Effects of options-related matters on planned or ongoing audits

In planning and performing an audit of financial statements and ICFR, the auditor should assess the nature and potential magnitude of risks associated with the granting of stock options and perform procedures to appropriately address those risks. The following factors are relevant to accomplishing these objectives—

- Assessment of the potential magnitude of risks of misstatement of financial statements and deficiencies in ICFR related to option granting practices. This assessment should include consideration of possible indicators of risk related to option grants, including, where appropriate:
  - The status and results of any investigations relating to the timing of options grants conducted by the issuer or by regulatory or legal authorities.
  - The results of direct inquiries of members of the issuer’s management and its board of directors that should have knowledge of matters related to the granting and accounting for stock options.
  - Public information related to the timing of options grants by the issuer.
  - The terms and conditions of plans or policies under which options are granted; in particular, terms that allow exercise prices that are not equal to the market price on the date of grant or that delegate authority for option grants to management. In these situations, auditors should also consider whether issuers have other policies that adequately control the related risks.
  - Patterns of transactions or conditions that may indicate higher levels of inherent risk in the period under audit. Such patterns or conditions may include levels of option grants that are very high in relation to shares outstanding, situations in which option-based compensation is a large component of executive compensation, highly variable grant dates, patterns of significant increases in stock prices following option grants, or high levels of stock-price volatility.
- In planning and performing audits, auditors should appropriately address the assessed level of risk, if any, related to option granting practices. Specifically:
  - In addition to the general planning considerations for financial statement audits identified in AU sec. 311, *Planning and Supervision*, the auditor should consider:
    - The implications of any identified or indicated fraudulent or illegal acts related to option grants to assessed risks of fraud (AU sec. 312.07 and AU sec. 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*); the potential for

illegal acts (AU sec. 317, *Illegal Acts by Clients*); or the assessment of an issuer's internal controls (AU sec. 319, *Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*).

- The scope of procedures applied to assess the potential for fraud (AU sec. 316) and illegal acts (AU sec. 317).
- The nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures applied to elements of the financial statements affected by the issuance of options. In particular, this assessment should include consideration of:
  - The need for specific management representations related to these matters (AU sec. 333, *Management Representations*) and the nature of matters included in inquiries of lawyers (AU sec. 337, *Inquiry of a Client's Lawyer*).
  - Where applicable, the result of tests of internal controls over the granting, recording, and reporting of option grants.
  - The need, based on the auditor's risk assessment, for additional specific auditing procedures related to the granting of stock options.

For integrated audits performed as described in PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 2, *An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting Performed in Conjunction with An Audit of Financial Statements* ("AS No. 2"), the auditor should consider the implications of identified or potential accounting and legal risks related to options in planning, performing, and reporting on audits of ICFR. In addition, as discussed in paragraphs 145–158 of AS No. 2, the results of the audit of ICFR should be considered in connection with the related financial statement audit.

## **B. Auditor involvement in registration statements**

In cases where an auditor is requested to consent to the inclusion of his or her report, including a report on ICFR, in a registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933, AU sec. 711, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*, provides that the auditor should perform certain procedures prior to issuing such a consent.<sup>2</sup>

- Paragraph .10 of AU sec. 711 provides that an auditor should perform certain procedures with respect to events subsequent to the date of the audit opinion up to the effective date of the registration statement (or as close thereto as is reasonable and practical under the circumstances). These procedures include inquiry of responsible officials and employees of the issuer and obtaining written representations from them about whether events have occurred subsequent to the date of the auditor's report that have a material effect on the financial statements or that should be disclosed in order to keep the financial statements from being misleading. The auditor should consider performing inquiries and obtaining representations specifically related to the granting and recording of option grants.
- Paragraph .11 of AU sec. 711 provides that a predecessor auditor that has been requested to consent to the inclusion of his or her report on prior-period financial statements in a registration statement should

---

<sup>2</sup> Under Paragraph 198 of AS No. 2, the auditor should apply AU sec. 711 when the auditor's report on management's assessment of ICFR is included in filings under federal securities statutes.

obtain written representations from the successor auditor regarding whether the successor auditor's audit and procedures with respect to subsequent events revealed any matters that might have a material effect on the financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor or that would require disclosure in the notes to those financial statements. If the successor auditor becomes aware of information that leads him or her to believe that financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor may require revision, the successor auditor should apply paragraphs .21 and .22 of AU sec. 315.<sup>3</sup>

- If either the successor or predecessor auditor discovers subsequent events that require adjustment or disclosure in the financial statements or becomes aware of facts that may have existed at the date of his or her report and might have affected the report had he or she been aware of them, the auditor should take the actions described in Paragraph .12 of AU sec. 711. In addition, where the auditor concludes that unaudited financial statements or unaudited interim financial information presented, or incorporated by reference, in a registration statement are not in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, he or she should take the actions described in Paragraph .13 of AU sec. 711.

### **C. Effects of option-related matters on previously issued opinions**

If an auditor becomes aware of information that relates to financial statements previously reported on by the auditor, but which was not known to him or her at the date of the report, and which is of such a nature and from such a source that he or she would have investigated it had it come to his or her attention during the course of the audit, he or she should take the actions described in AU sec. 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report*.

## **Contact Information**

Inquiries concerning this Practice Alert may be directed to—

Phil D. Wedemeyer, Director, Office of Research and Analysis, 202-207-9204, [wedemeyerp@pcaobus.org](mailto:wedemeyerp@pcaobus.org)

Thomas Ray, Chief Auditor and Director of Professional Standards, 202-207-9112, [rayt@pcaobus.org](mailto:rayt@pcaobus.org)

---

<sup>3</sup> In cases in which a predecessor auditor reissues his or her report on financial statements included in a filing under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the predecessor auditor should follow the directives in paragraphs .71 through .73 of AU sec. 508.

**.02 Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 2, Matters Related to Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments and the Use of Specialists****December 10, 2007**

Staff Audit Practice Alerts highlight new, emerging, or otherwise noteworthy circumstances that may affect how auditors conduct audits under the existing requirements of PCAOB standards and relevant laws. Auditors should determine whether and how to respond to these circumstances based on the specific facts presented. The statements contained in Audit Practice Alerts are not rules of the Board and do not reflect any Board determination or judgment about the conduct of any particular firm, auditor, or any other person.

The purpose of this staff audit practice alert is to remind auditors of their responsibilities for auditing fair value measurements of financial instruments and when using the work of specialists under the existing standards of the PCAOB. This alert is focused on specific matters that are likely to increase audit risk related to the fair value of financial instruments in a rapidly changing economic environment.<sup>1</sup>

This practice alert highlights certain requirements in the auditing standards related to fair value measurements and disclosures in the financial statements and certain aspects of generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) that are particularly relevant to the current economic environment.

While this practice alert focuses on fair value in general, it also draws the auditor's attention to certain areas of the new fair value accounting standard, Statement of Financial Accounting Standard (SFAS) No. 157, *Fair Value Measurements*.<sup>2</sup> Auditing fair value measurements developed under the new accounting standard likely will provide new challenges during implementation. Therefore, the practice alert describes the applicable accounting pronouncements in these areas and provides direction, in accordance with the auditing standards, for evaluating the application of GAAP.<sup>3</sup>

The practice alert also discusses the auditor's responsibilities, under the existing auditing standards, when using the work of specialists. The alert provides some considerations for the auditor in determining whether a specialist is needed and highlights the requirement that the auditor should

---

<sup>1</sup> A combination of factors in the housing and mortgage markets, including rising delinquency and default rates on subprime mortgages and declining home prices, has led to increases in actual and expected credit losses for residential mortgage-backed securities and mortgage loans. In early 2007, the credit markets began reacting to these changing factors and the prices of many securities backed by subprime mortgages began to decline. Lower volumes of transactions in certain types of collateralized securities might make it more difficult to obtain relevant market information to estimate the fair value of these financial instruments.

<sup>2</sup> In September 2006, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued SFAS 157, which is effective for financial statements issued for fiscal years beginning after November 15, 2007 and interim periods within those fiscal years. This standard, which some companies early-adopted, defines fair value, establishes a framework for measuring fair value, and expands disclosures. On November 14, 2007, the FASB voted to expose for comment a one year deferral for the implementation of SFAS 157 for certain nonrecurring, nonfinancial assets and liabilities. See FASB web site at [www.fasb.org](http://www.fasb.org).

<sup>3</sup> In order to provide guidance to auditors on auditing fair value measurements, this practice alert necessarily describes GAAP used by public companies to measure fair value. The Board, however, has no authority to prescribe the form or content of an issuer's financial statements. That authority, and the authority to make binding determinations concerning an issuer's compliance with GAAP, rests with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Accordingly, while this staff audit practice alert describes applicable GAAP, it should not be understood as establishing or interpreting GAAP.

evaluate assumptions used in fair value measurements developed by a company's specialist in accordance with the PCAOB standard on auditing fair value measurements. It also highlights the auditor's responsibility to evaluate the appropriateness of using the specialist's work for the purpose of financial statements prepared in conformity with GAAP.

The practice alert is organized into four sections—

- Auditing fair value measurements;
- Classification within the fair value hierarchy under SFAS 157;
- Using the work of specialists; and
- Use of a pricing service.

## Auditing Fair Value Measurements

AU sec. 328, *Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*, applies to auditing fair value measurements and disclosures in financial statements.<sup>4</sup> Among other things, AU sec. 328 states that the auditor should evaluate whether the fair value measurements and disclosures in the financial statements are in conformity with GAAP. In general, for companies that had not adopted SFAS 157 before its mandatory effective date, GAAP in effect throughout 2007 provides that—

- Fair value is the amount at which an asset or liability could be bought or sold in a current transaction between willing parties, that is, other than a forced or liquidation sale;<sup>5</sup>
- Quoted market prices in active markets are the best evidence of fair value and should be used as the basis for the measurement, if available;<sup>6</sup>
- The estimate of fair value should consider prices for similar assets;<sup>7</sup> and
- Valuation techniques should incorporate assumptions that market participants would use in their estimates of value.<sup>8</sup>

In addition, AICPA Statement of Position (SOP) 94-6, *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*, requires certain disclosures, in addition to those required by other accounting standards, about estimates when certain information is known prior to the issuance of financial statements.<sup>9</sup>

---

<sup>4</sup> AU secs. 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*, and 332, *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities*, also are related to auditing fair value.

<sup>5</sup> See SFAS 115, *Accounting for Certain Investments in Debt and Equity Securities*, paragraph 137; SFAS 133, *Accounting for Derivatives and Hedging Activities*, paragraph 540; and SFAS 140, *Accounting for Transfers and Servicing of Financial Assets and Extinguishments of Liabilities*, paragraph 69.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.* Also, in paragraph 58 of SFAS 107, *Disclosures about Fair Value of Financial Assets* the FASB Board reiterated its belief that quoted prices, even from thin markets, provide useful information because investors and creditors regularly rely on those prices to make their decisions.

<sup>7</sup> See SFAS 115, *Accounting for Certain Investments in Debt and Equity Securities*, paragraph 137; SFAS 133, *Accounting for Derivatives and Hedging Activities*, paragraph 540; and paragraph 69 of SFAS 140, *Accounting for Transfers and Servicing of Financial Assets and Extinguishments of Liabilities*.

<sup>8</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>9</sup> See SOP 94-6, paragraph .13.

SFAS 157 incorporates concepts similar to those in SFASs 115, *Accounting for Certain Investments in Debt and Equity Securities*, 133, *Accounting for Derivatives and Hedging Activities*, and 140, *Accounting for Transfers and Servicing of Financial Assets and Extinguishments of Liabilities*. SFAS 157 defines fair value as the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. However, it also introduces concepts such as the principal and most advantageous markets and the fair value hierarchy of inputs (further discussed in this alert).<sup>10</sup>

In planning and performing procedures in response to the risk associated with fair value measurements, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the company's process for determining fair value measurements and disclosures, including relevant controls.<sup>11</sup> In addition, the auditor should, among other things—

- Evaluate whether management's assumptions are reasonable and reflect, or are not inconsistent with, market information.<sup>12</sup> For example, the fact that transaction volume in a particular market is lower than in previous periods may not necessarily support an assumption that transactions in that market constituted forced or distressed sales.
- If management relies on historical financial information in the development of an assumption, consider the extent to which such reliance is justified. However, historical information might not be representative of future conditions or events.<sup>13</sup> For example, an auditor should evaluate whether a company's use of historical default rates, in an environment in which default rates are increasing, is justified.
- Evaluate whether the company's method for determining fair value measurements is applied consistently and if so, whether the consistency is appropriate considering possible changes in the environment or circumstances affecting the company.<sup>14</sup> For example, the relative weightings in a company's model may not be reasonable in situations where there has been a change in market conditions. In such cases, auditors should consider whether compliance with applicable accounting standards might require a change in the model.

Inputs based on a company's own data may be more susceptible to preparer bias because they may not be based on observable market inputs.<sup>15</sup> In such cases, the auditor should be aware of the increased risk of management bias and address the related risk of material misstatement.<sup>16</sup>

---

<sup>10</sup> See SFAS 157, paragraphs 8, 22, and 23.

<sup>11</sup> See AU sec. 328.09.

<sup>12</sup> See AU sec. 328.26.

<sup>13</sup> See AU sec. 328.37.

<sup>14</sup> See AU sec. 328.19. Also, under SFAS 157, paragraph 20, a change in valuation technique or its application, is appropriate if the change results in a measurement that is equally or more representative of fair value in the circumstances.

<sup>15</sup> See AU sec. 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*. Paragraph .39 notes that certain accounts, classes of transactions, and assertions may have high inherent risk due to a high degree of management judgment and subjectivity. They also may represent fraud risks because they are susceptible to management manipulation.

<sup>16</sup> AU sec 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, paragraph .36, provides that the risk of material misstatement is generally greater when account balances include estimates because of the inherent subjectivity in estimating future events.

## Classification Within the Fair Value Hierarchy Under SFAS 157

Under SFAS 157, a company must determine the appropriate level in the fair value hierarchy for each fair value measurement. The fair value hierarchy in SFAS 157 prioritizes the inputs, which refer broadly to assumptions market participants would use in pricing an asset or liability, into three levels. It gives the highest priority to quoted prices (unadjusted) in active markets for identical assets or liabilities and the lowest priority to unobservable inputs.<sup>17</sup> The level in the fair value hierarchy within which a fair value measurement in its entirety falls is determined based on the lowest level input that is significant to the fair value measurement in its entirety.

- Level 1 inputs are quoted prices (unadjusted) in active markets for identical assets or liabilities that the reporting entity has the ability to access at the measurement date.
- Level 2 inputs are inputs other than quoted prices within Level 1 that are observable for the asset or liability, either directly or indirectly. A significant adjustment to a Level 2 input could result in the Level 2 measurement becoming a Level 3 measurement.
- Level 3 inputs are unobservable inputs for the asset or liability.<sup>18</sup>

Because there are different consequences associated with each of the three levels of the hierarchy, the auditor should be alert for circumstances in which the company may have an incentive to inappropriately classify fair value measurements within the hierarchy. For example, an asset or liability with Level 1 inputs generally must be measured using unadjusted quoted prices in an active market, while an asset or liability with Level 2 inputs is measured using observable market inputs other than quoted prices included in Level 1. Accordingly, a Level 2 measurement might allow for more discretion or judgment on the part of management than a Level 1 measurement. As another example, the required disclosures associated with Level 3 measurements are more extensive than those associated with Level 1 and Level 2 measurements.

The auditor's opinion is based on, among other things, his or her judgment as to whether the financial statements and related notes are informative of matters that may affect their use, understanding, and interpretation.<sup>19</sup> In evaluating whether a company's disclosures are complete, accurate, and in conformity with SFAS 157, the auditor should be aware that a financial statement disclosure that is not in accordance with GAAP could be a misstatement of the financial statements.<sup>20</sup>

---

<sup>17</sup> See SFAS 157, paragraph 21. Observable inputs are inputs that reflect the assumptions market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability developed based on market data obtained from sources independent of the reporting entity. Unobservable inputs are those that reflect the reporting entity's own assumptions about the assumptions market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability developed based on the best information available in the circumstances.

<sup>18</sup> See SFAS 157, paragraphs 22–32.

<sup>19</sup> See AU sec. 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, paragraph .04.

<sup>20</sup> See AU sec. 9312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit: Auditing Interpretations of Section 312*, paragraphs .01 and .02.

## Using the Work of Specialists

Management and auditors frequently use the work of a specialist in preparing and auditing financial statements containing complex fair value measurements.

AU sec. 328 states that the auditor should consider whether to engage a specialist and use the work of that specialist as evidential matter in performing substantive tests to evaluate material financial statement assertions.<sup>21</sup> As part of the consideration, the auditor should evaluate whether he or she has the necessary skill and knowledge to plan and perform audit procedures related to the fair value measurement. Factors to consider include—

- Significant use of unobservable inputs;
- Complexity of the valuation technique; and
- Materiality of the fair value measurement.

AU sec. 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, provides direction that applies when the auditor uses the work of a specialist, whether the specialist is engaged by the company or the auditor. It states that the auditor should (a) obtain an understanding of the methods and assumptions used by the specialist, (b) make appropriate tests of data provided to the specialist, and (c) evaluate whether the specialist's findings support the related assertions in the financial statements.<sup>22</sup> In obtaining an understanding of the specialist's methods, the auditor should consider whether the method will result in a measurement that is in conformity with the applicable accounting standards.<sup>23</sup> In addition, the auditor should evaluate, in accordance with AU sec. 328, the assumptions developed by a specialist engaged or employed by management.<sup>24</sup>

Additionally, the auditor should evaluate the specialist's qualifications, including the specialist's experience in the type of work under consideration, and obtain an understanding of the work performed by the specialist, including the appropriateness of using the specialist's work for the intended purpose.<sup>25</sup> In the context of this practice alert, the intended purpose of the specialist's work is the valuation of assets and liabilities for use in financial statements prepared in conformity with GAAP.

## Use of a Pricing Service

If a company uses a pricing service for its fair value measurements, the auditor should determine the nature of the information provided by the pricing service. For example, the auditor should understand whether the fair value measurement was determined using quoted prices from an active market, observable inputs (such as prices for similar assets), or fair value measurements based on a model, and adjust his or her audit procedures based on the nature of the information provided by the pricing service.<sup>26</sup> In addition, if the price is not based on quoted prices from an active market or observable inputs (such as

---

<sup>21</sup> See AU sec. 328.20.

<sup>22</sup> See AU sec. 336.12.

<sup>23</sup> See AU secs. 328.03. and 336.09.

<sup>24</sup> AU sec. 328 provides that management's assumptions used in fair value measurements or disclosures include assumptions developed by a specialist engaged or employed by management. See AU sec. 328.05, footnote 2.

<sup>25</sup> See AU sec. 336.08–.09.

<sup>26</sup> The evaluation of pricing information also is applicable to fair value measurements that a company obtains from other third parties.

prices for similar assets), the auditor should obtain an understanding of the model and evaluate whether the assumptions are reasonable.<sup>27</sup>

There are additional factors for the auditor to consider under SFAS 157. For example, under SFAS 157, a fair value measurement assumes that the transaction occurs in the principal market for the asset or liability or, in the absence of a principal market, the most advantageous market. The principal market is one in which the reporting entity would sell the asset or transfer the liability with the greatest volume and level of activity. If there is a principal market, under SFAS 157, the fair value measurement represents the price in that market even if the price in a different market is potentially more advantageous.<sup>28</sup>

Under SFAS 157, when a company uses a pricing service, the auditor should evaluate whether the assumptions used by the pricing service reflect the price to sell the asset or paid to transfer the liability in the principal market (or most advantageous market if the company has no principal market) of the company. If the pricing service valuation is based on actual trades or quotes, the auditor should evaluate whether those traded or quoted prices would be available to the company in the company's principal market (or most advantageous market, if the company has no principal market). For example, a pricing service might provide an amount for which a large financial institution could sell the financial instrument. However, a company that owns that financial instrument might not be able to transact in the same market as a large financial institution. If the price available to a large financial institution would not be available to the company, then that price may not be an appropriate measure of fair value under SFAS 157.

## **Contact Information**

Inquiries concerning this Staff Practice Alert may be directed to—

Thomas Ray, Chief Auditor and Director of Professional Standards, 202-207-29112, [rayt@pcaobus.org](mailto:rayt@pcaobus.org)

Martin Baumann, Director, Office of Research and Analysis, 202-207-9192, [baumannm@pcaobus.org](mailto:baumannm@pcaobus.org)

Greg Fletcher, Associate Chief Auditor, 202-207-9203, [fletchergr@pcaobus.org](mailto:fletchergr@pcaobus.org)

---

<sup>27</sup> See AU secs. 328.05 and 336.12. In addition, see AU sec. 332.39.

<sup>28</sup> See FASB Statement 157, paragraph 8.

**.03 Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 3, Audit Considerations in the Current Economic Environment**

December 5, 2008

*Staff Audit Practice Alerts highlight new, emerging, or otherwise noteworthy circumstances that may affect how auditors conduct audits under the existing requirements of PCAOB standards and relevant laws. Auditors should determine whether and how to respond to these circumstances based on the specific facts presented. The statements contained in Audit Practice Alerts are not rules of the Board and do not reflect any Board determination or judgment about the conduct of any particular firm, auditor, or any other person.*

Recent events in the financial markets and the current economic environment may affect companies' operations and financial reporting and, in turn, may have implications for audits of financial statements and internal control over financial reporting. Audit risks that may have been identified previously may become more significant or new risks may exist due to current events (e.g. those affecting the economy, credit and liquidity). Among other things, the current uncertainties in the market and economy may create questions about the valuation, impairment, or recoverability of certain assets and the completeness or valuation of certain liabilities reflected in financial statements.

The purpose of this staff audit practice alert is to assist auditors in identifying matters related to the current economic environment that might affect audit risk and require additional emphasis. While the alert highlights certain areas, it is not intended to identify all areas that might affect audit risk in the current economic environment or serve as a substitute for the relevant auditing standards. All audits of issuers must be conducted in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB.

The practice alert is organized into six sections—

- Overall audit considerations;
- Auditing fair value measurements;
- Auditing accounting estimates;
- Auditing the adequacy of disclosures;
- Auditor's consideration of a company's ability to continue as a going concern; and
- Additional audit considerations for selected financial reporting areas.

In order to provide guidance to auditors on audit considerations in the current economic environment, this practice alert necessarily describes generally accepted accounting principles ("GAAP") used by public companies in various areas. The Board, however, has no authority to prescribe the form or content of an issuer's financial statements. That authority, and the authority to make binding determinations concerning an issuer's compliance with GAAP, rests with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"). Accordingly, while this staff audit practice alert describes applicable GAAP, it should not be understood as establishing or interpreting GAAP.

## Overall Audit Considerations

The following section describes overall audit considerations related to planning, fraud, internal controls, substantive procedures, and communications with audit committees that may be affected by recent events in the financial markets and current economic conditions.

### Planning considerations

The effects of current economic conditions on a company's operations and financial reporting may affect audit planning. In planning the audit, the auditor should consider, among other things, matters affecting the industry in which the company operates, including the economic conditions.<sup>1</sup>

As the audit progresses, changed conditions may make it necessary to modify planned audit procedures.<sup>2</sup> Accordingly, the auditor may need to reassess audit risks and update his or her understanding of how current economic conditions may affect the company's financial reporting. Knowledge of these effects helps the auditor in—

- Identifying areas that may need special consideration;
- Assessing conditions under which accounting data are produced, processed, reviewed, and accumulated within the company;
- Evaluating the reasonableness of estimates, such as valuation of inventories, depreciation, allowances for doubtful accounts, and percentage of completion of long-term contracts;
- Evaluating the reasonableness of management representations;
- Making judgments about the appropriateness of the accounting principles applied and the adequacy of disclosures.<sup>3</sup>

Whenever the auditor has concluded that there is significant risk of material misstatement of the financial statements, the auditor should consider this conclusion in determining the nature, timing, or extent of procedures; assigning staff; or requiring appropriate levels of supervision.<sup>4</sup> Higher risk may cause the auditor to expand the extent of procedures applied, apply procedures closer to or as of year end, particularly in critical audit areas, or modify the nature of procedures to obtain more persuasive evidence.<sup>5</sup>

In an audit of internal control over financial reporting, a direct relationship exists between the degree of risk that a material weakness could exist in a particular area of the company's internal control over financial reporting and the amount of audit attention that should be devoted to that area.<sup>6</sup>

### Fraud risk considerations

The current economic environment may also trigger certain risk factors that may affect the risk of misstatement due to fraudulent financial reporting. Examples of risk factors include—

- Incentives and pressures

---

<sup>1</sup> Paragraphs .03 and .07 of AU sec. 311, *Planning and Supervision*, and paragraph 9 of PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 5 ("AS No. 5"), *An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements*.

<sup>2</sup> AU sec. 311.05.

<sup>3</sup> AU sec. 311.06.

<sup>4</sup> Paragraph .17 of AU sec. 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid.

<sup>6</sup> AS No. 5, paragraph 11.

- Financial stability or profitability is threatened by economic, industry, or company operating conditions;
- Excessive pressure exists for management to meet the requirements or expectations of third parties;
- Information available indicates management or the board of directors' personal financial situation is threatened by the company's financial performance;
- Excessive pressure is placed on management or operating personnel to meet financial targets set up by the board of directors or management, including sales or profitability incentive goals;
- Opportunities
  - The nature of the industry or the company's operations provides opportunities to engage in fraudulent financial reporting;
  - There is ineffective monitoring of management;
  - There is a complex or unstable organizational structure;
  - Internal control components are deficient.<sup>7</sup>

The auditor has a responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether caused by error or fraud.<sup>8</sup> As part of the understanding of internal control sufficient to plan the audit, the auditor should evaluate whether entity programs and controls that address identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud have been suitably designed and placed in operation.<sup>9</sup> Also, the auditor should ordinarily presume that there is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud relating to revenue recognition.<sup>10</sup> The auditor responds to risks of material misstatement due to fraud in the following three ways—

- A response that has an overall effect on how the audit is conducted—that is, a response involving more general considerations apart from the specific procedures otherwise planned.<sup>11</sup> For example, the knowledge, skill, and ability of personnel assigned significant engagement responsibilities should be commensurate with the auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud for the engagement.<sup>12</sup> The auditor also should consider management's selection and application of significant accounting principles, particularly those related to subjective measurements and complex transactions.<sup>13</sup> Further, the auditor should incorporate an element of unpredictability in the selection from year to year of auditing procedures to be performed.<sup>14</sup>
- A response to identified risks involving the nature, timing, and extent of the auditing procedures to be performed.<sup>15</sup> For example, the auditing

---

<sup>7</sup> Paragraph .85A.2 of AU sec. 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*.

<sup>8</sup> Paragraph .02 of AU sec. 110, *Responsibilities and Functions of the Independent Auditor*.

<sup>9</sup> AU sec. 316.44.

<sup>10</sup> AU sec. 316.41.

<sup>11</sup> AU sec. 316.48.

<sup>12</sup> AU sec. 316.50.

<sup>13</sup> Ibid.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid.

<sup>15</sup> AU sec. 316.48.

procedures performed in response to identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud should vary depending upon the types of risks identified and the account balances, classes of transactions, and related assertions that may be affected.<sup>16</sup> Such procedures may involve both substantive tests and tests of the operating effectiveness of the company's programs and controls.<sup>17</sup>

- A response involving the performance of certain procedures to further address the risk of material misstatement due to fraud involving management override of controls, given the unpredictable ways in which Audit Considerations in the such override could occur.<sup>18</sup> For example, the auditor should examine journal entries and other adjustments for evidence of possible material misstatement due to fraud.<sup>19</sup> The auditor also should review accounting estimates for biases that could result in material misstatement due to fraud,<sup>20</sup> and evaluate the business rationale for significant unusual transactions.<sup>21</sup>

The auditor's assessment of the risks of material misstatement due to fraud should be ongoing throughout the audit.<sup>22</sup>

In an audit of internal control over financial reporting, the risk that a company's internal control over financial reporting will fail to prevent or detect misstatement caused by fraud usually is higher than the risk of failure to prevent or detect error.<sup>23</sup>

## Internal control considerations

The current environment may increase audit risk and thus require additional auditor attention regarding the effective operation of internal controls. Areas in which additional attention may be required include the company's entity-level controls, such as, among other things, controls related to the control environment, and the company's risk assessment process. Additional attention also may be warranted on the controls related to certain significant accounts and disclosures and their relevant assertions, such as controls over the development of inputs and assumptions for the valuation of significant assets and liabilities; controls over the identification and review of assets for recoverability or impairment; and controls over the company's use of external specialists (for example, valuation or actuarial specialists) who assist in the determination of recorded amounts of certain assets or liabilities. In addition, some companies are responding to the current economic conditions by eliminating jobs. The loss of employees integral to the operation of internal controls may increase the risk of deficiencies in internal control over financial reporting because of, for example, lack of segregation of duties or lack of effective monitoring controls.

In an audit of internal control over financial reporting, the auditor also should evaluate whether the company's controls sufficiently address the identified risks of material misstatement due to fraud<sup>24</sup> and controls intended to address

---

<sup>16</sup> AU sec. 316.51.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid.

<sup>18</sup> AU sec. 316.48.

<sup>19</sup> AU sec. 316.58.

<sup>20</sup> AU sec. 316.63.

<sup>21</sup> AU sec. 316.66.

<sup>22</sup> AU sec. 316.68.

<sup>23</sup> AS No. 5, paragraph 11.

<sup>24</sup> AS No. 5, paragraph 14.

the risk of management override of controls.<sup>25</sup> Controls that might address these risks include—

- Controls over significant, unusual transactions, particularly those that result in late or unusual journal entries;
- Controls over journal entries and adjustments made in the period-end financial reporting process;
- Controls over related party transactions;
- Controls related to significant management estimates; and
- Controls that mitigate incentives for, and pressures on, management to falsify or inappropriately manage financial results.<sup>26</sup>

## Effect on substantive procedures

Because the current environment may increase inherent and control risks, the auditor might need to modify his or her planned substantive procedures or perform additional substantive procedures in order to reduce the level of detection risk to an acceptable level to support his or her opinion on the financial statements. Examples of modifications of planned substantive procedure include the following—

- Changing the nature of substantive tests from a less effective to a more effective procedure, such as using tests directed toward independent parties outside the company rather than tests directed toward parties or documentation within the company;
- Changing the timing of substantive tests, such as performing them at year end rather than at an interim date; and
- Changing the extent of substantive tests, such as using a larger sample size.<sup>27</sup>

## Communications with audit committees

The auditor has a responsibility to communicate certain matters related to the conduct of the audit to the audit committee.<sup>28</sup> Some of the required communications that may be affected by current economic conditions include discussions about accounting estimates as well as the company's accounting principles.

With respect to accounting estimates, the auditor should determine that the audit committee is informed about the process used by management in formulating particularly sensitive accounting estimates and about the basis for the auditor's conclusions regarding the reasonableness of those estimates.<sup>29</sup> The auditor should discuss with the audit committee the auditor's judgments about the quality, not just the acceptability, of the company's accounting principles as applied in its financial reporting.<sup>30</sup> The discussion should include such matters as the consistency of the company's accounting policies and their application, and the clarity and completeness of the company's financial statements, which

---

<sup>25</sup> AS No. 5, paragraph 14. AU secs. 316.57 to .67 describe procedures that should be performed to address the risk of management override of controls.

<sup>26</sup> AS No. 5, paragraph 14.

<sup>27</sup> Paragraph .82 of AU sec. 319, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*.

<sup>28</sup> Paragraph .01 of AU sec. 380, *Communication With Audit Committees*.

<sup>29</sup> AU sec. 380.08.

<sup>30</sup> AU sec. 380.11.

include related disclosures.<sup>31</sup> The discussion also should include items that have a significant impact on the representational faithfulness, verifiability, and neutrality of the accounting information included in the financial statements.<sup>32</sup> Examples of items that may have such an effect include the following—

- Selection of new or changes to accounting policies;
- Estimates, judgments, and uncertainties;
- Unusual transactions; and
- Accounting policies relating to significant financial statement items, including the timing of transactions and the period in which they are recorded.<sup>33</sup>

While these and other communications are directed to the audit committee, the auditor is not precluded from communicating with management or other individuals within the company, who may, in the auditor's judgment, benefit from the communications.<sup>34</sup>

## Auditing Fair Value Measurements

Certain kinds of investments such as auction rate securities, commercial paper, mortgage-backed or other asset-backed securities, alternative investments (such as hedge funds, private equity investments, funds of funds, etc.), collateralized debt obligations and other investments may present complexities in valuation because of the current conditions in the financial markets. Accordingly, difficulties surrounding the measurement of fair value and the adequacy of related disclosures have come under increased focus over the past year.

Statement of Financial Accounting Standard (“SFAS”) No. 157, *Fair Value Measurements*,<sup>35</sup> establishes a framework for measuring fair values for financial reporting purposes and expands disclosures about those measurements. On September 30, 2008, the SEC’s Office of the Chief Accountant and the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) staff issued *Clarifications on Fair Value Accounting* acknowledging that “the current environment has made questions surrounding the determination of fair value particularly challenging for preparers, auditors and users of financial information.”<sup>36</sup> On October 10, 2008, the FASB issued Staff Position (“FSP”) No. FAS 157-3, *Determining the Fair Value of a Financial Asset When the Market for That Asset Is Not Active*, which provides application guidance regarding—

- How the company’s own assumptions (that is, expected cash flows and appropriately risk-adjusted discount rates) should be considered when measuring fair value when relevant observable inputs do not exist;
- How available observable inputs in a market that is not active should be considered when measuring fair value; and

---

<sup>31</sup> Ibid.

<sup>32</sup> Ibid.

<sup>33</sup> Ibid.

<sup>34</sup> AU sec. 380.02.

<sup>35</sup> In September 2006, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) issued Statement of Financial Accounting Standard (“SFAS”) No. 157, *Fair Value Measurements*, which is effective for financial statements issued for fiscal years beginning after November 15, 2007 and interim periods within those fiscal years. The FASB deferred the implementation of SFAS No. 157 for certain nonrecurring, nonfinancial assets and liabilities for financial statements issued for fiscal years beginning after November 15, 2008 and interim periods within those fiscal years.

<sup>36</sup> See <http://www.sec.gov/news/press/2008/2008-234.htm>.

- How the use of market quotes (for example, broker quotes or pricing services for the same or similar financial assets) should be considered when assessing the relevance of observable and unobservable inputs available to measure fair value.<sup>37</sup>

The following matters may be particularly important for auditors in considering fair value accounting estimates—

- The extent to which fair value accounting applies to various accounts;
- The choice and complexity of valuation techniques and models;
- Judgments concerning significant assumptions that may be used by others such as specialists employed or engaged by the company or the auditor;
- The availability, or lack thereof, of information or evidence and its reliability; and
- The extent of disclosure in the financial statements about measurement methods and uncertainty.

PCAOB Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 2 (“Practice Alert No. 2”), *Matters Related to Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments and the Use of Specialists*, remains relevant in the current environment and reminds auditors of their responsibilities with regard to—

- Auditing fair value measurements,
- Classification within the fair value hierarchy under SFAS 157,
- Using the work of specialists, and
- Use of a pricing service.<sup>38</sup>

In discussing the auditor’s responsibilities for auditing fair value measurements, Practice Alert No. 2 refers the auditor to AU sec. 328, *Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*, AU sec. 332, *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities*, AU sec. 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, and AU sec. 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*.

## Auditing Accounting Estimates

Accounting estimates measure the effects of past business transactions or events, or the present status of an asset or liability.<sup>39</sup> Examples of accounting estimates include net realizable value of inventories, allowance for uncollectible accounts receivable, valuation allowance for deferred tax assets, actuarial assumptions in pension and other postretirement benefit costs, the impairment analysis and estimated useful lives of long-lived assets, restructuring accruals, and assumptions used in option pricing models for share-based payments.<sup>40</sup> In auditing accounting estimates, the auditor normally should consider, among other things, the company’s historical experience in making past estimates as well as the auditor’s experience in the industry.<sup>41</sup> However, changes in facts, circumstances, or a company’s procedures may cause factors different from

---

<sup>37</sup> Paragraph 5 of FASB Staff Position (“FSP”) No. FAS 157-3, *Determining the Fair Value of a Financial Asset When the Market for That Asset Is Not Active*.

<sup>38</sup> PCAOB Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 2, *Matters Related to Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments and the Use of Specialists* (December 10, 2007).

<sup>39</sup> Paragraph .02 of AU sec. 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*.

<sup>40</sup> See AU sec. 342.16 for other examples of accounting estimates.

<sup>41</sup> AU sec. 342.09.

those considered in the past to become significant to the accounting estimate.<sup>42</sup> The significance of the recent changes in the economy and the financial markets increases the likelihood that this will be the case.

The auditor is responsible for evaluating the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management in the context of the financial statements taken as a whole.<sup>43</sup> In evaluating the reasonableness of accounting estimates, the auditor should obtain an understanding of how management developed the estimate.<sup>44</sup> Based on that understanding, the auditor should use one or a combination of the following approaches—

- Review and test the process used by management to develop the estimate;
- Develop an independent expectation of the estimate to corroborate the reasonableness of management's estimate;
- Review subsequent events or transactions occurring prior to the date of the auditor's report.<sup>45</sup>

The work that the auditor performs as part of the audit of internal control over financial reporting should necessarily inform the auditor's decisions about the approach he or she takes to auditing an estimate because, as part of the audit of internal control over financial reporting, the auditor would be required to obtain an understanding of the process management used to develop the estimate and to test controls over all relevant assertions related to the estimate.<sup>46</sup>

In evaluating the reasonableness of an estimate, the auditor normally concentrates on key factors and assumptions that are—

- Significant to the accounting estimate;
- Sensitive to variations;
- Deviations from historical patterns;
- Subjective and susceptible to misstatement and bias.<sup>47</sup>

When assessing audit differences between estimates best supported by the audit evidence and the estimates included in the financial statements, the auditor should consider whether such differences, even if they are individually reasonable, indicate a possible bias on the part of the company's management, in which case the audit or should reconsider the estimates taken as a whole.<sup>48</sup>

As part of the audit, the auditor also should perform a retrospective review of significant accounting estimates reflected in the financial statements of the prior year to determine whether management judgments and assumptions relating to the estimates indicate a possible bias on the part of management.<sup>49</sup> With the benefit of hindsight, a retrospective review should provide the auditor with additional information about whether there may be a possible bias on the part of management in making the current year estimates.<sup>50</sup>

---

<sup>42</sup> Ibid.

<sup>43</sup> AU sec. 342.04.

<sup>44</sup> AU sec. 342.10.

<sup>45</sup> Ibid.

<sup>46</sup> Ibid.

<sup>47</sup> AU sec. 342.09.

<sup>48</sup> AU sec. 316.63.

<sup>49</sup> AU sec. 316.64.

<sup>50</sup> Ibid.

## Auditing the Adequacy of Disclosures

The current economic environment may increase the risks regarding the adequacy of disclosures, including the disclosures surrounding a company's risks and uncertainties, which in turn may warrant additional auditor attention.

The American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Statement of Position 94-6 ("SOP 94-6"), *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*, focuses on disclosures about risks and uncertainties, that in the near term (considered to be within one year from the date of the financial statements), could affect the amounts reported in the financial statements or the functioning of the reporting company.<sup>51</sup> SOP 94-6 provides that companies should make disclosures in their financial statements about the risks and uncertainties in the following areas—

- Nature of operations;
- Use of estimates in the preparation of financial statements;
- Certain significant estimates;
- Current vulnerability due to certain concentrations.<sup>52</sup>

The presentation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP includes adequate disclosure of material matters, related to the form, arrangement, and content of the financial statements and their appended notes.<sup>53</sup> The auditor considers whether a particular matter should be disclosed in light of the circumstances and facts of which he or she is aware at the time.<sup>54</sup> If management omits from the financial statements, including the accompanying notes, information that is required by GAAP, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion and should provide the information in his or her report, if practicable, unless its omission from the auditor's report is recognized as appropriate by a specific PCAOB auditing standard.<sup>55</sup>

With respect to other information included in documents containing the financial statements, the auditor should read the other information and consider whether such information, or the manner of its presentation, is materially inconsistent with information, or the manner of its presentation, appearing in the financial statements.<sup>56</sup> For instance, the section on management's discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations in Form 10-K requires discussion of liquidity, capital resources, results of operations, off-balance sheet arrangements and contractual obligations.<sup>57</sup> In addition, the section on controls and procedures of the Form 10-K requires discussion of management's responsibility for internal control over financial reporting and changes in internal control over financial reporting.<sup>58</sup> If the information in these disclosures is materially inconsistent with the financial statements, the

---

<sup>51</sup> Paragraph .02 of American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Statement of Position 94-6 ("SOP 94-6"), *Disclosure of Certain Significant Risks and Uncertainties*. Paragraph .07 of SOP 94-6 defines near term as a period of time not to exceed one year from the date of the financial statements.

<sup>52</sup> SOP 94-6, paragraph .08.

<sup>53</sup> Paragraph .02 of AU sec. 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements*.

<sup>54</sup> Ibid.

<sup>55</sup> AU sec. 431.03.

<sup>56</sup> Paragraph .04 of AU sec. 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*.

<sup>57</sup> Regulation S-K, Item 303, *Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations*.

<sup>58</sup> Regulation S-K, Items 308 and 308T, *Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*.

auditor should determine whether the financial statements, the audit report, or both require revision.<sup>59</sup>

## Auditor's Consideration of a Company's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern

In the current economic environment, some companies may face challenges in their ability to continue operating as a going concern. For instance, sources of liquidity may be strained because of reduced availability of lines/letters of credit from financial institutions or because of a violation of a debt covenant or other covenant. Additionally, companies may encounter limited access to the commercial paper markets, a decrease in valuation of collateral, difficulty restructuring loans, and delays in payment from customers.

The auditor has a responsibility to evaluate whether there is a substantial doubt about the company's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, not to exceed one year beyond the date of the financial statements being audited.<sup>60</sup> The auditor's evaluation is based on his or her knowledge of relevant conditions and events that exist at or have occurred prior to the date of the auditor's report.<sup>61</sup>

The auditor's evaluation includes considering whether the results obtained in planning, performing, and completing the audit identify conditions and events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be a substantial doubt about the company's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time.<sup>62</sup> It may be necessary to obtain additional information about such conditions and events, as well as the appropriate evidential matter to support information that mitigates the auditor's doubt.<sup>63</sup> Conditions or events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be substantial doubt about the company's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time include—

- *Negative trends*—for example, recurring operating losses, working capital deficiencies, negative cash flows from operating activities, adverse key financial ratios;
- *Other indications of possible financial difficulties*—for example, default on loan or similar agreements, arrearages in dividends, denial of usual trade credit from suppliers, restructuring of debt, noncompliance with statutory capital requirements, need to seek new sources or methods of financing or to dispose of substantial assets;
- *Internal matters*—for example, work stoppages or other labor difficulties, substantial dependence on the success of a particular project, uneconomic long-term commitments, need to significantly revise operations;
- *External matters that have occurred*—for example, legal proceedings, legislation, or similar matters that might jeopardize a company's ability to operate; loss of a key franchise, license, or patent; loss of a

---

<sup>59</sup> AU sec. 550.04.

<sup>60</sup> Paragraph .02 of AU sec. 341, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*.

<sup>61</sup> Ibid.

<sup>62</sup> AU sec. 341.03a.

<sup>63</sup> Ibid.

principal customer or supplier; uninsured or underinsured catastrophe such as a drought, earthquake, or flood.<sup>64</sup>

If the auditor believes there is substantial doubt about the company's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, the auditor should obtain information about management's plans that are intended to mitigate the effect of such conditions or events, and assess the likelihood that such plans can be effectively implemented.<sup>65</sup> The auditor's considerations relating to management plans may include the following—

- Plans to dispose of assets;
- Plans to borrow money or restructure debt;
- Plans to reduce or delay expenditures;
- Plans to increase ownership equity.<sup>66</sup>

Such considerations also may include the effect of federal assistance or participation in a federal program.

If, after considering identified conditions and events and management's plans, the auditor concludes there is substantial doubt, he or she should consider the possible effects on the financial statements and the adequacy of disclosure about the company's inability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, and include an explanatory paragraph in the audit report to reflect this conclusion.<sup>67</sup> If the auditor concludes that substantial doubt is alleviated, the auditor should consider the need for disclosure of the principal conditions and events that initially caused the auditor to believe there was substantial doubt.<sup>68</sup>

## Additional Audit Considerations for Selected Financial Reporting Areas

The following discussion provides auditors with information on selected financial reporting areas that may be affected by the current economic environment. The auditor should give consideration to elevated risks related to the current economic environment and adjust his or her audit procedures as appropriate. This list is not intended to be all inclusive.

- Consolidation
- Contingencies and guarantees
- Credit derivatives
- Debt obligations
- Deferred tax assets
- Derivatives (other than credit derivatives)
- Goodwill, intangible assets and other long-lived assets
- Inventory
- Other-than-temporary impairment
- Pension and other postretirement benefits

---

<sup>64</sup> AU sec. 341.06.

<sup>65</sup> AU sec. 341.03b.

<sup>66</sup> AU sec. 341.07.

<sup>67</sup> AU secs. 341.10 and 341.12.

<sup>68</sup> AU sec. 341.11.

- Receivables
- Restructuring
- Revenue recognition
- Share-based payments

## Consolidation

As a result of the economic environment, some companies have provided financial support or guarantees, or have taken other actions that may cause them to have a variable interest in an entity or to have increased their exposure to the entity, and, therefore, cause them to consider or reconsider whether the entity is a variable interest entity and if so whether they are its primary beneficiary.<sup>69</sup> Such commitments to provide financial support or guarantees might be found in various contractual arrangements, such as leasing arrangements, supply contracts, service contracts or derivative contracts.

FASB Interpretation (“FIN”) No. 46(R) (as amended), *Consolidation of Variable Interest Entities—an interpretation of ARB No. 51*, addresses consolidation by the primary beneficiary of variable interest entities. On November 21, 2008, the FASB announced plans to issue final FSP FAS 140-4 and FIN 46(R)-8, *Disclosures about Transfers of Financial Assets and Interests in Variable Interest Entities*, by December 15, 2008, which will increase disclosure requirements for public companies for reporting periods that end after December 15, 2008.<sup>70</sup>

## Contingencies and guarantees

Recent events in the credit markets may expose companies to additional contingencies and guarantees, which could increase the risk of unidentified or undisclosed contingencies related to, for example—

- Pending or threatened litigation;
- Asserted or unasserted claims and assessments;
- Guarantees of indebtedness of others;
- Guarantees to repurchase receivables or property previously sold or otherwise assigned;
- Violations of laws and regulations;
- Guarantees of contractual performance of others; and
- Outstanding purchase commitments at prices in excess of market values.

The audit normally includes procedures that might identify litigation, claims, and assessments, among other things.<sup>71</sup> Examples of such procedures include the following—

- Reading minutes of meetings of stockholders, directors, and appropriate committees held during and subsequent to the period being audited;

<sup>69</sup> Paragraphs 7 and 15 of FASB Interpretation (“FIN”) No. 46(R) (as amended), *Consolidation of Variable Interest Entities – an interpretation of ARB No. 51*.

<sup>70</sup> See <http://www.fasb.org/news/nr112108.shtml>.

<sup>71</sup> Paragraph .07 of AU sec. 337, *Inquiry of a Client’s Lawyer Concerning Litigation, Claims and Assessments*. AU sec. 337.08 indicates that a letter of audit inquiry to the client’s lawyer is the auditor’s primary means of obtaining corroboration of the information furnished by management concerning litigation, claims, and assessments.

- Reading contracts, loan agreements, leases, and correspondence from taxing or other governmental agencies, and similar documents;
- Obtaining information concerning guarantees from bank confirmation forms;
- Inspecting other documents for possible guarantees by the client.<sup>72</sup>

## Credit derivatives

The downturn in the credit markets can have a significant effect on the fair value of a company's credit derivatives. A credit derivative is a derivative instrument whose value derives from the credit risk on an underlying bond, loan or financial asset. The credit risk is on an entity other than the counterparty to the transaction.<sup>73</sup> This entity is known as a reference entity, which incurred the debt.<sup>74</sup>

Credit derivatives are bilateral contracts between the buyer and seller under which the seller sells to the buyer protection against the credit risk of the reference entity.<sup>75</sup> Credit derivatives may be valued through the use of internally developed models or by pricing services. The assumptions used in models can be highly subjective, sensitive, and complex. A slight difference in assumptions could result in a significant change in the valuation of the derivative.

One factor that affects the fair value of credit derivatives is a decline in the credit quality of the reference entity. As a result of the deterioration in credit derivative positions insured by sellers of credit derivatives, some sellers have been required to post significant amounts of additional collateral. A seller also may be required to post additional collateral based on the deterioration of its own credit standing (regardless of changes in value of the written credit derivatives) to protect the buyer from default by the seller. In addition, the fair value of the asset included in the buyer's financial statements is affected by both the credit rating of the seller of the credit derivative (the counterparty) and the credit rating of the reference entity. The credit risk of the seller may affect the fair value of the liability in the seller's financial statements. In response to concerns from financial statement users and others that the current disclosure requirements for derivative instruments and certain guarantees did not adequately address the potential adverse effects of changes in the credit risk on the financial position, financial performance, and cash flows of the sellers of credit derivatives and certain guarantees, the FASB issued a staff position aimed at improving such disclosures.<sup>76</sup>

The auditor should obtain evidence supporting management's assertions about the fair value of derivatives measured or disclosed at fair value.<sup>77</sup> In addition,

---

<sup>72</sup> AU sec. 337.07.

<sup>73</sup> Satyajit Das, *Credit Derivatives: CDOs and Structured Credit Products*, (Singapore: John Wiley and Sons (Asia) Pte Ltd, 2005, Third Edition).

<sup>74</sup> Edmund Parker, "Credit Derivatives," *PLC Finance* (<http://www.mayerbrown.com/london/article.asp?id=4234&nid=1575>).

<sup>75</sup> Ibid.

<sup>76</sup> Paragraph 1 of FSP No. FAS 133-1 and FIN 45-4, *Disclosures about Credit Derivatives and Certain Guarantees: An Amendment of FASB Statement No. 133 and FASB Interpretation No. 45; and Clarification of the Effective Date of FASB Statement No. 161* (September 12, 2008).

<sup>77</sup> Paragraph .35 of AU sec. 332, *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities*. AU secs. 332.35 to .48 provide further direction on auditing valuations based on fair value.

the auditor should evaluate whether the presentation and disclosure of derivatives are in conformity with GAAP.<sup>78</sup>

In addition to valuation and presentation and disclosure, other considerations relate to existence and completeness. In March 2008, the President's Working Group on Financial Markets noted "[w]hile the infrastructure of the financial markets generally has coped quite well with heightened price volatility and surging trading volumes, there have been issues with the accuracy and timeliness of trade data transmissions, the timeliness of resolutions of trade matching errors, documentation and cash settlement, electronic post-trade processing, backlogs, integrated processing, and reconciliation and valuation."<sup>79</sup> Sellers and buyers of credit derivatives may have made trades which may not be properly reflected in the financial statements. AU sec. 332 provides examples of substantive procedures auditors may perform to obtain evidence about whether all derivatives have been properly identified and appropriately included in the financial statements.<sup>80</sup>

## Debt obligations

Companies may find it more difficult to refinance debt or it may take longer to arrange new financing in the current business environment, and compliance with debt covenants may be more challenging. Circumstances such as the following can affect the risks of material misstatement and the necessary audit procedures regarding debt obligations—

- Violations of existing debt covenants;
- Proper classification between short-term and long-term debt;
- The existence of cross default provisions, such that a violation of a covenant on one loan affects compliance with covenants for another loan;
- Exchange of debt or modifications to the terms of outstanding debt agreements;
- Concessions granted by lenders, including those that constitute a troubled debt restructuring;
- Subjective acceleration clauses;
- Embedded derivatives.

## Deferred tax assets

Under current economic conditions, companies may need to record valuation allowances for their deferred tax assets. Deferred tax assets are required to be reduced "by a valuation allowance if, based on the weight of available evidence,

---

<sup>78</sup> AU sec. 332.49. AU secs. 332.49 to .51 provide further direction on auditing presentation and disclosure of derivatives.

<sup>79</sup> See pages 18 to 19 of the Policy Statement on Financial Market Developments by The President's Working Group on Financial Markets (March 2008) ([http://www.treas.gov/press/releases/reports/pwgpolicystatementktturmoil\\_03122008.pdf](http://www.treas.gov/press/releases/reports/pwgpolicystatementktturmoil_03122008.pdf)). In June 2008, the Federal Reserve Bank of New York noted that "[s]tarting in September 2005, industry participants implemented a number of initiatives to improve the operational performance and infrastructure of the over-the-counter markets" and that market participants and regulators agreed on an "agenda for bringing about further improvements in the OTC derivatives market infrastructure." Federal Reserve Bank of New York, "Statement Regarding June 9 Meeting on Over-the-Counter Derivatives" (June 9, 2008), (<http://www.newyorkfed.org/newsevents/news/markets/2008/ma080609.html>).

<sup>80</sup> AU secs. 332.21 to .24.

it is *more likely than not* (a likelihood of more than 50 percent) that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized.”<sup>81</sup>

Evaluating the need for and amount of a valuation allowance for deferred tax assets requires consideration of “all available evidence, both positive and negative”<sup>82</sup> to determine whether all or some portion of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. SFAS No. 109, *Accounting for Income Taxes*, provides that the more negative evidence that exists (a) the more positive evidence is necessary and (b) the more difficult it is to support a conclusion that a valuation allowance is not needed for some portion or all of the deferred tax asset.<sup>83</sup>

In addition, SFAS No. 109 states that “information about an enterprise’s current financial position and its results of operations for the current and preceding years ordinarily is readily available. That historical information is supplemented by all currently available information about future years. Sometimes, however, historical information may not be available (for example, start-up operations) or it may not be as relevant (for example, if there has been a significant, recent change in circumstances) and special attention is required.”<sup>84</sup>

Future realization of a deferred tax asset “ultimately depends on the existence of sufficient taxable income of the appropriate character (for example, ordinary income or capital gain) within the carryback, carryforward period available under the tax law.”<sup>85</sup> SFAS No. 109 states that “the weight given to the potential effect of negative and positive evidence should be commensurate with the extent to which it can be objectively verified.”<sup>86</sup>

In addition, FIN No. 48 (as amended), *Accounting for Uncertainty in Income Taxes – an Interpretation of FASB Statement No. 109*, defines a criterion that an individual tax position must meet for any part of the benefit of that position to be recognized in a company’s financial statements.<sup>87</sup> The interpretation also provides guidance on measurement, derecognition, classification, interest and penalties, accounting in interim periods, disclosure, and transition.<sup>88</sup>

## Derivatives (other than credit derivatives)

The current environment may have a significant effect on the fair value of a company’s derivative contracts. In addition, the ability for a company to use hedge accounting, including its ability to apply the short-cut method, may be affected because of the company’s or the counterparty’s creditworthiness.<sup>89</sup> Hedge accounting also may be affected because changes in the fair value of the

---

<sup>81</sup> Paragraph 17e of SFAS No. 109 (as amended), *Accounting for Income Taxes*.

<sup>82</sup> SFAS No. 109, paragraph 20.

<sup>83</sup> SFAS No. 109, paragraph 25.

<sup>84</sup> SFAS No. 109, paragraph 20.

<sup>85</sup> SFAS No. 109, paragraph 21.

<sup>86</sup> SFAS No. 109, paragraph 25.

<sup>87</sup> Paragraph 2 of FIN No. 48 (as amended), *Accounting for Uncertainty in Income Taxes, an interpretation of FASB Statement No. 109*.

<sup>88</sup> Ibid.

<sup>89</sup> FASB Staff Implementation Guidance: Guide to Implementation of Statement 133 on Accounting for Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities, Issue G10 (“DIG Issue G10”), *Cash Flow Hedges: Need to Consider Possibility of Default by the Counterparty to the Hedging Derivative*.

derivative may be attributable to a risk other than the risk that is being hedged, such as company or counterparty creditworthiness.<sup>90</sup>

Auditors should obtain evidence supporting management's assertion about the fair value of derivatives measured or disclosed at fair value.<sup>91</sup> External factors, such as credit and market risk, may affect the valuation of derivatives. Credit or default risk exposes the company to the risk of loss as a result of the counterparty to a derivative failing to meet its obligation. Alternatively, the credit risk of the company may affect the fair value of the derivative when the derivative is in a liability position. Market risk exposes the company to the risk of loss from adverse changes in market factors that affect the fair value of a derivative, such as interest rates and foreign exchange rates. In order for a company to use hedge accounting, GAAP requires that management have an expectation that the hedging relationship will be highly effective at inception and on an ongoing basis.<sup>92</sup> Counterparty default risk may affect hedge accounting as GAAP requires that consideration be given to the likelihood that the counterparty will comply with the contractual terms of the derivative contract.<sup>93</sup> If the likelihood that the counterparty will not default ceases to be probable, the company would be unable to conclude that a cash flow hedging relationship is expected to be highly effective in achieving offsetting cash flows.<sup>94</sup> Additionally, a change in the creditworthiness of the derivative's counterparty in a fair value hedge would affect the assessment of whether the relationship qualifies for hedge accounting and amount of ineffectiveness recognized in earnings under fair value hedge accounting.<sup>95</sup> Under SFAS No. 133, hedge accounting ceases when a hedge is no longer highly effective on an ongoing basis.<sup>96</sup>

When assessing hedge accounting, auditors should gather evidential matter—

- To determine whether management complied with the hedge accounting requirements of GAAP, including designation and documentation requirements.<sup>97</sup>
- To support management's expectation at the inception of the hedge that the hedging relationship will be highly effective and its periodic assessment of the ongoing effectiveness of the hedging relationship as required by GAAP.<sup>98</sup>
- Supporting the recorded change, for a fair value hedge, in the hedged item's fair value that is attributable to the hedged risk.<sup>99</sup>

In addition, for a cash flow hedge of a forecasted transaction, the auditor should evaluate management's determination of whether a forecasted transaction is probable.<sup>100</sup>

---

<sup>90</sup> Paragraphs 20 and 28 of SFAS No. 133 (as amended), *Accounting for Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities*, discuss the risks that are being hedged for a fair value and a cash flow hedge, respectively. Paragraphs 25 and 29 of SFAS No. 133 indicate when to discontinue hedge accounting for a fair value and cash flow hedge, respectively.

<sup>91</sup> AU sec. 332.35.

<sup>92</sup> SFAS No. 133, paragraphs 20b and 28b.

<sup>93</sup> DIG Issue G10.

<sup>94</sup> Ibid.

<sup>95</sup> Ibid.

<sup>96</sup> SFAS No. 133, paragraph 67.

<sup>97</sup> AU sec. 332.53.

<sup>98</sup> Ibid.

<sup>99</sup> AU sec. 332.54.

<sup>100</sup> AU sec. 332.55.

## Goodwill, intangible assets and other long-lived assets

Market conditions during an economic downturn may result in an impairment of goodwill, other indefinite-lived intangible assets and other long-lived assets. Goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets “shall be tested for impairment annually, or more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that the asset might be impaired.”<sup>101</sup> Similarly, SFAS No. 144 (as amended), *Accounting for the Impairment or Disposal of Long-Lived Assets*, states that “A long-lived asset (asset group) shall be tested for recoverability whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that its carrying amount may not be recoverable.”<sup>102</sup> The following are examples of such events and changes in circumstances—

- A significant decrease in the market price of a long-lived asset (asset group);
- A significant adverse change in the extent or manner in which a long-lived asset (asset group) is being used or in its physical condition;
- A significant adverse change in legal factors or in the business climate that could affect the value of a long-lived asset (asset group), including an adverse action or assessment by a regulator;
- An accumulation of costs significantly in excess of the amount originally expected for the acquisition or construction of a long-lived asset (asset group);
- A current-period operating or cash flow loss combined with a history of operating or cash flow losses or a projection or forecast that demonstrates continuing losses associated with the use of a long-lived asset (asset group);
- A current expectation that, more likely than not, a long-lived asset (asset group) will be sold or otherwise disposed of significantly before the end of its previously estimated useful life. The term more likely than not refers to a level of likelihood that is more than 50 percent.<sup>103</sup>

Goodwill of a reporting unit shall be tested for impairment between annual tests if an event occurs or circumstances change that would more likely than not reduce the fair value of a reporting unit below its carrying amount.<sup>104</sup> Examples of such events or circumstances include—

- A significant adverse change in legal factors or in the business climate;
- An adverse action or assessment by a regulator;
- Unanticipated competition;
- A loss of key personnel;
- A more-likely-than-not expectation that a reporting unit or a significant portion of a reporting unit will be sold or otherwise disposed of;
- The testing for recoverability under SFAS No. 144 of a significant asset group within a reporting unit;

---

<sup>101</sup> Paragraph 17 of SFAS No. 142 (as amended), *Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets*.

<sup>102</sup> Paragraph 8 of SFAS No. 144 (as amended), *Accounting for the Impairment or Disposal of Long-Lived Assets*.

<sup>103</sup> Ibid.

<sup>104</sup> SFAS No. 142, paragraph 28.

- Recognition of a goodwill impairment loss in the financial statements of a subsidiary that is a component of a reporting unit.<sup>105</sup>

In addition to valuation, companies may need to reassess the useful life of indefinite-lived intangible assets and other long-lived assets. SFAS No. 142 (as amended), *Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets*, requires companies to “evaluate the remaining useful life of an intangible asset that is not being amortized each reporting period to determine whether events and circumstances continue to support an indefinite useful life.”<sup>106</sup> In addition, when other long-lived assets (asset group) are tested for recoverability, companies also may need to review depreciation estimates and methods.<sup>107</sup> Under SFAS No. 144, any revision to the remaining useful life of a longlived asset resulting from that review also shall be considered in developing estimates of future cash flows used to test the asset (asset group) for recoverability.<sup>108</sup>

## Inventory

Current market conditions and the effect on consumer spending may result in excess or obsolete inventory or inventory with carrying amounts in excess of market values. Inventory is required to be stated at the lower of cost or market.<sup>109</sup> The following are examples of conditions related to the current environment that might affect the risk of material misstatement of inventory valuation and the necessary audit procedures—

- An increase in inventory balances in relation to sales levels, a reduction in inventory turnover, and the aging of inventory may indicate excess or obsolete inventory balances that are not recoverable.
- Declining prices may indicate the carrying amount of inventory is in excess of market value. Accounting Research Bulletin (“ARB”) No. 43 (as amended), *Inventory Pricing* (chapter 4), requires that a loss be recognized in the current period “whenever the utility of goods is impaired by damage, deterioration, obsolescence, changes in price levels, or other causes.”<sup>110</sup>

In addition, losses on firm, uncancelable, and unhedged commitments to purchase inventory should be measured in the same way as are inventory losses and, if material, should be recognized in the accounts in the current period and separately disclosed in the income statement.<sup>111</sup>

## Other-than-temporary impairment

Many debt and equity securities have experienced significant declines in fair value. These declines in fair value may raise questions about whether such declines are other than temporary. The auditor should evaluate management’s conclusion about the need to recognize in earnings an impairment loss for a decline in fair value that is other than temporary.<sup>112</sup>

In accordance with SFAS No. 115 (as amended), *Accounting for Certain Investments in Debt and Equity Securities*, a charge to earnings should be made for

---

<sup>105</sup> Ibid.

<sup>106</sup> SFAS No. 142, paragraph 16.

<sup>107</sup> SFAS No. 144, paragraph 9.

<sup>108</sup> Ibid.

<sup>109</sup> Accounting Research Bulletin (“ARB”) No. 43 (as amended), *Inventory Pricing*, chapter 4.

<sup>110</sup> ARB No. 43, chapter 4, paragraph 8.

<sup>111</sup> ARB No. 43, chapter 4, paragraph 17.

<sup>112</sup> AU sec. 332.46.

impairment that is “other than temporary” in held-to-maturity and available-for-sale securities.<sup>113</sup> SEC Staff Accounting Bulletin (“SAB”) No. 59, *Accounting for Noncurrent Marketable Equity Securities*, also provides the SEC staff’s view and indicates that “other than temporary” should not be interpreted to mean “permanent.” SAB No. 59 provides examples of factors which, individually or in combinations, may indicate that a decline is other than temporary and that a write-down of the carrying value is required, including—

- The length of the time and the extent to which the market value has been less than cost;
- The financial condition and near-term prospects of the issuer, including any specific events which may influence the operations of the issuer such as changes in technology that may impair the earnings potential of the investment or the discontinuance of a segment of the business that may affect the future earnings potential; or
- The intent and ability of the holder to retain its investment in the issuer for a period of time sufficient to allow for any anticipated recovery in market value.

SAB No. 59 further provides that “[u]nless evidence exists to support a realizable value equal to or greater than the carrying value of the investment, a write-down accounted for as a realized loss should be recorded.”

Additionally, under FASB Emerging Issues Task Force No. 99-20, *Recognition of Interest Income and Impairment on Purchased Beneficial Interests and Beneficial Interests That Continue to Be Held by a Transferor in Securitized Financial Assets*, certain beneficial interests should be written down to fair value through earnings if the security has declined below its cost and there has been an adverse change in the estimated cash flows based on a holder’s best estimate of cash flows that a market participant would use in determining the fair value of the beneficial interest.<sup>114</sup>

## Pension and other postretirement benefits (“OPEB”)

Increased credit risk and reduced liquidity in the current economic environment can have a significant effect on the fair value of plan assets as well as the assumptions used to measure the pension and OPEB obligation. Companies that sponsor pension and OPEB plans are required to recognize the funded status of these plans in the statement of financial position.<sup>115</sup> The funded status is measured as the difference between the fair value of plan assets and the benefit obligation.<sup>116</sup> SFAS No. 87 (as amended), *Employers’ Accounting for Pensions*, and SFAS No. 106 (as amended), *Employers’ Accounting for Postretirement Benefits Other Than Pensions*, generally require that plan investments, whether equity or debt securities, real estate or other, be measured at fair value as of the measurement date.<sup>117</sup> Therefore, the measurement requirements of SFAS No. 157 apply to defined-benefit postretirement plan assets.

---

<sup>113</sup> Paragraph 16 of SFAS No. 115 (as amended), *Accounting for Certain Investments in Debt and Equity Securities*.

<sup>114</sup> Paragraph 12b of FASB Emerging Issues Task Force No. 99-20, *Recognition of Interest Income and Impairment on Purchased Beneficial Interests and Beneficial Interests That Continue to Be Held by a Transferor in Securitized Financial Assets*.

<sup>115</sup> Paragraph 1 of SFAS No. 158, *Employers’ Accounting for Defined Benefit Pension and Other Postretirement Plans*, an amendment of FASB Statements No. 87, 88, 106, and 132(R).

<sup>116</sup> SFAS No. 158, paragraph 4a.

<sup>117</sup> Paragraph 49 of SFAS No. 87 (as amended), *Employers’ Accounting for Pensions* and paragraph 65 of SFAS No. 106 (as amended), *Employers’ Accounting for Postretirement Benefits Other Than Pensions*.

Several assumptions are relevant to determining a company's pension and OPEB obligation, such as discount rate, expected rate of return on plan assets, and rate of compensation increase. Significant declines in the stock market may adversely affect the fair value of the plan assets, and companies may need to consider recent shifts in the market when developing the expected rate of return on plan assets. Changes in fair value of plan assets affect the funded status of the plan.<sup>118</sup> Deviations from the expected rate of return on plan assets affect a company's pension or OPEB expenses in future periods,<sup>119</sup> unless gains and losses are recognized immediately.<sup>120</sup>

## Receivables

In the current economic environment, companies may face a heightened risk of non-collection of receivables. Evidence of this risk might be noted in an increase in days sales outstanding, the aging of receivables, or the amount of delinquent receivables.<sup>121</sup>

In addition for loans receivable, evidence of this risk might be rising loan delinquency and defaults and decreasing secondary market liquidity.<sup>122</sup> These situations can affect the risk of material misstatement in the valuation of a company's receivables and the auditor's evaluation of management's estimate of the allowance.

## Restructuring

Market events and their effect on liquidity have caused many companies to take actions such as restructuring to reduce costs. SFAS No. 146 (as amended), *Accounting for Costs Associated with Exit or Disposal Activities*, addresses financial accounting and reporting for costs associated with exit or disposal activities.<sup>123</sup> The risks of material misstatement may relate to recording costs in the improper period, incorrect measurement or presentation of restructuring liabilities and costs, or inadequate disclosures. Misstatements could result in understatement or overstatement of restructuring liabilities and costs.

<sup>118</sup> SFAS No. 87, paragraph 35 and SFAS No. 106, paragraph 44A.

<sup>119</sup> SFAS No. 87, paragraph 34 and SFAS No. 106, paragraph 62.

<sup>120</sup> SFAS No. 87, paragraph 32 and SFAS No. 106, paragraph 59.

<sup>121</sup> Scott Malone, "Corporate America Taking Longer to Collect: Study" (August 24, 2008), (<http://www.reuters.com/article/reutersEdge/idUSN2745047620080827>), noted that it is taking companies longer to collect from their customers.

<sup>122</sup> SFAS No. 114 (as amended), *Accounting by Creditors for Impairment of a Loan- an amendment of FASB Statements no. 5 and 15*, addresses the accounting by creditors for impairment of a loan by specifying how allowances for credit losses related to certain loans should be determined.

<sup>123</sup> As described in paragraph 2a of SFAS No. 146 (as amended), *Accounting for Costs Associated with Exit or Disposal Activities*, SFAS No. 146 does not change the accounting for termination benefits, including one-time termination benefits granted in the form of an enhancement to an ongoing benefit arrangement, covered by SFAS No. 87, SFAS No. 88 (as amended), *Employers' Accounting for Settlements and Curtailments of Defined Benefit Pension Plans and for Termination Benefits*, SFAS No. 106, and SFAS No. 112 (as amended), *Employers' Accounting for Postemployment Benefits - an amendment of FASB Statements No. 5 and 43*. FSP No. FAS 146-1 (as amended), *Determining Whether a One-Time Termination Benefit Offered in Connection with an Exit or Disposal Activity Is, in Substance, an Enhancement to an Ongoing Benefit Arrangement*, provides guidance on when additional termination benefits offered in connection with an exit or disposal activity are considered, in substance, enhancements to an ongoing benefit arrangement and, therefore, subject to the provisions SFAS Nos. 87, 88, 106 and 112. In addition, SFAS No. 144 addresses accounting for long-lived assets and disposal groups to be disposed of, including components of a company that are discontinued operations.

## Revenue recognition

In the current economic environment, companies may be faced with increased pressure to meet revenue targets and analysts' expectations. These pressures may cause companies to change business practices, which could affect the amount and timing of revenue recognition. Examples of business practices that could affect revenue recognition and the necessary audit procedures include, among other things, rights of return, bill-and-hold arrangements, change in payment terms, side agreements, and consignment arrangements. Also, the auditor should ordinarily presume that there is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud relating to revenue recognition.<sup>124</sup>

## Share-based payments

Current market conditions have resulted in volatile stock prices for many companies. As a result, some companies may consider modifying share-based payment awards. In addition, the changing economic environment may affect the assumptions used when valuing such awards.

The valuation of share-based payment awards under an option-pricing model includes significant estimates, such as expected term, pre-vesting forfeiture rate and the expected volatility of the underlying stock price. For new grants of awards, companies may need to revise these and other inputs to reflect current expectations. For example, expected volatility in an option-pricing model may be affected by recent volatility in the markets. Assumptions used in the option pricing model affect the value of the award and, consequently, the compensation expense that is recognized in the financial statements.

Modifications of share-based payment awards may result in the recognition of incremental compensation cost. Incremental compensation cost is measured as the excess, if any, of the fair value of the modified award over the fair value of the original award immediately before its terms are modified.<sup>125</sup>

PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers ("Q&A"), *Auditing the Fair Value of Share Options Granted to Employees*, remains relevant in the current environment and reminds auditors of their responsibilities for auditing share-based payments including consideration of—

- The company's process,
- Risk factors,
- Model selection,
- Assumptions used in option-pricing models,
- Validation of data and the option-pricing model,
- Role of specialists.<sup>126</sup>

In discussing the auditor's responsibilities for auditing the fair value of share options granted to employees, the Q&A refers the auditor to AU sec. 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, AU sec. 328, *Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*, AU sec. 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, and AU sec. 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*.

---

<sup>124</sup> AU 316.41.

<sup>125</sup> Paragraph 51 of SFAS No. 123(R) (as amended), *Share-Based Payment*.

<sup>126</sup> PCAOB Staff Questions and Answers, *Auditing the Fair Value of Share Options Granted to Employees* (October 17, 2006).

**Contact Information**

Inquiries concerning this Staff Practice Alert may be directed to—

Thomas Ray, Chief Auditor and Director of Professional Standards, 202-207-9112, [rayt@pcaobus.org](mailto:rayt@pcaobus.org)

Martin Baumann, Director, Office of Research and Analysis, 202-207-9192, [baumannm@pcaobus.org](mailto:baumannm@pcaobus.org)

Jennifer Rand, Deputy Chief Auditor, 202-207-9206, [randj@pcaobus.org](mailto:randj@pcaobus.org)

Dee Mirando-Gould, Associate Chief Auditor, 202-207-9264, [mirando-gould@pcaobus.org](mailto:mirando-gould@pcaobus.org)

Chris David, Assistant Chief Auditor, 202-207-9231, [davidc@pcaobus.org](mailto:davidc@pcaobus.org)

**.04 Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 4, Auditor Considerations Regarding Fair Value Measurements, Disclosures, and Other-Than-Temporary Impairments**

April 21, 2009

Staff Audit Practice Alerts highlight new, emerging, or otherwise noteworthy circumstances that may affect how auditors conduct audits under the existing requirements of PCAOB standards and relevant laws. Auditors should determine whether and how to respond to these circumstances based on the specific facts presented. The statements contained in Staff Audit Practice Alerts are not rules of the Board and do not reflect any Board determination or judgment about the conduct of any particular firm, auditor, or any other person.

On April 9, 2009, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) issued three FASB Staff Positions (“FSP” or, collectively, “the FSPs”):

- FSP FAS 157-4, *Determining Fair Value When the Volume and Level of Activity for the Asset or Liability Have Significantly Decreased and Identifying Transactions That Are Not Orderly* (“FSP FAS 157-4”)
- FSP FAS 115-2 and FAS 124-2, *Recognition and Presentation of Other-Than-Temporary Impairments* (“FSP FAS 115-2”)
- FSP FAS 107-1 and APB 28-1, *Interim Disclosures about Fair Value of Financial Instruments* (“FSP FAS 107-1”)<sup>1</sup>

The objectives of these FSPs are to: (1) provide “additional guidance for estimating fair value in accordance with FASB Statement No. 157, *Fair Value Measurements*, when the volume and level of activity for the asset or liability have significantly decreased” including “guidance on identifying circumstances that indicate a transaction is not orderly,”<sup>2</sup> (2) amend “the other-than-temporary impairment guidance in U.S. GAAP for debt securities to make the guidance more operational and to improve the presentation and disclosure of other-than-temporary impairments on debt and equity securities in the financial statements,”<sup>3</sup> and (3) “require disclosures about fair value of financial instruments for interim reporting periods for publicly traded companies as well as in annual financial statements.”<sup>4</sup>

The purpose of this staff audit practice alert is to inform auditors about potential implications of the FSPs on reviews of interim financial information and annual audits. This alert addresses the following topics: (1) reviews of interim financial information (“reviews”); (2) audits of financial statements, including integrated audits; (3) disclosures; and (4) auditor reporting considerations. While this alert highlights certain areas, it is not intended to serve as a substitute for the relevant auditing standards.

---

<sup>1</sup> The respective FSPs are available at:

— [http://www.fasb.org/pdf/fsp\\_fas157-4.pdf](http://www.fasb.org/pdf/fsp_fas157-4.pdf)

— [http://www.fasb.org/pdf/fsp\\_fas115-2andfas124-2.pdf](http://www.fasb.org/pdf/fsp_fas115-2andfas124-2.pdf)

— [http://www.fasb.org/pdf/fsp\\_fas107-1andapb28-1.pdf](http://www.fasb.org/pdf/fsp_fas107-1andapb28-1.pdf)

<sup>2</sup> FSP FAS 157-4, paragraph 1.

<sup>3</sup> FSP FAS 115-2, paragraph 2. This FSP does not amend existing recognition and measurement guidance related to other-than-temporary impairment of equity securities. On April 14, 2009, the SEC’s staff released Staff Accounting Bulletin (“SAB”) No. 111, *Other Than Temporary Impairment of Certain Investments in Equity Securities*, which amends SAB Topic 5.M. SAB Topic 5.M. now excludes debt securities from its scope while maintaining the SEC staff’s views related to equity securities.

<sup>4</sup> FSP FAS 107-1, paragraph 1.

In considering the effects of the FSPs on their audits and reviews, auditors should be aware that some PCAOB standards include descriptions of accounting requirements that are no longer current. The accounting standards set by the FASB are recognized by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) as generally accepted.<sup>5</sup> Auditors should look to those standards and to the requirements of the SEC,<sup>6</sup> rather than the standards of the PCAOB, for current accounting requirements and disregard descriptions of accounting requirements in PCAOB standards that are inconsistent with the FSPs. The PCAOB has a project on its standards-setting agenda to address the auditing standards related to auditing accounting estimates and auditing fair value measurements. In connection with this project, the PCAOB is planning to remove descriptions of accounting requirements from these standards. In general, as the PCAOB replaces or substantively revises its interim standards, it will continue to remove descriptions of accounting requirements from those auditing standards.

## Reviews of Interim Financial Information

The objective of a review is to provide the auditor with a basis for communicating whether he or she is aware of any material modifications that should be made to the interim financial information for it to conform with generally accepted accounting principles (“GAAP”). A review differs significantly from an audit and consists principally of performing analytical procedures and making inquiries of persons responsible for financial and accounting matters.<sup>7</sup> A review does not provide a basis for expressing an opinion about whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with GAAP.<sup>8</sup> For an audit, PCAOB standards require that the auditor plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement.<sup>9</sup>

As part of the review, the auditor should, among other things, make inquiries of members of management who have responsibility for financial and accounting matters. If relevant to the company, the auditor should include in these inquiries questions about the implementation of the FSPs.<sup>10</sup>

The auditor also should determine whether any matters described in AU sec. 380, *Communication With Audit Committees* (“AU sec. 380”), as they relate to the interim financial information, have been identified.<sup>11</sup> If such matters have been identified, the auditor should communicate those matters to the audit committee or be satisfied, through discussion with the audit committee, that

---

<sup>5</sup> SEC, *Policy Statement: Reaffirming the Status of the FASB as a Designated Private-Sector Standard Setter*, Exchange Act Release No. 34-47743 (April 25, 2003). The PCAOB has no authority to prescribe the form or content of an issuer’s financial statements. Accordingly, while this staff audit practice alert describes applicable generally accepted accounting principles (“GAAP”), it does not establish or interpret GAAP.

<sup>6</sup> Auditors should look to the requirements of the SEC for the company under audit with respect to the accounting principles applicable to that company. See AU sec. 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*.

<sup>7</sup> Paragraph .07 of AU sec. 722, *Interim Financial Information* (“AU sec. 722”).

<sup>8</sup> Ibid.

<sup>9</sup> Paragraph .08 of AU sec. 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*. An audit includes, among other things, examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.

<sup>10</sup> AU sec. 722.18(c).

<sup>11</sup> AU sec. 722.34.

management has communicated such matters to the audit committee.<sup>12</sup> Matters to be communicated include: a change in a significant accounting policy affecting the interim financial information; accounting estimates and management's judgments about those accounting estimates; processes management uses to formulate sensitive accounting estimates; and the auditor's judgment about the quality, not just the acceptability, of the company's accounting policies.<sup>13</sup> Depending upon the circumstances, the implementation of the FSPs may present matters that should be communicated to the audit committee.

## Audits of Financial Statements, Including Integrated Audits

FSP FAS 157-4 provides additional guidance for estimating fair value when the volume and level of activity for an asset or liability have significantly decreased.<sup>14</sup> In performing procedures under AU sec. 328, *Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures* ("AU sec. 328"), the auditor is required to, among other things, obtain an understanding of the company's process for determining fair value measurements and disclosures and of the relevant controls sufficient to assess the risk of material misstatement, and to plan the nature, timing, and extent of the audit procedures.<sup>15</sup> Based on the auditor's assessment of the risk of material misstatement, the auditor should test the entity's fair value measurements and disclosures.<sup>16</sup> Because of the wide range of possible fair value measurements, from relatively simple to complex, and the varying levels of risk of material misstatement associated with the process for determining fair values, the auditor's planned audit procedures can vary significantly in nature, timing, and extent.<sup>17</sup> The auditor's substantive tests of the fair value measurements may involve (a) testing management's significant assumptions, the valuation model, and the underlying data, (b) developing independent fair value estimates for corroborative purposes, or (c) reviewing subsequent events and transactions.<sup>18</sup>

FSP FAS 115-2 amends the guidance for recognizing an other-than-temporary impairment ("OTTI") for a debt security.<sup>19</sup> The auditor is required to evaluate a company's conclusions about the need to recognize an impairment loss.<sup>20</sup> When a company has recognized an impairment loss, the auditor should gather evidence supporting the amount of the impairment adjustment recorded and determine whether the company has appropriately followed GAAP.<sup>21</sup> In certain circumstances, a company is required to separate the amount of the OTTI representing credit losses (as defined by FSP FAS 115-2) and the amount representing all other factors.<sup>22</sup> In those situations, the auditor's objective is to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to provide reasonable assurance that these estimates are reasonable in the circumstances and that they are

---

<sup>12</sup> Ibid.

<sup>13</sup> AU secs. 380.07-.08, AU sec. 380.11, and AU sec. 722.34.

<sup>14</sup> FSP FAS 157-4, paragraphs 12-16.

<sup>15</sup> AU secs. 328.09 and 328.13.

<sup>16</sup> AU sec. 328.23.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid.

<sup>19</sup> FSP FAS 115-2, paragraph 7.

<sup>20</sup> Paragraph .48 of AU sec. 332, *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities*.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid.

<sup>22</sup> FSP FAS 115-2, paragraphs 29-30.

presented and disclosed in conformity with GAAP.<sup>23</sup> In evaluating reasonableness, the auditor should obtain an understanding of how the company developed the estimates.<sup>24</sup> In addition, the auditor should discuss an accounting change due to FSP FAS 115-2 and other related topics (as described in the previous section related to interim financial information), with the audit committee in connection with the audit of the financial statements, including integrated audits.<sup>25</sup>

## Disclosures

The FSPs require additional disclosures regarding fair value measurements and OTTI. For example (1) FSP FAS 157-4 requires a company to disclose changes in valuation techniques and related inputs for fair value measurements in interim and annual periods and to provide additional disclosures under Statement No. 157, *Fair Value Measurements*<sup>26</sup> and (2) FSP FAS 115-2 requires a company to disclose information that enables users to understand the reasons that a portion of OTTI was not recognized in earnings and the methodology and significant inputs used to calculate the portion of OTTI that was recognized in earnings.<sup>27</sup> The auditor should evaluate whether the financial statement disclosures are in conformity with the FSPs.<sup>28</sup>

In addition, the auditor should read the other information accompanying the interim and annual financial statements contained in reports filed with the SEC.<sup>29</sup> For example, the Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations section of annual reports and other filings might include discussions regarding fair value measurements and OTTI.<sup>30</sup> The auditor should consider whether that information or the manner of its presentation is materially inconsistent with the financial statements. If the auditor concludes that there is a material inconsistency, or becomes aware of information that he or she believes is a material misstatement of fact, the auditor should determine if the financial statements, the audit report, or both require revision. If the auditor concludes that the financial statements or audit report do not require revision, the auditor should request the company to revise the other information.<sup>31</sup>

## Auditor Reporting Considerations

FSP FAS 157-4 states that revisions resulting from a change in the valuation technique or its application are to be accounted for as a change in accounting estimate. In the period of adoption, entities are required to disclose a change,

---

<sup>23</sup> Paragraph .07 of AU sec. 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*.

<sup>24</sup> AU sec. 342.10.

<sup>25</sup> AU secs. 380.07 and 380.11. Also, Section 10A(k) of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934 requires the auditor to communicate certain matters to the audit committee.

<sup>26</sup> FSP FAS 157-4, paragraph 20.

<sup>27</sup> FSP FAS 115-2, paragraph 38.

<sup>28</sup> The auditor considers whether a particular matter should be disclosed in light of the circumstances and facts of which the auditor is aware at the time. See paragraph .02 of AU sec. 431, *Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements*.

<sup>29</sup> AU sec. 722.18(f) and paragraph .04 of AU sec. 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* ("AU sec. 550").

<sup>30</sup> For example, see the discussion of critical accounting policies and critical accounting estimates, respectively, in SEC Release Nos. 33-8040, *Cautionary Advice Regarding Disclosure About Critical Accounting Policies* (December 12, 2001) and 33-8350, *Commission Guidance Regarding Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations* (December 29, 2003).

<sup>31</sup> AU secs. 550.04-05.

if any, in valuation technique and related inputs and quantify the total effect, if practicable, by major category.<sup>32</sup> In addition, FSP FAS 115-2 requires the company to recognize the cumulative effect of initially applying the FSP as an adjustment to the opening balance of retained earnings, as of the beginning of the period in which FSP FAS 115-2 is adopted, with a corresponding adjustment to accumulated other comprehensive income.<sup>33</sup>

The auditor should evaluate whether the company's accounting for and disclosure of the changes are in accordance with the FSPs. To identify consistency matters that might affect the auditor's report, the auditor should evaluate whether the comparability of the financial statements between periods has been materially affected by changes in accounting principles. A change in accounting principle that has a material effect on the financial statements should be recognized in the auditor's report through the addition of an explanatory paragraph following the opinion paragraph.<sup>34</sup>

## Contact Information

Inquiries concerning this Staff Audit Practice Alert may be directed to:

Martin F. Baumann, Chief Auditor and Director of Professional Standards, 202-207-9192, baumannm@pcaobus.org

Jennifer Rand, Deputy Chief Auditor, 202-207-9206, randj@pcaobus.org

Greg Fletcher, Associate Chief Auditor, 202-207-9203, fletchergr@pcaobus.org

Brian Wolohan, Associate Director, Office of Research and Analysis, 202-207-9148, wolohanb@pcaobus.org

---

<sup>32</sup> FSP FAS 157-4, paragraph 22.

<sup>33</sup> FSP FAS 115-2, paragraph 45.

<sup>34</sup> Auditing Standard No. 6, *Evaluating Consistency of Financial Statements*.

---

[The next page is 12,001.]



# PC TOPICAL INDEX

## PCAOB STAFF QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS AND OTHER IMPLEMENTATION GUIDANCE

References are to section numbers and to  
"Q" for specific Staff Questions and Answers.

### A

#### ACCOUNTING ESTIMATES

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03

#### ACCOUNTING STANDARDS

- Contingencies ..... 400.01
- Discounted Options ..... 400.01
- Option Grants ..... 400.01
- Tax Effects ..... 400.01
- Variable Plans ..... 400.01

#### ADJUSTMENTS

- Prior-Period Financial Statements—See Prior Period Financial Statements

#### ATTEST ENGAGEMENTS

- XBRL Financial Information Furnished Under the XBRL Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System ..... 100.02 Q1–Q8

#### AUDIT ENGAGEMENTS

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03
- Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments ..... 400.02
- Audits of Broker-Dealers .... 100.06 Q1–Q11
- Audits of Financial Statements, Including Integrated Audits ..... 400.04
- Auditors' Responsibilities When Using the Work of Specialists When Complex Fair Value Measurements Are Involved ..... 400.02
- Option Grants, Effects on Planned or Ongoing ..... 400.01

#### AUDITOR, INDEPENDENT

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03
- Audit Considerations Regarding Fair Value Measurements, Disclosures, and Other-Than-Temporary Impairments.. 400.04
- Auditing Fair Value Measurements Related to Employee Share Options ... 100.04 Q1–Q22
- Involvement in Registration Statements 400.01
- Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants ..... 400.01

#### AUDITORS' REPORT

- Illustrative Reports—See Illustrations
- Referencing PCAOB Standards . 100.01 Q2–Q3; 100.01 Q7–Q8
- Report on Management's Assertion 100.02 Q8
- Report on Subject Matter of the Assertion..... 100.02 Q8
- Reporting Requirements..... 100.02 Q8

### C

#### COMMUNICATION WITH AUDIT COMMITTEES

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03
- Matters to be Communicated for Reviews of Interim Financial Information..... 400.04

#### COMPETENCE

- Competent Evidence ..... 300.01
- Control Environment..... 300.01
- Documentation ..... 300.01
- Financial Reporting ..... 300.01
- Outside Professionals..... 300.01

#### CONFIDENTIAL TRANSACTION

- Definition..... 100.05 Q1–Q2

#### CONSISTENCY OF PERFORMANCE

- Definition..... 300.01

#### CONSOLIDATION

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03

#### CONTINGENCIES

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03
- Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants ..... 400.01

#### CORRELATION TO RELEVANT ASSERTIONS

- Definition..... 300.01

#### CREDIT DERIVATIVES

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03

#### CRITERIA FOR INVESTIGATION

- Definition..... 300.01

### D

#### DEBT OBLIGATIONS

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03

#### DEFERRED TAX ASSETS

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03

#### DERIVATIVES

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03

#### DISCLOSURES

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment ..... 400.03
- Fair Value Measurements ..... 400.04

**DISCLOSURES—continued**

- Interim and Annual Financial Statements . . . . . 400.04
- Material Inconsistency or Misstatement of Fact . . . . . 400.04
- Other-Than-Temporary Impairments . . . 400.04

**DISCOUNTED OPTIONS**

- Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants . . . . . 400.01

**E****ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**ENTITY-LEVEL CONTROLS**

- Control Environment. . . . . 300.01
- Management Override . . . . . 300.01
- Risk Assessment . . . . . 300.01
- Shared Service Environments. . . . . 300.01

**ETHICAL VALUES**

- Code of Conduct . . . . . 300.01
- Whistleblower Program . . . . . 300.01

**EXAMINATION ENGAGEMENT**

- Illustrative Reports—See Illustrations
- Objectives and Procedures. . . . . 100.02 Q7
- Report on Management's Assertion 100.02 Q8
- Report on Subject Matter of the Assertion. . . . . 100.02 Q8
- Reporting Requirements . . . . . 100.02 Q8
- XBRL Financial Information Furnished Under the XBRL Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System. . . . . 100.02 Q1–Q8

**EXTENSIBLE BUSINESS REPORTING LANGUAGE—See XBRL****F****FAIR VALUE**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03
- Auditing Employee Share Options . . . . . 100.04 Q1–Q22
- Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments . . . . . 400.02; 400.03
- Classification Within the Fair Value Hierarchy Under SFAS 157 . . . . . 400.02
- Company Process for Estimating Employee Share Option Grants . . . . . 100.04 Q3
- Consistent Application of Method for Determining Measurements of . . . . . 400.02
- Estimating in Audits of Financial Statements, Including Integrated Audits . . . . . 400.04
- Historical Financial Information Used in the Development of Assumptions . . . . . 400.02
- Management's Assumptions in Determining . . . . . 400.02
- Measurements And Disclosures . . . . . 400.04
- Option-Pricing Models for Employee Share Option Calculation . . . . . 100.04 Q5–Q18
- Risk Factors to Measurements Related to Employee Share Options . . . . . 100.04 Q4

**FAIR VALUE—continued**

- Role of Specialists in Estimating Employee Share Option Grants . . . . . 100.04 Q21–Q22
- Substantive Tests of Fair Value Measurements . . . . . 400.04
- Valuation of Data Supporting Estimating Employee Share Option Grants . . . . . 100.04 Q19–Q20

**FINANCIAL REPORTING OVERSIGHT ROLE**

- Audit Client . . . . . 100.05 Q5
- Definition . . . . . 100.05 Q5
- Other Changes in Employment Event . . . . . 100.05 Q6
- Tax Services . . . . . 100.05 Q5

**FRAUD**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**G****GOING CONCERN**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**GOODWILL**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**H****HEDGE ACCOUNTING**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**I****ILLUSTRATIONS**

- Correction of Error . . . 100.03 Q5; 100.03 Q9
- Report on Management's Assertion 100.02 Q8
- Report on Subject Matter of the Assertion. . . . . 100.02 Q8
- Retrospective Application of a Change in Accounting . . . . . 100.03 Q5; 100.03 Q9

**IMPAIRMENT, OTHER THAN TEMPORARY**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**INDEPENDENCE**

- Internal Revenue Service (IRS) . . . . . 100.05 Q4

**INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY**

- Access Controls . . . . . 300.01
- Application Controls . . . . . 300.01
- End-User Computing . . . . . 300.01
- Off-the-Shelf Software. . . . . 300.01
- Transaction Processing . . . . . 300.01

**INTANGIBLE ASSETS**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**INTEGRATED AUDIT PROCESS**

- Audit of Internal Control . . . . . 300.01
- Audit of the Financial Statements . . . . . 300.01
- Audit Planning . . . . . 300.01
- Illustrative Audit Approach . . . . . 300.01

**INTEGRATED AUDIT PROCESS—continued**

- Preliminary Engagement Procedures. . . 300.01

**INTERNAL CONTROL**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03
- Audit of Internal Control . . . . . 300.01; 400.03
- Audit of the Financial Statements . . . . . 300.01
- Management's Assessment . . . . . 300.01
- Risk Assessment . . . . . 300.01
- Scaling the Audit . . . . . 300.01
- Tests of Controls . . . . . 300.01

**INVENTORY**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**J****JUDGMENT**

- Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants . . . . . 400.01

**L****LEVEL OF AGGREGATION**

- Definition . . . . . 300.01

**M****MATERIAL WEAKNESSES**

- Illustrations—See Illustrations

**MATERIALITY**

- Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants . . . . . 400.01

**N****NON-ISSUERS**

- Adherence to PCAOB Interim Independence Standards . . . . . 100.01 Q4
- Audit in Accordance With PCAOB Standard No. 2 . . . . . 100.01 Q9
- Audit Subject to Concurring Partner Review . . . . . 100.01 Q10
- Audit Subject to PCAOB Inspection. . . . . 100.01 Q8
- Audits of Financial Statements Performed Pursuant to PCAOB . . . . . 100.01 Q1–Q10
- Compliance With SEC and Other Securities Laws or Rules and Regulations. . . 100.01 Q7
- Compliance With SEC Auditor Independence Requirements . . . . . 100.01 Q5
- PCAOB Independence Requirements and Applicability . . . . . 100.01 Q6
- Public Accounting Firm Registration With PCAOB . . . . . 100.01 Q1
- Referencing PCAOB Standards in Audit Report . . . . . 100.01 Q2–Q3; 100.01 Q7–Q8

**O****OPINIONS, AUDITORS**

- Option Grants, Effects on Previously Issued. . . . . 400.01

**OPTION GRANTS**

- Applicable Auditing Guidance . . . . . 100.04 Q2
- Applicable Financial Accounting Standards . . . . . 100.04 Q1; 400.01
- Auditing Fair Value Measurements Related to . . . . . 100.04 Q1–Q22
- Auditor Consideration . . . . . 100.04 Q1–Q22; 400.01
- Auditor Involvement in Registration Statements . . . . . 400.01
- Company Process for Estimating . . 100.04 Q3
- Contingencies . . . . . 400.01
- Discounted Options . . . . . 400.01
- Effects on Planned or Ongoing Audits . . 400.01
- Effects on Previously Issued Opinions. . 400.01
- Judgment . . . . . 400.01
- Materiality . . . . . 400.01
- Option-Pricing Models for Employee Share Option Calculation . . . . . 100.04 Q5–Q18
- Risk Factors to Measurements Related to . . . . . 100.04 Q4
- Role of Specialists in Estimating Employee Share Option Grants . . . . . 100.04 Q21–Q22
- Tax Effects . . . . . 400.01
- Timing and Accounting for . . . . . 400.01
- Valuation of Data Supporting Estimating Employee Share Option Grants . . . . . 100.04 Q19–Q20
- Variable Plans . . . . . 400.01

**OPTION PRICING MODELS**

- Assumptions . . . . . 100.04 Q7–Q18
- Combined Volatility. . . . . 100.04 Q17
- Expected Term . . . . . 100.04 Q8–Q11
- Historical Volatility . . . . . 100.04 Q13–Q15
- Implied Volatility. . . . . 100.04 Q16
- Risk-Free Interest Rate and Expected Dividends . . . . . 100.04 Q18
- Selection. . . . . 100.04 Q5–Q6
- Valuation of Data . . . . . 100.04 Q19–Q20

**OTHER-THAN-TEMPORARY IMPAIRMENT**

- Evaluating Reasonableness. . . . . 400.04
- Recognizing in Audits of Financial Statements, Including Integrated Audits. . . . . 400.04

**P****PCAOB**

- Audit Subject to Concurring Partner Review . . . . . 100.01 Q10
- Audit Subject to Inspection. . . . . 100.01 Q8
- Auditor Adherence to Interim Independence Standards . . . . . 100.01 Q4
- Audits of Financial Statements of Non-Issuers Performed Pursuant to Standards . . . . . 100.01 Q1–Q10
- Compliance With SEC and Other Securities Laws or Rules and Regulations. . . 100.01 Q7
- Compliance With SEC Auditor Independence Requirements . . . . . 100.01 Q5
- Financial Statements Certified by Registered Firms . . . . . 100.06 Q1
- Independence Requirements and Applicability . . . . . 100.01 Q6

**PCAOB—continued**

- Obligations of a Registered Firm . . 100.06 Q4
- Public Accounting Firm Registration . . . . . 100.01 Q1
- Referencing Standards in Audit Report . . . . . 100.01 Q2–Q3; 100.01 Q7–Q8
- Registration . . . . . 100.06 Q2–Q11
- Registration Application . . 100.06 Q5; 100.06 Q7

**PENSION AND OTHER POSTRETIREMENT BENEFITS**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**PERVASIVE DEFICIENCIES**

- Internal Control . . . . . 300.01
- Strategy . . . . . 300.01
- Sufficient Evidence . . . . . 300.01
- Top-Down Approach . . . . . 300.01

**PLANNING**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**PREDECESSOR AUDITOR**

- Audit Adjustments . . . . . 100.03 Q2–Q3
- Illustrative Reports—See Illustrations
- Modifications to Reissued Report on Prior-Period Financial Statements . 100.03 Q9
- Procedures Performed Prior to Reissuance on Prior-Period Financial Statements . 100.03 Q8
- Reissuance of Report on Prior-Period Financial Statements . . . . . 100.03 Q6
- Report Date on Reissued Financial Statements . . . . . 100.03 Q2; 100.03 Q10

**PREDICTABILITY OF EXPECTATIONS**

- Definition . . . . . 300.01

**PRIOR PERIOD FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Adjustments . . . . . 100.03 Q1–Q11
- Predecessor Auditor—See Predecessor Auditor
- Successor Auditor—See Successor Auditor

**PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD—See PCAOB****PURPOSE OF THE CONTROL**

- Definition . . . . . 300.01

**Q****QUALITY CONTROL**

- Statement of Quality Control Policies . . . . . 100.06 Q8

**R****RECEIVABLES**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**REGISTRATION STATEMENTS**

- Auditor Involvement in . . . . . 400.01
- Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants . . . . . 400.01

**REPORTING CONSIDERATIONS**

- Change in Valuation Technique . . . . . 400.04

**REPORTING CONSIDERATIONS—continued**

- Consistency Matters . . . . . 400.04

**RESTRUCTURING**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**REVENUE RECOGNITION**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**REVIEWS OF INTERIM FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

- Material Modifications . . . . . 400.04
- Matters to Be Communicated to the Audit Committee . . . . . 400.04
- PCAOB Standards . . . . . 400.04

**RISK ASSESSMENT**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03
- Audit Procedures . . . . . 300.01
- Complexity . . . . . 300.01
- Controls . . . . . 300.01
- Fair Value Measurements Related to Employee Share Options . . . . . 100.04 Q4
- Fraud Risks . . . . . 300.01
- Material Misstatement . . . . . 300.01; 400.04

**S****SCALING THE AUDIT OF INTERNAL CONTROL**

- Alternative Controls . . . . . 300.01
- Documentation . . . . . 300.01
- Entity-Level Controls . . . . . 300.01
- Financial Reporting Competencies . . 300.01
- Information Technology . . . . . 300.01
- Less Complex Company . . . . . 300.01
- Risk of Management Override . . . . 300.01
- Segregation of Duties . . . . . 300.01

**SEGREGATION OF DUTIES**

- Definition . . . . . 300.01
- External Parties . . . . . 300.01
- Incompatible Duties . . . . . 300.01
- Top-Down Approach . . . . . 300.01
- Walkthroughs . . . . . 300.01

**SHARE-BASED PAYMENTS**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**SIGNIFICANT DEFICIENCIES**

- Illustrations—See Illustrations

**SPECIALISTS**

- Auditors' Responsibilities When Using the Work of Specialists to Audit Financial Statements With Complex Fair Value Measurements . . . . . 400.02
- Fair Value Measurements Related to Employee Share Options . . . . . 100.04 Q21–Q22

**SUBSTANTIVE PROCEDURES**

- Audit Considerations Relating to the Economic Environment . . . . . 400.03

**SUCCESSOR AUDITOR**

- Audits and Reports on Adjustments ..... 100.03 Q4–Q11
- Has Not Completed Audit of Current Period ..... 100.03 Q11
- Illustrative Reports—See Illustrations
- Reaudit and Report .. 100.03 Q4; 100.03 Q7
- Responsibility for Adjustments Audited by Predecessor Auditor ..... 100.03 Q3

**T****TAX EFFECTS**

- Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants ..... 400.01

**TERMINOLOGY**

- Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System ..... 100.02 Q2
- XBRL ..... 100.02 Q1

**TESTS OF CONTROLS**

- Entity-Level Control ..... 300.01
- Objectives for Reliable Financial Reporting ..... 300.01
- Operating Effectiveness ..... 300.01
- Risk of Misstatement ..... 300.01
- Selection of Control ..... 300.01

**TIMING**

- Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants ..... 400.01

**TRANSACTION**

- Alternative Tax Transaction ..... 100.05 Q3
- Confidential Transaction ..... 100.05 Q2

**TRANSACTION—continued**

- Independence ..... 100.05 Q4
- Internal Revenue Service (IRS) .... 100.05 Q4

**V****VALUATION**

- Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments ..... 400.02
- Fair Value Measurements Related to Employee Share Options ..... 100.04, Q19–Q20

**VARIABLE PLANS**

- Matters Related to Timing and Accounting for Option Grants ..... 400.01

**X****XBRL**

- Applicable Engagement Standards 100.02, Q3
- Attest Engagements Regarding XBRL Financial Information Furnished Under the XBRL Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System ..... 100.02, Q1–Q8
- Definition ..... 100.02, Q1
- Examination Objectives and Procedures ..... 100.02, Q7
- Report on Management's Assertion ..... 100.02, Q8
- Report on Subject Matter of the Assertion ..... 100.02, Q8
- Reporting Requirements ..... 100.02, Q8
- Voluntary Financial Reporting Program on the EDGAR System ..... 100.02, Q2

---

[The next page is 15,001.]



# TRUST SERVICES PRINCIPLES, CRITERIA, AND ILLUSTRATIONS

Copyright © 2009 by American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, Inc. and Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants.

Permission is granted to make copies of this work provided that such copies are for personal, intraorganizational, or educational use only and are not sold or disseminated and provided further that each copy bears the following credit line: "Copyright © 2009 by American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, Inc. and Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants. Used with permission."

This document is available on AICPA Online at [www.aicpa.org](http://www.aicpa.org).

---

[The next page is 15,011.]



**TSP****TRUST SERVICES PRINCIPLES,  
CRITERIA, AND ILLUSTRATIONS****TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
100	Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations for Security, Availability, Processing Integrity, Confidentiality, and Privacy .....	.01-.48
	Introduction .....	.01-.17
	Trust Services .....	.03-.05
	Principles, Criteria, and Illustrative Controls .....	.06-.08
	Consistency with Applicable Laws and Regulations, Defined Commitments, Service-Level Agreements, and Other Contracts .....	.09
	Foundation for Trust Services—Trust Services Principles and Criteria .....	.10-.17
	Effective Date .....	.18
	Principles and Criteria .....	.19-.44
	Security Principle and Criteria .....	.19-.20
	Availability Principle and Criteria .....	.21-.23
	Processing Integrity Principle and Criteria .....	.24-.27
	Confidentiality Principle and Criteria .....	.28-.32
	Privacy Principles and Criteria .....	.33-.44
	Appendix A — Illustrative Disclosures for E-Commerce Systems ..	.45
	Appendix B — Illustrative System Description of a Non-E-Commerce System .....	.46
	Appendix C — Practitioner Guidance on Scoping and Reporting Issues .....	.47
	Appendix D — Generally Accepted Privacy Principles .....	.48
200	Trust Services Principles, Criteria and Illustrations for WebTrust® for Certification Authorities .....	.01-.72
	Introduction .....	.01-.05
	Overview .....	.06-.35
	Electronic Commerce .....	.06
	Public Key Infrastructure .....	.07-.12
	Digital Signature .....	.13-.17
	Differences Between Encryption Key Pairs and Signing Key Pairs .....	.18-.20
	Certification Authority .....	.21-.22

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
200 Trust Services Principles, Criteria and Illustrations for WebTrust® for Certification Authorities—continued .....	
Registration Authority .....	.23-.26
Certification Practice Statements and Certificate Policies ..	.27
The Difference Between Licensed and Nonlicensed CAs ..	.28
The Hierarchical and Cross-Certified CA Models .....	.29-.33
Business Issues Associated With CAs .....	.34-.35
The WebTrust Seal of Assurance for Certification Authorities .....	.36-.50
Practitioners as Assurance Professionals .....	.38-.39
Obtaining and Keeping the WebTrust Seal of Assurance for Certification Authorities .....	.40-.50
The Assurance Process .....	.40-.43
Comparison of a WebTrust for Certification Authorities Examination With Service Auditor Reports .....	.44-.46
Obtaining the WebTrust Seal .....	.47
Keeping the WebTrust Seal .....	.48
The Seal Management Process .....	.49
WebTrust Seal Authentication .....	.50
WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities .....	.51-.66
WebTrust for Certification Authorities Principles .....	.51-.59
Principle 1: CA Business Practices Disclosure .....	.52-.53
Principle 2: Service Integrity .....	.54-.57
Principle 3: CA Environmental Controls .....	.58-.59
WebTrust for Certification Authorities Criteria .....	.60-.63
WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities .....	.64-.66
Principle 1: CA Business Practices Disclosure .....	.64
Principle 2: Service Integrity .....	.65
Principle 3: CA Environmental Controls .....	.66
Appendix A—Illustrative Examples of Practitioner Reports .....	.67
Appendix B—Illustrative Examples of Management's Assertion ..	.68
Appendix C—Illustrative Examples of Management's Representation .....	.69
Appendix D—Comparison of WebTrust for Certification Authorities Criteria and ANSI X9.79 .....	.70
Appendix E—Comparison of CICA Section 5900, AICPA SAS No. 70, and AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities Reviews and Reports Covering the Business Activities of Certification Authority Organizations .....	.71

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
200	Trust Services Principles, Criteria and Illustrations for WebTrust® for Certification Authorities—continued .....	
	Appendix F—Practitioner Policies and Guidance for WebTrust for Certification Authority Engagements .....	.72

---

[The next page is 15,051.]



## Section 100

# ***Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations for Security, Availability, Processing Integrity, Confidentiality, and Privacy***

(To supersede the 2006 version of the Suitable Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations for Security, Availability, Processing Integrity, Confidentiality, and Privacy)

## **Introduction**

.01 This section provides guidance to a practitioner providing attestation services, advisory services, or both that address IT-enabled systems including electronic commerce (e-commerce) systems<sup>1</sup> and privacy programs. The guidance is relevant when providing services with respect to system security, availability, processing integrity, confidentiality, and privacy.

.02 The guidance provided in this section includes

- trust services principles and criteria;
- examples of system descriptions; and
- illustrative practitioner reports for trust services engagements.

## **Trust Services**

.03 The term *trust services* is defined as a set of professional attestation and advisory services based on a core set of principles and criteria that addresses the risks and opportunities of IT-enabled systems and privacy programs. Trust services principles and criteria are issued by the Assurance Services Executive Committee of the AICPA (the committee).

## **Attestation Services**

.04 Attestation services include examination, review,<sup>2</sup> and agreed-upon procedures engagements. In examination and review engagements, the reporting practitioner expresses an opinion. In an examination engagement, for example, there is an opinion as to whether controls over a defined system were

---

<sup>1</sup> A *system* consists of five key components organized to achieve a specified objective. The five components are categorized as follows:

- *Infrastructure.* The physical and hardware components of a system (facilities, equipment, and networks)
- *Software.* The programs and operating software of a system (systems, applications, and utilities)
- *People.* The personnel involved in the operation and use of a system (developers, operators, users, and managers)
- *Procedures.* The programmed and manual procedures involved in the operation of a system (automated and manual)
- *Data.* The information used and supported by a system (transaction streams, files, databases, and tables)

<sup>2</sup> A practitioner should not accept an engagement to review an entity's controls over a system related to the trust services principles and criteria.

operating effectively to meet the criteria for systems reliability. In an agreed-upon procedures engagement, the practitioner does not express an opinion but rather performs procedures agreed upon by specified parties and reports the findings. Attestation services are developed in accordance with AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1).

### **Advisory Services**

**.05** In the context of trust services, advisory services include strategic, diagnostic, implementation, sustaining, and managing services using trust services principles and criteria. Practitioners providing such services follow CS section 100, *Consulting Services: Definitions and Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2). The practitioner does not express an opinion in these engagements.

### **Principles, Criteria, and Illustrative Controls**

**.06** The following guidance sets out (1) principles, which are broad statements of objectives, and (2) specific criteria that should be achieved to meet each principle. Criteria are benchmarks used to measure and present the subject matter and against which the practitioner evaluates the subject matter. The attributes of suitable criteria are objectivity, measurability, completeness, and relevance. The committee has concluded that the trust services criteria have all the attributes of suitable criteria. Furthermore, the publication of this guidance makes the criteria available to users. Trust services principles are used to describe the overall objective; however, the practitioner's opinion makes reference only to the criteria.

**.07** In the trust services principles and criteria, the criteria are supported by a list of illustrative controls that, if operating effectively, enable a system to meet the criteria. These illustrations are not intended to be all-inclusive and are presented as examples only. Actual controls in place at an entity may not be included in the list, and some of the listed controls may not be applicable to all systems and client circumstances. The practitioner should identify and assess the relevant controls that the client has in place to satisfy the criteria. The choice and number of those controls would be based on such factors as the entity's management style, philosophy, size, and industry.

**.08** The following are the types of engagements a practitioner may perform using the trust services principles and criteria:

- Reporting on the operating effectiveness of an entity's controls over the system.
- Reporting on the operating effectiveness of an entity's controls and the entity's compliance with its commitments related to the trust services principle(s) and criteria.
- Reporting on the suitability of the design of the entity's controls over the system to achieve the trust services principle(s) and criteria, if the controls were operating effectively. (This engagement would typically be performed prior to the system's implementation.)

When the subject matter of the engagement is an entity's privacy program, the report must cover the entity's compliance with its commitments. For purposes of brevity, this document primarily addresses engagements in which the practitioner reports on the operating effectiveness of controls over a system to achieve the trust services principles and criteria. However, the guidance is equally applicable to engagements to report on any of the subject matters listed

in this paragraph, unless otherwise specified. In addition, AT section 101 permits a practitioner to report on either the subject matter or an assertion about the subject matter (see appendix C, “Management’s Assertion”).

## Consistency with Applicable Laws and Regulations, Defined Commitments, Service-Level Agreements, and Other Contracts

.09 Several of the principles and criteria refer to “consistency with applicable laws and regulations, defined commitments, service-level agreements, and other contracts.” Management is responsible for identification of and compliance with laws and regulations. It is beyond the scope of the engagement for the practitioner to undertake identification of all relevant “applicable laws and regulations, defined commitments, service-level agreements, and other contracts.” Furthermore, when reporting on the operating effectiveness of a entity’s controls, trust services engagements do not require the practitioner to test or report on an entity’s compliance with applicable laws and regulations, defined commitments, service-level agreements, and other contracts but rather to report on the effectiveness of the entity’s controls over monitoring compliance with them. When reporting on compliance with commitments, reference also should be made to other professional standards related to reporting on an entity’s compliance with laws, regulations, and agreements.<sup>3</sup>

## Foundation for Trust Services—Trust Services Principles and Criteria

.10 The following principles and related criteria have been developed by the AICPA and the Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants (CICA) for use by practitioners in the performance of trust services engagements:<sup>4</sup>

- a. *Security*. The system is protected against unauthorized access (both physical and logical).
- b. *Availability*. The system is available for operation and use as committed or agreed.
- c. *Processing integrity*. System processing is complete, accurate, timely, and authorized.
- d. *Confidentiality*. Information designated as confidential is protected as committed or agreed.
- e. *Privacy*. Personal information<sup>5</sup> is collected, used, retained, disclosed, and destroyed in conformity with the commitments in the entity’s privacy notice and with criteria set forth in generally accepted privacy principles (GAPP) issued by the AICPA and CICA (found in appendix D [paragraph .48]).

.11 The trust services principles and criteria of security, availability, processing integrity, and confidentiality are organized into four broad areas:

- a. *Policies*. The entity has defined and documented its policies relevant to the particular principle. (The term *policies* as used here refer to written

---

<sup>3</sup> See AT section 601, *Compliance Attestation* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1).

<sup>4</sup> SysTrust and WebTrust are two specific assurance services offerings developed by the AICPA and Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants (CICA) that are based on the Trust Services Principles and Criteria. Practitioners must be licensed by the CICA to use these registered service marks. For more information on licensure, see [www.webtrust.org](http://www.webtrust.org).

<sup>5</sup> Personal information is information that is about or can be related to an identifiable individual.

statements that communicate management's intent, objectives, requirements, responsibilities, and standards for a particular subject.)

- b. *Communications.*<sup>6</sup> The entity has communicated its defined policies to responsible parties and authorized users of the system.
- c. *Procedures.* The entity placed in operation procedures to achieve its objectives in accordance with its defined policies.
- d. *Monitoring.* The entity monitors the system and takes action to maintain compliance with its defined policies.

**.12** For the trust services principles and criteria of security, availability, processing integrity, and confidentiality, a two-column format has been used to present the criteria. The first column presents the criteria for each principle, and the second column provides illustrative controls.

**.13** A system description is used to delineate the boundaries of the system under examination for the trust services principles and criteria of security, availability, processing integrity, and confidentiality. For engagements covering an entity's compliance with its commitments, those commitments should be included in system description or should otherwise accompany the report. Examples of system descriptions for both e-commerce and non-e-commerce systems are included in appendix A (paragraph .45) and appendix B (paragraph .46), respectively. Appendix A (paragraph .45) also includes sample disclosures related to specific principles and criteria for e-commerce systems.

**.14** A reliable system is one that is capable of operating without material error, fault, or failure during a specified period in a specified environment. A practitioner may provide a report on systems reliability that addresses the trust services principles and criteria of security, availability, and processing integrity. These criteria are used to evaluate whether a system is reliable.

**.15** The trust services principles and criteria of privacy are organized into two broad areas:

- a. *Policies and communications.* Privacy policies are written statements that convey management's intent, objectives, requirements, responsibilities, and standards concerning privacy. Communications refers to the organization's communication to individuals, internal personnel, and third parties about its privacy notice and its commitments therein and other relevant information.
- b. *Procedures and controls.* The other actions the organization takes to achieve the criteria.

**.16** The scope of a privacy engagement can cover (1) either all personal information or only certain identified types of personal information, such as customer information or employee information, and (2) all business segments and locations for the entire entity or only certain identified segments of the business (for example, retail operations but not manufacturing operations or only operations originating on the entity's Web site or specified Web domains) or geographic locations (such as only Canadian operations). The scope of a privacy engagement should cover all of the activities in the information life

---

<sup>6</sup> In certain e-commerce environments, the terms and conditions, including the rights, responsibilities, and commitments of both parties, are implicit in the user's completion of a transaction on the Web site. To meet the underlying intent of the "Communications" category of the criteria in such circumstances, the policies and processes required by each of the "Communications" criteria should be disclosed on the entity's Web site. Examples of such disclosures for each of the trust services principles are contained in appendix A (paragraph .45).

cycle that consists of the collection, use, retention, disclosure and destruction, de-identification, or anonymization.

**.17** For the trust services principles and criteria of privacy, a three-column format has been used to present the criteria. The first column contains the measurement criteria for each principle—the attributes that the entity must meet to be able to demonstrate that it has achieved the principle. The second column provides illustrative controls and procedures, which are designed to enhance the understanding of the criteria. The illustrations are not intended to be comprehensive, nor are any of the illustrations necessary for an entity to have met the criteria. The third column presents additional considerations, including supplemental information such as good privacy practices and selected requirements of specific laws and regulations that pertain to a certain industry or country.

## Effective Date

**.18** The trust services principles and criteria are effective as of September 15, 2009.

## Principles and Criteria

### Security Principle and Criteria

**.19** The *security principle* refers to the protection of the system from unauthorized access, both logical and physical. Limiting access to the system helps prevent potential abuse of the system, theft of resources, misuse of software, and improper access to, or the use, alteration, destruction, or disclosure of information. Key elements for the protection of the system include permitting authorized access based on relevant needs and preventing unauthorized access to the system in all other instances.

### Security Principle and Criteria Table

**.20** The system is protected against unauthorized access (both physical and logical)

	<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
<b>1.0</b>	<b>Policies: The entity defines and documents its policies for the security of its system.</b>	
<b>1.1</b>	The entity's security policies are established and periodically reviewed and approved by a designated individual or group.	Written security policy, addressing both IT and physical security, has been approved by the IT standards committee and is implemented throughout the company.

(continued)

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

Criteria	Illustrative Controls <sup>7</sup>
<p>1.2 The entity's security policies include, but may not be limited to, the following matters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifying and documenting the security requirements of authorized users</li> <li>b. Classifying data based on its criticality and sensitivity and that classification is used to define protection requirements, access rights and access restrictions, and retention and destruction requirements</li> <li>c. Assessing risks on a periodic basis</li> <li>d. Preventing unauthorized access</li> <li>e. Adding new users, modifying the access levels of existing users, and removing users who no longer need access</li> <li>f. Assigning responsibility and accountability for system security</li> <li>g. Assigning responsibility and accountability for system changes and maintenance</li> </ul>	<p>As part of the periodic corporate risk assessment process, the security officer identifies changes to the IT risk assessment based on new applications and infrastructure, significant changes to applications and infrastructure, new environmental security risks, changes to regulations and standards, and changes to user requirements as identified in service level agreements and other documents. The security officer then updates the security policy based on the IT risk assessment.</p> <p>Changes to the IT security policy are approved by the IT standards committee prior to implementation.</p> <p><i>An example of an illustrative control for this criterion would be an entity's documented security policy addressing the elements set out in criterion 1.2. An illustrative security policy has been omitted for brevity.</i></p>

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>h.</i> Testing, evaluating, and authorizing system components before implementation</li> <li><i>i.</i> Addressing how complaints and requests relating to security issues are resolved</li> <li><i>j.</i> Identifying and mitigating security breaches and other incidents</li> <li><i>k.</i> Providing for training and other resources to support its system security policies</li> <li><i>l.</i> Providing for the handling of exceptions and situations not specifically addressed in its system security policies</li> <li><i>m.</i> Providing for the identification of and consistency with applicable laws and regulations, defined commitments, service-level agreements, and other contractual requirements</li> <li><i>n.</i> Providing for sharing information with third parties</li> </ul>	
<p>1.3 Responsibility and accountability for developing and maintaining the entity's system security policies, and changes and updates to those policies, are assigned.</p>	<p>Management has assigned responsibilities for the maintenance and enforcement of the entity security policy to the security officer under the directions of the CIO. The IT standards committee of the executive committee assists in the review, update, and approval of the policy as outlined in the executive committee handbook.</p>
<p><b>2.0 Communications: The entity communicates its defined system security policies to responsible parties and authorized users.</b></p>	
<p>2.1 The entity has prepared an objective description of the system and its boundaries and communicated such description to authorized users.</p>	<p>For its e-commerce system, the entity has posted a system description on its Web site. <i>(For an example of a system description for an e-commerce system, refer to appendix A [paragraph .45].)</i></p>

(continued)

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
2.2 The security obligations of users and the entity's security commitments to users are communicated to authorized users.	<p>For its non-e-commerce system, the entity has provided a system description to authorized users. <i>(For an example of a system description for a non-e-commerce based system, refer to appendix B [paragraph .46].)</i></p> <p>The entity's security commitments and required security obligations to its customers and other external users are posted on the entity's Web site and as part of the entity's standard services agreement.</p> <p>For its internal users (employees and contractors), the entity's policies relating to security are reviewed with new employees and contractors as part of their orientation, and the key elements of the policies and their impact on the employee are discussed.</p> <p>New employees must sign a statement signifying that they have read, understand, and will follow these policies.</p> <p>Each year, employees must reconfirm their understanding of and compliance with the entity's security policies. Security obligations of contractors are detailed in their contracts.</p> <p>A security awareness program has been implemented to communicate the entity's IT security policies to employees.</p> <p>The entity publishes its IT security policies on its corporate intranet.</p>
2.3 Responsibility and accountability for the entity's system security policies and changes and updates to those policies are communicated to entity personnel responsible for implementing them.	<p>The security administration team has custody of and is responsible for the day-to-day maintenance of the entity's security policies, and recommends changes to the CIO and the IT steering committee.</p> <p>Written job descriptions have been defined and are communicated to the security administration team.</p> <p>Written process and procedure manuals for all defined security processes are provided to security administration team personnel. The security officer updates the processes and procedures manuals based on changes to the security policy.</p>

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
<p>2.4 The process for informing the entity about breaches of the system security and for submitting complaints is communicated to authorized users.</p>	<p>The process for customers and external users to inform the entity of possible security breaches and other incidents is posted on the entity's Web site and is provided as part of the new user welcome kit.</p> <p>The entity's security awareness program includes information concerning the identification of possible security breaches and the process for informing the security administration team.</p> <p>Documented procedures exist for the identification and escalation of security breaches and other incidents.</p>
<p>2.5 Changes that may affect system security are communicated to management and users who will be affected.</p>	<p>Planned changes to system components and the scheduling of those changes are reviewed as part of the monthly IT steering committee meetings.</p> <p>Changes to system components, including those that may affect system security, require the approval of the security administrator before implementation.</p> <p>Changes that may affect customers and users and their security obligations or the entity's security commitments are highlighted on the entity's Web site.</p> <p>Changes that may affect system security and confidentiality are communicated in writing to affected customers for review and approval under the provisions of the standard services agreement before implementation of the proposed change.</p> <p>There is periodic communication of changes, including changes that affect system security.</p> <p>Changes that affect system security are incorporated into the entity's ongoing security awareness program.</p>
<p><b>3.0 Procedures: The entity placed in operation procedures to achieve its documented system security objectives in accordance with its defined policies.</b></p>	

(continued)

---

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
<p>3.1 Procedures exist to (1) identify potential threats of disruption to systems operation that would impair system security commitments and (2) assess the risks associated with the identified threats.</p>	<p>A risk assessment is performed periodically. As part of this process, threats to security are identified and the risk from these threats is formally assessed.</p> <p>Security processes and procedures are revised by the security officer based on the assessed threats.</p>
<p>3.2 Procedures exist to restrict logical access to the defined system including, but not limited to, the following matters:</p> <p>a. Logical access security measures to restrict access to information resources not deemed to be public.</p> <p>b. Identification and authentication of users.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Logical access to nonpublic information resources is protected through the use of native operating system security, native application and resource security, and add-on security software.</li> <li>• Resource specific or default access rules have been defined for all non-public resources.</li> <li>• Access to resources is granted to an authenticated user based on the user's identity.</li> <li>• Users must establish their identity to the entity's network and application systems when accessing nonpublic resources through the use of a valid user ID that is authenticated by an associated password.</li> <li>• Unique user IDs are assigned to individual users.</li> <li>• Use of group or shared IDs is permitted only after completion of an assessment of the risk of the shared ID and written approval of the manager of the requesting business unit.</li> <li>• Passwords are case sensitive and must contain at least 8 characters, one of which is nonalphanumeric.</li> <li>• Security configuration parameters force passwords to be changed every 90 days.</li> <li>• Login sessions are terminated after 3 unsuccessful login attempts.</li> </ul>

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
c. Registration and authorization of new users.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Customers can self-register on the entity's Web site, under a secure session in which they provide new user information and select appropriate user ID and password. Privileges and authorizations associated with self-registered customer accounts provide specific limited system functionality.</li> <li>• The line-of-business supervisor authorizes access privilege change requests for employees and contractors. Access to restricted resources is authorized by the resource owner.</li> <li>• Customer access privileges beyond the default privileges granted during self-registration are approved by the customer account manager or the resource owner.</li> <li>• Proper segregation of incompatible duties is considered in granting privileges based on the user's job description or role.</li> <li>• The ability to create or modify users and user access privileges (other than the limited functionality "customer accounts") is limited to the security administration team.</li> </ul>
d. The process to make changes and updates to user profiles.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes and updates to self-registered customer accounts can be done by the individual user at any time on the entity's Web site after the user has successfully logged onto the system. Changes are reflected immediately.</li> <li>• Unused customer accounts (no activity for six months) are purged by the system.</li> <li>• Changes to other accounts and profiles are made by the security administration team and require the written approval of the appropriate line-of-business supervisor or customer account manager and the resource owner.</li> <li>• The human resource management system provides the human resources team with a list of newly terminated employees on a weekly basis. This listing is sent to the security administration team for deactivation.</li> </ul>

(continued)

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>		<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
e.	Distribution of output restricted to authorized users.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Access to computer processing output is provided to authorized individuals based on the classification of the information.</li><li>• Processing output is stored in an area that reflects the classification of the information.</li><li>• Processing output is distributed in accordance with the security policy based on classification of the information.</li></ul>
f.	Restriction of access to offline storage, backup data, systems, and media.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Access to offline storage, backup data, systems, and media is limited to computer operations staff through the use of physical and logical access controls.</li></ul>
g.	Restriction of access to system configurations, superuser functionality, master passwords, powerful utilities, and security devices (for example, firewalls).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hardware and operating system configuration tables are restricted to appropriate personnel through physical access controls, native operating system security, and add-on security software.</li><li>• Application software configuration tables are restricted to authorized users and under the control of application change management software.</li><li>• Utility programs that can read, add, change, or delete data or programs are restricted to authorized technical services staff. Usage is logged and monitored by the manager of computer operations.</li><li>• The information security team, under the direction of the CIO, maintains access to firewall and other logs, as well as access to any storage media. Any access is logged and reviewed in accordance with the company's IT policies.</li><li>• A listing of all master passwords is stored in an encrypted database, and an additional copy is maintained in a sealed envelope in the entity safe.</li></ul>
3.3	Procedures exist to restrict physical access to the defined system including, but not limited to, facilities, backup media, and other system components such as firewalls, routers, and servers.	Physical access to the computer rooms, which house the entity's IT resources, servers, and related hardware such as firewalls and routers, is restricted to authorized individuals by card key systems and monitored by video surveillance.

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
3.4 Procedures exist to protect against unauthorized access to system resources.	Physical access cards are managed by building security staff. Access card usage is logged. Logs are maintained and reviewed by building security staff.
	Requests for physical access privileges to the entity's computer facilities require the approval of the manager of computer operations.
	Documented procedures exist for the identification and escalation of potential physical security breaches.
	Offsite media are stored in locked containers in secured facilities. Physical access to these containers is restricted to facilities personnel and employees authorized by the manager of computer operations.
	Login sessions are terminated after three unsuccessful login attempts. Virtual private networking (VPN) software is used to permit remote access by authorized users. Users are authenticated by the VPN server through specific "client" software and user ID and passwords.
	Firewalls are used and configured to prevent unauthorized access. Firewall events are logged and reviewed daily by the security administrator.
	Unneeded network services (for example, telnet, ftp, and http) are deactivated on the entity's servers. A listing of the required and authorized services is maintained by the IT department. This list is reviewed by entity management on a routine basis for its appropriateness for the current operating conditions.
	Intrusion detection systems are used to provide continuous monitoring of the entity's network and early identification of potential security breaches.
	The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.

(continued)

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>		<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
3.5	Procedures exist to protect against infection by computer viruses, malicious code, and unauthorized software.	<p>In connection with other security monitoring, the security administration team participates in user groups and subscribes to services relating to computer viruses.</p> <p>Antivirus software is in place, including virus scans of incoming e-mail messages. Virus signatures are updated promptly.</p> <p>Any viruses discovered are reported to the security team, and an alert is created for all users notifying them of a potential virus threat.</p> <p>The ability to install, modify, and replace operating system and other system programs is restricted to authorized personnel.</p> <p>Access to superuser functionality and sensitive system functions is restricted to authorized personnel.</p>
3.6	Encryption or other equivalent security techniques are used to protect user authentication information and the corresponding session transmitted over the Internet or other public networks.	<p>The entity uses industry standard encryption technology, VPN software, or other secure communication systems (consistent with its periodic IT risk assessment) for the transmission of private or confidential information over public networks, including user IDs and passwords. Users are required to upgrade their browsers to the most current version tested and approved for use by the security administration team to avoid possible security problems.</p> <p>Account activities, subsequent to successful login, are encrypted through industry standard encryption technology, VPN software, or other secure communication systems (consistent with its periodic IT risk assessment). Users are logged out on request (by selecting the “Sign-out” button on the Web site) or after 10 minutes of inactivity.</p>
<b>Criteria related to execution and incident management used to achieve objectives</b>		
3.7	Procedures exist to identify, report, and act upon system security breaches and other incidents.	<p>Users are provided instructions for communicating potential security breaches to the information security team. The information security team logs incidents reported through customer hotlines and e-mail.</p>

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner’s responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>		<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
		<p>Intrusion detection systems and other tools are used to identify, log, and report potential security breaches and other incidents. The system notifies the security administration team or the network administrator via e-mail and text of potential incidents in progress.</p> <p>Incident logs are monitored and evaluated by the information security team daily.</p> <p>When an incident is detected or reported, a defined incident management process is initiated by authorized personnel. Corrective actions are implemented in accordance with defined policies and procedures.</p> <p>Procedures include a defined incident escalation process and notification mechanisms.</p> <p>All incidents are tracked by management until resolved.</p> <p>Closed incidents are reviewed by management for appropriate resolution.</p> <p>Resolution of incidents not related to security includes consideration of the effect of the incident and its resolution on security requirements.</p>
Criteria related to the system components used to achieve the objectives		
3.8	Procedures exist to classify data in accordance with classification policies and periodically monitor and update such classifications as necessary	<p>Data owners periodically review data access rules and request modifications based on defined security requirements and risk assessments.</p> <p>Whenever new data are captured or created, the data are classified based on security policies,</p> <p>Propriety of data classification is considered as part of the change management process.</p>
3.9	Procedures exist to provide that issues of noncompliance with security policies are promptly addressed and that corrective measures are taken on a timely basis.	<p>All incidents are tracked by management until resolved.</p> <p>Closed incidents are reviewed by management for appropriate resolution.</p> <p>The internal audit process includes the development of management actions plans for findings and the tracking of action plans until closed.</p>

(continued)

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
<p>3.10 Design, acquisition, implementation, configuration, modification, and management of infrastructure and software are consistent with defined system security policies to enable authorized access and to prevent unauthorized access.</p>	<p>The entity has adopted a formal systems development life cycle (SDLC) methodology that governs the development, acquisition, implementation, and maintenance of computerized information systems and related technology.</p> <p>The SDLC methodology includes a framework for classifying data and creating standard user profiles that are established based on an assessment of the business impact of the loss of security. Users are assigned standard profiles based on needs and functional responsibilities.</p> <p>The security administration team reviews and approves the architecture and design specifications for new systems development and acquisition to help ensure consistency with the entity's security objectives, policies, and standards.</p> <p>Changes to system components that may affect security require the approval of the security administration team.</p>
<p>3.11 Procedures exist to provide that personnel responsible for the design, development, implementation, and operation of systems affecting security have the qualifications and resources to fulfill their responsibilities.</p>	<p>The entity has written job descriptions specifying the responsibilities and academic and professional requirements for key job positions.</p> <p>Hiring procedures include a comprehensive screening of candidates for key positions and consideration of whether the verified credentials are commensurate with the proposed position. New personnel are offered employment subject to background checks and reference validation.</p> <p>Candidates, including internal transfers, are approved by the line-of-business manager before the employment position is offered.</p> <p>Periodic performance appraisals are performed by employee supervisors and include the assessment and review of professional development activities.</p> <p>Personnel receive training and development in system security concepts and issues.</p>

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
	<p>Procedures are in place to provide alternate personnel for key system security functions in case of absence or departure.</p>
<b>Change management-related criteria applicable to the system's security</b>	
<p>3.12 Procedures exist to maintain system components, including configurations consistent with the defined system security policies.</p>	<p>Entity management receives a third-party opinion on the adequacy of security controls and routinely evaluates the level of performance it receives (in accordance with its contractual service-level agreement) from the service provider that hosts the entity's systems and Web site.</p> <p>The IT department maintains an up-to-date listing of all software and the respective level, version, and patches that have been applied.</p> <p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their requests.</p> <p>System configurations are tested annually and evaluated against the entity's security policies and current service-level agreements. An exception report is prepared and remediation plans are developed and tracked.</p>
<p>3.13 Procedures exist to provide that only authorized, tested, and documented changes are made to the system.</p>	<p>The responsibilities for authorizing, testing, developing, and implementing changes have been segregated.</p> <p>The entity's documented systems development methodology describes the change initiation, software development and maintenance, and approval processes, as well as the standards and controls that are embedded in the processes. These include programming, documentation, and testing standards.</p>

(continued)

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
3.14 Procedures exist to provide that emergency changes are documented and authorized timely.	<p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their outstanding and closed requests.</p> <p>Changes to system infrastructure and software are developed and tested in a separate development or test environment before implementation into production.</p> <p>As part of the change control policies and procedures, there is a “promotion” process (for example, from “test” to “staging” to “production”). Promotion to production requires the approval of the business owner who sponsored the change and the manager of computer operations.</p> <p>When changes are made to key systems components, there is a “backout” plan developed for use in the event of major interruption(s).</p> <p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their requests.</p> <p>Emergency changes that require deviations from standard procedures are logged and reviewed by IT management daily and reported to the affected line-of-business manager. Permanent corrective measures follow the entity’s change management process, including line-of-business approvals.</p>
<b>4.0 Monitoring: The entity monitors the system and takes action to maintain compliance with its defined system security policies.</b>	
4.1 The entity’s system security is periodically reviewed and compared with the defined system security policies.	The information security team monitors the system and assesses the system vulnerabilities using proprietary and publicly available tools. Potential risks are

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner’s responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <sup>7</sup>
	evaluated and compared to service-level agreements and other obligations of the entity. Remediation plans are proposed and implementations are monitored.
	The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. The internal audit function conducts system security reviews as part of its annual audit plan. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.
4.2 There is a process to identify and address potential impairments to the entity's ongoing ability to achieve its objectives in accordance with its defined system security policies.	Logs are analyzed either manually or by automated tools to identify trends that may have a potential impact on the entity's ability to achieve its system security objectives.
	Monthly IT staff meetings are held to address system security concerns and trends; findings are discussed at quarterly management meetings.
4.3 Environmental, regulatory, and technological changes are monitored and their effect on system security is assessed on a timely basis and policies are updated for that assessment.	Senior management, as part of its annual IT planning process, considers developments in technology and the impact of applicable laws or regulations on the entity's security policies.
	The entity's IT security group monitors the security impact of emerging technologies.
	Users are proactively invited to contribute to initiatives to improve system security through the use of new technologies.

Availability Principle and Criteria

.21 The *availability principle* refers to the accessibility to the system, products, or services as advertised or committed by contract, service-level, or other agreements. It should be noted that this principle does not, in itself, set a minimum acceptable performance level for system availability. The minimum performance level is established through commitments made by mutual agreement (contract) between the parties.

.22 Although there is a connection between system availability, system functionality, and system usability, the availability principle does not address system functionality (the specific functions a system performs) and system usability (the ability of users to apply system functions to specific tasks or problems). It does address system availability, which relates to whether the system is accessible for processing, monitoring, and maintenance.

<sup>7</sup> Illustrative controls are presented as examples only. It is the practitioner's responsibility to identify and document the policies, procedures, and controls actually in place at the entity under examination.

Availability Principle and Criteria Table

.23 The system is available for operation and use as committed or agreed.

Criteria		Illustrative Controls
1.0	<b>Policies: The entity defines and documents its policies for the availability of its system.</b>	
1.1	The entity's system availability and related security policies are established and periodically reviewed and approved by a designated individual or group.	<p>A written availability policy has been approved by the IT standards committee and is implemented throughout the company.</p> <p>The entity's documented systems development and acquisition process includes procedures to identify and document authorized users of the system and their availability and related security requirements.</p> <p>User requirements are documented in service-level agreements or other documents.</p>
1.2	<p>The entity's system availability and related security policies include, but may not be limited to, the following matters:</p> <p>a. Identifying and documenting the system availability and related security requirements of authorized users.</p> <p>b. Classifying data based on its criticality and sensitivity and that classification is used to define protection requirements, access rights and access restrictions, and retention and destruction requirements</p> <p>c. Assessing risks on a periodic basis</p> <p>d. Preventing unauthorized access.</p> <p>e. Adding new users, modifying the access levels of existing users, and removing users who no longer need access.</p> <p>f. Assigning responsibility and accountability for system availability and related security.</p>	<p><i>An example of an illustrative control for this criterion would be an entity's documented availability policy and related security policy addressing the elements set out in criterion 1.2. Illustrative availability and securities policies have been omitted for brevity.</i></p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p><i>g.</i> Assigning responsibility and accountability for system changes and maintenance.</p> <p><i>h.</i> Testing, evaluating, and authorizing system components before implementation.</p> <p><i>i.</i> Addressing how complaints and requests relating to system availability and related security issues are resolved.</p> <p><i>j.</i> Identifying and mitigating system availability and related security breaches and other incidents.</p> <p><i>k.</i> Providing for training and other resources to support its system availability and related security policies.</p> <p><i>l.</i> Providing for the handling of exceptions and situations not specifically addressed in its system availability and related security policies.</p> <p><i>m.</i> Providing for the identification of and consistency with, applicable laws and regulations, defined commitments, service-level agreements, and other contractual requirements.</p> <p><i>n.</i> Recovering and continuing service in accordance with documented customer commitments or other agreements.</p> <p><i>o.</i> Monitoring system capacity to achieve customer commitments or other agreements regarding availability</p>	

- 1.3 Responsibility and accountability for developing and maintaining the entity's system availability and related security policies, and changes and updates to those policies, are assigned.

Management has assigned responsibilities for the maintenance and enforcement of the entity's availability policies to the CIO. The IT standards committee of the executive committee assists in the review, update, and approval of these policies as outlined in the executive committee handbook.

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
	<p>Ownership and custody of significant information resources (for example, data, programs, and transactions) and responsibility for establishing and maintaining the system availability of and related security over such resources are defined.</p>
<b>2.0 Communications: The entity communicates the defined system availability policies to responsible parties and authorized users.</b>	
<p>2.1 The entity has prepared an objective description of the system and its boundaries and communicated such description to authorized users.</p>	<p>For its e-commerce system, the entity has posted a system description on its Web site. <i>(For an example of a system description for an e-commerce system, refer to appendix A [paragraph .45].)</i></p> <p>For its non-e-commerce system, the entity has provided a system description to authorized users. <i>(For an example of a system description for a non-e-commerce based system, refer to appendix B [paragraph .46].)</i></p>
<p>2.2 The availability and related security obligations of users and the entity's availability and related security commitments to users are communicated to authorized users.</p>	<p>The entity's system availability and related security commitments and required system availability and related security obligations of its customers and other external users are posted on the entity's Web site or as part of the entity's standard services agreement. Service-level agreements are reviewed with the customer annually.</p> <p>For its internal users (employees and contractors), the entity's policies relating to system security are reviewed with new employees and contractors as part of their orientation, and the key elements of the policies and their impact on the employee are discussed. New employees must sign a statement signifying that they have read, understand, and will follow these policies. Each year, as part of their performance review, employees must reconfirm their understanding of and compliance with the entity's policies. Obligations of contractors are detailed in their contract.</p> <p>A security awareness program has been implemented to communicate the entity's IT security policies to employees.</p> <p>The entity publishes its IT security policies on its corporate intranet.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
2.3 Responsibility and accountability for the entity's system availability and related security policies and changes and updates to those policies are communicated to entity personnel responsible for implementing them.	<p>The network operations team is responsible for implementing the entity's availability policies under the direction of the CIO. The security administration team is responsible for implementing the related security policies.</p> <p>The network operations team has custody of and is responsible for the day-to-day maintenance of the entity's availability policies and recommends changes to the CIO and the IT steering committee. The security administration team is responsible for the related security policies.</p> <p>Written job descriptions have been defined and are communicated to the network operations team and the security administration team.</p> <p>Written processes and procedures manuals for all operations and security processes are provided to personnel. Designated personnel update the processes and procedures manuals based on changes to availability requirements and security policies.</p>
2.4 The process for informing the entity about system availability issues and breaches of system security and for submitting complaints is communicated to authorized users.	<p>The process for customers and external users to inform the entity of system availability issues, possible security breaches, and other incidents is posted on the entity's Web site and is provided as part of the new user welcome kit.</p> <p>The entity's user training program includes modules dealing with the identification and reporting of system availability issues, security breaches, and other incidents.</p> <p>The entity's security awareness program includes information concerning the identification of possible security breaches and the process for informing the security administration team.</p> <p>Documented procedures exist for the identification and escalation of system availability issues, security breaches, and other incidents.</p>
2.5 Changes that may affect system availability and system security are communicated to management and users who will be affected.	Changes that may affect system availability, customers and users and their security obligations, or the entity's security commitments are highlighted on the entity's Web site.

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
	<p>Changes that may affect system availability and related system security are communicated in writing to affected customers for review and approval under the provisions of the standard services agreement before implementation of the proposed change.</p> <p>Planned changes to system components and the scheduling of those changes are reviewed as part of the monthly IT steering committee meetings.</p> <p>Changes to system components, including those that may affect system security, require the approval of the manager of network operations or the security administration team before implementation.</p> <p>There is periodic communication of system changes to users and customers, including changes that affect availability and system security.</p>
<b>3.0 Procedures: The entity placed in operation procedures to achieve its documented system availability objectives in accordance with its defined policies.</b>	
3.1 Procedures exist to (1) identify potential threats of disruptions to systems operation that would impair system availability commitments and (2) assess the risks associated with the identified threats.	<p>A threat identification risk assessment is prepared and reviewed on a periodic basis or when a significant change occurs in either the internal or external physical environment. Threats such as fire, flood, dust, power failure, excessive heat and humidity, and labor problems have been considered.</p>
3.2 Measures to prevent or mitigate threats have been implemented consistent with the risk assessment when commercially practicable.	<p>Management maintains measures to protect against environmental factors (for example, fire, flood, dust, power failure, and excessive heat and humidity) based on its periodic risk assessment. The entity's controlled areas are protected against fire using both smoke detectors and a fire suppression system. Water detectors are installed within the raised floor areas.</p> <p>The entity site is protected against a disruption in power supply to the processing environment by both uninterruptible power supplies and emergency power supplies. This equipment is tested semiannually.</p> <p>Preventive maintenance agreements and scheduled maintenance procedures are in place for key system hardware components.</p> <p>Vendor warranty specifications are complied with and tested to determine if the system is properly configured.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.3 Procedures exist to provide for backup, offsite storage, restoration, and disaster recovery consistent with the entity's defined system availability and related security policies.	<p>Procedures to address minor processing errors, outages, and destruction of records are documented.</p> <p>Procedures exist for the identification, documentation, escalation, resolution, and review of problems.</p> <p>Physical and logical security controls are implemented to reduce the opportunity for unauthorized actions that could impair system availability.</p> <p>Management has implemented a comprehensive strategy for backup and restoration based on a review of business requirements. Backup procedures for the entity are documented and include redundant servers, daily incremental backups of each server, and a complete backup of the entire week's changes on a weekly basis. Daily and weekly backups are stored offsite in accordance with the entity's system availability policies.</p> <p>Disaster recovery and contingency plans are documented.</p> <p>The disaster recovery plan defines the roles and responsibilities and identifies the critical IT application programs, operating systems, personnel, data files, and time frames needed to ensure high availability and system reliability based on a business impact analysis.</p> <p>The business continuity planning coordinator reviews and updates the business impact analysis with the lines of business annually.</p> <p>Disaster recovery and contingency plans are tested annually in accordance with the entity's system availability policies. Testing results and change recommendations are reported to the entity's management committee.</p> <p>The entity's management committee reviews and approves changes to the disaster recovery plan.</p> <p>Contracted capacity at resumption facilities is compared to documented processing requirements on an annual basis and modified as necessary.</p> <p>All critical personnel identified in the business continuity plan hold current versions of the plan, both onsite and offsite. An electronic version is stored offsite.</p>

*(continued)*

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.4 Procedures exist to provide for the integrity of backup data and systems maintained to support the entity's defined system availability and related security policies.</p>	<p>Automated backup processes include procedures for testing the integrity of the backup data.</p> <p>Backups are performed in accordance with the entity's defined backup strategy, and usability of backups is verified at least annually.</p> <p>An inventory of available backups and the physical location of the backups are maintained by operations personnel.</p> <p>Backup systems and data are stored offsite at the facilities of a third-party service provider.</p> <p>Under the terms of its service provider agreement, the entity performs an annual verification of media stored at the offsite storage facility. As part of the verification, media at the offsite location are matched to the appropriate media management system. The storage site is reviewed biannually for physical access security and security of data files and other items.</p> <p>Backup systems and data are tested as part of the annual disaster recovery test.</p>

**Security-related criteria relevant to the system's availability**

<p>3.5 Procedures exist to restrict logical access to the defined system including, but not limited to, the following matters:</p> <p>a. Logical access security measures to restrict access to information resources not deemed to be public.</p> <p>b. Identification and authentication of users.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Logical access to nonpublic information resources is protected through the use of native operating system security, native application or resource security, and add-on security software.</li><li>• Resource specific or default access rules have been defined for all non-public resources.</li><li>• Access to resources granted to authenticated users based on their user profiles.</li><li>• Users must establish their identity to the entity's network and application systems when accessing nonpublic resources through the use of a valid user ID that is authenticated by an associated password.</li><li>• Unique user IDs are assigned to individual users.</li></ul>
--	--

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
c. Registration and authorization of new users.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use of group or shared IDs is permitted only after completion of an assessment of the risk of the shared ID and written approval of the manager of the requesting business unit.</li> <li>• Passwords are case sensitive must contain at least 8 characters, one of which is nonalphanumeric.</li> <li>• Security configuration parameters force passwords to be changed every 90 days.</li> <li>• Login sessions are terminated after 3 unsuccessful login attempts.</li> <li>• Customers can self-register on the entity's Web site, under a secure session in which they provide new user information and select appropriate user ID and password. Privileges and authorizations associated with self-registered customer accounts provide specific limited system functionality.</li> <li>• The ability to create or modify users and user access privileges (other than the limited functionality "customer accounts") is limited to the security administration team.</li> <li>• The line-of-business supervisor authorizes access privilege change requests for employees and contractors. Access to restricted resources is authorized by the resource owner.</li> <li>• Customer access privileges beyond the default privileges granted during self-registration are approved by the customer account manager. Proper segregation of duties is considered in granting privileges.</li> </ul>
d. The process to make changes and updates to user profiles.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes and updates to self-registered customer accounts can be done by the individual user at any time on the entity's Web site after the user has successfully logged onto the system. Changes are reflected immediately.</li> <li>• Unused customer accounts (no activity for six months) are purged by the system.</li> <li>• Changes to other accounts and profiles are restricted to the security administration team and require the approval of the appropriate line-of-business supervisor or customer account manager.</li> </ul>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>e. Restriction of access to offline storage, backup data, systems and media.</p> <p>f. Restriction of access to system configurations, superuser functionality, master passwords, powerful utilities, and security devices (for example, firewalls).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The human resource management system provides the human resources team with a list of newly terminated employees on a weekly basis. This listing is sent to the security administration team for deactivation.</li><li>• Access to offline storage, backup data, systems, and media is limited to computer operations staff through the use of physical and logical access controls.</li><li>• Hardware and operating system configuration tables are restricted to appropriate personnel.</li><li>• Application software configuration tables are restricted to authorized users and under the control of application change management software.</li><li>• Utility programs that can read, add, change, or delete data or programs are restricted to authorized technical services staff. Usage is logged and monitored by the manager of computer operations.</li><li>• The information security team, under the direction of the CIO, maintains access to firewall and other logs, as well as access to any storage media. Any access is logged and reviewed in accordance with the company's IT policies.</li><li>• A listing of all master passwords is stored in an encrypted database and an additional copy is maintained in a sealed envelope in the entity safe.</li></ul>
<p>3.6 Procedures exist to restrict physical access to the defined system including, but not limited to, facilities, backup media, and other system components such as firewalls, routers, and servers.</p>	<p>Physical access to the computer rooms, which house the entity's IT resources, servers, and related hardware such as firewalls and routers, is restricted to authorized individuals by card key systems and monitored by video surveillance.</p> <p>Physical access cards are managed by building security staff. Access card usage is logged. Logs are maintained and reviewed by building security staff.</p> <p>Requests for physical access privileges to the entity's computer facilities require the approval of the manager of computer operations.</p> <p>Documented procedures exist for the identification and escalation of potential physical security breaches.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.7 Procedures exist to protect against unauthorized access to system resources.	<p>Offsite backup data and media are stored at service provider facilities. Access to offsite data and media requires the approval of the manager of computer operations.</p> <p>Login sessions are terminated after three unsuccessful login attempts.</p> <p>Virtual private networking (VPN) software is used to permit remote access by authorized users. Users are authenticated by the VPN server through specific “client” software and user ID and passwords.</p> <p>Firewalls are used and configured to prevent unauthorized access. Firewall events are logged and reviewed daily by the security administrator.</p> <p>Unneeded network services (for example, telnet, ftp, and http) are deactivated on the entity’s servers. A listing of the required and authorized services is maintained by the IT department. This list is reviewed by entity management on a routine basis for its appropriateness for the current operating conditions.</p> <p>Intrusion detection systems are used to provide continuous monitoring of the entity’s network and early identification of potential security breaches.</p> <p>The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.</p>
3.8 Procedures exist to protect against infection by computer viruses, malicious codes, and unauthorized software.	<p>In connection with other security monitoring, the security administration team participates in user groups and subscribes to services relating to computer viruses.</p> <p>Antivirus software is in place, including virus scans of incoming e-mail messages. Virus signatures are updated promptly.</p> <p>Any viruses discovered are reported to the security team and an alert is created for all users notifying them of a potential virus threat.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.9 Encryption or other equivalent security techniques are used to protect user authentication information and the corresponding session transmitted over the Internet or other public networks.</p>	<p>The ability to install, modify, and replace operating system and other system programs is restricted to authorized personnel</p> <p>Access to superuser functionality and sensitive system functions is restricted to authorized personnel.</p> <p>The entity uses industry standard encryption technology, VPN software or other secure communication systems (consistent with its periodic IT risk assessment) for the transmission of private or confidential information over public networks, including user IDs and passwords. Users are required to upgrade their browsers to the most current versions tested and approved for use by the security administration team to avoid possible security problems.</p> <p>Account activities, subsequent to successful login, are encrypted through industry standard encryption technology, VPN software, or other secure communication systems (consistent with its periodic IT risk assessment). Users are logged out on request (by selecting the “Sign-out” button on the Web site) or after 10 minutes of inactivity.</p>
<b>Criteria related to execution and incident management used to achieve objectives</b>	
<p>3.10 Procedures exist to identify, report, and act upon system availability issues and related security breaches and other incidents.</p>	<p>Users are provided instructions for communicating system availability issues, potential security breaches, and other issues to the help desk or customer service center.</p> <p>Documented procedures exist for the escalation of system availability issues and potential security breaches that cannot be resolved by the help desk.</p> <p>Network performance and system processing are monitored using system monitoring tools by onsite operations staff 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Documented procedures exist for the escalation and resolution of performance and processing availability issues.</p> <p>Intrusion detection system and other tools are used to identify, log, and report potential security breaches and other incidents. The system notifies the security administration team and the network administrator via e-mail and text of potential incidents in progress.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
	<p>Incident logs are monitored and evaluated by the information security team daily.</p> <p>Documented incident identification and escalation procedures are approved by management and include a defined incident escalation process and notification mechanisms.</p> <p>Network performance, system availability, and security incident statistics and comparisons to approved targets are accumulated and reported to the IT steering committee monthly.</p> <p>System performance and capacity analysis and projections are completed annually as part of the IT planning and budgeting process.</p> <p>System and network operations are actively monitored by operations personnel.</p> <p>When a system disruption is detected or reported, a defined incident management process is initiated by systems and network operations personnel. Corrective actions are implemented in accordance with defined policies and procedures.</p> <p>All incidents are tracked by operations management until resolved.</p> <p>Closed incidents are reviewed by operations personnel for appropriate resolution.</p>
<b>Criteria related to the system components used to achieve the objectives</b>	
<p>3.11 Procedures exist to classify data in accordance with classification policies and periodically monitor and update such classifications as necessary.</p>	<p>Data owners periodically review data access rules and request modifications based on defined security and availability requirements and risk assessments</p> <p>Whenever new data are captured or created, the data are classified based on security and availability policies.</p> <p>Propriety of data classification is considered as part of the change management process.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.12 Procedures exist to provide that issues of noncompliance with system availability and related security policies are promptly addressed and that corrective measures are taken on a timely basis.</p>	<p>All incidents are tracked by management until resolved.</p> <p>Closed incidents are reviewed by management for appropriate resolution.</p> <p>The internal audit process includes the development of management actions plans for findings and the tracking of action plans until closed.</p>
<p>3.13 Design, acquisition, implementation, configuration, modification, and management of infrastructure and software are consistent with defined system availability and related security policies.</p>	<p>The entity has adopted a formal systems development life cycle (SDLC) methodology that governs the development, acquisition, implementation, and maintenance of computerized information systems and related technology.</p> <p>The SDLC methodology includes a framework for</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• establishing performance level and system availability requirements based on user needs.</li> <li>• maintaining the entity's backup and disaster recovery planning processes in accordance with user requirements.</li> <li>• classifying data and creating standard user profiles that are established based on an assessment of the business impact of the loss of security; assigning standard profiles to users based on needs and functional responsibilities.</li> <li>• testing changes to system components to minimize the risk of an adverse impact to system performance and availability.</li> <li>• developing "backout" plans before implementation of changes.</li> </ul> <p>The security administration team reviews and approves the architecture and design specifications for new systems development and acquisition to ensure consistency with the entity's related security policies.</p> <p>Changes to system components that may affect systems processing performance, availability, and security require the approval of the security administration team.</p> <p>The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.14 Procedures exist to provide that personnel responsible for the design, development, implementation, and operation of systems affecting availability and security have the qualifications and resources to fulfill their responsibilities.	<p>The entity has written job descriptions specifying the responsibilities and academic and professional requirements for key job positions.</p> <p>Hiring procedures include a comprehensive screening of candidates for key positions and consideration of whether the verified credentials are commensurate with the proposed position. New personnel are offered employment subject to background checks and reference validation.</p> <p>Candidates, including internal transfers, are approved by the line-of-business manager before the employment position is offered.</p> <p>Periodic performance appraisals are performed by employee supervisors and include the assessment and review of professional development activities.</p> <p>Personnel receive training and development in system availability concepts and issues.</p> <p>Procedures are in place to provide alternate personnel for key system availability and security functions in case of absence or departure.</p>

---

**Change management-related criteria applicable to the system's availability**

---

3.15 Procedures exist to maintain system components, including configurations consistent with the defined system availability and related security policies.	<p>Entity management receives a third-party opinion on the adequacy of security controls and routinely evaluates the level of performance it receives (in accordance with its contractual service-level agreement) from the service provider that hosts the entity's systems and Web site.</p> <p>The IT department maintains an up-to-date listing of all software and the respective level, version, and patches that have been applied.</p> <p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their requests.</p>
--	---

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.16 Procedures exist to provide that only authorized, tested, and documented changes are made to the system.	<p>Staffing, infrastructure, and software requirements are periodically evaluated, and resources are allocated consistent with the entity's availability and related security policies.</p> <p>System configurations are tested annually and evaluated against the entity's processing performance, availability, security policies, and current service-level agreements. An exception report is prepared, and remediation plans are developed and tracked.</p> <p>The responsibilities for authorizing, testing, developing, and implementing changes have been segregated.</p> <p>The entity's documented systems development methodology describes the change initiation, software development and maintenance, and approval processes, as well as the standards and controls that are embedded in the processes. These include programming, documentation, and testing standards.</p> <p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their outstanding and closed requests.</p> <p>Changes to system infrastructure and software are developed and tested in a separate development or test environment before implementation into production.</p> <p>As part of the change control policies and procedures, there is a "promotion" process (for example, from "test" to "staging" to "production"). Promotion to production requires the approval of the business owner who sponsored the change and the manager of computer operations.</p> <p>When changes are made to key systems components, there is a "backout" plan developed for use in the event of major interruption(s).</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.17 Procedures exist to provide that emergency changes are documented and authorized (including after-the-fact approval).</p>	<p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their requests.</p> <p>Emergency changes that require deviations from standard procedures are logged and reviewed by IT management daily and reported to the affected line-of-business manager. Permanent corrective measures follow the entity's change management process, including line-of-business approvals.</p>
<p><b>4.0 Monitoring: The entity monitors the system and takes action to maintain compliance with its defined system availability policies.</b></p>	
<p>4.1 The entity's system availability and security performance is periodically reviewed and compared with the defined system availability and related security policies.</p>	<p>Network performance and system processing are monitored using system monitoring tools by onsite operations staff 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Network performance, system availability, and security incident statistics and comparisons to approved targets are accumulated and reported to the IT steering committee monthly.</p> <p>The customer service group monitors system availability and related customer complaints. It provides a monthly report of such matters together with recommendations for improvement, which are considered and acted on at the monthly IT steering committee meetings.</p> <p>The information security team monitors the system and assesses the system vulnerabilities using proprietary and publicly available tools. Potential risks are evaluated and compared to service-level agreements and other obligations of the entity. Remediation plans are proposed, and implementations are monitored.</p> <p>The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. The internal audit function conducts system availability and system security reviews as part of its annual audit plan. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
4.2 There is a process to identify and address potential impairments to the entity's ongoing ability to achieve its objectives in accordance with its defined system availability and related security policies.	<p>Network performance and system processing are monitored using system monitoring tools by onsite operations staff 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Network performance, system availability, and security incident statistics and comparisons to approved targets are accumulated and reported to the IT steering committee monthly.</p> <p>Future system performance, availability, and capacity requirements are projected and analyzed as part of the annual IT planning and budgeting process.</p> <p>Logs are analyzed either manually or by automated tools to identify trends that may have a potential impact on the entity's ability to achieve its system availability and related security objectives.</p> <p>Monthly IT staff meetings are held to address system performance, availability, capacity, and security concerns and trends; findings are discussed at quarterly management meetings.</p>
4.3 Environmental, regulatory, and technological changes are monitored, and their effect on system availability and security is assessed on a timely basis; policies are updated for that assessment.	<p>The entity's data center facilities include climate and environmental monitoring devices. Deviations from optimal performance ranges are escalated and resolved.</p> <p>Senior management, as part of its annual IT planning process, considers developments in technology and the impact of applicable laws or regulations on the entity's availability and related security policies.</p> <p>The entity's customer service group monitors the impact of emerging technologies, customer requirements, and competitive activities.</p>

**Processing Integrity Principle and Criteria**

**.24** The *processing integrity principle* refers to the completeness, accuracy, validity, timeliness, and authorization of system processing. Processing integrity exists if a system performs its intended function in an unimpaired manner, free from unauthorized or inadvertent manipulation. Completeness generally indicates that all transactions are processed or all services are performed without exception. Validity means that transactions and services are not processed more than once and that they are in accordance with business values and expectations. Accuracy means that key information associated with the submitted transaction remains accurate throughout the processing of the transaction and that the transaction or service is processed or performed as intended. The timeliness of the provision of services or the delivery of goods is addressed in the context of commitments made for such delivery. Authorization

means that processing is performed in accordance with the required approvals and privileges defined by policies governing system processing.

**.25** The risks associated with processing integrity are that the party initiating the transaction will not have the transaction completed or the service provided correctly and in accordance with the desired or specified request. Without appropriate and effective processing integrity controls, the user may not receive the information, goods, or services requested. For example, a buyer may not receive the goods or services ordered, receive more than requested, or receive the wrong goods or services altogether. However, if appropriate processing integrity controls exist and operate effectively, there is a greater likelihood that the user will receive the information, goods, or services requested in the correct quantity, at the correct price, and when promised. Processing integrity addresses all of the system components including procedures to initiate, record, process, and report the information related to the product or service that is the subject of the engagement. The nature of data input in e-commerce systems typically involves the user entering data directly over Web-enabled input screens or forms, whereas in other systems, the nature of data input can vary significantly. Because of this difference in data input processes, the nature of controls over the completeness and accuracy of data input in e-commerce systems may be somewhat different than for other systems. The illustrative controls outlined in paragraph .27 identify some of these differences.

**.26** Processing integrity differs from data integrity. Processing integrity does not automatically imply that the information stored by the system is complete, accurate, current, and authorized. If a system processes information inputs from sources outside of the system’s boundaries, an entity can establish only limited controls over the completeness, accuracy, authorization, and timeliness of the information submitted for processing. Errors that may have been introduced into the information and the control procedures at external sites are typically beyond the entity’s control. Even in a case when the information stored by the system is explicitly included in the description of the system that defines the engagement, it is still possible that the system exhibits high processing integrity without exhibiting high data integrity. For example, an address stored in the system may have passed all appropriate edit checks and other processing controls when it was added to the system, but it may no longer be current (if a person or company relocated) or it may be incomplete (if an apartment number or mailing location is omitted from the address).

**Processing Integrity Principle and Criteria Table**

**.27** System processing is complete, accurate, timely, and authorized.

<i>Criteria</i>		<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<b>1.0</b>	<b>Policies: The entity defines and documents its policies for the processing integrity of its system.</b>	
<b>1.1</b>	The entity’s processing integrity and related security policies are established and periodically reviewed and approved by a designated individual or group.	Written policies addressing processing integrity have been approved by the executive committee and are implemented throughout the company.

*(continued)*

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>1.2 The entity's system processing integrity and related security policies include, but may not be limited to, the following matters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifying and documenting the system processing integrity and related security requirements of authorized users</li> <li>b. Classifying data based on their criticality and sensitivity; that classification is used to define protection requirements, access rights and access restrictions, and retention and destruction requirements</li> <li>c. Assessing risks on a periodic basis</li> <li>d. Preventing unauthorized access</li> <li>e. Adding new users, modifying the access levels of existing users, and removing users who no longer need access</li> <li>f. Assigning responsibility and accountability for system processing integrity and related security</li> </ul>	<p>As part of the periodic corporate risk assessment process, management identifies changes to the risk assessment based on: new applications and infrastructure, significant changes to applications and infrastructure, new environmental risks, changes to regulations and standards, and changes to user requirements as identified in service level agreements and other documents. Management then updates the policies based on the risk assessment.</p> <p>User requirements are documented in service-level agreements or other documents.</p> <p>Changes to policies are approved by leadership prior to implementation</p> <p><i>An example of an illustrative control for this criterion would be an entity's documented processing integrity policy and security policy addressing the elements set out in criterion 1.2. Illustrative process integrity and security policies have been omitted for brevity.</i></p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p><i>g.</i> Assigning responsibility and accountability for system changes and maintenance</p> <p><i>h.</i> Testing, evaluating, and authorizing system components before implementation</p> <p><i>i.</i> Addressing how complaints and requests relating to system processing integrity and related security issues are resolved</p> <p><i>j.</i> Identifying and mitigating errors and omissions and other system processing integrity and related security breaches and other incidents</p> <p><i>k.</i> Providing for training and other resources to support its system processing integrity and related system security policies</p> <p><i>l.</i> Providing for the handling of exceptions and situations not specifically addressed in its system processing integrity and related system security policies</p> <p><i>m.</i> Providing for the identification of and consistency with applicable laws and regulations, defined commitments, service-level agreements, and other contractual requirements</p>	<p>Management has assigned responsibilities for the implementation of the entity's processing integrity and related security policies to individual members of management. Others on the executive committee assist in the review, update, and approval of the policies as outlined in the executive committee handbook.</p>
<p>1.3 Responsibility and accountability for developing and maintaining entity's system processing integrity and related system security policies; changes, updates, and exceptions to those policies are assigned.</p>	

(continued)

	<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<b>2.0</b>	<b>Communications: The entity communicates its documented system processing integrity policies to responsible parties and authorized users.</b>	
2.1	<p>The entity has prepared an objective description of the system and its boundaries and communicated such description to authorized users.</p> <p>If the system is an e-commerce system, additional information provided on its Web-site includes, but may not be limited to, the following matters:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Descriptive information about the nature of the goods or services that will be provided, including, where appropriate, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— condition of goods (whether they are new, used, or reconditioned).</li> <li>— description of services (or service contract).</li> <li>— sources of information (where it was obtained and how it was compiled).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. The terms and conditions by which it conducts its e-commerce transactions including, but not limited to, the following matters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Time frame for completion of transactions (<i>transaction</i> means fulfillment of orders where goods are being sold and delivery of service where a service is being provided)</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	<p>For its e-commerce system, the entity has posted a system description including the elements set out in criterion 2.1 on its Web site. (<i>For an example of a system description and additional disclosures for an e-commerce system, refer to appendix A [paragraph .45].</i>)</p> <p>For its non-e-commerce system, the entity has provided a system description to authorized users. (<i>For an example of a system description for a non-e-commerce based system, refer to appendix B [paragraph .46].</i>)</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Time frame and process for informing customers of exceptions to normal processing of orders or service requests</li> <li>— Normal method of delivery of goods or services, including customer options, where applicable</li> <li>— Payment terms, including customer options, if any</li> <li>— Electronic settlement practices and related charges to customers</li> <li>— How customers may cancel recurring charges, if any</li> <li>— Product return policies and limited liability, where applicable</li> </ul> <p>c. Where customers can obtain warranty, repair service, and support related to the goods and services purchased on its Web site.</p> <p>d. Procedures for resolution of issues regarding processing integrity. These may relate to any part of a customer's e-commerce transaction, including complaints related to the quality of services and products, accuracy, completeness, and the consequences for failure to resolve such complaints.</p>	<p>The entity's processing integrity and related security commitments and required processing integrity and related security obligations of its customers and other external users are posted on the entity's Web site, as part of the entity's standard services agreement, or in both places.</p>
<p>2.2 The processing integrity and related security obligations of users and the entity's processing integrity and related security commitments to users are communicated to authorized users.</p>	

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>2.3 Responsibility and accountability for the entity's system processing integrity and related security policies, and changes and updates to those policies, are communicated to entity personnel responsible for implementing them.</p>	<p>For its internal users (employees and contractors), the entity's policies relating to processing integrity and security are reviewed with new employees and contractors as part of their orientation, and the key elements of the policies and their impact on the employee are discussed. New employees must sign a statement signifying that they have read, understand, and will follow these policies. Each year, as part of their performance review, employees must reconfirm their understanding of and compliance with the entity's processing integrity and security policies. Obligations of contractors are detailed in their contracts.</p> <p>A security awareness program has been implemented to communicate the entity's processing integrity and related security policies to employees.</p> <p>The entity publishes its IT security policies on its corporate intranet.</p> <p>Management has assigned responsibilities for the enforcement of the entity's processing integrity policies to the COO.</p> <p>The security administration team has custody of and is responsible for the day-to-day maintenance of the entity's security policies, and recommends changes to the CIO and the IT steering committee.</p> <p>Processing integrity and related security commitments are reviewed with the customer account managers as part of the annual IT planning process.</p> <p>Written job descriptions have been defined and are communicated to the security administration team.</p> <p>Written process and procedure manuals for all defined security processes are provided to security administration team personnel. The security officer updates the processes and procedures manuals based on changes to the security policy.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>2.4 The process for obtaining support and informing the entity about system processing integrity issues, errors and omissions, and breaches of systems security and for submitting complaints is communicated to authorized users.</p>	<p>The process for customers and external users to inform the entity of possible processing integrity issues, security breaches, and other incidents is posted on the entity's Web site, is provided as part of the new user welcome kit, or is in both places.</p> <p>The entity's user training and security awareness programs include information concerning the identification of processing integrity issues and possible security breaches and the process for informing the security administration team.</p> <p>Documented procedures exist for the identification and escalation of system processing integrity issues, security breaches, and other incidents.</p>
<p>2.5 Changes that may affect system processing integrity and system security are communicated to management and users who will be affected.</p>	<p>Planned changes to system components and the scheduling of those changes are reviewed as part of the monthly IT steering committee meetings.</p> <p>Changes to system components, including those that may affect system security, require the approval of the security administrator and the sponsor of the change before implementation.</p> <p>Changes that may affect customers and users and their processing integrity and related security obligations or the entity's processing integrity and related security commitments are highlighted on the entity's Web site.</p> <p>Changes that may affect processing integrity and related system security are communicated in writing to affected customers for review and approval by affected customers under the provisions of the standard services agreement before implementation of the proposed change.</p> <p>There is periodic communication of changes that affect system security, including changes to users and customers.</p> <p>Changes are incorporated into the entity's ongoing user training and security awareness programs.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>		<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<b>3.0</b>	<b>Procedures: The entity placed in operation procedures to achieve its documented system processing integrity objectives in accordance with its defined policies.</b>	
3.1	Procedures exist to (1) identify potential threats of disruptions to systems operations that would impair processing integrity commitments and (2) assess the risks associated with the identified threats.	<p>A risk assessment is performed periodically. As part of this process, threats to processing integrity are identified and the risks from these threats are formally assessed.</p> <p>Processes and procedures are revised by management based on the assessed threats.</p>
3.2	<p>The procedures related to completeness, accuracy, timeliness, and authorization of inputs are consistent with the documented system processing integrity policies.</p> <p>If the system is an e-commerce system, the entity's procedures include, but may not be limited to, the following matters:</p> <p>a. The entity checks each request or transaction for accuracy and completeness.</p> <p>b. Positive acknowledgment is received from the customer before the transaction is processed.</p>	<p>The entity has established data preparation procedures to be followed by user departments.</p> <p>Data entry screens contain field edits and range checks, and input forms are designed to reduce errors and omissions.</p> <p>Source documents are reviewed for appropriate authorizations before input.</p> <p>Error handling procedures are followed during data origination to ensure that errors and irregularities are detected, reported, and corrected.</p> <p>Original source documents are retained on image management systems for a minimum of seven years, to facilitate the retrieval or reconstruction of data as well as to satisfy legal requirements.</p> <p>Logical access controls restrict data entry capability to authorized personnel. (See item 3.6 in this table.)</p> <p>The customer account manager performs a regular review of customer complaints, back-order logs, and other transactional analysis. This information is compared to customer service agreements.</p> <p>The entity protects information from unauthorized access, modification, and misaddressing during transmission and transport using a variety of methods including</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• encryption of transmission information.</li><li>• batch header and control total reconciliations.</li><li>• message authentication codes and hash totals.</li><li>• private leased lines or virtual private networking connections with authorized users.</li></ul>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.3 The procedures related to completeness, accuracy, timeliness, and authorization of system processing, including error correction and database management, are consistent with documented system processing integrity policies.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bonded couriers and tamper-resistant packaging.</li> </ul> <p>Because of the Web-based nature of the input process, the nature of the controls to achieve the criterion set out in item 3.1 may take somewhat different forms, such as</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• account activity, subsequent to successful login, is encrypted through industry standard encryption software.</li> <li>• Web scripts contain error checking for invalid inputs.</li> <li>• the entity's order processing system contains edits, validity, and range checks, which are applied to each order to check for accuracy and completeness of information before processing.</li> <li>• before a transaction is processed by the entity, the customer is presented with a request to confirm the intended transaction and the customer is required to click on the "Yes, please process this order" button before the transaction is processed.</li> </ul> <p>The entity e-mails an order confirmation to the customer-supplied e-mail address. The order confirmation contains order details, shipping and delivery information, and a link to an online customer order tracking service. Returned e-mails are investigated by customer service.</p> <p>Responsibilities for order processing, application of credits and cash receipts, custody of inventory, user account management, and database management have been segregated.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>If the system is an e-commerce system, the entity's procedures include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following matters:</p> <p>a. The correct goods are shipped in the correct quantities in the time frame agreed upon, or services and information are provided to the customer as requested.</p> <p>b. Transaction exceptions are promptly communicated to the customer.</p> <p>c. Incoming messages are processed and delivered accurately and completely to the correct IP address.</p> <p>d. Outgoing messages are processed and delivered accurately and completely to the service provider's (SP's) Internet access point.</p> <p>e. Messages remain intact while in transit within the confines of the SP's network.</p>	<p>The entity's documented systems development life cycle (SDLC) methodology is used in the development of new applications and the maintenance of existing applications. The methodology contains required procedures for user involvement, testing, conversion, and management approvals of system processing integrity features.</p> <p>Computer operations and job scheduling procedures exist, are documented, and contain procedures and instructions for operations personnel regarding system processing integrity objectives, policies, and standards. Exceptions require the approval of the manager of computer operations.</p> <p>The entity's application systems contain edit and validation routines to check for incomplete or inaccurate data. Errors are logged, investigated, corrected, and resubmitted for input. Management reviews error logs daily to ensure that errors are corrected on a timely basis.</p> <p>End-of-day reconciliation procedures include the reconciliation of the number of records accepted to the number of records processed to the number of records output.</p> <p>The following additional controls are included in the entity's e-commerce system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Packing slips are created from the customer sales order and checked by warehouse staff as the order is packed.</li><li>• Commercial delivery methods are used that reliably meet expected delivery schedules. Vendor performance is monitored and assessed periodically.</li><li>• Service delivery targets are maintained, and actual services provided are monitored against such targets.</li><li>• The entity uses a feedback questionnaire to confirm customer satisfaction with completion of service or delivery of information to the customer.</li><li>• Computerized back-order records are maintained and are designed to notify customers of back orders within 24 hours. Customers are given the option to cancel a back order or have an alternate item delivered.</li></ul>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.4 The procedures related to completeness, accuracy, timeliness, and authorization of outputs are consistent with the documented system processing integrity policies.</p> <p>If the system is an e-commerce system, the entity's procedures include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following matters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The entity displays sales prices and all other costs and fees to the customer before processing the transaction.</li> <li>• Transactions are billed and electronically settled as agreed.</li> <li>• Billing or settlement errors are promptly corrected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Monitoring tools are used to continuously monitor latency, packet loss, hops, and network performance.</li> <li>• The organization maintains network integrity software and has documented network management policies.</li> <li>• Appropriately documented escalation procedures are in place to initiate corrective actions to unfavorable network performance.</li> </ul> <p>Written procedures exist for the distribution of output reports that conform to the system processing integrity objectives, policies, and standards.</p> <p>Control clerks reconcile control totals of transaction input to output reports daily, on both a system-wide and an individual customer basis. Exceptions are logged, investigated, and resolved.</p> <p>The customer service department logs calls and customer complaints. An analysis of customer calls, complaints, back-order logs, and other transactional analysis and comparison to the entity's processing integrity policies are reviewed at monthly management meetings, and action plans are developed and implemented as necessary.</p> <p>The following additional controls are included in the entity's e-commerce system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All costs, including taxes, shipping, and duty costs, and the currency used, are displayed to the customer. Customer accepts the order, by clicking on the "yes" button, before the order is processed.</li> <li>• Customers have the option of printing, before an online order is processed, an "order confirmation" for future verification with payment records (such as credit card statement) detailing information about the order (such as item(s) ordered, sales prices, costs, sales taxes, and shipping charges).</li> <li>• All foreign exchange rates are displayed to the customer before performing a transaction involving foreign currency.</li> </ul>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.5 There are procedures to enable tracing of information inputs from their source to their final disposition and vice versa.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Billing or settlement errors are followed up and corrected within 24 hours of reporting by the customer.</li> </ul> <p>Input transactions are date and time stamped by the system and identified with the submitting source (user, terminal, IP address).</p> <p>Each order has a unique identifier that can be used to access order and related shipment and payment settlement information. This information can also be accessed by customer name and dates of order, shipping, or billing.</p> <p>The entity maintains transaction histories for a minimum of 10 years. Order history information is maintained online for 3 years and is available for immediate access by customer service representatives. After 3 years, this information is maintained in offline storage.</p> <p>Original source documents are retained on image management systems for a minimum of 7 years, to facilitate the retrieval or reconstruction of data as well as to satisfy legal requirements.</p> <p>The entity performs an annual audit of tapes stored at the offsite storage facility. As part of the audit, tapes at the offsite location are matched to the appropriate tape management system.</p>
<b>Security-related criteria relevant to the system's processing integrity</b>	
3.6 Procedures exist to restrict logical access to the defined system including, but not limited to, the following matters:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Logical access to nonpublic information resources is protected through the use of native operating system security, native application and resource security, and add-on security software.</li> <li>Resource specific or default access rules have been defined for all non-public resources.</li> <li>Access to resources is granted to an authenticated user based on the user's identity.</li> </ul>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
e. Distribution of output restricted to authorized users	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unused customer accounts (no activity for six months) are purged by the system.</li> <li>• Changes to other accounts and profiles are restricted to the security administration team and require the approval of the appropriate line-of-business supervisor or customer account manager.</li> <li>• The human resource management system provides the human resources team with a list of newly terminated employees on a weekly basis. This listing is sent to the security administration team for deactivation.</li> <li>• Access to computer processing output is provided to authorized individuals based on the classification of the information.</li> <li>• Processing outputs are stored in an area that reflects the classification of the information.</li> </ul>
f. Restriction of access to offline storage, backup data, systems, and media	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Access to offline storage, backup data, systems, and media is limited to computer operations staff.</li> </ul>
g. Restriction of access to system configurations, superuser functionality, master passwords, powerful utilities, and security devices (for example, firewalls)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hardware and operating system configuration tables are restricted to appropriate personnel.</li> <li>• Application software configuration tables are restricted to authorized users and under the control of application change management software.</li> <li>• Utility programs that can read, add, change, or delete data or programs are restricted to authorized technical services staff. Usage is logged and monitored by the manager of computer operations.</li> <li>• The information security team, under the direction of the CIO, maintains access to firewall and other logs, as well as access to any storage media. Any access is logged and reviewed in accordance with the company's IT policies.</li> <li>• A listing of all master passwords is stored in an encrypted database, and an additional copy is maintained in a sealed envelope in the entity safe.</li> </ul>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.7 Procedures exist to restrict physical access to the defined system including, but not limited to, facilities, offline storage media, backup media and systems, and other system components such as firewalls, routers, and servers.</p>	<p>Physical access to the computer rooms, which house the entity's IT resources, servers, and related hardware such as firewalls and routers, is restricted to authorized individuals by card key systems and is monitored by video surveillance.</p> <p>Physical access cards are managed by building security staff. Access card usage is logged. Logs are maintained and reviewed by building security staff.</p> <p>Requests for physical access privileges to the entity's computer facilities require the approval of the manager of computer operations.</p> <p>Documented procedures exist for the identification and escalation of potential physical security breaches.</p> <p>Offsite backup data and media are stored at service provider facilities. Access to offsite data and media requires the approval of the manager of computer operations.</p>
<p>3.8 Procedures exist to protect against unauthorized access to system resources.</p>	<p>Login sessions are terminated after three unsuccessful login attempts.</p> <p>Virtual private networking (VPN) software is used to permit remote access by authorized users. Users are authenticated by the VPN server through specific "client" software and user ID and passwords.</p> <p>Firewalls are used and configured to prevent unauthorized access. Firewall events are logged and reviewed daily by the security administrator.</p> <p>Unneeded network services (for example, telnet, ftp, and http) are deactivated on the entity's servers. A listing of the required and authorized services is maintained by the IT department. This list is reviewed by entity management on a routine basis for its appropriateness for the current operating conditions.</p> <p>Intrusion detection systems are used to provide continuous monitoring of the entity's network and early identification of potential security breaches.</p> <p>The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.9 Procedures exist to protect against infection by computer viruses, malicious code, and unauthorized software.</p>	<p>In connection with other security monitoring, the security administration team participates in user groups and subscribes to services relating to computer viruses.</p> <p>Antivirus software is in place, including virus scans of incoming e-mail messages. Virus signatures are updated promptly.</p> <p>Any viruses discovered are reported to the security team, and an alert is created for all users notifying them of a potential virus threat.</p> <p>The ability to install, modify, and replace operating systems and other system programs is restricted to authorized personnel.</p> <p>Access to superuser functionality and sensitive system functions is restricted to authorized personnel.</p>
<p>3.10 Encryption or other equivalent security techniques are used to protect user authentication information and the corresponding session transmitted over the Internet or other public networks.</p>	<p>The entity uses industry standard encryption technology, VPN software, or other secure communication systems (consistent with its periodic IT risk assessment) for the transmission of private or confidential information over public networks, including user IDs and passwords. Users are required to upgrade their browsers to the most current version tested and approved for use by the security administration team to avoid possible security problems.</p> <p>Account activity, subsequent to successful login, is encrypted through industry standard encryption technology, VPN software, or other secure communication systems (consistent with its periodic IT risk assessment). Users are logged out on request (by selecting the “Sign-out” button on the Web site) or after 10 minutes of inactivity.</p>
<b>Criteria related to execution and incident management used to achieve objectives</b>	
<p>3.11 Procedures exist to identify, report, and act upon system processing integrity issues and related security breaches and other incidents.</p>	<p>Users are provided instructions for communicating system processing integrity issues and potential security breaches to the IT hotline. Processing integrity issues are escalated to the manager of computer operations. The information security team investigates security-related incidents reported through customer hotlines and e-mail.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
	<p>Production run and automated batch job scheduler logs are reviewed each morning, and processing issues are identified, escalated, and resolved.</p> <p>Intrusion detection systems and other tools are used to identify, log, and report potential security breaches and other incidents. The system notifies the security administration team, the network administrator, or both via e-mail and text of potential incidents in progress.</p> <p>Incident logs are monitored and evaluated by the information security team daily.</p> <p>When an incident is detected or reported, a defined incident management process is initiated by authorized personnel. Corrective actions are implemented in accordance with defined policies and procedures.</p> <p>Procedures include a defined incident escalation process and notification mechanisms.</p> <p>All incidents are tracked by management until resolved.</p> <p>Closed incidents are reviewed by management for appropriate resolution.</p> <p>Resolution of incidents not related to security includes consideration of the impact of the incident and its resolution on security requirements.</p>
<b>Criteria related to the system components used to achieve the objectives</b>	
<p>3.12 Procedures exist to classify data in accordance with classification policies and periodically monitor and update such classifications as necessary</p>	<p>The entity has a data quality assurance function.</p> <p>The data quality assurance group reviews data usage and ensures that metadata is documented, including, but not limited to, the following matters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Purpose</li> <li>b. Origin/Ownership, both internal and external</li> <li>c. Used by</li> <li>d. Custodian/Steward</li> <li>e. Standards governing</li> <li>f. Classification for security/privacy</li> <li>g. Access privileges</li> <li>h. Location (for searchability)</li> </ul>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
	<i>i.</i> Version
	<i>j.</i> Timestamp
	<i>k.</i> Retention/Disposal Requirements
	<i>l.</i> Source; Owner/responsible party/ Lineage/Audit trail
	<i>m.</i> Assurance
	Whenever new data are captured or created, the data are classified based on security and process integrity policies.
	Propriety of data classification is considered as part of the change management process.
3.13 Procedures exist to provide that issues of noncompliance with system processing integrity and related security policies are promptly addressed and that corrective measures are taken on a timely basis.	The entity requires procedures to be consistent with policies and there is a process to check that procedures are consistent with policies.
	The entity monitors changes to policies and promptly updates procedures affected by those changes.
	Computer operations team meetings are held each morning to review the previous day's processing. Processing issues are discussed, remedial action is taken, and additional action plans are developed, where necessary, and implemented.
	Standard procedures exist for the review, documentation, escalation, and resolution of system processing problems.
	Entity management routinely evaluates the level of performance it receives from the Internet service provider (ISP) which hosts the entity's Web site. This includes evaluating the security controls the ISP has in place by an independent third party as well as following up with the ISP management on any open items or causes for concern.
	Processing integrity and related security issues are recorded and accumulated in a problem report. Corrective action is noted and monitored by management.
	On a routine basis, processing integrity and related security policies, controls, and procedures are audited by the internal audit department. Results of such examinations are reviewed by management, a response is prepared, and a remediation plan is put in place.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.14 Design, acquisition, implementation, configuration, modification, and management of infrastructure and software are consistent with defined processing integrity and related security policies.</p>	<p>The entity has adopted a formal systems development life cycle (SDLC) methodology that governs the development, acquisition, implementation, and maintenance of computerized information systems and related technology.</p> <p>The SDLC methodology includes a framework for assigning ownership of systems and classifying data. Process owners are involved in development of user specifications, solution selection, testing, conversion, and implementation.</p> <p>The security administration team reviews and approves the architecture and design specifications for new systems development and/or acquisition to ensure consistency with the entity's processing integrity and related security objectives, policies, and standards.</p> <p>Process owner review, approval of test results, and authorization are required for implementation of changes.</p> <p>Changes to system components that may affect security require the approval of the security administration team.</p>
<p>3.15 Procedures exist to provide that personnel responsible for the design, development, implementation, and operation of systems affecting processing integrity and security have qualifications and resources to fulfill their responsibilities.</p>	<p>A separate systems quality assurance group reporting to the CIO has been established.</p> <p>The entity has written job descriptions specifying the responsibilities and academic and professional requirements for key job positions.</p> <p>Hiring procedures include a comprehensive screening of candidates for key positions and consideration of whether the verified credentials are commensurate with the proposed position. New personnel are offered employment subject to background checks and reference validation.</p> <p>Candidates, including internal transfers, are approved by the line-of-business manager before the employment position is offered.</p> <p>Outsourced activities are included in assessments of personnel qualifications and resource adequacy.</p> <p>Periodic performance appraisals are performed by employee supervisors and include the assessment and review of professional development activities.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
	<p>Personnel receive training and development in computer operations, system design and development, testing, and security concepts and issues.</p> <p>Procedures are in place to provide alternate personnel for key system processing functions in case of absence or departure.</p> <p>Procedures are in place for allocating the number of personnel and other resources commensurate with the processing integrity and related security requirements.</p>
<b>Change management-related criteria applicable to the system's processing integrity</b>	
<p>3.16 Procedures exist to maintain system components, including configurations consistent with the defined system processing integrity and related security policies.</p>	<p>Entity management receives a third-party opinion on the adequacy of security controls, and routinely evaluates the level of performance it receives (in accordance with its contractual service-level agreement) from the service provider that hosts the entity's systems and Web site.</p> <p>The IT department maintains an up-to-date listing of all software and the respective level, version, and patches that have been applied.</p> <p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their requests.</p> <p>System configurations are tested annually and evaluated against the entity's processing integrity and security policies and current service-level agreements. An exception report is prepared and remediation plans are developed and tracked.</p> <p>The entity monitors changes to policies and promptly updates procedures affected by those changes.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.17 Procedures exist to provide that only authorized, tested, and documented changes are made to the system.	<p>The entity's documented systems development methodology describes the change initiation, software development and maintenance, and testing and approval processes, as well as the standards and controls that are embedded in the processes. These include programming, documentation, and testing standards.</p> <p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their outstanding and closed requests.</p> <p>Changes to system infrastructure and software are developed and tested in a separate development and test environment before implementation into production.</p> <p>As part of the change control policies and procedures, there is a "promotion" process (for example, from "test" to "staging" to "production"). Promotion to production requires the approval of the business owner who sponsored the change and the manager of computer operations.</p> <p>When changes are made to key systems components, there is a "backout" plan developed for use in the event of major interruption(s).</p>
3.18 Procedures exist to provide that emergency changes are documented and authorized (including after-the-fact approval).	<p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their requests.</p> <p>Emergency changes that require deviations from standard procedures are logged and reviewed by IT management daily and reported to the affected line-of-business manager. Permanent corrective measures follow the entity's change management process, including line-of-business approvals.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<b>Availability-related criteria applicable to the system's processing integrity</b>	
<p>3.19 Procedures exist to protect the system against potential risks (for example, environmental risks, natural disasters, and routine operational errors and omissions) that might impair system processing integrity.</p>	<p>A risk assessment is prepared and reviewed on a periodic basis or when a significant change occurs in either the internal or external physical environment. Threats such as fire, flood, dust, power failure, excessive heat and humidity, and labor problems have been considered.</p> <p>Management maintains measures to protect against environmental factors (for example, fire, dust, power failure, and excessive heat and humidity) based on its periodic risk assessment. The entity's controlled areas are protected against fire using both smoke detectors and a fire suppression system. Water detectors are installed within the raised floor areas.</p> <p>The entity site is protected against a disruption in power supply to the processing environment by both uninterruptible power supplies and emergency power supplies. This equipment is tested semiannually.</p> <p>Preventive maintenance agreements and scheduled maintenance procedures are in place for key system hardware components.</p> <p>Vendor warranty specifications are complied with and tested to determine if the system is properly configured.</p> <p>Procedures to address minor processing errors, outages, and destruction of records are documented.</p> <p>Procedures exist for the identification, documentation, escalation, resolution, and review of problems.</p> <p>Physical and logical security controls are implemented to reduce the opportunity for unauthorized actions that could impair system processing integrity.</p>
<p>3.20 Procedures exist to provide for restoration and disaster recovery consistent with the entity's defined processing integrity policies.</p>	<p>Management has implemented a comprehensive strategy for backup and restoration based on a review of business requirements. Backup procedures for the entity are documented and include redundant servers, daily incremental backups of each server, and a complete backup of the entire week's changes on a weekly basis. Daily and weekly backups are stored offsite in accordance with the entity's system policies.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.21 Procedures exist to provide for the completeness, accuracy, and timeliness of backup data and systems.	Disaster recovery and contingency plans are documented.
	The disaster recovery plan defines the roles and responsibilities and identifies the critical IT application programs, operating systems, personnel, data files, and time frames needed to ensure high availability and system reliability based on the business impact analysis.
	The business continuity planning coordinator reviews and updates the business impact analysis with the lines of business annually.
	Disaster recovery and contingency plans are tested annually in accordance with the entity's system policies. Testing results and change recommendations are reported to the entity's management committee.
	The entity's management committee reviews and approves changes to the disaster recovery plan.
	All critical personnel identified in the business continuity plan hold current versions of the plan, both onsite and offsite. An electronic version is stored offsite.
	Automated backup processes include procedures for testing the integrity of the backup data.
	Backups are performed in accordance with the entity's defined backup strategy, and usability of backups is verified at least annually.
	Backup systems and data are stored offsite at the facilities of a third-party service provider.
	Under the terms of its service provider agreement, the entity performs an annual verification of media stored at the offsite storage facility. As part of the verification, media at the offsite location are matched to the appropriate media management system. The storage site is reviewed biannually for physical access security and security of data files and other items.
	Backup systems and data are tested as part of the annual disaster recovery test.

*(continued)*

Criteria		Illustrative Controls
4.0	<b>Monitoring: The entity monitors the system and takes action to maintain compliance with the defined system processing integrity policies.</b>	
4.1	System processing integrity and security performance are periodically reviewed and compared with the defined system processing integrity and related security policies.	<p>System processing is monitored using system monitoring tools by onsite operations staff 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Processing logs, performance and security incident statistics, and comparisons to approved targets are reviewed by the operations team daily and are accumulated and reported to the IT steering committee monthly.</p> <p>The customer service group monitors system processing and related customer complaints. It provides a monthly report of such matters together with recommendations for improvement, which are considered and acted on at the monthly IT steering committee meetings.</p> <p>The information security team monitors the system and assesses the system vulnerabilities using proprietary and publicly available tools. Potential risks are evaluated and compared to service-level agreements and other obligations of the entity. Remediation plans are proposed and implementations are monitored.</p> <p>The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. The internal audit function conducts processing integrity and system security reviews as part of its annual audit plan. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.</p>
4.2	There is a process to identify and address potential impairments to the entity's ongoing ability to achieve its objectives in accordance with its defined system processing integrity and related security policies.	<p>System processing is monitored using system monitoring tools by onsite operations staff 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Processing logs and performance and security incident statistics and comparisons to approved targets are reviewed by the operations team daily and are accumulated and reported to the IT steering committee monthly.</p> <p>Future system processing performance and capacity requirements are projected and analyzed as part of the annual IT planning and budgeting process.</p> <p>Logs are analyzed either manually or by automated tools to identify trends that may have a potential impact on the entity's ability to achieve its system processing integrity and related security objectives.</p>

Criteria	Illustrative Controls
4.3 Environmental, regulatory, and technological changes are monitored, their impact on system processing integrity and security is assessed on a timely basis, and policies are updated for that assessment.	<p>Monthly IT staff meetings are held to address system processing, capacity, and security concerns and trends; findings are discussed at quarterly management meetings.</p> <p>The entity's data center facilities include climate and environmental monitoring devices. Deviations from optimal performance ranges are escalated and resolved.</p> <p>Senior management, as part of its annual IT planning process, considers developments in technology and the impact of applicable laws or regulations on the entity's processing integrity and related security policies.</p> <p>The entity's customer service group monitors the impact of emerging technologies, customer requirements, and competitive activities.</p>

## Confidentiality Principle and Criteria

**.28** The *confidentiality principle* refers to the system's ability to protect the information designated as confidential, as committed or agreed. Unlike personal information, which is defined by regulation in a number of countries worldwide and is subject to the privacy principles (see paragraph .33), there is no widely recognized definition of what constitutes confidential information. In the course of communicating and transacting business, partners often exchange information they require to be maintained on a confidential basis. In most instances, the respective parties wish to ensure that the information they provide is available only to those individuals who need access to that information to complete the transaction or to resolve any questions that may arise. To enhance business partner confidence, it is important that the business partner be informed about the entity's system and information confidentiality policies, procedures, and practices. The entity needs to disclose its system and information confidentiality policies, procedures, and practices relating to the manner in which it provides for authorized access to its system and uses and shares information designated as confidential.

**.29** Examples of the kinds of information that may be subject to confidentiality include

- transaction details,
- engineering drawings,
- business plans,
- banking information about businesses,
- intellectual property,
- inventory availability,
- bid or ask prices,
- price lists,

- legal documents,
- client and customer lists, and
- revenue by client and industry.

**.30** What is considered to be confidential information can vary significantly from business to business and is determined by contractual arrangements or regulations. It is important to understand and agree upon what information is to be maintained in the system on a confidential basis and what, if any, rights of access will be provided.

**.31** Confidential information that is provided to another party is susceptible to unauthorized access during transmission and while it is stored on the other party's computer systems. For example, an unauthorized party may intercept business partner profile information and transaction and settlement instructions while the information is being transmitted. Controls such as encryption can be used to protect the confidentiality of this information during its transmission. Firewalls and rigorous access controls can also be used to help protect the information while it is processed or stored on computer systems.

***Confidentiality Principle and Criteria Table***

**.32** Information designated as confidential is protected by the system as committed or agreed.

<i>Criteria</i>		<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<b>1.0</b>	<b>Policies: The entity defines and documents its policies related to the system protecting confidential information, as committed or agreed.</b>	
1.1	The entity's system confidentiality and related security policies are established and periodically reviewed and approved by a designated individual or group.	<p>Written system confidentiality and security policies, addressing both IT and physical security, have been approved by the IT standards committee and are implemented throughout the company.</p> <p>As part of the periodic corporate risk assessment process, the security officer identifies changes to the IT risk assessment based on</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• new applications and infrastructure changes,</li><li>• significant changes to applications and infrastructure components,</li><li>• new environmental based confidentiality and security risks,</li><li>• changes to regulations and standards, and</li><li>• changes to user requirements as identified in service level agreements and other documents.</li></ul> <p>The security officer then updates the confidentiality and security policies based on the IT risk assessment.</p> <p>Changes to the IT security policy are approved by the IT standards committee prior to implementation.</p>

Criteria	Illustrative Controls
<p>1.2 The entity's policies related to the system's protection of confidential information and security include, but are not limited to, the following matters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifying and documenting the confidentiality and related security requirements of authorized users</li> <li>b. Classifying data based on its criticality and sensitivity that is used to define protection requirements, access rights and access restrictions, and retention and destruction requirements</li> <li>c. Assessing risk on a periodic basis</li> <li>d. Preventing unauthorized access</li> <li>e. Adding new users, modifying the access levels of existing users, and removing users who no longer need access</li> <li>f. Assigning responsibility and accountability for confidentiality and related security</li> <li>g. Assigning responsibility and accountability for system changes and maintenance</li> <li>h. Testing, evaluating, and authorizing system components before implementation</li> <li>i. Addressing how complaints and requests relating to confidentiality and related security issues are resolved</li> </ul>	<p>User confidentiality requirements are documented in service-level agreements, nondisclosure agreements, or other documents.</p> <p><i>An example of an illustrative control for this criterion would be an entity's documented confidentiality policy and related security policy addressing the elements set out in criterion 1.2. Illustrative confidentiality policies and security policies have been omitted for brevity.</i></p>

(continued)

	<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
	<p><i>j.</i> Handling confidentiality and related security breaches and other incidents</p> <p><i>k.</i> Providing for training and other resources to support its system confidentiality and related security policies</p> <p><i>l.</i> Providing for the handling of exceptions and situations not specifically addressed in its system confidentiality and related security policies</p> <p><i>m.</i> Providing for the identification of and consistency with, applicable laws and regulations, defined commitments, service-level agreements, and other contractual requirements</p> <p><i>n.</i> Sharing information with third parties</p>	
1.3	Responsibility and accountability for developing and maintaining the entity's system confidentiality and related security policies, and changes and updates to those policies, are assigned.	Management has assigned responsibilities for implementation of the entity's confidentiality policies to the human resources team. Responsibility for implementation of the entity's security policies has been assigned to the security officer under the direction of the CIO. The IT standards committee of the executive committee assists in the review, update, and approval of the policies as outlined in the executive committee handbook.
<b>2.0</b>	<b>Communications: The entity communicates its defined policies related to the system's protection of confidential information to responsible parties and authorized users.</b>	
2.1	The entity has prepared an objective description of the system and its boundaries and communicated such description to authorized users.	<p>For its e-commerce system, the entity has posted a system description on its Web site. <i>(For an example of a system description for an e-commerce system, refer to appendix A [paragraph .45].)</i></p> <p>For its non-e-commerce system, the entity has provided a system description to authorized users. <i>(For an example of a system description for a non-e-commerce based system, refer to appendix B [paragraph .46].)</i></p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>2.2 The system confidentiality and related security obligations of users and the entity's confidentiality and related security commitments to users are communicated to authorized users before the confidential information is provided. This communication includes, but is not limited to, the following matters:</p> <p><i>a.</i> How information is designated as confidential and ceases to be confidential. The handling, destruction, maintenance, storage, back-up, and distribution or transmission of confidential information.</p> <p><i>b.</i> How access to confidential information is authorized and how such authorization is rescinded.</p> <p><i>c.</i> How confidential information is used.</p> <p><i>d.</i> How confidential information is shared.</p>	<p>The entity's confidentiality and related security commitments and required confidentiality and security obligations of its customers and other external users are posted on the entity's Web site. The entity's confidentiality policies and practices can also be outlined in its customer contracts, service-level agreements, vendor contract terms and conditions, and standard nondisclosure agreement.</p> <p>Signed nondisclosure agreements are required before sharing information designated as confidential with third parties. Customer contracts, service-level agreements, and vendor contracts are negotiated before performance or receipt of service. Changes to the standard confidentiality provisions in these contracts require the approval of executive management.</p> <p>For its internal users (employees and contractors), the entity's policies relating to confidentiality and security are reviewed with new employees and contractors as part of their orientation, and the key elements of the policies and their impact on the employee are discussed. New employees must sign a statement signifying that they have read, understand, and will follow these policies. Each year, as part of their performance review, employees must reconfirm their understanding of and compliance with the entity's security policies. Confidentiality and security obligations of contractors are detailed in their contract.</p> <p>A security awareness program has been implemented to communicate the entity's confidentiality and security policies to employees.</p> <p>The entity publishes its confidentiality and related security policies on its corporate intranet.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>e. If information is provided to third parties, disclosures include any limitations on reliance on the third party's confidentiality practices and controls. Lack of such disclosure indicates that the entity is relying on the third party's confidentiality practices and controls that meet or exceed those of the entity.</p> <p>f. Practices to comply with applicable laws and regulations addressing confidentiality.</p>	<p>Signed nondisclosure agreements are required before sharing information designated as confidential with third parties.</p>
<p>2.3 Responsibility and accountability for the entity's system confidentiality and related security policies and changes and updates to those policies are communicated to entity personnel responsible for implementing them.</p>	<p>The security administration team has custody of and is responsible for the day-to-day maintenance of the entity's confidentiality and related security policies and recommends changes to the CIO and the IT steering committee.</p> <p>Confidentiality and related security commitments are reviewed with the customer account managers and legal department representatives as part of the annual IT planning process.</p> <p>Written job descriptions have been defined and are communicated to the responsible personnel.</p> <p>Written process and procedure manuals for defined confidentiality processes are provided to responsible personnel. The security officer updates the processes and procedures manuals based on changes to the confidentiality policy.</p>
<p>2.4 The process for informing the entity about breaches of confidentiality and system security and for submitting complaints is communicated to authorized users.</p>	<p>The process for customers and external users to inform the entity of possible confidentiality or security breaches and other incidents is posted on the entity's Web site, provided as part of the new user welcome kit, or both.</p> <p>The entity's security awareness program includes information concerning the identification of possible confidentiality and security breaches and the process for informing the security administration team.</p> <p>Documented procedures exist for the identification and escalation of possible confidentiality or security breaches and other incidents.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>2.5 Changes that may affect confidentiality and system security are communicated to management and users who will be affected.</p>	<p>Planned changes to system components and the scheduling of those changes are reviewed as part of monthly IT steering committee meetings.</p> <p>Changes to system components, including those that may affect system security, require the approval of the security administrator before implementation.</p> <p>Changes that may affect customers and users and their confidentiality and related security obligations or the entity's confidentiality and security commitments are highlighted on the entity's Web site.</p> <p>Changes that may affect confidentiality and system security are communicated in writing to affected customers for review and approval under the provisions of the standard services agreement before implementation of the proposed change.</p> <p>There is periodic communication of changes, including changes that may affect confidentiality and system security.</p> <p>Changes that affect confidentiality or system security are incorporated into the entity's ongoing security awareness program.</p>
<p><b>3.0 Procedures: The entity placed in operation procedures to achieve its documented system confidentiality objectives in accordance with its defined policies.</b></p>	
<p>3.1 Procedures exist to (1) identify potential threats of disruptions to systems operations that would impair system confidentiality commitments and (2) assess the risks associated with the identified threats.</p>	<p>A risk assessment is performed periodically. As part of this process, threats to confidentiality are identified, and the risk from these threats is formally assessed.</p> <p>Confidentiality processes and procedures are revised by the security officer based on the assessed threats.</p>
<p>3.2 The system procedures related to confidentiality of inputs are consistent with the documented confidentiality policies.</p>	<p>Confidentiality processes are established to help ensure that all inputs have been authorized, have been accepted for processing, and are accounted for. Any missing or unaccounted source documents or input files have been identified and investigated. These processes require that exceptions be resolved within a specified time period but before data processing occurs or is completed.</p> <p>Confidentiality processes are implemented to limit access to input routines and physical input media (blank and completed) to authorized individuals.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.3 The system procedures related to confidentiality of data processing are consistent with the documented confidentiality policies.	<p>Confidentiality processes exist to restrict the capability to input information to only authorized individuals. This should include limitations based on specific operational or project roles and responsibilities.</p> <p>Error messages are revealed to authorized personnel. Error messages do not reveal potentially harmful information that could be used by others, and sensitive information (for example, e-mail content and financial data) is not listed in error logs or associated administrative messages.</p> <p>Confidentiality processes use transaction logs to reasonably ensure that all transactions are processed and to identify transactions that were not completely processed. Processes are in place to identify and review the incomplete execution of transactions, analyze them, and take appropriate action.</p>
3.4 The system procedures related to confidentiality of outputs are consistent with the documented confidentiality policies.	<p>Confidentiality processes exist to monitor, in a timely manner, unauthorized attempts to access data for any purposes, or for purposes beyond the authorization level of the person accessing the data, including inappropriate or unusual actions, overrides, or bypasses applied to data and transaction processing.</p> <p>Management has developed a reporting strategy that includes the sensitivity and confidentiality of data and appropriateness of user access to output data.</p> <p>Management has processes in place to monitor the replication or production of confidential output data used in reports or other communications within or outside the entity.</p> <p>User access to output data is appropriately aligned with the user's role and confidentiality of information.</p> <p>Access to reports is restricted to those users with a legitimate business need for the information.</p>
3.5 The system procedures provide that confidential information is disclosed to parties only in accordance with the entity's defined confidentiality and related security policies.	<p>Users should have appropriate authorization for accessing reports containing confidential information.</p> <p>Employees are required to sign a confidentiality agreement as a routine part of their employment. This agreement prohibits any disclosures of information and other data to which the employee has been granted access.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.6 The entity has procedures to obtain assurance or representation that the confidentiality policies of third parties to whom information is transferred and upon which the entity relies are in conformity with the entity's defined system confidentiality and related security policies and that the third party is in compliance with its policies.</p>	<p>Logical access controls are in place that limit access to confidential information based on job function and need. Requests for access privileges to confidential data require the approval of the data owner.</p>
<p>3.7 In the event that a disclosed confidentiality practice is discontinued or changed to be less restrictive, the entity has procedures to protect confidential information in accordance with the system confidentiality practices in place when such information was received, or obtains customer consent to follow the new confidentiality practice with respect to the customer's confidential information.</p>	<p>Business partners are subject to nondisclosure agreements or other contractual confidentiality provisions.</p> <p>The entity outsources technology support or service and transfers data to an outsource provider. The requirements of the service provider with respect to confidentiality of information provided by the entity are included in the service contract. Legal counsel reviews third-party service contracts to assess conformity of the service provider's confidentiality provisions with the entity's confidentiality policies.</p> <p>The entity obtains representations and assurances about the controls that are followed by the outsource provider and obtains a report on the effectiveness of such controls from the outsource provider's independent auditor.</p> <p>Changes to confidentiality provisions in business partner contracts are renegotiated with the business partner.</p> <p>When changes resulting in less restrictive policy are made, the entity attempts to obtain the agreement of its customers to the new policy. Confidential information for those customers who do not agree to the new policy is either removed from the system and destroyed or isolated to receive continued protection under the old policy.</p>
<b>System security-related criteria relevant to confidentiality</b>	
<p>3.8 Procedures exist to restrict logical access to the system and the confidential information resources maintained in the system including, but not limited to, the following matters:</p> <p>a. Logical access security measures to restrict access to information resources not deemed to be public</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Logical access to nonpublic confidential information resources is protected through the use of native operating system security, native application and resource security, and add-on security software.</li> </ul>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
b. Identification and authentication of all users.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Resource specific or default access rules have been defined for all non-public resources.</li> <li>• Access to resources is granted to an authenticated user based on the user's identity.</li> <li>• Users must establish their identity to the entity's network and application systems when accessing nonpublic confidential information resources through the use of a valid user ID that is authenticated by an associated password.</li> <li>• Unique user IDs are assigned to individual users.</li> <li>• Use of group or shared IDs is permitted only after completion of an assessment of the risk of the shared ID and written approval of the manager of the requesting business unit.</li> <li>• Passwords are case sensitive and must contain at least 8 characters, one of which is nonalphanumeric.</li> <li>• Security configuration parameters force passwords to be changed every 90 days.</li> <li>• Login sessions are terminated after 3 unsuccessful login attempts.</li> </ul>
c. Registration and authorization of new users.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Customers can self-register on the entity's Web site, under a secure session in which they provide new user information and select appropriate user ID or user account and password. Privileges and authorizations associated with self-registered customer accounts provide access to specific limited system functionalities.</li> <li>• The ability to create or modify users and user access privileges (other than the limited functionality "customer accounts") is limited to the security administration team.</li> <li>• The line-of-business supervisor authorizes access privilege change requests for employees and contractors. Access to restricted resources is authorized by the resource owner.</li> <li>• Customer access privileges beyond the default privileges granted during self-registration are approved by the customer account manager.</li> </ul>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
d. The process to make changes and updates to user profiles.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Confidentiality and proper segregation of duties are considered in granting privileges.</li> <li>Changes and updates to self-registered customer accounts can be done by the individual user at any time on the entity's Web site after the user has successfully logged onto the system. Changes are reflected immediately.</li> <li>Unused customer accounts (no activity for six months) are purged by the system.</li> <li>Changes to other accounts and profiles are restricted to the security administration team and require the approval of the appropriate line-of-business supervisor or customer account manager.</li> <li>The human resource management system provides the human resources team with a list of newly terminated employees on a weekly basis. This listing is sent to the security administration team for deactivation.</li> </ul>
e. Procedures to prevent customers, groups of individuals, or other entities from accessing confidential information other than their own.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Corporate customers are assigned a unique company identifier that is required as part of the login process. Access software is used to restrict user access based on the company identifier used at login.</li> <li>Individual customers have their access restricted to their own confidential information resources based on their unique user IDs.</li> </ul>
f. Procedures to limit access to confidential information to only authorized employees based upon their assigned roles and responsibilities.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Requests for privileges to access confidential customer information resources require the approval of the customer account manager.</li> <li>Simulated customer data are used for system development and testing purposes. Confidential customer information is not used for this purpose.</li> </ul>
g. Distribution of output containing confidential information restricted to authorized users.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Access to computer processing output is provided to authorized individuals based on the classification of the information.</li> <li>Processing outputs are stored in an area that reflects the classification of the information.</li> </ul>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>		<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<i>h.</i>	Restriction of access to offline storage, backup data, systems, and media.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Access to offline storage, backup data, systems, and media is limited to computer operations staff through the use of physical and logical access controls.</li></ul>
	<i>i.</i> Restriction of access to system configurations, superuser functionality, master passwords, powerful utilities, and security devices (for example, firewalls).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hardware and operating system configuration tables are restricted to appropriate personnel.</li><li>• Application software configuration tables are restricted to authorized users and under the control of application change management software.</li><li>• Utility programs that can read, add, change, or delete data or other programs are restricted to authorized technical services staff. Usage of such programs are logged and monitored by the manager of computer operations.</li><li>• The information security team, under the direction of the CIO, maintains access controls over firewall and other logs, as well as access to any storage media. Such access is logged and reviewed in accordance with the entity's IT policies.</li><li>• The listing of all master passwords is stored in an encrypted database, and an additional copy is maintained in a sealed envelope in the entity safe.</li></ul>
3.9	Procedures exist to restrict physical access to the defined system including, but not limited to, facilities, backup media, and other system components such as firewalls, routers, and servers.	<p>Physical access to the computer rooms, which house the entity's IT resources, servers, and related hardware such as firewalls and routers, is restricted to authorized individuals by card key systems and monitored by video surveillance.</p> <p>Physical access cards are managed by building security staff. Access card usage is logged. Logs are maintained and reviewed by building security staff.</p> <p>Requests for physical access privileges to the entity's computer facilities require the approval of the manager of computer operations.</p> <p>Documented procedures exist for the identification and escalation of potential physical security breaches.</p> <p>Offsite backup data and media are stored at service provider facilities. Access to offsite data and media requires the approval of the manager of computer operations.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
3.10 Procedures exist to protect against unauthorized access to system resources.	<p>Login sessions are terminated after three unsuccessful login attempts.</p> <p>Virtual private networking (VPN) software is used to permit remote access by authorized users. Users are authenticated by the VPN server through specific “client” software and user ID and passwords.</p> <p>Firewalls are used and configured to prevent unauthorized access. Firewall events are logged and reviewed daily by the security administrator.</p> <p>Unneeded network services (for example, telnet, ftp, and http) are deactivated on the entity’s servers. A listing of the required and authorized services is maintained by the IT department. This list is reviewed by entity management on a routine basis for its appropriateness for the current operating conditions.</p> <p>Intrusion detection systems are used to provide continuous monitoring of the entity’s network and the early identification of potential security breaches.</p> <p>The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.</p>
3.11 Procedures exist to protect against infection by computer viruses, malicious code, and unauthorized software.	<p>In connection with other security monitoring, the security administration team participates in user groups and subscribes to services relating to computer viruses.</p> <p>Antivirus software is in place, including virus scans of incoming e-mail messages. Virus signatures are updated promptly.</p> <p>Any viruses discovered are reported to the security team, and an alert is created for all users notifying them of a potential virus threat.</p>
3.12 Encryption or other equivalent security techniques are used to protect transmissions of user authentication and other confidential information passed over the Internet or other public networks.	<p>The entity employs industry standard encryption technology, VPN software, or other secure communication systems (consistent with its periodic IT risk assessment) for the transmission of private or confidential information over public networks, including user IDs and passwords. Users are required to upgrade their browsers to the most current version tested and approved for use by the security administration team to avoid possible security problems.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
	<p>Account activities, subsequent to successful login, are encrypted through industry standard encryption technology, VPN software, or other secure communication systems (consistent with the entity's periodic IT risk assessment). Users are logged out on request (by selecting the "Sign-out" button on the Web site) or after 10 minutes of inactivity.</p> <p>Confidential information submitted to the entity over its trading partner extranet is encrypted.</p> <p>Transmission of confidential customer information to third-party service providers is done over leased lines.</p>
<b>Criteria related to execution and incident management used to achieve the objectives</b>	
<p>3.13 Procedures exist to identify, report, and act upon system confidentiality and security breaches and other incidents.</p>	<p>Users are provided instructions for communicating potential confidentiality and security breaches to the information security team. The information security team logs incidents reported through customer hotlines and e-mail.</p> <p>Intrusion detection and other tools are used to identify, log, and report potential security breaches and other incidents. The system notifies the security administration team, the network administrator, or both via e-mail and pager of potential incidents in progress.</p> <p>Incident logs are monitored and evaluated by the information security team daily.</p> <p>When an incident is detected or reported, a defined incident management process is initiated by authorized personnel. Corrective actions are implemented in accordance with defined policies and procedures.</p> <p>Procedures include a defined incident escalation process and notification mechanisms.</p> <p>All incidents are tracked by management until resolved.</p> <p>Closed incidents are reviewed by management for appropriate resolution.</p> <p>Resolution of incidents not related to security includes consideration of the impact of the incident and its resolution on security requirements.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<b>Criteria related to the system components used to achieve the objectives</b>	
3.14 Procedures exist to provide that system data are classified in accordance with the defined confidentiality and related security policies.	<p>Data owners periodically review data access rules and request modifications based on defined security requirements and risk assessments.</p> <p>Whenever new data are captured or created, the data are classified based on security and confidentiality policies.</p> <p>Propriety of data classification is considered as part of change management process.</p>
3.15 Procedures exist to provide that issues of noncompliance with defined confidentiality and related security policies are promptly addressed and that corrective measures are taken on a timely basis.	<p>All incidents are tracked by management until resolved.</p> <p>Closed incidents are reviewed by management for appropriate resolution.</p> <p>The internal audit process includes the development of management actions plans for findings and the tracking of action plans until closed.</p>
3.16 Design, acquisition, implementation, configuration, modification, and management of infrastructure and software are consistent with defined confidentiality and related security policies.	<p>The entity has adopted a formal systems development life cycle (SDLC) methodology that governs the development, acquisition, implementation, and maintenance of computerized information systems and related technology.</p> <p>The SDLC methodology includes a framework for classifying data, including customer confidentiality requirements. Standard user profiles are established based on customer confidentiality requirements and an assessment of the business impact of the loss of security. Users are assigned standard profiles based on needs and functional responsibilities.</p> <p>Internal information is assigned to an owner based on its classification and use. Customer account managers are assigned as custodians of customer data. Owners of internal information and custodians of customer information and data classify its sensitivity and determine the protection mechanisms required to maintain an appropriate level of confidentiality and security.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.17 Procedures exist to help ensure that personnel responsible for the design, development, implementation, and operation of systems affecting confidentiality and security have the qualifications and resources to fulfill their responsibilities.</p>	<p>The security administration team reviews and approves the architecture and design specifications for new systems development or acquisition to help ensure consistency with the entity's confidentiality and related security policies.</p>
	<p>Changes to system components that may affect security or the confidentiality of information require the approval of the security administration team.</p>
	<p>The access control and operating system facilities have been installed, including the implementation of options and parameters, to restrict access in accordance with the entity's confidentiality and related security policies.</p>
	<p>The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.</p>
	<p>The entity has written job descriptions specifying the responsibilities and academic and professional requirements for key job positions.</p>
	<p>Hiring procedures include a comprehensive screening of candidates for key positions and consideration of whether the candidates' verified credentials are commensurate with the proposed position. New personnel are offered conditional employment subject to background checks and reference validation.</p>
	<p>Candidates, including internal transfers, are approved by the line-of-business manager before the employment position is offered.</p>
	<p>Periodic performance appraisals are performed by employee supervisors and include the assessment and review of professional development activities.</p>
	<p>Personnel receive training and development in system confidentiality and security concepts and issues.</p>
	<p>Procedures are in place to provide alternate personnel for key system confidentiality and security functions in case of absence or departure.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<b>Change management-related criteria relevant to confidentiality</b>	
<p>3.18 Procedures exist to maintain system components, including configurations consistent with the defined system confidentiality and related security policies.</p>	<p>Entity management receives a third-party opinion on the adequacy of security controls, and routinely evaluates the level of performance it receives (in accordance with its contractual service-level agreement) from the service provider that hosts the entity's systems and Web site.</p> <p>The IT department maintains an up-to-date listing of all software and the respective level, version, and patches that have been applied.</p> <p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their outstanding and closed requests.</p> <p>System configurations are tested annually and evaluated against the entity's security policies and current service-level agreements. An exception report is prepared, and remediation plans are developed and tracked.</p>
<p>3.19 Procedures exist to provide that only authorized, tested, and documented changes are made to the system.</p>	<p>The responsibilities for authorizing, testing, developing, and implementing changes have been segregated. The entity's documented systems development methodology describes the change initiation, software development and maintenance, and approval processes, as well as the standards and controls that are embedded in the processes. These include programming, documentation, and testing standards.</p> <p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their outstanding and closed requests.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i>
<p>3.20 Procedures exist to provide that emergency changes are documented and authorized (including after-the-fact approval).</p> <p>3.21 Procedures exist to provide that confidential information is protected during the system development, testing, and change processes in accordance with defined system confidentiality and related security policies.</p>	<p>Changes to system infrastructure and software are developed and tested in a separate development or test environment before implementation into production.</p> <p>As part of the change control policies and procedures, there is a “promotion” process (for example, from “test” to “staging” to “production”). Promotion to production requires the approval of the business owner who sponsored the change and the manager of computer operations.</p> <p>When changes are made to key systems components, there is a “backout” plan developed for use in the event of major interruption(s).</p> <p>Requests for changes, system maintenance, and supplier maintenance are standardized and subject to documented change management procedures. Changes are categorized and ranked according to priority, and procedures are in place to handle urgent matters. Change requestors are kept informed about the status of their requests.</p> <p>Emergency changes that require deviations from standard procedures are logged and reviewed by IT management daily and reported to the affected line-of-business manager. Permanent corrective measures follow the entity’s change management process, including the requirements for obtaining line-of-business approvals.</p> <p>Information designated as confidential is not stored, processed, or maintained in test or development systems and environments.</p> <p>Test or development systems and environments that must contain information designated as confidential use data encryption, masking, and sanitization techniques to protect the confidentiality of the information.</p>
<p><b>4.0 Monitoring: The entity monitors the system and takes action to maintain compliance with its defined confidentiality policies.</b></p>	
<p>4.1 The entity’s system confidentiality and security performance is periodically reviewed and compared with the defined system confidentiality and related security policies.</p>	<p>The information security team monitors the system and assesses the systems vulnerabilities using proprietary and publicly available tools. Potential risks are evaluated and compared to service-level agreements and other obligations of the entity. Remediation plans are proposed, and implementations are monitored.</p>

Criteria	Illustrative Controls
	The entity contracts with third parties to conduct periodic security reviews and vulnerability assessments. The internal audit function conducts system security reviews as part of its annual audit plan. Results and recommendations for improvement are reported to management.
4.2 There is a process to identify and address potential impairments to the entity's ongoing ability to achieve its objectives in accordance with its system confidentiality and related security policies.	Logs are analyzed, either manually or by automated tools, to identify trends that may have a potential impact on the entity's ability to achieve its system confidentiality and related security objectives.  Monthly IT staff meetings are held to address system security concerns and trends; findings are discussed at quarterly management meetings.
4.3 Environmental, regulatory, and technological changes are monitored, and their impact on system confidentiality and security is assessed on a timely basis. System confidentiality policies and procedures are updated for such changes as required.	Trends and emerging technologies and their potential impact on customer confidentiality requirements are reviewed with corporate customers as part of the annual performance review meeting.  Senior management, as part of its annual IT planning process, considers developments in technology and the impact of applicable laws or regulations on the entity's confidentiality and related security policies.  The entity's customer service group monitors the impact of emerging technologies, customer requirements, and competitive activities.

Privacy Principles and Criteria

.33 This section provides a brief overview of privacy concepts, objectives, and principles. The complete set of privacy principles is contained in generally accepted privacy principles (GAPP) found in appendix D (paragraph .48).

.34 The *privacy principles*, which are included in GAPP, focus on protecting the personal information an organization may collect about its customers, employees, and other individuals. GAPP have been developed from a business perspective, referencing significant domestic and international privacy regulations. GAPP operationalizes complex privacy requirements into a single privacy objective that is supported by 10 privacy principles.

Privacy Concepts

.35 *Privacy* is defined in GAPP as the rights and obligations of individuals and organizations with respect to the collection, use, retention, disclosure, and destruction of personal information.

.36 *Personal information* is information that is about or can be related to an identifiable individual. It includes any information that can be linked to an

individual or used to directly or indirectly identify an individual. Most information collected by an organization about an individual is likely to be considered personal information if it can be attributed to an identified individual. Some examples of personal information are

- name,
- home or e-mail address,
- identification number (for example, a Social Security or Social Insurance Number),
- physical characteristics, and
- consumer purchase history.

**.37** Some personal information is considered *sensitive*. Some laws and regulations define the following to be sensitive personal information:

- Information on medical or health conditions
- Financial information
- Racial or ethnic origin
- Political opinions
- Religious or philosophical beliefs
- Trade union membership
- Sexual preferences
- Information related to offenses or criminal convictions

**.38** Sensitive personal information generally requires an extra level of protection and a higher duty of care. For example, the use of sensitive information may require explicit consent rather than implicit consent.

**.39** Some information about or related to people cannot be associated with specific individuals. Such information is referred to as *nonpersonal information*. This includes statistical or summarized personal information for which the identity of the individual is unknown or linkage to the individual has been removed. In such cases, the individual's identity cannot be determined from the information that remains because the information is "de-identified" or "anonymized." Nonpersonal information ordinarily is not subject to privacy protection because it cannot be linked to an individual.

**.40** *Privacy or Confidentiality?* As discussed in the confidentiality principle, personal information is different from confidential information. Unlike personally identifiable information, which is often defined by regulation in a number of countries worldwide, there is no single definition of confidential information that is widely recognized. In the course of communicating and transacting business, partners often exchange information or data that one or the other party requires be maintained on a "need to know" basis.

### **Generally Accepted Privacy Principles**

**.41** *Overall Privacy Objective.* GAPP are founded on the following privacy objective:

Personal information is collected, used, retained, disclosed, and destroyed in conformity with the commitments in the entity's privacy notice and with criteria set forth in generally accepted privacy principles issued by the AICPA and CICA.

**.42** *The Privacy Principles.* GAPP are essential to the proper protection and management of personal information. They are based on internationally known fair information practices included in many privacy laws and regulations of various jurisdictions around the world and recognized good privacy practices. The following are the 10 GAPP:

1. *Management.* The entity defines, documents, communicates, and assigns accountability for its privacy policies and procedures.
2. *Notice.* The entity provides notice about its privacy policies and procedures and identifies the purposes for which personal information is collected, used, retained, and disclosed.
3. *Choice and consent.* The entity describes the choices available to the individual and obtains implicit or explicit consent with respect to the collection, use, and disclosure of personal information.
4. *Collection.* The entity collects personal information only for the purposes identified in the notice.
5. *Use and retention.* The entity limits the use of personal information to the purposes identified in the notice and for which the individual has provided implicit or explicit consent. The entity retains personal information for only as long as necessary to fulfill the stated purposes.
6. *Access.* The entity provides individuals with access to their personal information for review and update.
7. *Disclosure to third parties.* The entity discloses personal information to third parties only for the purposes identified in the notice and with the implicit or explicit consent of the individual.
8. *Security for privacy.* The entity protects personal information against unauthorized access (both physical and logical).
9. *Quality.* The entity maintains accurate, complete, and relevant personal information for the purposes identified in the notice.
10. *Monitoring and enforcement.* The entity monitors compliance with its privacy policies and procedures and has procedures to address privacy-related complaints and disputes.

For each of the 10 privacy principles, relevant, objective, complete, and measurable criteria have been developed for evaluating an entity's privacy policies, communications, procedures, and controls.

**.43** These criteria are set forth in the separate publication *Generally Accepted Privacy Principles*.

### **Online Privacy Engagements**

**.44** When the privacy engagement relates to an online segment, an entity may choose to display a privacy seal. For these engagements, the scope needs to include, as a minimum, an online business segment of the entity. For additional considerations, see appendix C of *Generally Accepted Privacy Principles*.

Appendix A

Illustrative Disclosures for E-Commerce Systems

This appendix sets out illustrative disclosures for e-commerce systems that are required to meet the trust services principles and criteria. The required disclosures are identified separately in the trust services principles (security, availability, processing integrity, and confidentiality). The following disclosures are illustrative only and should be tailored to the particular organization’s system.

System Description

Rather than addressing the components of a system (used for describing non-e-commerce systems), an organization may describe the functionality of the system as follows:

Illustrative System Description

Our site (abc-xyz.org) enables entrepreneurs and small business owners to create and manage their own online store (myABC-xyz.org) using the abc-xyz.org suite of business services. It also covers the fulfillment and settlement systems that integrate with abc-xyz.org to facilitate ordering from these online stores and the use of third-party service providers with which we have contracted to provide various services related to our site.

The description covers the functionality in our abc-xyz.org site that allows users to create and manage their own online store. It also covers the fulfillment and settlement systems that integrate with abc-xyz.org to facilitate ordering from customer sites created on abc-xyz.org.

Disclosures Related to Specific Principles and Criteria

The following tables set out illustrative disclosures for e-commerce systems.

Criteria Reference		Illustrative Disclosures
Security		
2.2	The security obligations of users and the entity’s security commitments to users are communicated to authorized users.	<p>Even though we strive to protect the information you provide through ABC.com, no data transmission over the Internet can be guaranteed to be 100 percent secure. As a result, even though we strive to protect your information, we cannot guarantee or warrant the security of any information you transmit to or receive from us through our Web site and online services.</p> <p>We review our security policies on a regular basis, and changes are made as necessary. They undergo an intense review on an annual basis by the IT department. These defined security policies detail access privileges, information collection needs, accountability, and other such matters. Documented system security objectives, policies, and standards are consistent with system security</p>

<i>Criteria Reference</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<p>2.4 The process for informing the entity about breaches of the system security and for submitting complaints is communicated to authorized users.</p> <p>2.5 Changes that may affect system security are communicated to management and users who will be affected.</p>	<p>requirements defined in contractual, legal, and other service-level agreements. For example, only a select group of authorized individuals within ABC has access to user information. A complete policy with details regarding access, scripting, updates, and remote access is available for review by qualified personnel within the organization. This document is not available to the general public for study.</p> <p>ABC.com operates secure data networks that are password-protected and are not available to the public. When transmitting information between you and ABC.com, data security is handled through a security protocol called secured sockets layer (SSL). SSL is an Internet security standard using data encryption and Web server authentication.</p> <p>Encryption strength is measured by the length of the key used to encrypt the data; that is, the longer the key, the more effective the encryption. Using the SSL protocol, data transmission between you and the ABC.com server is performed at industry standard encryption strength.</p> <p>If you feel that there has been a breach to the security of this site, please contact us <i>immediately</i> at (800) XXX-XXXX.</p> <p>Any changes that affect the security of our Web site as it affects you as a site user will be communicated to you by posting the highlight of the change to the Web page that summarizes our security policies and significant controls.</p>

---

**Availability**


---

<p>2.2 The availability and related security obligations of users and the entity's availability and related security commitments to users are communicated to authorized users.</p>	<p>To allow sufficient time for file maintenance and backup, the maximum number of hours per day that our network will be made available is 22 hours per day, 7 days a week. In the event of a disaster or other prolonged service interruption, the entity has arranged for the use of alternative service sites to allow for full business resumption within 24 hours.</p>
---	--

(continued)

<i>Criteria Reference</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
2.4 The process for informing the entity about system availability issues and breaches of system security and for submitting complaints is communicated to authorized users.	<p>Our company's defined security policies detail access privileges, information collection needs, accountability, and other such matters. They are reviewed and updated at quarterly management meetings and undergo an intense review on an annual basis by the IT department. Documented system security objectives, policies, and standards are consistent with system security requirements defined in contractual, legal, and other service-level agreements. For example, current policy prohibits shared IDs; each support person has his or her own unique ID to log on and maintain network equipment. A complete policy with details regarding access, scripting, updates, and remote access is available for review by qualified personnel. This document will not be released to the general public for study.</p> <p>Management has in place a consumer hotline to allow customers to telephone in any comments, complaints, or concerns regarding the security of the site and availability of the system. If you are unable to obtain access to this site, please contact our customer support personnel at (800) XXX-XXXX. If you believe that there has been a breach to the security of this site, please contact us <i>immediately</i> at (800) XXX-XXXX.</p>
2.5 Changes that may affect system availability and system security are communicated to management and users who will be affected.	Highlights of any changes that affect the security of our Web site and availability of the system as it affects you as a site user will be communicated to you by e-mail seven days in advance of the anticipated change. The highlights of the change will be posted to the Web page that summarizes our availability and security policies.

<i>Criteria Reference</i>		<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<i>Processing Integrity</i>		
2.1	<p>The entity has prepared an objective description of the system and its boundaries and communicated such description to authorized users.</p> <p>If the system is an e-commerce system, additional information provided on its Web site includes, but may not be limited to, the following matters:</p>	<p>You can purchase new and used books on our site; used books are clearly labeled as such.</p> <p>The mortgage rate information we obtain for your brokerage transaction is gathered from 12 different lending institutions on a daily basis. A complete listing of these lending institutions can be obtained by clicking here <i>[insert hot link/URL]</i>.</p> <p>ABC's Online RFQ Brokerage is the online clearing house for requests for quotes (RFQ) on custom-made parts. Through our unique service, Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEM) looking for parts will be connected to contract manufacturers looking for work.</p>
a.	<p>Descriptive information about the nature of the goods or services that will be provided, including, where appropriate</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>condition of goods (whether they are new, used, or reconditioned).</li><li>description of services (or service contract).</li><li>sources of information (where it was obtained and how it was compiled).</li></ul>	<p>RFQs published on our online brokerage undergo an intensive review process to ensure that contract manufacturers get all the information needed to compose a quote. ABC's trained personnel will work closely with OEM manufacturers new to the outsourcing market to ease their fears.</p> <p>Contract manufacturers participating in the RFQ bidding process are members of ABC's BizTrust program. New members are subjected to an assortment of checks such as credit checks and reference checks to ensure that they are qualified to bid on RFQs. The results from these checks are organized into an easy-to-read BizTrust Report accessible by all members of ABC.</p> <p>The nationwide survey, conducted by the compensation-research firm of Dowden &amp; Co., presents data on 20X2 compensation that was gathered from among more than 900 employers of information systems professionals, including corporations of all sizes, in every industry group, and from every U.S. region. The survey was completed July 20X1.</p> <p>Our policy is to ship orders within 1 week of receipt of a customer-approved order. Our experience is that over 90 percent of our orders are shipped within 48 hours; the remainder is shipped within 1 week.</p>
b.	<p>The terms and conditions by which it conducts its e-commerce transactions including, but not limited to, the following matters:</p>	<p>We will notify you by e-mail within 24 hours if we cannot fulfill your order as specified at the time you placed it and will provide you the option of canceling the order without further obligation. You will not be billed until the order is shipped.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria Reference</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Time frame for completion of transactions (<i>transaction</i> means full-fulfillment of orders where goods are being sold and delivery of service where a service is being provided)</li> </ul>	<p>You have the option of downloading the requested information now, or we will send it to you on CD-ROM by UPS 2-day or Federal Express overnight delivery.</p> <p>Credit approval is required before shipment. All goods will be invoiced on shipment according to either our normal terms of settlement (net 30 days), or where alternative contractual arrangements are in place, those arrangements shall prevail.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Time frame and process for informing customers of exceptions to normal processing of orders or service requests</li> </ul>	<p>We require an electronic funds transfer of fees and costs at the end of the transaction. For new customers, a deposit may be required.</p> <p>To cancel your monthly service fee, send us an e-mail at <a href="mailto:Subscriber@ABC.com">Subscriber@ABC.com</a> or call us at (800) XXX-XXXX. Be sure to include your account number or have it ready when you call.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Normal method of delivery of goods or services, including customer options, where applicable</li> </ul>	<p>Purchases can be returned for a full refund within 30 days of receipt of shipment. Call our toll-free number or e-mail us for a return authorization number, which should be written clearly on the outside of the return package.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Payment terms, including customer options, if any</li> </ul>	<p>Warranty and other service can be obtained at any one of our 249 locations worldwide that are listed on this Web site. A list of these locations is also provided with delivery of all of our products.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Electronic settlement practices and related charges to customers</li> </ul>	<p>Transactions at this site are covered by binding arbitration conducted through our designated arbitrator [<i>name of arbitrator</i>]. They can be reached at <a href="http://www.name.org">www.name.org</a> or by calling toll-free (800) XXX-XXXX. For the details of the terms and conditions of arbitration, click here [<i>insert hot link / URL</i>].</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>How customers may cancel recurring charges, if any</li> <li>Product return policies and limited liability, where applicable</li> </ul>	<p>Our process for consumer dispute resolution requires that you contact our customer toll-free hotline at (800) XXX-XXXX or contact us via e-mail at <a href="mailto:custhelp@ourcompany.com">custhelp@ourcompany.com</a>.</p> <p>If your problem has not been resolved to your satisfaction, you may contact the Cyber Complaint Dispute Resolution Association, which can be reached at (877) XXX-XXXX during normal business hours (8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. central time) or via their Web site at <a href="http://www.ccomplaint.com">www.ccomplaint.com</a>.</p>

Criteria Reference	Illustrative Disclosures
<p>c. Where customers can obtain warranty, repair service, and support related to the goods and services purchased on its Web site.</p> <p>d. Procedures for resolution of issues regarding processing integrity. These may relate to any part of a customer's e-commerce transaction, including complaints related to the quality of services and products, accuracy, completeness, and the consequences for failure to resolve such complaints.</p>	<p>For the details of the terms and conditions of arbitration, click here <i>[insert hot link/URL]</i>.</p> <p>If you, our customer, require follow-up or response to your questions or complaints regarding transactions at this site, you may contact us at <a href="http://www.xxxquestions.org">www.xxxquestions.org</a>. If your follow-up or your complaint is not handled to your satisfaction, you should contact the e-commerce ombudsman who handles consumer complaints for e-commerce in this country. He or she can be reached at <a href="http://www.ecommercombud.org">www.ecommercombud.org</a> or by calling toll-free at (800) XXX-XXXX.</p>
<p>2.2 The processing integrity and related security obligations of users and the entity's processing integrity and related security commitments to users are communicated to authorized users.</p>	<p>Our company's defined processing integrity policies and related security policies are communicated to all authorized users of the company. The security policies detail access privileges, information collection needs, accountability, and other such matters. They are reviewed and updated at quarterly management meetings and undergo an intense review on an annual basis by the IT department. Documented system security objectives, policies, and standards are consistent with system security requirements defined in contractual, legal, and other service-level agreements. For example, current policy prohibits shared IDs; each support person has his or her own unique ID to log on and maintain network equipment. A complete policy with details regarding access, scripting, updates, and remote access is available for review by qualified personnel. This document will not be released to the general public for study.</p>
<p>2.4 The process for obtaining support and informing the entity about system processing integrity issues, errors and omissions, and breaches of systems security and for submitting complaints is communicated to authorized users.</p>	<p>For service and other information, contact one of our customer service representatives at (800) XXX-XXXX between 7:00 a.m. and 8:00 p.m. (central standard time), or you can write to us at <a href="mailto:CustServ@ABC.com">CustServ@ABC.com</a> or at the following address: Customer Service Department ABC Company 1234 Anystreet Anytown, Illinois 60000</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria Reference</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
2.5 Changes that may affect system processing integrity and system security are communicated to management and users who will be affected.	<p>If you believe that there has been a breach to the integrity or security of this site, please contact us <i>immediately</i> at (800) 123-1234.</p> <p>Highlights of any changes that affect the security of our Web site and processing integrity of the system as it affects you as a site user will be communicated to you by e-mail seven days in advance of the anticipated change. The highlights of the change will be posted to the Web page that summarizes our processing integrity and security policies.</p>

***Confidentiality***

2.2 The confidentiality and related security obligations of users and the entity's confidentiality and related security commitments to users are communicated to authorized users before the confidential information is provided. This communication includes, but is not limited to, the following matters:	XYZ manufacturing.com is a high quality custom manufacturer of electronic components. Customers and potential customers can submit engineering drawings, specifications, and requests for manufacturing price quotes through our Web site or e-mail.
a. How information is designated as confidential and ceases to be confidential; the handling, destruction, back-up, and distribution or transmission of confidential information.	Access to your information is limited to our employees and any third-party subcontractors we may elect to use in preparing our quote. We will not use any information you provide for any purpose other than a price quote and subsequent manufacturing and order fulfillment on your behalf. However, access may need to be provided in response to subpoenas, court orders, legal process, or other needs to comply with applicable laws and regulations.
b. How access to confidential information is authorized and how such authorization is rescinded.	Using our encryption software, you may designate information as confidential by checking the "Confidential Treatment" box. This software can be downloaded from our site and will accept information in most formats. Such information will automatically be encrypted using our public key before transmission over the Internet. You may transmit such information to us through our Web site or by e-mail.
c. How confidential information is used.	Access to information designated as confidential will be restricted only to our employees with a need to know. We will not provide such information to third parties without your prior permission.

<i>Criteria Reference</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<p>d. How confidential information is shared.</p> <p>e. If information is provided to third parties, disclosures include any limitations on reliance on the third party's confidentiality practices and controls. Lack of such disclosure indicates that the entity is relying on the third party's confidentiality practices and controls that meet or exceed those of the entity.</p> <p>f. Practices to comply with applicable laws and regulations addressing confidentiality.</p>	<p>When we provide information to third parties, we do not provide your company name. However, we make no representation regarding third-party confidential treatment of such information.</p> <p>Our confidentiality protection is for a period of two years, after which any confidential information will be returned to you, upon request, or destroyed.</p> <p>If you are not a customer at the time of submitting such information, you will be provided with an account number and password. You may use this account number and password to access the information you have submitted in addition to any related price quote information provided by us. You may also set up an additional 10 sub-accounts and passwords so others in your organization can also access this information.</p> <p>Our services and the protection of confidential information are subject to third-party dispute resolution. This process is described under "Arbitration Process" elsewhere on our Web site.</p>
<p>2.4 The process for informing the entity about breaches of confidentiality and system security and for submitting complaints is communicated to authorized users.</p>	<p>If you have any questions about our organization or our policies on confidentiality as stated at this site, please contact CustServ@XYZ-manufacturing.com.</p> <p>If you feel that there has been a breach to the security of this site, please contact us <i>immediately</i> at (800) XXX-XXXX.</p>
<p>2.5 Changes that may affect confidentiality and system security are communicated to management and users who will be affected.</p>	<p>Effective January 200X, we eliminated our "secret" category of information. Information submitted under the secret category will continue to be protected in accordance with our commitments at that time.</p>

---

**Privacy**


---

See generally accepted privacy principles in appendix D (paragraph .48) for related criteria.

## Appendix B

### Illustrative System Description of a Non-E-Commerce System

The purpose of a system description is to delineate the boundaries of the system covered by management's assertion or the subject matter of the practitioner's report (in this example, a pension processing service). The system description should be an integrated part of the entity's communication of policies related to the specific principles subject to the practitioner's attestation. In all cases, the system description should accompany the practitioner's report.

#### Background

XYZ Co. Pension Services (XPS), based in New York, New York, with offices across North America, manages and operates the Pension Administration System (PAS) on behalf of pension plan sponsors who are XPS's customers. The plan members are the employees of XPS's customers who are enrolled in the pension plan. XPS uses PAS for recordkeeping of pension-related activities.

#### Infrastructure

PAS uses a three-tier architecture, including proprietary client software, application servers, and database servers.

Various peripheral devices, such as tape cartridge silos, disk drives, and laser and impact printers, are also used.

#### Software

The PAS application was developed by programming staff in XYZ Co.'s Information Technology Department (XITD) Systems Development and Application Support area. PAS enables the processing of contributions to members' pension plans and withdrawals at retirement, based on plan rules. PAS generates all the required reports for members, plan sponsors, and tax authorities. PAS also provides a facility to record investments and related transactions (purchases, sales, dividends, interest, and other miscellaneous transactions). Batch processing of transactions is performed nightly.

PAS provides a facility for online data input and report requests. In addition, PAS accepts input from plan sponsors in the form of digital or magnetic media or files transmitted via the telecommunications infrastructure.

#### People

XPS has a staff of approximately 200 employees organized in the following functional areas:

- Pension administration includes a team of specialists that set up pension rules, maintain master files, process contributions to PAS, report to plan sponsors and members, and assist with inquiries from plan members.
- Financial operations is responsible for processing withdrawals, depositing contributions, and investment accounting.
- Trust accounting is responsible for bank reconciliation.

- Investment services is responsible for processing purchases of stocks, bonds, certificates of deposits, and other financial instruments.

XITD has a staff of approximately 50 employees who are dedicated to PAS and its related infrastructure and are organized in the following functional areas:

- The help desk provides technical assistance to users of PAS and other infrastructure as well as plan sponsors.
- Systems development and application support provides application software development and testing for enhancements and modifications to PAS.
- Product support specialists prepare documentation manuals and training material.
- Quality assurance monitors compliance with standards and manages and controls the change migration process.
- Information security and risk is responsible for security administration, intrusion detection, security monitoring, and business-recovery planning.
- Operational services performs day-to-day operation of servers and related peripherals.
- System software services installs and tests system software releases, monitors daily system performance, and resolves system software problems.
- Technical delivery services maintains job scheduling and report distribution software, manages security administration, and maintains policies and procedures manuals for the PAS processing environment.
- Voice and data communications maintains the communication environment, monitors the network, and provides assistance to users and plan sponsors in resolving communication problems and network planning.

## Procedures

The pension administration services covered by this system description include

- pension master file maintenance,
- contributions,
- withdrawals,
- investment accounting, and
- reporting to members.

These services are supported by XITD, which supports PAS 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. The key support services provided by XITD include

- systems development and maintenance,
- security administration and auditing,
- intrusion detection and incident response,
- data center operations and performance monitoring,
- change controls, and

- business recovery planning.

**Data**

PAS data consist of the following:

- Master file data
- Transaction data
- Error and suspense logs
- Output reports
- Transmission records
- System and security files

Transaction processing is initiated by the receipt of paper documents, electronic media, or calls to XYZ Co.'s call center. Transaction data are processed by PAS in either online or batch modes of processing and are used to update master files. Output reports are available either in hard copy or through a report-viewing facility to authorized users based on their job functions. Pension statement and transaction notices are mailed to plan sponsors and members.

## Appendix C

### Practitioner Guidance on Scoping and Reporting Issues

This appendix deals with issues related to engagement planning, performance, and reporting using the trust services principles and criteria. This section deals with

- engagement components,
- the practitioner's report,
- review engagements,
- agreed-upon procedures engagements, and
- other matters.

Trust services engagements are attest engagements performed under the AICPA Statements of Standards for Attestation Engagements.

#### Engagement Components

##### *Trust Services Principles*

Trust services provides for a modular approach using five different principles—security, availability, processing integrity, confidentiality, and privacy. A practitioner may perform a trust services examination that covers only one or any combination of the principles. Each principle describes an attribute of a system (for example, availability) and is followed by criteria for evaluating the system with respect to that attribute.

##### *Trust Services Criteria*

Criteria are the benchmarks used to measure and present the subject matter. The practitioner evaluates the subject matter against these criteria.

AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), of the attestation standards,<sup>1</sup> states that suitable criteria must have each of the following attributes:

- *Objectivity*. Criteria should be free from bias.
- *Measurability*. Criteria should permit reasonably consistent measurements, qualitative or quantitative, of subject matter.
- *Completeness*. Criteria should be sufficiently complete so that those relevant factors that would alter a conclusion about subject matter are not omitted.
- *Relevance*. Criteria should be relevant to the subject matter.

The trust services criteria meet the requirement for being suitable criteria and are the result of a public exposure and comment process.

##### *Management's Assertion*

AT section 101 states that the practitioner should ordinarily obtain a written assertion<sup>2</sup> from management, or the practitioner will be required to modify his

---

<sup>1</sup> See AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), paragraph .24.

<sup>2</sup> See AT section 101 paragraph .09.

or her report.<sup>3</sup> Specifically, management asserts that, during the period covered by the report and based on the AICPA and CICA trust services criteria, it maintained effective controls over the system under examination to satisfy the stated trust services principle(s) and criteria. For engagements covering only certain principles, management's assertion should only address the principles covered by the engagement. In addition, for engagements covering an entity's compliance with its commitments, those commitments covered by the report should be identified in management's assertion.

Under AT section 101, the practitioner may report on either management's assertion or on the subject matter of the engagement. When the practitioner reports on the assertion, the assertion should accompany the practitioner's report or be included in the first paragraph of the practitioner's report.<sup>4</sup> When the practitioner reports on the subject matter, the practitioner may want to request that management make its assertion available to the users of the practitioner's report. If one or more deviations from the criteria exist, the practitioner should modify the report. When issuing a modified report, the practitioner should report directly on the subject matter rather than on the assertion.<sup>5</sup>

### ***Period of Coverage***

AT section 101 provides that the practitioner's report and management's assertion should specify the time period covered by the report and the assertion, respectively. A practitioner may issue a report for a period of time or at a point in time. The determination of an appropriate period should be at the discretion of the practitioner and the entity.

The committee has identified the following factors that the practitioner may want to consider in establishing the reporting period:

- The anticipated users of the report and their needs
- The need for contiguous coverage between reports
- The degree and frequency of change in each of the system components
- The cyclical nature of processing within the system
- Historical information about the system

## **The Practitioner's Report**

The committee has identified the following items that the practitioner may want to consider when reporting on trust services principles and criteria.

### ***Reporting on Multiple Principles***

In most cases, a practitioner will be asked to report on one or more trust services principles and related criteria, rather than on the entire set of five principles. In the introductory paragraph of the report, the practitioner should identify the principles included in the scope of the examination.

### ***Individual or Combined Report***

When engaged to perform a trust services examination for multiple principles, the practitioner can, depending on the needs of the client, issue either a combined report or individual reports for each of the principles. For the purpose

---

<sup>3</sup> See AT section 101 paragraph .58 for a description of a practitioner's options if a written assertion is not obtained.

<sup>4</sup> See AT section 101 paragraph .64.

<sup>5</sup> See AT section 101 paragraph .66.

of this discussion, it is assumed that the practitioner has been asked to report on three principles and related criteria: security, privacy, and confidentiality.

The first issue is to decide whether this represents (1) one engagement to examine three principles or (2) three engagements to examine one principle each. This decision can affect, among other matters, the engagement letter, the content and number of representation letters, and whether one report or multiple reports will be issued. In either case, the practitioner's report(s) should clearly communicate the scope and nature of the engagement(s).

### ***Failure to Meet Criteria***

If one or more relevant criteria have not been met, the practitioner cannot issue an unqualified report. Under AT section 101, when issuing a modified report, the practitioner should report directly on the subject matter rather than on the assertion.<sup>6</sup>

### ***Different Examination Periods***

There may be situations in which the entity requests that more than one principle be examined, but due to various reasons, the principles will have different reporting periods (for example, differences in the length of the reporting period or the date that the various reporting periods begin). Ideally, it would be more efficient for the practitioner to have such periods coincide. When different reporting periods exist, the practitioner may consider whether to issue separate or combined reports. Separate reports covering the separate principles are less complex to prepare than a combined report. If a combined report is issued, the different reporting periods would need to be detailed in the introductory and opinion paragraphs of the report to ensure that the different examination periods are highlighted.

### ***Use of Third-Party Service Providers***

The practitioner may encounter situations in which the entity under examination uses a third-party service provider to accomplish some of the trust services criteria. The AICPA and CICA *Effects of a Third-Party Service Provider in a WebTrust or Similar Engagement* provides applicable guidance for these situations and is available for download at [www.webtrust.org](http://www.webtrust.org).

### ***Responsibility for Communicating Departures From the Criteria Related to Other Principles***

During a trust services examination, information about departures from the criteria, such as noncompliance or control deficiencies related to principles and criteria that are not within the scope of the engagement may come to the practitioner's attention. For example, while engaged only to report on controls related to the security principle, a practitioner may become aware that the entity is not complying with its privacy policy as stated on its Web site (for example, it is disclosing personal information to selected third parties). Although the practitioner is not responsible for detecting information about departures from the criteria that are outside the scope of his or her examination, the practitioner may want to evaluate whether such information that comes to his or her attention is significant (that is, whether the effects of such departures could materially mislead users of the system).

If the practitioner determines that the effects of such departures are significant, the committee believes that the practitioner should communicate in writing to management. Management should be asked either to correct the control deficiency or noncompliance (in this case, cease providing the information to third parties) or to properly disclose their actual practices publicly so

---

<sup>6</sup> See AT section 101 paragraph .66.

that users are aware of actual policies (in this case, the privacy statement would be amended to reflect the fact that they do provide information to third parties).

If the practitioner concludes that omission of this information would be significant and if management is unwilling to either correct the departure or disclose the information, the practitioner may consider withdrawing from the engagement.

### **Subsequent Events**

Events or transactions sometimes occur subsequent to the point in time or period of time covered by the practitioner's report but prior to the date of the practitioner's report that have a material effect on the subject matter or assertion and therefore require adjustment or disclosure in the presentation of the subject matter or assertion. These occurrences are referred to as subsequent events. In performing an attest engagement, a practitioner should consider information about subsequent events that comes to his or her attention. Two types of subsequent events require consideration by the practitioner.

The first type consists of events that provide additional information with respect to conditions that existed at the point in time or during the period of time covered by the practitioner's report. This information should be used by the practitioner in considering whether the subject matter or assertion is presented in conformity with the criteria and may affect the presentation of the subject matter, the assertion, or the practitioner's report.

The second type consists of those events that provide information with respect to conditions that arose subsequent to the point in time or period of time covered by the practitioner's report that are of such a nature and significance that their disclosure is necessary to keep the subject matter from being misleading. This type of information will not normally affect the practitioner's report if the information is appropriately disclosed.

Although the practitioner has no responsibility to detect subsequent events, the practitioner should inquire of the responsible party (and his or her client if the client is not the responsible party) as to whether they are aware of any subsequent events, through the date of the practitioner's report, that would have a material effect on the subject matter or assertion.<sup>7</sup> The representation letter ordinarily would include a representation concerning subsequent events.

The practitioner has no responsibility to keep informed of events subsequent to the date of his or her report; however, the practitioner may later become aware of conditions that existed at that date that might have affected the practitioner's report had he or she been aware of them. In such circumstances, the practitioner may wish to consider the guidance in AU section 561, *Subsequent Discovery of Facts Existing at the Date of the Auditor's Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1).<sup>8</sup>

### **Review Engagements**

A review engagement performed in accordance with Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements is a type of attestation engagement in which the practitioner reports on whether any information came to his or her attention on the basis of the work performed that indicates that the subject matter is not based on (or in conformity with) the criteria, or the assertion is not presented (or fairly stated) in all material respects based on the criteria. Such review

---

<sup>7</sup> Certain attestation standards include requirements regarding the practitioner's consideration of subsequent events, for example, AT section 501 paragraphs .73-.76 and AT section 601 paragraphs .50-.52.

<sup>8</sup> See AT 101 paragraphs .95-.99.

engagements generally are limited to inquiry and analytical review procedures. Accordingly, the committee has determined that review engagements should not be performed when reporting on controls over a system in accordance with trust services principles and criteria.

## Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements

A client may request that a practitioner perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to the trust services principles and criteria. In such an engagement, the practitioner performs specified procedures agreed to by the specified parties,<sup>9</sup> and reports his or her findings. Because the needs of the parties may vary widely, the nature, timing, and extent of the agreed-upon procedures may vary as well; consequently, the specified parties assume responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures since they best understand their own needs. In an agreed-upon procedures engagement, the practitioner does not perform an examination of an assertion or subject matter or express an opinion about the assertion or subject matter. The practitioner's report on agreed-upon procedures is a presentation of procedures and findings.<sup>10</sup> The use of an agreed-upon procedures report is restricted to the specified parties who agreed upon the procedures.

## Illustrative Reports

The following are illustrative reports for trust services examination engagements. Illustrations 1, 2, and 3 are examples of reports in which the practitioner is reporting on management's assertion. Illustrations 4 and 5 are examples of reports in which the practitioner is reporting directly on the subject matter. The first paragraph of the practitioner's report will indicate whether the practitioner is reporting on management's assertion or directly on the subject matter.

The trust services principles and criteria for *system reliability* include availability, security, and processing integrity. There is also a fourth principle and set of criteria related to confidentiality that a practitioner may report on.

The trust services principles and criteria related to availability, processing integrity and confidentiality include criteria that refer to commitments the entity has made to customers. For those principles and criteria, the client may request that the practitioner (1) report on controls over commitments (in which case the report will make no special reference to commitments) or (2) report on controls over commitments *and* on whether the entity has complied with those commitments (in which case the report will make reference to the commitments, as shown in illustration 3).

A client may include a list of its controls over the system related to the principles and criteria being reported on. An illustrative report for that option is shown in illustration 5.

These reports are for illustrative purposes and should be modified in accordance with the applicable professional standards as the specific engagement facts and circumstances warrant.

---

<sup>9</sup> The specified users and the practitioner agree upon the procedures to be performed by the practitioner.

<sup>10</sup> See AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), for guidance on agreed-upon procedures engagements.

**Illustration 1—Trust Services Report on Management's Assertion about the Effectiveness of Controls Related to Four Principles (Availability, Security, Process Integrity, and Confidentiality) (Period-of-Time Report)**

**Independent Practitioner's Trust Services Report**

To the management of ABC Company, Inc.:

We have examined management's assertion that during the period [month, day, and year] through [month, day, and year], ABC Company, Inc. (ABC Company) maintained effective controls over the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system based on the AICPA and CICA trust services availability, security, processing integrity, and confidentiality criteria to provide reasonable assurance that

- the system was available for operation and use, as committed or agreed;
- the system was protected against unauthorized access (both physical and logical);
- the system processing was complete, accurate, timely, and authorized; and
- information designated as confidential was protected by the system as committed or agreed

based on the AICPA and CICA trust services security, availability, processing integrity, and confidentiality criteria.

ABC Company's management is responsible for this assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination. Management's description of the aspects of the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system covered by its assertion is attached. We did not examine this description, and accordingly, we do not express an opinion on it.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included (1) obtaining an understanding of ABC Company's relevant controls over the availability, security, processing integrity, and confidentiality of the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system; (2) testing and evaluating the operating effectiveness of the controls; and (3) performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Because of the nature and inherent limitations of controls, ABC Company's ability to meet the aforementioned criteria may be affected. For example, controls may not prevent or detect and correct error or fraud, unauthorized access to systems and information, or failure to comply with internal and external policies or requirements. Also, the projection of any conclusions based on our findings to future periods is subject to the risk that changes may alter the validity of such conclusions.

In our opinion, management's assertion referred to above is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the AICPA and CICA trust services security, availability, processing integrity, and confidentiality criteria.

[Name of CPA firm]

Certified Public Accountants

[City, State]

[Date]

[See notes to illustrative reports prepared under AICPA standards.]

**Illustration 2—Trust Services Report on Management’s Assertion about the Effectiveness of Controls over System Reliability (Availability, Security, and Processing Integrity (Period-of-Time Report))**

**Independent Practitioner’s Trust Services Report on System Reliability**

To the management of ABC Company, Inc.:

We have examined the assertion made by management of ABC Company, Inc. (ABC Company) about its controls over the reliability of the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system during the period [month, day, year] through [month, day, year] based on the AICPA and CICA trust services availability, security, and processing integrity criteria for systems reliability. A reliable system is one that is capable of operating without material error, fault, or failure during a specified period in a specified environment. Management’s assertion is included in the accompanying document titled “ABC Company’s Assertion Regarding the Effectiveness of Its Controls Over the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] System” and states that:

During the period [month, day, year] through [month, day, year], ABC Company maintained effective controls over the availability, security and processing integrity of the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system to provide reasonable assurance that

- the system was available for operation and use, as committed or agreed;
- the system was protected against unauthorized access (both physical and logical); and
- the system processing was complete, accurate, timely, and authorized

based on the AICPA and CICA trust services availability, security, and processing integrity criteria for systems reliability.

The attached system description of ABC Company’s \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system identifies the aspects of the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system covered by the assertion.

ABC Company’s management is responsible for this assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination. Management’s description of the aspects of the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system covered by its assertion is attached. We did not examine this description, and accordingly, we do not express an opinion on it.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included (1) obtaining an understanding of ABC Company’s relevant controls over the availability, security, and processing integrity of the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system; (2) testing and evaluating the operating effectiveness of the controls; and (3) performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Because of the nature and inherent limitations of controls, ABC Company’s ability to meet the aforementioned criteria may be affected. For example, controls may not prevent or detect and correct error or fraud, unauthorized access to systems and information, and failure to comply with internal and external policies or requirements. Also, the projection of any conclusions

based on our findings to future periods is subject to the risk that changes may alter the validity of such conclusions.

In our opinion, management's assertion referred to above is fairly stated in all material respects, based on the AICPA and CICA trust services availability, security, and processing integrity criteria for systems reliability.

*[Name of CPA firm]*

Certified Public Accountants

*[City, State]*

*[Date]*

*[See notes to illustrative reports prepared under AICPA standards.]*

**Illustration 3—Trust Services Report on Management's Assertion About the Effectiveness of Controls and Compliance With the Criteria for One Principle (Confidentiality) (Point-in-Time Report)**

**Independent Practitioner's Trust Services Report**

To the management of ABC Company, Inc.:

We have examined management's assertion [*hot link to management's assertion*] that as of [*month, day, year*] ABC Company, Inc. (ABC Company) maintained effective controls over the \_\_\_\_\_ [*type or name of system*] system to provide reasonable assurance that the \_\_\_\_\_ [*type or name of system*] system protected information designated as confidential, as committed or agreed upon and complied with its commitments regarding the protection of information designated as confidential [*hot link to management's commitments*] based on the AICPA and CICA trust services confidentiality criteria.

ABC Company's management is responsible for this assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination. Management's description of the aspects of the \_\_\_\_\_ [*type or name of system*] system covered by its assertion is attached. We did not examine this description, and accordingly, we do not express an opinion on it.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included (1) obtaining an understanding of the controls over the protection of information designated as confidential in ABC Company's \_\_\_\_\_ [*type or name of system*] system; (2) testing and evaluating the operating effectiveness of those controls; (3) testing compliance with ABC Company's commitments regarding the protection of information designated as confidential, and (4) performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Because of the nature and inherent limitations of controls, ABC Company's ability to meet the aforementioned criteria and its commitments may be affected. For example, controls may not prevent or detect and correct error or fraud, unauthorized access to systems and information, and failure to comply with internal and external policies or requirements. Also, the projection of any conclusions based on our findings to future periods is subject to the risk that changes may alter the validity of such conclusions.

In our opinion, ABC Company's management's assertion referred to above is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the AICPA and CICA trust services confidentiality criteria.

[*Name of CPA firm*]

Certified Public Accountants

[*City, State*]

[*Date*]

[*See notes to illustrative reports prepared under AICPA standards.*]

***Illustration 4—Trust Services Report on System Reliability (Availability, Security, and Processing Integrity)—Reporting Directly on the Subject Matter (Period-of-Time Report)***

**Independent Practitioner's Trust Services Report on System Reliability**

To the management of ABC Company, Inc.:

We have examined the effectiveness of ABC Company, Inc.'s (ABC Company) controls over the reliability of its \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system during the period [month, day, year] through [month, day, year] based on the AICPA and CICA trust services availability, security, and processing integrity criteria for systems reliability. A reliable system is one that is capable of operating without material error, fault, or failure during a specified period in a specified environment. ABC Company's management is responsible for maintaining the effectiveness of these controls. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Management's description of the aspects of the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system covered by its assertion is attached. We did not examine this description, and accordingly, we do not express an opinion on it.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included (1) obtaining an understanding of ABC Company's relevant controls over availability, security, and processing integrity; (2) testing and evaluating the operating effectiveness of the controls; and (3) performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Because of the nature and inherent limitations of controls, ABC Company's ability to meet the aforementioned criteria may be affected. For example, controls may not prevent or detect and correct error or fraud, unauthorized access to systems and information, and failure to comply with internal and external policies or requirements. Also, the projection of any conclusions based on our findings to future periods is subject to the risk that changes may alter the validity of such conclusions.

In our opinion, ABC Company maintained, in all material respects, effective controls over the reliability of ABC Company's \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system to provide reasonable assurance that

- the system was available for operation and use, as committed or agreed;
- the system was protected against unauthorized access (both physical and logical); and
- the system processing was complete, accurate, timely, and authorized during the period [month, day, year] through [month, day, year],

based on the AICPA and CICA trust services availability, security, and processing integrity criteria for systems reliability.

[Name of CPA firm]

Certified Public Accountants

[City, State]

[Date]

[See notes to illustrative reports prepared under AICPA standards.]

***Illustration 5—Trust Services Report on the Effectiveness of Controls Related to One Principle (Security)—Reporting Directly on the Subject Matter (Period-of-Time Report Including Schedule Describing Controls)***

**Independent Practitioner's Trust Services Report**

To the management of ABC Company, Inc.:

We have examined the effectiveness of ABC Company, Inc.'s (ABC Company) controls, described in schedule X, over the security of its \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system during the period [month, day, year] through [month, day, year] based on the AICPA and CICA trust services security criteria. ABC Company's management is responsible for maintaining the effectiveness of these controls. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Management's description of the aspects of the \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system covered by its assertion is attached. We did not examine this description, and accordingly, we do not express an opinion on it.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included (1) obtaining an understanding of the ABC Company's controls over the security of \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system; (2) testing and evaluating the operating effectiveness of those controls; and (3) performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Because of the nature and inherent limitations of controls, ABC Company's ability to meet the aforementioned criteria may be affected. For example, controls may not prevent or detect and correct error or fraud, unauthorized access to systems and information, and failure to comply with internal and external policies or requirements. Also, the projection of any conclusions based on our findings to future periods is subject to the risk that changes may alter the validity of such conclusions.

In our opinion, ABC Company maintained, in all material respects, effective controls, described in schedule X, over the security of ABC Company's \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system to provide reasonable assurance that the ABC Company's \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] system was protected against unauthorized access (both physical and logical) during the period [month, day, year] through [month, day, year], based on the AICPA and CICA trust services security criteria.

[Name of CPA firm]

Certified Public Accountants

[City, State]

[Date]

[See notes to illustrative reports prepared under AICPA standards.]

**Schedule X—Controls Over the Security of ABC Company’s \_\_\_\_\_ [type or name of system] System Supporting the AICPA and CICA Trust Services Security Criteria**

The system is protected against unauthorized access (both physical and logical).

1.0	Policies: The entity defines and documents its policies for the security of its system.	Controls
1.1	The entity’s security policies are established and periodically reviewed and approved by a designated individual or group.	<p>The company’s documented systems development and acquisition process includes procedures to identify and document authorized users of the system and their security requirements.</p> <p>User requirements are documented in service-level agreements or other documents.</p> <p>The security officer reviews security policies annually and submits proposed changes for the approval by the IT standards committee.</p>
1.2	<p>The entity’s security policies include, but may not be limited to, the following matters:</p> <p>a. Identifying and documenting the security requirements of authorized users.</p> <p>b. Classifying data based on its criticality and sensitivity and that classification is used to define protection requirements, access right and access restrictions, and retention and destruction requirements.</p> <p>c. Assessing risks on a periodic basis</p> <p>d. Preventing unauthorized access.</p> <p>e. Adding new users, modifying the access levels of existing users, and removing users who no longer need access.</p> <p>f. Assigning responsibility and accountability for system security.</p> <p>g. Assigning responsibility and accountability for system changes and maintenance.</p>	<p>The company’s documented security policies contain the elements set out in criterion 1.2.</p>

- h.* Testing, evaluating, and authorizing system components before implementation.
  - i.* Addressing how complaints and requests relating to security issues are resolved.
  - j.* Identifying and mitigating security breaches and other incidents.
  - k.* Providing for training and other resources to support its system security policies.
  - l.* Providing for the handling of exceptions and situations not specifically addressed in its system security policies.
  - m.* Providing for the identification of and consistency with, applicable laws and regulations, defined commitments, service-level agreements, and other contractual requirements.
  - n.* Providing for sharing information with third parties.
- 1.3 Responsibility and accountability for the entity's system security policies, and changes and updates to those policies, are assigned.
- Management has assigned responsibilities for the maintenance and enforcement of the company security policy to the CIO. Others on the executive committee assist in the review, update, and approval of the policy as outlined in the executive committee handbook.
- Ownership and custody of significant information resources (for example, data, programs, and transactions) and responsibility for establishing and maintaining security over such resources is defined.

This schedule is for illustrative purposes only and does not contain all of the criteria for the security principle. When the practitioner is reporting on more than one principle, a similar format would be used to detail the appropriate criteria and controls. The practitioner is not bound by this presentation format and may use other alternative presentation styles.

## Appendix D

### Generally Accepted Privacy Principles

At time of press of this publication, the generally accepted privacy principles (GAPP) were under revision. For the current version of GAPP, go to <http://infotech.aicpa.org/Resources/Privacy/Generally+Accepted+Privacy+Principles/>.

#### ASSURANCE SERVICES EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE (2008/09)

Alan Anderson, *Chair*  
Suzanne Christensen  
Robert Dohrer  
Clarence R. Ebersole  
Olivia Kirtley  
Mike Krzus

Glenn Stastny  
Jorge Asef-Sargent  
Robert M. Tarola  
Bill Titera  
Miklos Vasarhelyi  
David Sharpe

#### TRUST/DATA INTEGRITY TASK FORCE

Chris Halterman, *Chair*  
Efrim Boritz  
Mark Eich  
Sheri Fedokovitz  
Thomas E. Festing  
Tim Krick

John Lainhart  
Dave Palmer  
Tom Patterson  
Dan Schroeder  
Jerry Trites  
Miklos Vasarhelyi

#### PRIVACY TASK FORCE

Everett C. Johnson, *Chair*  
Kenneth D. Askelson, *Vice Chair*  
Eric Federling  
Philip M. Juravel  
Sagi Leizerov  
Rena Mears

Robert Parker  
Marilyn Prosch  
Doron M. Rotman  
Kerry Shackelford  
Donald E. Sheehy

#### AICPA/CICA Staff

Amy Pawlicki  
*Director*  
*AICPA Business Reporting,*  
*Assurance, and Advisory Services*  
Bryan Walker  
*Director*  
*CICA Practitioner Support*  
  
Stephen L. Winters  
*Director*  
*AICPA Specialized Communities and*  
*Practice Management*

Erin Mackler  
*Senior Manager*  
*AICPA Business Reporting,*  
*Assurance, and Advisory Services*  
Nancy A. Cohen  
*Senior Technical Manager*  
*AICPA Specialized Communities and*  
*Practice Management*  
Nicholas F. Cheung  
*Principal/CICA Assurance Services*  
*Development*

---

[The next page is 15,201.]

## Section 200

# ***Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations for WebTrust® for Certification Authorities***

May 2006

### NOTICE TO READERS

The Trust Services Principles, Criteria, and Illustrations present criteria established by the Assurance Services Executive Committee of the AICPA for use by practitioners when providing attestation services on systems in the subject matters of security, availability, processing integrity, confidentiality, privacy, and certification authorities. The Assurance Services Executive Committee, in establishing and developing these criteria, followed due process procedures, including exposure of the proposed criteria for public comment. The Assurance Services Executive Committee has been designated as a senior committee and has been given authority to make public statements and publish measurement criteria without clearance from Council or the Board of Directors under Bylaw section 3.6 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, BL sec. 360).

## Introduction

**.01** This document provides a framework for licensed WebTrust® practitioners to assess the adequacy and effectiveness of the controls employed by certification authorities (CAs).<sup>1</sup> The importance of this function will continue to increase as the need for third-party authentication to provide assurance with respect to electronic commerce (e-commerce) business activities increases. As a result of the technical nature of the activities involved in securing e-commerce transactions, this document also provides a brief overview of public key infrastructure (PKI) using cryptography, trusted third-party concepts, and their increasing use in e-commerce.

**.02** Confidentiality, authentication, integrity, and nonrepudiation are the four most important ingredients required for trust in e-commerce transactions. The emerging response to these requirements is the implementation of PKI technology. PKI uses digital certificates and asymmetric cryptography to address these requirements. PKI provides a means for relying parties (that is, recipients

---

<sup>1</sup> Within the electronic commerce (e-commerce) industry, companies whose main business is to act as certification authorities, or companies who have established a certification authority function to support an e-commerce business activity, are routinely referred to as CAs or as performing a CA function.

In Canada and certain other jurisdictions, public accounting professionals, including the practitioners who are licensed to perform WebTrust® assurance services, carry the title of *chartered accountants*, also routinely referred to as CAs or as being a CA.

To avoid confusion in this document, the term *practitioner*, which is used widely in accounting literature, is used to identify a certified public accountant (CPA) or the equivalent, who is licensed to perform WebTrust assurance services.

In summary:

- The term CA is *never* used in this standard to refer to a chartered accountant.
- The term CA is used *only* to denote a certification authority (CA) or to refer to the certification authority function (CA function).
- The term *practitioner* is used to denote a properly qualified and licensed certified public accountant.

of certificates who act in reliance on those certificates, digital signatures verified using those certificates, or both) to know that another individual's or entity's public key actually belongs to that individual or entity. CA organizations and CA functions have been established to address this need.

**.03** Public key cryptography is critical to establishing secure e-commerce. However, it has to be coupled with other secure protocols to provide a comprehensive security solution. Several cryptographic protocols require digital certificates (in effect, electronic credentials) issued by an independent, trusted third party (the CA) to authenticate the transaction. CAs have assumed an increasingly important role in secure e-commerce. Although there is a large body of existing national, international, and proprietary standards and guidelines for the use of cryptography, the management of digital certificates, and the policies and practices of CAs, these standards have not been applied or implemented uniformly.

**.04** To increase consumer confidence in the Internet as a vehicle for conducting e-commerce and in the application of PKI technology, the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) and the Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants (CICA) have developed a set of principles and criteria for CAs, the WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities. Public accounting firms and practitioners who are specifically licensed by the AICPA can provide assurance services to evaluate and test whether the services provided by a particular CA meet these principles and criteria. The posting of the WebTrust seal of assurance for CAs is a symbolic representation of a practitioner's unqualified report. Similar to the WebTrust seal for business-to-consumer e-commerce, the seal of assurance also indicates that those who use the digital certificates (and certificate status information) issued by the CA, subscribers, and relying parties can click on the seal to see the practitioner's report. This seal is displayed on the CA's Web site together with links to the practitioner's report and other relevant information.

**.05** This document is designed to benefit users and providers of CA e-commerce assurance services by providing a common body of knowledge that is communicated to such parties. *Suitable Trust Services Criteria and Illustrations for Certification Authorities* is consistent with standards being developed by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).<sup>2</sup>

## Overview

### Electronic Commerce

**.06** E-commerce involves individuals and organizations engaging in a variety of electronic business transactions, without paper documents, using computer and

---

<sup>2</sup> The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) X9F5 Digital Signature and Certificate Policy working group is developing the X9.79 *PKI Practices and Policy Framework* (X9.79) standard for the financial services community. This standard includes detailed Certification Authority Control Objectives against which certification authorities may be evaluated. An International Organization for Standardization (ISO) working group has been formed to standardize X9.79 based on international requirements in a new international standard. In addition, the American Bar Association's Information Security Committee (ABA-ISC) is developing the *PKI Assessment Guidelines* (PAG) which address the legal and technical requirements for certification authorities. The PAG makes reference to the Certification Authority Control Objectives that are detailed in the draft X9.79 standard and reflected in the WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities. The Certification Authority Control Objectives referred to in each of these documents were developed based on the existing body of ANSI, ISO, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), and other existing standards.

telecommunication networks. These networks can be either private or public, or a combination of the two. Traditionally, the definition of e-commerce has been focused on electronic data interchange (EDI) as the primary means of conducting business electronically between entities with a preestablished contractual relationship. Commerce has also been conducted electronically for years in the form of credit card transactions authorized at the point of sale, debit card transactions, and cash advances from automatic teller machines. More recently, however, with the development of electronic mail, and separately, the browser and HTML, the definition of e-commerce has broadened to encompass business conducted over the Internet between entities generally not previously known to each other. This is attributable to the Web's surge in popularity and the acceptance of the Internet as a viable transport mechanism for business information. The use of a public network-based infrastructure such as the Internet can reduce costs and "level the playing field" for small and large businesses. This allows companies of all sizes to extend their reach to a broader customer base.

## Public Key Infrastructure

**.07** With the expansion of e-commerce, PKI is growing in importance and will probably be the most critical enterprise security investment a company will make in the next several years. PKI enables parties to an e-commerce transaction to identify one another by providing authentication with digital certificates, and allows reliable business communications by providing confidentiality through the use of encryption and authentication, data integrity, and a reasonable basis for nonrepudiation through the use of digital signatures.

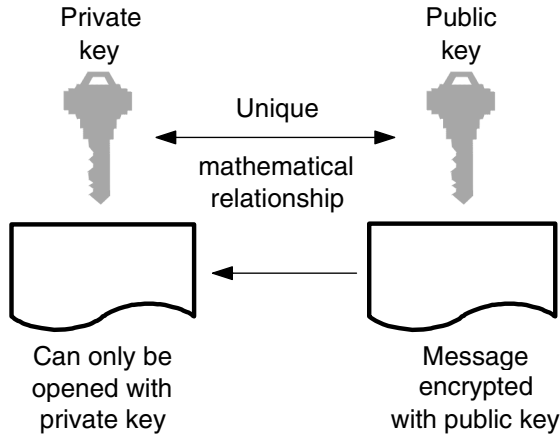
**.08** PKI uses public/private-key pairs—two mathematically related keys. Typically, one of these keys is made public, by posting it on the Internet for example, while the other remains private. Public-key cryptography works in such a way that a message encrypted with the public key can be decrypted only with the private key, and, conversely, a message signed with a private key can only be verified with the public key. This technology can be used in different ways to provide the four ingredients required for trust in e-commerce transactions, namely confidentiality, authentication, integrity, and nonrepudiation.

**.09** Using PKI, a subscriber (that is, an end entity or individual whose public key is cryptographically bound to his or her identity in a digital certificate) has an asymmetric cryptographic key pair (that is, a public key and a private key). The subscriber's private key must be kept secret, whereas the public key may be made widely available, usually presented in the form of a digital certificate to ensure that relying parties know with confidence the identity to which the public key belongs. Using public key cryptography, the subscriber can send a message signed with his or her private key. The signature can be validated by the message recipient using the subscriber's public key. The subscriber can also encrypt a message using the recipient's public key. The message can be decrypted only with the recipient's private key.

**.10** A subscriber first obtains a public/private key pair (generated by the subscriber or for the subscriber as a service). The subscriber then goes through a registration process by submitting his or her public key to a certification authority or a registration authority (RA), which acts as an agent for the CA. The CA or RA verifies the identity of the subscriber in accordance with the CA's established business practices (that may be contained in a certification practice statement), and then issues a digital certificate. The certificate includes the subscriber's public key and identity information, and is digitally signed by the CA,

which binds the subscriber's identity to that public key. The CA also manages the subscriber's digital certificate through the certificate life cycle (that is, from registration through revocation or expiration). In some circumstances, it remains important to manage digital certificates even after expiry or revocation so digital signatures on stored documents held past the revocation or expiry period can be validated at a later date.

.11 The following diagram illustrates the relationship between a subscriber's public and private keys, and how they are used to secure messages sent to a relying party.



.12 A transaction submitted by a customer to an online merchant via the Internet can be encrypted with the merchant's public key and therefore can only be decrypted by that merchant using the merchant's private key—ensuring a level of confidentiality. Confidentiality can also be achieved through the use of Secure Socket Layer (SSL), Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME), and other protocols, such as Secure Electronic Transaction (SET).

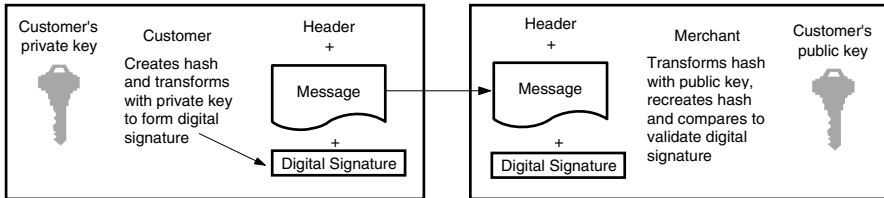
## Digital Signature

.13 Digital signatures can be used to provide authentication, integrity, and nonrepudiation. Generally speaking, if a customer sends a digitally signed message to a merchant, the customer's private key is used to generate the digital signature and the customer's public key can be used by the merchant to verify the signature. The mathematical processes employed differ somewhat depending on the kind of asymmetric cryptographic algorithm employed. For example, the processes are slightly different for reversible algorithms (that is, those that can be readily used to support digital signatures as well as encryption), such as Rivest Shamir Adleman (RSA), and irreversible algorithms, such as the Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA).

.14 The following example illustrates the digital signature generation and verification process for a reversible asymmetric cryptographic algorithm (such as RSA). Suppose a customer wants to send a digitally signed message to a merchant. The customer runs the message through a hash function (that is, a mathematical function that converts a message into a fixed-length block of data—the hash—in such a fashion that the hash uniquely reflects the message; in effect, is the message's "fingerprint." The customer then transforms the hash using the algorithm and the customer's private key to create

the digital signature, which is appended to the message. A header is also added, indicating the merchant's e-mail address, the sender's e-mail address, and other information such as the time the message is sent. The message header, the message itself, and the digital signature are then sent to the merchant. The customer has the option to send his or her public key certificate to the merchant in the message itself. All of this is usually done by the e-mail software in such a way that the process is transparent to the user.

**.15** The following diagram illustrates the process of using a subscriber's key pair to ensure the integrity and authenticity of a message sent by the customer (subscriber) to a merchant.



**.16** To determine whether the message came from the customer (that is, authentication) and to determine whether the message has not been modified (that is, integrity), the merchant validates the digital signature. To do so, the merchant must obtain the customer's public key certificate. If the customer did not send his or her public key certificate as part of the message, the merchant would typically obtain the customer's public key certificate from an online repository (maintained by the CA, another party acting as the agent of the CA, or any other source even if unrelated to the CA). The merchant then validates that the customer's digital certificate (containing the customer's public key) was signed by a recognized CA to ensure that the binding between the public key and the customer represented in the certificate has not been altered. Next, the merchant extracts the public key from the certificate and uses that public key to transform the digital signature to reveal the original hash. The merchant then runs the message as received through the same hash function to create a hash of the received message. To verify the digital signature, the merchant compares these two hashes. If they match, the digital signature validates and the merchant knows that the message came from the customer and it was not modified from the time the signature was made. If the hashes do not match, the merchant knows that the message was either modified in transit or the message was not signed with the customer's private key. As a result, the merchant cannot rely on the digital signature.

**.17** Digital signatures can also be used to provide a basis for nonrepudiation (that is, that the signer cannot readily deny having signed the message). For example, an online brokerage customer who purchases 1,000 shares of stock using a digitally signed order via the Internet should have a difficult task if he or she later tries to deny (that is, repudiate) having authorized the purchase.

## Differences Between Encryption Key Pairs and Signing Key Pairs

**.18** As stated earlier, establishing a reasonable basis for nonrepudiation requires that the private key used to create a digital signature (that is, the

signing private key) be generated and stored securely under the sole control of the user. In the event a user forgets his or her password or loses, breaks, or destroys his or her signing private key, it is acceptable to generate a new signing key pair for use from that point forward with minimal impact on the subscriber. Previously signed documents can still be verified with the user's old signature verification public key. Documents subsequently signed with the user's new signing private key must be verified with the user's new signature verification public key.

**.19** Extra care is required to secure the CA's signing private key, which is used for signing user certificates. The trustworthiness of all certificates issued by a CA depends upon the CA protecting its private signing key. CAs often back up their private signing key(s) securely for business continuity purposes. This allows the CA to continue to operate in the event that the CA's private signing key is accidentally destroyed (but not compromised)—as a result of hardware failure, for example. Except for CA business continuity purposes, there are generally no technical or business reasons to back up a signing private key.

**.20** On the other hand, and as cited earlier, it is often desirable that a key pair used for encryption and decryption be securely backed up to ensure that encrypted data can be recovered when a user forgets his or her password or otherwise loses access to his or her decryption key. This is analogous to requiring that the combination to a safe be backed up in case the user forgets it or becomes incapacitated. As a result, a PKI typically requires two key pairs for each user: one key pair for encryption and decryption and a second key pair for signing and signature verification.

## Certification Authority

**.21** For these technologies to enable parties to securely conduct e-commerce, one important question must be answered: How can a user in the digital world know that an individual's public key actually belongs to that individual? A digital certificate, which is an electronic document containing information about an individual and his or her public key, is the answer. This document is digitally signed by a trusted organization, the CA. The basic premise is that the CA is vouching for the link between an individual's identity and his or her public key. The CA provides a level of assurance that the public key contained in the certificate does indeed belong to the entity named in the certificate. The digital signature placed on the public key certificate by the CA provides the cryptographic binding between the entity's public key, the entity's name, and other information in the certificate, such as a validity period. For a relying party to determine whether the certificate was issued by a legitimate CA, the relying party must verify the issuing CA's signature on the certificate by using the CA's public key. The public keys of many common root CAs (defined in paragraph .29) are preloaded into standard Web browser software (for example, Netscape Navigator and Microsoft Internet Explorer).

**.22** The purpose of a CA is to manage the certificate life cycle, which includes generation and issuance, distribution, renewal and rekey, revocation, and suspension of certificates. The CA frequently delegates the initial registration of subscribers to RAs, which act as agents for the CA. In some cases, the CA may perform registration functions directly. The CA is also responsible for providing certificate status information through the issuance of certificate revocation lists (CRLs), the maintenance of an online status-checking mechanism, or both. Typically, the CA posts the certificates and CRLs that it has issued to a repository (such as an online directory) that is accessible to relying parties.

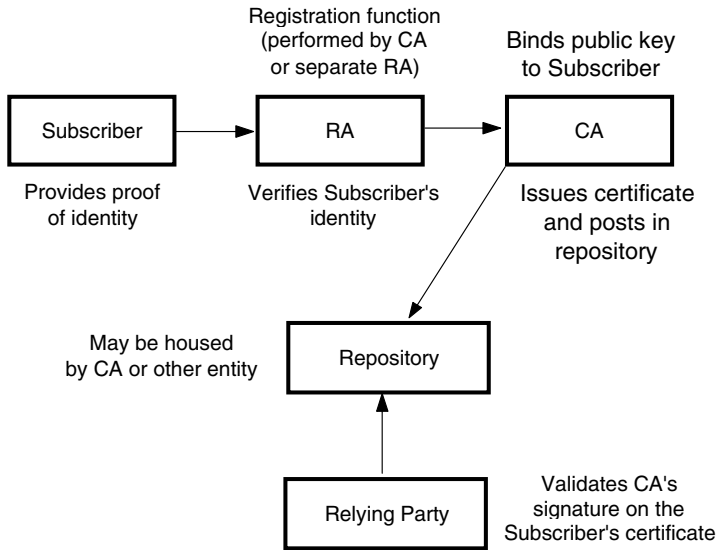
## Registration Authority

**.23** An RA is an entity that is responsible for the identification and authentication of subscribers, but does not sign or issue certificates. In some cases, the CA performs the subscriber registration function internally. In other cases, the CA delegates the RA function to external registration authorities (sometimes referred to as local registration authorities, or LRAs) that may or may not be part of the same legal entity as the CA. In still other cases, a customer of a CA (for example, a company) arranges with that CA to perform the RA function itself or using its agent. These external RAs are required to comply with the relevant provisions of the CA's business practices disclosures, often documented in a certification practice statement (CPS) and applicable certificate policy(s) (CPs). In performing a WebTrust for certification authorities engagement, the practitioner must consider how the CA handles the RA function and whether the RA function is within the scope of the examination. For example, a CA that provides CA services to several banks might delegate the subscriber registration function to RAs that are specifically designated functional groups within each bank. The functions performed by these specific groups would typically be outside the scope of the WebTrust for Certification Authorities examination performed for the CA. In this case management's assertion should specify those aspects of the registration process that are not handled by the CA.

**.24** The initial registration process for a subscriber is as follows, although the steps may vary from CA to CA and also depend upon the certificate policy under which the certificate is to be issued. The subscriber first generates his or her own public/private key pair. (In some implementations, a CA may generate the subscriber's key pair and deliver it to the subscriber securely, but this is normally done only for encryption key pairs, not signature key pairs.) Then, the subscriber produces proof of identity in accordance with the applicable certificate policy requirements and demonstrates that he or she holds the private key corresponding to the public key without disclosing the private key (typically by digitally signing a piece of data with the private key, with the subscriber's digital signature then verified by the CA). Once the association between a person and a public key is verified, the CA issues a certificate. The CA digitally signs each certificate that it issues with its private key to provide the means for establishing authenticity and integrity of the certificate.

**.25** The CA then notifies the subscriber of certificate issuance and gives the subscriber an opportunity to review the contents of the certificate before it is made public. Assuming the subscriber approves the accuracy of the certificate, the subscriber will publish the certificate, have the CA publish it and make it available to other users, or both. A repository is an electronic certificate database that is available online. The repository may be maintained by the CA or a third party contracted for that purpose by the subscriber or by any other party. Subscribers may obtain certificates of other subscribers and certificate status information from the repository. For example, if a subscriber's certificate was revoked, the repository would indicate that the subscriber's certificate has been revoked and should not be relied upon. The ability to update the repository is typically retained by the CA. Subscribers and other relying parties have read-only access to the repository. Because the certificates stored in the repository are digitally signed by the CA, they cannot be maliciously changed without detection, even if someone were to hack into the repository.

**.26** The following diagram illustrates the relationship between the subscriber and the RA and CA functions.



## Certification Practice Statements and Certificate Policies

**.27** A CPS is a statement of the practices that a CA employs in issuing and managing certificates. A CP is a named set of rules that indicates the applicability of a certificate to a particular community and/or class of application with common security requirements. For example, a particular CP might indicate the applicability of a type of certificate to the authentication of EDI transactions for the trading of goods within a given price range.

## The Difference Between Licensed and Nonlicensed CAs

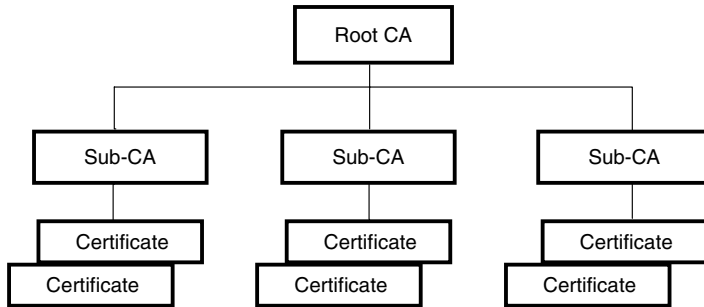
**.28** Many countries, states, and other governmental jurisdictions have enacted or are developing digital signature laws. In those jurisdictions that have digital signature laws and provide for certification authority licensing, certificates issued by licensed CAs typically have a higher level of legal recognition than those issued by nonlicensed CAs. For a number of jurisdictions, the use of certificates issued by licensed CAs is provided specific recognition in those jurisdictions' digital signature laws. In the United States, for example, several state digital signature laws require that audits of CAs be performed as a requirement for licensing. One of the purposes of this document is to provide suitable criteria that would meet the requirements of various governmental jurisdictions and the marketplace.

## The Hierarchical and Cross-Certified CA Models

**.29** CAs may be linked using two basic architectures, hierarchical and cross-certified (shared trust), or a hybrid of the two. In a hierarchical model, a highest level (or "root") CA is deployed and subordinate CAs may be set up for various business units, domains, or communities of interest. The root CA validates the subordinate CAs, which in turn issue certificates to lower-tier CAs or directly to subscribers. Such a root CA typically has more stringent security requirements than a subordinate CA. Although it is difficult for an attacker to access the root CA (which in some implementations is online only in the rare event that it must issue, renew, or revoke subordinate CA certificates), one drawback to this model is that the root CA represents a single point

of failure. In the hierarchical model, the root CA maintains the established “community of trust” by ensuring that each entity in the hierarchy conforms to a minimum set of practices. Adherence to the established policies may be tested through audits of the subordinate CAs and, in a number of cases, the RAs.

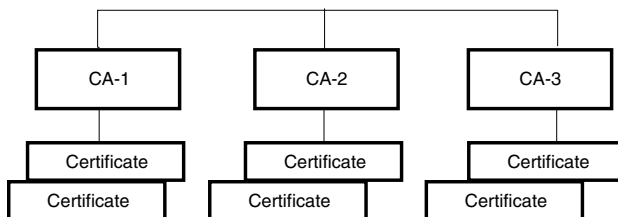
**.30** The following diagram illustrates the structure and relationships between CAs and subscribers operating in a hierarchical model.



**.31** In an alternative model, cross-certified CAs are built on a peer-to-peer model. Rather than deploying a common root CA, the cross-certification model shares trust among CAs known to one another. Cross-certification is a process in which two CAs certify the trustworthiness of the other’s certificates. If two CAs, CA1 and CA2, cross-certify, CA1 creates and digitally signs a certificate containing the public key of CA2 (and vice versa). Consequently, users in either CA domain are assured that each CA trusts the other and therefore subscribers in each domain can trust each other. Cross-certified CAs are not subject to the single point of failure in the hierarchical model. However, the network is only as strong as the weakest CA, and requires continual policing. In the cross-certified model, to establish and maintain a community of trust, audits may be performed to ensure that each cross-certified CA conforms to a minimum set of practices as agreed upon by the members of the community of trust.

**.32** The following diagram illustrates the structure and relationships between CAs and subscribers operating in a cross-certified (shared trust) model.

CA-1, CA-2, CA-3 Cross certify each other



**.33** In a hybrid model, both a hierarchical structure and cross-certification are employed. For example, two existing hierarchical communities of trust may want to cross-certify each other, so that members of each community can rely upon the certificates issued by the other to conduct e-commerce.

## Business Issues Associated With CAs

**.34** Unless they are subject to governmental licensing and regulation, CAs may use different standards or procedures to verify the identity of persons to whom they issue certificates. Thus, a digital signature is only as reliable as

the CA is trustworthy in performing its functions. Consequently, a relying party needs some way to gauge how much reliance it should place on a digital signature supported by a certificate issued by a particular CA.

**.35** CA topology (for example, use of a hierarchical, a cross-certified, or a hybrid model) is a developing issue. Which model is most appropriate depends on business circumstances. Although it is important that public keys be certified, the issuance of nonstandard certificates can be a concern. For example, if the broadly recognized International Telecommunications Union-Telecommunication Standardization Sector's (ITU-T) X.509 data format standard<sup>3</sup> is not used, subscribers and relying parties may be unable to process such certificates. Implementing the cross-certified CA model (discussed previously) would also be very difficult. For these reasons, major entities such as the U.S. and Canadian governments are using or plan to use X.509 certificates for their internal and external activities.

## The WebTrust Seal of Assurance for Certification Authorities

**.36** The Web has captured the attention of businesses and consumers, causing the number and kinds of electronic transactions to grow rapidly. Nevertheless, many believe that e-commerce will not reach its full potential until customers perceive that the risks of doing business electronically have been reduced to an acceptable level. Customers may have legitimate concerns about confidentiality, authentication, integrity, and nonrepudiation. In e-commerce, participants need the assurance of an objective third party. This assurance can be provided by an independent and objective practitioner and demonstrated through the display of a WebTrust seal for CAs on the CA's Web site.

**.37** The WebTrust seal of assurance for CAs symbolizes to potential relying parties that a qualified practitioner has evaluated the CA's business practices and controls to determine whether they are in conformity with the AICPA/CICA WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities, and has issued a report with an unqualified opinion indicating that such principles are being followed in conformity with the WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria. See Appendix A [paragraph .67], "Illustrative Examples of Practitioner Reports." These principles and criteria reflect fundamental rules for the operation of a CA organization or function.

## Practitioners as Assurance Professionals

**.38** Practitioners are in the business of providing assurance services, the most publicly recognized of which is the audit of financial statements. An audit opinion signed by a qualified practitioner is valued because these professionals are experienced in assurance matters and financial accounting subject matter and are recognized for their independence, integrity, discretion, and objectivity. Practitioners also follow comprehensive ethics rules and professional standards in providing their services. However, financial statement assurance is only one of the many kinds of assurance services that can be provided by a practitioner. Practitioners also provide assurance about controls and compliance with specified criteria.

---

<sup>3</sup> International Telecommunications Union-Telecommunication Standardization Sector's (ITU-T) Recommendation X.509 (1997) was also standardized by International Organization for Standardization (ISO) as ISO/IEC 9594-8.

.39 In general, the business and professional experience, subject matter expertise (e-commerce information systems security, privacy, auditability, and control), and professional characteristics (independence, integrity, discretion, and objectivity) needed for such projects are the same key elements that enable a practitioner to comprehensively and objectively assess the risks, controls, and business disclosures associated with e-commerce.

## Obtaining and Keeping the WebTrust Seal of Assurance for Certification Authorities

### *The Assurance Process*

.40 The CA's management will make assertions along the following lines:

Management has assessed the controls over its CA operations. Based on that assessment, in ABC Certification Authority, Inc. (ABC-CA) Management's opinion, in providing its certification authority (CA) services at [location], ABC-CA, during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year]:

- Disclosed its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and provided such services in accordance with its disclosed practices
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA); and
  - The integrity of keys and certificates it managed was established and protected throughout their life cycles
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber and relying party information was restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure;
  - The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations was maintained; and
  - CA systems development, maintenance, and operations were properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria.

.41 For an initial representation, the historical period covered should be at least two months or more as determined by the practitioner. For established CAs and CA functions, two months may be quite sufficient, while for new CAs and CA functions, the practitioner may believe that a longer initial period would be more appropriate. For subsequent representations, the period covered should begin with the end of the prior period, to provide continuous representation. Reports should be issued at least every 12 months. In some situations, given the business needs or expectations of relying parties, the practitioner may believe a shorter subsequent period would be more appropriate.

.42 To have a basis for such assertions, the CA's management should have made a risk assessment and implemented appropriate controls for its CA operations. The WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria and illustrative controls provide a basis for a risk assessment and a minimum set of CA controls.

.43 An independent, objective, and knowledgeable practitioner will perform tests of these representations under AICPA professional standards<sup>4</sup> and provide a professional opinion, which adds to the credibility of management's representations.

### ***Comparison of a WebTrust for Certification Authorities Examination With Service Auditor Reports***

.44 Professional standards currently exist for auditors to report on controls of third-party service providers (a service auditor's engagement). Guidance for these engagements is set out in the AICPA's Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 70, *Service Organizations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AU sec. 324), as amended. A WebTrust for Certification Authorities engagement differs from a service auditor's engagement in a number of ways, including the following:

- *Purpose.* WebTrust for Certification Authorities provides a new framework for reporting activities of CAs through auditor communication to interested parties, including business partners and existing or potential customers. SAS No. 70 (service auditor reports) was designed for auditor-to-auditor communication to assist the user auditor in reporting on the financial statements of a customer of the service organization.
- *Target of evaluation.* WebTrust for Certification Authorities was designed specifically for the examinations of CA business activities. Service auditor reports were designed for service organizations in general.
- *Type of engagement.* WebTrust for Certification Authorities requires reporting on compliance with the AICPA/CICA WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities. Service auditor reports were designed for reporting on the design and existence of controls and the effective operation of those controls when the report covers a period of time.
- *Examination standards.* WebTrust for Certification Authorities follows the AICPA Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs). Service auditor reports follow generally accepted auditing standards.
- *Coverage of activities.* WebTrust for Certification Authorities requires coverage of specific areas as defined herein, including CA business practices disclosure, service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management activities), and CA environmental controls. Service auditor reports were designed for reporting upon controls related to financial information.
- *Linkage to authoritative standards.* WebTrust for Certification Authorities provides uniform rules derived from the draft ANSI X9.79 standard (which is intended to be submitted to the International Organ-

---

<sup>4</sup> These services are performed in the United States under Chapter 1, "Attest Engagements," of Statement on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAE) No. 10, *Attestation Standards: Revision and Recodification* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AT sec. 101). Practitioners will need the appropriate skills and experience, training in the WebTrust for Certification Authorities service offering, and a WebTrust business license from the AICPA, CICA, or other authorized national accounting institute to provide the WebTrust for Certification Authorities services to their clients. The practitioner needs to perform an "examination" (audit) level engagement in order to award the WebTrust seal for certification authorities. A review level engagement is not sufficient.

ization for Standardization [ISO] for international standardization). Standards underlying service auditor reports do not specify the control objectives that must be covered by the report.

- *Period of coverage of review.* WebTrust for Certification Authorities encourages continuous coverage from the point of initial qualification and requires continuous coverage to retain the seal. Qualification after compliance can be tested over a minimum two-month period, with updates over a specified period (currently one-year maximum). Service auditor reports cover a period of time specified by the service organization, but do not require continuous coverage.

**.45** In addition, this approach maintains consistency in the professional standards used for the Suitable Trust Services Criteria and Illustrations. Both WebTrust and SysTrust use Chapter 1, “Attest Engagements,” of SSAE No. 10, *Attestation Standards: Revision and Recodification* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AT sec. 101), as amended, as the reporting standards.

**.46** A table highlighting the differences between a WebTrust for Certification Authorities engagement and SAS No. 70 and Section 5900 engagements is provided in Appendix E [paragraph .71].

### ***Obtaining the WebTrust Seal***

**.47** To obtain the WebTrust seal of assurance, the CA must meet all the WebTrust for Certification Authorities principles as measured by the WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria associated with each of these principles. In addition, the entity must (a) engage a practitioner who has a WebTrust business license from the AICPA, CICA, or other authorized national accounting institute to provide the WebTrust service, and (b) obtain an unqualified report from such practitioner.

### ***Keeping the WebTrust Seal***

**.48** Once the seal is obtained, the CA will be able to continue displaying it on its Web site provided the following are performed.

- a. The CA’s WebTrust practitioner updates his or her assurance examination of the assertion on a regular basis. The CA must continue to obtain an unqualified report from such practitioner. The interval between such updates will depend on matters such as the following:
  - (1) The nature and complexity of the CA’s operations
  - (2) The frequency of significant changes to the CA’s operations
  - (3) The relative effectiveness of the entity’s monitoring and change-management controls for ensuring continued conformity with the applicable WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria as such changes are made
  - (4) The practitioner’s professional judgment

For example, an update may be required more frequently for a CA that is expanding operations, changing extensively and rapidly, or issuing high-assurance certificates that are used for very sensitive transmissions or high-value transactions, as compared to a CA that issues few certificates and has a relatively stable operation. In no event should the interval between updates exceed 12 months; this interval often may be shorter. For example, in the situation of a start-up CA or CA function, it may be more appropriate that the initial examination period be established at 3 months, with the next review being performed 6 months after the WebTrust seal for CAs is

awarded, thereafter moving to a 12-month review cycle. To provide continuous coverage and retain the seal, the period covered for update reports should begin with either the end of the prior period or the start of the period in the initial report.

- b. During the period between updates, the CA undertakes to inform the practitioner of any significant changes in its business policies, practices, processes, and controls, particularly if such changes might affect the CA's ability to continue meeting the WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities, or the manner in which they are met. Such changes may trigger the need for an assurance update or, in some cases, removal of the seal until an update examination by the practitioner can be made. If the practitioner becomes aware of such a change in circumstances, he or she determines whether the seal needs to be removed until an update examination is completed and the updated auditor's report is issued.

### ***The Seal Management Process***

**.49** The WebTrust seal of assurance for the CA will be managed by a seal manager along the following lines.

- Upon becoming a WebTrust licensee, the WebTrust practitioner obtains a registration number (ID and password) from the WebTrust licensing authority. With this the practitioner can issue a WebTrust seal to the CA.
- When the practitioner is prepared to issue a WebTrust seal, he or she accesses the WebTrust secure server system. Upon payment of the registration fee, the practitioner receives passwords and IDs unique to the engagement. The seal manager issues these to the practitioner in pairs. One set allows the practitioner to read and write to the secure server (see below) and the other permits the CA to preview the presentation.
- The practitioner prepares a draft of the practitioner's report and provides it along with management's assertions for posting to the preview site.
- The seal manager then delivers the seal to the CA with the appropriate links to the preview site. Notification of delivery is provided to the practitioner.
- When the practitioner and CA have agreed that the seal should become active, the practitioner notifies the seal manager to transfer the information from the preview site to the active WebTrust site and provides the appropriate expiration date.
- The seal remains valid for the period provided by the practitioner plus a one-month grace period, unless removed for cause. The one-month period is to allow sufficient time to complete the engagement and other open items. For example, if the seal expires on June 30, 20XX, the practitioner has 30 days to complete open items and prepare new documents for posting with the seal manager. The subsequent examination period begins July 1, 20XX.
- If the practitioner determines that the seal should be removed from the CA's Web site, the practitioner will immediately notify the CA and request that the seal be removed from the CA's site. The practitioner will then notify the seal manager to remove all the relevant information and to replace it with a statement that the WebTrust seal for this site is no longer valid.

- The seal manager will notify the practitioner 30 days prior to expiration that the seal needs to be renewed. The seal manager may revoke seals if the registration fee for the seal is unpaid or for other sufficient cause.

### **WebTrust Seal Authentication**

**.50** To verify whether the seal displayed on a CA's Web site is authentic, the customer can:

- Click on the seal, which links the customer through a secure connection to a WebTrust seal verification page hosted by the seal manager. It identifies the CA and confirms that the CA is entitled to display the WebTrust seal. It also provides links to the appropriate principle(s) (that is, the WebTrust for Certification Authorities principles) and other relevant information.
- Access the list of entities that have received a WebTrust seal; the list is maintained by the seal manager at [www.webtrust.org/abtseals.htm](http://www.webtrust.org/abtseals.htm). A CA is registered on this list when the seal is issued.

## **WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities**

### **WebTrust for Certification Authorities Principles**

**.51** To be understandable to the ultimate users—the subscriber and relying party—the following principles have been developed with the relying party in mind, and, as a result, are intended to be practical and nontechnical in nature.

#### **Principle 1: CA Business Practices Disclosure**

**.52** The first principle is—*The certification authority discloses its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and provides its services in accordance with its disclosed practices.*

**.53** The CA must disclose its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices. Information regarding the CA's business practices should be made available to all subscribers and all potential relying parties, typically by posting on its Web site. Such disclosure may be contained in a certificate policy (CP), certification practice statement (CPS), or other informative materials that are available to users (subscribers and relying parties).

#### **Principle 2: Service Integrity**

**.54** The second principle is—*The certification authority maintains effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:*

- *Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA).*
- *The integrity of keys and certificates it manages is established and protected throughout their life cycles.*

**.55** Effective key management controls and practices are essential to the trustworthiness of the public key infrastructure. Cryptographic key management controls and practices cover CA key generation; CA key storage, backup, and recovery; CA public key distribution (especially when done in the form of self-signed "root" certificates); CA key escrow (optional); CA key usage; CA key destruction; CA key archival; the management of CA cryptographic hardware through its life cycle; and CA-provided subscriber key management services

(optional). Strong key life cycle management controls are vital to guard against key compromise that can damage the integrity of the public key infrastructure.

**.56** The user certificate life cycle is at the core of the services provided by the CA. The CA establishes its standards and practices by which it will deliver services in its published CPS and CPs. The user certificate life cycle includes the following:

- Registration (that is, the identification and authentication process related to binding the individual subscriber to the certificate)
- The renewal of certificates (optional)
- The rekey of certificates
- The revocation of certificates
- The suspension of certificates (optional)
- The timely publication of certificate status information (through certificate revocation lists or some form of online certificate status protocol)
- The management of integrated circuit cards (ICCs) holding private keys through their life cycle (optional)

**.57** Effective controls over the registration process are essential, as poor identification and authentication controls jeopardize the ability of subscribers and relying parties to rely on the certificates issued by the CA. Effective revocation procedures and timely publication of certificate status information are also essential elements, as it is critical for subscribers and relying parties to know when they are unable to rely on certificates that have been issued by the CA.

### **Principle 3: CA Environmental Controls**

**.58** The third principle is—*The certification authority maintains effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:*

- *Subscriber and relying party information is restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure;*
- *The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations is maintained; and*
- *CA systems development, maintenance, and operation are properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity.*

**.59** The establishment and maintenance of a trustworthy CA environment is essential to the reliability of the CA's business processes. Without strong CA environmental controls, strong key and certificate life cycle management controls are severely diminished in value. CA environmental controls include CPS and CP management, security management, asset classification and management, personnel security, physical and environmental security of the CA facility, operations management, system access management, systems development and maintenance, business continuity management, monitoring and compliance, and event journaling.

### **WebTrust for Certification Authorities Criteria**

**.60** To provide more specific guidance on meeting the WebTrust for Certification Authorities principles, the WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria have been developed. These provide a basis against which a CA can make

a self-assessment of its conformity with the criteria, and a consistent set of measurement criteria for practitioners to use in testing and evaluating CA practices.

**.61** The WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria are presented under the three principles listed above (Principle 1, CA Business Practices Disclosure; Principle 2, Service Integrity, including key and certificate life cycle management controls; and Principle 3, CA Environmental Controls. Each principle contains a series of criteria that the CA's management asserts it has achieved. Depending on the scope of services provided by the CA, a number of the criteria may not be applicable. Criteria considered optional, depending on whether the CA provides the related services, are key escrow, certificate renewal, certificate suspension, the use of integrated circuit cards (ICCs), and the provision of subscriber key management services. If any of these services are provided by the CA, the criteria are applicable and must be tested by the practitioner. If any of these services are not provided by the CA, the criteria are not applicable and no modification of the standard report is necessary. In some situations, some RA services may be performed by another party that is not controlled by the CA, and therefore those activities are not included in the examination of the CA. In these circumstances the standard report should be modified to specify the exclusion of the specific RA activities from the scope of the examination, as shown in Appendix A [paragraph .67], Example 2. This may be accomplished by reference to the CA's business practice disclosures in which the CA specifies which RA activities it does not control. In all instances some RA activities will be performed by the CA and should be tested by the practitioner for compliance with the controls disclosed under Principle 1 and the criteria specified in Principle 2.<sup>5</sup>

**.62** In performing a WebTrust for Certification Authorities engagement, the practitioner must gain an understanding of the CA's business model and services provided to determine which control criteria may not be applicable. For each of the disclosure and control criteria, there is a detailed list of illustrative disclosures and control procedures that might be followed by the CA to meet the related criteria. The illustrative disclosures and controls do not necessarily need to be in place for a criterion to be met in a given business circumstance and alternatives may be sufficient.

**.63** The CA Business Practices Disclosure criteria were derived primarily from the Internet Engineering Task Force's (IETF) Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Certificate Policy and Certification Practices Framework-Request For Comments Draft (RFC 2527), which has been incorporated into Annex A of the draft ANSI X9.79 standard. For specific key and certificate life cycle management (Principle 2) and CA environmental illustrative controls (Principle 3), in which the CA's implemented controls may vary depending on the CA's business practices, such illustrative controls refer to specifically required CA business practices disclosures included in Principle 1.

---

<sup>5</sup> As indicated herein, during development of this document, the AICPA/CICA Electronic Commerce Assurance Task Force considered the situations in which subscriber registration is performed by the certification authority (CA) itself or by external registration authorities (RAs). This document has been written such that the RA function may be "carved out" or considered outside the scope of the WebTrust for certification authorities examination when registration activities are performed by parties external to the CA. For the purpose of some end users, this approach may not address all requirements for the independent verification of such end users. The Task Force was aware of this situation and concluded that the issuance and use of this document was desirable and that the impact of a third-party registration function was beyond the scope of this document.

WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities

Principle 1: CA Business Practices Disclosure

.64 The certification authority discloses its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and provides its services in accordance with its disclosed practices.

Criteria	Illustrative Disclosures
<p><b>1.1 CA Business Practices Disclosure</b></p> <p>The certification authority (CA) discloses its business practices, including but not limited to the following:</p> <p><b>General</b></p> <p>Identification of each certificate policy (CP) and certification policy statement (CPS) for which the CA issues certificates</p> <p>Community and applicability, including a description of the types of entities within the public key infrastructure (PKI) and the applicability of certificates issued by the CA</p> <p>Contact details and administrative provisions, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Contact person</li><li>• Identification of policy authority</li></ul>	<p>1 The CA issues certificates in accordance with the CA's certification policy statement (CPS) dated [date]. The CA issues certificates that support the following certificate policies: CA's Class 1 Certificate Policy, CA's Class 2 Certificate Policy, CA's Class 3 Certificate Policy, and the Bank Consortium's Certificate Policy.</p> <p>2 The CA is established to provide certificate services for a variety of external customers. The organization operates a single CA, which issues user certificates to all CA customers. The CA makes use of customer designated personnel to act as agents to verify the identity of subscribers, in accordance with the indicated certificate policy. Subscribers include all parties who contract with the CA for digital certificate services. All parties who may rely upon the certificates issued by the CA are considered relying parties.</p> <p>This certification policy statement (CPS) (or other CA business practices disclosure) is applicable to all certificates issued by the CA. The practices described in the CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure) apply to the issuance and use of certificates and certificate revocation lists (CRLs) for users within the CA domain.</p> <p>3 This CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure) is administered by the CA operations manager. The CA's certificate policies are administered by the CA's policy authority. Contact information is listed below.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Street address</li> <li>• Version and effective date(s) of each CP and CPS</li> </ul>	<p>The contact details for this CPS are: CA Operations Manager [Address] [Telephone] [Fax] [E-mail]</p> <p>The contact details for the CA's certificate policy are: Policy Authority [Address] [Telephone] [Fax] [E-mail]</p>
Any applicable provisions regarding apportionment of liability	<p>4 Except as expressly provided otherwise in this CPS, applicable CP, or by statute or regulation, the CA's total liability per breach of any express warranties made under this CPS and/or applicable CP is limited to direct damages having a maximum dollar amount (that is, a liability cap) of \$10,000. The liability cap set forth in this CPS or applicable CP shall be the same regardless of the number of digital signatures, transactions, or claims related to such certificate. Additionally, in the event the liability cap is exceeded, the available liability cap shall be apportioned first to the earliest claims to achieve final dispute resolution, unless otherwise ordered by a court of competent jurisdiction. In no event shall the CA be obligated to pay more than the aggregate liability cap for each certificate, regardless of the method of apportionment among claimants to the amount of the liability cap.</p>
<p>Financial responsibility, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indemnification by relying parties</li> <li>• Fiduciary relationships</li> </ul>	<p>5 By their applying for and being issued certificates, or otherwise relying upon such certificates, subscribers and relying parties agree to indemnify, defend, and hold harmless the CA, and its personnel, organizations, entities, subcontractors, suppliers, vendors, representatives, and agents from any errors, omissions, acts, failures to act, or negligence resulting in liability, losses, damages, suits, or expenses of any kind, due to or otherwise proximately caused by the use or publication of a certificate that arises from the subscriber's failure to provide the CA with current, accurate, and complete information at the time of certificate application or the subscriber's errors, omissions, acts, failures to act, and negligence.</p> <p>The CA and its registration authorities (RAs) are not the agents, fiduciaries, trustees, or other representatives of subscribers or relying parties.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<p>Interpretation and enforcement, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Governing law</li> <li>• Severability, survival, merger, and notice</li> <li>• Dispute resolution procedures</li> </ul>	<p>6 Governing Law:</p> <p>The laws of [<i>jurisdiction</i>] shall govern the enforceability and construction of this CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure) to ensure uniform procedures and interpretation for all users.</p> <p>Severability, Survival, Merger, Notice:</p> <p>Severance or merger may result in changes to the scope, management, and/or operations of this CA. In such an event, this CPS may require modification as well. Changes to the operations will occur consistently with the CA's disclosed CPS management processes.</p> <p>Dispute Resolution Procedures:</p> <p>In the event of any dispute involving the services or provisions covered by this CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure), the aggrieved party shall first notify the CA and all other relevant parties regarding the dispute. The CA will involve the appropriate personnel to resolve the dispute.</p>
<p>Fees, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Certificate issuance or renewal fees</li> <li>• Certificate access fees</li> <li>• Revocation or status information access fees</li> <li>• Fees for other services, such as policy information</li> <li>• Refund policy</li> </ul>	<p>7 The CA may charge subscribers fees for their use of the CA's services. A current schedule of such fees is available from the CA's repository at [<i>URL</i>]. Such fees are subject to change seven (7) days following their posting in the CA's repository.</p>
<p>Publication and repository requirements, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Publication of CA information</li> <li>• Frequency of publication</li> <li>• Access controls</li> </ul>	<p>8 The CA's CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure) is available at [<i>URL</i>]. The CA's certificate policies can be found at [<i>URL</i>].</p> <p>Upon issuance, all public key certificates and CRLs issued by the CA are published in the CA's directory.</p> <p>All subscribers and relying parties have access to the CA's repository.</p>
<p>Compliance audit requirements, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Frequency of entity compliance audit</li> <li>• Auditor's relationship to audited party</li> <li>• Topics covered by audit</li> <li>• Actions taken as a result of deficiency</li> <li>• Communication of results</li> </ul>	<p>9 An annual audit is performed by an independent external auditor to assess the adequacy of the CA's business practices disclosure and the effectiveness of the CA's controls over its CA operations.</p> <p>Topics covered by the annual audit include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CA business practices disclosure</li> <li>• Service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management controls)</li> <li>• CA environmental controls</li> </ul>

Criteria	Illustrative Disclosures
<p>Description of the conditions for applicability of certificates issued by the CA that reference a specific CP, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Specific permitted uses for the certificates if such use is limited to specific applications</li> <li>• Limitations on the use of certificates if there are specified prohibited uses for such certificates</li> </ul> <p>CA and/or registration authority (RA) obligations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notification of issuance of a certificate to the subscriber who is the subject of the certificate being issued</li> <li>• Notification of issuance of a certificate to others than the subject of the certificate</li> <li>• Notification of revocation or suspension of a certificate to the subscriber whose certificate is being revoked or suspended</li> <li>• Notification of revocation or suspension of a certificate to others than the subject whose certificate is being revoked or suspended</li> </ul>	<p>Significant deficiencies identified during the compliance audit will result in a determination of actions to be taken. This determination is made by the auditor with input from CA management. The CA is responsible for seeing that corrective action is taken within 60 days. Should a severe deficiency be identified that might compromise the integrity of the CA, CA management considers, with input from the auditor, whether suspension of the CA's operation is warranted.</p> <p>Compliance audit results are communicated to the board of directors of the CA, CA management, and the CA's policy authority, as well as others deemed appropriate by CA management.</p> <p>10 Certificates issued under the CA's certificate policy are limited to use in connection with [bank's] Consumer Internet Banking application. Certificates issued by the CA may not be used for any other purpose.</p> <p>11 The CA is obligated to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conform its operations to the CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure), as the same may from time to time be modified by amendments published in the CA repository</li> <li>• Issue and publish certificates in a timely manner in accordance with the relevant certificate policy</li> <li>• Revoke certificates issued by the CA, upon receipt of a valid request to revoke the certificate from a person authorized to request revocation</li> <li>• Publish CRLs on a regular basis, in accordance with the applicable certificate policy and with provisions described in the CA's disclosed business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64])</li> <li>• Notify subscribers via e-mail (1) that certificates have been generated for them and (2) how the subscribers may retrieve the certificates</li> <li>• In the event the CA is not successful in validating the subscriber's application in accordance with the requirements for that class of certificate the CA shall notify the subscriber that the application has been rejected</li> </ul>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<p>RA obligations, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identification and authentication of subscribers</li> <li>• Validation of revocation and suspension requests</li> <li>• Verification of subscriber renewal or rekey requests</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notify subscribers via e-mail that the subscriber's certificate has been revoked</li> <li>• Notify other participants in the PKI of certificate issuance revocation through access to certificates and CRLs in the CA repository</li> </ul>
<p>Repository obligations, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Timely publication of certificates and certificate revocation lists (CRLs)</li> </ul>	<p>12 The RAs (or the CA's RA function) are obligated to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Verify the accuracy and authenticity of the information provided by the subscriber at the time of application, in accordance with the relevant certificate policy.</li> <li>• Validate and securely send a revocation request to the CA upon receipt of a request to revoke a certificate, in accordance with the relevant certificate policy.</li> <li>• Verify the accuracy and authenticity of the information provided by the subscriber at the time of renewal or rekey, in accordance with the relevant certificate policy.</li> </ul>
<p>Subscriber obligations, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accuracy of representations in certificate application</li> <li>• Protection of the subscriber's private key</li> <li>• Restrictions on private key and certificate use</li> <li>• Notification upon private key compromise</li> </ul>	<p>13 The CA's repository function is obligated to publish certificates and certificate revocation lists in a timely manner.</p> <p>14 Subscribers are obligated to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide information to the CA that is accurate and complete to the best of the subscribers' knowledge and belief regarding information in their certificates and identification and authentication information and promptly notify the CA of any changes to this information.</li> <li>• Safeguard their private key from compromise.</li> <li>• Use certificates exclusively for legal purposes and in accordance with the relevant certificate policy and this CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure).</li> <li>• Promptly request that the CA revoke a certificate if the subscriber has reason to believe there has been a compromise of their private key corresponding to the public key listed in the certificate.</li> </ul>
<p>Relying party obligations, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Purposes for which certificate is used</li> <li>• Digital signature verification responsibilities</li> </ul>	<p>15 Relying parties are obligated to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restrict reliance on certificates issued by the CA to the purposes for those certificates, in accordance with the relevant certificate policy and with this CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure).</li> </ul>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Revocation and suspension checking responsibilities</li> <li>• Acknowledgment of applicable liability caps and warranties</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Verify the status of certificates at the time of reliance.</li> <li>• Agree to be bound by the provisions of limitations of liability as described in the CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure) upon reliance on a certificate issued by the CA.</li> </ul>
<b>Key Life Cycle Management</b>	
Any applicable reliance or financial limits for certificate usage	16 Certificates issued under the CA's certificate policy may only be used in connection with transactions having a dollar value of no more than \$100,000.
CA key pair generation, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What key sizes are required</li> <li>• What key generation algorithm is required</li> <li>• Whether key generation is performed in hardware or software</li> <li>• What standards are required for the module used to generate the keys (for example, the required ISO 15782-1/FIPS 140-1/ANSI X9.66 level of the module)</li> <li>• For what purposes the key may be used</li> <li>• For what purposes usage of the key should be restricted</li> <li>• The usage periods or active lifetimes for the CA public and the private key, respectively</li> </ul>	17 The CA's signing key pair is 1024 bit using the RSA algorithm.  Hardware key generation is used and is compliant to at least FIPS 140-1 level 3.  The CA's signing key is used to sign certificates and CRLs.  The lifetime of the CA signing key pair is five years.
CA private key protection including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What standards are required for the module used to store the CA private signature key (for example, the required ISO 15782-1/FIPS 140-1/ANSI X9.66 level of the module)</li> <li>• Whether the CA private key is maintained under <math>m</math> out of <math>n</math> multiperson control</li> <li>• Whether the CA private signature key is escrowed</li> <li>• Whether the CA private signing key is backed up</li> <li>• Whether the CA private and public signature keys are archived</li> </ul>	18 Hardware cryptographic modules for generating and storing the CA's root key are certified to FIPS 140-1 level 3.  There is a separation of physical and logical access to the CA's root private key. Two individuals provide dual control over physical access to the hardware modules; $m$ of $n$ secret shares held by other, separate custodians on removable media are required for logical activation of the private keys.  The CA's private signing key is backed up only on hardware certified to FIPS 140-1 level 3 and is stored with two-person control enforced.  Escrow of CA private keys by an external third party is not performed.  The CA's private signing key and expired (and revoked) CA public key certificates are archived.

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
Whether the CA provides subscriber key management services and a description of the services provided	19 The CA provides subscriber key management services including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Subscriber key generation</li> <li>• Subscriber key storage, backup, and recovery</li> <li>• Subscriber key archival</li> <li>• Subscriber key destruction</li> </ul>
CA public key distribution, including a description of how the CA's public key is provided securely to subscribers and relying parties	20 The CA's public key is delivered in a self-signed certificate to subscribers using an encrypted session between the CA and the subscriber's client software, with an authorization code as a shared secret. Authenticity and integrity protection is based on a MAC key derived from the authorization code.
Key changeover, including a description of the procedures used to provide a new public key to a CA's users	21 The CA root signing private key has a lifetime of two years and the corresponding public key certificate has a lifetime of four years. Upon the end of the private key's lifetime, a new CA signing key pair is generated and all subsequently issued certificates and CRLs are signed with the new private signing key. The corresponding new CA public key certificate is securely provided to subscribers and relying parties.
Subscriber key pair generation (if the CA provides subscriber key pair generation services), including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How the subscriber's private key is provided securely to the subscriber</li> <li>• What key sizes are required</li> <li>• What key generation algorithm is required</li> <li>• Whether key pair generation is performed in hardware or software</li> <li>• What standards are required for the module used to generate the keys (for example, the required ISO 15782-1/FIPS 140-1/ANSI X9.66 level of the module)</li> <li>• For what purposes the key may be used</li> <li>• For what purposes usage of the key should be restricted</li> </ul>	22 For subscribers, the CA creates an encryption key pair and the corresponding encryption public key certificate. For subscribers, the encryption key pair is provided securely to the user via an encrypted session between the CA and the subscriber's client software. Subscriber encryption key pairs are 1024 bit using the RSA algorithm. The CA's process for generating subscriber encryption key pairs uses the CA system software and is designed to comply with FIPS 140-1 level 1.
Subscriber private key protection (if the CA provides subscriber key management services), including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whether the subscriber's decryption private key is backed up</li> <li>• Whether the subscriber's decryption private key is archived</li> </ul>	23 Subscriber encryption private keys generated by the CA are backed up in the CA database. The CA database is encrypted and its integrity is protected by master keys. Subscriber signature private keys are generated by the subscriber and are not known or stored by the CA.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Under what conditions a subscriber's private key can be destroyed</li> <li>• Whether subscriber private decryption keys are escrowed by the CA</li> </ul>	<p>The encryption key pair history for all users, including a complete history of all decryption private keys, is stored encrypted in the CA database.</p> <p>Subscriber encryption private keys stored by the CA are not destroyed.</p> <p>Escrow of subscriber private keys is not performed by the CA.</p>
<p><b>Certificate Life Cycle Management</b></p> <p>Whether certificate suspension is supported</p> <p>Initial registration, including a description of the CA's requirements for the identification and authentication of subscribers and validation of certificate requests during entity registration or certificate issuance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Types of names assigned to the subject and rules for interpreting various name forms</li> <li>• Whether names have to be meaningful or not</li> <li>• Whether names have to be unique</li> <li>• How name claim disputes are resolved</li> <li>• Recognition, authentication, and role of trademarks</li> <li>• If and how the subject must prove possession of the companion private key for the public key being provided for a certificate</li> <li>• How the subscriber's public key is provided securely to the CA for issuance of a certificate</li> <li>• Authentication requirements for organizational identity of subject</li> <li>• Authentication of individual identity</li> <li>• Required certificate request data</li> <li>• How the CA verifies the authority of the subscriber to request a certificate</li> <li>• How the CA verifies the accuracy of the information included in the subscriber's certificate request</li> </ul>	<p>24 The CA does not support suspension of certificates.</p> <p>25 The CA has established a single naming hierarchy utilizing the X.500 Distinguished Name form.</p> <p>In all cases, names of subjects must be meaningful. Generally, the name by which a subscriber is commonly known to the CA should be used. The CA does not support the use of pseudonyms in subscriber common names.</p> <p>All subjects in the CA's PKI are unambiguously identified in the naming hierarchy.</p> <p>When there is a conflict in distinguished names, such as a second "John Doe," then a middle initial, middle name, or other modification acceptable to the subscriber may be used to make the name unique.</p> <p>The CA issues certificates within a closed PKI. Trademarks and related naming issues will generally not apply to certificates issued within this space.</p> <p>Possession of a private key is proved by a certificate applicant by providing check values as defined in the certificate policy.</p> <p>If organizational identity is considered important based upon the certificate policy, the organization identity is verified using a method approved by the certificate policy.</p> <p>The requirements for authentication of individual identity are defined by the certificate policy [<i>hot link to certificate policy</i>].</p> <p>In submitting a certificate application, at least the following information must be submitted to the CA: subscriber's public key, subscriber's distinguished name, and other information required on the CA's certificate application form.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Whether the CA checks certificate requests for errors or omissions</li> </ul>	<p>If required by the certificate policy, the CA verifies the authority of the subscriber to request a certificate by checking whether the subscriber is an employee of a particular organization or association through inquiry of the organization's HR department or the association's membership department.</p> <p>The CA verifies the accuracy of the information included in the subscriber's certificate request through validation against a third-party database.</p> <p>The CA checks certificate requests for errors or omissions.</p>
<p>Registration requirements where external RAs are used, including the CA's procedures for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Validating the identity of external RAs</li> <li>Authorizing external RAs</li> <li>Requirements for the external RA to secure that part of the certificate application, certificate renewal, and certificate rekey processes for which the RA assumes responsibility</li> <li>How the CA verifies the authenticity of certificate request submissions received from an external RA</li> </ul>	<p>26 The CA requires that external registration authorities (RAs) physically present themselves along with two forms of identification to an employee of the CA.</p> <p>The CA authorizes external RAs upon successful identification and authentication, and approval of the external RA enrollment and certificate application forms.</p> <p>External RAs are responsible for identification and authentication of subscribers and must secure their private signing keys used for signing certificate applications, securely forward certificate applications to the CA, and securely store any subscriber information collected.</p> <p>The CA verifies the authenticity of certificate request submissions received from an external RA by validating the RA's digital signature on the submission.</p>
<p>Certificate renewal, including a description of the CA's procedures for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Notifying subscribers of the need for renewal</li> <li>Identification and authentication</li> <li>Renewal request verification</li> </ul>	<p>27 The certificate renewal process is similar to an application for a new certificate. However, the subscriber needs to provide only information that has changed.</p>
<p>Routine rekey, including a description of the identification and authentication and rekey request verification procedures</p>	<p>28 Authentication of the individual's identity as defined in the CA's identification and authentication requirements for initial registration need not be repeated unless required by the applicable certificate policy. Subscribers will be limited to rekeying no more than twice before repeating the authentication process defined in identification and authentication requirements for initial registration.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
Rekey after revocation or expiration, including a description of the identification and authentication and rekey request verification procedures for rekey after the subject certificate has been revoked	29 For subscribers whose certificates have been revoked or have expired, rekey is permitted if the identification and authentication requirements for initial registration are repeated.
Certificate issuance, including a description of the requirements regarding the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Issuance of a certificate</li> <li>• Notification to the applicant of such issuance</li> <li>• Certificate format requirements</li> <li>• Validity period requirements</li> <li>• Extension field requirements (that is, what extension fields are honored, and how they are to be populated)</li> </ul>	30 Certificates are issued to the subscribers upon successful processing of the application and the acceptance of the certificates by the subscribers. Certificate format, validity period, extension field, and key usage extension field requirements are specified in accordance with the CA's disclosed certificate profile.
Certificate acceptance, including a description of the requirements regarding acceptance of an issued certificate and for consequent publication of certificates	31 Once a certificate has been generated, it is maintained in a secure remote repository until it is retrieved by the subscriber. Upon retrieval of the certificate from the secure remote repository, the certificate status is updated to reflect its status as accepted and valid.
Certificate distribution, including a description of the CA's established mechanism (for example, a repository such as a directory) for making available to relying parties the certificates and CRLs that it issues	32 A single repository is operated for all subscribers and relying parties. All certificates issued by the CA and all certificate revocation lists (CRLs) relating thereto, shall be published in the repository. The repository for this CA is provided by an X.500 directory system. The protocol used to access the directory is the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) version 2.
Certificate revocation, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Circumstances under which a certificate may or must be revoked</li> <li>• Identification and authentication procedures required for revocation requests</li> <li>• Procedures used for initiation, authorization, and verification of certificate revocation requests</li> <li>• Revocation request grace period available to the subscriber</li> </ul>	33 A certificate can be revoked for several reasons, including suspected or actual compromise of control of the private key that relates to the public key contained in the certificate, hardware or software failures that render the private key inoperable, or failure of a subscriber to meet the obligations of this certification policy statement (CPS) and the related certificate policy (CP). Other circumstances for revocation may be stipulated in the particular CP and may relate to changes in a subscriber's relationship with the CA, such as a change in customer or employee status or a change in the particular role of an employee.

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Any variations on the preceding stipulations in the event that the revocation is the result of private key compromise (as opposed to other reasons for revocation)</li> <li>Procedures to provide a means of rapid communication to facilitate the secure and authenticated revocation of (1) one or more certificates of one or more entities; (2) the set of all certificates issued by a CA based on a single public/private key pair used by a CA to generate certificates; and (3) all certificates issued by a CA, regardless of the public/private key pair used</li> <li>Procedures for notifying the subscriber upon revocation of the subscriber's certificate</li> <li>Whether the external RA is notified upon the revocation of a subscriber's certificate for which the revocation request was processed by the external RA</li> <li>How and when the subscriber's certificate status information is updated upon certificate revocation</li> </ul>	<p>Revocation may be requested by the subscriber, registration authority, or CA. Requests by RA personnel to revoke a certificate require sufficient RA system access rights. Requests by subscribers to revoke their own certificates require one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A digitally signed message from the subscriber to the RA</li> <li>Personal presentation of the subscriber to the RA with a personal photo ID card</li> <li>Presentation of the pass phrase created by the subscriber at the point of initial application</li> <li>Other means as provided in the CP</li> </ul> <p>A subscriber can request a certificate revocation online, via e-mail, or by telephone to the CA. If the request is made online and the end entity supplies the correct pass phrase, the certificate is revoked immediately. Certificate revocation requests made via e-mail or telephone are processed on a daily basis by the CA after the validity of such requests is ascertained. Validation procedures for telephone and e-mail revocation requests are defined in the CP. Validated certificate revocation requests will be processed no more than 24 hours after receipt. The CP may define a shorter time period for the processing of revocation requests.</p> <p>Revocation requests for reasons other than key compromise must be placed within a maximum of 48 hours of the event necessitating revocation. In the case of suspected or known private key compromise, revocation request should be made immediately upon identification of the event.</p> <p>The CA's certificate revocation process supports the secure and authenticated revocation of one or more certificates of one or more entities and provides a means of rapid communication of such revocation through the issuance of daily CRLs (or, if necessary, more frequent CRLs). The CA's system and processes provide the capability to revoke (1) the set of all certificates issued by the CA that have been signed with a single CA private signing key or (2) groups of certificates issued by the CA that have been signed with different CA private signing keys.</p> <p>Upon revocation of the subscriber's certificate, the subscriber is notified via e-mail.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<p>Certificate suspension, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Circumstances under which a certificate may or must be suspended</li> <li>• Identification and authentication procedures required for revocation requests</li> <li>• Procedures used for initiation, authorization, and verification of certificate suspension requests</li> <li>• How long the suspension may last</li> <li>• Circumstances under which the suspension of a certificate may or must be lifted</li> <li>• Authorization criteria to request the lifting of a certificate suspension</li> <li>• Any variations on the preceding stipulations if the suspension is the result of private key compromise (as opposed to other reasons for suspension)</li> <li>• Procedures to provide a means of rapid communication to facilitate the secure and authenticated suspension of (1) one or more certificates of one or more entities; (2) the set of all certificates issued by a CA based on a single public/private key pair used by a CA to generate certificates; and (3) all certificates issued by a CA, regardless of the public/private key pair used</li> <li>• Procedures for notifying the subscriber upon suspension of the subscriber's certificate</li> <li>• Whether the external RA is notified upon the suspension of a subscriber's certificate for which the suspension request was processed or submitted by the external RA</li> </ul>	<p>When a revocation request has been processed by an external registration authority, the external RA is also notified upon the revocation of a subscriber's certificate.</p> <p>Upon the revocation of a subscriber's certificate, the newly revoked certificate is recorded in the next CRL that is issued.</p> <p>34 The CA does not support certificate suspension.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>How and when the subscriber's certificate status information is updated upon certificate suspension and the lifting of a certificate suspension</li> </ul> <p>Provision of certificate status information, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>What mechanism is used (CRLs, online certificate status protocol [OCSP], other)</li> <li>If a CRL mechanism is used, the issuance frequency</li> <li>Requirements on relying parties to check CRLs</li> <li>Online revocation and status checking availability</li> <li>Requirements on relying parties to perform online revocation and status checks</li> <li>Other forms of revocation advertisements available</li> <li>Requirements on relying parties to check other forms of revocation advertisements</li> <li>Any variations on the above stipulations when the suspension or revocation is the result of private key compromise (as opposed to other reasons for suspension or revocation)</li> <li>The CA's requirements for archival and retention of CRLs or other certificate status information</li> <li>Whether copies of all certificates issued (including all expired, revoked, or suspended certificates) are retained and disclosure of the retention period</li> <li>If an online status mechanism is used (for example, OCSP), certificate status request content requirements</li> <li>If an online status mechanism is used (for example, OCSP), definitive response message data content requirements</li> <li>What key is used to digitally sign definitive response messages</li> </ul>	<p>35 The CA issues CRLs once a day at 11:59 PM. In addition, the CA may issue interim CRLs in the event that personnel of the CA deem it necessary (that is, in the event of a serious private key compromise) or as dictated by certificate policy (CP).</p> <p>As stated in the CP, CRL checking is required for all relying parties.</p> <p>A subscriber is notified of the revocation of his or her certificate by e-mail, postal mail, or telephone. The CP may define other forms of revocation advertisements.</p> <p>The CA archives and retains all certificates and CRLs issued by the CA for a period not less than 10 years.</p> <p>The CA also supports online certificate revocation checking using OCSP.</p> <p>The CA requires that OCSP requests contain the following data:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Protocol version</li> <li>Service request</li> <li>Target certificate identifier</li> <li>Optional extensions which may be processed by the OCSP responder.</li> </ul> <p>Definitive OCSP response messages include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Version of the response syntax</li> <li>Name of the responder</li> <li>Responses for each of the certificates in a request (including target certificate identifier, certificate status value, response validity interval, and optional extensions)</li> <li>Optional extensions</li> <li>Signature algorithm OID</li> <li>Signature computed across hash of the response</li> </ul> <p>All definitive response messages are digitally signed with a key belonging to the CA that issued the certificate in question.</p> <p>When the CA returns an error message in response to a certificate status request, the error message is not digitally signed.</p>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whether the CA signs error messages when returned in response to certificate status requests</li> </ul> <p>Certificate profile, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Version number(s) supported</li> <li>• Certificate extensions populated and their criticality</li> <li>• Cryptographic algorithm object identifiers</li> <li>• Name forms (that is, naming hierarchy used to ensure that the certificate subject can be uniquely identified—if required) used for the CA, RA, and subscribers names</li> <li>• Name constraints used and the name forms used in the name constraints</li> <li>• Applicable certificate policy object identifier(s)</li> <li>• Usage of the policy constraints extension</li> <li>• Policy qualifiers syntax and semantics</li> <li>• Processing semantics for the critical certificate policy extension</li> </ul> <p>CRL profile, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Version numbers supported for CRLs</li> <li>• CRL and CRL entry extensions populated and their criticality</li> </ul> <p>Integrated circuit card (ICC) life cycle management, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whether ICCs are issued by the CA (or RA)</li> <li>• If supported, a description of the CA's ICC life cycle management processes, including a description of the ICC distribution process</li> </ul>	<p>36 The following fields in the X.509 certificate format are utilized in the CA's PKI:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Version—Set to v3</li> <li>• Serial number—Unique values for each certificate in the CA domain</li> <li>• Signature algorithm identifier—The algorithm used by the CA for signing the certificate</li> <li>• Issuer—Identification of the certificate issuer</li> <li>• Validity—Start date and end date of the validity period are defined</li> <li>• Subject—Certificate subject's distinguished name</li> <li>• Public key information—Algorithm identifier (that is, RSA with SHA-1) and public key</li> <li>• Issuer unique identifier</li> <li>• Subject unique identifier</li> <li>• Extensions</li> </ul> <p>37 The following fields of the X.509 CRL format are utilized by the CA:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Version—v2</li> <li>• Signature—Identifies algorithm used to sign CRL</li> <li>• Issuer—Identification of the CA issuing the CRL</li> <li>• This update—Time of CRL issue</li> <li>• Next update—Time of next anticipated CRL issue</li> <li>• Revoked certificates—Listing of information for revoked certificates</li> </ul> <p>The CA may alternatively support online certificate status and revocation checking services.</p> <p>38 The CA does not issue smart cards to subscribers. Subscribers may, at their own discretion, purchase smart cards and readers for purposes of key generation and storage.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
<b>CA Environmental Controls</b>	
CPS and CP administration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CPS and CP change control procedures</li> <li>• Publication and notification policies</li> <li>• CPS and CP approval procedures</li> </ul>	<p>39 Some revisions to this certification policy statement (CPS) may be deemed by the CA's policy authority to have minimal or no impact on subscribers and relying parties using certificates and CRLs issued by CA. Such revisions may be made without notice to users of the CPS and without changing the version number of this CPS. Revisions to the certificate policies supported by this CPS, as well as revisions to the CPS which are deemed by the CA's policy authority to have significant impact on the users of this CPS, may be made with 45 days notice to the users and a change in version number for this CPS.</p> <p>The CA's policy authority will provide notification of upcoming changes on the CA's Web site 45 days prior to significant revisions to this CPS.</p> <p>This CPS and any subsequent changes are approved by the CA's policy authority.</p>
CA termination, including a description of the CA's procedures for termination and for termination notification of a CA or RA, including the identity of the custodian of CA and RA archival records	<p>40 The CA can only be terminated by the board of directors of the CA. In the event the CA is terminated, all certificates issued under the CA will be revoked and the CA will cease to issue certificates. The CA will provide no less than one month notice to all business units utilizing the services of the CA. Upon termination, the records of the CA will be archived and transferred to a specified custodian.</p>
Confidentiality, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Applicable statutory or regulatory requirements to keep information confidential</li> <li>• Kinds of information to be kept confidential</li> <li>• Kinds of information not considered confidential</li> <li>• Disclosure of information concerning certificate revocation and suspension</li> <li>• Release to law enforcement officials</li> <li>• Release as part of civil discovery</li> <li>• Disclosure upon owner's request</li> <li>• Other information release circumstances</li> </ul>	<p>41 Information which is not considered by the CA to be public domain information is to be kept confidential.</p> <p>Confidential information includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Subscribers' private signing keys are confidential and are not provided to the CA or RA.</li> <li>• Information specific to the operation and control of the CA, such as security parameters and audit trails, is maintained confidentially by the CA and is not released outside of the CA organization unless required by law.</li> <li>• Information about subscribers held by the CA or RAs, excluding that which is published in certificates, CRLs, certificate policies, or this CPS, is considered confidential and shall not be released outside of the CA except as required by certificate policy or otherwise required by law.</li> </ul>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Disclosures</i>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Generally, the results of annual audits are kept confidential, unless disclosure is deemed necessary by CA management.</li> </ul> <p>Nonconfidential information includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Information included in certificates and CRLs issued by the CA is not considered confidential.</li> <li>Information in the certificate policies supported by this CA is not considered confidential.</li> <li>Information in the CA's disclosed CPS (or other CA business practices disclosure) is not considered confidential.</li> <li>When the CA revokes a certificate, a revocation reason is included in the CRL entry for the revoked certificate. This revocation reason code is not considered confidential and can be shared with all other subscribers and relying parties. However, no other details concerning the revocation are normally disclosed.</li> </ul> <p>The CA will comply with legal requirements to release information to law enforcement officials.</p> <p>The CA may disclose to another party information pertaining to the owner of such information upon the owner's request.</p>
Intellectual property rights	42 Public key certificates and CRLs issued by the CA are the property of the CA. This CPS and the related certificate policies are the property of the CA.
Physical security controls, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site location and construction</li> <li>Physical access controls, including authentication controls to control and restrict access to CA facilities</li> <li>Power and air conditioning</li> <li>Water exposures</li> <li>Fire prevention and protection</li> <li>Media storage</li> <li>Waste disposal</li> <li>Off-site backup</li> </ul>	43 All critical CA operations take place within a physically secure facility with at least four layers of security to access sensitive hardware or software. Such systems are physically separated from the organization's other systems so that only authorized employees of the CA can access them. <p>Physical access to the CA systems is strictly controlled. Only trustworthy individuals with a valid business reason are provided such access. The access control system is always functional and utilizes proximity cards and biometrics for access.</p> <p>All CA systems have industry standard power and air conditioning systems to provide a suitable operating environment.</p>

(continued)

Criteria	Illustrative Disclosures
	All CA systems have reasonable precautions taken to minimize the impact of water exposure.
	All CA systems have industry standard fire prevention and protection mechanisms in place.
	Media storage at the CA third-party processor is subject to the same degree of protection as the CA hardware. Media storage under the control of the CA is subject to the normal media storage requirements of the company.
	Waste is disposed of in accordance with the organization's normal waste disposal requirements. Cryptographic devices are physically destroyed or zeroized in accordance with the manufacturers' guidance prior to disposal.
	Off-site backups are stored in a physically secure manner by a bonded third-party storage facility.
Business continuity management controls, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Whether the CA has business continuity plans to maintain or restore the CA's business operations in a reasonably timely manner following interruption to or failure of critical business processes</li><li>• Whether the CA's business continuity plans define an acceptable system outage and recovery time and disclosure of the defined time period(s)</li><li>• How frequently backup copies of essential business information and software are taken</li><li>• Proximity of recovery facilities to the CA's main site</li></ul>	44 The CA has a business continuity plan to restore the CA's business operations in a reasonably timely manner following interruption to, or failure of, critical business processes. The CA's business continuity plan defines 24 hours as an acceptable system outage time in the event of a major natural disaster or CA private key compromise.  Copies of essential business information and CA system software are performed daily.  The CA maintains a recovery site which is located approximately 50 miles from the CA's primary site.
Event logging, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• How frequently the CA archives event journal data</li><li>• How frequently event journals are reviewed</li></ul>	45 As part of the CA's scheduled system backup procedures, audit trail files are backed up to media on at least a daily basis. Audit trail files are archived by the system administrator on a weekly basis.  Event journals are reviewed at least on a weekly basis by CA management.

**Principle 2: Service Integrity**

.65 The certification authority maintains effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:

- Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA) and
- The integrity of keys and certificates it manages is established and protected throughout their life cycles.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
<b>2.1 Key Life Cycle Management Controls</b>	<b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b>
<b>2.1.1 CA Key Generation</b>	
The certification authority (CA) maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that CA key pairs are generated in accordance with industry standards.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 CA key generation occurs within a secure cryptographic device meeting the appropriate ISO 15782-1/FIPS 140-1/ANSI X9.66 level requirement as disclosed in the CA's business practices (see Principle 1, item 18 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>2 CA key generation by the CA requires dual control by properly authorized personnel.</li> <li>3 The CA generates its own key pair in the same cryptographic device in which it will be used or the key pair is injected directly from the device where it was generated into the device in which it will be used.</li> <li>4 Key generation uses a random number generator (RNG) or pseudo random number generator (PRNG) as specified in an ANSI X9 or ISO standard.</li> <li>5 Key generation uses a prime number generator as specified in an ANSI X9 or ISO standard.</li> <li>6 Key generation uses a key generation algorithm as specified in an ANSI X9 or ISO standard as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 18 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>7 Key generation results in key sizes as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 18 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>8 The integrity of the hardware and software used for key generation and the interfaces to the hardware and software are tested before usage.</li> </ol>

(continued)

*Illustrative Controls  
(Based on the CA Control Procedures  
Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)*

**Criteria**

**2.1.2 CA Key Storage, Backup, and Recovery**

The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that CA private keys remain confidential and maintain their integrity.

**Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:**

- 1 The CA's private signing key is stored within a secure cryptographic device meeting the appropriate ISO 15782-1/FIPS 140-1/ANSI X9.66 level requirement as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 17 [paragraph .64]).
- 2 If the CA private key is not exported from a secure cryptographic module and moved to secure storage for purposes of offline processing or backup and recovery, then the CA private key is generated and used within the same cryptographic module and is never exported outside of the cryptographic module.
- 3 If the CA private key is exported from a secure cryptographic module and moved to secure storage for purposes of offline processing or backup and recovery, then the private key is exported in a secure key management scheme including any of the following:
  - a. As ciphertext using dual control
  - b. As encrypted key fragments using dual control and split knowledge/ownership
  - c. In another secure cryptographic module such as a key transportation device using dual control
- 4 The CA private key is backed up, stored, and recovered by authorized personnel using dual control in a physically secured environment.
- 5 If the CA's private signing key is backed up, backup copies of the CA private keys are subject to the same or greater level of security controls as keys currently in use.
- 6 If the CA's private signing key is backed up, recovery of the CA private key is conducted in the same secure schema used in the backup process, using dual control.

**2.1.3 CA Public Key Distribution**

The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the integrity and authenticity of the CA public key and any associated parameters are maintained during initial and subsequent distribution.

**Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:**

- 1 The CA provides a mechanism for detecting the modification of the CA's public key during the initial distribution process (for example, using a self-signed certificate).

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2 The initial distribution mechanism for the CA's public key is controlled as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 20 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>3 CA public keys are initially distributed using one of the following methods as disclosed in any one of the following CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 20 [paragraph .64])               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Machine readable media (for example, smart card)</li> <li>b. Embedding in an entity's cryptographic module</li> <li>c. Other secure means</li> </ol> </li> <li>4 The CA's public key is changed (rekeyed) periodically as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 21 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>5 The subsequent distribution mechanism for the CA's public key is controlled as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 21 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>6 If an entity already has an authenticated copy of the CA's public key, a new CA public key is distributed using one of the following methods as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 21[paragraph .64]):               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Direct electronic transmission from the CA</li> <li>b. Placing into a remote cache or directory</li> <li>c. Loading into a cryptographic module</li> <li>d. Any of the methods used for initial distribution</li> </ol> </li> </ol>
<p><b>2.1.4 CA Key Escrow (Optional)</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that escrowed CA private signing keys remain confidential.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 If a third party provides CA private key escrow services, a contract outlining the liabilities and remedies between the parties exists.</li> <li>2 If CA private signing keys are held in escrow, escrowed copies of the CA private signing keys are subject to the same or greater level of security controls as keys currently in use.</li> </ol>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
<p><b>2.1.5 CA Key Usage</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that CA keys are used only for their intended functions in their intended locations.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 The activation of the CA private signing key is performed using multiparty control (that is, <math>m</math> of <math>n</math>).</li><li>2 If necessary based on a risk assessment, the activation of the CA private signing key is performed using multi-factor authentication (for example, smart card and password, biometric, and password).</li><li>3 The CA ceases to use a key pair at the end of the cryptoperiod or when the compromise of the private key is known or suspected.</li></ol>
<p><b>2.1.6 CA Key Destruction</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that CA keys are completely destroyed at the end of the key pair life cycle.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Authorization to destroy a CA private key and how the CA's private key is destroyed (for example, token surrender, token destruction, or key overwrite) are limited as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 17 [paragraph .64]).</li><li>2 All copies and fragments of the CA's private key are destroyed at the end of the key pair life cycle.</li><li>3 If a secure cryptographic device is accessible and known to be permanently removed from service, all CA private keys stored within the device that have ever been or potentially could be used for any cryptographic purpose are destroyed.</li><li>4 If a CA cryptographic device is being permanently removed from service, any key contained within the device that has been used for any cryptographic purpose is erased from the device.</li><li>5 If a CA cryptographic device case is intended to provide tamper-evident characteristics and the device is being permanently removed from service, the case is destroyed.</li></ol>
<p><b>2.1.7 CA Key Archival</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that archived CA keys remain confidential and are never put back into production.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Archived CA keys are subject to the same or greater level of security controls as keys currently in use.</li><li>2 All archived CA keys are destroyed at the end of the archive period using dual control in a physically secure site.</li></ol>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3 Archived keys are never put back into production.</li> <li>4 Archived keys are recovered for the shortest time period technically permissible.</li> <li>5 Archived keys are periodically verified to ensure that they are properly destroyed at the end of the archive period.</li> </ol>
<b>2.1.8 CA Cryptographic Hardware Life Cycle Management</b>	<p><i>For purposes of this section, CA cryptographic hardware refers to devices containing CA private signing keys.</i></p>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that access to CA cryptographic hardware is limited to properly authorized individuals.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Policies and procedures require that CA cryptographic hardware be sent from the manufacturer via registered mail using tamper-evident packaging.</li> <li>2 Upon the receipt of CA cryptographic hardware from the manufacturer, authorized CA personnel inspect the tamper-evident packaging to determine whether the seal is intact.</li> <li>3 To prevent tampering, CA cryptographic hardware is stored in a secure site, with access limited to authorized personnel, having the following characteristics:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inventory control processes and procedures to manage the origination, arrival, condition, departure, and destination of each device</li> <li>b. Access control processes and procedures to limit physical access to authorized personnel</li> <li>c. All successful or failed access attempts to the CA facility and device storage mechanism (for example, a safe) recorded in an event journal</li> <li>d. Incident processes and procedures to handle abnormal events, security breaches, and investigation and reports</li> <li>e. Audit processes and procedures to verify the effectiveness of the controls</li> </ol> </li> <li>4 CA cryptographic hardware is stored in tamper-resistant packages.</li> <li>5 The handling of CA cryptographic hardware is performed in the presence of no less than two trusted employees.</li> <li>6 The installation of CA cryptographic hardware is performed in the presence of no less than two trusted employees.</li> </ol>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that CA cryptographic hardware is functioning correctly.</p>	<div><div><div>7</div><div>The removal of CA cryptographic hardware from production is performed in the presence of no less than two trusted employees.</div></div><div><div>8</div><div>The process whereby CA cryptographic hardware is serviced or repaired with new hardware, firmware, or software is performed in the presence of no less than two trusted employees.</div></div><div><div>9</div><div>The service or repair site is a secure site with inventory control and access limited to authorized personnel.</div></div><div><div>10</div><div>The process whereby CA cryptographic hardware is disassembled and permanently removed from use is performed in the presence of no less than two trusted employees.</div></div><div><div>11</div><div>Upon the receipt of CA cryptographic hardware from the manufacturer, acceptance testing and verification of firmware settings is performed.</div></div><div><div>12</div><div>Upon the receipt of CA cryptographic hardware that has been serviced or repaired, acceptance testing and verification of firmware settings is performed.</div></div><div><div>13</div><div>Devices used for private key storage and recovery and the interfaces to these devices are tested before usage for integrity.</div></div><div><div>14</div><div>Correct processing of CA cryptographic hardware is verified on a periodic basis.</div></div><div><div>15</div><div>Diagnostic support is provided during troubleshooting of CA cryptographic hardware in the presence of no less than two trusted employees.</div></div></div>
<p><b>2.1.9 CA-Provided Subscriber Key Management Services (Optional)</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that subscriber keys generated by the CA (or registration authority [RA]) are generated in accordance with industry standards.</p>	<p><i>For purposes of this section, subscriber includes external registration authorities (RAs).</i></p> <p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <div><div><div>1</div><div>Subscriber key generation performed by the CA (or RA) occurs within a secure cryptographic device meeting the appropriate ISO 15782-1/FIPS 140-1/ANSI X9.66 level requirement as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 18 [paragraph .64]).</div></div><div><div>2</div><div>Subscriber key generation performed by the CA (or RA) uses a random number generator (RNG) or pseudo random number generator (PRNG) as specified in an ANSI X9 or ISO standard.</div></div></div>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that subscriber private keys stored by the CA remain confidential and maintain their integrity.	3 Subscriber key generation performed by the CA (or RA) uses a prime number generator as specified in an ANSI X9 or ISO standard.
	4 Subscriber key generation performed by the CA (or RA) uses a key generation algorithm as specified in an ANSI X9 or ISO standard as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 18 [paragraph .64]).
	5 Subscriber key generation performed by the CA (or RA) results in key sizes as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 18 [paragraph .64]).
	6 Subscriber key generation performed by the CA (or RA) is performed by authorized personnel as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 18 [paragraph .64]).
	7 When subscriber key generation is performed by the CA (or RA), the CA (or RA) securely (confidentially) delivers the key pair(s) generated by the CA (or RA) on behalf of the subscriber to the subscriber as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 18 [paragraph .64]).
	8 Subscriber private keys stored by the CA are stored in encrypted form using a cryptographic algorithm and key length based on a risk assessment and the business requirements of the CA.
	9 If the CA generates key pair(s) on behalf of a subscriber, the CA ensures that subscriber's private keys are not disclosed to any entity other than the owner of the keys.
	10 If the CA generates public/private digital signature key pair(s), the CA does not maintain a copy of any digital signature private key, once that key is delivered to the subscriber.
	11 If the CA provides subscriber key storage, backup, and recovery, subscriber private key backup and recovery is performed only by authorized personnel.
	12 If the CA provides subscriber key storage, backup, and recovery, controls exist to ensure that the integrity of the subscriber's private key is maintained throughout its life cycle.

*(continued)*

<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>	
<i>Criteria</i>	
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that subscriber keys stored by the CA are completely destroyed at the end of the key pair life cycle.	13 If the CA provides subscriber key storage, authorization to destroy a subscriber's private key and the means to destroy the subscriber's private key (for example, key overwrite) are limited as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 22 [paragraph .64]).
	14 If the CA provides subscriber key storage, all copies and fragments of the subscriber's private key are destroyed at the end of the key pair life cycle.
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that subscriber keys archived by the CA remain confidential.	15 Subscriber private keys archived by the CA are stored in encrypted form using a cryptographic algorithm and key length based on a risk assessment and the business requirements of the CA.
	16 If the CA provides subscriber key archival, all archived subscriber keys are destroyed at the end of the archive period.
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that subscriber keys escrowed by the CA remain confidential.	17 Subscriber private keys escrowed by the CA are stored in encrypted form using a cryptographic algorithm and key length based on a risk assessment and the business requirements of the CA.

2.2 Certificate Life Cycle Management Controls

2.2.1 Subscriber Registration

*Note: A requesting entity may be a subscriber requesting a certificate from an RA or CA, an RA requesting a certificate from a CA, or a subordinate CA requesting a certificate from a root CA or superior CA.*

**Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:**

The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that subscribers are properly identified and authenticated.

- 1 The CA verifies or requires that the external RA verify the identity of the entity requesting a certificate as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 25 [paragraph .64]).
- 2 The CA requires that an entity requesting a certificate must prepare and submit the appropriate certificate request data (registration request) to an RA (or the CA) as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 25 [paragraph .64]).
- 3 The CA verifies or requires that the external RA verify the authority of the entity requesting a certificate as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 25 [paragraph .64]).

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that subscriber certificate requests are accurate, authorized, and complete.	4 The CA verifies or requires that the external RA verify the accuracy of the information included in the requesting entity's certificate request as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 25 [paragraph .64]).
	5 If external RAs are used, the CA validates the identity of external RAs as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 26 [paragraph .64]).
	6 If external registration authorities are used, the CA authorizes external RAs as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 26 [paragraph .64]).
	7 The CA requires that an entity requesting a certificate prepare and submit the appropriate certificate request data to the CA or an external RA as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 25 [paragraph .64]).
	8 The CA requires that the requesting entity submit its public key in a signed message to the CA for certification. The CA requires that the requesting entity digitally sign the registration request using the private key that relates to the public key contained in the registration request in order to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Allow the detection of errors in the certificate application process.</li> <li>b. Prove possession of the companion private key for the public key being registered.</li> </ul>
	9 The CA uses the public key contained in the requesting entity's certificate request to verify the requesting entity's signature on the certificate request submission.
	10 If an external RA is used, the CA requires that the external RA submits the requesting entity's certificate request data to the CA in a message (certificate request) signed by the RA.
	11 If an external RA is used, the CA requires that the RA secure that part of the certificate application process for which it (the RA) assumes responsibility as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 26 [paragraph .64]).
	12 If an external RA is used, the CA requires that the external RA records its actions in an event journal.

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
	<div><div>13 If an external RA is used, the CA verifies the authenticity of the submission by the RA as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 26 [paragraph .64]).</div><div>14 If an external RA is used, the CA verifies the RA's signature on the certificate request.</div><div>15 The CA or RA checks the certificate request for errors or omissions as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 25 [paragraph .64]).</div><div>16 The CA verifies the uniqueness of the requesting entity's distinguished name within the CA's domain.</div><div>17 The CA accepts the certificate request from the requesting entity whose identity has been validated.</div><div>18 When the CA detects duplicate public keys, the certificate request is rejected and the original certificate is revoked.</div></div>
<div><div>2.2.2 Certificate Renewal (Optional)</div><div>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that certificate renewal requests are accurate, authorized, and complete.</div></div>	<div><div>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</div><div><div>1 The subscriber's certificate renewal request includes at least the subscriber's distinguished name, the serial number of the certificate (or other information that identifies the certificate), and the requested validity period to allow the CA or the RA to identify the certificate to renew.</div><div>2 The CA requires that the requesting entity digitally sign the certificate renewal request using the private key that relates to the public key contained in the requesting entity's existing public key certificate.</div><div>3 The CA or the RA processes the certificate renewal data to verify the identity of the requesting entity and identify the certificate to be renewed.</div><div>4 The CA or the RA validates the signature on the certificate renewal request.</div><div>5 The CA or the RA verifies the existence and validity of the certificate to be renewed.</div><div>6 The CA or the RA verifies that the request, including the extension of the validity period, meets the requirements as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 28 [paragraph .64]).</div></div></div>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7 If an external RA is used, the CA requires that the external RA submits the requesting entity's certificate request data to the CA in a message (certificate renewal request) signed by the RA.</li> <li>8 When an external RA is used, the RA secures that part of the certificate renewal process for which it (the RA) assumes responsibility as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 26 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>9 If an external RA is used, the CA requires that the external RAs record its actions in an event journal.</li> <li>10 If an external RA is used, the CA verifies the authenticity of the submission by the RA.</li> <li>11 If an external RA is used, the CA verifies the RA's signature on the certificate renewal request.</li> <li>12 The CA or RA checks the certificate renewal request for errors or omissions.</li> <li>13 The CA or RA notifies subscribers prior to the expiration of their certificate of the need for renewal as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 27 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>14 Prior to certificate generation and issuance of renewed certificates, the CA or RA verifies the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The signature on the certificate renewal data submission</li> <li>b. The existence and validity of the certificate to be renewed</li> <li>c. That the request, including the extension of the validity period, meets the requirements as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 27 [paragraph .64])</li> </ol> </li> </ol>

### 2.2.3 Certificate Rekey

The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that certificate rekey requests are accurate, authorized, and complete.

#### **Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:**

- 1 The subscriber's certificate rekey request includes at least the subscriber's distinguished name, the serial number of the certificate, and the requested validity period to allow the CA or the RA to identify the certificate to rekey.
- 2 The CA requires that the requesting entity digitally sign the certificate rekey request using the private key that relates to the public key contained in the requesting entity's existing public key certificate.

(continued)

***Illustrative Controls  
(Based on the CA Control Procedures  
Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)***

***Criteria***

- 3 The CA or the RA processes the certificate rekey request to verify the identity of the requesting entity and identify the certificate to be rekeyed.
- 4 The CA or the RA validates the signature on the certificate rekey request.
- 5 The CA or the RA verifies the existence and validity of the certificate to be rekeyed.
- 6 The CA or the RA verifies that the certificate rekey request meets the requirements as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 28 [paragraph .64]).
- 7 If an external RA is used, the CA requires that the external RA submits the requesting entity's certificate rekey request to the CA in a message signed by the RA.
- 8 If an external RA is used, the CA requires that the RA secure that part of the certificate rekey process for which it (the RA) assumes responsibility as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 26 [paragraph .64]).
- 9 If an external RA is used, the CA requires that the external RA records its actions in an event journal.
- 10 If an external RA is used, the CA verifies the authenticity of the submission by the RA.
- 11 If an external RA is used, the CA verifies the RA's signature on the certificate rekey request.
- 12 The CA or the RA checks the certificate rekey request for errors or omissions.
- 13 The CA or RA notifies subscribers prior to the expiration of their certificate of the need for rekey.
- 14 Prior to the generation and issuance of rekeyed certificates, the CA or RA verifies the following:
  - a. The signature on the certificate renewal data submission
  - b. The existence and validity of the certificate to be renewed
  - c. That the request, including the extension of the validity period, meets the requirements as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 28 [paragraph .64])

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that certificate rekey requests following certificate revocation or expiration are accurate, authorized, and complete.</p>	<p>15 Following the revocation or expiration of a subscriber's existing certificate, the subscriber is required to follow the CA's subscriber registration procedures to obtain a new rekeyed certificate (as specified in §2.2.1, Subscriber Registration) as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 29 [paragraph .64]).</p>
<p><b>2.2.4 Certificate Issuance</b></p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that new, renewed, and rekeyed certificates are generated and issued in accordance with the CA's disclosed business practices.</p>	<p>1 The CA generates certificates using the appropriate certificate format as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 30 [paragraph .64]).</p> <p>2 The CA generates certificates in accordance with ISO 9594/X.509 as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 30 [paragraph .64]).</p> <p>3 Validity periods are set in accordance with ISO 9594/X.509 as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 30 [paragraph .64]).</p> <p>4 Extension fields are set in accordance with ISO 9594/X.509 as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 30 [paragraph .64]).</p> <p>5 Key usage extension fields are set in accordance with ISO 9594/X.509 as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 30 [paragraph .64]).</p> <p>6 The CA signs the requesting entity's certificate with the CA's private signing key.</p> <p>7 The CA issues the certificate after the certificate has been accepted by the requesting entity as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 31 [paragraph .64]).</p> <p>8 When an RA is used, the CA notifies the RA when a certificate is issued to a subscriber for whom the RA submitted a certificate request.</p> <p>9 For certificate renewals, the CA generates and signs a new instance of the certificate, differing from the previous certificate only by the validity period and the CA signature, only if the CA has approved the certificate renewal request as specified in §2.2.2, Certificate Renewal.</p>

(continued)

***Illustrative Controls  
(Based on the CA Control Procedures  
Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)***

***Criteria***

- 10 For rekeyed certificates, the CA generates and signs a new certificate only if the CA has approved the certificate rekey request as specified in §2.2.3, Certificate Rekey.
- 11 The CA issues an out-of-band notification to the requesting entity when a certificate is issued.

**Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:**

### **2.2.5 Certificate Distribution**

The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that, upon issuance, complete and accurate certificates are available to subscribers and relying parties in accordance with the CA's disclosed business practices.

- 1 The CA makes the certificates issued by the CA available to relying parties using an established mechanism (for example, a repository such as a directory) as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 32 [paragraph .64]).
- 2 Upon certificate issuance, the CA posts certificates to the repository or alternative distribution mechanism as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 32 [paragraph .64]).
- 3 Only authorized CA personnel may administer the CA's repository or alternative distribution mechanism.
- 4 The performance of the CA's repository or alternative distribution mechanism is monitored and managed.
- 5 The integrity of the repository or alternative distribution mechanism is maintained.

**Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:**

### **2.2.6 Certificate Revocation**

The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that certificates are revoked based on authorized and validated certificate revocation requests.

- 1 As disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 33 [paragraph .64]), the CA provides a means of rapid communication to facilitate the secure and authenticated revocation of the following:
  - a. One or more certificates of one or more entities
  - b. The set of all certificates issued by a CA based on a single public/private key pair used by a CA to generate certificates
  - c. All certificates issued by a CA, regardless of the public/private key pair used
- 2 The CA verifies or requires that the external RA verify the identity and authority of the entity requesting revocation of a certificate as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 33 [paragraph .64]).

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3 If an external RA accepts revocation requests, the CA requires that the RA submit certificate revocation requests to the CA in an authenticated manner as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 33 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>4 If an external RA accepts and forwards revocation requests to the CA, the CA provides an authenticated acknowledgment of the revocation to the requesting RA as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 33 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>5 The CA updates the certificate revocation list (CRL) and other certificate status mechanisms upon certificate revocation as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 33 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>6 The CA records all certificate revocation requests and their outcome in an event journal.</li> <li>7 The CA or RA provides an authenticated acknowledgement of the revocation to the entity whose certificate has been revoked as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 33 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>8 Where certificate renewal is supported, when a certificate is revoked all valid instances of the certificate are also revoked.</li> </ol>
<p><b>2.2.7 Certificate Suspension (Optional)</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that certificates are suspended based on authorized and validated certificate suspension requests.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 As disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 34 [paragraph .64]), the CA provides a means of rapid communication to facilitate the secure and authenticated suspension of the following:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. One or more certificates of one or more entities</li> <li>b. The set of all certificates issued by a CA based on a single public/private key pair used by a CA to generate certificates</li> <li>c. All certificates issued by a CA, regardless of the public/private key pair used</li> </ol> </li> <li>2 The CA verifies or requires that the external RA verify the identity and authority of the entity requesting suspension of a certificate as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 34 [paragraph .64]).</li> </ol>

(continued)

***Illustrative Controls  
(Based on the CA Control Procedures  
Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)***

***Criteria***

- 3 If an external RA accepts suspension requests, the RA submits certificate suspension requests to the CA in an authenticated manner as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 34 [paragraph .64]).
- 4 The CA or RA notifies the end entity in the event of a certificate suspension as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 34 [paragraph .64]).
- 5 Certificate suspension requests are processed and validated as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 34 [paragraph .64]).
- 6 The CA updates the certificate revocation list (CRL) and other certificate status mechanisms upon certificate suspension as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 34 [paragraph .64]).
- 7 Certificates are suspended only for the allowable length of time as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 34 [paragraph .64]).
- 8 Once a certificate suspension (hold) has been issued, the suspension is handled in one of the following three ways:
  - a. An entry for the suspended certificate remains on the CRL with no further action, causing users to reject transactions issued during the hold period
  - b. The CRL entry for the suspended certificate is replaced by a revocation entry for the same certificate
  - c. The suspended certificate is explicitly released and the entry removed from the CRL
- 9 A certificate suspension (hold) entry remains on the CRL until the expiration of the underlying certificate or the expiration of the suspension, whichever is first.
- 10 The CA updates the CRL and other certificate status mechanisms upon the lifting of a certificate suspension as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 34 [paragraph .64]).
- 11 The CA verifies or requires that the external RA verify the identity and authority of the entity requesting that the suspension of a certificate be lifted.
- 12 Certificate suspensions and the lifting of certificate suspensions are recorded in an event journal.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
<p><b>2.2.8 Certificate Status Information Processing</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that timely, complete, and accurate certificate status information (including certificate revocation lists [CRLs] and other certificate status mechanisms) is made available to subscribers and relying parties.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Certificate status information is made available to all relevant entities as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>2 The CA makes each certificate revocation list (CRL) issued by the CA available to relying parties using an established mechanism (for example, a repository such as a directory) as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>3 The CA digitally signs each CRL that it issues so that entities can validate the integrity of the CRL and the date of issuance.</li> <li>4 The CA issues CRLs at regular intervals, even if no changes have occurred since the last issuance, as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>5 At a minimum, a CRL entry identifying a revoked certificate remains on the CRL until the end of the certificate's validity period.</li> <li>6 If certificate suspension is supported, a certificate suspension (hold) entry with its original action date and expiration date remains on the CRL until the normal expiration of the certificate.</li> <li>7 CRLs are archived as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>8 CAs include a monotonically increasing sequence number for each CRL issued by that CA (for example, 1, 2, 3).</li> <li>9 The CRL contains entries for all revoked unexpired certificates issued by the CA.</li> <li>10 Old CRLs are retained for the appropriate period of time as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>11 Whether certificates expire, are revoked, or are suspended, copies of certificates are retained for the appropriate period of time as disclosed in the CA's disclosed business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</li> </ol>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
	<div><div>12 If an online certificate status mechanism (for example, OCSP) is used, the CA requires that certificate status inquiries (for example, OCSP requests) contain all required data as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</div><div>13 Upon the receipt of a certificate status request (for example, an OCSP request) from a relying party, the CA returns a definitive response to the relying party if:<div>a. The request message is well formed;</div><div>b. The responder is configured to provide the requested service; and</div><div>c. The request contains the information needed by the responder as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</div></div><div>14 All definitive response messages are digitally signed as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</div><div>15 Definitive response messages include all required data as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</div><div>16 If any of the three conditions (specified in item 13) are not met, the CA produces a signed or unsigned error message as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 35 [paragraph .64]).</div></div>
<b>2.2.9 Integrated Circuit Card (ICC) Life Cycle Management (Optional)</b>	<p><i>Note: For purposes of this section, integrated circuit cards (for example, smart cards) include devices that may hold a subscriber's private key(s) and certificate(s).</i></p>

The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that ICC preparation is securely controlled by the CA (or RA).

**Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:**

- 1 The CA (or RA), as the card issuer, controls ICC personalization (the loading of common data file (CDF) data and its related cryptographic keys).

2 Common data that identify the ICC, the card issuer, and the cardholder are stored by the card issuer in the ICC CDF). CDF activation is performed by the CA (or RA), as the card issuer, using a securely controlled process.

3 After CDF activation, the ICC indicates a CDF activated status.

4 The CA (or RA) logs ICC personalization and CDF activation.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANS8.79 Standard)</i>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that ICC application data file (ADF) preparation is securely controlled by the CA (or RA).	5 Specific application supplier data stored in the ICC is located in the application data file (ADF). ADF allocation (the allocation of memory areas in an integrated circuit) is securely controlled by the CA, as the card issuer.
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that ICC usage is enabled by the CA (or RA) prior to ICC issuance.	6 The CA, as the application supplier, controls ADF personalization (the loading of ADF related keys and data).
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that ICCs are securely stored and distributed by the CA (or RA).	7 The CA, as the card issuer, controls ADF activation (preparation of an ADF for use by the cardholder) using a securely controlled process.
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that ICC deactivation and reactivation are securely controlled by the CA (or RA).	8 An ADF can only be activated when the CDF is either in an activated or a reactivated state.
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the use of ICCs is securely terminated for ICCs returned to the CA (or RA).	9 After ADF activation, the ICC indicates an ADF activated status.
	10 The CA logs ADF allocation, personalization, and activation.
	11 An ICC is not issued unless the card has been personalized.
	12 An ICC is unusable unless the CDF is in an activated or a reactivated state.
	13 ICCs are securely stored prior to distribution.
	14 Receipt, activation, and distribution of ICCs are logged in an event journal. An inventory of ICCs and their status is maintained.
	15 ICCs are securely distributed as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 38 [paragraph .64]).
	16 ADF deactivation can be performed only by the CA, as the application supplier.
	17 CDF deactivation can be performed only by the CA, as the card issuer.
	18 CDF reactivation is conducted under the control of the CA, as the card issuer.
	19 ADF reactivation is conducted under the control of the CA, as the application supplier.
	20 ADF deactivation, CDF deactivation, CDF reactivation, and ADF reactivation are logged.
	21 The CA, as the application supplier, controls ADF termination.
	22 CDF termination is controlled by the CA, as the card issuer.

**Principle 3: CA Environmental Controls**

.66 The certification authority maintains effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:

- Subscriber and relying party information is restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA’s business practices disclosure;
- The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations is maintained; and
- CA systems development, maintenance, and operation are properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity.

<i>Criteria</i>		<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i>	
<b>3.1 Certification Practice Statement and Certificate Policy Management</b>	The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the CA’s certification policy statement (CPS) and certificate policy (CP) management controls are effective.	<b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b>	
		1	The CA organization has a management group with final authority and responsibility for specifying and approving the CA’s certification practice statement (CPS).
		2	There is a policy management authority with final authority and responsibility for specifying and approving certificate policy(s) (CPs).
		3	The policy management authority (or equivalent group) has performed an assessment to evaluate business risks and determine the security requirements and operational procedures to be included in the applicable CP and/or CPS for the following: a. Key life cycle management controls b. Certificate life cycle management controls c. CA environmental controls
		4	The CA’s CPS is approved and modified in accordance with a defined review process, including responsibilities for maintaining the CPS.
		5	The CA makes available its public CPS to all appropriate subscribers and relying parties.
		6	Revisions to the CA’s CPS are made available to subscribers and relying parties.
		7	CPs are approved and modified in accordance with a defined review process, including responsibilities for maintaining the CPs.
		8	A defined review process exists to ensure that CPs are supported by the CA’s CPS.

<i>Criteria</i>	<b><i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i></b>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>9 The CA makes available the CPs supported by the CA to all appropriate subscribers and relying parties.</li> <li>10 Revisions to CPs supported by the CA are made available to subscribers and relying parties.</li> </ol>
<b>3.2 Security Management</b>	<b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that management direction and support for information security is provided.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 An information security policy document (<i>security policy</i>) is approved by management, published, and communicated, as appropriate, to all employees.</li> <li>2 The security policy contains a definition of information security, its overall objectives and scope, and the importance of security as an enabling mechanism for information sharing.</li> <li>3 The security policy contains a statement of management intent, supporting the goals and principles of information security.</li> <li>4 The security policy contains an explanation of the security policies, principles, standards, and compliance requirements of particular importance to the organization, including the following:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compliance with legislative and contractual requirements</li> <li>b. Security education requirements</li> <li>c. Prevention and detection of viruses and other malicious software</li> <li>d. Business continuity management</li> <li>e. The consequences of security policy violations</li> </ol> </li> <li>5 The security policy contains a definition of general and specific responsibilities for information security management, including reporting security incidents.</li> <li>6 The security policy contains references to documentation which supports the policy.</li> <li>7 There is a defined review process, including responsibilities and review dates, for maintaining the security policy.</li> </ol>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that information security is properly managed within the organization.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8 Senior management and/or a high level management information security committee ensures there is clear direction and visible management support for security initiatives.</li> <li>9 A management group or security committee exists to coordinate the implementation of information security measures.</li> </ol>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>		<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i>	
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the security of CA facilities, systems, and information assets accessed by third parties is maintained.	The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the security of information is maintained when the responsibility for CA functions has been outsourced to another organization or entity.	10	Responsibilities for the protection of individual assets and for carrying out specific security processes are clearly defined.
		11	A management authorization process for new information processing facilities exists and is followed.
		12	Procedures exist and are followed to control physical and logical access to CA facilities and systems by third parties including on-site contractors and trading partners or joint ventures.
		13	If there is a business need for the CA to allow third-party access to CA facilities and systems, a risk assessment is performed to determine security implications and specific control requirements.
		14	Arrangements involving third-party access to CA facilities and systems are based on a formal contract containing all necessary security requirements.
		15	If the CA outsources the management and control of all or some of its information systems, networks, or desktop environments, the security requirements of the CA are addressed in a contract agreed to by the parties.
		16	A CA service provider may choose to delegate a portion of the CA roles and respective functions, and the CA service provider is ultimately responsible for the completion of the identified functions that it performs and the definition and maintenance of a statement of its certification practices (that is, certification practice statement).
3.3	<b>Asset Classification and Management</b>	<b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b>	
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that CA assets and information receive an appropriate level of protection.		1	Owners are identified for all major CA assets and assigned responsibility for the maintenance of appropriate controls.
		2	Inventories of important CA assets are maintained.
		3	The CA has implemented information classification and associated protective controls for information that take account of business needs for sharing or restricting information, and the business impacts associated with such needs.
		4	Procedures are defined to ensure that information labeling and handling is performed in accordance with the CA's information classification scheme.

<i>Criteria</i>	<b><i>Illustrative Controls</i></b> <b><i>(Based on the CA Control Procedures</i></b> <b><i>Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i></b>
<b>3.4 Personnel Security</b>  The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that personnel and hiring practices enhance and support the trustworthiness of the CA's operations.	<b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b>  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Security roles and responsibilities, as specified in the organization's security policy, are documented in job descriptions.</li> <li>2 Verification checks on permanent staff are performed at the time of job application. The CA's policies and procedures specify the background checks and clearance procedures required for the personnel filling the trusted roles, and other personnel, including janitorial staff.</li> <li>3 Employees sign a confidentiality (nondisclosure) agreement as part of their initial terms and conditions of employment.</li> <li>4 Contracting personnel controls include the following:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Bonding requirements on contract personnel</li> <li>b. Contractual requirements including indemnification for damages due to the actions of the contractor personnel</li> <li>c. Audit and monitoring of contractor personnel</li> </ol> </li> <li>5 All employees of the organization and, where relevant, third-party users, receive appropriate training in organizational policies and procedures. The CA's policies and procedures specify the following:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The training requirements and training procedures for each role</li> <li>b. Any retraining period and retraining procedures for each role</li> </ol> </li> <li>6 Periodic reviews occur to verify the continued trustworthiness of personnel involved in the activities related to key management and certificate management.</li> <li>7 A formal disciplinary process exists and is followed for employees who have violated organizational security policies and procedures. The CA's policies and procedures specify the sanctions against personnel for unauthorized actions, unauthorized use of authority, and unauthorized use of systems.</li> <li>8 Appropriate and timely actions are taken when an employee is terminated so that controls and security are not impaired by such an occurrence.</li> </ol>

(continued)

***Illustrative Controls  
(Based on the CA Control Procedures  
Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)***

<b><i>Criteria</i></b>	
<p><b>3.5 Physical and Environmental Security</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that physical access to CA facilities is limited to properly authorized individuals and CA facilities are protected from environmental hazards.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Physical protection is achieved through the creation of clearly defined security perimeters (meaning, physical barriers) around the business premises and CA facilities.</li> <li>2 The perimeter of the building or site containing the CA facility is physically sound (that is, there should be no gaps in the perimeter where a break-in could easily occur).</li> <li>3 A manned reception area or other means to control physical access is in place to restrict access to the building or site housing CA operations to authorized personnel only.</li> <li>4 To prevent unauthorized entry and environmental contamination, proper physical barriers are in place (for example, extended from real floor to real ceiling as opposed to raised floor to suspended ceiling) as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 43 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>5 All fire doors on security perimeters around the CA facilities are alarmed and slam shut.</li> <li>6 Intruder detection systems are installed and regularly tested to cover all external doors of the building housing the CA facility and the CA facility itself.</li> <li>7 The CA facility is alarmed when unoccupied.</li> <li>8 The CA facility is physically locked and periodically checked when vacant.</li> <li>9 Unsupervised working in secure CA facilities is not allowed both for safety reasons and to prevent opportunities for malicious activities.</li> <li>10 All personnel are required to wear visible identification and are encouraged to challenge anyone not wearing visible identification.</li> <li>11 Access to CA facilities is controlled and restricted to authorized persons through the use of authentication controls as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 43 [paragraph .64]).</li> <li>12 All personnel entering and leaving the CA facility are logged (that is, an audit trail of all access is securely maintained).</li> <li>13 Visitors to the CA facility are supervised and their date and time of entry and departure recorded.</li> </ol>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that loss, damage, or compromise of assets and interruption to business activities are prevented.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>14 Third-party support services personnel are granted restricted access to secure CA facilities only when required and such access is authorized and monitored.</li> <li>15 Access rights to the CA facility are regularly reviewed and updated.</li> <li>16 Equipment is sited or protected such as to reduce the risks from environmental threats and hazards, and opportunities for unauthorized access.</li> <li>17 Equipment is protected from power failures and other electrical anomalies.</li> <li>18 Power and telecommunications cabling carrying data or supporting CA services is protected from interception or damage.</li> <li>19 Equipment is maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and/or other documented procedures to ensure its continued availability and integrity.</li> <li>20 All items of equipment containing storage media (that is, fixed hard disks) are checked to determine whether they contain any sensitive data prior to disposal or reuse. Storage devices containing sensitive information are physically destroyed or securely overwritten prior to disposal or reuse.</li> </ol>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that compromise or theft of information and information processing facilities are prevented.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>21 Sensitive or critical business information is locked away when not required and when the CA facility is vacated.</li> <li>22 Personal computers and workstations are not left logged on when unattended and are protected by key locks, passwords, or other controls when not in use.</li> <li>23 Equipment, information, and software belonging to the organization cannot be taken off-site without authorization.</li> </ol>
<p><b>3.6 Operations Management</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the correct and secure operation of CA information processing facilities is ensured.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 CA operating procedures are documented and maintained.</li> <li>2 Formal management responsibilities and procedures exist to control all changes to CA equipment, software, and operating procedures.</li> <li>3 Duties and areas of responsibility are segregated in order to reduce opportunities for unauthorized modification or misuse of information or services.</li> </ol>

(continued)

***Illustrative Controls  
(Based on the CA Control Procedures  
Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)***

<b><i>Criteria</i></b>	
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the risk of CA systems failure is minimized.	4 Development and testing facilities are separated from operational facilities.
	5 Prior to using external facilities management services, risks are identified and appropriate controls are agreed upon with the contractor and incorporated into the contract.
	6 Capacity demands are monitored and projections of future capacity requirements are made to ensure that adequate processing power and storage are available.
	7 Acceptance criteria for new information systems, upgrades, and new versions are established and suitable tests of the system are carried out prior to acceptance.
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the integrity of CA systems and information is protected against viruses and malicious software.	8 Detection and prevention controls to protect against viruses and malicious software and appropriate user awareness procedures are implemented.
	9 A formal reporting procedure exists and is followed, together with an incident response procedure, setting out the action to be taken on receipt of an incident report.
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that damage from security incidents and malfunctions is minimized through the use of incident reporting and response procedures.	10 Users of CA systems are required to note and report observed or suspected security weaknesses in or threats to systems or services.
	11 Procedures exist and are followed for reporting software malfunctions.
	12 Procedures exist and are followed to ensure that faults are reported and corrective action is taken.
	13 The types, volumes, and costs of incidents and malfunctions are quantified and monitored.
	14 Incident management responsibilities and procedures exist and are followed to ensure a quick, effective, and orderly response to security incidents.
	15 Procedures for the management of removable computer media require the following:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. If no longer required, the previous contents of any reusable media that are to be removed from the organization are erased.</li> <li>b. Authorization is required for all media removed from the organization and a record of all such removals is kept, to maintain an audit trail.</li> <li>c. All media are stored in a safe, secure environment, in accordance with manufacturers' specifications.</li> </ul>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that media are securely handled to protect media from damage, theft, and unauthorized access.	

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i>
	<p>16 Media is disposed of securely and safely when no longer required.</p> <p>17 Procedures for the handling and storage of information exist and are followed in order to protect such information from unauthorized disclosure or misuse.</p> <p>18 System documentation is protected from unauthorized access.</p>
<b>3.7 System Access Management</b>	<b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that CA system access is limited to properly authorized individuals.	<p><b>User access management</b></p> <p>1 Business requirements for access control are defined and documented in an access control policy which includes at least the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Roles and corresponding access permissions</li> <li>b. Identification and authentication process for each user</li> <li>c. Segregation of duties</li> <li>d. Number of persons required to perform specific CA operations (that is, <i>m of n</i> rule)</li> </ul> <p>2 A formal user registration and deregistration procedure for granting access to CA information systems and services is followed.</p> <p>3 The allocation and use of privileges is restricted and controlled.</p> <p>4 The allocation of passwords is controlled through a formal management process.</p> <p>5 Users' access rights are reviewed at regular intervals.</p> <p>6 Users are required to follow defined policies and procedures in the selection and use of passwords.</p> <p>7 Users are required to ensure that unattended equipment has appropriate protection.</p>
	<p><b>Network access control</b></p> <p>8 Users are provided direct access only to the services that they have been specifically authorized to use.</p> <p>9 The path from the user terminal to computer services is controlled.</p> <p>10 If permitted, access by remote users is subject to authentication.</p> <p>11 Connections to remote computer systems are authenticated.</p> <p>12 Access to diagnostic ports is securely controlled.</p>

(continued)

<i>Criteria</i>	<b><i>Illustrative Controls</i></b> <b><i>(Based on the CA Control Procedures</i></b> <b><i>Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i></b>
-----------------	--

---

- 13 Controls (for example, firewalls) are in place to protect the CA's internal network domains from external network domains accessible by third parties.
- 14 Controls are in place to limit the services (for example, HTTP, FTP) available to users in accordance with the CA's access control policies.
- 15 Routing controls are in place to ensure that computer connections and information flows do not breach the access control policy of the organization's business applications.
- 16 The security attributes of all network services used by the organization are documented by the CA.

**Operating system access control**

- 17 Automatic terminal identification is used to authenticate connections to specific locations and to portable equipment.
- 18 Access to CA systems uses a secure logon process.
- 19 All users have a unique identifier (user ID) for their personal and sole use so that activities can be traced to the responsible individual.
- 20 A password management system is in place to provide an effective, interactive facility which ensures quality passwords.
- 21 Use of system utility programs is restricted and tightly controlled.
- 22 If required based on a risk assessment, duress alarms are provided for users who might be the target of coercion.
- 23 Inactive terminals serving CA systems time out after a defined period of inactivity to prevent access by unauthorized persons.
- 24 Restrictions on connection times are used to provide additional security for high-risk applications.

**Application access control**

- 25 Access to information and application system functions is restricted in accordance with the access control policy.
- 26 Sensitive systems require a dedicated (isolated) computing environment.

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i>
<p><b>3.8 Systems Development and Maintenance</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that CA systems development and maintenance activities are properly authorized to maintain CA system integrity.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Business requirements for new systems or enhancements to existing systems specify the requirements for controls.</li> <li>2 Change control procedures exist and are followed for the implementation of software on operational systems.</li> <li>3 Change control procedures exist and are followed for scheduled software releases and modifications.</li> <li>4 Change control procedures exist and are followed for emergency software fixes.</li> <li>5 Test data is protected and controlled.</li> <li>6 Strict control is maintained over access to program source libraries.</li> <li>7 The implementation of changes is strictly controlled by the use of formal change control procedures to minimize the risk of corruption of information systems.</li> <li>8 Application systems are reviewed and tested when operating system changes occur.</li> <li>9 Modifications to software packages are discouraged and essential changes strictly controlled.</li> <li>10 The purchase, use, and modification of software is controlled and checked to protect against possible covert channels and Trojan code.</li> <li>11 Controls are in place to secure outsourced software development.</li> </ol>
<p><b>3.9 Business Continuity Management</b></p> <p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance of continuity of operations in the event of a disaster.</p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 The CA has a managed process for developing and maintaining its business continuity plans.</li> <li>2 The CA has a business continuity planning strategy based on an appropriate risk assessment.</li> <li>3 The CA has business continuity plans to maintain or restore the CA's business operations in a timely manner following interruption to or failure of critical business processes as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 44 [paragraph .64]).</li> </ol>

(continued)

***Illustrative Controls  
(Based on the CA Control Procedures  
Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)***

***Criteria***

- 
- 4 The CA has a business continuity planning framework which requires that business continuity plans address the following:
    - a. The conditions for activating the plans
    - b. Emergency procedures
    - c. Fallback procedures
    - d. Resumption procedures
    - e. A maintenance schedule
    - f. Awareness and education requirements
    - g. The responsibilities of the individuals
  - 5 Business continuity plans are tested regularly to ensure that they are up-to-date and effective.
  - 6 Business continuity plans are maintained by regular reviews and updates to ensure their continuing effectiveness.
  - 7 Business continuity plans define an acceptable system outage time, recovery time, and the average time between failures as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 44 [paragraph .64]).
  - 8 The CA's business continuity plans include disaster recovery processes for all critical components of a CA system, including the hardware, software, and keys, in the event of a failure of one or more of these components.
  - 9 The CA's business continuity plans address the recovery procedures used if computing resources, software, or data are corrupted or suspected to be corrupted.
  - 10 The CA's business continuity plans include procedures for securing its facility during the period of time following a natural or other disaster and before a secure environment is reestablished either at the original site or a remote hot site.
  - 11 Back-up copies of essential business information and software are regularly taken as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 44 [paragraph .64]). The security requirements of these copies are consistent with the controls for the information backed up.
  - 12 Fallback equipment and backup media are sited at a safe distance to avoid damage from disaster at the main site as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 44 [paragraph .64]).

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance of continuity of operations in the event of the compromise of the CA's private signing key.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>13 The CA's business continuity plans address the compromise or suspected compromise of a CA's private signing key as a disaster.</li> <li>14 In the event of the compromise or suspected compromise of a CA's private key, disaster recovery procedures include the revocation and reissuance of all certificates that were signed with the CA's private key.</li> <li>15 The recovery procedures used if the CA's private key is compromised and the CA's public key is revoked include the following:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. How a secure environment is reestablished</li> <li>b. How the CA's old public key is revoked</li> <li>c. How the CA's new public key is provided to the users</li> <li>d. How the subjects are recertified</li> </ol> </li> <li>16 In the event that the CA has to replace its CA root private key, procedures are in place for the secure and authenticated revocation of the following:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The old CA root public key</li> <li>b. The set of all certificates issued by a CA based on the compromised private key</li> <li>c. Any subordinate CA private keys and corresponding certificates</li> </ol> </li> <li>17 The CA's business continuity plan for key compromise addresses who is notified and what actions are taken with system software and hardware, symmetric and asymmetric keys, previously generated signatures, and encrypted data.</li> <li>18 The CA maintains procedures for the termination and notification of affected entities, and for transferring relevant archived CA records to a custodian as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 40 [paragraph .64]).</li> </ol>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that potential disruptions to subscribers and relying parties are minimized as a result of the cessation of the CA's services.</p>	
<p><b>3.10 Monitoring and Compliance</b></p>	<p><b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b></p>
<p>The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the CA complies with legal requirements.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 All relevant statutory, regulatory, and contractual requirements are explicitly defined and documented for each information system.</li> <li>2 Appropriate procedures are implemented to ensure compliance with legal restrictions on the use of material in respect of intellectual property rights, and on the use of proprietary software products as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 42 [paragraph .64]).</li> </ol>

(continued)

<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i>	
<i>Criteria</i>	
	<div>3 Important records of an organization are protected from loss, destruction, and falsification.</div> <div>4 Controls are applied to protect personal information in accordance with relevant legislation.</div> <div>5 Management authorizes the use of information processing facilities and controls are applied to prevent the misuse of such facilities.</div> <div>6 Controls are in place to ensure compliance with national agreements, laws, regulations, or other instruments to control the access to or use of cryptographic controls.</div> <div>7 As disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 41 [paragraph .64]), the CA's confidentiality policies and procedures address the following:<div>a. The kinds of information that must be kept confidential by the CA or RA</div><div>b. The kinds of information that are not considered confidential</div><div>c. Who is entitled to be informed of reasons for revocation and suspension of certificates</div><div>d. The policy on release of information to law enforcement officials</div><div>e. Information that can be revealed as part of civil discovery</div><div>f. The conditions upon which the CA or RA may disclose information upon the owner's request</div><div>g. Any other circumstances under which confidential information may be disclosed</div></div>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that compliance with the CA's security policies and procedures is ensured.	<div>8 Managers are responsible for ensuring that security procedures within their area of responsibility are carried out correctly.</div> <div>9 The CA's operations are subject to regular review to ensure compliance with security policies and standards.</div> <div>10 CA systems are periodically checked for compliance with security implementation standards.</div>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the effectiveness of the system audit process is maximized and interference to and from the system audit process is minimized.	<div>11 Audits of operational systems are planned and agreed to such as to minimize the risk of disruptions to business processes.</div> <div>12 Access to system audit tools is protected to prevent possible misuse or compromise.</div>

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls</i> <i>(Based on the CA Control Procedures</i> <i>Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that unauthorized CA system usage is detected.	13 Procedures for monitoring the use of CA systems are established and the results of the monitoring activities are reviewed regularly.
<b>3.11 Event Journaling</b>	<b>Such controls generally include but are not limited to the following:</b>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that significant CA environmental, key management, and certificate management events are logged accurately and completely.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 The CA generates automatic (electronic) and manual event journals as appropriate.</li> <li>2 All journal entries include the following elements: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Date and time of the entry</li> <li>b. Serial or sequence number of entry (for automatic journal entries)</li> <li>c. Kind of entry</li> <li>d. Source of entry (for example, terminal, port, location, customer)</li> <li>e. Identity of the entity making the journal entry</li> </ol> </li> <li>3 The CA logs the following key life cycle management related events: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. CA (and subscriber, if applicable) key generation</li> <li>b. Installation of manual cryptographic keys and its outcome (with the identity of the operator)</li> <li>c. CA (and subscriber, if applicable) key backup</li> <li>d. CA (and subscriber, if applicable) key storage</li> <li>e. CA (and subscriber, if applicable) key recovery</li> <li>f. CA (and subscriber, if applicable) key escrow activities (optional)</li> <li>g. CA key usage</li> <li>h. CA (and subscriber, if applicable) key archival</li> <li>i. Withdrawal of keying material from service</li> <li>j. CA (and subscriber, if applicable) key destruction</li> <li>k. Identity of the entity authorizing a key management operation</li> <li>l. Identity of the entity handling any keying material (such as key components or keys stored in portable devices or media)</li> <li>m. Custody of keys and of devices or media holding keys</li> <li>n. Compromise of a private key</li> </ol> </li> </ol>

*(continued)*

***Illustrative Controls  
(Based on the CA Control Procedures  
Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)***

***Criteria***

- 
- 4 The CA logs the following certificate life cycle management related events:
    - a. Receipt of requests for certificate(s)—including initial certificate requests, renewal requests, and rekey requests
    - b. Submissions of public keys for certification
    - c. Change of affiliation of an entity
    - d. Generation of certificates
    - e. Distribution of the CA's public key
    - f. Certificate revocation requests
    - g. Certificate suspension requests (if applicable)
    - h. Generation and issuance of certificate revocation lists
    - i. Actions taken upon expiration of a certificate
  - 5 The CA logs the following cryptographic device life cycle management related events:
    - a. Device receipt
    - b. Entering or removing a device from storage
    - c. Device usage
    - d. Device deinstallation
    - e. Designation of a device for service and repair
    - f. Device retirement
  - 6 The CA logs (or requires that the RA log) the following certificate application information:
    - a. Kind of identification document(s) presented by the applicant
    - b. Record of unique identification data, numbers, or a combination thereof (for example, applicant's driver's license number) of identification documents, if applicable
    - c. Storage location of copies of applications and identification documents
    - d. Identity of entity accepting the application
    - e. Method used to validate identification documents, if any
    - f. Name of receiving CA or submitting RA, if applicable
  - 7 The CA logs the following security-sensitive events:
    - a. Security-sensitive files or records read or written, including the event journal
    - b. Deletion of security-sensitive data
    - c. Security profile changes

<i>Criteria</i>	<i>Illustrative Controls (Based on the CA Control Procedures Detailed in the Draft ANSI X9.79 Standard)</i>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that the confidentiality and integrity of current and archived event journals are maintained.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Use of identification and authentication mechanisms, both successful and unsuccessful (including multiple failed authentication)</li> <li>e. System crashes, hardware failures, and other anomalies</li> <li>f. Actions taken by computer operators, system administrators, and system security officers</li> <li>g. Change of affiliation of an entity</li> <li>h. Decisions to bypass encryption or authentication processes or procedures</li> <li>i. Access to the CA system or any component thereof</li> </ul> <p>8 Event journals do not record the plain text values of any private keys.</p> <p>9 CA computer system clocks are synchronized for accurate recording.</p> <p>10 Current and archived event journals are maintained in a form that prevents unauthorized modification or destruction.</p> <p>11 Current and archived automated event journals are protected from modification or substitution.</p>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that event journals are archived completely and confidentially in accordance with disclosed business practices.	<p>12 The private key used for signing event journals is not used for any other purpose.</p> <p>13 The CA archives event journal data on a periodic basis as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 45 [paragraph .64]).</p> <p>14 A risk assessment has been performed to determine the appropriate length of time for retention of archived event journals.</p> <p>15 The CA maintains archived event journals at a secure off-site location for a predetermined period.</p>
The CA maintains controls to provide reasonable assurance that event journals are reviewed periodically by authorized personnel.	<p>16 Current and archived event journals may only be retrieved by authorized individuals for valid business or security reasons.</p> <p>17 Event journals are reviewed periodically as disclosed in the CA's business practices (Principle 1, item 45 [paragraph .64]).</p> <p>18 The review of current and archived event journals includes a validation of the event journals' integrity, and the identification and follow-up of exceptional, unauthorized, or suspicious activity.</p>

## Appendix A

### Illustrative Examples of Practitioner Reports

**A1.** This appendix presents three illustrative reports for WebTrust® for Certification Authorities engagements, all prepared in accordance with the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' (AICPA's) attestation standards.

**A2.** Under the attestation standards, the first paragraph of the practitioner's report will state that the practitioner has performed an examination of management's assertion about disclosures of its business practices and effectiveness of its controls in conformity with the WebTrust Principles and Criteria for Certification Authorities. The practitioner may opine (1) on management's assertion or (2) directly on the subject matter. Samples of both kinds of reports are provided.

#### Example 1

**A3.** The following is an example of a practitioner report for use when all WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria are applicable.

#### Report of Independent Certified Public Accountant

To the Management of ABC Certification Authority, Inc.:

We have examined the assertion by the management of ABC Certification Authority, Inc. (ABC-CA) [*hot link to management's assertion*] that in providing its certification authority (CA) services at [*location*], ABC-CA, during the period from [*Month, day, year*] through [*Month, day, year*]:

- Disclosed its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices [*hot link to CA business practices disclosure*] and provided such services in accordance with its disclosed practices
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA); and
  - The integrity of keys and certificates it managed was established and protected throughout their life cycles
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber and relying party information was restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure;
  - The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations was maintained; and
  - CA systems development, maintenance, and operations were properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria [*hot link to WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria*].

ABC-CA's management is responsible for its assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on management's assertion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and accordingly, included (1) obtaining an understanding of ABC-CA's key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and its controls over key and certificate integrity, over the authenticity and privacy of subscriber and relying party information, over the continuity of key

and certificate life cycle management operations, and over development, maintenance, and operation of systems integrity; (2) selectively testing transactions executed in accordance with disclosed key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices; (3) testing and evaluating the operating effectiveness of the controls; and (4) performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, for the period [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year], ABC-CA management's assertion, as set forth in the first paragraph, is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria.

Because of inherent limitations in controls, errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any conclusions, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that (1) changes made to the system or controls, (2) changes in processing requirements, (3) changes required because of the passage of time, or (4) degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may alter the validity of such conclusions.

The WebTrust seal of assurance for certification authorities on ABC-CA's Web site constitutes a symbolic representation of the contents of this report and it is not intended, nor should it be construed, to update this report or provide any additional assurance.

The relative effectiveness and significance of specific controls at ABC-CA and their effect on assessments of control risk for subscribers and relying parties are dependent on their interaction with the controls, and other factors present at individual subscriber and relying party locations. We have performed no procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of controls at individual subscriber and relying party locations.

This report does not include any representation as to the quality of ABC-CA's services beyond those covered by the WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria, nor the suitability of any of ABC-CA's services for any customer's intended purpose.

[Name of CPA firm]

Certified Public Accountants

[City, State]

[Date]

## Example 2

**A4.** The following is an example of a practitioner report for use when external registration authorities are used and the certification authority (CA) does not support key escrow, certificate renewal, certificate suspension, the use of integrated circuit cards, or the provision of subscriber key management services.

### Report of Independent Certified Public Accountant

To the Management of  
ABC Certification Authority, Inc.:

We have examined the assertion by the management of ABC Certification Authority, Inc. (ABC-CA) [*hot link to management's assertion*] that in providing its certification authority (CA) services at [*location*], ABC-CA, during the period from \_\_\_\_ through \_\_\_\_:

- Disclosed its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices [*hot link to CA business practices disclosure*] and provided such services in accordance with its disclosed practices

- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA); and
  - The integrity of keys and certificates it managed was established and protected throughout their life cycles
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber and relying party information was restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure;
  - The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations was maintained; and
  - CA systems development, maintenance, and operations were properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria [*hot link to WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria*].

ABC-CA's management is responsible for its assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on management's assertion based on our examination.

ABC-CA makes use of external registration authorities for specific subscriber registration activities as disclosed in ABC-CA's business practice disclosures. Our examination did not extend to the controls of external registration authorities.

Because of inherent limitations in controls, errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any conclusions, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that (1) changes made to the system or controls, (2) changes in processing requirements, (3) changes required because of the passage of time, or (4) degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may alter the validity of such conclusions.

The WebTrust seal of assurance for certification authorities on ABC-CA's Web site constitutes a symbolic representation of the contents of this report and it is not intended, nor should it be construed, to update this report or provide any additional assurance.

The relative effectiveness and significance of specific controls at ABC-CA and their effect on assessments of control risk for subscribers and relying parties are dependent on their interaction with the controls, and other factors present at external registration authorities and individual subscriber and relying party locations. We have performed no procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of controls at external registration authorities and individual subscriber and relying party locations.

This report does not include any representation as to the quality of ABC-CA's services beyond those covered by the WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria, nor the suitability of any of ABC-CA's services for any customer's intended purpose.

[Name of CPA firm]

Certified Public Accountants

[City, State]

[Date]

**Example 3**

**A5.** The following is an example of a direct report for use when all criteria are applicable.

Report of Independent Certified Public Accountant

To the Management of  
ABC Certification Authority, Inc.:

We have examined the assertion [*hot link to management's assertion*] by the management of ABC Certification Authority, Inc. (ABC-CA) regarding the disclosure of its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices on its Web site and the effectiveness of its controls over key and certificate integrity, over the authenticity and privacy of subscriber and relying party information, over the continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations, and over development, maintenance, and operation of systems integrity, based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria [*hot link to WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria*], during the period [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year].

These disclosures and controls are the responsibility of ABC-CA's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, and accordingly, included (1) obtaining an understanding of ABC-CA's key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and its controls over key and certificate integrity, over the authenticity and privacy of subscriber and relying party information, over the continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations, and over development, maintenance, and operation of systems integrity; (2) selectively testing transactions executed in accordance with disclosed key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices; (3) testing and evaluating the operating effectiveness of the controls; and (4) performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year], ABC-CA, in all material respects:

- Disclosed its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and provided such services in accordance with its disclosed practices
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA) and the integrity of keys and certificates it managed was established and protected throughout their life cycles
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that subscriber and relying party information was restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure; the continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations was maintained; and CA systems development, maintenance and operations were properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria [*hot link to WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria*].

Because of inherent limitations in controls, errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any conclusions, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that (1) changes made to the system or controls, (2) changes in processing requirements, (3) changes required

because of the passage of time, or (4) degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may alter the validity of such conclusions.

The WebTrust seal of assurance for Certification Authorities on ABC-CA's Web site constitutes a symbolic representation of the contents of this report and it is not intended, nor should it be construed, to update this report or provide any additional assurance.

The relative effectiveness and significance of specific controls at ABC-CA and their effect on assessments of control risk for subscribers and relying parties are dependent on their interaction with the controls, and other factors present at individual subscriber and relying party locations. We have performed no procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of controls at individual subscriber and relying party locations.

This report does not include any representation as to the quality of ABC-CA's services beyond those covered by the WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria, nor the suitability of any of ABC-CA's services for any customer's intended purpose.

*[Name of CPA firm]*

Certified Public Accountants

*[City, State]*

*[Date]*

## Appendix B

### Illustrative Examples of Management's Assertion

#### Example 1

**B1.** The following is an example of management's assertion for use when all criteria are applicable.

Assertion of Management as to its Disclosure of its Business Practices and its Controls Over its Certification Authority Operations during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year]

[Date]

ABC Certification Authority, Inc. operates as a certification authority (CA) known as ABC-CA. ABC-CA, as a root CA *[or as a subordinate CA of DEF Certification Authority, Inc.]*, provides the following CA services:

- Subscriber key management services
- Subscriber registration
- Certificate renewal
- Certificate rekey
- Certificate issuance
- Certificate distribution (using an online repository)
- Certificate revocation
- Certificate suspension
- Certificate status information processing (using an online repository)
- Integrated circuit card life cycle management

Management of ABC-CA is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective controls over its CA operations, including CA business practices disclosure *[hot link to CA business practices disclosure]*, service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management controls), and CA environmental controls. These controls contain monitoring mechanisms, and actions are taken to correct deficiencies identified.

There are inherent limitations in any controls, including the possibility of human error and the circumvention or overriding of controls. Accordingly, even effective controls can provide only reasonable assurance with respect to ABC-CA's CA operations. Furthermore, because of changes in conditions, the effectiveness of controls may vary over time.

Management has assessed the controls over its CA operations. Based on that assessment, in ABC Certification Authority, Inc. (ABC-CA) management's opinion, in providing its CA services at *[location]*, ABC-CA, during the period from *[Month, day, year]* through *[Month, day, year]*:

- Disclosed its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and provided such services in accordance with its disclosed practices
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA); and
  - The integrity of keys and certificates it managed was established and protected throughout their life cycles

- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber and relying party information was restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure;
  - The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations was maintained; and
  - CA systems development, maintenance, and operations were properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria [*hot link to WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria*], including the following:

### **CA Business Practices Disclosure**

#### **Service Integrity**

##### Key Life Cycle Management Controls

CA Key Generation  
CA Key Storage, Backup, and Recovery  
CA Public Key Distribution  
CA Key Escrow  
CA Key Usage  
CA Key Destruction  
CA Key Archival  
CA Cryptographic Hardware Life Cycle Management  
CA-Provided Subscriber Key Management Services

##### Certificate Life Cycle Management Controls

Subscriber Registration  
Certificate Renewal  
Certificate Rekey  
Certificate Issuance  
Certificate Distribution  
Certificate Revocation  
Certificate Suspension  
Certificate Status Information Processing  
Integrated Circuit Card Life Cycle Management

#### **CA Environmental Controls**

Certification Practice Statement and Certificate Policy Management  
Security Management  
Asset Classification and Management  
Personnel Security  
Physical and Environmental Security  
Operations Management  
System Access Management  
Systems Development and Maintenance  
Business Continuity Management  
Monitoring and Compliance  
Event Journaling

[Name]  
[Title]

**Example 2**

**B2.** The following is an example of management's assertion for use when external registration authorities are used and the certification authority (CA) does not support key escrow, certificate renewal, certificate suspension, the use of integrated circuit cards, or the provision of subscriber key management services.

Assertion of Management as to its Disclosure of its Business Practices and its Controls Over its Certification Authority Operations during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year]

[Date]

ABC Certification Authority, Inc. operates as a certification authority (CA) known as ABC-CA. ABC-CA, as a root CA *[or as a subordinate CA of DEF Certification Authority, Inc.]*, provides the following CA services:

- Certificate rekey
- Certificate issuance
- Certificate distribution (using an online repository)
- Certificate revocation
- Certificate status information processing (using an online repository)

ABC-CA makes use of external registration authorities for specific subscriber registration activities as disclosed in ABC-CA's business practice disclosures.

Management of ABC-CA is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective controls over its CA operations, including CA business practices disclosure *[hot link to CA business practices disclosure]*, service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management controls), and CA environmental controls. These controls contain monitoring mechanisms, and actions are taken to correct deficiencies identified.

There are inherent limitations in any controls, including the possibility of human error and the circumvention or overriding of controls. Accordingly, even effective internal controls can provide only reasonable assurance with respect to ABC-CA's CA operations. Furthermore, because of changes in conditions, the effectiveness of controls may vary over time.

Management has assessed the controls over its CA operations. Based on that assessment, in ABC Certification Authority, Inc. (ABC-CA) management's opinion, in providing its CA services at *[location]*, ABC-CA, during the period from *[Month, day, year]* through *[Month, day, year]*:

- Disclosed its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and provided such services in accordance with its disclosed practices
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA); and
  - The integrity of keys and certificates it managed was established and protected throughout their life cycles
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber and relying party information was restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure;
  - The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations was maintained; and

- CA systems development, maintenance, and operations were properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria [*hot link to WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria*], including the following:

**CA Business Practices Disclosure****Service Integrity****Key Life Cycle Management Controls**

CA Key Generation  
CA Key Storage, Backup, and Recovery  
CA Public Key Distribution  
CA Key Usage  
CA Key Destruction  
CA Key Archival  
CA Cryptographic Hardware Life Cycle Management

**Certificate Life Cycle Management Controls**

Subscriber Registration  
Certificate Rekey  
Certificate Issuance  
Certificate Distribution  
Certificate Revocation  
Certificate Status Information Processing

**CA Environmental Controls**

Certification Practice Statement and Certificate Policy Management  
Security Management  
Asset Classification and Management  
Personnel Security  
Physical and Environmental Security  
Operations Management  
System Access Management  
Systems Development and Maintenance  
Business Continuity Management  
Monitoring and Compliance  
Event Journaling

[Name]

[Title]

## Appendix C

### Illustrative Examples of Management's Representation

#### Example 1

C1. The following is an example of a management representation for use when all criteria are applicable.

[Date]

[Name of CPA firm]

[Address]

Dear Members of the Firm:

Management confirms its understanding that your examination of our assertion related to ABC Certification Authority, Inc.'s (ABC-CA) business practices disclosure and controls over its certification authority (CA) operations during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year] was made for the purpose of expressing an opinion as to whether our assertion is fairly presented, in all material respects, and that your opinion is based on criteria for effective controls as stated in our assertion document. We are responsible for our assertion. In connection with your examination, management:

- a. Acknowledges its responsibility for establishing and maintaining effective controls over its CA operations at [location], including CA business practices disclosure, service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management controls), and CA environmental controls.
- b. Has performed an assessment and believes that ABC-CA's CA business practices disclosure, service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management controls), and CA environmental controls met the minimum requirement of the criteria described in our assertion document during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year].
- c. Believes the stated criteria against which our assertion has been assessed are reasonable and appropriate.
- d. Has disclosed to you that there are no significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the controls which could adversely affect the Company's ability to comply with the control criteria related to ABC-CA's CA business practices disclosure, service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management controls), and CA environmental controls, consistent with the assertions of management.
- e. Has made available to you all significant information and records related to our assertion.
- f. Has responded fully to all inquiries made to us by you during your examination.
- g. Has disclosed to you any changes occurring or planned to occur subsequent to \_\_\_\_, in controls or other factors that might significantly affect the controls, including any corrective actions taken by management with regard to significant deficiencies.

In management's opinion, ABC-CA, in providing its CA services at [location] during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year]:

- Disclosed its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and provided such services in accordance with its disclosed practices

- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA); and
  - The integrity of keys and certificates it managed was established and protected throughout their life cycles
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber and relying party information was restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure;
  - The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations was maintained; and
  - CA systems development, maintenance, and operations were properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria, including the following:

### **CA Business Practices Disclosure**

#### **Service Integrity**

##### Key Life Cycle Management Controls

CA Key Generation  
 CA Key Storage, Backup, and Recovery  
 CA Public Key Distribution  
 CA Key Escrow  
 CA Key Usage  
 CA Key Destruction  
 CA Key Archival  
 CA Cryptographic Hardware Life Cycle Management  
 CA-Provided Subscriber Key Management Services

##### Certificate Life Cycle Management Controls

Subscriber Registration  
 Certificate Renewal  
 Certificate Rekey  
 Certificate Issuance  
 Certificate Distribution  
 Certificate Revocation  
 Certificate Suspension  
 Certificate Status Information Processing  
 Integrated Circuit Card Life Cycle Management

#### **CA Environmental Controls**

Certification Practice Statement and Certificate Policy Management  
 Security Management  
 Asset Classification and Management  
 Personnel Security  
 Physical and Environmental Security  
 Operations Management  
 System Access Management  
 Systems Development and Maintenance  
 Business Continuity Management  
 Monitoring and Compliance  
 Event Journaling

Very truly yours,

[Name]

[Title]

**Example 2**

**C2.** The following is an example of a management representation for use when external registration authorities are used and the certification authority (CA) does not support key escrow, certificate renewal, certificate suspension, the use of integrated circuit cards, or the provision of subscriber key management services.

[Date]

[Name of CPA]

[Address]

Dear Members of the Firm:

Management confirms its understanding that your examination of our assertion related to ABC Certification Authority, Inc.'s (ABC-CA) business practices disclosure and controls over its certification authority (CA) operations during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year] was made for the purpose of expressing an opinion as to whether our assertion is fairly presented, in all material respects, and that your opinion is based on criteria for effective controls as stated in our assertion document. ABC-CA makes use of external registration authorities for specific subscriber registration activities, as disclosed in ABC-CA's business practice disclosures. We are responsible for our assertion. In connection with your examination, management:

- a. Acknowledges its responsibility for establishing and maintaining effective controls over its CA operations, including CA business practices disclosure, service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management controls), and CA environmental controls.
- b. Has performed an assessment and believes that ABC-CA's CA business practices disclosure, service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management controls), and CA environmental controls, met the minimum requirement of the criteria described in our assertion document during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year].
- c. Believes the stated criteria against which our assertion has been assessed are reasonable and appropriate.
- d. Has disclosed to you that there are no significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the controls which could adversely affect the Company's ability to comply with the control criteria related to ABC-CA's CA business practices disclosure, service integrity (including key and certificate life cycle management controls), and CA environmental controls, consistent with the assertions of management.
- e. Has made available to you all significant information and records related to our assertion.
- f. Has responded fully to all inquiries made to us by you during your examination.
- g. Has disclosed to you any changes occurring or planned to occur subsequent to [Month, day, year], in controls or other factors that might significantly affect the controls, including any corrective actions taken by management with regard to significant deficiencies.

In management's opinion, ABC-CA, in providing its CA services at [location], ABC-CA, during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year]:

- Disclosed its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and provided such services in accordance with its disclosed practices

- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA); and
  - The integrity of keys and certificates it managed was established and protected throughout their life cycles
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber and relying party information was restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure;
  - The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations was maintained; and
  - CA systems development, maintenance, and operations were properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria, including the following:

### **CA Business Practices Disclosure**

#### **Service Integrity**

##### Key Life Cycle Management Controls

CA Key Generation  
CA Key Storage, Backup, and Recovery  
CA Public Key Distribution  
CA Key Usage  
CA Key Destruction  
CA Key Archival  
CA Cryptographic Hardware Life Cycle Management

##### Certificate Life Cycle Management Controls

Subscriber Registration  
Certificate Rekey  
Certificate Issuance  
Certificate Distribution  
Certificate Revocation  
Certificate Status Information Processing

### **CA Environmental Controls**

Certification Practice Statement and Certificate Policy Management  
Security Management  
Asset Classification and Management  
Personnel Security  
Physical and Environmental Security  
Operations Management  
System Access Management  
Systems Development and Maintenance  
Business Continuity Management  
Monitoring and Compliance  
Event Journaling

Very truly yours,

[Name]

[Title]

.70

## Appendix D

### Comparison of WebTrust for Certification Authorities Criteria and ANSI X9.79

Draft\*

<i>WebTrust for Certification Authorities Criteria</i>		<i>ANSI X9.79 (Draft) PKI Practices and Policy Framework Standard's Certification Authority Control Objectives (CACO)</i>	
<b>§1</b>	<b>CA Business Practices Disclosure</b>	<b>§7, §A, &amp; §B</b>	<b>General Requirements—CP and Certification Practice Statements; PKI Practices and Policy Elements; and Certification Authority Control Objectives</b>
<b>§2</b>	<b>Service Integrity</b>	<b>§B.2 &amp; B.3</b>	<b>Key and Certificate Life Cycle Management Controls</b>
<b>§2.1</b>	<b>Key Life Cycle Management Controls</b>	<b>§B.2</b>	<b>Key Life Cycle Management Controls</b>
§2.1.1	CA Key Generation	§B.2.1	CA Key Generation
§2.1.2	CA Key Storage, Backup, and Recovery	§B.2.2	CA Key Storage, Backup and Recovery
§2.1.3	CA Public Key Distribution	§B.2.3	CA Public Key Distribution
§2.1.4	CA Key Escrow	§B.2.4	CA Key Escrow
§2.1.5	CA Key Usage	§B.2.5	CA Key Usage
§2.1.6	CA Key Destruction	§B.2.6	CA Key Destruction
§2.1.7	CA Key Archival	§B.2.7	CA Key Archival
§2.1.8	CA Cryptographic Hardware Life Cycle Management	§B.2.8	CA Cryptographic Hardware Life Cycle Management
§2.1.9	CA-Provided Subscriber Key Management Services	§B.2.9	CA-Provided Subscriber Key Management Services
<b>§2.2</b>	<b>Certificate Life Cycle Management Controls</b>	<b>§B.3</b>	<b>Certificate Life Cycle Management Controls</b>
§2.2.1	Subscriber Registration	§B.3.1	Subscriber Registration
§2.2.2	Certificate Renewal	§B.3.2	Certificate Renewal
§2.2.3	Certificate Rekey	§B.3.3	Certificate Rekey
§2.2.4	Certificate Issuance	§B.3.4	Certificate Issuance
§2.2.5	Certificate Distribution	§B.3.5	Certificate Distribution
§2.2.6	Certificate Revocation	§B.3.6	Certificate Revocation

(continued)

\* The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) X9F5 Digital signature and Certificate Policy working group is developing the X9.79 PKI Practices and Policy Framework (X9.79) standard for the financial services community. This standard includes detailed Certification Authority Control Objectives against which certification authorities may be evaluated. An International Organization for Standardization (ISO) working group has been formed to standardize X9.79 based on international requirements in a new international standard.

<i>WebTrust for Certification Authorities Criteria</i>	<i>ANSI X9.79 (Draft) PKI Practices and Policy Framework Standard's Certification Authority Control Objectives (CACO)</i>
§2.2.7 Certificate Suspension	§B.3.7 Certificate Suspension
§2.2.8 Certificate Status Information Processing	§B.3.8 Certificate Status Information Processing
§2.2.9 Integrated Circuit Card (ICC) Life Cycle Management	§B.3.9 Integrated Circuit Card (ICC) Life Cycle Management
<b>§3 CA Environmental Controls</b>	<b>§B.1 CA Environmental Controls</b>
§3.1 Certification Practice Statement and Certificate Policy Management	§B.1.1 Certification Practice Statement and Certificate Policy Management
§3.2 Security Management	§B.1.2 Security Management
§3.3 Asset Classification and Management	§B.1.3 Asset Classification and Management
§3.4 Personnel Security	§B.1.4 Personnel Security
§3.5 Physical and Environmental Security	§B.1.5 Physical and Environmental Security
§3.6 Operations Management	§B.1.6 Operations Management
§3.7 System Access Management	§B.1.7 System Access Management
§3.8 Systems Development and Maintenance	§B.1.8 Systems Development and Maintenance
§3.9 Business Continuity Management	§B.1.9 Business Continuity Management
§3.10 Monitoring and Compliance	§B.1.10 Monitoring and Compliance
§3.11 Event Journaling	§B.1.11 Event Journaling

## Appendix E

### **Comparison of CICA Section 5900, AICPA SAS No. 70, and AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities Reviews and Reports Covering the Business Activities of Certification Authority Organizations**

This document analyzes the form and content of reviews and reports performed under the indicated regulations indicating appropriate similarities and differences. For third-party reporting with respect to certification authorities (CAs), the most appropriate and relevant approach is to use the AICPA/CICA Certification Authority Trust approach wherever possible since it has been developed specifically around the reportable business activities of an organization acting as a CA.

[See table on following page.]

<i>Content/Approach</i>	<i>CICA Standards for Assurance Engagements, Section 5900 “Opinions, on Control Procedures at a Service Organization”</i>	<i>Statement on Auditing Standards No. 70, Service Organizations (AICPA, Professional Standards, vol. 1, AU sec. 324), as amended</i>	<i>AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities</i>
<i>Purpose</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>— Auditor to auditor communication for obtaining reliance for audit purposes</li><li>— Covers specified applications, functions, and processing environments</li><li>— Practical usage now results in business activity coverage</li></ul> Defined by each engagement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>— Auditor to auditor communication for obtaining reliance for audit purposes</li><li>— Covers specified applications, functions, and processing environments</li><li>— Practical usage now results in business activity coverage</li></ul> Defined by each engagement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>— Auditor communication to interested parties including business partners and existing and potential customers</li><li>— Mandatory coverage as noted below</li><li>— New criteria and illustrations for reporting activities of certification authorities</li></ul> Certification authority business activities pre-defined in principles and criteria
<i>Target of Evaluation</i>	Defined by each engagement	Defined by each engagement	Certification authority business activities pre-defined in principles and criteria
<i>Type of Engagement</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>— Report on design and existence of control procedures</li><li>— Report on design, effective operation, and continuity of control procedures</li></ul> Generally accepted auditing standards	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>— Report on controls placed in operation</li><li>— Report on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness</li></ul> Generally accepted auditing standards	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>— Report on compliance with WebTrust for Certification Authorities Principles and Criteria</li><li>— Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (U.S.)</li><li>— Standards for Assurance Engagements (Canada)</li></ul>
<i>Examination Standards</i>	Generally accepted auditing standards	Generally accepted auditing standards	

<i>Content/Approach Coverage of Activities</i>	<i>CICA Standards for Assurance Engagements, Section 5900 “Opinions, on Control Procedures at a Service Organization”</i>	<i>Statement on Auditing Standards No. 70, Service Organizations (AICPA, Professional Standards, vol. 1, AU sec. 324), as amended</i>	<i>AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities</i>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— No mandatory coverage</li> <li>— Coverage must be formulated for each engagement and defined in report scope.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— No mandatory coverage</li> <li>— Coverage must be formulated for each engagement and defined in report scope.</li> </ul>	<p>Areas of coverage defined by principles and criteria, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— CA business practice disclosure (including the privacy of subscriber and relying party information)</li> <li>— Service integrity</li> <li>— Key life cycle management controls</li> <li>— Certificate life cycle management controls</li> <li>— CA environmental controls</li> </ul> <p>Principles and criteria linked to ANSI X9.79 standard which is intended to be submitted to the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) for international standardization.</p> <p>AICPA/CICA provides uniform rules which are linked to industry accepted standards.</p>
<i>Linkage to Authoritative Standards</i>	<p>Any linkage would need to be established as part of a specific review.</p> <p>Adequacy of control objectives and procedures subjectively determined by auditor based on the engagement.</p>	<p>Any linkage would need to be established as part of a specific review.</p> <p>Adequacy of control objectives and procedures subjectively determined by auditor based on engagement.</p>	<p>Continuous coverage from the point of qualification. Qualification after compliance can be tested over a minimum 90-day period, followed by updates within a specified period (currently under debate whether this would be six months, annual, or some other).</p>
<i>Period of Coverage of Review</i>	<p>Acceptable alternatives:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Point in time (for design and existence)</li> <li>— Period of time (determined by client)</li> </ul>	<p>Acceptable alternatives:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Point in time (controls placed in operation)</li> <li>— Period of time (determined by client)</li> </ul>	

## Appendix F

### Practitioner Policies and Guidance for WebTrust for Certification Authority Engagements

This appendix includes practitioner policies which set forth practices that practitioners must follow when conducting a WebTrust engagement. These policies are in *italic* typeface. This section also includes additional practitioner guidance on implementing these policies. This guidance is in normal typeface.

#### Client/Engagement Acceptance

*The practitioner should not accept an engagement where the awarding of a WebTrust seal would be misleading.*

The WebTrust seal implies that the entity is a reputable site that has reasonable disclosures and controls in a broad range of areas. Accordingly, the practitioner would avoid accepting a WebTrust engagement when the entity's disclosures outside the scope of the engagement are known by the practitioner to be misleading, when there are known major problems with controls not directly affecting the scope of the engagement, or when the entity is a known violator of laws or regulations.

*Procedures to provide WebTrust services resulting in the awarding of a WebTrust seal should be performed at a high level of assurance (i.e., audit or examination level).*

Although a practitioner can provide a variety of services related to WebTrust, such as a preliminary review of a certification authority (CA) to identify potential areas of nonconformity with the WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria, any engagement leading to a WebTrust Seal would need to include procedures to provide a high level of assurance (that is, audit or examination level) as a basis for an unqualified opinion.

#### Initial Period of Coverage

*The period of coverage for an initial WebTrust for Certification Authorities engagement should be at least two months or more as determined by the practitioner.*

In determining the initial period of coverage, the practitioner would consider what length of period would be required to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter as a basis for his or her opinion. For example, for established CAs and CA functions, two months may be quite sufficient, while for new CAs and CA functions, the practitioner may believe that a longer initial period would be more appropriate.

#### Frequency of Updates

*The interval between updates for the WebTrust for Certification Authorities seal should not exceed 12 months and this interval often may be considerably shorter.*

In determining the interval between updates, the practitioner would consider:

- The nature and complexity of the CA's operations.
- The frequency of significant changes to the CA's operations.

- The relative effectiveness of the entity's monitoring and change management controls for ensuring continued conformity with the applicable WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria as such changes are made.
- The practitioner's professional judgment.

For example, in the situation of a start-up CA or CA function, it may be more appropriate that the initial examination period be established at 3 months, with the next review being performed 6 months after the WebTrust seal for Certification Authorities is awarded, thereafter moving to a 12-month review cycle. In order to provide continuous coverage and retain the seal, the period covered for update reports should either begin with the end of the prior period or the start of the period in the initial report.

*If the entity notifies the practitioner of a significant change potentially affecting conformance with the applicable WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria included in the scope of the engagement during the period between updates, the practitioner should determine whether:*

- a. An update examination would need to be performed,*
- b. The seal would need to be removed until an update examination is completed and an updated auditor's report is issued, or*
- c. No action is required at that time because of the nature of the change and /or the effectiveness of the entity's monitoring and change management controls.*

## Management Assertions

*Management should provide an appropriate written assertion on its Web site.*

Management's assertion would ordinarily identify the specific CA covered, the period covered (which ordinarily would be the same as that covered by the practitioner's report), and include a statement along the following lines, for example for the CA model:

Management has assessed the controls over its CA operations. Based on that assessment, in ABC Certification Authority, Inc. (ABC-CA) management's opinion, in providing its certification authority (CA) services at [location], ABC-CA, during the period from [Month, day, year] through [Month, day, year]:

- Disclosed its key and certificate life cycle management business and information privacy practices and provided such services in accordance with its disclosed practices
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber information was properly authenticated (for the registration activities performed by ABC-CA); and
  - The integrity of keys and certificates it managed was established and protected throughout their life cycles
- Maintained effective controls to provide reasonable assurance that:
  - Subscriber and relying party information was restricted to authorized individuals and protected from uses not specified in the CA's business practices disclosure;

- The continuity of key and certificate life cycle management operations was maintained; and
- CA systems development, maintenance, and operations were properly authorized and performed to maintain CA systems integrity based on the AICPA/CICA WebTrust for Certification Authorities criteria.

Example management assertions are provided in Appendix B [paragraph .68].

## Changes in Client Policies and Disclosures

Changes in an entity's disclosed policies need to be disclosed on its Web site. If the client appropriately discloses such changes, no mention of such change needs to be made in the practitioner's report.

## Sufficient Criteria for Unqualified Opinion

*In order to obtain an unqualified opinion, the entity should meet, in all material respects, all of the applicable WebTrust for Certification Authorities Criteria included in the scope of the engagement during the period covered by the report and each update period.*

## Subsequent Events

*The practitioner should consider the effect of subsequent events up to the date of the practitioner's report. When the practitioner becomes aware of events that materially affect the subject matter, and the practitioner's conclusion, the practitioner should consider whether the disclosed practices reflect those events properly or whether those events are addressed properly in the practitioner's report.*

## Representation Letter

*Prior to conclusion of the engagement and before the practitioner issues a report, the client will be required to provide to the practitioner a representation letter.*

Example representation letters are provided in Appendix C [paragraph .69].

---

[The next page is 16,001.]

# STATEMENT OF POSITION ACCOUNTING

## Introduction

As explained in the “Special Note About Financial Accounting Standards Board *Accounting Standards Codification*™” section of this publication, Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification*™ (ASC) codified thousands of nongovernmental accounting pronouncements (including those of the FASB, EITF, and the AICPA) into FASB ASC, which reduces the GAAP hierarchy to two levels: one that is authoritative (in FASB ASC) and one that is not (not in FASB ASC). FASB ASC codifies all AICPA accounting SOPs. This guidance becomes nonauthoritative on July 1, 2009, in its native form, but we have included it here for archive purposes. The authoritative source of this guidance beginning July 1, 2009 is FASB ASC.

Although AICPA Statement of Position (SOP) 98-2, *Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include Fund Raising*, was codified for nongovernmental entities as FASB ASC 958-720, it remains authoritative in its native form for governmental entities. The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) previously made this SOP, as originally issued, applicable to governmental entities; as such, is still authoritative for those entities. The SOP is presented here for application by governmental entities as authoritative guidance permitted by GASB.

Statements of Position of the Accounting Standards Division present the conclusions of the Accounting Standards Executive Committee, which is the senior technical body of the AICPA authorized to speak for the Institute in the areas of financial accounting and reporting. Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 69, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, identifies AICPA Statements of Position as sources of established accounting principles that an AICPA member should consider if the accounting treatment of a transaction or event is not specified by a pronouncement covered by Rule 203 of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct. SAS No. 69 is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending after March 15, 1992. An entity following an accounting treatment as of March 15, 1992, need not change to an accounting treatment specified in a Statement of Position whose effective date is before March 15, 1992. For Statements of Position whose effective date is subsequent to March 15, 1992, and for entities initially applying an accounting principle after March 15, 1992, the accounting treatment specified by that Statement of Position should be used or the member should be prepared to justify a conclusion that another treatment better presents the substance of the transaction in the circumstances.

---

[The next page is 16,501.]



**ACC Section 10,000****STATEMENT OF POSITION—ACCOUNTING**

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
10,730	Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include Fund Raising (SOP 98-2)	.01-.30
	Summary	
	Foreword	
	Introduction .....	.01-.05
	Scope .....	.06
	Conclusions .....	.07-.19
	Accounting for Joint Activities .....	.07-.15
	Purpose .....	.08-.11
	Audience .....	.12-.13
	Content .....	.14-.15
	Allocation Methods .....	.16
	Incidental Activities .....	.17
	Disclosures .....	.18-.19
	Effective Date .....	.20
	Appendix A—Flowchart: Accounting for Joint Activities .....	.21
	Appendix B—Background .....	.22
	Appendix C—Basis for Conclusions .....	.23
	Appendix D—Discussion of Conclusions .....	.24
	Appendix E—Illustrations of Applying the Criteria of Purpose, Audience, and Content to Determine Whether a Program or Management and General Activity Has Been Conducted .....	.25
	Appendix F—Illustrations of Allocation Methods .....	.26
	Appendix G—Illustrations of Disclosures .....	.27
	Appendix H—Contrast of Guidance in This SOP With the Guidance in SOP 87-2 .....	.28
	Appendix I—Effects on Other Guidance .....	.29
	Glossary .....	.30

[The next page is 20,441.]



## Section 10,730

**Statement of Position 98-2  
Accounting for Costs of Activities of  
Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and  
Local Governmental Entities That Include  
Fund Raising**

March 11, 1998

**NOTE**

Statements of Position on accounting issues present the conclusions of at least two-thirds of the Accounting Standards Executive Committee, which is the senior technical body of the Institute authorized to speak for the Institute in the areas of financial accounting and reporting. AU section 411, *The Meaning of Present Fairly in Conformity With Generally Accepted Accounting Principles*, identifies AICPA Statements of Position that have been cleared by either the Financial Accounting Standards Board (for financial statements of nongovernmental entities) or the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (for financial statements of state and local governmental entities), as sources of established accounting principles in category b of the hierarchy of generally accepted accounting principles that it establishes. AICPA members should consider the accounting principles in this Statement of Position if a different accounting treatment of a transaction or event is not specified by a pronouncement covered by Rule 203 of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct. In such circumstances, the accounting treatment specified by this Statement of Position should be used, or the member should be prepared to justify a conclusion that another treatment better presents the substance of the transaction in the circumstances.

**Summary**

This Statement of Position (SOP) applies to all nongovernmental not-for-profit organizations (NPOs) and all state and local governmental entities that solicit contributions.

This SOP requires—

- If the criteria of purpose, audience, and content as defined in this SOP are met, the costs of joint activities that are identifiable with a particular function should be charged to that function and joint costs should be allocated between fund raising and the appropriate program or management and general function.
- If any of the criteria of purpose, audience, and content are not met, all costs of the activity should be reported as fund-raising costs, including costs that otherwise might be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity, subject to the exception in the following sentence. Costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions that are part of joint activities, such as costs of direct donor benefits of a special event (for example, a meal), should not be reported as fund raising.

- Certain financial statement disclosures if joint costs are allocated.
- Some commonly used and acceptable allocation methods are described and illustrated although no methods are prescribed or prohibited.

This SOP amends existing guidance in AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides *Health Care Organizations*, *Not-for-Profit Organizations* (which was issued in August 1996 and supersedes SOP 87-2, *Accounting for Joint Costs of Informational Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal*, because the provisions of SOP 87-2 are incorporated into the Guide), and *Audits of State and Local Governmental Units*.\*

This SOP is effective for financial statements for years beginning on or after December 15, 1998. Earlier application is encouraged in fiscal years for which financial statements have not been issued. If comparative financial statements are presented, retroactive application is permitted but not required.

## Foreword

The accounting guidance contained in this document has been cleared by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) and the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB). The procedure for clearing accounting guidance in documents issued by the Accounting Standards Executive Committee (AcSEC) involves the FASB and the GASB reviewing and discussing in public board meetings (1) a prospectus for a project to develop a document, (2) a proposed exposure draft that has been approved by at least ten of AcSEC's fifteen members, and (3) a proposed final document that has been approved by at least ten of AcSEC's fifteen members. The document is cleared if at least five of the seven FASB members and three of the five GASB members do not object to AcSEC undertaking the project, issuing the proposed exposure draft or, after considering the input received by AcSEC as a result of the issuance of the exposure draft, issuing the final document.<sup>†</sup>

The criteria applied by the FASB and the GASB in their review of proposed projects and proposed documents include the following:

1. The proposal does not conflict with current or proposed accounting requirements, unless it is a limited circumstance, usually in specialized industry accounting, and the proposal adequately justifies the departure.
2. The proposal will result in an improvement in practice.
3. The AICPA demonstrates the need for the proposal.
4. The benefits of the proposal are expected to exceed the costs of applying it.

---

\* The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* supersedes the 1994 AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Audits of State and Local Governmental Units* and subsequent editions of that Guide with conforming changes made by the AICPA staff. The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* provides guidance on the application of this Statement of Position (SOP) to state and local governments. [Footnote added, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments*.]

<sup>†</sup> This document was cleared prior to July 1, 1997. In July 1997, the GASB increased to seven members. Documents considered by the GASB after July 1, 1997 are cleared if at least four of the seven GASB members do not object. [Footnote renumbered, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments*.]

In many situations, prior to clearance, the FASB and the GASB will propose suggestions, many of which are included in the documents.

## Introduction

**.01** Some nongovernmental not-for-profit organizations (NPOs) and some state and local governmental entities,<sup>1</sup> such as governmental colleges and universities and governmental health care providers, solicit support through a variety of **fund-raising activities**.<sup>2</sup> These **activities** include direct mail, telephone solicitation, door-to-door canvassing, telethons, special events, and others. Sometimes fund-raising activities are conducted with activities related to other functions, such as **program activities** or supporting services, such as **management and general activities**.<sup>3</sup> Sometimes fund-raising activities include components that would otherwise be associated with program or supporting services, but in fact support fund raising.

**.02** External users of financial statements—including contributors, creditors, accreditation agencies, and regulators—want assurance that fund-raising costs, as well as program costs and management and general costs, are stated fairly.

**.03** In 1987, the AICPA issued Statement of Position (SOP) 87-2, *Accounting for Joint Costs of Informational Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal*.<sup>4</sup> SOP 87-2 required that all circumstances concerning informational materials and activities that include a fund-raising appeal be considered in accounting for **joint costs** of those materials and activities and that certain criteria be applied

---

<sup>1</sup> This Statement of Position (SOP) uses the term *entity* to refer to both nongovernmental not-for-profit organizations (NPOs) and state and local governments.

<sup>2</sup> Terms that appear in the Glossary [paragraph .30] are set in **boldface type** the first time they appear.

<sup>3</sup> The functional classifications of fund raising, program, and management and general are discussed throughout this SOP for purposes of illustrating how the guidance in this SOP would be applied by entities that use those functional classifications. Some entities have a functional structure that does not include fund raising, program, or management and general, or that includes other functional classifications, such as **membership development**. This SOP is not intended to require reporting the functional classifications of fund raising, program, and management and general. In circumstances in which entities that have a functional structure that includes other functional classifications conduct joint activities, all costs of those joint activities should be charged to fund raising (or the category in which fund raising is reported—see the following two parenthetical sentences), unless the purpose, audience, and content of those joint activities are appropriate for achieving those other functions. (An example of an entity that reports fund raising in a category other than fund raising is a state and local governmental entity applying the accounting and financial reporting principles in the AICPA Industry Audit Guide *Audits of Colleges and Universities*, as amended by SOP 74-8. As discussed in paragraph D.5 of this SOP [paragraph .24], those entities are required to report fund raising as part of the “institutional support” function. See also footnote \*\* to paragraph D.5.) [Footnote revised, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of GASB Statements No. 34 and No. 35.]

<sup>4</sup> In August 1996, the AICPA issued the Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations*. The Guide supersedes SOP 87-2, *Accounting for Joint Costs of Informational Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal*, because the provisions of SOP 87-2 are incorporated into paragraphs 13.36 to 13.45 of *Not-for-Profit Organizations*. *Not-for-Profit Organizations* applies to all nongovernmental NPOs other than those required to follow the Audit and Accounting Guide *Health Care Organizations*. The discussion in this SOP of SOP 87-2 refers to both SOP 87-2 and the guidance included in paragraphs 13.36 to 13.45 of *Not-for-Profit Organizations*. Also, SOP 87-2 was not applicable to entities that are within the scope of Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) Statement No. 29, *The Use of Not-for-Profit Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles by Governmental Entities*.

in determining whether joint costs of those materials and activities should be charged to fund raising or allocated to program or management and general. Those criteria include requiring verifiable indications of the reasons for conducting the activity, such as the content, audience, and action, if any, requested of the participant, as well as other corroborating evidence. Further, SOP 87-2 required that all joint costs of those materials and activities be charged to fund raising unless the appeal is designed to motivate its audience to action other than providing financial support to the organization.

**.04** The provisions of SOP 87-2 have been difficult to implement and have been applied inconsistently in practice. (Appendix B [paragraph .22], “Background,” discusses this further.)

**.05** This SOP establishes financial accounting standards for accounting for **costs of joint activities**. In addition, this SOP requires financial statement disclosures about the nature of the activities for which joint costs have been allocated and the amounts of joint costs. Appendix F [paragraph .26] provides explanations and illustrations of some acceptable allocation methods.

## Scope

**.06** This SOP applies to all nongovernmental NPOs and all state and local governmental entities that solicit **contributions**.

## Conclusions

### Accounting for Joint Activities

**.07** If the criteria of purpose, audience, and content are met, the costs of a **joint activity** that are identifiable with a particular function should be charged to that function and joint costs should be allocated between fund raising and the appropriate program or management and general function. If any of the criteria are not met, all costs of the joint activity should be reported as fund-raising costs, including costs that otherwise might be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity, subject to the exception in the following sentence. Costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions that are part of joint activities, such as costs of direct donor benefits of a special event (for example, a meal), should not be reported as fund raising.

### Purpose

**.08** The purpose criterion is met if the purpose of the joint activity includes accomplishing program or management and general functions. (Paragraphs .09 and .10 provide guidance that should be considered in determining whether the purpose criterion is met. Paragraph .09 provides guidance pertaining to program functions only. Paragraph .10 provides guidance pertaining to both program and management and general functions.)

**.09** *Program functions.* To accomplish program functions, the activity should call for specific action by the audience that will **help accomplish the entity’s mission**. For purposes of applying the guidance in this SOP, the following are examples of activities that do and do not call for specific action by the audience that will help accomplish the entity’s mission:

- An entity's mission includes improving individuals' physical health. For that entity, motivating the audience to take specific action that will improve their physical health is a call for specific action by the audience that will help accomplish the entity's mission. An example of an activity that motivates the audience to take specific action that will improve their physical health is sending the audience a brochure that urges them to stop smoking and suggests specific methods, instructions, references, and resources that may be used to stop smoking.
- An entity's mission includes educating individuals in areas other than the causes, conditions, needs, or concerns that the entity's programs are designed to address (referred to hereafter in this SOP as "causes"). For that entity, educating the audience in areas other than causes or motivating the audience to otherwise engage in specific activities that will educate them in areas other than causes is a call for specific action by the audience that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Examples of entities whose mission includes educating individuals in areas other than causes are universities and possibly other entities. An example of an activity motivating individuals to engage in education in areas other than causes is a university inviting individuals to attend a lecture or class in which the individuals will learn about the solar system.
- Educating the audience about causes or motivating the audience to otherwise engage in specific activities that will educate them about causes is not a call for specific action by the audience that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Such activities are considered in support of fund raising. (However, some educational activities that might otherwise be considered as educating the audience about causes may implicitly call for specific action by the audience that will help accomplish the entity's mission. For example, activities that educate the audience about environmental problems caused by not recycling implicitly call for that audience to increase recycling. If the need for and benefits of the specific action are clearly evident from the educational message, the message is considered to include an implicit call for specific action by the audience that will help accomplish the entity's mission.)
- Asking the audience to make contributions is not a call for specific action by the audience that will help accomplish the entity's mission.

If the activity calls for specific action by the audience that will help accomplish the entity's mission, the guidance in paragraph .10 should also be considered in determining whether the purpose criterion is met.

**.10 Program and management and general functions.** The following factors should be considered, in the order in which they are listed,<sup>5</sup> to determine whether the purpose criterion is met:

- a. **Whether compensation or fees for performing the activity are based on contributions raised.** The purpose criterion is not met if a majority of compensation or fees for any party's performance of any component

---

<sup>5</sup> In considering the guidance in paragraph .10, the factor in paragraph .10a (the compensation or fees test) is the preeminent guidance. If the factor in paragraph .10a is not determinative, the factor in paragraph .10b (whether a similar program or management and general activity is conducted separately and on a similar or greater scale) should be considered. If the factor in paragraph .10b is not determinative, the factor in paragraph .10c (other evidence) should be considered.

of the discrete joint activity varies based on contributions raised for that discrete joint activity.<sup>6, 7</sup>

- b. *Whether a similar program or management and general activity is conducted separately and on a similar or greater scale.* The purpose criterion is met if either of the following two conditions is met:

(1) *Condition 1:*

- The program component of the joint activity calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission and
- A similar program component is conducted without the fund-raising component using the same **medium** and on a scale that is similar to or greater than the scale on which it is conducted with the fund raising.<sup>8</sup>

(2) *Condition 2:*

A management and general activity that is similar to the management and general component of the joint activity being accounted for is conducted without the fund-raising component using the same medium and on a scale that is similar to or greater than the scale on which it is conducted with the fund raising.

If the purpose criterion is met based on the factor in paragraph .10b, the factor in paragraph .10c should not be considered.

- c. *Other evidence.* If the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b do not determine whether the purpose criterion is met, other evidence may determine whether the criterion is met. All available evidence, both positive and negative, should be considered to determine whether, based on the weight of that evidence, the purpose criterion is met.

.11 The following are examples of indicators that provide evidence for determining whether the purpose criterion is met:

- a. Evidence that the purpose criterion may be met includes—

- *Measuring program results and accomplishments of the activity.* The facts may indicate that the purpose criterion is met if the entity measures program results and accomplishments of the activity (other than measuring the extent to which the public was educated about causes).

<sup>6</sup> Some compensation contracts provide that compensation for performing the activity is based on a factor other than contributions raised, but not to exceed a specified portion of contributions raised. For example, a contract may provide that compensation for performing the activity is \$10 per contact hour, but not to exceed 60 percent of contributions raised. In such circumstances, compensation is not considered based on amounts raised, unless the stated maximum percentage is met. In circumstances in which it is not yet known whether the stated maximum percentage is met, compensation is not considered based on amounts raised, unless it is probable that the stated maximum percentage will be met.

<sup>7</sup> The *compensation or fees test* is a negative test in that it either (a) results in failing the purpose criterion or (b) is not determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Therefore, if the activity fails the purpose criterion based on this factor (the compensation or fees test), the activity fails the purpose criterion and the factor in paragraph .10b should not be considered. If the purpose criterion is not failed based on this factor, this factor is not determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met and the factor in paragraph .10b should be considered.

<sup>8</sup> Determining the scale on which an activity is conducted may be a subjective determination. Factors to consider in determining the scale on which an activity is conducted may include dollars spent, the size of the audience reached, and the degree to which the characteristics of the audience are similar to the characteristics of the audience of the activity being evaluated.

- *Medium.* The facts may indicate that the purpose criterion is met if the program component of the joint activity calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission and if the entity conducts the program component without a significant fund-raising component in a different medium. Also, the facts may indicate that the purpose criterion is met if the entity conducts the management and general component of the joint activity without a significant fund-raising component in a different medium.
- b. Evidence that the purpose criterion may not be met includes—
- *Evaluation or compensation.* The facts may indicate that the purpose criterion is not met if (a) the evaluation of any party's performance of any component of the discrete joint activity varies based on contributions raised for that discrete joint activity or (b) some, but less than a majority, of compensation or fees for any party's performance of any component of the discrete joint activity varies based on contributions raised for that discrete joint activity.
- c. Evidence that the purpose criterion may be either met or not met includes—
- *Evaluation of measured results of the activity.* The entity may have a process to evaluate measured program results and accomplishments of the activity (other than measuring the extent to which the public was educated about causes). If the entity has such a process, in evaluating the effectiveness of the joint activity, the entity may place significantly greater weight on the activity's effectiveness in accomplishing program goals or may place significantly greater weight on the activity's effectiveness in raising contributions. The former may indicate that the purpose criterion is met. The latter may indicate that the purpose criterion is not met.
  - *Qualifications.* The qualifications and duties of those performing the joint activity should be considered.
    - If a third party, such as a consultant or contractor, performs part or all of the joint activity, such as producing brochures or making telephone calls, the third party's experience and the range of services provided to the entity should be considered in determining whether the third party is performing fund-raising, program (other than educating the public about causes), or management and general activities on behalf of the entity.
    - If the entity's employees perform part or all of the joint activity, the full range of their job duties should be considered in determining whether those employees are performing fund-raising, program (other than educating the public about causes), or management and general activities on behalf of the entity. For example, (a) employees who are not members of the fund-raising department and (b) employees who are members of the fund-raising department but who perform non-fund-raising activities are more likely to perform activities that include program or management

and general functions than are employees who otherwise devote significant time to fund raising.

- *Tangible evidence of intent.* Tangible evidence indicating the intended purpose of the joint activity should be considered. Examples of such tangible evidence include
  - The entity's written mission statement, as stated in its fund-raising activities, bylaws, or annual report.
  - Minutes of board of directors', committees', or other meetings.
  - Restrictions imposed by donors (who are not related parties) on gifts intended to fund the joint activity.
  - Long-range plans or operating policies.
  - Written instructions to other entities, such as script writers, consultants, or list brokers, concerning the purpose of the joint activity, audience to be targeted, or method of conducting the joint activity.
  - Internal management memoranda.

### **Audience**

.12 A rebuttable presumption exists that the audience criterion is not met if the audience includes prior donors or is otherwise selected based on its ability or likelihood to contribute to the entity. That presumption can be overcome if the audience is also selected for one or more of the reasons in paragraph .13a, .13b, or .13c. In determining whether that presumption is overcome, entities should consider the extent to which the audience is selected based on its ability or likelihood to contribute to the entity and contrast that with the extent to which it is selected for one or more of the reasons in paragraph .13a, .13b, or .13c. For example, if the audience's ability or likelihood to contribute is a significant factor in its selection and it has a need for the action related to the program component of the joint activity, but having that need is an insignificant factor in its selection, the presumption would not be overcome.

.13 In circumstances in which the audience includes no prior donors and is not otherwise selected based on its ability or likelihood to contribute to the entity, the audience criterion is met if the audience is selected for one or more of the following reasons:

- a. The audience's need to use or reasonable potential for use of the specific action called for by the program component of the joint activity
- b. The audience's ability to take specific action to assist the entity in meeting the goals of the program component of the joint activity
- c. The entity is required to direct the management and general component of the joint activity to the particular audience or the audience has reasonable potential for use of the management and general component

### **Content**

.14 The content criterion is met if the joint activity supports program or management and general functions, as follows:

- a. *Program.* The joint activity calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission. If the need for and benefits of the action are not clearly evident, information describing the action and explaining the need for and benefits of the action is provided.

- b. Management and general.* The joint activity fulfills one or more of the entity's management and general responsibilities through a component of the joint activity.<sup>9</sup>

.15 Information identifying and describing the entity, causes, or how the contributions provided will be used is considered in support of fund raising.

## Allocation Methods

.16 The cost allocation methodology used should be rational and systematic, it should result in an allocation of joint costs that is reasonable, and it should be applied consistently given similar facts and circumstances.

## Incidental Activities

.17 Some fund-raising activities conducted in conjunction with program or management and general activities are incidental to such program or management and general activities. For example, an entity may conduct a fund-raising activity by including a generic message, "Contributions to Organization X may be sent to [address]" on a small area of a message that would otherwise be considered a program or management and general activity based on its purpose, audience, and content. That fund-raising activity likely would be considered incidental to the program or management and general activity being conducted. Similarly, entities may conduct program or management and general activities in conjunction with fund-raising activities that are incidental to such fund-raising activities. For example, an entity may conduct a program activity by including a generic program message such as "Continue to pray for [a particular cause]" on a small area of a message that would otherwise be considered fund raising based on its purpose, audience, and content. That program activity would likely be considered incidental to the fund-raising activity being conducted. Similarly, an entity may conduct a management and general activity by including a brief management and general message—"We recently changed our phone number. Our new number is 123-4567"—on a small area of a message that would otherwise be considered a program or fund-raising activity based on its purpose, audience, and content. That management and general activity would likely be considered incidental to the program or fund-raising activity being conducted. In circumstances in which a fund-raising, program, or management and general activity is conducted in conjunction with another activity and is incidental to that other activity, and the conditions in this SOP for allocation are met, joint costs are permitted but not required to be allocated and may therefore be charged to the functional classification related to the activity that is not the incidental activity. However, in circumstances in which the program or management and general activities are incidental to the fund-raising activities, it is unlikely that the conditions required by this SOP to permit allocation of joint costs would be met.

## Disclosures

.18 Entities that allocate joint costs should disclose the following in the notes to their financial statements:

- a.* The types of activities for which joint costs have been incurred
- b.* A statement that such costs have been allocated

---

<sup>9</sup> Some states or other regulatory bodies require that certain disclosures be included when soliciting contributions. For purposes of applying the guidance in this SOP, communications that include such required disclosures are considered fund-raising activities and are not considered management and general activities.

- c. The total amount allocated during the period and the portion allocated to each functional expense category

.19 This SOP encourages, but does not require, that the amount of joint costs for each kind of joint activity be disclosed, if practical.

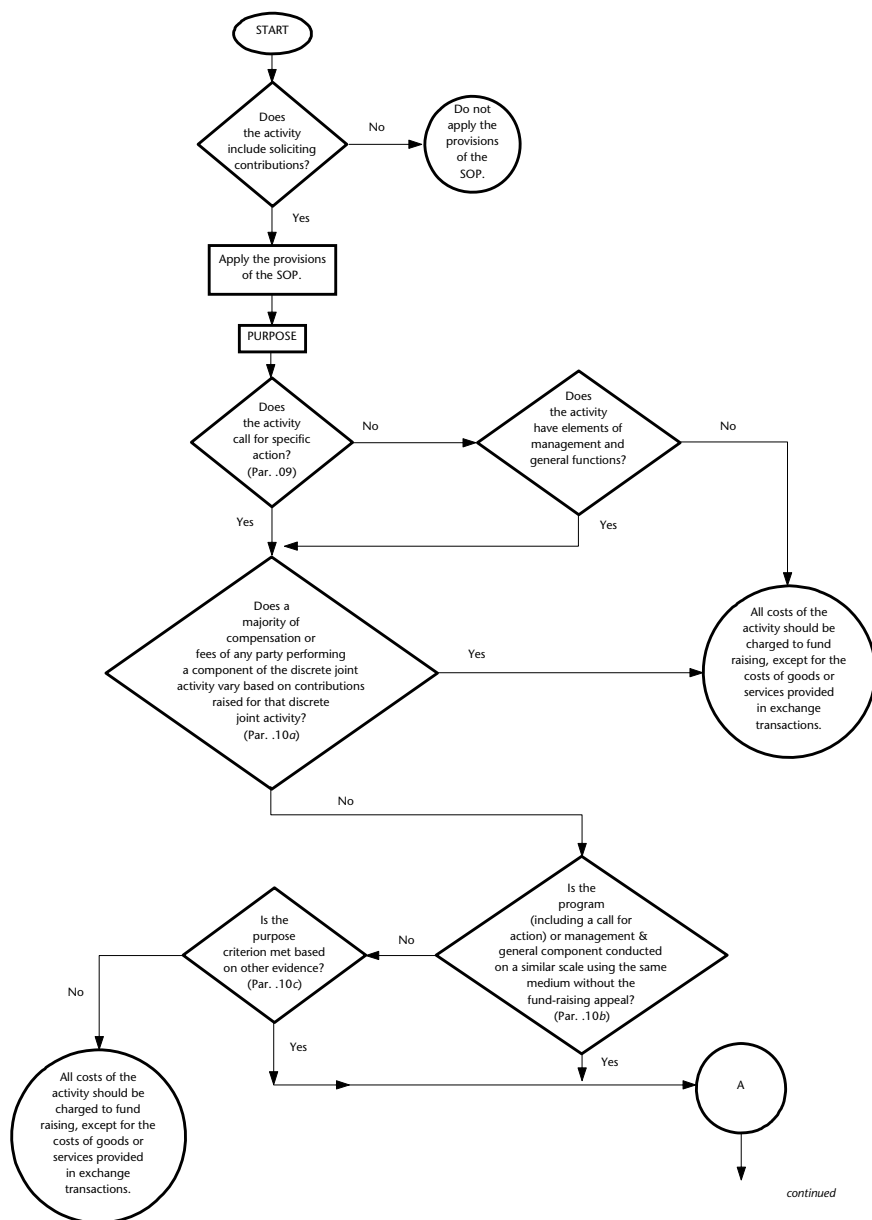
## Effective Date

.20 This SOP is effective for financial statements for years beginning on or after December 15, 1998. Earlier application is encouraged in fiscal years for which financial statements have not been issued. If comparative financial statements are presented, retroactive application is permitted but not required.

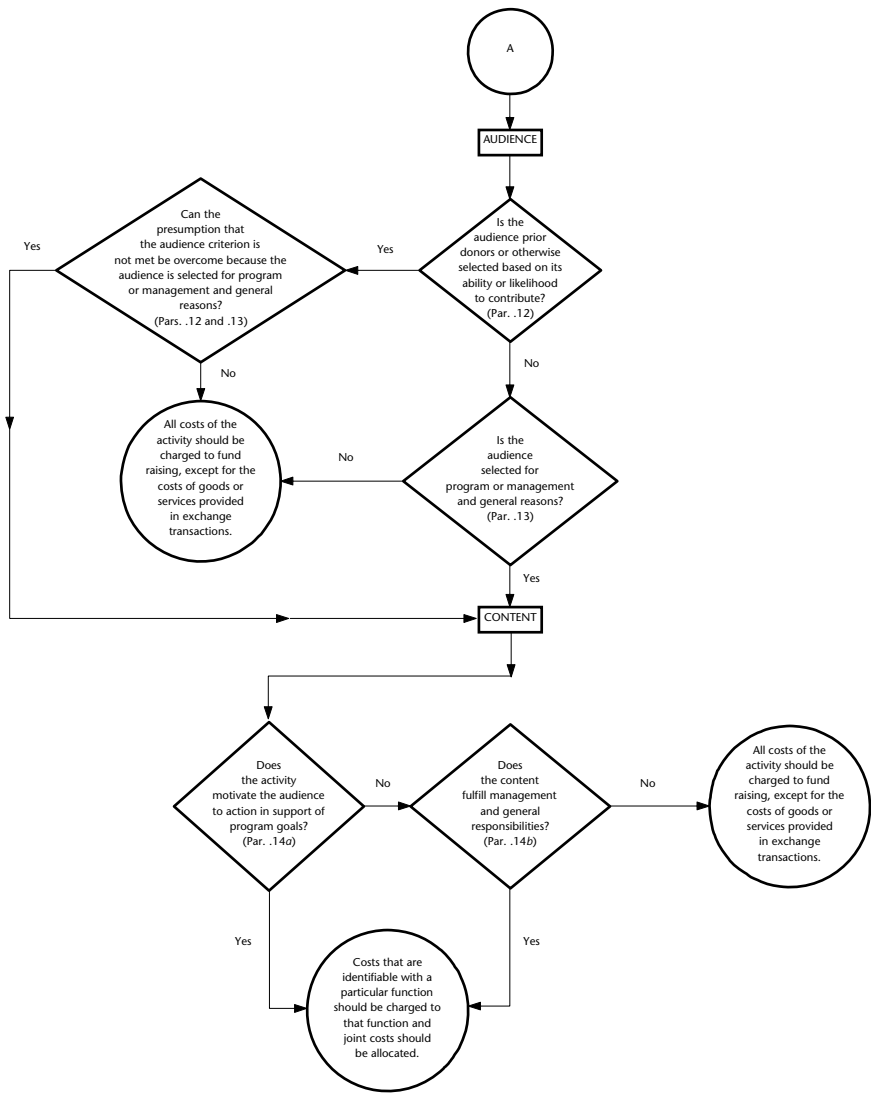
**The provisions of this Statement of Position need  
not be applied to immaterial items.**

.21

## Appendix A

Accounting for Joint Activities<sup>10</sup>

<sup>10</sup> **Note:** This flowchart summarizes certain guidance in this SOP and is not intended as a substitute for the SOP.



## Appendix B

### Background

**B.1.** As stated in paragraph .04, the provisions of Statement of Position (SOP) 87-2, *Accounting for Joint Costs of Informational Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal*, have been difficult to implement and applied inconsistently in practice. That difficulty has been due in part to the following:

- The second sentence of paragraph 1 of SOP 87-2 stated that “some of the costs incurred by such organizations are clearly identifiable with fundraising, such as the cost of fund-raising consulting services.” It is unclear whether activities that would otherwise be considered program activities should be characterized as program activities if they are performed or overseen by professional fund raisers. Also, it is unclear whether activities would be reported differently (for example, as program rather than fund raising) depending on whether the fund-raising consultant is compensated by a predetermined fee or by some other method, such as a percentage of contributions raised.
- SOP 87-2 was unclear about whether allocation of costs to fund-raising expense is required if the activity for which the costs were incurred would not have been undertaken without the fund-raising component.
- SOP 87-2 defined joint costs through examples, and it is therefore unclear what kinds of costs were covered by SOP 87-2. For example, it is unclear whether salaries and indirect costs can be joint costs.
- Some believe the guidance in SOP 87-2 was inadequate to determine whether joint activities, such as those that request contributions and also list the warning signs of a disease, are designed to motivate their audiences to action other than to provide contributions to the entity. It is unclear what attributes the targeted audience should possess in order to conclude that a program function is being conducted.

**B.2.** In 1992, the Accounting Standards Executive Committee (AcSEC) undertook a project to supersede SOP 87-2, to provide clearer guidance than that provided by SOP 87-2, as well as to provide guidance that would improve on the guidance in SOP 87-2. In September 1993, AcSEC released an exposure draft of a proposed SOP, *Accounting for Costs of Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal*, for public comment. AcSEC received more than 300 comment letters on the exposure draft. AcSEC redeliberated the issues based on the comments received.

**B.3.** In 1996, after redeliberating the issues based on the comments received and making certain revisions to the draft SOP, AcSEC conducted a field test of the draft SOP. The objectives of the field test were to determine whether the provisions of the draft SOP were sufficiently clear and definitive to generate consistent and comparable application of the SOP. Based on the field test results, AcSEC concluded that the provisions of the draft SOP, with certain revisions, were sufficiently clear and definitive to generate consistent and comparable application of the SOP.

**B.4.** Some respondents who commented on the exposure draft, as well as some interested parties who followed the project through its due process subsequent to the exposure draft, commented that the SOP should be reexposed for public comment. Reasons cited include:

- Approximately three years had passed between the end of the comment period and AcSEC's decision to issue the SOP.
- AcSEC made significant revisions to the SOP subsequent to releasing the exposure draft for comment.

Considering whether a proposed standard should be reexposed for public comment is inherently a subjective process. Factors that AcSEC considered include—

- The significance of changes made to the exposure draft and whether those changes result in guidance that the public did not have an opportunity to consider.
- Whether the scope was revised in such a way that affected entities did not have an opportunity to comment.
- New information about or changes in the nature of the transactions being considered, practice, or other factors.

AcSEC believes that the length of time between exposure and final issuance is not pertinent to whether the SOP should be reexposed for public comment.

**B.5.** Based on consideration of the factors identified, AcSEC believes that the SOP should not be reexposed for public comment. AcSEC notes that although the SOP has been revised based on comments received on the exposure draft, those revisions do not change the overall model in the SOP. Those revisions were made primarily to clarify the SOP and improve its operationality. Further, AcSEC believes that the project received a high level of attention from interested parties. AcSEC provided working drafts to interested parties and those parties provided input throughout the process, up to and including the Financial Accounting Standard Board's and the Governmental Accounting Standards Board's clearance of the SOP for issuance.

**B.6.** Appendix C [paragraph .23] discusses the key issues in the exposure draft and comments received on those issues, as well as the basis for AcSEC's conclusions on those and certain other issues.

## Appendix C

### Basis for Conclusions

**C.1.** This section discusses considerations that were deemed significant by members of the Accounting Standards Executive Committee (AcSEC) in reaching the conclusions in this Statement of Position (SOP). It includes reasons for accepting certain views and rejecting others. Individual AcSEC members gave greater weight to some factors than to others.

### Overall Framework

**C.2.** This SOP uses the model in SOP 87-2, *Accounting for Joint Costs of Informational Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal*, as a starting point and clarifies guidance that was unclear, provides more detailed guidance, revises some guidance, and expands the scope of costs covered to include all costs of joint activities. The model established by SOP 87-2 was to account for joint costs as fund raising unless an entity could demonstrate that a program or management and general function had been conducted. SOP 87-2 used verifiable indications of the reasons for conducting the activity, such as content, audience, the action requested, if any, and other corroborating evidence as a basis for determining whether a program or management and general function had been conducted.

**C.3.** On an overall basis, the majority of respondents who commented on the September 1993 exposure draft of a proposed SOP, *Accounting for Costs of Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal*, opposed it, for various reasons, including the following:

- The guidance in SOP 87-2 is operational, results in sound financial reporting, and should be retained.
- The guidance in SOP 87-2 should be retained but clarified.
- The guidance proposed in the exposure draft should be revised. (Some commented that it overstates fund raising; others commented that it understates fund raising.)

**C.4.** AcSEC concluded that it supports the model in the exposure draft, subject to certain revisions. AcSEC believes that this SOP provides clear, detailed accounting guidance that, when applied, will increase comparability of financial statements. Those statements will also include more meaningful disclosures without incurring increased costs.

**C.5.** Some respondents commented that the model in the exposure draft would adversely affect entities both financially and operationally. Various reasons were given, including the following:

- It would inhibit the ability of entities, particularly small entities and entities that raise contributions through direct solicitations, to generate the necessary revenue to perform their program services.
- Most entities would not meet the criteria in this SOP for reporting costs of joint activities as program or management and general, because they must combine their mission statements, public informa-

tion and education, and fund-raising appeals due to a lack of resources. Some noted that this may result in unsatisfactory ratings from public watchdog groups.

AcSEC did not find these arguments compelling. This SOP provides accounting guidance; it provides no guidance concerning how entities should undertake their activities. Also, this SOP does not prohibit allocation merely because activities carrying out different functions are combined. In fact, this SOP provides guidance for reporting costs as program or management and general in circumstances in which those activities are combined with fund-raising. Moreover, actions taken by financial statement users are not the direct result of the requirements of this SOP. Rather, those actions may result from more relevant and useful information on which to base decisions.

**C.6.** Some respondents commented that the exposure draft is biased toward reporting expenses as fund raising. AcSEC believes that determining whether the costs of joint activities should be classified as program, management and general, or fund raising sometimes is difficult, and such distinctions sometimes are subject to a high degree of judgment. AcSEC believes that external financial statement users focus on and have perceptions about amounts reported as program, management and general, and fund raising. That focus and those perceptions provide incentives for entities to report expenses as program or management and general rather than fund raising. Therefore, in circumstances in which joint activities are conducted, a presumption exists that expenses should be reported as fund raising rather than as program or management and general. The criteria in this SOP provide guidance for entities to overcome that presumption.

## Accounting for Joint Activities

**C.7.** This SOP requires that if any of the criteria of purpose, audience, and content are not met, all costs of the activity should be reported as fund raising, including costs that otherwise might be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity, subject to the exception in the following sentence. Costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions that are part of joint activities, such as costs of direct donor benefits of a special event (for example, a meal), should not be reported as fund raising. (This SOP expands on the model established by SOP 87-2 by including all costs of joint activities other than costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions, rather than merely joint costs.) AcSEC believes that the criteria of purpose, audience, and content are each relevant in determining whether a joint activity should be reported as fund raising, program, or management and general because each provides significant evidence about the benefits expected to be obtained by undertaking the activity.

**C.8.** Some respondents commented that reporting costs that otherwise might be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity as fund raising is misleading and that the scope of the SOP should include only joint costs of joint activities. Some commented that reporting costs that otherwise might be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity as fund raising conflicts with Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 117, *Financial Statements of Not-for-Profit Organizations*, which defines fund raising, program, and management and general and requires not-for-profit organizations (NPOs) to report information about expenses using those functional classifications.

**C.9.** AcSEC believes that the purpose for which costs other than joint costs are incurred may be fund raising, program, or management and general, depending on the context in which they are used in the activity undertaken. For example, a program-related pamphlet may be sent to an audience in need of the program. In that context, the pamphlet is used for program purposes. However, in order to demonstrate to potential donors that the entity's programs are worthwhile, that same pamphlet may be sent to an audience that is likely to contribute, but that has no need or reasonable potential for use of the program. In that context, the pamphlet is used for fund raising. AcSEC believes this broader scope will result in more comparability and more meaningful financial reporting by covering all costs of activities that include fund raising and by assigning those costs to the function for which they are incurred, consistent with the guidance in Statement No. 117.

**C.10.** AcSEC believes that costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions should not be charged to fund raising because those costs are incurred in exchange for revenues other than contributions.

## Criteria of Purpose, Audience, and Content

### Call For Action

**C.11.** The definition of *program* in FASB Statement No. 117 includes public education. As noted in paragraph C.6, AcSEC believes that in circumstances in which joint activities are conducted, a presumption exists that expenses should be reported as fund raising rather than as program or management and general. AcSEC believes that in order to overcome that presumption, it is not enough that (a) the purpose of the activity include educating the public about causes, (b) the audience has a need or reasonable potential for use of any educational component of the activity pertaining to causes, or (c) the audience has the ability to assist the entity in meeting the goals of the program component of the activity by becoming educated about causes. Therefore, AcSEC concluded that for purposes of this SOP, in order to conclude that the criteria of purpose, audience, and content are met program activities are required to call for specific action by the recipient (other than becoming educated about causes) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. As discussed in paragraph .09, in certain circumstances educational activities may call for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission.

### Purpose

**C.12.** AcSEC believes meeting the purpose criterion demonstrates that the purpose of the activity includes accomplishing program or management and general functions. Inherent in the notion of a joint activity is that the activity has elements of more than one function. Accordingly, the purpose criterion provides guidance for determining whether the purpose of the activity includes accomplishing program or management and general functions in addition to fund raising.

### Compensation and Evaluation Tests

**C.13.** The exposure draft proposed that all costs of the joint activity should be charged to fund raising if (a) substantially all compensation or fees for performing the activity are based on amounts raised or (b) the evaluation of the party performing the activity is based on amounts raised. Some respondents

commented that basing the method of compensation or evaluating the performance of the party performing the activity based on contributions raised should not lead to the conclusion that all costs of the activity should be charged to fund raising. Others commented that the method of compensation is unrelated to whether the purpose criterion is met. The reasons given included the following:

- It is counterintuitive to imply that those performing multipurpose activities that include fund raising would not be compensated or evaluated based on amounts raised.
- Such guidance would create a bias toward entities that use employees to raise contributions and against entities that hire professional fund raisers and public relations firms and is therefore not neutral.

Some respondents gave examples of circumstances in which substantially all compensation is based on contributions raised and asserted that the activity was nevertheless a program activity. In each of those examples, AcSEC considered all the facts presented and concluded that the activity was fund raising.

**C.14.** AcSEC continues to support the spirit of the proposed guidance, because AcSEC believes that basing a majority of compensation on funds raised is persuasive evidence that the activity is a fund-raising activity. Nevertheless, AcSEC believes that the proposed guidance was unclear and would be difficult to implement, primarily because of the broad definition of “based on contributions raised” included in the glossary of the exposure draft. In connection with that issue, AcSEC was concerned that any joint activities performed by a fund-raising department or by individuals whose duties include fund raising, such as executive officers of small NPOs who are employed based on their ability to raise contributions, would be required to be reported as fund raising because the compensation of the parties performing those activities is based on amounts raised. Also, AcSEC had concerns that it would be difficult to determine whether fixed contract amounts were negotiated based on expected contributions. Therefore, AcSEC concluded that the compensation test should be revised to provide that the purpose criterion is not met if a majority of compensation or fees for any party’s performance of any component of the discrete joint activity varies based on contributions raised for that discrete joint activity. AcSEC believes that guidance is sound and is operational.

**C.15.** AcSEC believes that the guidance in paragraph .10a is not biased against entities that hire professional fund raisers, because it applies to the entity’s employees as well as professional fund raisers. For example, if a majority of an employee’s compensation or fees for performing a component of a discrete joint activity varies based on contributions raised for that discrete joint activity, the purpose criterion is not met.

### ***Similar Function-Similar Medium Test***

**C.16.** Some respondents misinterpreted the exposure draft as providing that, in order to meet the purpose criterion, the program or management and general activity must be conducted without the fund-raising component, using the same medium and on a scale that is similar to or greater than the program or management and general component of the activity being accounted for. That was not a requirement proposed by the exposure draft. The exposure draft proposed that meeting that condition would result in meeting the purpose criterion. Failing the criterion merely leads to consideration of other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11. AcSEC has revised the SOP to state this more clearly.

**Other Evidence**

**C.17.** The compensation test and the similar function-similar medium test may not always be determinative because the attributes that they consider may not be present. Therefore, this SOP includes indicators that should be considered in circumstances in which the compensation test and the similar function-similar medium test are not determinative. The nature of those indicators is such that they may be present in varying degrees. Therefore, all available evidence, both positive and negative, should be considered to determine whether, based on the weight of that evidence, the purpose criterion is met.

**Audience**

**C.18.** The exposure draft proposed that if the audience for the materials or activities is selected principally on its ability or likelihood to contribute, the audience criterion is not met and all the costs of the activity should be charged to fund raising. Further, the exposure draft proposed that if the audience is selected principally based on its need for the program or because it can assist the entity in meeting its program goals other than by financial support provided to the entity, the audience criterion is met. Some respondents commented that that audience criterion is too narrow, because it is based on the principal reason for selecting the audience. They asserted that for some activities no principal reason exists for selecting an audience; entities select the audience for those activities for multiple reasons, such as both the audience's ability to contribute and its ability to help meet program goals. Some commented that for some activities, entities select audiences that have provided past financial support because, by providing financial support, those audiences have expressed an interest in the program.

**C.19.** AcSEC believes that meeting the audience criterion should demonstrate that the audience is selected because it is a suitable audience for accomplishing the activity's program or management and general functions. Therefore, the reasons for selecting the audience should be consistent with the program or management and general content of the activity. However, AcSEC believes it is inherent in the notion of joint activities that the activity has elements of more than one function, including fund raising, and acknowledges that it may be difficult to determine the principal reason for selecting the audience. Accordingly, AcSEC concluded that if the audience includes prior donors or is otherwise selected based on its ability or likelihood to contribute, a rebuttable presumption should exist that the audience was selected to raise funds. AcSEC believes that the reasons for selecting the audience that can overcome that presumption, which are included in paragraph .13 of this SOP, demonstrate that the audience is selected because it is a suitable audience for accomplishing the activity's program or management and general functions based on the program or management and general content of the activity.

**Content**

**C.20.** AcSEC believes that meeting the content criterion demonstrates that the content of the activity supports program or management and general functions. AcSEC believes that accounting guidance should not impose value judgments about whether the entity's mission, programs, and responsibilities are worthwhile. Therefore, whether the content criterion is met depends on the relationship of the content to the entity's mission, programs, and management and general responsibilities.

**C.21.** Paragraph .14 provides that, to meet the content criterion, program activities should call for specific action by the recipient that will help accom-

plish the entity's mission. The exposure draft proposed that slogans, general calls to prayer, and general calls to protest do not meet the content criterion; some respondents disagreed. AcSEC concluded that this SOP should be silent concerning whether slogans, general calls to prayer, and general calls to protest are calls to action that meet the content criterion. AcSEC believes that determining whether those items are calls to action that meet the content criterion requires judgments based on the particular facts and circumstances.

**C.22.** Some respondents commented that educating the public about causes without calling for specific action should satisfy the content criterion. They noted that this is particularly relevant for NPOs subject to Internal Revenue Code (IRC) Section 501(c)4, because those NPOs are involved in legislative reform. Also, some noted that it may be the entity's mission or goal to educate the public about causes. They believe that, in those cases, the NPO's program is to educate the public about causes without necessarily calling for specific action by the recipient.

**C.23.** As discussed in paragraph C.11, AcSEC concluded that education that does not motivate the audience to action is in fact done in support of fund raising. However, this SOP acknowledges that some educational messages motivate the audience to specific action, and those messages meet the content criterion. AcSEC believes that that provision will result in the activities of some NPOs subject to IRC Section 501(c)4 (and some other entities, whose mission or goal is to educate the public) meeting the content criterion.

**C.24.** Paragraph .13c provides that one way that the audience criterion is met is if the entity is required to direct the management and general component of the activity to the particular audience. Further, as discussed in paragraph D.13, in *Discussion of Conclusions*, an audience that includes prior donors and is selected because the entity is required to send them certain information to comply with requirements of the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) is an example of an audience that is selected because the entity is required to direct the management and general component of the activity to that audience. Paragraph .14b provides that one way that the content criterion is met is if the activity fulfills one or more of the entity's management and general responsibilities through a component of the joint activity. However, footnote 9 to paragraph .14b provides that disclosures made when soliciting contributions to comply with requirements of states or other regulatory bodies are considered fund-raising activities, and are not considered management and general activities. AcSEC considered whether it is inconsistent to conclude both that (a) activities conducted to comply with requirements of regulatory bodies concerning contributions that have been received are management and general activities, and that (b) activities conducted to comply with requirements of regulatory bodies concerning soliciting contributions are fund-raising activities. AcSEC believes that those provisions are not inconsistent. AcSEC believes there is a distinction between (a) requirements that must be met as a result of receiving contributions and (b) requirements that must be met in order to solicit contributions. AcSEC believes that activities that are undertaken as a result of receiving contributions are management and general activities while activities that are undertaken in order to solicit contributions are fund-raising activities.

## Incidental Activities

**C.25.** Many entities conduct fund-raising activities in conjunction with program or management and general activities that are incidental to such pro-

gram or management and general activities. Similarly, entities may conduct program or management and general activities in conjunction with fund-raising activities that are incidental to such fund-raising activities. Such efforts may be a practical and efficient means for entities to conduct activities, although the principal purpose of the activity may be to fulfill either fund-raising, program, or management and general functions. The exposure draft proposed that incidental activities need not be considered in applying this SOP. Some respondents disagreed with that guidance, while others commented that it was confusing. AcSEC continues to support that guidance. AcSEC believes that guidance is necessary to avoid requiring complex allocations in circumstances in which the criteria of purpose, audience, and content are met but the activity is overwhelmingly either fund raising, program, or management and general.

## Allocation Methods

**C.26.** Respondents had various comments concerning allocation methods, including the following:

- The SOP should focus on allocation methods rather than on circumstances in which entities should allocate.
- The SOP should prescribe allocation methods.
- The approach taken in the SOP—discussing, rather than requiring or prohibiting allocation methods—is sound.
- Certain allocation methods should be prohibited.
- The SOP should set maximum allocation percentages.

AcSEC believes that no particular allocation method or methods are necessarily more desirable than other methods in all circumstances. Therefore, this SOP neither prescribes nor prohibits any particular allocation methods. AcSEC believes entities should apply the allocation methods that result in the most reasonable cost allocations for their activities. Appendix F [paragraph .26] of this SOP illustrates several allocation methods, any one of which may result in a reasonable or unreasonable allocation of costs in particular circumstances. The methods illustrated are not the only acceptable methods. However, AcSEC believes that the methods illustrated in this SOP are among those most likely to result in meaningful cost allocations.

**C.27.** Accounting Principles Board (APB) Opinion No. 20, *Accounting Changes*, states in paragraph 7 that “the term *accounting principle* includes ‘not only accounting principles and practices but also the methods of applying them.’” APB Opinion 20 also states in paragraphs 15 and 16 that

... In the preparation of financial statements there is a presumption that an accounting principle once adopted should not be changed in accounting for events and transactions of a similar type ... The presumption that an entity should not change an accounting principle may be overcome only if the enterprise justifies the use of an alternative acceptable accounting principle [*allocation method*] on the basis that it is preferable.

A change in cost allocation methodology may be a change in accounting principle for entities covered by this SOP. Accordingly, paragraph .16 of this SOP provides that the cost allocation methodology used should be applied consistently, given similar facts and circumstances.

## Disclosures

**C.28.** Respondents made various comments concerning the required and encouraged disclosures, including recommendations for additional disclosures and recommendations that certain disclosures be deleted. AcSEC was not persuaded that the costs of the other disclosures recommended by respondents are justified by their benefits. AcSEC believes that, with the exception of one disclosure, the disclosures prescribed by the exposure draft provide relevant information about the kinds of activities for which joint costs have been incurred and the manner in which those costs are reported in the financial statements. In considering disclosures proposed by the exposure draft about the allocation method, AcSEC observed that there are no requirements to disclose methods of allocating other expenses and questioned the utility of disclosing the allocation method in this circumstance. AcSEC concluded that the requirement to disclose the allocation method should be deleted.

**C.29.** Paragraph .19 encourages, but does not require, certain disclosures. AcSEC believes those disclosures provide useful information but that they should be encouraged rather than required because the costs of making them may not be justified by the benefits in all cases.

## Effective Date

**C.30.** Some respondents commented that the effective date should be deferred. AcSEC believes that the accounting systems required to implement this SOP are already in place and that implementation should be relatively straightforward. However, AcSEC acknowledges that some entities may change their operations based on the reporting that would result from this SOP. Therefore, AcSEC concluded that this SOP should be effective for financial statements for years beginning on or after December 15, 1998.

## Cost-Benefit

**C.31.** Some respondents commented that the guidance would increase record keeping costs. AcSEC believes that implementing this SOP will not significantly increase record keeping costs, which are primarily the costs of documenting reasons for undertaking joint activities. Further, AcSEC believes that the costs of making the disclosures required by this SOP should be minimal, because entities should already have the information that is required to be disclosed. AcSEC believes that implementing this SOP will result in more relevant, meaningful, and comparable financial reporting and that the cost of implementing this SOP will be justified by its benefits.

## Appendix D

### Discussion of Conclusions

#### Scope

**D.1.** This Statement of Position (SOP) applies only to costs of joint activities. It does not address allocations of costs in other circumstances.

#### Reporting Models and Related Requirements

**D.2.** Paragraph 26 of Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 117, *Financial Statements of Not-for-Profit Organizations*, specifies that a statement of activities or notes to the financial statements should provide information about expenses reported by their functional classification, such as major classes of program services and supporting activities. Paragraph 13.34 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations*, provides that the financial statements of not-for-profit organizations (NPOs) should disclose the total fund-raising expenses. [Revised, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to conforming changes made to the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations*.]

**D.3.** Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) Statement No. 29, *The Use of Not-for-Profit Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles by Governmental Entities*, provides that governmental entities should not change their accounting and financial reporting to apply the provisions of FASB Statements No. 116, *Accounting for Contributions Received and Contributions Made*, and No. 117. GASB Statement No. 29 permits governmental entities that have applied the accounting and financial reporting principles in SOP 78-10, *Accounting Principles and Reporting Practices for Certain Nonprofit Organizations*, or in the AICPA Industry Audit Guide *Audits of Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations* (modified by all applicable FASB pronouncements issued through November 30, 1989, and by most applicable GASB pronouncements) to continue to do so, pending GASB pronouncements on the accounting and financial reporting model for governmental entities. Alternatively, those governmental entities are permitted to change to the current governmental financial reporting model.<sup>‡</sup>

**D.4.** GASB Statement No. 15, *Governmental College and University Accounting and Financial Reporting Models*, requires governmental colleges and universities to use one of two accounting and financial reporting models. One model, referred to as the “AICPA College Guide Model,” encompasses the accounting and financial reporting guidance in the 1973 AICPA Industry

---

<sup>‡</sup> GASB Statement No. 34, *Basic Financial Statements—and Management’s Discussion and Analysis—for State and Local Governments*, supersedes the provisions of GASB Statement No. 29, *The Use of Not-for-Profit Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles by Governmental Entities*, relating to the use of the AICPA Not-for-Profit model. See GASB Statement No. 34, including paragraph 147. The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* provides guidance on the application of this SOP to state and local governments. [Footnote revised, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of GASB Statement No. 34.]

Audit Guide *Audits of Colleges and Universities*, as amended by SOP 74-8, *Financial Accounting and Reporting by Colleges and Universities*, and as modified by applicable FASB pronouncements issued through November 30, 1989, and all applicable GASB pronouncements. (The other model, referred to as the “Governmental Model,” is based on the pronouncements of the National Council on Governmental Accounting [NCGA] and the GASB.)<sup>11</sup>

**D.5.** For state and local governmental entities, some are required to report expenses by function using the functional classifications of program, management and general, and fund raising. Other state and local governmental entities that report expenses or expenditures by function have a functional structure that does not include fund raising, program, or management and general. Still other state and local governmental entities do not report expenses or expenditures by function. Examples of those various reporting requirements are as follows:<sup>#</sup>

- Entities applying the accounting and financial reporting principles in the AICPA Industry Audit Guide *Audits of Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations*, as well as those that follow SOP 78-10 and that receive significant amounts of contributions from the public, are required to report separately the costs of the fund-raising, program, and management and general functions.
- Entities applying the accounting and financial reporting principles in the AICPA Industry Audit Guide *Audits of Colleges and Universities*, as amended by SOP 74-8, are required to report fund raising as part of the “institutional support” function.

**D.6.** As discussed in footnote 3 to paragraph .01 of this SOP, this SOP is not intended to require reporting the functional classifications of fund raising, program, and management and general. Rather, those functional classifications are discussed throughout this SOP for purposes of illustrating how the guidance in this SOP would be applied by entities that use those functional classifications. Entities that do not use the functional classifications of fund raising, program, and management and general should apply the guidance in this SOP for purposes of accounting for joint activities, using their reporting model. For example, some entities may conduct membership-development activities. As discussed in the Glossary [paragraph .30] of this SOP, if there are no significant benefits or duties connected with membership, the substance of the membership-development activities may, in fact, be fund raising. In such circumstances, the costs of those activities should be charged to fund raising. To the extent that member benefits are received, membership is an exchange transaction. In circumstances in which membership development is in part soliciting revenues from exchange transactions and in part soliciting contributions and the purpose, audience, and content of the activity are appropriate for achieving membership development, joint costs should be allocated between fund raising and the exchange transaction.

---

<sup>11</sup> GASB Statement No. 35, *Basic Financial Statements—and Management’s Discussion and Analysis—for Public Colleges and Universities*, supersedes GASB Statement No. 15, *Governmental College and University Accounting and Financial Reporting Models*. See GASB Statements No. 34 and No. 35. The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* provides guidance on the application of this SOP to governmental (public) colleges and universities. [Footnote revised, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of GASB Statement No. 35.]

<sup>#</sup> This discussion is no longer applicable. See footnotes ‡ and || in paragraphs D.3 and D.4, respectively. [Footnote added, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of GASB Statements No. 34 and No. 35.]

## Assigning Costs of Joint Activities

**D.7.** Paragraph .07 provides: “If the criteria of purpose, audience, and content are met, the costs of a joint activity that are identifiable with a particular function should be charged to that function and joint costs should be allocated between fund raising and the appropriate program or management and general function. If any of the criteria are not met, all costs of the joint activity should be reported as fund-raising costs, including costs that otherwise might be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity. . . .” For example, if the criteria are met, the costs of materials that accomplish program goals and that are unrelated to fund raising, such as the costs of a program-related pamphlet included in a joint activity, should be charged to program, while joint costs, such as postage, should be allocated between fund raising and program. However, if the pamphlet is used in fund-raising packets and the criteria are not met, the costs of the pamphlets used in the fund-raising packets, as well as the joint costs, should be charged to fund raising. (If some pamphlets are used in program activities that include no fund raising, the cost of the pamphlets used in those separate program activities that include no fund raising should be charged to program.)

## Educational Activities

**D.8.** Some entities have missions that include educating the public (students) in areas other than causes. Paragraph .09 provides that, for those entities, educating the audience in areas other than causes or motivating the audience to engage in specific activities, such as attending a lecture or class, that will educate them in areas other than causes is considered a call for specific action by the recipients that will help accomplish the entity’s mission. Educating the audience about causes or motivating the audience to engage in specific activities that will educate them about causes without educating them in other subjects is not considered a call for specific action by the audience that will help accomplish the entity’s mission. An example of a lecture or class that will educate students in an area other than causes is a lecture on the nesting habits of the bald eagle, given by the Save the Bald Eagle Society, an NPO whose mission is to save the bald eagle from extinction and educate the public about the bald eagle. An example of a lecture or class that will address particular causes is a lecture by the Bald Eagle Society on the potential extinction of bald eagles and the need to raise contributions to prevent their extinction. For purposes of applying the guidance in this SOP, motivating the audience to attend a lecture on the nesting habits of the bald eagle is a call for specific action that will help accomplish the entity’s mission. If the lecture merely addresses the potential extinction of bald eagles and the need to raise contributions to prevent their extinction, without addressing the nesting habits of the bald eagle, motivating the audience to attend the lecture is not considered a call for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity’s mission.

**D.9.** AcSEC notes that most transactions in which a student attends a lecture or class are exchange transactions and are not joint activities. Such transactions are joint activities only if the activity includes fund raising.

## Audience

**D.10.** Paragraph .12 provides that a rebuttable presumption exists that the audience criterion is not met if the audience includes prior donors or is otherwise selected based on its ability or likelihood to contribute to the entity. That presumption can be overcome if the audience is also selected for the program or management and general reasons specified in paragraph .13. Further, paragraph .12 provides

that in determining whether that presumption is overcome, entities should consider the extent to which the audience is selected based on its ability or likelihood to contribute to the entity and contrast that with the extent to which it is selected for the reasons that may overcome that presumption. Some organizations conduct joint activities that are special events, such as symposia, dinners, dances, and theater parties, in which the attendee receives a direct benefit (for example, a meal or theater ticket) and for which the admission price includes a contribution. For example, it may cost \$500 to attend a dinner with a fair value of \$50. In that case, the audience is required to make a \$450 contribution in order to attend. In circumstances in which the audience is required to make a contribution to participate in a joint activity, such as attending a special event, the audience's ability or likelihood to contribute is a significant factor in its selection. Therefore, in circumstances in which the audience is required to make a contribution to participate in a joint activity, the extent to which the audience is selected for the program or management and general reasons in paragraph .13 must be overwhelmingly significant in order to rebut the presumption that the audience criterion is not met.

**D.11.** The source of the names and the characteristics of the audience should be considered in determining the reason for selecting the audience. Some entities use lists compiled by others to reach new audiences. The source of such lists may indicate the purpose or purposes for which they were selected. For example, lists acquired from entities with similar or related programs are more likely to meet the audience criterion than are lists acquired from entities with dissimilar or unrelated programs. Also, the characteristics of those on the lists may indicate the purpose or purposes for which they were selected. For example, a list based on a consumer profile of those who buy environmentally friendly products may be useful to an entity whose mission addresses environmental concerns and could therefore indicate that the audience was selected for its ability to take action to assist the entity in meeting program goals. However, a list based on net worth would indicate that the audience was selected based on its ability or likelihood to contribute, unless there was a correlation between net worth and the program or management and general components of the activity.

**D.12.** Some audiences may be selected because they have an interest in or affinity to the program. For example, homeowners may have an interest in the homeless because they are sympathetic to the plight of the homeless. Nevertheless, including homeowners in the audience of a program activity to provide services to the homeless would not meet the audience criterion, because they do not have a need or reasonable potential for use of services to the homeless.

**D.13.** Paragraph .13c provides that the audience criterion is met if the entity is required to direct the management and general component of the joint activity to the particular audience or the audience has reasonable potential for use of the management and general component. An example of a joint activity in which the audience is selected because the entity is required to direct the management and general component of the joint activity to the particular audience is an activity in which the entity sends a written acknowledgment or other information to comply with requirements of the Internal Revenue Service to prior donors and includes a request for contributions. An example of a joint activity in which the audience is selected because the audience has reasonable potential for use of the management and general component is an activity in which the entity sends its annual report to prior donors and includes a request for contributions.

## Content

**D.14.** Paragraph .14 provides that, to meet the content criterion, program activities should call for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission. As discussed in the Glossary [paragraph .30], the action should benefit the recipient or society. Examples of actions that benefit the recipient (such as by improving the recipient's physical, mental, emotional, or spiritual health and well-being) or society (such as by addressing societal problems) include the following:

*a.* Actions that benefit the recipient:

- *Stop smoking.* Specific methods, instructions, references, and resources should be suggested.
- *Do not use alcohol or drugs.* Specific methods, instructions, references, and resources should be suggested.

*b.* Actions that benefit society:

- *Write or call.* The party to communicate with and the subject matter to be communicated should be specified.
- *Complete and return the enclosed questionnaire.* The results of the questionnaire should help the entity achieve its mission. For example, if the entity discards the questionnaire, it does not help the entity achieve its mission.
- *Boycott.* The particular product or company to be boycotted should be specified.

**D.15.** Paragraph .14*b* provides that to meet the content criterion, management and general functions are required to fulfill one or more of the entity's management and general responsibilities through a component of the joint activity. Some states or other regulatory bodies require that certain disclosures be included when soliciting contributions. Paragraph .14, footnote 9, of this SOP provides that for purposes of applying the guidance in this SOP, communications that include such required disclosures are considered fund-raising activities and are not considered management and general activities. Some examples of such disclosures include the following:

- Information filed with the attorney general concerning this charitable solicitation may be obtained from the attorney general of [*the state*] by calling 123-4567. Registration with the attorney general does not imply endorsement.
- A copy of the registration and financial information may be obtained from the Division of Consumer Services by calling toll-free, within [*the state*], 1-800-123-4567. Registration does not imply endorsement, approval, or recommendation by [*the state*].
- Information about the cost of postage and copying, and other information required to be filed under [*the state*] law, can be obtained by calling 123-4567.
- The organization's latest annual report can be obtained by calling 123-4567.

## Allocation Methods

**D.16.** Paragraph .16 of this SOP states, "The cost allocation methodology used should be rational and systematic, it should result in an allocation of joint

costs that is reasonable, and it should be applied consistently given similar facts and circumstances.” The allocation of joint costs should be based on the degree to which costs were incurred for the functions to which the costs are allocated (that is, program, management and general, or fund raising). For purposes of determining whether the allocation methodology for a particular joint activity should be consistent with methodologies used for other particular joint activities, facts and circumstances that may be considered include factors related to the content and relative costs of the components of the activity. The audience should not be considered in determining whether the facts and circumstances are similar for purposes of determining whether the allocation methodology for a particular joint activity should be consistent with methodologies used for other particular joint activities.

### **Practicability of Measuring Joint Costs**

**D.17.** The Glossary [paragraph .30] of this SOP includes a definition of joint costs. Some costs, such as utilities, rent, and insurance, commonly referred to as indirect costs, may be joint costs. For example, the telephone bill for a department that, among other things, prepares materials that include both fund-raising and program components may commonly be referred to as an indirect cost. Such telephone bills may also be joint costs. However, for some entities, it is impracticable to measure and allocate the portion of the costs that are joint costs. Considerations about which joint costs should be measured and allocated, such as considerations about materiality and the costs and benefits of developing and providing the information, are the same as considerations about cost allocations in other circumstances.

## Appendix E

### Illustrations of Applying the Criteria of Purpose, Audience, and Content to Determine Whether a Program or Management and General Activity Has Been Conducted

#### Illustration 1

##### *Facts*

**E.1.** Entity A's mission is to prevent drug abuse. Entity A's annual report states that one of its objectives in fulfilling that mission is to assist parents in preventing their children from abusing drugs.

**E.2.** Entity A mails informational materials to the parents of all junior high school students explaining the prevalence and dangers of drug abuse. The materials encourage parents to counsel children about the dangers of drug abuse and inform them about how to detect drug abuse. The mailing includes a request for contributions. Entity A conducts other activities informing the public about the dangers of drug abuse and encouraging parents to counsel their children about drug abuse that do not include requests for contributions and that are conducted in different media. Entity A's executive director is involved in the development of the informational materials as well as the request for contributions. The executive director's annual compensation includes a significant bonus if total annual contributions exceed a predetermined amount.

##### *Conclusion*

**E.3.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated.

**E.4.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (encouraging parents to counsel children about the dangers of drug abuse and informing them about how to detect drug abuse) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. Neither of the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b is determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. (Although Entity A's executive director's annual compensation varies based on annual contributions, the executive director's compensation does not vary based on contributions raised for this discrete joint activity.) Therefore, other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, should be considered. The purpose criterion is met based on the other evidence, because (a) the program component of this activity calls for specific action by the recipient (encouraging parents to counsel children about the dangers of drug abuse) that will help accomplish the entity's mission, and it otherwise conducts the program activity in this illustration without a request for contributions, and (b) performing such programs helps accomplish Entity A's mission. (Note that had Entity A conducted the activity using the same medium on a scale that is similar to or greater than the scale on which it is conducted with the request for contributions, the purpose criterion would have been met under paragraph .10b.)

**E.5.** The audience criterion is met because the audience (parents of junior high school students) is selected based on its need to use or reasonable potential for use of the action called for by the program component.

**E.6.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (encouraging parents to counsel children about the dangers of drug abuse and informing them about how to detect drug abuse) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (assisting parents in preventing their children from abusing drugs), and it explains the need for and benefits of the action (the prevalence and dangers of drug abuse).

## Illustration 2

### Facts

**E.7.** Entity B's mission is to reduce the incidence of illness from ABC disease, which afflicts a broad segment of the population. One of Entity B's objectives in fulfilling that mission is to inform the public about the effects and early warning signs of the disease and specific action that should be taken to prevent the disease.

**E.8.** Entity B maintains a list of its prior donors and sends them donor renewal mailings. The mailings include messages about the effects and early warning signs of the disease and specific action that should be taken to prevent it. That information is also sent to a similar-sized audience but without the request for contributions. Also, Entity B believes that recent donors are more likely to contribute than nondonors or donors who have not contributed recently. Prior donors are deleted from the mailing list if they have not contributed to Entity B recently, and new donors are added to the list. There is no evidence of a correlation between recent contributions and participation in the program component of the activity. Also, the prior donors' need to use or reasonable potential for use of the messages about the effects and early warning signs of the disease and specific action that should be taken to prevent it is an insignificant factor in their selection.

### Conclusion

**E.9.** The purpose and content criteria are met. The audience criterion is not met.<sup>11</sup> All costs, including those that might otherwise be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity, should be charged to fund raising.

**E.10.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (action that should be taken to prevent ABC disease) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. The purpose criterion is met because (a) the program component of the activity calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission (to reduce the incidence of illness from the disease), and (b) the program is also

---

<sup>11</sup> Paragraph .07 of this SOP provides that all costs of joint activities, except for costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions that are part of joint activities, such as costs of direct donor benefits of a special event (for example, a meal), should be charged to fund raising if any of the criteria of purpose, audience, or content are not met. Accordingly, if one or more criteria are not met, the other criteria need not be considered. However, the illustrations in this Appendix provide conclusions about whether each of the criteria would be met in circumstances in which one or more criteria are not met in order to provide further guidance.

conducted using the same medium on a scale that is similar to or greater than the scale on which it is conducted with the request for contributions (a similar mailing is done without the request for contributions, to a similar-sized audience).

**E.11.** The audience criterion is not met. The rebuttable presumption that the audience criterion is not met because the audience includes prior donors is not overcome in this illustration. Although the audience has a need to use or reasonable potential for use of the program component, that was an insignificant factor in its selection.

**E.12.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (actions to prevent ABC disease) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (to reduce the incidence of ABC disease), and it explains the need for and benefits of the action (to prevent ABC disease).

### **Illustration 3**

#### ***Facts***

**E.13.** Entity C's mission is to reduce the incidence of illness from ABC disease, which afflicts a broad segment of the population. One of Entity C's objectives in fulfilling that mission is to increase governmental funding for research about ABC disease.

**E.14.** Entity C maintains a list of its prior donors and its employees call them on the telephone reminding them of the effects of ABC disease, asking for contributions, and encouraging them to contact their elected officials to urge increased governmental funding for research about ABC disease. The callers are educated about ABC, do not otherwise perform fund-raising functions, and are not compensated or evaluated based on contributions raised. Entity C's research indicates that recent donors are likely to contact their elected officials about such funding while nonrecent donors are not. Prior donors are deleted from the calling list if they have not contributed to Entity C recently, and new donors are added to the list.

#### ***Conclusion***

**E.15.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated.

**E.16.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (contacting elected officials concerning funding for research about ABC disease) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. Neither of the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b is determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Therefore, other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, should be considered. The purpose criterion is met based on the other evidence, because (a) the qualifications and duties of the personnel performing the activity indicate that it is a program activity (the callers are educated about ABC and do not otherwise perform fund-raising functions), (b) the method of compensation for performing the activity does not indicate that it is a fund-raising activity (the employees are not compensated or evaluated based on contributions raised), and (c) performing such programs helps accomplish Entity C's mission.

**E.17.** The audience criterion is met because the audience (recent donors) is selected based on its ability to assist Entity C in meeting the goals of the program component of the activity (recent donors are likely to contact their elected officials about such funding while nonrecent donors are not).

**E.18.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (contacting elected officials concerning funding for research about ABC disease) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (to reduce the incidence of ABC disease), and it explains the need for and benefits of the action (to prevent ABC disease).

## Illustration 4

### Facts

**E.19.** Entity D's mission is to improve the quality of life for senior citizens. One of Entity D's objectives included in that mission is to increase the physical activity of senior citizens. One of Entity D's programs to attain that objective is to send representatives to speak to groups about the importance of exercise and to conduct exercise classes.

**E.20.** Entity D mails a brochure on the importance of exercise that encourages exercise in later years to residents over the age of sixty-five in three zip code areas. The last two pages of the four-page brochure include a perforated contribution remittance form on which Entity D explains its program and makes an appeal for contributions. The content of the first two pages of the brochure is primarily educational; it explains how seniors can undertake a self-supervised exercise program and encourages them to undertake such a program. In addition, Entity D includes a second brochure on various exercise techniques that can be used by those undertaking an exercise program.

**E.21.** The brochures are distributed to educate people in this age group about the importance of exercising, to help them exercise properly, and to raise contributions for Entity D. These objectives are documented in a letter to the public relations firm that developed the brochures. The audience is selected based on age, without regard to ability to contribute. Entity D believes that most of the recipients would benefit from the information about exercise.

### Conclusion

**E.22.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated. (Note that the costs of the second brochure should be charged to program because all the costs of the brochure are identifiable with the program function.)

**E.23.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (exercising) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. Neither of the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b is determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Therefore, other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, should be considered. The purpose criterion is met based on the other evidence, because (a) performing such programs helps accomplish Entity D's mission, and (b) the objectives of the program are documented in a letter to the public relations firm that developed the brochure.

**E.24.** The audience criterion is met because the audience (residents over sixty-five in certain zip codes) is selected based on its need to use or reasonable potential for use of the action called for by the program component.

**E.25.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (exercising) that will help accomplish the entity's mission

(increasing the physical activity of senior citizens), and the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident (explains the importance of exercising).

## **Illustration 5**

### **Facts**

**E.26.** The facts are the same as those in Illustration 4, except that Entity E employs a fund-raising consultant to develop the first brochure and pays that consultant 30 percent of contributions raised.

### **Conclusion**

**E.27.** The content and audience criteria are met. The purpose criterion is not met, however, because a majority of compensation or fees for the fund-raising consultant varies based on contributions raised for this discrete joint activity (the fund-raising consultant is paid 30 percent of contributions raised). All costs should be charged to fund raising, including the costs of the second brochure and any other costs that otherwise might be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity.

## **Illustration 6**

### **Facts**

**E.28.** Entity F's mission is to protect the environment. One of Entity F's objectives included in that mission is to take action that will increase the portion of waste recycled by the public.

**E.29.** Entity F conducts a door-to-door canvass of a community that recycles a low portion of its waste. The purpose of the activity is to help increase recycling by educating the community about environmental problems created by not recycling, and to raise contributions. Based on the information communicated by the canvassers, the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident. The ability or likelihood of the residents to contribute is not a basis for communities selected, and all neighborhoods in the geographic area are covered if their recycling falls below a predetermined rate. The canvassers are selected from individuals who are well-informed about the organization's environmental concerns and programs and who previously participated as volunteers in program activities such as answering environmental questions directed to the organization and developing program activities designed to influence legislators to take actions addressing those concerns. The canvassers have not previously participated in fund-raising activities.

### **Conclusion**

**E.30.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated.

**E.31.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (implicitly—to help increase recycling) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. Neither of the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b is determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Therefore, other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, should be considered. The purpose criterion is met based on the other evidence, because (a) the qualifications and duties of the personnel performing the activity indicate that it is a program activity (the canvassers are selected from individuals who are well-informed about the organization's environmental concerns and programs and who previously participated as volunteers in program activities

such as answering environmental questions directed to the organization and developing program activities designed to influence legislators to take actions addressing those concerns), and (b) performing such programs helps accomplish Entity F's mission (to protect the environment).

**E.32.** The audience criterion is met because the audience (neighborhoods whose recycling falls below a predetermined rate) is selected based on its need to use or reasonable potential for use of the action called for by the program component.

**E.33.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (implicitly—to help increase recycling) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (to protect the environment), and the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident (increased recycling will help alleviate environmental problems).

## Illustration 7

### Facts

**E.34.** Entity G's mission is to provide summer camps for economically disadvantaged youths. Educating the families of ineligible youths about the camps is not one of the program objectives included in that mission.

**E.35.** Entity G conducts a door-to-door solicitation campaign for its camp programs. In the campaign, volunteers with canisters visit homes in middle-class neighborhoods to collect contributions. Entity G believes that people in those neighborhoods would not need the camp's programs but may contribute. The volunteers explain the camp's programs, including why the disadvantaged children benefit from the program, and distribute leaflets to the residents regardless of whether they contribute to the camp. The leaflets describe the camp, its activities, who can attend, and the benefits to attendees. Requests for contributions are not included in the leaflets.

### Conclusion

**E.36.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are not met. All costs should be charged to fund raising.

**E.37.** The activity does not include a call for specific action because it only educates the audience about causes (describing the camp, its activities, who can attend, and the benefits to attendees). Therefore, the purpose criterion is not met.

**E.38.** The audience criterion is not met, because the audience is selected based on its ability or likelihood to contribute, rather than based on (a) its need to use or reasonable potential for use of the action called for by the program component, or (b) its ability to take action to assist the entity in meeting the goals of the program component of the activity. (Entity G believes that people in those neighborhoods would not need the camp's programs but may contribute.)

**E.39.** The content criterion is not met because the activity does not call for specific action by the recipient. (The content educates the audience about causes that the program is designed to address without calling for specific action.)

## Illustration 8

### Facts

**E.40.** Entity H's mission is to educate the public about lifesaving techniques in order to increase the number of lives saved. One of Entity H's objec-

tives in fulfilling that mission, as stated in the minutes of the board's meetings, is to produce and show television broadcasts including information about lifesaving techniques.

**E.41.** Entity H conducts an annual national telethon to raise contributions and to reach the American public with lifesaving educational messages, such as summary instructions concerning dealing with certain life-threatening situations. Based on the information communicated by the messages, the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident. The broadcast includes segments describing Entity H's services. Entity H broadcasts the telethon to the entire country, not merely to areas selected on the basis of giving potential or prior fund raising results. Also, Entity H uses national television broadcasts devoted entirely to lifesaving educational messages to conduct program activities without fund raising.

### **Conclusion**

**E.42.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated.

**E.43.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (implicitly—to save lives) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. The purpose criterion is met because (a) the program component of the activity calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish Entity H's mission (to save lives by educating the public), and (b) a similar program activity is conducted without the fund raising using the same medium and on a scale that is similar to or greater than the scale on which it is conducted with the appeal (Entity H uses national television broadcasts devoted entirely to lifesaving educational messages to conduct program activities without fund raising).

**E.44.** The audience criterion is met because the audience (a broad segment of the population) is selected based on its need to use or reasonable potential for use of the action called for by the program activity.

**E.45.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (implicitly—to save lives) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (to save lives by educating the public), and the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident (saving lives is desirable).

## **Illustration 9**

### **Facts**

**E.46.** Entity I's mission is to provide food, clothing, and medical care to children in developing countries.

**E.47.** Entity I conducts television broadcasts in the United States that describe its programs, show the needy children, and end with appeals for contributions. Entity I's operating policies and internal management memoranda state that these programs are designed to educate the public about the needs of children in developing countries and to raise contributions. The employees producing the programs are trained in audiovisual production and are familiar with Entity I's programs. Also, the executive producer is paid \$25,000 for this activity, with a \$5,000 bonus if the activity raises over \$1,000,000.

### **Conclusion**

**E.48.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are not met. All costs should be charged to fund raising.

**E.49.** The activity does not include a call for specific action because it only educates the audience about causes (describing its programs and showing the needy children). Therefore, the purpose criterion is not met. (Also, note that if the factor in paragraph .10a were considered, it would not be determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Although the executive producer will be paid \$5,000 if the activity raises over \$1,000,000, that amount would not be a majority of the executive producer's total compensation for this activity, because \$5,000 would not be a majority of the executive producer's total compensation of \$30,000 for this activity. Also, note that if other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, were considered, the purpose criterion would not be met based on the other evidence. Although the qualifications and duties of the personnel performing the activity indicate that the employees producing the program are familiar with Entity I's programs, the facts that some, but less than a majority, of the executive producer's compensation varies based on contributions raised, and that the operating policies and internal management memoranda state that these programs are designed to educate the public about the needs of children in developing countries [with no call for specific action by recipients] and to raise contributions, indicate that the purpose is fund raising.)

**E.50.** The audience criterion is not met because the audience is selected based on its ability or likelihood to contribute, rather than based on (a) its need to use or reasonable potential for use of the action called for by the program component, or (b) its ability to take action to assist the entity in meeting the goals of the program component of the activity. (The audience is a broad segment of the population of a country that is not in need of or has no reasonable potential for use of the program activity.)

**E.51.** The content criterion is not met because the activity does not call for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission. (The content educates the audience about the causes without calling for specific action.)

## Illustration 10

### Facts

**E.52.** Entity J is a university that distributes its annual report, which includes reports on mission accomplishments, to those who have made significant contributions over the previous year, its board of trustees, and its employees. The annual report is primarily prepared by management and general personnel, such as the accounting department and executive staff. The activity is coordinated by the public relations department. Internal management memoranda indicate that the purpose of the annual report is to report on how management discharged its stewardship responsibilities, including the university's overall performance, goals, financial position, cash flows, and results of operations. Included in the package containing the annual report are requests for contributions and donor reply cards.

### Conclusion

**E.53.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated.

**E.54.** The activity has elements of management and general functions. Therefore, no call for specific action is required. Neither of the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b is determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Therefore, other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, should be

considered. The purpose criterion is met based on the other evidence, because (a) the employees performing the activity are not members of the fund-raising department and perform other non-fund-raising activities and (b) internal management memoranda indicate that the purpose of the annual report is to fulfill one of the university's management and general responsibilities.

**E.55.** The audience criterion is met because the audience is selected based on its reasonable potential for use of the management and general component. Although the activity is directed primarily at those who have previously made significant contributions, the audience was selected based on its presumed interest in Entity J's annual report (prior donors who have made significant contributions are likely to have an interest in matters discussed in the annual report).

**E.56.** The content criterion is met because the activity (distributing annual reports) fulfills one of the entity's management and general responsibilities (reporting concerning management's fulfillment of its stewardship function).

## **Illustration 11**

### **Facts**

**E.57.** Entity K is an NPO. In accordance with internal management memoranda documenting its policies requiring it to comply with Internal Revenue Service (IRS) regulations, it mails prior donors who have made quid pro quo payments in excess of \$75 documentation required by the IRS. The documentation is included on a perforated piece of paper. The information above the perforation line pertains to the documentation required by the IRS. The information below the perforation line includes a request for contributions and may be used as a donor reply card.

### **Conclusion**

**E.58.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated. (Note that the costs of the information below the perforation line are identifiable with fund raising and therefore should be charged to fund raising.)

**E.59.** The activity has elements of management and general functions. Therefore, no call for specific action is required. Neither of the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b is determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Therefore, other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, should be considered. The purpose criterion is met based on the other evidence, because internal management memoranda indicate that the purpose of the activity is to fulfill one of Entity K's management and general responsibilities.

**E.60.** The audience criterion is met because the entity is required to direct the management and general component of the activity to the particular audience. Although the activity is directed at those who have previously contributed, the audience was selected based on its need for the documentation.

**E.61.** The content criterion is met because the activity (sending documentation required by the IRS) fulfills one of the entity's management and general responsibilities (complying with IRS regulations).

## **Illustration 12**

### **Facts**

**E.62.** Entity L is an animal rights organization. It mails a package of material to individuals included in lists rented from various environmental and

other organizations that support causes that Entity L believes are congruent with its own. In addition to donor response cards and return envelopes, the package includes (a) materials urging recipients to contact their legislators and urge the legislators to support legislation to protect those rights, and (b) postcards addressed to legislators urging support for legislation restricting the use of animal testing for cosmetic products. The mail campaign is part of an overall strategy that includes magazine advertisements and the distribution of similar materials at various community events, some of which are undertaken without fund-raising appeals. The advertising and community events reach audiences similar in size and demographics to the audience reached by the mailing.

### **Conclusion**

**E.63.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated.

**E.64.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (mailing postcards to legislators urging support for legislation restricting the use of animal testing for cosmetic products) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. Neither of the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b is determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Therefore, other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, should be considered. The purpose criterion is met based on the other evidence, because (a) the program component of this activity calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission, and it otherwise conducts the program activity in this illustration without a request for contributions, and (b) performing such programs helps accomplish Entity L's mission.

**E.65.** The audience criterion is met because the audience (individuals included in lists rented from various environmental and other organizations that support causes that Entity L believes are congruent with its own) is selected based on its ability to take action to assist the entity in meeting the goals of the program component of the activity.

**E.66.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (mailing postcards to legislators urging support for legislation restricting the use of animal testing for cosmetic products) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (to protect animal rights), and the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident (to protect animal rights).

### **Illustration 13**

#### **Facts**

**E.67.** Entity M is a performing arts organization whose mission is to make the arts available to residents in its area. Entity M charges a fee for attending performances and sends advertisements, including subscription forms, for the performances to residents in its area. These advertisements include a return envelope with a request for contributions. Entity M evaluates the effectiveness of the advertising based on the number of subscriptions sold as well as contributions received. In performing that evaluation, Entity M places more weight on the number of subscriptions sold than on the contributions received. Also, Entity M advertises the performances on local television and radio without a request for contributions but on a smaller scale than the mail advertising.

**Conclusion**

**E.68.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated.

**E.69.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (attending the performances) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. Neither of the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b is determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Therefore, other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, should be considered. The purpose criterion is met based on the other evidence, because (a) the entity measures program results and accomplishments of the joint activity and in evaluating the effectiveness of the activity, the entity places significantly greater weight on the activity's effectiveness in accomplishing program goals than on the activity's effectiveness in raising contributions (Entity M evaluates the effectiveness of the advertising based on the number of subscriptions sold as well as contributions received and places more weight on the number of subscriptions sold than on the contributions received), (b) it otherwise conducts the program activity without a request for contributions, and (c) performing such programs helps accomplish Entity M's mission (to make the arts available to residents in its area).

**E.70.** The audience criterion is met because the audience (a broad segment of the population in Entity M's area) is selected based on its need to use or reasonable potential for use of the action called for by the program component.

**E.71.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (attending the performances) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (making the arts available to area residents), and the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident (attending the performance is a positive cultural experience). (Note that the purchase of subscriptions is an exchange transaction and, therefore, is not a contribution.)

**Illustration 14****Facts**

**E.72.** Entity N is a university whose mission is to educate the public (students) in various academic pursuits. Entity N's political science department holds a special lecture series in which prominent world leaders speak about current events. The speakers command relatively high fees and, in order to cover costs and make a modest profit, the university sets a relatively expensive fee to attend. However, the tickets are priced at the fair value of the lecture and no portion of the ticket purchase price is a contribution. Entity N advertises the lectures by sending invitations to prior attendees and to prior donors who have contributed significant amounts, and by placing advertisements in local newspapers read by the general public. At some of the lectures, including the lecture being considered in this illustration, deans and other faculty members of Entity N solicit significant contributions from attendees. Other lectures in the series are conducted on a scale similar to the scale of the lecture in this illustration without requesting contributions. Entity N's records indicate that historically 75 percent of the attendees have attended prior lectures. Of the 75 percent who have attended prior lectures, 15 percent have made prior contributions to Entity N. Of the 15 percent who have made prior contributions to Entity N, 5 percent have made contributions in response to solicitations made at the events. (Therefore, one-half of one percent of attendees make contribu-

tions in response to solicitations made at the events. However, those contributions are significant.) Overall, the audience's ability or likelihood to contribute is an insignificant factor in its selection. Entity N evaluates the effectiveness of the activity based on the number of tickets sold, as well as contributions received. In performing that evaluation, Entity N places more weight on the number of tickets sold than on the contributions received.

### Conclusion

**E.73.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated.

**E.74.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (attending the lecture) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. The purpose criterion is met because (a) the program component of the activity calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission (educating the public [students] in various academic pursuits), and (b) the program is also conducted using the same medium on a scale that is similar to or greater than the scale on which it is conducted with the request for contributions (other lectures in the series are conducted on a scale similar to the scale of the lecture in this illustration without requesting contributions).

**E.75.** The audience criterion is met. The rebuttable presumption that the audience criterion is not met because the audience includes prior donors is overcome in this illustration because the audience (those who have shown prior interest in the lecture series, prior donors, a broad segment of the population in Entity N's area, and those attending the lecture) is also selected for its reasonable potential for use of the program component (attending the lecture). Although the audience may make significant contributions, that was an insignificant factor in its selection.

**E.76.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (attending the lecture) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (educating the public [students] in various academic pursuits), and the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident (attending the lecture is a positive educational experience). (Note that the purchase of the tickets is an exchange transaction and, therefore, is not a contribution. As discussed in paragraph .07 of this SOP, costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions that are part of joint activities, such as costs of direct donor benefits of a special event, should not be reported as fund raising.<sup>12</sup>)

## Illustration 15

### Facts

**E.77.** Entity O is a university whose mission is to educate the public (students) in various academic pursuits. Entity O's political science department holds a special lecture series in which prominent world leaders speak about current events. Admission is priced at \$250, which is above the \$50 fair value of the lecture and, therefore, \$200 of the admission price is a contribution. Therefore, the audience's likelihood to contribute to the entity is a significant factor in its selection. Entity O advertises the lectures by sending invitations

---

<sup>12</sup> Paragraphs 13.21–13.26 of the Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations* provide guidance concerning reporting special events. [Footnote revised, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to conforming changes made to the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations*.]

to prior attendees and to prior donors who have contributed significant amounts, and by placing advertisements in local newspapers read by the general public. Entity O presents similar lectures that are priced at the fair value of those lectures.

### **Conclusion**

**E.78.** The purpose and content criteria are met. The audience criterion is not met. All costs, including those that might otherwise be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity, except for the costs of the direct donor benefit (the lecture), should be charged to fund raising.

**E.79.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (attending the lecture) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. The purpose criterion is met because (a) the program component of the activity calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission (educating the public [students] in various academic pursuits), and (b) the program is also conducted using the same medium on a scale that is similar to or greater than the scale on which it is conducted with the request for contributions (other lectures in the series are conducted on a scale similar to the scale of the lecture in this illustration without including a contribution in the admission price.)

**E.80.** The audience criterion is not met. The rebuttable presumption that the audience criterion is not met because the audience is selected based on its likelihood to contribute to the entity is not overcome in this illustration. The fact that the \$250 admission price includes a \$200 contribution leads to the conclusion that the audience's ability or likelihood to contribute is an overwhelmingly significant factor in its selection, whereas there is no evidence that the extent to which the audience is selected for its need to use or reasonable potential for use of the action called for by the program component (attending the lecture) is overwhelmingly significant.

**E.81.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (attending the lecture) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (educating the public [students] in various academic pursuits), and the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident (attending the lecture is a positive educational experience). (Note that the purchase of the tickets is an exchange transaction and, therefore, is not a contribution. As discussed in paragraph .07 of this SOP, costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions that are part of joint activities, such as costs of direct donor benefits of a special event, should not be reported as fund raising.<sup>13</sup>)

## **Illustration 16**

### **Facts**

**E.82.** Entity P's mission is to reduce the incidence of illness from ABC disease, which primarily afflicts people over sixty-five years of age. One of Entity P's objectives in fulfilling that mission is to have all persons over sixty-five screened for ABC disease.

**E.83.** Entity P rents space at events attended primarily by people over sixty-five years of age and conducts free screening for ABC disease. Entity P's

---

<sup>13</sup> Paragraphs 13.21–13.26 of the Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations* provide guidance concerning reporting special events. [Footnote revised, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to conforming changes made to the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations*.]

employees, who are educated about ABC disease and screening procedures and do not otherwise perform fund-raising functions, educate interested parties about the effects of ABC disease and the ease and benefits of screening for it. Entity P also solicits contributions at the events. The effectiveness of the activity is evaluated primarily based on how many screening tests are performed, and only minimally based on contributions raised. The employees are not compensated or evaluated based on contributions raised.

### **Conclusion**

**E.84.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated.

**E.85.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (being screened for ABC disease) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. Neither of the factors in paragraph .10a or .10b is determinative of whether the purpose criterion is met. Therefore, other evidence, such as the indicators in paragraph .11, should be considered. The purpose criterion is met based on the other evidence, because (a) a process exists to evaluate measured program results and accomplishments and in evaluating the effectiveness of the joint activity, the entity places significantly greater weight on the activity's effectiveness in accomplishing program goals than on the activity's effectiveness in raising contributions (Entity P evaluates the effectiveness of the activity based on the number of screening tests conducted as well as contributions received and places more weight on the number of tests conducted than on the contributions received); (b) the qualifications and duties of the personnel performing the activity indicate that it is a program activity (the employees are educated about ABC disease and the testing procedures and do not otherwise perform fund-raising functions); (c) the method of compensation for performing the activity does not indicate that it is a fund-raising activity (the employees are not compensated or evaluated based on contributions raised); and (d) performing such programs helps accomplish Entity P's mission (to prevent ABC disease).

**E.86.** The audience criterion is met because the audience (people over sixty-five years of age) is selected based on its need to use or reasonable potential for use of the action called for by the program component.

**E.87.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (being screened for ABC disease) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (to reduce the incidence of ABC disease), and it explains the need for and benefits of the action (to prevent ABC disease).

## **Illustration 17**

### **Facts**

**E.88.** Entity Q's mission is to provide cultural and educational television programming to residents in its area. Entity Q owns a public television station and holds a membership drive in which it solicits new members. The drive is conducted by station employees and consists of solicitations that are shown during long breaks between the station's regularly scheduled programs. Entity Q's internal management memoranda state that these drives are designed to raise contributions. Entity Q evaluates the effectiveness of the activity based on the amount of contributions received. Entity Q shows the programs on a

similar scale, without the request for contributions. The audience is members of the general public who watch the programs shown during the drive. Station member benefits are given to those who contribute and consist of tokens of appreciation with a nominal value.

### **Conclusion**

**E.89.** The purpose, audience, and content criteria are met, and the joint costs should be allocated. (Note that there would be few, if any, joint costs. Costs associated with the fund-raising activities, such as costs of airtime, would be separately identifiable from costs of the program activities, such as licensing costs for a particular television program. Also, note that because no significant benefits or duties are associated with membership, member dues are contributions. Therefore, the substance of the membership-development activities is, in fact, fund raising.)

**E.90.** The activity calls for specific action by the recipient (watching the television program) that will help accomplish the entity's mission. Therefore, the guidance in paragraph .10 should be considered. The purpose criterion is met because (a) the program component of the activity calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission, and (b) the program is also conducted using the same medium on a scale that is similar to or greater than the scale on which it is conducted with the request for contributions (Entity Q shows the television programs on a similar scale, without the request for contributions).

**E.91.** The audience criterion is met. The rebuttable presumption that the audience criterion is not met because the audience is selected based on its likelihood to contribute is overcome in this illustration because the audience (members of the general public who watch the television programs shown during the drive) is also selected for its reasonable potential for use of the program component (watching the television programs). Although the audience may make contributions, that was an insignificant factor in its selection.

**E.92.** The content criterion is met because the activity calls for specific action by the recipient (watching the television programs) that will help accomplish the entity's mission (providing cultural and educational television programming to residents in its area), and the need for and benefits of the action are clearly evident (watching the programs is a positive cultural and educational experience).

## Appendix F

### Illustrations of Allocation Methods

**F.1.** Some commonly used cost allocation methods follow.

#### Physical Units Method

**F.2.** Joint costs are allocated to materials and activities in proportion to the number of units of output that can be attributed to each of the materials and activities. Examples of units of output are lines, square inches, and physical content measures. This method assumes that the benefits received by the fund-raising, program, or management and general component of the materials or activity from the joint costs incurred are directly proportional to the lines, square inches, or other physical output measures attributed to each component of the activity. This method may result in an unreasonable allocation of joint costs if the units of output, for example, line counts, do not reflect the degree to which costs are incurred for the joint activity. Use of the physical units method may also result in an unreasonable allocation if the physical units cannot be clearly ascribed to fund raising, program, or management and general. For example, direct mail and telephone solicitations sometimes include content that is not identifiable with fund raising, program, or management and general; or the physical units of such content are inseparable.

#### Illustration

**F.3.** Assume a direct mail campaign is used to conduct programs of the entity and to solicit contributions to support the entity and its programs. Further, assume that the appeal meets the criteria for allocation of joint costs to more than one function.

**F.4.** The letter and reply card include a total of one hundred lines. Forty-five lines pertain to program because they include a call for action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission, while fifty-five lines pertain to the fund-raising appeal. Accordingly, 45 percent of the costs are allocated to program and 55 percent to fund-raising.

#### Relative Direct Cost Method

**F.5.** Joint costs are allocated to each of the components on the basis of their respective direct costs. Direct costs are those costs that are incurred in connection with the multipurpose materials or activity and that are specifically identifiable with a function (program, fund raising, or management and general). This method may result in an unreasonable allocation of joint costs if the joint costs of the materials and activity are not incurred in approximately the same proportion and for the same reasons as the direct costs of the materials and activity. For example, if a relatively costly booklet informing the reader about the entity's mission (including a call for action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission) is included with a relatively inexpensive fund-raising letter, the allocation of joint costs based on the cost of these pieces may be unreasonable, particularly if the booklet and letter weigh approximately the same and therefore contribute equally to the postage costs.

**Illustration**

**F.6.** The costs of a direct mail campaign that can be specifically identified with program services are the costs of separate program materials and a postcard which calls for specific action by the recipient that will help accomplish the entity's mission. They total \$20,000. The direct costs of the fund-raising component of the direct mail campaign consist of the costs to develop and produce the fund-raising letter. They total \$80,000. Joint costs associated with the direct mail campaign total \$40,000 and would be allocated as follows under the relative direct cost method:

Program	$\$20,000/\$100,000 \times \$40,000 = \$8,000$
Fund raising	$\$80,000/\$100,000 \times \$40,000 = \$32,000$

**Stand-Alone Joint-Cost-Allocation Method**

**F.7.** Joint costs are allocated to each component of the activity based on a ratio that uses estimates of costs of items included in joint costs that would have been incurred had the components been conducted independently. The numerator of the ratio is the cost (of items included in joint costs) of conducting a single component independently; the denominator is the cost (of items included in joint costs) of conducting all components independently. This method assumes that efforts for each component in the stand-alone situation are proportionate to the efforts actually undertaken in the joint cost situation. This method may result in an unreasonable allocation because it ignores the effect of each function, which is performed jointly with other functions, on other such functions. For example, the programmatic impact of a direct mail campaign or a telemarketing phone message may be significantly lessened when performed in conjunction with a fund-raising appeal.

**Illustration**

**F.8.** Assume that the joint costs associated with a direct mail campaign including both program and fund-raising components are the costs of stationery, postage, and envelopes at a total of \$100,000. The costs of stationery, postage, and envelopes to produce and distribute each component separately would have been \$90,000 for the program component and \$70,000 for the fund-raising component. Under the stand-alone joint-cost-allocation method, the \$100,000 in joint costs would be allocated as follows:  $\$90,000/\$160,000 \times \$100,000 = \$56,250$  to program services and  $\$70,000/\$160,000 \times \$100,000 = \$43,750$  to fund raising.

Appendix G

Illustrations of Disclosures

**G.1.** The disclosures discussed in paragraphs .18 and .19 are illustrated below. Alternative 1 reports the required and encouraged information in narrative format. Alternative 2 reports that information in tabular format, as well as information concerning joint costs incurred for each kind of activity by functional classification, which is neither required nor encouraged, but which is not prohibited.

Alternative 1

Note X. Allocation of Joint Costs

In 19XX, the organization conducted activities that included requests for contributions, as well as program and management and general components. Those activities included direct mail campaigns, special events, and a telethon. The costs of conducting those activities included a total of \$310,000 of joint costs, which are not specifically attributable to particular components of the activities (joint costs). *[Note to reader: The following sentence is encouraged but not required.]* Joint costs for each kind of activity were \$50,000, \$150,000, and \$110,000 respectively. These joint costs were allocated as follows:

Fund raising	\$180,000
Program A	80,000
Program B	40,000
Management and general	10,000
Total	<u>\$310,000</u>

Alternative 2

Note X. Allocation of Joint Costs

In 19XX, the organization conducted activities that included appeals for contributions and incurred joint costs of \$310,000. These activities included direct mail campaigns, special events, and a telethon. Joint costs were allocated as follows:

	<u>Direct Mail</u>	<u>Special Events</u>	<u>Telethon</u>	<u>Total</u>
Fund raising	\$40,000	\$50,000	\$90,000	\$180,000
Program A	10,000	65,000	5,000	80,000
Program B		25,000	15,000	40,000
Management and general		10,000		10,000
Total	<u>\$50,000</u>	<u>\$150,000</u>	<u>\$110,000</u>	<u>\$310,000</u>

*[Note to reader: Shading is used to highlight information that is neither required nor encouraged, but which is not prohibited. However, entities may prefer to disclose it. Disclosing the total joint costs for each kind of activity (\$50,000, \$150,000, and \$110,000) is encouraged but not required.]*

## Appendix H

### Contrast of Guidance in This SOP With the Guidance in SOP 87-2<sup>14,\*\*</sup>

#### This SOP

Applies to all entities that solicit contributions, including state and local governments.

Covers *all* costs of joint activities. (Costs that otherwise might be considered program or management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity, except for costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions that are part of joint activities, such as costs of direct donor benefits of a special event [for example, a meal], should be charged to fund raising unless the criteria in the SOP are met.)

Criteria of purpose, audience, and content should all be met in order to charge costs of the activity to program or management and general.

#### SOP 87-2

Applied to entities that follow the AICPA Industry Audit Guide *Audits of Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations* or SOP 78-10. (SOP 87-2 was not applicable to entities that are within the scope of Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 29, *The Use of Not-for-Profit Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles by Governmental Entities*.)

Covers only joint costs of joint activities.

Unclear concerning whether all criteria should be met in order to charge costs of the activity to program or management and general.

(continued)

---

<sup>14</sup> In August 1996, the AICPA issued the Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations*, which superseded SOP 87-2, *Accounting for Joint Costs of Informational Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal*, because the guidance in SOP 87-2 is incorporated into paragraphs 13.36 to 13.45 of the Guide. Also, *Not-for-Profit Organizations* superseded the AICPA Industry Audit Guide *Audits of Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations* and SOP 78-10. *Not-for-Profit Organizations* applies to all nongovernmental not-for-profit organizations other than those required to follow the Audit and Accounting Guide *Health Care Organizations*. Therefore, incorporating the guidance in SOP 87-2 into *Not-for-Profit Organizations* broadened the scope of the guidance previously included in SOP 87-2 to all not-for-profit organizations other than those required to follow *Health Care Organizations*. The discussion in this SOP of SOP 87-2 refers to both SOP 87-2 and the guidance included in paragraphs 13.36 to 13.45 of *Not-for-Profit Organizations*, except that the guidance in *Not-for-Profit Organizations* applies to all not-for-profit organizations other than those required to follow *Health Care Organizations*.

<sup>\*\*</sup> See footnotes ‡ and †† in paragraphs D.3 and D.4, respectively. [Footnote revised, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of GASB Statements No. 34 and No. 35.]

*This SOP*

Neither prescribes nor prohibits any allocation methods. Includes a discussion to help users determine whether an allocation is reasonable, and provides some illustrations.

Requires note disclosures about the types of activities for which joint costs have been incurred, amounts allocated during the period, and amounts allocated to each functional expense or expenditure category.

*SOP 87-2*

Neither prescribes nor prohibits any allocation methods. No illustrations are provided.

Requires less extensive note disclosures: total amount allocated during the period and amounts allocated to each functional expense category.

## Appendix I

### Effects on Other Guidance

**I.1.** For nongovernmental organizations, this Statement of Position (SOP) amends the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Health Care Organizations* and paragraphs 13.35 to 13.44 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations*. [Revised, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to conforming changes made to the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations*.]

**I.2.** Also, this SOP amends the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations* to clarify that costs of goods or services provided in exchange transactions that are part of joint activities, such as costs of direct donor benefits of a special event (for example, a meal), should not be reported as fund-raising. In particular, paragraphs 13.21, 13.23, and 13.24 of *Not-for-Profit Organizations* are amended as follows:

**13.21** Some organizations conduct joint activities<sup>9</sup> that are special events, including special social and educational events (such as symposia, dinners, dances, and theater parties) in which the attendee receives a direct benefit (for example, a meal or theater ticket). FASB Statement No. 117 requires the reporting of the gross amounts of revenues and expenses from special events and other fund-raising activities that are ongoing major or central activities, but permits (but does not require) reporting net amounts if the receipts and related costs result from special events that are peripheral or incidental activities.

---

<sup>9</sup> See footnote 1.

**13.23** For example, assume that an organization has a special event that is an ongoing and major activity with a ticket price of \$100. Assume that the activity does not meet the audience criterion in SOP 98-2, *Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include Fund Raising*, and, therefore, all costs of the activity, other than the direct donor benefits, should be reported as fund raising. The event includes a dinner that costs the organization \$25 and that has a fair value of \$30. (Chapter 5, “Contributions Received and Agency Transactions,” of this Guide, discusses the appropriate reporting if the meal or other items of value are donated to the organization for resale.) In addition, the organization incurs other direct costs of the event in connection with promoting and conducting the event, including incremental direct costs incurred in transactions with independent third parties and the payroll and payroll-related costs for the activities of employees who are directly associated with, and devote time to, the event. Those other direct costs, which include (a) \$5 that otherwise might be considered management and general costs if they had been incurred in a different activity, and (b) fund-raising costs of \$10, are unrelated to the direct benefits to donors and, accordingly, should not be included as costs of benefits to donors. In addition, the organization has the following transactions, which are unrelated to the special event: unrestricted contributions of \$200, program expenses of \$60, management and general expenses of \$20, and fund-raising expenses of \$20.

**13.24** Some ways in which the organization could display the results of the special event as part of its statement of activities are illustrated as follows:

Statements of Position

Illustration 1

Changes in unrestricted net assets:		
Contributions		\$200
Special event revenue	100	
Less: Costs of direct benefits to donors	(25)	
Net revenues from special events		<u>75</u>
Contributions and net revenues from special events		275
Other expenses:		
Program		60
Management and general		20
Fund raising		<u>35</u>
Total other expenses		<u>115</u>
Increase in unrestricted net assets		<u><u>\$160</u></u>

Illustration 2

Changes in unrestricted net assets:		
Revenues:		
Contributions		\$200
Special event revenue		<u>100</u>
Total revenues		300
Expenses:		
Program		60
Costs of direct benefits to donors		25
Management and general		20
Fund raising		<u>35</u>
Total expenses		<u>140</u>
Increase in unrestricted net assets		<u><u>\$160</u></u>

Illustration 3

Changes in unrestricted net asset:		
Contributions		\$270
Dinner sales		30
Less: Costs of direct benefits to donors		<u>(25)</u>
Gross profit on special events		<u>5</u>
Contributions and net revenues from special events		275
Other expenses:		
Program		60
Management and general		20
Fund raising		<u>35</u>
Total other expenses		<u>115</u>
Increase in unrestricted net assets		<u><u>\$160</u></u>

[Revised, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to conforming changes made to the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Organizations*.]

**I.3.** For governmental entities that have applied the accounting and financial reporting principles in SOP 78-10, *Accounting Principles and Reporting Practices for Certain Nonprofit Organizations*, or the AICPA Industry Audit Guide *Audits of Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations* (modified by all applicable Financial Accounting Standards Board [FASB] pronouncements issued through November 30, 1989, and by most applicable Governmental Accounting Standards Board [GASB] pronouncements) in conformity with GASB Statement No. 29, *The Use of Not-for-Profit Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles by Governmental Entities*, this SOP amends the principles—based on SOP 78-10 and *Audits of Voluntary Health and Welfare Organizations*, as modified—that those entities apply. For governmental entities that have applied the accounting and financial reporting principles in the 1973 AICPA Industry Audit Guide *Audits of Colleges and Universities*, as amended by SOP 74-8, *Financial Accounting and Reporting by Colleges and Universities*, and as modified by applicable FASB pronouncements issued through November 30, 1989, and all applicable GASB pronouncements in conformity with GASB Statement No. 15, *Governmental College and University Accounting and Financial Reporting Models*, this SOP amends the principles—based on *Audits of Colleges and Universities*, as amended and modified—that those entities apply. For other governmental organizations, this SOP amends the Audit and Accounting Guide *Audits of State and Local Governmental Units*.<sup>††</sup>

---

<sup>††</sup> See footnotes ‡ and || in paragraphs D.3 and D.4, respectively. Also, the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* supersedes the 1994 AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Audits of State and Local Governmental Units* and subsequent editions of that Guide with conforming changes made by the AICPA staff. The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* provides guidance on the application of this SOP to state and local governments. [Footnote added, June 2004, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of GASB Statements No. 34, No. 35, and the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Audits of State and Local Governmental Units*.]

## Glossary

**Activities.** Activities are efforts to accomplish specific objectives. Some activities include producing and distributing materials. For example, if an entity undertakes a mass mailing that includes a letter and a pamphlet, producing and distributing the letter and pamphlet are part of the activity. Other activities may include no materials, such as an annual dinner or a radio commercial.

**Compensation or fees.** Reciprocal transfers of cash or other assets in exchange for services performed.

**Contributions.** Contributions are unconditional transfers of cash or other assets to an entity or a settlement or cancellation of its liabilities in a voluntary nonreciprocal transfer by another entity acting other than as an owner.

**Costs of joint activities.** Costs of joint activities are costs incurred for a joint activity. Costs of joint activities may include joint costs and costs other than joint costs. Costs other than joint costs are costs that are identifiable with a particular function, such as fund raising, program, management and general, and cost of sales. For example, some costs incurred for printing, paper, professional fees, and salaries to produce donor cards are not joint costs, although they may be incurred in connection with conducting joint activities.

**Fund-raising activities.** Fund-raising activities are activities undertaken to induce potential donors to contribute money, securities, services, materials, facilities, other assets, or time. They include publicizing and conducting fund-raising campaigns; maintaining donor mailing lists; conducting special fund-raising events; preparing and distributing fund-raising manuals, instructions, and other materials; and conducting other activities involved with soliciting contributions from individuals, foundations, governments, and others.

**Help accomplish the entity's mission.** Actions that help accomplish the entity's mission are actions that either benefit the recipient (such as by improving the recipient's physical, mental, emotional, or spiritual health and well-being) or benefit society (by addressing societal problems).

**Joint activity.** A joint activity is an activity that is part of the fund-raising function and has elements of one or more other functions, such as program, management and general, membership development, or any other functional category used by the entity.

**Joint costs.** Joint costs are the costs of conducting joint activities that are not identifiable with a particular component of the activity. For example, the cost of postage for a letter that includes both fund-raising and program components is a joint cost. Joint costs may include the costs of salaries, contract labor, consultants, professional fees, paper, printing, postage, event advertising, telephones, airtime, and facility rentals.

**Management and general activities.** Management and general activities are those that are not identifiable with a single program, fund-raising activity, or membership-development activity but that are indispensable to the conduct of those activities and to an organization's existence. They

include oversight, business management, general recordkeeping, budgeting, financing, soliciting revenue from exchange transactions, such as government contracts and related administrative activities, and all management and administration except for direct conduct of program services or fund-raising activities. Disseminating information to inform the public of the organization's "stewardship" of contributed funds, announcements concerning appointments, and the annual report, among other activities, are management and general activities, as are soliciting funds other than contributions, including exchange transactions (whether program-related or not).

**Medium.** A medium is a means of mass communication, such as direct mail, direct response advertising, or television.

**Membership-development activities.** Membership-development activities include soliciting for prospective members and membership dues, membership relations, and similar activities. If there are no significant benefits or duties connected with membership, however, the substance of membership-development activities may, in fact, be fund-raising.

**Program activities.** Program activities are the activities that result in goods or services being distributed to beneficiaries, customers, or members that fulfill the purposes or mission for which the organization exists. Those services are the major purpose for and the major output of the organization and often relate to several major programs. For example, a large university may have programs for student instruction, research, and patient care, among others. Similarly, a health and welfare organization may have programs for health and family services, research, disaster relief, and public education, among others.

## Accounting Standards Executive Committee (1996–1997)

G. MICHAEL CROOCH, *Chair*  
PHILIP D. AMEEN  
JAMES L. BROWN  
JOSEPH H. CAPPALONGA  
JOHN C. COMPTON  
LESLIE A. COOLIDGE  
EDMUND COULSON  
JAMES F. HARRINGTON

R. LARRY JOHNSON  
DAVID B. KAPLAN  
JAMES W. LEDWITH  
LOUIS W. MATUSIAK, JR.  
JAMES P. MCCOMB  
CHARLES L. MCDONALD  
ROGER H. MOLVAR

## Not-for-Profit Organizations Committee (1995–1996)

KENNETH D. WILLIAMS, *Chair*  
ELAINE T. ALLEN  
KATHERINE K. ANDERSON  
MARTHA L. BENSON  
WALTER D. BRISTOL  
GREGORY B. CAPIN  
GREGORY A. COURSEN  
LAWRENCE A. DOLLINGER

JOHN H. FISHER  
MARY F. FOSTER  
STEPHEN H. KATTELL  
ROBERT C. KOVARIK, JR.  
RICHARD F. LARKIN  
LOUIS J. MEZZINA  
RICHARD E. MILLS, III

## AICPA Staff

JANE B. ADAMS  
*Director*  
*Accounting Standards*

JOEL TANENBAUM  
*Technical Manager*  
*Accounting Standards*

---

[The next page is 28,001.]

## IP Section 13,000

***Issues Papers of the Accounting Standards Division***

Issues Papers of the AICPA's Accounting Standards Division are developed primarily to identify financial accounting and reporting issues the division believes need to be addressed or clarified by the Financial Accounting Standards Board. Issues Papers present neutral discussions of the issues identified, including reviews of pertinent existing literature, current practice, and relevant research, as well as arguments on alternative solutions. Issues Papers normally include advisory conclusions that represent the views of at least a majority of the Institute's Accounting Standards Executive Committee.

Issues Papers do not establish standards of financial accounting enforceable under Rule 203 of the Institute's Code of Professional Conduct.

<u>Title</u>	<u>Date Issued</u>
Accounting for Termination Indemnities (superseded by FASB Statement No. 88, <i>Employers' Accounting for Settlements and Curtailments of Defined Benefit Pension Plans and for Termination Benefits</i> )	12/12/78
Accounting for Changes in Estimates	12/15/78
Accounting for Involuntary Conversions (superseded by FASB Interpretation No. 30, <i>Accounting for Involuntary Conversions of Nonmonetary Assets to Monetary Assets</i> )	12/20/78
Accounting for Time Paid But Not Worked (superseded by FASB Statement No. 43, <i>Accounting for Compensated Absences</i> )	1/11/79
The Meaning of "In Substance a Repossession or Foreclosure" and Accounting for Partial Refinancing of Troubled Real Estate Loans Under FASB Statement No. 15 (superseded by AICPA Practice Bulletin No. 7, <i>Criteria for Determining Whether Collateral for a Loan Has Been In-Substance Foreclosed</i> )	1/15/79
Personal Financial Statements (superseded by AICPA <i>Personal Financial Statements Guide</i> )	2/26/79
Project Financing Arrangements (superseded by FASB Statement No. 47, <i>Disclosure of Long-Term Obligations</i> )	2/26/79
Real Estate ADC Costs (superseded by FASB Statement No. 66, <i>Accounting for Sales of Real Estate</i> )	4/27/79

<u>Title</u>	<u>Date Issued</u>
Accounting for Allowances for Losses on Certain Real Estate and Loans and Receivables Collateralized by Real Estate	6/21/79
Joint Venture Accounting	7/17/79
Accounting for Repurchase, Reverse Repurchase, Dollar Repurchase, and Dollar Reverse Repurchase Agreements for Savings and Loans (incorporated into the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Savings Institutions</i> )	8/7/79
Accounting by Investors for Distributions Received in Excess of Their Investment in a Joint Venture (An Addendum to the July 17, 1979 Issues Paper on Joint Venture Accounting)	10/8/79
Accounting for Grants Received From Governments (superseded by IASC International Accounting Standard No. 20, <i>Accounting for Government Grants and Disclosure of Government Assistance</i> )	10/16/79
"Push Down" Accounting	10/30/79
Mortgage Guaranty Insurance (superseded by FASB Statement No. 60, <i>Accounting and Reporting by Insurance Enterprises</i> )	1/8/80
Accounting for Vested Pension Benefits Existing or Arising When a Plant is Closed or a Business Segment is Discontinued (superseded by FASB Statement No. 87, <i>Employers' Accounting for Pensions</i> )	2/5/80
Transfers of Receivables With Recourse (superseded by FASB Statement No. 77, <i>Reporting by Transferors for Transfers of Receivables with Recourse</i> )	3/20/80
Accounting by Lease Brokers (superseded by FASB Technical Bulletin No. 86-2, <i>Accounting for an Interest in the Residual Value of a Leased Asset</i> )	6/20/80
Accounting in Consolidation for Issuances of a Subsidiary Stock	6/30/80
Accounting for the Inability to Fully Recover the Carrying Amounts of Long Lived Assets (superseded by FASB Statement No. 121, <i>Accounting for the Impairment of Long-Lived Assets and for Long-Lived Assets to Be Disposed Of</i> )	7/15/80
Intangibles in the Motor Carrier Industry (superseded by FASB Statement No. 44, <i>Accounting for Intangible Assets of Motor Carriers</i> )	8/13/80
Related Party Transactions (superseded by FASB Statement No. 57, <i>Related Party Disclosures</i> )	12/10/80
Accounting for Forward Placement and Standby Commitments and Interest Rate Futures Contracts (superseded by FASB Statement No. 80, <i>Accounting for Futures Contracts</i> )	12/16/80
Certain Issues That Affect Accounting for Minority Interest in Consolidated Financial Statements	3/17/81
Sales of Timesharing Interests in Real Estate (superseded by FASB Statement No. 67, <i>Accounting for Costs and Initial Rental Operations of Real Estate Projects</i> )	4/10/81

<u>Title</u>	<u>Date Issued</u>
Accounting for Installment Lending Activities of Finance Companies (incorporated into the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Finance Companies (including Independent and Captive Financing Activities of Other Companies)</i> )	6/25/81
Accounting for Agricultural Producers and Agricultural Cooperatives (superseded by SOP 85-3, <i>Accounting by Agricultural Producers and Agricultural Cooperatives</i> [see section 10,390])	7/13/81
Accounting for Joint Costs of Multipurpose Informational Materials and Activities of Nonprofit Organizations (superseded by AICPA SOP No. 87-2, <i>Accounting for Joint Costs of Informational Materials and Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations That Include a Fund-Raising Appeal</i> )	7/16/81
Bulk Purchases of Mortgages (superseded by FASB Statement No. 65, <i>Accounting for Certain Mortgage Banking Activities</i> )	8/3/81
Depreciation of Income Producing Real Estate	11/16/81
Accounting for Medical Malpractice Loss Contingencies (Asserted and Unasserted Claims) and Related Issues of Health Care Providers (superseded by SOP 87-1, <i>Accounting for Asserted and Unasserted Medical Malpractice Claims of Health Care Providers and Related Issues</i> [SOP 87-1 was subsequently superseded by the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Providers of Health Care Services</i> ])	8/13/82
The Acceptability of "Simplified LIFO" for Financial Reporting Purposes	10/14/82
Financial Reporting by Health Care Entities of the Proceeds of Tax Exempt Bonds and Funds Limited as to Use (incorporated into the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Providers of Health Care Services</i> )	11/1/82
Accounting for Employee Capital Accumulation Plans	11/4/82
Accounting for Nonrefundable Fees of Originating or Acquiring Loans and Acquisition Costs of Loan and Insurance Activities (superseded by FASB Statement No. 91, <i>Accounting for Nonrefundable Fees and Costs Associated with Originating or Acquiring Loans and Initial Direct Costs of Leases</i> )	9/20/83
Accounting for Costs of Software for Sale or Lease (superseded by FASB Statement No. 86, <i>Accounting for Costs of Computer Software to be Sold, Leased, or Otherwise Marketed</i> )	2/17/84
Computation of Premium Deficiencies in Insurance Enterprises	3/26/84

<u>Title</u>	<u>Date Issued</u>
Accounting for Income Taxes of Stock Life Insurance Companies (superseded by FASB Technical Bulletin No. 84-3, <i>Accounting for the Effects of the Tax Reform Act on Deferred Income Taxes of Stock Life Insurance Enterprises</i> )	7/12/84
Accounting for Key Person Life Insurance (superseded by FASB Technical Bulletin No. 85-4, <i>Accounting for Purchases of Life Insurance</i> )	10/31/84
Accounting by Stock Life Insurance Companies for Annuities, Universal Life, and Related Products and Accounting for Nonguaranteed-Premium Products	11/5/84
Identification and Discussion of Certain Financial Accounting and Reporting Issues Concerning LIFO Inventories	11/30/84
Accounting for Loss Portfolio Transfers-Letter	1/16/85
Accounting by Health and Maintenance Organizations and Associated Entities (superseded by AICPA SOP 89-5, <i>Financial Accounting and Reporting by Providers of Prepaid Health Care Services</i> )	6/28/85
Accounting for Estimated Credit Losses on Loan Portfolios (incorporated into the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Finance Companies (including Independent and Captive Financing Activities of Other Companies)</i> )	2/14/86
Accounting for Options	3/6/86
Software Revenue Recognition (superseded by AICPA SOP 91-1, <i>Software Revenue Recognition</i> [AICPA SOP 91-1 was subsequently superseded by AICPA SOP 97-2, <i>Software Revenue Recognition</i> ; see section 10,700])	4/21/87
The Use of Discounting in Financial Reporting for Monetary Items With Uncertain Terms Other Than Those Covered by Existing Authoritative Literature (see the FASB Discussion Memorandum on interest rates discounting)	9/9/87
Quasi Reorganizations	10/28/88

---

[The next page is 30,201.]

# STATEMENTS OF POSITION AUDITING AND ATTESTATION

## Introduction

Auditing and Attestation Statements of Position are issued to achieve one or more of several objectives: to revise, clarify, or supplement guidance in previously issued Audit and Accounting Guides; to describe and provide implementation guidance for specific types of audit and attestation engagements; or to provide guidance on specialized areas in audit and attestation engagements. The auditing and attestation guidance in a Statement of Position has the same authority as auditing and attestation guidance in an Audit and Accounting Guide, and members should be aware that they may be asked to justify departures from such guidance if the quality of their work is questioned.

---

[The next page is 30,211.]



# AUD Section 14,000

## STATEMENTS OF POSITION AUDITING AND ATTESTATION

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section	Paragraph
[14,010] Revision of Form of Auditor's Report (7/74) [Superseded by the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Property and Liability Insurance Companies</i> , 1990]	
[14,020] Audits of Brokers and Dealers in Securities (12/76) [Withdrawn by inclusion in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Brokers and Dealers in Securities</i> , 1985]	
[14,030] Clarification of Accounting, Auditing, and Reporting Practices Relating to Hospital Malpractice Loss Contingencies (3/78) [Superseded by the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide, <i>Audits of Providers of Health Care Services</i> , 1990]	
[14,040] Confirmation of Insurance Policies in Force (8/72) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,050] Report on a Financial Feasibility Study (10/82) [Superseded by the AICPA <i>Guide for Prospective Financial Statements</i> , 1986]	
[14,060] Auditing Property and Liability Reinsurance (10/82) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,070] Auditing Life Reinsurance (11/84) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,080] Illustrative Auditor's Reports on Financial Statements of Employee Benefit Plans Comporting With Statement on Auditing Standards No. 58, <i>Reports on Audited Financial Statements</i> (SOP 88-2) [Superseded by the incorporated into the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of Employee Benefit Plans</i> , 1991]	
[14,090] Reports on Audited Financial Statements of Brokers and Dealers in Securities (SOP 89-1) [Superseded by and AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Brokers and Dealers in Securities</i> , 1997]	
[14,100] Reports on Audited Financial Statements of Investment Companies (SOP 89-2) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,110] Questions Concerning Accountants' Services on Prospective Financial Statements (SOP 89-3) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,120] Reports on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Brokers and Dealers in Securities (SOP 89-4) [Superseded by and incorporated into the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Brokers and Dealers in Securities</i> , 1997]	

Section	Paragraph
[14,130] Auditor's Reports in Audits of State and Local Governmental Units (SOP 89-6) [Superseded by and incorporated into SOP 92-7, <i>Audits of State and Local Governmental Entities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance</i> ]	
[14,140] Report on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Investment Companies (SOP 89-7) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,150] Accountants' Services on Prospective Financial Statements for Internal Use Only and Partial Presentations (SOP 90-1) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,160] Report on the Internal Control Structure in Audits of Futures Commission Merchants (SOP 90-2) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,170] Auditor's Reports Under U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development's Audit Guide for Mortgages Having HUD Insured or Secretary Held Multifamily Mortgages (SOP 90-4) [Superseded by the AICPA Auditing Standards Division, November 1992]	
[14,180] Inquiries of Representatives of Financial Institutions (SOP 90-5) [Superseded by and incorporated into the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Banks and Savings Institutions</i> , 1996]	
[14,190] Director's Examinations of Banks (SOP 90-6) [Superseded by and incorporated into the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Banks and Savings Institutions</i> , 1996]	
[14,200] The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Control Structure Used in Administering Federal Financial Assistance Programs Under the Single Audit Act (SOP 90-9) [Superseded by and incorporated into SOP 92-7, <i>Audits of State and Local Government Entities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance</i> ]	
[14,210] Reports on Audited Financial Statements of Property and Liability Insurance Companies (SOP 90-10) [Superseded by SOP 95-5, <i>Auditor's Reporting on Statutory Financial Statements of Insurance Enterprises</i> ]	
[14,220] Questions and Answers on the Term <i>Reasonably Objective Basis</i> and Other Issues Affecting Prospective Financial Statements (SOP 92-2) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,230] Auditing Insurance Entities' Loss Reserves (SOP 92-4) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,240] Audits of State and Local Governmental Entities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance (SOP 92-7) [Superseded by the Audit and Accounting Guide <i>Audits of State and Local Governmental Units</i> , 1994]	

Section	Paragraph
14,250 Auditing Property/Casualty Insurance Entities' Statutory Financial Statements—Applying Certain Requirements of the NAIC Annual Statement Instructions (SOP 92-8)	.01-.09
Applicability .....	.01
Introduction .....	.02-.03
Auditing Procedures .....	.04-.08
Effective Date .....	.09
[14,260] Audits of Not-for-Profit Organizations Receiving Federal Awards (SOP 92-9) [Superseded by SOP 98-3, <i>Audits of States, Local Governments, and Not-for-Profit Organizations Receiving Federal Awards</i> . See section 14,320.]	
[14,270] Reporting on Required Supplementary Information Accompanying Compiled or Reviewed Financial Statements of Common Interest Realty Associations (SOP 93-5) [Rescinded by Accounting and Review Services Committee, May 2008]	
[14,280] The Auditor's Consideration of Regulatory Risk-Based Capital for Life Insurance Enterprises (SOP 93-8) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,290] Inquiries of State Insurance Regulators (SOP 94-1) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,300] Letters for State Insurance Regulators to Comply With the NAIC Model Audit Rule (SOP 95-4) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,310] Auditor's Reporting on Statutory Financial Statements of Insurance Enterprises (SOP 95-5) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,320] Audits of States, Local Governments, and Not-for-Profit Organizations Receiving Federal Awards (SOP 98-3) [Deleted by the AICPA Audit Guide <i>Audits of States, Local Governments, and Not-for-Profit Organizations Receiving Federal Awards</i> ]	
[14,330] Reporting on Management's Assessment Pursuant to the Life Insurance Ethical Market Conduct Program of the Insurance Marketplace Standards Association (SOP 98-6) [Withdrawn 2009]	
[14,340] Engagements to Perform Year 2000 Agreed-Upon Procedures Attestation Engagements Pursuant to Rule 17a-5 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, Rule 17Ad-18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, and Advisories No. 17-98 and No. 42-98 of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (SOP 98-8) (11/98) [Withdrawn due to the expiration of year 2000 readiness assertions of CTFC Advisory No. 17-98]	

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
14,350	Guidance to Practitioners in Conducting and Reporting on an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement to Assist Management in Evaluating the Effectiveness of Its Corporate Compliance Program (SOP 99-1)	.01-.36
	Summary	
	Introduction and Background	.01-.03
	Overview of a Typical Corporate Integrity Agreement	.04-.05
	Conditions for Engagement Performance	.06-.20
	Establishing an Understanding With the Client	.08
	Responsibilities of Specified Parties	.09-.10
	Practitioner's Responsibilities	.11-.14
	Involvement of a Specialist	.15-.17
	Internal Auditors and Other Personnel	.18-.20
	Planning the Engagement	.21
	Documentation	.22-.23
	Management's Representations	.24
	Reporting Considerations	.25-.31
	Appendix A—Sample Corporate Integrity Agreement Between the Office of Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services and [Provider]	.32
	Appendix B—Sample Statement of Management's Assertions	.33
	Appendix C—Sample Engagement Letter	.34
	Appendix D—Sample Procedures	.35
	Appendix E—Sample Report	.36
14,360	Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables (SOP 00-1)	.01-.38
	Summary	
	Introduction and Background	.01-.04
	Scope and Applicability	.05
	Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables—Inherent Uncertainties	.06-.08
	Management's Responsibilities	.09-.11
	The Auditor's Responsibilities	.12-.15
	Audit Evidence	.16-.21
	Potential Departures From GAAP Related to Estimates and Uncertainties	.22-.37
	Unreasonable Accounting Estimates	.24-.30
	Inappropriate Accounting Principles	.31-.33
	Inadequate Disclosure	.34-.37
	Appendix—Other Considerations Related to Government Investigations	.38

Section	Paragraph
14,370 Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions as Required by the New York State Insurance Law (SOP 01-3)	.01-.38
Introduction and Background .....	.01-.06
Applicability .....	.07-.08
The Law .....	.09-.12
Definition of a Derivative .....	.09-.11
Derivative Use Plan .....	.12
Related Professional Standards .....	.13-.19
AT Section 201, <i>Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements</i> .....	.13-.16
AU Section 332, <i>Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities</i> ..	.17-.19
Procedures to Be Performed .....	.20-.27
Establishing an Understanding With the Client .....	.28
Management Representations .....	.29-.31
Restriction on the Performance of Procedures .....	.32-.33
Dating the Report .....	.34
Effective Date .....	.35
Appendix A—Illustrative Agreed-Upon Procedures Report ...	.36
Appendix B—Agreed-Upon Procedures for Testing Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions .....	.37
Appendix C—Illustrative Management Representation Letter ..	.38
[14,380] Reporting Pursuant to the Association for Investment Management and Research Performance Presentation Standards (SOP 01 -4) [Superseded by SOP 06-1, <i>Reporting Pursuant to the Global Investment Performance Standards</i> ]	
14,390 Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code (SOP 02-1)	.01-.29
Introduction and Background .....	.01-.04
Applicability .....	.05
The Code .....	.06-.10
Definitions .....	.06
Reporting Requirements .....	.07-.10
Related Professional Standards .....	.11-.13
AT Section 201, <i>Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements</i> .....	.11-.13
Procedures to Be Performed .....	.14-.19
Establishing an Understanding With the Client .....	.20

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
14,390 Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code (SOP 02-1)—continued	
Management Representations .....	.21-.23
Restriction on the Performance of Procedures .....	.24
Dating the Report .....	.25
Effective Date .....	.26
Appendix A—Illustrative Agreed-Upon Procedures Report ...	.27
Appendix B—Agreed-Upon Procedures That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code .....	.28
Appendix C—Illustrative Management Representation Letter ..	.29
14,400 Attest Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Emissions Information (SOP 03-2)	.01-.84
Background and Introduction .....	.01-.14
Climate Change and Greenhouse Gases .....	.01-.03
The Kyoto Protocol .....	.04-.06
GHGs to Be Regulated by the Kyoto Protocol .....	.07
Why U.S. Companies Are Considering Strategies to Address Their GHG Emissions .....	.08-.09
GHG Emissions Trading Programs and GHG Registries in the United States .....	.10-.13
Terms and Definitions Used by Registries and Regulatory Frameworks .....	.14
Scope of SOP .....	.15-.16
Engagement Acceptance Considerations .....	.17
Independence .....	.18-.20
Adequate Knowledge of Subject Matter and Use of a Specialist .....	.21-.29
Criteria .....	.30-.36
Attributes to Be Met by GHG Emission Reductions ....	.35-.36
Materiality .....	.37
Uncertainty in the Measurement of GHG Emissions .....	.38
Consistency .....	.39
Boundaries .....	.40
Scopes for Reporting GHG Emissions: Direct and Indirect Emissions .....	.41-.44
Baselines .....	.45
Examination Engagement: GHG Inventory .....	.46-.48
Objective of the Engagement .....	.46-.47
Written Assertion by the Responsible Party .....	.48
Examination Engagement: GHG Emission Reduction Information .....	.49-.54

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
14,400	Attest Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Emissions Information (SOP 03-2)—continued	
	Objective of the Engagement .....	.49
	Written Assertion by the Responsible Party .....	.50
	Examples of GHG Emission Reduction Projects .....	.51
	Prerequisite for an Examination of GHG Emission Reduction Information .....	.52-.54
	Engagement Performance .....	.55-.63
	Planning the Examination Engagement .....	.55-.57
	Part of Attest Engagement Performed by Other Practitioners .....	.58
	Attestation Risk .....	.59-.60
	Obtaining Sufficient Evidence .....	.61-.63
	Consideration of Subsequent Events .....	.64
	Adequacy of Disclosure .....	.65
	Representation Letter .....	.66-.68
	Reporting .....	.69-.77
	Attest Documentation .....	.78
	Effective Date .....	.79
	Appendix A-Glossary .....	.80
	Appendix B-Sources for GHG Emission Protocols and Calculation Tools .....	.81
	Appendix C-Illustrative Management Representation Letter ...	.82
	Appendix D-Illustrative Examination Reports on GHG Emissions Information .....	.83
	Appendix E-Illustrative Examination Reports on GHG Emission Reduction Information .....	.84
14,410	Auditing the Statement of Social Insurance (SOP 04-1)	.01-.23
	Introduction .....	.01-.03
	Applicability .....	.04
	Management's Responsibilities .....	.05-.08
	Preparing Social Insurance Estimates .....	.06
	Conceptual Model .....	.07
	Designing and Implementing Internal Control Related to Estimates .....	.08
	The Auditor's Responsibility .....	.09-.43
	Obtaining an Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment, Including Its Internal Control .....	.11-.29
	Performing Further Audit Procedures .....	.30-.39
	Reporting .....	.40-.43
	Effective Date and Transition .....	.44
	Appendix—Illustrative Controls and Audit Procedures .....	.45

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
14,420 Reporting Pursuant to the Global Investment Performance Standards (SOP 06-1)	.01-.43
Introduction and Background .....	.01-.06
Scope .....	.07-.08
Overview of the GIPS Standards .....	.09-.14
Compliance With the GIPS Standards .....	.09-.11
Verification .....	.12-.13
Performance Examination .....	.14
Verification and Performance Examination Engagements .....	.15-.36
Engagement Objectives .....	.15-.17
Planning the Engagement .....	.18
Establishing an Understanding With the Client .....	.19-.20
Obtaining Sufficient Evidence .....	.21-.27
Representation Letter .....	.28
Reporting .....	.29-.36
Effective Date .....	.37
Appendix A—Example Engagement Letter: Verification and Performance Examination .....	.38
Appendix B—Example Management Representation Letter: Verification and Performance Examination .....	.39
Appendix C—Illustrative Attest Reports: Verification .....	.40
Appendix D—Illustrative Attest Reports: Verification and Performance Examination .....	.41
Appendix E—Illustrative Attest Reports: Verification and Performance Examination Under Both AIMR-PPS and GIPS Standards (Not to be used for periods ending after December 31, 2005) .....	.42
Appendix F—Illustrative Attest Reports: Successor Practitioner Report—Verification and Performance Examination .....	.43
14,430 Attestation Engagements That Address Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls at Entities That Provide Services to Investment Companies, Investment Advisers, or Other Service Providers (SOP 07-2)	.01-.45
Introduction and Background .....	.01-.05
Objective of the Examination Engagement .....	.06-.07
Subject Matter of the Examination Engagement .....	.08
Management's Responsibilities .....	.09
Criteria .....	.10
Reference to Laws, Regulations, and Rules .....	.11

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
14,430 Attestation Engagements That Address Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls at Entities That Provide Services to Investment Companies, Investment Advisers, or Other Service Providers (SOP 07-2)—continued	
Practitioner's Responsibilities .....	.12-.13
Matters Addressed by the Compliance Control Objectives ....	.14-.18
Evaluating Deficiencies in Controls .....	.19-.20
User Organizations Affected by a Service Provider's Noncompliance With Federal Securities Laws or Elements Thereof .....	.21-.22
Management Assertion .....	.23-.24
Management Representations .....	.25-.27
Reporting .....	.28-.33
Agreed-Upon Procedures .....	.34-.36
Effective Date .....	.37
Appendix A-1—Illustrative Practitioner's Examination Report on a Service Provider's Assertion Regarding Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls ...	.38
Appendix A-2—Illustrative Practitioner's Examination Report on a Service Provider's Assertion Regarding Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls When the Service Provider Uses a Subservice Provider and the Subservice Provider's Control Objectives and Related Controls are Excluded From the Description and the Scope of the Practitioner's Engagement .....	.39
Appendix A-3—Illustrative Management Assertion Regarding a Service Provider's Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls .....	.40
Appendix A-4—Illustrative Service Provider's Description of Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls .....	.41
Appendix B—Illustrative Practitioner's Examination Report Containing a Qualified Opinion on the Suitability of the Design and Operating Effectiveness of a Service Provider's Controls in Achieving Specified Compliance Control Objectives .....	.42
Appendix C—Additional Illustrative Compliance Control Objectives .....	.43
Appendix D—Matters Identified in Securities and Exchange Commission Release Nos. IC-26299 and IA-2204 Adopting Rules 38a-1 and 206(4)-7 Pertaining to Compliance Policies and Procedures of Funds and Investment Advisers .....	.44
Appendix E—Illustrative Practitioner's Agreed-Upon Procedures Report .....	.45

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
14,440	Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address the Completeness, Accuracy, or Consistency of XBRL-Tagged Data (SOP 09-1)	.01-.39
	Introduction and Background .....	.01-.06
	Subject Matter of the Engagement .....	.07-.14
	Conditions for Engagement Performance .....	.15-.16
	Agreement on Sufficiency of Procedures .....	.17
	Establishing an Understanding With the Client .....	.18-.19
	Nature, Timing, and Extent of Procedures .....	.20-.24
	Responsibilities of Management .....	.20
	Responsibilities of the Practitioner .....	.21
	Procedures to Be Performed .....	.22
	Involvement of a Specialist .....	.23-.24
	Written Representations .....	.25-.26
	Reporting Considerations .....	.27-.30
	Knowledge of Matters Outside Agreed-Upon Procedures ....	.31
	Explanatory Language in the Practitioner's Agreed-Upon Procedures Report .....	.32
	Effective Date .....	.33
	Appendix A—Illustrative Management Assertions .....	.34
	Appendix B—Illustrative Engagement Letter .....	.35
	Appendix C—Illustrative Representation Letter .....	.36
	Appendix D—Illustrative Procedures and Findings .....	.37
	Appendix E—Illustrative Agreed-Upon Procedures Report ....	.38
	Appendix F—Glossary .....	.39

---

[The next page is 30,761.]

## Section 14,250

# ***Statement of Position 92-8 Auditing Property/Casualty Insurance Entities' Statutory Financial Statements—Applying Certain Requirements of the NAIC Annual Statement Instructions***

October, 1992

### **NOTE**

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretive publication and represents the recommendations of the Insurance Companies Committee regarding the audit of property/casualty insurance entities' statutory financial statements in applying certain requirements of the National Association of Insurance Commissioners' (NAIC's) Annual Statement Instructions. The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has found the recommendations in this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, Professional Standards, vol. 2, ET sec. 202.01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Interpretive publications are not as authoritative as pronouncements of the ASB; however, if an auditor does not apply the guidance included in this SOP, the auditor should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the provisions of this SOP.

## **Applicability**

**.01** This statement of position (SOP) provides guidance on the impact of certain requirements of the National Association of Insurance Commissioners' (NAIC's) Annual Statement Instructions—Property and Casualty on the auditor's procedures in the audit of statutory financial statements of property/casualty insurance entities.

## **Introduction**

**.02** The NAIC's Annual Statement Instructions direct property/casualty insurers to require their independent certified public accountants to subject the current Schedule P-Part 1 (excluding those amounts related to bulk and incurred-but-not-reported [IBNR] reserves and claim counts) to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the current statutory financial statements to determine whether Schedule P-Part 1 is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic statutory financial statements taken as a whole. Schedule P-Part 1 includes Part 1-Summary and Part 1A-1R.

**.03** Although no separate report on Schedule P-Part 1 is required by the NAIC, the provisions of AU section 551, *Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents* (AICPA,

*Professional Standards*, vol. 1), and the provisions of this SOP apply when information in Schedule P-Part 1 is subjected to auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic statutory financial statements. The requirements of this SOP do not preclude an auditor from issuing a report similar to that illustrated in paragraph .12 of AU section 551. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Auditing Procedures

**.04** Certain of the information in Schedule P-Part 1 is typically subjected to auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic statutory financial statements (for example, premiums earned and losses paid). Other information not directly related to the basic statutory financial statements is also presented (for example, lines of business classifications for immaterial lines). Although such information may not have been subjected to auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic statutory financial statements in all instances, such information may have been derived from accounting records that have been tested by the auditor.

**.05** Paragraph 7 of AU section 551 states that although an auditor is not required by generally accepted auditing standards to apply auditing procedures to information presented outside of the basic financial statements, he or she may choose to modify or redirect certain of the procedures to be applied in the audit of the basic financial statements.

**.06** Chapter 4, “The Loss Reserving and Claims Cycle,” of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Property and Liability Insurance Entities* (the guide), addresses auditing the claims data base, and is applicable when applying auditing procedures to the information presented in Schedule P-Part 1. Chapter 4 also provides a comprehensive discussion of auditing loss reserves and the claims cycle. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.07** As stated in chapter 4 of the guide, because claim data and characteristics such as dates and types of loss can significantly influence reserve estimation, the auditor should test the completeness, accuracy, and classification of the claim loss data during the audit of the statutory financial statements. In extending those procedures to Schedule P-Part 1, the auditor should determine that

- a. The data presented on Schedule P-Part 1 is properly reconciled to the statistical records of the company.
- b. Changes between the prior-year and current-year Schedule P-Part 1 are properly reconciled to the current-year audited statutory financial statements.
- c. The source of the data for the auditing procedures applied to the claim loss and loss adjustment expense data during the current calendar year (for example, tests of payments on claims for all accident years that were paid during the current calendar year) is the same as (or reconciles to) the statistical records that support the data presented on Schedule P-Part 1.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.08** If, as a result of the procedures performed during the audit of the statutory financial statements, the auditor concludes, on the basis of facts

known to him or her, that Schedule P-Part 1 is materially misstated in relation to the basic financial statements taken as a whole, the auditor should communicate to the company's management and the opining actuary that Schedule P-Part 1 is not fairly stated and should describe the misstatement. If the company will not agree to revise Schedule P-Part 1, the auditor should issue a report on Schedule P-Part 1 and should include a description of the misstatement in that report. (The auditor should refer to AU section 551 when a report will be issued.) The auditor should consider the impact of a misstatement in Schedule P-Part 1 on the auditor's report on the statutory financial statements. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Effective Date

**.09** This SOP is effective for audits of statutory-basis financial statements of property/casualty insurance entities for periods ending after December 15, 1992.

### Insurance Companies Committee (1991-1992)

JOHN T. BAILY, *Chairman*

SHIRLEY L. ABEL

EDWARD F. BADER

RICHARD H. BERTHOLDT

ANTHONY R. BIELE

HOWARD E. DALTON

FREDERICK W. DEICHMANN

J. HEATH FITZSIMMONS

WILLIAM C. FRED A

ROBERT W. GRANOW

WAYNE R. HUNEKE

R. LARRY JOHNSON

PETER E. JOKIEL

JOHN W. MCCULLOUGH

GARY W. ROUBINEK

BRUCE E. SCHOWENGERDT

FREDRICKA TAUBITZ

### AICPA Staff

DAN M. GUY

*Vice President*

*Auditing Standards*

ELLISE G. KONIGSBERG

*Technical Manager*

*Accounting Standards*

---

[The next page is 31,381.]



## Section 14,350

# ***Statement of Position 99-1 Guidance to Practitioners in Conducting and Reporting on an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement to Assist Management in Evaluating the Effectiveness of Its Corporate Compliance Program***

May 21, 1999

### **NOTE**

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretive publication and represents the recommendations of the AICPA Health Care Pilot Task Force of the AICPA Auditing Standards Board (ASB) regarding the application of Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements to agreed-upon procedures attestation engagements performed to assist a health care provider in evaluating the effectiveness of its corporate compliance program consistent with the requirements of a Corporate Integrity Agreement entered into with the Office of Inspector General of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. The ASB has found the recommendations in this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202, Compliance With Standards (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 202.01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Interpretive publications are not as authoritative as pronouncements of the ASB; however, if a practitioner does not apply the attestation guidance included in this SOP, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the provisions of this SOP.

## **Summary**

This Statement of Position (SOP) provides guidance to practitioners in conducting and reporting on an agreed-upon procedures engagement performed pursuant to the AICPA Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements to assist a health care provider in evaluating the effectiveness of its corporate compliance program consistent with the requirements of a Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA) entered into with the Office of Inspector General (OIG) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. CIAs are specific to the entity involved; consequently, users of this SOP should be familiar with the specific requirements of the entity's CIA.

## **Introduction and Background**

.01 Within the past several years, the health care industry has experienced a significant increase in the number and magnitude of allegations of fraud and abuse involving federal health care programs (for example, Medicare and Medicaid) and private health care insurance. These allegations have

triggered regulatory scrutiny, litigation, significant monetary settlements, and negative publicity related to—among other things—coding and billing practices, patient referrals, cost reporting, quality of care, and clinical practices. Typically, as part of the global resolution of these allegations, the entity enters into a Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA) with the Office of Inspector General (OIG) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Such agreements require that management annually report on its compliance with the terms of the CIA and that there be an assessment of the entity's compliance with the CIA. This assessment includes a billing analysis, which may be performed by an independent review organization (such as a practitioner or consultant) or the provider (if permitted by the OIG), and an agreed-upon procedures engagement.

**.02** This SOP provides guidance to practitioners in conducting and reporting on an agreed-upon procedures engagement performed pursuant to the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) to assist an entity in evaluating the effectiveness of its corporate compliance program consistent with the requirements of a CIA.<sup>1</sup> The terms of a CIA are unique to the entity; consequently, users of this SOP need to be familiar with the actual CIA and its requirements.

**.03** This SOP applies to agreed-upon procedures engagements to assist in evaluating an entity's compliance for a specified period. Such engagements should follow the AICPA attestation standards, including AT section 201, *Agreed-Up Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), and the applicable sections of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements*, and AT section 601, *Compliance Attestation* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). The engagement should be conducted in accordance with standards established by the AICPA, including the criteria set forth in this SOP. However, this SOP is not intended to provide all the required criteria set forth in individual CIAs, nor all the applicable standards established by the AICPA. Additionally, the SOP contains some guidance that may be applied in evaluating an organization's corporate compliance program, even though the program was not imposed by a CIA.

## Overview of a Typical Corporate Integrity Agreement

**.04** A CIA is an agreement between a health care provider and the OIG in conjunction with a global settlement of a fraud investigation. Such an agreement typically seeks to establish a compliance program within the health care provider (for example, hospital, clinical lab, physician group) that will promote compliance with the requirements of Medicare, Medicaid, and all other federal health care programs.

**.05** CIAs are case-specific. Their terms are tailored to address the organizational and operating deficiencies related to providing and billing for health care services that have been identified by the OIG, the entity, or others.

---

<sup>1</sup> The practitioner also might be engaged to assist in other areas beyond an agreed-upon procedures engagement such as providing consulting services in connection with evaluating the company's billing practices, policies, and procedures as required by the CIA or in implementing, assessing, and reporting on voluntarily adopted compliance programs. In addition, the practitioner may assist in preparing an entity's self-disclosure reports to federal health agencies related to billing errors and other compliance matters. Similarly, practitioners may be involved in an entity's preparation of government-required (but not CIA-imposed) compliance reporting (for example, contract requirements for Medicare part C) beyond an agreed-upon procedures engagement.

Detailed compliance requirements are imposed as a condition for continued participation in federal health care programs. A sample CIA, provided by the OIG and intended to identify potential requirements, is included in appendix A [paragraph .32], "Sample Corporate Integrity Agreement." Typical agreements cover five years and require the entity to address the following areas:

- Appointment of a compliance officer and establishment of a compliance committee
- Establishment of a code of conduct
- Establishment of policies and procedures regarding the compliance program
- Development of an information and education program as to the CIA requirements, compliance program and code of conduct
- Annual assessment of billing policies, procedures, and practices
- Establishment of a confidential disclosure program
- Prohibition of employment of excluded or convicted persons
- Notification to OIG of investigation or legal proceedings
- Reporting of credible evidence of misconduct
- Notifications to OIG of new provider locations
- Provision of implementation and annual reports
- Proper notification and submission of required reports
- Granting of OIG access to documents and individuals to conduct assessments
- Documentation of record retention requirements
- Awareness of disclosure criteria
- Agreement to comply with certain default provisions, penalties, and remedies
- Review of rights as to dispute resolution
- Review of effective and binding agreement clauses

## Conditions for Engagement Performance

**.06** A practitioner may perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to management's compliance with a CIA if all of the conditions specified in AT sections 201 and 601 are met.

**.07** As discussed more fully in the AT sections identified in paragraph .06, management's assertions as to its compliance must be capable of evaluation against reasonable criteria that either have been established by a recognized body or are stated in or attached to the practitioner's report in a sufficiently clear and comprehensive manner. Generally, to avoid confusion, management's assertions, which are based on the specific terms of its CIA, should be attached to the practitioner's report. If the entity is not required to have a CIA, management may develop its assertions using the model CIA. A sample based on the model CIA, which is not meant to be all-inclusive, is included as appendix B (paragraph .33), "Sample Statement of Management's Assertions." [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Establishing an Understanding With the Client

**.08** The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client, such as an engagement letter. Appendix C [paragraph .34], “Sample Engagement Letter,” contains a sample engagement letter that may be used for this kind of engagement.

## Responsibilities of Specified Parties

**.09** AT section 201 identifies the users of an agreed-upon procedures report as specified parties. The specified parties to the agreed upon procedures report described in this SOP typically would be the management of the health care provider and the OIG. Management is responsible for ensuring that the entity complies with the requirements of the CIA. That responsibility encompasses (a) identifying applicable compliance requirements, (b) establishing and maintaining internal control policies and procedures to provide reasonable assurance that the entity complies with those requirements, (c) evaluating and monitoring the entity’s compliance, and (d) preparing reports that satisfy legal, regulatory, or contractual requirements. Management’s evaluation may include documentation such as accounting or statistical data, policy manuals, accounting manuals, narrative memoranda, procedural write-ups, flowcharts, completed questionnaires, internal auditors’ reports, and other special studies or analyses. The form and extent of documentation will vary depending on the nature of the compliance requirements and the size and complexity of the entity. Management may engage the practitioner to gather information to assist it in evaluating the entity’s compliance. Regardless of the procedures performed by the practitioner, management must accept responsibility for its assertions and must not base such assertions solely on the practitioner’s procedures. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.10** The specified parties are responsible for the sufficiency (nature, timing, and extent) of the agreed-upon procedures because they best understand their own needs. The specified parties assume the risk that such procedures might be insufficient for their purposes. In addition, the specified parties assume the risk that they might misunderstand or otherwise inappropriately use findings properly reported by the practitioner. Use of an agreed-upon procedures report is restricted to the specified parties. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Practitioner’s Responsibilities

**.11** The objective of the practitioner’s agreed-upon procedures is to present specific findings to assist the specified parties in evaluating an entity’s compliance with the requirements specified in the CIA. (See appendix D [paragraph .35], “Sample Procedures.”) [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.12** The practitioner’s procedures generally may be as limited or extensive as the specified parties desire, as long as the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.13** To satisfy the requirements that the practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and that the specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes, ordinarily the practitioner should communicate directly with and obtain affirmative acknowledgment from each of the specified parties. For the purposes of these engagements, an effective way to obtain this agreement ordinarily is to distribute a draft of the report, detailing the procedures, that is expected to be issued to the OIG with a request for any comments it may have. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.14** To avoid possible misunderstandings, the practitioner should circulate the draft with a legend stating that these are the procedures expected to be performed, and unless informed otherwise, the practitioner assumes that there are no additional procedures that he or she is expected to perform. A legend such as the following might be used.

This draft is furnished solely for the purpose of indicating the form of report that we would expect to be able to furnish pursuant to the request by Management of [Provider] for our performance of limited procedures relating to [Provider's] compliance with the Corporate Integrity Agreement with the Office of Inspector General (OIG) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Based on our discussions with [Provider], it is our understanding that the procedures outlined in this draft report are those we are expected to follow. Unless informed otherwise within ninety (90) days of this transmittal, we shall assume that there are no additional procedures that we are expected to follow. The text of the definitive report will depend, of course, on the results of the procedures.

## Involvement of a Specialist <sup>2</sup>

**.15** The practitioner's education and experience enable him or her to be knowledgeable about business matters in general, but he or she is not expected to have the expertise of a person trained for or qualified to engage in the practice of another profession or occupation. In certain circumstances, it may be appropriate to involve a specialist to assist the practitioner in the performance of one or more procedures. The following are examples:

- An attorney might provide assistance concerning the application of laws, regulations, or rules to a client's situation.
- A medical specialist might provide assistance in understanding the characteristics of diagnosis codes documented in patient medical records.

**.16** The practitioner and the specified parties should agree to the involvement of a specialist in assisting a practitioner in the performance of an agreed-upon procedures engagement. This agreement may be reached when obtaining agreement on the procedures performed or to be performed and acknowledgment of responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures, as discussed previously. The practitioner's report should describe the nature of the assistance provided by the specialist. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

---

<sup>2</sup> A *specialist* is a person (or firm) possessing special skill or knowledge in a particular field other than the attest function. As used herein, a specialist does not include a person employed by the practitioner's firm who participates in the attestation engagement.

**.17** A practitioner may agree to apply procedures to the report or work product of a specialist that does not constitute assistance by the specialist to the practitioner in an agreed-upon procedures engagement. For example, the practitioner may make reference to information contained in a report of a specialist in describing an agreed-upon procedure. However, it is inappropriate for the practitioner to agree to merely read the specialist's report solely to describe or repeat the findings, or to take responsibility for all or a portion of any procedures performed by a specialist or the specialist's work product.

### Internal Auditors and Other Personnel <sup>3</sup>

**.18** The agreed-upon procedures to be enumerated or referred to in the practitioner's report are to be performed entirely by the practitioner except as discussed in paragraphs .16–.18 of this SOP. However, internal auditors or other personnel may prepare schedules, accumulate data, perform an internal assessment of management's compliance, or provide other information for the practitioner's use in performing the agreed-upon procedures.

**.19** A practitioner may agree to perform procedures on information documented in the working papers of internal auditors. For example, the practitioner may agree to—

- Repeat all or some of the procedures.
- Determine whether the internal auditors' working papers contain documentation of procedures performed and whether the findings documented in the working papers are presented in a report by the internal auditors.

**.20** However, it is inappropriate for the practitioner to—

- Agree to merely read the internal auditor's report solely to describe or repeat its findings.
- Take responsibility for all or a portion of any procedures performed by internal auditors by reporting those findings as the practitioner's own.
- Report in any manner that implies shared responsibility for the procedures with the internal auditors.

## Planning the Engagement

**.21** Planning an agreed-upon procedures engagement involves working with the specified parties to develop an overall strategy for the expected conduct and scope of the engagement. To develop such a strategy, practitioners should have adequate technical training and proficiency in the attestation standards and have adequate knowledge in health care regulatory matters to enable them to sufficiently understand the events, transactions, and practices that, in their judgment, have a significant effect on the presentation of the assertions. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

---

<sup>3</sup> AU sec. 322, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, ), does not apply to agreed-upon procedures engagements.

## Documentation

**.22** The practitioner should prepare and maintain attest documentation, the form and content of which should be designed to meet the circumstances of the particular attest engagement. Attest documentation is the principal record of attest procedures applied, information obtained, and conclusions or findings reached by the practitioner in the engagement. The quantity, type, and content of attest documentation are matters of the practitioner's professional judgment and are discussed in paragraphs .100–.103 of AT section 101. Paragraphs .104–.107 of AT section 101 present further requirements and guidance regarding attest documentation. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.23** Concern over access to the practitioner's documentation might cause some clients to inquire about documentation requirements. In situations where the practitioner is requested to not maintain copies of certain client documentation, or to not prepare and maintain documentation similar to client documents, the practitioner may refer to the Auditing Interpretation No. 3, "The Auditor's Consideration of the Completeness Assertion," of AU section 326, Audit Evidence (AICPA, Professional Standards, vol. 1, AU sec. 9326.24–.27), for guidance. See Attestation Interpretation No. 4, "Providing Access to or Copies of Attest Documentation to a Regulator," of AT section 101 (AICPA, Professional Standards, vol. 1, AT sec. 9101.43–.46) for guidance related to providing access to or copies of attest documentation to a regulator in connection with work performed on an attestation engagement. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Management's Representations

**.24** The practitioner should obtain written representation from management on various matters including the following:

- a. Acknowledging management's responsibility for complying with the CIA
- b. Acknowledging management's responsibility for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance
- c. Stating that management has performed an evaluation of the entity's compliance with CIA-specified requirements
- d. Stating management's assertions about the entity's compliance with all aspects of the CIA, including the specific issues that gave rise to the CIA<sup>4, 5</sup>

---

<sup>4</sup> Footnote 21 in paragraph .100 of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, Professional Standards, vol. 1) indicates that attest documentation may also be referred to as working papers. [Footnote added, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

<sup>5</sup> Depending on the circumstances, representations in the following areas might be appropriate.

- Violations or possible violations of laws or regulations, such as those related to the Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse statutes
- Compliance of third-party billings with applicable coding guidelines (for example, ICD-9-CM, CPT) and laws and regulations (including medical necessity, proper approvals, and proper rendering of care)
- Proper filing of all required Medicare, Medicaid, and similar reports under the applicable reimbursement rules and regulations (including nature of costs—allowable, patient-related, properly allocated, in accordance with applicable rules and regulations, properly adjusted to reflect prior audit adjustments) and adequacy of disclosures (including disputed costs) [Footnote renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

- e.* Stating that management has disclosed to the practitioner all known noncompliance with the CIA
- f.* Stating that management has made available all documentation relating to compliance with the CIA
- g.* Stating management's interpretation of any compliance requirements that have varying interpretations
- h.* Stating that management has disclosed any communication from regulatory agencies, internal auditors, legal counsel, and other parties concerning matters regarding the design, implementation, and monitoring of the policies and procedures in place, including communication received between the end of the reporting period and the date of the practitioner's report (the date of signature)
- i.* Stating that management has disclosed any known noncompliance occurring subsequent to the end of the reporting period
- j.* Describing any related material fraud or abuse, other fraud, abuse or illegal acts that, whether or not material, involve management or other employees who have a significant role in the entity's design, implementation, and monitoring of the policies and procedures in place upon which compliance is based
- k.* Stating that management has disclosed to the practitioners, orally or in writing, information about past noncompliance issues covered in the settlement agreement that gave rise to the CIA and the related corrective measures taken to support compliance in those areas

Management's refusal to furnish all appropriate written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the engagement sufficient to require withdrawal from the engagement.<sup>6</sup>

## Reporting Considerations

**.25** A practitioner should present the results of applying agreed-upon procedures to the specific subject matter in the form of findings. The practitioner should not provide negative assurance about whether the assertion is fairly stated in accordance with established or stated criteria. For example, the practitioner should not include a statement that "nothing came to my attention that caused me to believe that the assertion is not fairly stated in accordance with (established or stated) criteria."

**.26** The practitioner should report all findings from the application of the agreed-upon procedures. The concept of materiality does not apply to findings to be reported in an agreed-upon procedures engagement unless the definition of materiality is agreed to by the specified parties. Any agreed-upon materiality limits should be described in the practitioner's report. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.27** The practitioner has no obligation to perform procedures beyond the agreed-upon procedures. However, if noncompliance related to management's assertion comes to the practitioner's attention by other means, such information ordinarily should be included in his or her report.

---

<sup>6</sup> See paragraph .62 of AT section 101. [Footnote added, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.28** The practitioner may become aware of noncompliance related to management's assertion that occurs subsequent to the reporting period but before the date of the practitioner's report. The practitioner should consider including information regarding such noncompliance in his or her report. However, the practitioner has no responsibility to perform procedures to detect such noncompliance other than obtaining management's representation about noncompliance in the subsequent period.

**.29** practitioner should follow the reporting guidance in AT section 201. A sample report is included in appendix E (paragraph .36), "Sample Report."

**.30** Evaluating compliance with certain requirements may require interpretation of the laws, regulations, rules, contracts, or other agreements that establish those requirements. In such situations, the practitioner should consider whether he or she is provided with the reasonable criteria required to evaluate an assertion under the third general attestation standard. If these interpretations are significant, the practitioner may include a paragraph stating the description and the source of interpretations made by the entity's management. An example of such a paragraph, which should precede the procedures and findings paragraph(s), follows:

We have been informed that, under [*name of entity's*] interpretation of [*identify the compliance requirement*], [*explain the nature and source of the relevant interpretation*].

**.31** The date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures should be used as the date of the practitioner's report.

## Appendix A

# Sample Corporate Integrity Agreement Between the Office of Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services and [Provider]

### I. Preamble

[Provider] (“[Provider]”) hereby enters into this Corporate Integrity Agreement (“CIA”) with the Office of Inspector General (“OIG”) of the United States Department of Health and Human Services (“HHS”) to ensure compliance by its employees with the requirements of Medicare, Medicaid and all other Federal health care programs (as defined in 42 U.S.C. 1320a-7b(f)) (hereinafter collectively referred to as the “Federal health care programs”). [Provider’s] compliance with the terms and conditions in this CIA shall constitute an element of [Provider’s] present responsibility with regard to participation in the Federal health care programs. Contemporaneously with this CIA, [Provider] is entering into a Settlement Agreement with the United States, and this CIA is incorporated by reference into the Settlement Agreement.

### II. Term of the CIA

The period of the compliance obligations assumed by [Provider] under this CIA shall be 5 years from the effective date of this CIA (unless otherwise specified). The effective date of this CIA will be the date on which the final signatory of this CIA executes this CIA (the “effective date”).\*

### III. Corporate Integrity Obligations

[Provider] shall establish a compliance program that includes the following elements:

#### A. Compliance Officer

Within ninety (90) days after the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall appoint an individual to serve as Compliance Officer, who shall be responsible for developing and implementing policies, procedures, and practices designed to ensure compliance with the requirements set forth in this CIA and with the requirements of the Federal health care programs. The Compliance Officer shall be a member of senior management of [Provider], shall make regular (at least quarterly) reports regarding compliance matters directly to the CEO and/or to the Board of Directors of [Provider] and shall be authorized to report to the Board of Directors at any time. The Compliance Officer shall be responsible for monitoring the day-to-day activities engaged in by [Provider] to further its compliance objectives as well as any reporting obligations created under this CIA. In the event a new Compliance Officer is appointed during the term of this CIA, [Provider] shall notify the OIG, in writing, within fifteen (15) days of such a change.

[Provider] shall also appoint a Compliance Committee within ninety (90) days after the effective date of this CIA. The Compliance Committee shall, at a minimum, include the Compliance Officer and any other appropriate officers as necessary to meet the requirements of

---

\* Source: Office of the Inspector General of the United States Department of Health and Human Services.

this CIA within the provider's corporate structure (e.g., senior executives of each major department, such as billing, clinical, human resources, audit, and operations). The Compliance Officer shall chair the Compliance Committee and the Committee shall support the Compliance Officer in fulfilling his/her responsibilities.

## **B. Written Standards**

1. *Code of Conduct.* Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall establish a Code of Conduct. The Code of Conduct shall be distributed to all employees within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA. [Provider] shall make the promotion of, and adherence to, the Code of Conduct an element in evaluating the performance of managers, supervisors, and all other employees. The Code of Conduct shall, at a minimum, set forth:
  - a. [Provider's] commitment to full compliance with all statutes, regulations, and guidelines applicable to Federal health care programs, including its commitment to prepare and submit accurate billings consistent with Federal health care program regulations and procedures or instructions otherwise communicated by the Health Care Financing Administration ("HCFA") (or other appropriate regulatory agencies) and/or its agents;
  - b. [Provider's] requirement that all of its employees shall be expected to comply with all statutes, regulations, and guidelines applicable to Federal health care programs and with [Provider's] own policies and procedures (including the requirements of this CIA);
  - c. the requirement that all of [Provider's] employees shall be expected to report suspected violations of any statute, regulation, or guideline applicable to Federal health care programs or with [Provider's] own policies and procedures;
  - d. the possible consequences to both [Provider] and to any employee of failure to comply with all statutes, regulations, and guidelines applicable to Federal health care programs and with [Provider's] own policies and procedures or of failure to report such non-compliance; and
  - e. the right of all employees to use the confidential disclosure program, as well as [Provider's] commitment to confidentiality and non-retaliation with respect to disclosures.

Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of the CIA, each employee shall certify, in writing, that he or she has received, read, understands, and will abide by [Provider's] Code of Conduct. New employees shall receive the Code of Conduct and shall complete the required certification within two (2) weeks after the commencement of their employment or within ninety (90) days of the effective date of the CIA, whichever is later.

[Provider] will annually review the Code of Conduct and will make any necessary revisions. These revisions shall be distributed within thirty (30) days of initiating such a change. Employees shall certify on an annual basis that they have received, read, understand and will abide by the Code of Conduct.

2. *Policies and Procedures.* Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall develop and initiate implementation of written Policies and Procedures regarding the operation of [Provider's] compliance program and its compliance with all federal and state health care statutes, regulations, and guidelines, including the requirements of the Federal health care programs. At a minimum, the Policies and Procedures shall specifically address [insert language relevant to allegations in the case]. In addition, the Policies and Procedures shall include disciplinary guidelines and methods for employees to make disclosures or otherwise report on compliance issues to [Provider] management through the Confidential Disclosure Program required by section III.E. [Provider] shall assess and update as necessary the Policies and Procedures at least annually and more frequently, as appropriate. A summary of the Policies and Procedures will be provided to OIG in the Implementation Report. The Policies and Procedures will be available to OIG upon request.

Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of the CIA, the relevant portions of the Policies and Procedures shall be distributed to all appropriate employees. Compliance staff or supervisors should be available to explain any and all policies and procedures.

### **C. Training and Education**

1. *General Training.* Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall provide at least two (2) hours of training to each employee. This general training shall explain [Provider's]:
  - a. Corporate Integrity Agreement requirements;
  - b. Compliance Program (including the Policies and Procedures as they pertain to general compliance issues); and
  - c. Code of Conduct.

These training materials shall be made available to the OIG, upon request.

New employees shall receive the general training described above within thirty (30) days of the beginning of their employment or within ninety (90) days after the effective date of this CIA, whichever is later. Each year, every employee shall receive such general training on an annual basis.

2. *Specific Training.* Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, each employee who is involved directly or indirectly in the delivery of patient care and/or in the preparation or submission of claims for reimbursement for such care (including, but not limited to, coding and billing) for any Federal health care programs shall receive at least [insert number of training hours] hours of training in addition to the general training required above. This training shall include a discussion of:
  - a. the submission of accurate bills for services rendered to Medicare and/or Medicaid patients;
  - b. policies, procedures and other requirements applicable to the documentation of medical records;
  - c. the personal obligation of each individual involved in the billing process to ensure that such billings are accurate;

- d. applicable reimbursement rules and statutes;
- e. the legal sanctions for improper billings; and
- f. examples of proper and improper billing practices.

These training materials shall be made available to OIG, upon request. Persons providing the training must be knowledgeable about the subject area.

Affected new employees shall receive this training within thirty (30) days of the beginning of their employment or within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, whichever is later. If a new employee has any responsibility for the delivery of patient care, the preparation or submission of claims and/or the assignment of procedure codes prior to completing this specific training, a [Provider] employee who has completed the substantive training shall review all of the untrained person's work regarding the assignment of billing codes.

Each year, every employee shall receive such specific training on an annual basis.

3. *Certification.* Each employee shall certify, in writing, that he or she has attended the required training. The certification shall specify the type of training received and the date received. The Compliance Officer shall retain the certifications, along with specific course materials. These shall be made available to OIG upon request.

#### **D. Review Procedures**

[Provider] shall retain an entity, such as an accounting, auditing or consulting firm (hereinafter "Independent Review Organization"), to perform review procedures to assist [Provider] in assessing the adequacy of its billing and compliance practices pursuant to this CIA. This shall be an annual requirement and shall cover a twelve (12) month period. The Independent Review Organization must have expertise in the billing, coding, reporting and other requirements of the Federal health care programs from which [Provider] seeks reimbursement. The Independent Review Organization must be retained to conduct the assessment of the first year within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA. For purposes of complying with this review procedures requirement, the OIG at its discretion, may permit the [Provider] to utilize internal auditors to perform the review(s). In such case, the [Provider] will engage the Independent Review Organization to verify the propriety of the internal auditors' methods and accuracy of their results. The [Provider] will request the Independent Review Organization to produce a report on its findings which report shall be included in the Annual Report to the OIG.

The Independent Review Organization (or the [Provider], if permitted by the OIG, as set forth above) will conduct two separate engagements. One will be an analysis of [Provider's] billing to the Federal health care programs to assist the [Provider] and OIG in determining compliance with all applicable statutes, regulations, and directives/guidance ("billing engagement"). The second engagement will assist the [Provider] and OIG in determining whether [Provider] is in compliance with this CIA ("compliance engagement").

1. *Billing Engagement.* The billing engagement shall consist of a review of a statistically valid sample of claims for the relevant

period. The sample size shall be determined through the use of a probe sample.<sup>1</sup> At a minimum, the full sample must be within a ninety (90) percent confidence level and a precision of twenty-five (25) percent. The probe sample must contain at least thirty (30) sample units and cannot be used as part of the full sample. Both the probe sample and the sample must be selected through random numbers. [Provider] shall use OIG's Office of Audit Services Statistical Sampling Software, also known as "RAT-STATS", which is available through the Internet at [www.hhs.gov/progorg/ratstat.html](http://www.hhs.gov/progorg/ratstat.html).

Each annual billing engagement analysis shall include the following components in its methodology:

- a. **Billing Engagement Objective:** Provide a statement stating clearly the objective intended to be achieved by the billing engagement and the procedure or combination of procedures that will be applied to achieve the objective.
- b. **Billing Engagement Population:** Identify the population, which is the group about which information is needed. Explain the methodology used to develop the population and provide the basis for this determination.
- c. **Sources of Data:** Provide a full description of the source of the information upon which the billing engagement conclusions will be based, including the legal or other standards applied, documents relied upon, payment data, and/or any contractual obligations.
- d. **Sampling Unit:** Define the sampling unit, which is any of the designated elements that comprise the population of interest.
- e. **Sampling Frame:** Identify the sampling frame, which is the totality of the sampling units from which the sample will be selected.

As part of the billing engagement:

- a. Inquire of management as to the procedures and controls affecting the billing process subject to the annual assessment as specified in the CIA. Document that aspect of the billing process (e.g., flow of documents, processing activities), and those controls that will be tested in the sample. The documentation may consist of flow charts, excerpts from policies and procedures manuals, control questionnaires, etc.
  - b. Report the sample results, including the overall error rate and the nature of the errors found (e.g., no documentation, inadequate documentation, assignment of incorrect code).
  - c. Document findings related to [Provider's] procedures to correct inaccurate billings and codings to the Federal health care programs and findings regarding the steps [Provider] is taking to bring its operations into compliance or to correct problems identified by the audit.
2. **Agreed-upon Procedures or Compliance Engagement.** An Independent Review Organization (or the [Provider], if permitted by the OIG) shall also conduct an agreed-upon procedures or compliance

---

<sup>1</sup> Probe sample is defined as a small, random preliminary sample.

engagement, which shall assist the users in determining whether [Provider's] program, policies, procedures, and operations comply with the terms of this CIA. This engagement shall include a section by section analysis of the requirements of this CIA.

A complete copy of the Independent Review Organization's billing and agreed-upon procedures or compliance engagement shall be included in each of [Provider's] Annual Reports to OIG.

3. *Disclosure of Overpayments and Material Deficiencies.* If, as a result of these engagements, [Provider] or the Independent Review Organization identifies any billing, coding or other policies, procedures and/or practices that result in an overpayment, [Provider] shall notify the payor (e.g., Medicare fiscal intermediary or carrier) within 30 days of discovering the deficiency or overpayment and take remedial steps within 60 days of discovery (or such additional time as may be agreed to by the payor) to correct the problem, including preventing the deficiency from recurring. The notice to the payor shall include:
  - a. a statement that the refund is being made pursuant to this CIA;
  - b. a description of the complete circumstances surrounding the overpayment;
  - c. the methodology by which the overpayment was determined;
  - d. the amount of the overpayment;
  - e. any claim-specific information used to determine the overpayment (e.g., beneficiary health insurance number, claim number, service date, and payment date);
  - f. the cost reporting period; and
  - g. the provider identification number under which the repayment is being made.

If [Provider] determines an overpayment represents a material deficiency, contemporaneous with [Provider's] notification to the payor as provided above, [Provider] shall also notify OIG of:

- a. a complete description of the material deficiency;
- b. amount of overpayment due to the material deficiency;
- c. [Provider's] action(s) to correct and prevent such material deficiency from recurring;
- d. the payor's name, address, and contact person where the overpayment was sent;
- e. the date of the check and identification number (or electronic transaction number) on which the overpayment was repaid.

For purposes of this CIA, an "overpayment" shall mean the amount of money the provider has received in excess of the amount due and payable under the Federal health care programs' statutes, regulations or program directives, including carrier and intermediary instructions.

For purposes of this CIA, a "material deficiency" shall mean anything that involves: (i) a substantial overpayment or improper payment relating to the Medicare and/or Medicaid programs; (ii)

conduct or policies that clearly violate the Medicare and/or Medicaid statute, regulations or directives issued by HCFA and/or its agents; or (iii) serious quality of care implications for federal health care beneficiaries or recipients. A material deficiency may be the result of an isolated event or a series of occurrences.

4. *Verification / Validation.* In the event that the OIG determines that it is necessary to conduct an independent review to determine whether or the extent to which [Provider] is complying with its obligations under this CIA, [Provider] agrees to pay for the reasonable cost of any such review or engagement by the OIG or any of its designated agents.

#### ***E. Confidential Disclosure Program***

Within ninety (90) days after the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall establish a Confidential Disclosure Program, which must include measures (e.g., a toll-free compliance telephone line) to enable employees, contractors, agents or other individuals to disclose, to the Compliance Officer or some other person who is not in the reporting individual's chain of command, any identified issues or questions associated with [Provider's] policies, practices or procedures with respect to the Federal health care program, believed by the individual to be inappropriate. [Provider] shall publicize the existence of the hotline (e.g., e-mail to employees or post hotline number in prominent common areas).

The Confidential Disclosure Program shall emphasize a non-retribution, non-retaliation policy, and shall include a reporting mechanism for anonymous, confidential communication. Upon receipt of a complaint, the Compliance Officer (or designee) shall gather the information in such a way as to elicit all relevant information from the individual reporting the alleged misconduct. The Compliance Officer (or designee) shall make a preliminary good faith inquiry into the allegations set forth in every disclosure to ensure that he or she has obtained all of the information necessary to determine whether a further review should be conducted. For any disclosure that is sufficiently specific so that it reasonably: (1) permits a determination of the appropriateness of the alleged improper practice, and (2) provides an opportunity for taking corrective action, [Provider] shall conduct an internal review of the allegations set forth in such a disclosure and ensure that proper follow-up is conducted.

The Compliance Officer shall maintain a confidential disclosure log, which shall include a record and summary of each allegation received, the status of the respective investigations, and any corrective action taken in response to the investigation.

#### ***F. Ineligible Persons***

[Provider] shall not hire or engage as contractors any "Ineligible Person." For purposes of this CIA, an "Ineligible Person" shall be any individual or entity who: (i) is currently excluded, suspended, debarred or otherwise ineligible to participate in the Federal health care programs; or (ii) has been convicted of a criminal offense related to the provision of health care items or services and has not been reinstated in the Federal health care programs after a period of exclusion, suspension, debarment, or ineligibility.

Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] will review its list of current employees and contractors against the General Services Administration's List of Parties Excluded from Federal Programs (available through the Internet at <http://www.arnet.gov/epl>) and the HHS/OIG Cumulative Sanction Report (available through the Internet at <http://www.dhhs.gov/progorg/oig>) to ensure that it is not currently employing or contracting with any Ineligible Person. Thereafter, [Provider] will review the list once semi-annually to ensure that no current employees or contractors are or have become Ineligible Persons.

To prevent hiring or contracting with any Ineligible Person, [Provider] shall screen all prospective employees and prospective contractors prior to engaging their services by (i) requiring applicants to disclose whether they are Ineligible Persons, and (ii) reviewing the General Services Administration's List of Parties Excluded from Federal Programs (available through the Internet at <http://www.arnet.gov/epl>) and the HHS/OIG Cumulative Sanction Report (available through the Internet at <http://www.dhhs.gov/progorg/oig>).

If [Provider] has notice that an employee or agent is charged with a criminal offense related to any Federal health care program, or is suspended or proposed for exclusion during his or her employment or contract with [Provider], within 10 days of receiving such notice [Provider] will remove such employee from responsibility for, or involvement with, [Provider's] business operations related to the Federal health care programs until the resolution of such criminal action, suspension, or proposed exclusion. If [Provider] has notice that an employee or agent has become an Ineligible Person, [Provider] will remove such person from responsibility for, or involvement with, [Provider's] business operations related to the Federal health care programs and shall remove such person from any position for which the person's salary or the items or services rendered, ordered, or prescribed by the person are paid in whole or in part, directly or indirectly, by Federal health care programs or otherwise with Federal funds at least until such time as the person is reinstated into participation in the Federal health care programs.

#### **G. Notification of Proceedings**

Within thirty (30) days of discovery, [Provider] shall notify OIG, in writing, of any ongoing investigation or legal proceeding conducted or brought by a governmental entity or its agents involving an allegation that [Provider] has committed a crime or has engaged in fraudulent activities or any other knowing misconduct. This notification shall include a description of the allegation, the identity of the investigating or prosecuting agency, and the status of such investigation or legal proceeding. [Provider] shall also provide written notice to OIG within thirty (30) days of the resolution of the matter, and shall provide OIG with a description of the findings and/or results of the proceedings, if any.

#### **H. Reporting**

1. *Credible evidence of misconduct.* If [Provider] discovers credible evidence of misconduct from any source and, after reasonable inquiry, has reason to believe that the misconduct may violate criminal, civil, or administrative law concerning [Provider's] practices relating to the Federal health care programs, then [Provider]

shall promptly report the probable violation of law to OIG. Defendants shall make this disclosure as soon as practicable, but, not later than thirty (30) days after becoming aware of the existence of the probable violation. The [Provider's] report to OIG shall include:

- a. the findings concerning the probable violation, including the nature and extent of the probable violation;
- b. [Provider's] actions to correct such probable violation; and
- c. any further steps it plans to take to address such probable violation and prevent it from recurring.

To the extent the misconduct involves an overpayment, the report shall include the information listed in section III.D.3 regarding material deficiencies.

2. *Inappropriate Billing.* If [Provider] discovers inappropriate or incorrect billing through means other than the Independent Review Organization's engagement, the provider shall follow procedures in section III.D.3 regarding overpayments and material deficiencies.

#### IV. New Locations

In the event that [Provider] purchases or establishes new business units after the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall notify OIG of this fact within thirty (30) days of the date of purchase or establishment. This notification shall include the location of the new operation(s), phone number, fax number, Federal health care program provider number(s) (if any), and the corresponding payor(s) (contractor specific) that has issued each provider number. All employees at such locations shall be subject to the requirements in this CIA that apply to new employees (e.g., completing certifications and undergoing training).

#### V. Implementation and Annual Reports

##### A. Implementation Report

Within one hundred and twenty (120) days after the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall submit a written report to OIG summarizing the status of its implementation of the requirements of this CIA. This Implementation Report shall include:

1. the name, address, phone number and position description of the Compliance Officer required by section III.A;
2. the names and positions of the members of the Compliance Committee required by section III.A;
3. a copy of [Provider's] Code of Conduct required by section III.B.1;
4. the summary of the Policies and Procedures required by section III.B.2;
5. a description of the training programs required by section III.C including a description of the targeted audiences and a schedule of when the training sessions were held;
6. a certification by the Compliance Officer that:
  - a. the Policies and Procedures required by section III.B have been developed, are being implemented, and have been distributed to all pertinent employees;

- b. all employees have completed the Code of Conduct certification required by section III.B.1; and
  - c. all employees have completed the training and executed the certification required by section III.C;
- 7. a description of the confidential disclosure program required by section III.E;
- 8. the identity of the Independent Review Organization(s) and the proposed start and completion date of the first audit; and
- 9. a summary of personnel actions taken pursuant to section III.F.

## **B. Annual Reports**

[*Provider*] shall submit to OIG an Annual Report with respect to the status and findings of [*Provider's*] compliance activities. The Annual Reports shall include:

- 1. any change in the identity or position description of the Compliance Officer and/or members of the Compliance Committee described in section III.A;
- 2. a certification by the Compliance Officer that:
  - a. all employees have completed the annual Code of Conduct certification required by section III.B.1; and
  - b. all employees have completed the training and executed the certification required by section III.C;
- 3. notification of any changes or amendments to the Policies and Procedures required by section III.B and the reasons for such changes (e.g., change in contractor policy);
- 4. a complete copy of the report prepared pursuant to the Independent Review Organization's billing and compliance engagement, including a copy of the methodology used;
- 5. [*Provider's*] response/corrective action plan to any issues raised by the Independent Review Organization;
- 6. a summary of material deficiencies reported throughout the course of the previous twelve (12) months pursuant to III.D.3 and III.H;
- 7. a report of the aggregate overpayments that have been returned to the Federal health care programs that were discovered as a direct or indirect result of implementing this CIA. Overpayment amounts should be broken down into the following categories: Medicare, Medicaid (report each applicable state separately) and other Federal health care programs;
- 8. a copy of the confidential disclosure log required by section III.E;
- 9. a description of any personnel action (other than hiring) taken by [*Provider*] as a result of the obligations in section III.F;
- 10. a summary describing any ongoing investigation or legal proceeding conducted or brought by a government entity involving an allegation that [*Provider*] has committed a crime or has engaged in fraudulent activities, which have been reported pursuant to section III.G. The statement shall include a description of the allegation, the identity of the investigating or prosecuting agency, and the status of such investigation, legal proceeding or requests for information;

11. a corrective action plan to address the probable violations of law identified in section III.H; and
12. a listing of all of the [Provider's] locations (including locations and mailing addresses), the corresponding name under which each location is doing business, the corresponding phone numbers and fax numbers, each location's Federal health care program provider identification number(s) and the payor (specific contractor) that issued each provider identification number.

The first Annual Report shall be received by the OIG no later than one year and thirty (30) days after the effective date of this CIA. Subsequent Annual Reports shall be submitted no later than the anniversary date of the due date of the first Annual Report.

### C. *Certifications*

The Implementation Report and Annual Reports shall include a certification by the Compliance Officer under penalty of perjury, that: (1) [Provider] is in compliance with all of the requirements of this CIA, to the best of his or her knowledge; and (2) the Compliance Officer has reviewed the Report and has made reasonable inquiry regarding its content and believes that, upon such inquiry, the information is accurate and truthful.

## VI. **Notifications and Submission of Reports**

Unless otherwise stated in writing subsequent to the effective date of this CIA, all notifications and reports required under this CIA shall be submitted to the entities listed below:

OIG:

Civil Recoveries Branch—Compliance Unit  
Office of Counsel to the Inspector General  
Office of Inspector General  
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services  
Cohen Building, Room 5527  
330 Independence Avenue, SW  
Washington, DC 20201  
Phone 202-619-2078; Fax 202-205-0604

[Provider]:

[Address and Telephone number of Provider's Compliance Contact]

## VII. **OIG Inspection, Audit and Review Rights**

In addition to any other rights OIG may have by statute, regulation, or contract, OIG or its duly authorized representative(s), may examine [Provider's] books, records, and other documents and supporting materials for the purpose of verifying and evaluating: (a) [Provider's] compliance with the terms of this CIA; and (b) [Provider's] compliance with the requirements of the Federal health care programs in which it participates. The documentation described above shall be made available by [Provider] to OIG or its duly authorized representative(s) at all reasonable times for inspection, audit or reproduction. Furthermore, for purposes of this provision, OIG or its duly authorized representative(s) may interview any of [Provider's] employees who consent to be interviewed at the employee's place of business during normal business hours or at such other place and time as may be mutually agreed upon between the employee and OIG. [Provider] agrees to assist OIG in contacting and arranging interviews with such employees upon

OIG's request. [Provider's] employees may elect to be interviewed with or without a representative of [Provider] present.

### **VIII. Document and Record Retention**

[Provider] shall maintain for inspection all documents and records relating to reimbursement from the Federal health care programs or to compliance with this CIA one year longer than the term of this CIA (or longer if otherwise required by law).

### **IX. Disclosures**

Subject to HHS's Freedom of Information Act ("FOIA") procedures, set forth in 45 C.F.R. Part 5, the OIG shall make a reasonable effort to notify [Provider] prior to any release by OIG of information submitted by [Provider] pursuant to its obligations under this CIA and identified upon submission by [Provider] as trade secrets, commercial or financial information and privileged and confidential under the FOIA rules. [Provider] shall refrain from identifying any information as trade secrets, commercial or financial information and privileged and confidential that does not meet the criteria for exemption from disclosure under FOIA.

### **X. Breach and Default Provisions**

[Provider] is expected to fully and timely comply with all of the obligations herein throughout the term of this CIA or other time frames herein agreed to.

#### **A. Stipulated Penalties for Failure to Comply with Certain Obligations**

As a contractual remedy, [Provider] and OIG hereby agree that failure to comply with certain obligations set forth in this CIA may lead to the imposition of the following monetary penalties (hereinafter referred to as "Stipulated Penalties") in accordance with the following provisions.

1. A Stipulated Penalty of \$2,500 (which shall begin to accrue on the day after the date the obligation became due) for each day, beginning 120 days after the effective date of this CIA and concluding at the end of the term of this CIA, [Provider] fails to have in place any of the following:
  - a. a Compliance Officer;
  - b. a Compliance Committee;
  - c. a written Code of Conduct;
  - d. written Policies and Procedures;
  - e. a training program; and
  - f. a Confidential Disclosure Program;
2. A Stipulated Penalty of \$2,500 (which shall begin to accrue on the day after the date the obligation became due) for each day [Provider] fails to meet any of the deadlines to submit the Implementation Report or the Annual Reports to the OIG.
3. A Stipulated Penalty of \$2,000 (which shall begin to accrue on the date the failure to comply began) for each day [Provider]:
  - a. hires or contracts with an Ineligible Person after that person has been listed by a federal agency as excluded, debarred, suspended or otherwise ineligible for participation in the Medicare, Medicaid or any other Federal health care program

(as defined in 42 U.S.C. 1320a7b(f)). This Stipulated Penalty shall not be demanded for any time period if [Provider] can demonstrate that it did not discover the person's exclusion or other ineligibility after making a reasonable inquiry (as described in section III.F) as to the status of the person;

- b. employs or contracts with an Ineligible Person and that person: (i) has responsibility for, or involvement with, [Provider's] business operations related to the Federal health care programs or (ii) is in a position for which the person's salary or the items or services rendered, ordered, or prescribed by the person are paid in whole or in part, directly or indirectly, by the Federal health care programs or otherwise with Federal funds (this Stipulated Penalty shall not be demanded for any time period during which [Provider] can demonstrate that it did not discover the person's exclusion or other ineligibility after making a reasonable inquiry (as described in III.F) as to the status of the person);
  - c. employs or contracts with a person who: (i) has been charged with a criminal offense related to any Federal health care program, or (ii) is suspended or proposed for exclusion, and that person has responsibility for, or involvement with, [Provider's] business operations related to the Federal health care programs (this Stipulated Penalty shall not be demanded for any time period before 10 days after [Provider] received notice of the relevant matter or after the resolution of the matter).
4. A Stipulated Penalty of \$1,500 (which shall begin to accrue on the date the [Provider] fails to grant access) for each day [Provider] fails to grant access to the information or documentation as required in section V of this CIA.
  5. A Stipulated Penalty of \$1,000 (which shall begin to accrue ten (10) days after the date that OIG provides notice to [Provider] of the failure to comply) for each day [Provider] fails to comply fully and adequately with any obligation of this CIA. In its notice to [Provider], the OIG shall state the specific grounds for its determination that the [Provider] has failed to comply fully and adequately with the CIA obligation(s) at issue.

## **B. Payment of Stipulated Penalties**

1. *Demand Letter.* Upon a finding that [Provider] has failed to comply with any of the obligations described in section X.A and determining that Stipulated Penalties are appropriate, OIG shall notify [Provider] by personal service or certified mail of (a) [Provider's] failure to comply; and (b) the OIG's exercise of its contractual right to demand payment of the Stipulated Penalties (this notification is hereinafter referred to as the "Demand Letter").

Within fifteen (15) days of the date of the Demand Letter, [Provider] shall either (a) cure the breach to the OIG's satisfaction and pay the applicable stipulated penalties, or (b) request a hearing before an HHS administrative law judge ("ALJ") to dispute the OIG's determination of noncompliance, pursuant to the agreed-upon provisions set forth below in section X.D. In the event [Provider] elects to request an ALJ hearing, the Stipulated Penalties shall continue to accrue until [Provider] cures, to the OIG's satisfaction, the alleged breach in dispute. Failure to respond to

the Demand Letter in one of these two manners within the allowed time period shall be considered a material breach of this CIA and shall be grounds for exclusion under section X.C.

2. *Timely Written Requests for Extensions.* [Provider] may submit a timely written request for an extension of time to perform any act or file any notification or report required by this CIA. Notwithstanding any other provision in this section, if OIG grants the timely written request with respect to an act, notification, or report, Stipulated Penalties for failure to perform the act or file the notification or report shall not begin to accrue until one day after [Provider] fails to meet the revised deadline as agreed to by the OIG-approved extension. Notwithstanding any other provision in this section, if OIG denies such a timely written request, Stipulated Penalties for failure to perform the act or file the notification or report shall not begin to accrue until two (2) business days after [Provider] receives OIG's written denial of such request. A "timely written request" is defined as a request in writing received by OIG at least five (5) business days prior to the date by which any act is due to be performed or any notification or report is due to be filed.
3. *Form of Payment.* Payment of the Stipulated Penalties shall be made by certified or cashier's check, payable to "Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services," and submitted to OIG at the address set forth in section VI.
4. *Independence from Material Breach Determination.* Except as otherwise noted, these provisions for payment of Stipulated Penalties shall not affect or otherwise set a standard for the OIG's determination that [Provider] has materially breached this CIA, which decision shall be made at the OIG's discretion and governed by the provisions in section X.C, below.

### **C. Exclusion for Material Breach of this CIA**

1. *Notice of Material Breach and Intent to Exclude.* The parties agree that a material breach of this CIA by [Provider] constitutes an independent basis for [Provider's] exclusion from participation in the Federal health care programs (as defined in 42 U.S.C. 1320a7b(f)). Upon a determination by OIG that [Provider] has materially breached this CIA and that exclusion should be imposed, the OIG shall notify [Provider] by certified mail of (a) [Provider's] material breach; and (b) OIG's intent to exercise its contractual right to impose exclusion (this notification is herein-after referred to as the "Notice of Material Breach and Intent to Exclude").
2. *Opportunity to Cure.* [Provider] shall have thirty-five (35) days from the date of the Notice of Material Breach and Intent to Exclude Letter to demonstrate to the OIG's satisfaction that:
  - a. [Provider] is in full compliance with this CIA;
  - b. the alleged material breach has been cured; or
  - c. the alleged material breach cannot be cured within the 35-day period, but that: (i) [Provider] has begun to take action to cure the material breach, (ii) [Provider] is pursuing such action with due diligence, and (iii) [Provider] has provided to OIG a reasonable timetable for curing the material breach.

3. *Exclusion Letter.* If at the conclusion of the thirty-five (35) day period, [Provider] fails to satisfy the requirements of section X.C.2, OIG may exclude [Provider] from participation in the Federal health care programs. OIG will notify [Provider] in writing of its determination to exclude [Provider] (this letter shall be referred to hereinafter as the “Exclusion Letter”). Subject to the Dispute Resolution provisions in section X.D, below, the exclusion shall go into effect thirty (30) days after the date of the Exclusion Letter. The exclusion shall have national effect and will also apply to all other federal procurement and non-procurement programs. If [Provider] is excluded under the provisions of this CIA, [Provider] may seek reinstatement pursuant to the provisions at 42 C.F.R. §§1001.3001–.3004.
4. *Material Breach.* A material breach of this CIA means:
  - a. a failure by [Provider] to report a material deficiency, take corrective action and pay the appropriate refunds, as provided in section III.D;
  - b. repeated or flagrant violations of the obligations under this CIA, including, but not limited to, the obligations addressed in section X.A of this CIA;
  - c. a failure to respond to a Demand Letter concerning the payment of Stipulated Penalties in accordance with section X.B above; or
  - d. a failure to retain and use an Independent Review Organization for review purposes in accordance with section III.D.

#### **D. Dispute Resolution**

1. *Review Rights.* Upon the OIG’s delivery to [Provider] of its Demand Letter or of its Exclusion Letter, and as an agreed-upon contractual remedy for the resolution of disputes arising under the obligation of this CIA, [Provider] shall be afforded certain review rights comparable to the ones that are provided in 42 U.S.C. §§1320a7(f) and 42 C.F.R. §1005 as if they applied to the Stipulated Penalties or exclusion sought pursuant to this CIA. Specifically, the OIG’s determination to demand payment of Stipulated Penalties or to seek exclusion shall be subject to review by an ALJ and, in the event of an appeal, the Departmental Appeals Board (“DAB”), in a manner consistent with the provisions in 42 C.F.R. §§1005.2–.21. Notwithstanding the language in 42 C.F.R. §1005.2(c), the request for a hearing involving stipulated penalties shall be made within fifteen (15) days of the date of the Demand Letter and the request for a hearing involving exclusion shall be made within thirty (30) days of the date of the Exclusion Letter.
2. *Stipulated Penalties Review.* Notwithstanding any provision of Title 42 of the United States Code or Chapter 42 of the Code of Federal Regulations, the only issues in a proceeding for stipulated penalties under this CIA shall be (a) whether [Provider] was in full and timely compliance with the obligations of this CIA for which the OIG demands payment; and (b) the period of noncompliance. [Provider] shall have the burden of proving its full and timely compliance and the steps taken to cure the noncompliance, if any. If the ALJ finds for the OIG with regard to a finding of a breach of this CIA and orders [Provider] to pay Stipulated Penalties, such

Stipulated Penalties shall become due and payable twenty (20) days after the ALJ issues such a decision notwithstanding that [Provider] may request review of the ALJ decision by the DAB.

3. *Exclusion Review.* Notwithstanding any provision of Title 42 of the United States Code or Chapter 42 of the Code of Federal Regulations, the only issues in a proceeding for exclusion based on a material breach of this CIA shall be (a) whether [Provider] was in material breach of this CIA; (b) whether such breach was continuing on the date of the Exclusion Letter; and (c) the alleged material breach cannot be cured within the 35-day period, but that (i) [Provider] has begun to take action to cure the material breach, (ii) [Provider] is pursuing such action with due diligence, and (iii) [Provider] has provided to OIG a reasonable timetable for curing the material breach.

For purposes of the exclusion herein, exclusion shall take effect only after an ALJ decision that is favorable to the OIG. [Provider's] election of its contractual right to appeal to the DAB shall not abrogate the OIG's authority to exclude [Provider] upon the issuance of the ALJ's decision. If the ALJ sustains the determination of the OIG and determines that exclusion is authorized, such exclusion shall take effect twenty (20) days after the ALJ issues such a decision, notwithstanding that [Provider] may request review of the ALJ decision by the DAB.

4. *Finality of Decision.* The review by an ALJ or DAB provided for above shall not be considered to be an appeal right arising under any statutes or regulations. Consequently, the parties to this CIA agree that the DAB's decision (or the ALJ's decision if not appealed) shall be considered final for all purposes under this CIA and [Provider] agrees to waive any right it may have to appeal the decision administratively, judicially or otherwise seek review by any court or other adjudicative forum.

## **XI. Effective and Binding Agreement**

Consistent with the provisions in the Settlement Agreement pursuant to which this CIA is entered, and into which this CIA is incorporated, [Provider] and OIG agree as follows:

- a. This CIA shall be binding on the successors, assigns and transferees of [Provider];
- b. This CIA shall become final and binding on the date the final signature is obtained on the CIA;
- c. Any modifications to this CIA shall be made with the prior written consent of the parties to this CIA; and
- d. The undersigned [Provider] signatories represent and warrant that they are authorized to execute this CIA. The undersigned OIG signatory represents that he is signing this CIA in his official capacity and that he is authorized to execute this CIA.

31,406

Statements of Position

On Behalf of [Provider]

_____	_____
	<i>Date</i>
_____	_____
	<i>Date</i>
_____	_____
	<i>Date</i>

[Please identify all signatories]

ON BEHALF OF THE OFFICE OF INSPECTOR GENERAL OF THE  
DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

_____	_____
Lewis Morris	[Date]

Assistant Inspector General for Legal Affairs  
Office of Inspector General  
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services

## Appendix B

### Sample Statement of Management's Assertions

[Date]

In connection with the Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA) entered into with the Office of the Inspector General of the United States Department of Health and Human Services dated [date], we make the following assertions, which are true to the best of our knowledge and belief.

#### Governance

Within 90 days of the date of the CIA, we—

1. Established a Compliance Committee, which meets at least monthly and requires a quorum to meet.
2. Appointed to our Compliance Committee members who include at a minimum those individuals specified in the CIA.
3. Delegated to the Compliance Committee the authority to implement and monitor the CIA, as evidenced by the organization chart or the Compliance Committee's charter.
4. Appointed a compliance officer, who reports directly to the individual specified in the CIA.

We appointed a compliance officer who—

1. Has sufficient staff and resources to carry out his or her responsibilities.
2. Actively participates in compliance training.
3. Has authority to conduct full and complete internal investigations without restriction.
4. Periodically revises the compliance program to meet changing circumstances and risks.

#### Billing Practices, Policies, and Procedures

Although no system of internal controls can provide absolute assurance that all bills comply in all respects with Medicare, Medicaid, and other federal health care program guidelines, we are not aware of any material weaknesses in our billing practices, policies, and procedures. Billings to third-party payors comply in all material respects with applicable coding principles and laws and regulations (including those dealing with Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse) and only reflect charges for goods and services that were medically necessary, properly approved by regulatory bodies (e.g., the Food and Drug Administration), if required and properly rendered. *[Insert other assertions as necessary to address matters covered in the CIA.]* Any Medicare, Medicaid, and other federal health program billing deficiencies that we identified have been properly reported to the applicable payor within 60 days of discovery of the deficiency.

#### Corporate Integrity Policy

1. Our policy was developed and implemented within [number] days of execution of the CIA.
2. The policy addresses the Company's commitment to preparation and submission of accurate billings consistent with the standards set forth

in federal health care program statutes, regulations, procedures and guidelines or as otherwise communicated by Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA), its agents or any other agency engaged in the administration of the applicable federal health care program.

3. The policy addressed the specific issues that gave rise to the settlement, as well as other risk areas identified by the OIG in published Fraud Alerts issued through [date].
4. Further details on the development and implementation of our policy were provided to the OIG in our letter dated [date].
5. Our policy was distributed to all employees, physicians and independent contractors involved in submitting or preparing requests for reimbursement.
6. We have prominently displayed a copy of our policy on the Company's premises.

### **Information and Education Program**

As discussed more fully in our letter to the OIG dated [date], we conducted an Information and Education Program within [number] days of the CIA. The Information and Education Program requires that each officer, employee, agent and contractor charged with administering federal health care programs (including, but not limited to billers, coders, nurses, physicians, medical records, hospital administration and other individuals directly involved in billing federal health care programs) receive at least [number] hours of training.

The training provided to employees involved in billing, coding, and/or charge capture consisted of instructions on submitting accurate bills, the personal obligations of each individual to ensure billings are accurate, the nature of company-imposed disciplinary actions on individuals who violate company policies and/or laws and regulations, applicable federal health care program rules, legal sanctions against the company for submission of false or fraudulent information, and how to report potential abuses or fraud. The training material addresses those issues underlying our settlement with the OIG.

The experience of the trainers is consistent with the topics presented.

### **Confidential Disclosure Program**

Our Confidential Disclosure Program—

1. Was established within [number] days of the CIA.
2. Enables any employee to disclose any practices or billing procedures relating to federal health care programs.
3. Provides a toll-free telephone line maintained by the Company, which Company representatives have indicated is maintained twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week, for the purpose of making any disclosures regarding compliance with the Company's Compliance Program, the obligations in the CIA, and Company's overall compliance with federal and state standards.
4. Includes policies requiring the review of any disclosures to permit a determination of the appropriateness of the billing practice alleged to be involved and any corrective action to be taken to ensure that proper follow-up is conducted.
5. A detailed summary of the communications (including the number of disclosures by employees and the dates of such disclosures) concerning billing practices reported as, and found to be, inappropriate under the Confidential Disclosure Program, and the results of any internal

review and the follow-up on such disclosures are summarized in Attachment [title] to our Annual Report.

### **Excluded Individuals or Entities**

Company policy—

1. Prohibits the employment of or contracting with an individual or entity that is listed by a federal agency as convicted of abuse or excluded, suspended or otherwise ineligible for participation in federal health care programs.
2. Includes a process to make an inquiry into the status of any potential employee or independent contractor.
3. Provides for an annual review of the status of all existing employees and contractors to verify whether any individual had been suspended or excluded or charged with a criminal offense relating to the provision of federal health care services.

We are not aware of any individuals employed in contravention of the prohibitions in the CIA.

### **Record Retention**

Our record retention policy is consistent with the requirements of the CIA.

Signed by:

---

[Chief Executive Officer]

---

[Chief Financial Officer]

---

[Corporate Compliance Officer]

## Appendix C

### Sample Engagement Letter

The following is an illustration of a sample engagement letter that may be used for this kind of engagement.

*[CPA Firm Letterhead]*

*[Client's Name and Address]*

Dear \_\_\_\_\_:

This will confirm our understanding of the arrangements for our performance of certain agreed-upon procedures in connection with management's compliance with the terms of the Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA) with the Office of Inspector General (OIG) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) dated *[date of CIA]* for the period ending *[date]*.

We will perform those procedures enumerated in the attachment to this letter. Our responsibility is to carry out these procedures and report our findings. We will conduct our engagement in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Our planned procedures were agreed to by management and will be communicated to the OIG for its review and are based on the terms specified in the CIA. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified parties to the report. Consequently, it is understood that we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described in the attachment for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

Management is responsible for the Company's compliance with all applicable laws, regulations, and contracts and agreements, including the CIA. Management also is responsible for the design, implementation, and monitoring of the policies and procedures upon which compliance is based.

Our engagement to perform agreed-upon procedures is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on management's compliance with the CIA. Accordingly, we will not express such an opinion or any other form of assurance thereon.<sup>1</sup>

Working papers that are prepared in connection with this engagement are the property of the independent accountant. The working papers are prepared for the purpose of providing the principal support for the independent accountant's report. At the completion of our work, we expect to issue an agreed-upon procedures report in the attached form.

---

<sup>1</sup> The independent accountant may wish to include an understanding with the client about any limitation or other arrangements regarding liability of the practitioner or the client in the engagement letter. For example, the following might be included in the letter:

Our maximum liability relating to services rendered under this letter (regardless of form of action, whether in contract, negligence or otherwise) shall be limited to the charges paid to us for the portion of the services or work products giving rise to liability. We will not be liable for consequential or punitive damages (including lost profits or savings) even if aware of their possible existence.

You will indemnify us against any damage or expense that may result from any third-party claim relating to our services or any use by you of any work product, and you will reimburse us for all expenses (including counsel fees) as incurred by us in connection with any such claim, except to the extent such claim (i) is finally determined to have resulted from our gross negligence or willful misconduct or (ii) is covered by any of the preceding indemnities.

If, however, we are not able to complete all of the specified procedures, we will so advise you. At that time, we will discuss with you the form of communication, if any, that you desire for our findings. We will ask you to confirm your request in writing at that time. If you request that we delay issuance of our report until corrective action is taken that will result in compliance with all aspects of the CIA, we will do so only at your written request. Our working papers will be retained in accordance with our firm's working paper retention policy.

The distribution of the independent accountant's report will be restricted to the governing board and management of the Company and the OIG.

Our fees will be billed as work progresses and are based on the amount of time required at various levels of responsibility plus actual out-of-pocket expenses. Invoices are payable upon presentation. We will notify you immediately of any circumstances we encounter that could significantly affect our initial estimate of total fees.

We agree that to the extent required by law, we will allow the Comptroller General of the United States, HHS, and their duly authorized representatives to have access to this engagement letter and our documents and records to the extent necessary to verify the nature and amount of costs of the services provided to the Company, until the expiration of four years after we have concluded providing services to the Company that are performed pursuant to this Engagement Letter. In the event the Comptroller General, HHS, or their duly authorized representatives request such records, we agree to notify the Company of such request as soon as practicable.

In the event we are requested or authorized by the Company or are required by government regulation, subpoena, or other legal process to produce our documents or our personnel as witnesses with respect to our engagements for the Company, the Company will, so long as we are not a party to the proceeding in which the information is sought, reimburse us for our professional time and expenses, as well as the fees and expenses of our counsel, incurred in responding to such requests.

If this letter correctly expresses your understanding of this engagement, please sign the enclosed copy where indicated and return it to us. We appreciate the opportunity to serve you.

Sincerely, \_\_\_\_\_

[Partner's Signature]

[Firm Name or Firm Representative]

Accepted and agreed to: \_\_\_\_\_

[Client Representative's Signature]

[Title] \_\_\_\_\_

[Date] \_\_\_\_\_

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Appendix D

### Sample Procedures

#### *Procedure*

#### *Findings*

#### **Governance**

1. We read the Company's corporate minutes and organization chart and ascertained that, within [number] days of the date of the Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA), the Company—
  - a. Established a Compliance Committee, which is to meet meets at least monthly and requires a quorum to meet.
  - b. Appointed to its Compliance Committee members who include, at a minimum, those individuals specified in the CIA.
  - c. Delegated to the Compliance Committee the authority to implement and monitor the CIA, as evidenced by the organization chart or the Compliance Committee's charter.
  - d. Appointed a compliance officer who reports directly to the individual specified in the CIA.
2. We interviewed the compliance officer and were informed that, in his or her opinion, the Compliance Officer—
  - a. Has sufficient staff and resources to carry out his or her responsibilities.
  - b. Actively participates in compliance training.
  - c. Has the authority to conduct full and complete internal investigations without restriction.
  - d. Periodically revises the compliance program to meet changing circumstances and risks.
3. We read the OIG notification letter as specified in the CIA and noted that the appropriate official signed the letter; that it was addressed to the OIG, that it covered items (a) through (d) in Step 1, and that it was dated within [number of] days of the execution of the CIA.

#### **Billing Practices, Policies, and Procedures**

*The practitioner might be engaged to provide consulting services in connection with the evaluation of the company's billing practices, policies, and procedures. If so, generally no agreed-upon procedures would be performed relating to this area.*

*Alternatively, if the procedures relating to the Company's billing practices, policies, and procedures are performed by others such as the Company's internal audit staff, the practitioner performs Steps 4 through 9.*

4. We read the compliance work plan and noted the following:

***Procedure******Findings***

- 
- a. The work plan's stated objectives include the determination that billings are accurate and complete, for services rendered that have been deemed by medical specialists as being necessary, and are submitted in accordance with federal program guidelines.
  - b. The work plan sampling methodology sets confidence levels consistent with those defined in the CIA.
  - c. The work plan identifies risk areas, as defined in the CIA (if applicable), and specifies testing procedures by risk area.
  - d. The work plan specifies that samples are taken in risk areas (if applicable) identified by the CIA.
  - e. The work plan includes testing procedures, which the practitioner should modify as required by the CIA, for the following risks areas (if applicable) identified in the CIA:
    - (1) Clinical documentation, as follows:
      - (i) No documentation of service
      - (ii) Insufficient documentation of service
      - (iii) Improper diagnosis or treatment plan giving rise to the provision of a medically unnecessary service or treatment
      - (iv) Service or treatment does not conform medically with the documented diagnosis or treatment plan
      - (v) Services incorrectly coded
    - (2) Billing and coding, as follows:
      - (i) Noncovered or unallowable service
      - (ii) Duplicate payment
      - (iii) DRG window error
      - (iv) Unbundling
      - (v) Utilization
      - (vi) Medicare credit balances

[*Note to Practitioner:* Modify the preceding list as required by the CIA.]
5. We selected [*quantity*] probe samples performed by the independent review organization for the following risk areas [*list risk areas tested*]. For the probe samples selected, we noted that the—
    - a. Sample patient billing files were randomly selected.
    - b. Sample size reflected confidence levels specified in the CIA.

(continued)

<i>Procedure</i>	<i>Findings</i>
c. Sample plan describes how missing items (if any) would be treated.	
d. Patient billing files tested were pulled per the listing of random numbers and all patient billing files were accounted for in the working papers.	
e. Work plans for the specific sample described the risk areas (if applicable) being tested and the testing approach/procedures.	
f. Working papers noted the completion of each work plan step.	
g. Working papers contained a summary of findings for the sample.	
6. We reperformed the work plan steps [ <i>list of specific steps performed</i> ] for the sample patient billing files. The reperformance of work plan steps related to the medical review of the sample patient billing files was performed by the following individuals [ <i>note the professional qualifications of individuals without listing names</i> ]. Any exceptions between our findings and the Company's are summarized in the Attachment to this report.	
7. We read the summary findings of all internal compliance reviews that the Company's Internal Audit department indicated it had performed for the Company and noted that all material billing deficiencies [ <i>specify material threshold as defined by the Company</i> ] noted therein were discussed in written communications addressed to the appropriate payor (for example, Medicare Part B carrier) and were dated within 60 days from the time the deficiency occurred. <sup>1</sup>	
8. We inquired of [ <i>individual</i> ] as to whether the Company took remedial steps within [ <i>number of</i> ] days (or such additional time as agreed to by the payor) to correct all material billing deficiencies noted in Step 7. We were informed that such remedial steps had been taken.	
9. By reading applicable correspondence, we noted that any material billing deficiencies noted in Step 7 were communicated to the OIG, including specific findings relative to the deficiency, the Company's actions taken to correct the deficiency, and any further steps the Company plans to take to prevent any similar deficiencies from recurring.	

### Corporate Integrity Policy

10. We read the Company's Corporate Integrity Policy and noted the following.

---

<sup>1</sup> The CIA provides its own legal definition of a "material deficiency." Determination of whether a billing or other act meets this definition is normally beyond the auditor's professional competence and may have to await final determination by a court of law. Accordingly, to avoid confusion, a working definition different from that provided in the CIA (e.g., a specified dollar threshold) may be necessary.

**Procedure****Findings**

- 
- a. The policy was developed and implemented within [number of] days of execution of the CIA.
  - b. The policy addressed the Company's commitment to preparation and submission of accurate billings consistent with the standards set forth in federal health care program statutes, regulations, procedures, and guidelines or as otherwise communicated by HCFA, its agents, or any other agency engaged in the administration of the applicable federal health care program.
  - c. The policy addressed the specific issues that gave rise to the settlement, as well as other risk areas identified by the OIG in published Fraud Alerts issued through [agency].
  - d. Correspondence addressed to the OIG covered the development and implementation of the policy.
  - e. Documentation indicating that the policy was distributed to all employees, physicians, and independent contractors involved in submitting or preparing requests for reimbursement.
  - f. The prominent display of a copy of the policy on the Company's premises.
11. We selected a sample of ten employees (involved in submitting and preparing requests for reimbursement) and examined written confirmation in the employee's personnel file indicating receipt of a copy of the Corporate Integrity Policy.

**Information and Education Program**

12. We read the Company's Information and Education Program and noted the following.
- a. The Information and Education Program agenda was dated within [number of] days of execution of the CIA.
  - b. Correspondence covering the development and implementation of the Information and Education Program was addressed to the OIG.
  - c. The Information and Education Program requires that each officer, employee, agent, and contractor charged with administering federal health care programs (including, but not limited to billers, coders, nurses, physicians, medical records, hospital administration and other individuals directly involved in billing federal health care programs) receive at least [number of] hours of training.

(continued)

**Procedure****Findings**

13. We selected a sample of ten employees involved in billing, coding and/or charge capture and examined sign-in logs of the training classes and noted that each had signed indicating that they had received at least *[number of]* hours of training as specified in the Information and Education Program. We also reviewed tests and surveys completed by each of the ten trained employees noting evidence that they were completed.
14. We inquired as to the training of individuals not present during the regularly scheduled training programs and were informed that each such individual is trained either individually or in a separate make-up session. We inquired as to the names of individuals not initially present and selected one such individual and examined that individual's post-training test and survey for completion.
15. We read the course agenda and noted that the training provided to employees involved in billing, coding, and/or charge capture consisted of instructions on submitting accurate bills, the personal obligations of each individual to ensure billings are accurate, the nature of company-imposed disciplinary actions on individuals who violate company policies and/or laws and regulations applicable to federal health care program rules, legal sanctions against the company for submission of false or fraudulent information, and how to report potential abuses or fraud. We also noted that the training material addressed the following issues which gave rise to the settlement *[practitioner list]*.
16. We inquired of the Corporate Compliance Officer as to the qualifications and experience of the trainers and were informed that, in the Corporate Compliance Officer's opinion, they were consistent with the topics presented.
17. We noted that the Company's draft Annual Report to the OIG dated *[date]* addresses certification of training.

**Confidential Disclosure Program**

18. We read documentation of the Company's Confidential Disclosure Program and noted that it—
  - a. Includes the printed effective date that was within *[number of]* days of execution of the CIA.
  - b. Consists of a confidential disclosure program enabling any employee to disclose any practices or billing procedures relating to federal health care programs.

**Procedure****Findings**

- c. Provides a toll-free telephone line maintained by the Company, which Company representatives have indicated is maintained twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week, for the purpose of making any disclosures regarding compliance with the Company's Compliance Program, the obligations in the CIA, and Company's overall compliance with federal and state standards.
  - d. Includes policies requiring the review of any disclosures to permit a determination of the appropriateness of the billing practice alleged to be involved and any corrective action to be taken to ensure that proper follow-up is conducted.
19. We made five test calls to the toll free telephone line (hotline) and noted the following.
- a. Each call was captured in the hotline logs and reported with all other incoming calls.
  - b. Anonymity is not discouraged.
20. We noted that the Company included in its draft Annual Report addressed to OIG dated [date] a detailed summary of the communications (including the number of disclosures by employees and the dates of such disclosures) concerning billing practices reported as, and found to be, inappropriate under the Confidential Disclosure Program, and the results of any internal review and the follow-up on such disclosures.
21. We observed the display of the Company's Confidential Disclosure Program, including notice of the availability of its hotline, on the Company's premises.

**Excluded Individuals or Entities**

22. We read the Company's written policy relating to dealing with excluded or convicted persons or entities and noted that the policy—
- a. Prohibits the hiring of or contracting with an individual or entity that is listed by a federal agency as convicted of abuse or excluded, suspended, or otherwise ineligible for participation in federal health care programs.
  - b. Includes a process to make an inquiry into the status of any potential employee or independent contractor.
  - c. Provides for a semi-annual review of the status of all existing employees and contractors to verify whether any individual had been suspended or excluded or charged with a criminal offense relating to the provision of federal health care services.

(continued)

**Procedure****Findings**

- 
23. We selected a sample of ten employees hired over the course of the test period as defined in the CIA and examined support in the employee's personnel file documenting inquiries made into the status of the employee, including documentation of comparison to the *[source specified in the CIA]*.
24. We performed the following procedures related to the Company's semi-annual review of employee status.
- a. Read documentation of the semi-annual review as evidence that a review was performed.
  - b. Selected and reviewed the lesser of ten or all exceptions and determined that such employees were removed from responsibility for or involvement with Provider business operations related to the Federal health care programs.
  - c. Examined a notification letter addressed to the OIG and dated within 30 days of the employee's removal from employment.
  - d. Inquired of *[officer]* as to whether he or she was aware of any individuals employed in contravention of the prohibitions in the CIA. If so, we further noted that *[indicate specific procedures]* to confirm that such situation was cured within 30 days by *[indicate how situation was cured]*.

**Annual Report**

25. We read the Company's draft Annual Report dated *[date]* and determined that it included the following items, to be modified as appropriate, by the practitioner:
- a. Compliance Program Charter and organization chart
  - b. Amendments to policies
  - c. Detailed descriptions of reviews and audits
  - d. Summary of hotline communications
  - e. Summary of annual review of employees
  - f. Cross-referencing to items noted in the CIA

**Record Retention**

26. We read the Company's record retention policy and noted that it was consistent with the requirements as outlined in the CIA.

.36

## Appendix E

### Sample Report

#### Independent Accountant's Report

[Date]

[Sample Health Care Provider]

Office of Inspector General of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services

We have performed the procedures enumerated in the Attachment, which were agreed to by Sample Health Care Provider (Company) and the Office of Inspector General (OIG) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, solely to assist the users in evaluating management's assertion about [name of entity's] compliance with the Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA) with the OIG dated [date of CIA] for the [period] ending [date], which is included as Attachment A to this report. This agreed-upon procedures engagement was performed in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified users of the report. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described in Attachment B either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

We were not engaged to and did not perform an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on management's compliance with the CIA. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the Compliance Committee and management of the Company and the OIG, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than those specified parties.

*[Include as Attachments the CIA and the summary that enumerates procedures and findings.]*

[Signature]

## Auditing Standards Board 1998

DEBORAH D. LAMBERT, *Chair*  
JAMES S. GERSON, *Vice Chair*  
JOHN T. BARNUM  
ANDREW J. CAPELLI  
ROBERT F. DACEY  
RICHARD DIETER  
SALLY L. HOFFMAN  
STEPHEN D. HOLTON

J. MICHAEL INZINA  
CHARLES E. LANDES  
KEITH O. NEWTON  
ALAN ROSENTHAL  
R.C. STEINER  
GEORGE H. TUCKER III  
OLIVER R. WHITTINGTON

## Health Care Pilot Task Force 1998

WILLIAM R. TITERA, *Chair*  
DIANE CORNWELL  
WILLIAM T. CUPPETT  
DENNIS J. DUQUETTE

ERIC HOLZBERG  
MARY R. MACBAIN  
JOSEPH N. STEAKLEY

## SOP Task Force

WILLIAM R. TITERA, *Chair*  
ROBERT D. BEARD  
GARY BREUER  
DENNIS J. DUQUETTE

MARK EDDY  
WILLIAM HORNBY  
LEWIS MORRIS  
JOSEPH N. STEAKLEY

## AICPA Staff

BARBARA VIGILANTE  
*Technical Manager*  
*PCPS/MAP*

JANE MANCINO  
*Technical Manager*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

KARYN WALLER  
*Technical Manager*  
*Industry and Management Accounting*

---

[The next page is 31,431.]

**Section 14,360****Statement of Position 00-1 Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables**

March 10, 2000

**NOTE**

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretive publication and represents the recommendations of the AICPA Health Care Third-Party Revenue Recognition Task Force of the Auditing Standards Board (ASB) with regard to auditing financial statement assertions about third-party revenues and related receivables of health care entities. The ASB has found the recommendations in this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards*, (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 202 par. .01) of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Interpretive publications are not as authoritative as pronouncements of the ASB; however, if an auditor does not apply the guidance included in this SOP, the auditor should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the provisions of Statements on Auditing Standards addressed by this SOP.

**Summary**

This Statement of Position (SOP) provides guidance to auditors regarding uncertainties inherent in health care third-party revenue recognition. It discusses auditing matters related to testing third-party revenues and related receivables, and provides guidance regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence and reporting on financial statements of health care entities exposed to material uncertainties. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**Introduction and Background**

**.01** Most health care providers participate in payment programs that pay less than full charges for services rendered. For example, some cost-based programs retrospectively determine the final amounts reimbursable for services rendered to their beneficiaries based on allowable costs. With increasing frequency, even non-cost-based programs (such as the Medicare Prospective Payment System) have become subject to retrospective adjustments (for example, billing denials and coding changes). Often, such adjustments are not known for a considerable period of time after the related services were rendered.

**.02** The lengthy period of time between rendering services and reaching final settlement, compounded further by the complexities and ambiguities of reimbursement regulations, makes it difficult to estimate the net patient

service revenue associated with these programs. This situation has been compounded due to the frequency of changes in federal program guidelines.

**.03** Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification*<sup>TM</sup> (ASC) 954-605-45-2 states, in part, that “service revenue shall be reported net of contractual and other adjustments in the statement of operations, including patient service revenue.” As a result, patient receivables, including amounts due from third-party payors, are also reported net of expected contractual and other adjustments. However, amounts ultimately realizable will not be known until some future date, which may be several years after the period in which the services were rendered. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.04** This SOP provides guidance to auditors regarding uncertainties inherent in health care third-party revenue recognition. It discusses auditing matters related to testing third-party revenue and related receivables, including the effects of settlements (both cost-based and non-cost-based third-party payment programs), and provides guidance regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence and reporting on financial statements of health care entities exposed to material uncertainties. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Scope and Applicability

**.05** This SOP applies to audits of health care entities falling within the scope of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Health Care Entities* (the guide). Its provisions are effective for audits of periods ending on or after June 30, 2000. Early application of the provisions of this SOP is permitted.

## Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables—Inherent Uncertainties

**.06** Health care entities need to estimate amounts that ultimately will be realizable in order for revenues to be fairly stated in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). The basis for such estimates may range from relatively straightforward calculations using information that is readily available to highly complex judgments based on assumptions about future decisions.

**.07** Entities doing business with governmental payors (for example, Medicare and Medicaid) are subject to risks unique to the government-contracting environment that are hard to anticipate and quantify and that may vary from entity to entity. For example—

- A health care entity’s revenues may be subject to adjustment as a result of examination by government agencies or contractors. The audit process and the resolution of significant related matters (including disputes based on differing interpretations of the regulations) often are not finalized until several years after the services were rendered.
- Different fiscal intermediaries (entities that contract with the federal government to assist in the administration of the Medicare program) may interpret governmental regulations differently.

- Differing opinions on a patient's principal medical diagnosis, including the appropriate sequencing of codes used to submit claims for payment, can have a significant effect on the payment amount.<sup>1</sup>
- Otherwise valid claims may be determined to be nonallowable after the fact due to differing opinions on medical necessity.
- Claims for services rendered may be nonallowable if they are later determined to have been based on inappropriate referrals.<sup>2</sup>
- Governmental agencies may make changes in program interpretations, requirements, or "conditions of participation," some of which may have implications for amounts previously estimated.

.08 Such factors often result in retrospective adjustments to interim payments. Reasonable estimates of such adjustments are central to the third-party revenue recognition process in health care, in order to avoid recognizing revenue that the provider will not ultimately realize. The delay between rendering services and reaching final settlement, as well as the complexities and ambiguities of billing and reimbursement regulations, makes it difficult to estimate net realizable third-party revenues.

## Management's Responsibilities

.09 Management is responsible for the fair presentation of its financial statements in conformity with GAAP. Management also is responsible for adopting sound accounting policies and for establishing and maintaining internal control that will, among other things, enable the entity to initiate, authorize, record, process, and report transactions (as well as events and conditions) consistent with management's assertions embodied in the financial statements. Despite the inherent uncertainties, management is responsible for estimating the amounts recorded in the financial statements and making the required disclosures in accordance with GAAP, based on management's analysis of existing conditions. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.10 Management's assertions regarding proper valuation of its revenues and receivables are embodied in the financial statements. Management is responsible for recognizing revenues when their realization is reasonably assured. As a result, management makes a reasonable estimate of amounts that ultimately will be realized, considering—among other things—adjustments associated with regulatory reviews, audits, billing reviews, investigations, or other proceedings. Estimates that are significant to management's assertions about revenue include the provision for third-party payor contractual adjustments and allowances. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

---

<sup>1</sup> Historically, the Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA) contracted with Peer Review Organizations (PROs) to validate the appropriateness of admissions and the clinical coding from which reimbursement was determined. Such reviews were typically performed within ninety days of the claim submission date. However, the government has modified its policies with respect to such reviews and now analyzes coding errors through other means, including in conjunction with investigations conducted by the Office of the Inspector General (OIG) of the U. S. Department of Health and Human Services.

<sup>2</sup> Effective January 1, 1995, the Limitation on Certain Physician Referrals law prohibited physicians from referring Medicare and Medicaid patients to health care entities with which they had a financial relationship for the furnishing of designated health services. Implementing regulations have not yet been adopted as of the date of this publication.

.11 Management also is responsible for preparing and certifying cost reports submitted to federal and state government agencies in support of claims for payment for services rendered to government program beneficiaries.

## The Auditor's Responsibilities

.12 The auditor's responsibility is to express an opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole. In reaching this opinion, the auditor should conclude whether sufficient appropriate evidence has been obtained to reduce to an appropriately low level the risks of material misstatement in the financial statements. In developing an opinion, the auditor should consider all relevant audit evidence, including

- the evidence in support of recorded amounts.
- the reasonableness of management's estimates in the present circumstances,
- the fairness of the presentation and adequacy of the disclosures made by management,

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.13 Current industry conditions, as well as specific matters affecting the entity,<sup>3</sup> provide relevant information when planning the audit. Among a number of procedures, the auditor's procedures may include an analysis of historical results (for example, prior fiscal intermediary audit adjustments and comparisons with industry benchmarks and norms) that enable the auditor to better assess the risk of material misstatements in the current period. When there are heightened risks, the auditor should perform audit procedures that respond to those risks, for example, more extensive tests covering the current period. Exhibit 5-1 of the guide includes examples of procedures auditors may perform. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.14 With respect to auditing third-party revenues, a relevant consideration in addition to the usual revenue recognition considerations, is whether ultimately realizable amounts are known or will be presently known, or whether those amounts are uncertain because they are dependent on some other future, prospective actions or confirming events. For example, under a typical fee-for-service contract with a commercial payor, if the provider has performed a service for a covered individual, the revenue to which the provider is entitled should be determinable at the time the service is rendered. On the other hand, if the service was provided under a cost-based government contract, the revenue ultimately collectible may not be known until certain future events occur (for example, a cost report has been submitted and finalized after desk review or audit). In this case, management estimates the effect of such potential future adjustments. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.15 As stated previously, management is responsible for preparing the estimates contained in the financial statements. The auditor should evaluate the sufficiency and appropriateness of the evidence supporting those estimates, including the facts supporting management's judgments, and the judgments made based on conditions existing at the time of the audit. The fact that net

---

<sup>3</sup> Risk factors, including ones related to legislative and regulatory matters, are discussed annually in the AICPA Audit Risk Alert *Health Care Industry Developments*.

revenues recorded at the time services are rendered differ materially from amounts that ultimately are realized does not necessarily mean the audit was not properly planned or carried out. Similarly, the fact that future events may differ materially from management's assumptions or estimates does not necessarily mean that management's estimates were not valid or the auditor did not follow generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) as described in this SOP with respect to auditing estimates. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## **Audit Evidence**

**.16** The measurement of estimates is inherently uncertain and depends on the outcome of future events. AU section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*, and AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), provide guidance to the auditor when the valuation of revenues is uncertain, pending the outcome of future events. In the current health care environment, conclusive evidence concerning amounts ultimately realizable cannot be expected to exist at the time of the financial statement audit because the uncertainty associated with future program audits, administrative re-views, billing reviews, regulatory investigations, or other actions will not be resolved until sometime in the future. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.17** The fact that information related to the effects of future program audits, administrative reviews, regulatory investigations, or other actions does not exist does not lead to a conclusion that the evidence supporting management's assertions is not sufficient to support management's estimates. Rather, the auditor's judgment regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of the evidence is based on the evidence that is available or can reasonably be expected to be available in the circumstances. If, after considering the existing conditions and available evidence, the auditor concludes that the evidence is sufficient and appropriate and supports management's assertions about the valuation of revenues and receivables, and their presentation and disclosure in the financial statements, an unqualified opinion ordinarily is appropriate. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.18** The inability to obtain relevant evidence that the auditor needs may require the auditor to express a qualified opinion or to disclaim an opinion because of a scope limitation. For example, if an entity has conducted an internal evaluation (for example, of coding or other billing matters) under attorney-client privilege and management and its legal counsel refuse to respond to the auditor's inquiries and the auditor determines the information is necessary, ordinarily the auditor would qualify his or her opinion for a scope limitation. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.19** The accuracy of management's assumptions will not be known until future events occur. In evaluating the accuracy of those assumptions, the auditor normally should consider the entity's historical experience in making past estimates and the auditor's experience in the industry. For certain matters, the best evidence available to the auditor (particularly as it relates to clinical and legal interpretations) may be the representations of management and its

legal counsel, as well as information obtained through reviewing correspondence from regulatory agencies. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.20 Pursuant to AU sec. 333, *Management Representations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1.), the auditor should obtain written representations from management concerning the absence of violations or possible violations of laws or regulations whose effects should be considered for disclosure in the financial statements or as a basis for recording a loss contingency. Examples of specific representations include the following:

- Receivables
  - Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, estimated adjustments to revenue, such as for denied claims and changes to diagnosis-related group (DRG) assignments.
  - Recorded valuation allowances are necessary, appropriate, and properly supported.
  - All peer review organizations, fiscal intermediary, and third-party payor reports and information have been made available.
- Cost reports filed with third parties
  - All required Medicare, Medicaid, and similar reports have been properly filed.
  - Management is responsible for the accuracy and propriety of all cost reports filed.
  - All costs reflected on such reports are appropriate and allowable under applicable reimbursement rules and regulations and are patient-related and properly allocated to applicable payors.
  - The reimbursement methodologies and principles employed are in accordance with applicable rules and regulations.
  - Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, audit adjustments by intermediaries, third-party payors, or other regulatory agencies.
  - All items required to be disclosed, including disputed costs that are being claimed to establish a basis for a subsequent appeal, have been fully disclosed in the cost report.
  - Recorded third-party settlements include differences between filed (and to be filed) cost reports and calculated settlements, which are necessary based on historical experience or new or ambiguous regulations that may be subject to differing interpretations. While management believes the entity is entitled to all amounts claimed on the cost reports, management also believes the amounts of these differences are appropriate.
- Contingencies
  - There are no violations or possible violations of laws or regulations, such as those related to the Medicare and Medicaid anti-fraud and abuse statutes, including but not limited to the Medicare and Medicaid Anti-Kickback Statute, Limitations on Certain Physician Referrals (the Stark law), and the False Claims Act, in any jurisdiction, whose effects should be considered for disclosure in the financial statements or as a basis for

recording a loss contingency other than those disclosed or accrued in the financial statements.

- Billings to third-party payors comply in all material respects with applicable coding guidelines (for example, ICD-9-CM and CPT-4) and laws and regulations (including those dealing with Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse), and billings reflect only charges for goods and services that were medically necessary; properly approved by regulatory bodies (for example, the Food and Drug Administration), if required; and properly rendered.
- There have been no communications (oral or written) from regulatory agencies, governmental representatives, employees, or others concerning investigations or allegations of noncompliance with laws and regulations in any jurisdiction (including those related to the Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse statutes), deficiencies in financial reporting practices, or other matters that could have a material adverse effect on the financial statements.

**.21** Management's refusal to furnish written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the audit sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion and is ordinarily sufficient to cause an auditor to disclaim an opinion or withdraw from the engagement. However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the auditor may conclude that a qualified opinion is appropriate.

## Potential Departures From GAAP Related to Estimates and Uncertainties

**.22** The auditor also is responsible for determining whether financial statement assertions and disclosures related to accounting estimates have been presented in conformity with GAAP. Departures from GAAP related to accounting estimates generally fall into one of the following categories:

- Unreasonable accounting estimates
- Inappropriate accounting principles
- Inadequate disclosure

Therefore, in order to render an opinion, the auditor's responsibility is to evaluate the reasonableness of management's estimates based on present circumstances and to determine that estimates are reported in accordance with GAAP and adequately disclosed. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.23** As discussed in AU section 326, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), the auditor's objective is to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide him or her with a reasonable basis for forming an opinion. As discussed previously, Exhibit 5-1 of the guide provides a number of sample procedures that the auditor may perform in auditing an entity's patient revenues and accounts receivable, including those derived from third-party payors. For example, the guide notes that the auditor might "test the reasonableness of settlement amounts, including specific and unallocated reserves, in light of the payors involved, the nature of the payment mechanism, the risks

associated with future audits, and other relevant factors.”<sup>4</sup> [Revised, September 2008, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of Statement on Auditing Standards No. 105. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Unreasonable Accounting Estimates

**.24** The basis for management’s assumptions regarding the nature of future adjustments and calculations as to the effects of such adjustments are relevant factors when evaluating the reasonableness of management’s estimates.<sup>5</sup> The auditor cannot determine with certainty whether such estimates are right or wrong, because the accuracy of management’s assumptions cannot be confirmed until future events occur. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.25** Though difficult to predict, it is reasonable for the auditor to expect that management has made certain assumptions (either in detail or in the aggregate) in developing its estimates regarding conditions likely to result in adjustments (for example, consistency with historical experience and basis of management’s underlying assumptions). In evaluating reasonableness, the auditor should obtain an understanding of how management developed the estimate. Based on that understanding, the auditor should use one or a combination of the following approaches:

- a. Review and test the process used by management to develop the estimate.
- b. Develop an independent expectation of the estimate to corroborate the reasonableness of management’s estimates.
- c. Review subsequent events or transactions occurring prior to completion of fieldwork (AU sec. 342.10).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.26** Because no one accounting estimate can be considered accurate with certainty, the auditor may determine that a difference between an estimated amount best supported by the audit evidence and the estimated amount included in the financial statements may be significant and such difference would not be considered to be a likely misstatement. However, if the auditor believes the estimated amount included in the financial statements is unreasonable, he or she should treat the difference between that estimate and the closest reasonable estimate as a likely misstatement. (Paragraph .56 of AU section 312, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit* [AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1]). The auditor also should consider whether the difference between estimates best supported by the audit evidence and the estimates included in the financial statements, which are individually reasonable, indicate a possible bias on the part of the entity’s management. For example, if each accounting estimate included in the financial statements was individually reasonable, but the effect of the difference between each estimate and the estimate best supported by the audit evidence was to increase income, the auditor should reconsider the reasonableness of the estimates taken as a whole (Paragraph .58 of AU section 312 [AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1.]). [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

---

<sup>4</sup> See paragraphs .25–.28.

<sup>5</sup> The lack of such analyses may call into question the reasonableness of recorded amounts.

**.27** Approaches and estimates will vary from entity to entity. Some entities with significant prior experience may attempt to quantify the effects of individual potential intermediary or other governmental (for example, the Office of Inspector General and the Department of Justice) or private payor adjustments, basing their estimates on very detailed calculations and assumptions regarding potential future adjustments. Some may prepare cost report<sup>6</sup> analyses to estimate the effect of potential adjustments. Others may base their estimates on an analysis of potential adjustments in the aggregate, in light of the payors involved; the nature of the payment mechanism; the risks associated with future audits; and other relevant factors. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.28** One of the key factors in evaluating the estimate is the historical experience of the entity (for example, the aggregate amount of prior cost-report adjustments and previous regulatory settlements) as well as the risk of potential future adjustments. The fact that an entity currently is not subject to a governmental investigation does not mean that a recorded valuation allowance for potential billing adjustments is not warranted. Nor do these emerging industry trends necessarily indicate that an accrual for a specific entity is warranted. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.29** In evaluating valuation allowances, the auditor may consider the entity's historical experience and potential future adjustments in the aggregate. For example, assume that over the past few years after final cost report audits were completed, a hospital's adjustments averaged 3 percent to 5 percent of total filed reimbursable costs. Additionally, the hospital is subject to potential billing adjustments, including errors (for example, violations of the three-day window, discharge and transfer issues, and coding errors). Even though specific incidents are not known, it may be reasonable for the hospital to estimate and accrue a valuation allowance for such potential future retrospective adjustments, both cost-based and non-cost-based. Based on this and other information obtained, the auditor may conclude that a valuation allowance for the year under audit of 3 percent to 5 percent of reimbursable costs plus additional amounts for potential non-cost-based program billing errors is reasonable.

**.30** Amounts that ultimately will be realized by an entity are dependent on a number of factors, many of which may be unknown at the time the estimate is first made. Further, even if two entities had exactly the same clinical and coding experience, amounts that each might realize could vary materially due to factors outside of their control (for example, differing application of payment rules by fiscal intermediaries, legal interpretations of courts, local enforcement initiatives, timeliness of reviews, and quality of documentation). As a result, because estimates are a matter of judgment and their ultimate accuracy depends on the outcome of future events, different entities in seemingly similar circumstances may develop materially different estimates. The auditor may

---

<sup>6</sup> Medicare cost reimbursement is based on the application of highly complex technical rules, some of which are ambiguous and subject to different interpretations even among Medicare's fiscal intermediaries. It is not uncommon for fiscal intermediaries to reduce claims for reimbursement that were based on management's good faith interpretations of pertinent laws and regulations. Additionally, the Provider Reimbursement Review Board (PRRB) or the courts may be required to resolve controversies regarding the application of certain rules. To avoid recognizing revenues before their realization is reasonably assured, providers estimate the effects of such potential adjustments. This is occasionally done by preparing a cost report based on alternative assumptions to help estimate contractual allowances required by generally accepted accounting principles. The existence of reserves or a reserve cost report does not by itself mean that a cost report was incorrectly or fraudulently filed.

conclude that both estimates are reasonable in light of the differing assumptions.

## Inappropriate Accounting Principles

**.31** As previously stated, the auditor also is responsible for determining whether financial statement assertions and disclosures related to accounting estimates are presented in accordance with GAAP. When the financial statements are materially affected by a departure from GAAP, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.32** Valuation allowances should be recorded so that revenues are not recognized until the revenues are realizable. Valuation allowances are not established based on the provisions of FASB ASC 450, *Contingencies*. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.33** Indicators of possible measurement bias related to valuation allowances include

- valuation allowances that are not associated with any particular program, issue, or time period (for example, cost-report year or year the service was rendered).
- distorted earnings trends over time (for example, building up specific or unallocated valuation allowances in profitable years and drawing them down in unprofitable years).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Inadequate Disclosure

**.34** If the auditor concludes that a matter involving a risk or an uncertainty is not adequately disclosed in the financial statements in conformity with GAAP, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion. FASB ASC 275-10-50 provides guidance on the information that reporting entities should disclose regarding risks and uncertainties existing as of the date of the financial statements. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.35** In the health care environment, it is almost always at least reasonably possible that estimates regarding third-party payments could change in the near term as a result of one or more future confirming events (for example, regulatory actions reflecting local or national audit or enforcement initiatives). For most entities with significant third-party revenues, the effect of the change could be material to the financial statements. Where material exposure exists, the uncertainty regarding revenue realization should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements. Because representations from legal counsel are often key audit evidence in evaluating the reasonableness of management's estimates of potential future adjustments, the inability of an attorney to form an opinion on matters about which he or she has been consulted may be indicative of an uncertainty that should be specifically disclosed in the financial statements. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.36** Differences between original estimates and subsequent revisions might arise due to final settlements, ongoing audits and investigations, or passage of time in relation to the statute of limitations. FASB ASC 954-605 requires that these differences be included in the statement of operations in the period in which the revisions are made and disclosed. Such differences are not treated as prior period adjustments unless they meet the criteria for prior period adjustments as set forth in FASB ASC 250-10-45. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.37** Disclosures such as the following may be appropriate:

General Hospital (the Hospital) is a (not-for-profit, for-profit, or governmental hospital or health care system) located in (City, State). The Hospital provides health care services primarily to residents of the region.

Net patient service revenue is reported at estimated net realizable amounts from patients, third-party payors, and others for services rendered and includes estimated retroactive revenue adjustments due to future audits, reviews, and investigations. Retroactive adjustments are considered in the recognition of revenue on an estimated basis in the period the related services are rendered, and such amounts are adjusted in future periods as adjustments become known or as years are no longer subject to such audits, reviews, and investigations.

Revenue from the Medicare and Medicaid programs accounted for approximately 40 percent and 10 percent, respectively, of the Hospital's net patient revenue for the year ended 1999. Laws and regulations governing the Medicare and Medicaid programs are extremely complex and subject to interpretation. As a result, there is at least a reasonable possibility that recorded estimates will change by a material amount in the near term. The 1999 net patient service revenue increased approximately \$10,000,000 due to removal of allowances previously estimated that are no longer necessary as a result of final settlements and years that are no longer subject to audits, reviews, and investigations. The 1998 net patient service revenue decreased approximately \$8,000,000 due to prior-year retroactive adjustments in excess of amounts previously estimated.

## Appendix

### Other Considerations Related to Government Investigations

In recent years, the federal government and many states have aggressively increased enforcement efforts under Medicare and Medicaid anti-fraud and abuse legislation. Broadening regulatory and legal interpretations have significantly increased the risk of penalties for providers; for example, broad interpretations of “false claims” laws are exposing ordinary billing mistakes to scrutiny and penalty consideration. In such circumstances, evaluating the adequacy of accruals for or disclosure of the potential effects of illegal acts in the financial statements of health care entities is a matter that is likely to require a high level of professional judgment.

As previously discussed in this SOP, the far-reaching nature of alleged fraud and abuse violations creates an uncertainty with respect to the valuation of revenues, because future allegations of illegal acts could, if proven, result in a subsequent reduction of revenues. In addition, management makes provisions in the financial statements and disclosures for any contingent liabilities associated with fines and penalties due to violations of such laws. FASB ASC 450, *Contingencies*, provides guidance in evaluating contingent liabilities, such as fines and penalties under applicable laws and regulations. Estimates of potential fines and penalties are not accrued unless their payment is probable and reasonably estimable.

The auditor’s expertise is in accounting and auditing matters rather than operational, clinical, or legal matters. Accordingly, the auditor’s procedures focus on areas that normally are subject to internal controls relevant to financial reporting. However, the further that potential illegal acts are removed from the events and transactions ordinarily reflected in the financial statements, the less likely the auditor is to become aware of the act, to recognize its possible illegality, and to evaluate the effect on the financial statements. For example, determining whether a service was medically necessary, obtained through a legally appropriate referral, properly performed (including using only approved devices, rendered in a quality manner), adequately supervised, accurately documented and classified, or rendered and billed by nonsanctioned individuals typically is not within the auditor’s professional expertise. As a result, an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) is not designed to detect such matters.

Further, an audit conducted in accordance with GAAS does not include rendering an opinion or any form of assurance on an entity’s compliance with laws and regulations.<sup>1</sup>

Nor does an audit under GAAS include providing any assurance on an entity’s billings or cost report. In fact, cost reports typically are not prepared and submitted until after the financial statement audit has been completed.

Certain audit procedures, although not specifically designed to detect illegal acts, may bring possible illegal acts to an auditor’s attention. When a potentially illegal act is detected, the auditor’s responsibilities are addressed in AU sec.

---

<sup>1</sup> Even when auditors undertake a special engagement designed to attest to compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grants (for example, an audit in accordance with OMB Circular A-133), the auditor’s procedures do not extend to testing compliance with laws and regulations related to Medicare and Medicaid fraud and abuse.

317, *Illegal Acts by Clients* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). Disclosure of an illegal act to parties other than the client's senior management and its audit committee or board of directors is not ordinarily part of the auditor's responsibility, and such disclosure would be precluded by the auditor's ethical or legal obligation of confidentiality, unless the matter affects the auditor's opinion on the financial statements.<sup>2</sup> [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

---

<sup>2</sup> Statement on Auditing Standards No. 54, *Illegal Acts by Clients* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, AU sec. 317.23) discusses circumstances in which a duty to notify parties outside the client of detected illegal acts may exist.

## Auditing Standards Board

DEBORAH D. LAMBERT, *Chair*  
JAMES S. GERSON, *Vice Chair*  
JOHN BARNUM  
ANDREW J. CAPELLI  
LINDA K. CHEATHAM  
ROBERT F. DACEY  
RICHARD DIETER  
SALLY L. HOFFMAN

J. MICHAEL INZINA  
CHARLES E. LANDES  
W. SCOTT MCDONALD  
KEITH O. NEWTON  
ROBERT C. STEINER  
GEORGE H. TUCKER  
O. RAY WHITTINGTON

## AICPA Health Care Third-Party Revenue Recognition Task Force

WILLIAM R. TITERA, *Chair*  
MARTHA GARNER

ROBERT A. WRIGHT

## AICPA Health Care Committee

ROBERT A. WRIGHT, *Chair*  
THOMAS J. AARON  
PHILLIP J. BRUMMEL  
A. JAMES BUDZINSKI  
RICK R. CORCORAN  
MICHAEL T. DEFREECE  
ROBERT E. MAZER

CHARLES V. ROBB  
PEGGY B. SCOTT  
ALAN A. SCHACHTER  
GORDON J. VETSCH  
JONATHAN G. WEAVER  
AUDREY L. WENT

## AICPA Staff

THOMAS RAY  
*Director*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

ANNETTE SCHUMACHER BARR  
*Technical Manager*  
*Professional Standards & Services*

---

[The next page is 31,461.]

## Section 14,370

# ***Statement of Position 01-3 Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions as Required by the New York State Insurance Law***

June 15, 2001

### **NOTE**

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretive publication and represents the recommendations of the AICPA's Reporting on Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions at Insurance Entities Task Force of the AICPA Auditing Standards Board (ASB) regarding the application of Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) to agreed-upon procedures engagements performed to comply with the requirements of Section 1410 (b)(5) of the New York State Insurance Law, as amended (the law), which addresses the assessment of internal control over derivative transactions as defined in Section 1401(a) of the law, and Section 178.6(b) of Regulation No. 163. The ASB has found the recommendations in this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 202.01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct. Interpretive publications are not as authoritative as pronouncements of the ASB; however, if a practitioner does not apply the attestation guidance included in this SOP, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the provisions of SSAEs addressed by this SOP.

## **Introduction and Background**

.01 In 1999 and 2000, the New York State Insurance Department (the department) issued regulations to implement the New York Derivative Law (the law) which amends Article 14 of the State of New York Insurance Law, effective July 1, 1999. The Law establishes certain requirements for domestic life insurers, domestic property and casualty insurers, domestic reciprocal insurers, domestic mortgage guaranty insurers, domestic cooperative property and casualty insurance corporations, and domestic financial guaranty insurers. Foreign insurers engaging in derivative transactions and derivative instruments are subject to and required to comply with all of the provisions of the law. However, a foreign insurer may enter into other derivative transactions provided the insurer meets certain conditions of its domestic state law. In this document, an insurer covered by the law is referred to as an *insurance company*.

.02 The requirements of the law include the following:

- Approval by the board of directors, or a similar body, of derivative transactions

- Submission of a derivative use plan (the DUP) to the Department
- Assessment by an independent certified public accountant (CPA) of the insurance company's internal control over derivative transactions

**.03** In addition to the law, the Department also established Regulation No. 163, "Derivative Transactions" (11 NYCRR 178) (the Regulation), which provides guidance in implementing the law. Section 178.6(b) of Regulation No. 163 states the following.

As set forth in section 1410 (b)(5) of the Insurance Law, an insurer engaging in derivative transactions shall be required to include, as part of the evaluation of accounting procedures and internal controls required to be filed pursuant to section 307 of the Insurance Law, a statement describing the assessment by the independent certified public accountant of the internal controls relative to derivative transactions. The purpose of this part of the evaluation is to assess the adequacy of the internal controls relative to the derivative transactions being conducted by the insurer. Such an assessment shall be made whether or not the derivative transactions are material in relation to the insurer's financial statements. The independent certified public accountant shall issue a report regarding internal controls relative to derivative transactions, whether or not deficiencies in internal controls would lead to a "reportable condition," as that term is used in auditing standards adhered to by certified public accountants. An assessment in the form of an "agreed upon procedures engagement" or an "attestation engagement," as those terms are used in auditing standards adhered to by certified public accountants, may be used to meet this requirement. If an "agreed upon procedures engagement" is performed, the procedures used shall be those that management and the independent certified public accountant determine are appropriate to meet the purpose of the assessment as set forth above.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**[.04–.05]** [Paragraphs deleted, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.06** An agreed-upon procedures engagement or other attestation engagement may be used to satisfy the requirements of the law. However, this SOP only describes an agreed-upon procedures engagement. It does not address any other attestation engagements that might be performed, such as an examination-level attestation engagement. For guidance on performing such other attestation engagements, see AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Applicability

**.07** This SOP was developed to provide practitioners with guidance on performing agreed-upon procedures engagements that address an insurance company's internal control over derivative transactions to meet the requirements of the law. The engagement described in this SOP is designed only to satisfy the requirements of the law. The procedures, as set forth in this SOP, are not necessarily appropriate for use in any other engagement. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.08 Although the Department has indicated that an agreed-upon procedures engagement pursuant to this SOP can be used to satisfy the requirements for an assessment of internal control over derivative transactions, the Department has not agreed to the sufficiency of the procedures included in this SOP for their purposes.

## The Law

### Definition of a Derivative

.09 Article 14 of the law defines a derivative instrument as including caps, collars, floors, forwards, futures, options, swaps, swaptions, and warrants.

.10 The following definitions are included in the law and are applicable when performing the agreed-upon procedures engagement described in this SOP.

*Cap*—An agreement obligating the seller to make payments to the buyer with each payment based on the amount by which a reference price or level or the performance or value of one or more underlying interests exceeds a predetermined number, sometimes called the strike rate or strike price.

*Collar*—An agreement to receive payments as the buyer of an option, cap, or floor and to make payments as the seller of a different option, cap, or floor.

*Floor*—An agreement obligating the seller to make payments to the buyer in which each payment is based on the amount by which a predetermined number, sometimes called the floor rate or price, exceeds a reference price, level, performance, or value of one or more underlying interests.

*Forward*—An agreement (other than a future) to make or take delivery in the future of one or more underlying interests, or effect a cash settlement, based on the actual or expected price, level, performance, or value of such underlying interests, but shall not mean or include spot transactions effected within customary settlement periods, when-issued purchases, or other similar cash market transactions.

*Future*—An agreement traded on a futures exchange, to make or take delivery of, or effect a cash settlement based on the actual or expected price, level, performance, or value of one or more underlying interests.

*Option*—An agreement giving the buyer the right to buy or receive (a *calloption*), sell or deliver (a *putoption*), enter into, extend or terminate, or effect a cash settlement based on the actual or expected price, spread, level, performance, or value of one or more underlying interests.

*Swap*—An agreement to exchange or to net payments at one or more times based on the actual or expected price, yield, level, performance, or value of one or more underlying interests.

*Swaption*—An option to purchase or sell a swap at a given price and time or at a series of prices and times. A swaption does not mean a swap with an embedded option.

*Warrant*—An instrument that gives the holder the right to purchase or sell the underlying interest at a given price and time or at a series of prices and times outlined in the warrant agreement.

.11 Article 14 of the law permits an insurance company to enter into *replication transactions* provided that certain conditions set forth in the law are met. A replication transaction is defined in the law as follows.

A derivative transaction or combination of derivative transactions effected either separately or in conjunction with cash market investments included in the insurer's investment portfolio in order to replicate the investment characteristic of another authorized transaction, investment or instrument and/or operate as a substitute for cash market transactions. A derivative transaction entered into by the insurer as a hedging transaction or income generation transaction authorized pursuant to this section [of the law] shall not be considered a replication transaction.

## Derivative Use Plan

.12 An insurance company entering into derivative transactions must file a DUP with the Department. The DUP generally should include the following items:<sup>1</sup>

- A certified copy of the authorization by the insurer's board of directors, or other similar body, to file the DUP, which should include authorization of derivative transactions and an assurance that individuals responsible for derivative transactions, processes, and controls have the necessary experience and knowledge
- A section on management oversight standards including a discussion of the following:
  - Limits on identified risks
  - Controls over the nature and amount of identified risks
  - Processes for identifying such risks
  - Processes for documenting, monitoring, and reporting risk exposure
  - Internal audit and review processes that ensure integrity of the overall risk management process
  - Quarterly reporting to the board of directors
  - The establishment of risk tolerance levels
  - Management's measurement and monitoring against those levels
- A section on internal control and reporting including a discussion of the following:
  - The existence of controls over the valuation and effectiveness of derivative instruments
  - Credit risk management
  - The adequacy of professional personnel
  - Technical expertise and systems
  - Management reporting
  - The review and legal enforceability of derivative contracts between parties

---

<sup>1</sup> Reference should be made to the law and the Regulation for specific details and exact requirements.

- A section on documentation and reporting requirements which shall for each derivative transaction document the following:
  - The purpose of the transaction
  - The assets or liabilities to which the transaction relates
  - The specific derivative instrument used
  - For over-the-counter (OTC) transactions, the name of the counterparty and counterparty exposure amount
  - For exchange traded transactions, the name of the exchange and the name of the firm handling the trade
- Written guidelines to be followed in engaging in derivative transactions. The guidelines should include or address the following:
  - The type, maturity, and diversification of derivative instruments
  - The limitation on counterparty exposures, including limitations based on credit ratings
  - The limitations on the use of derivatives
  - Asset and liability management practices with respect to derivative transactions
  - The liquidity needs and the insurance company's capital and surplus as it relates to the DUP
  - The policy objectives of management specific enough to outline permissible derivative strategies
  - The relationship of the strategies to the insurer's operations
  - How the strategies relate to the insurer's risk
  - A requirement that management establish and execute management oversight standards as required by the law
  - A requirement that management establish and execute internal control and reporting standards as required by the law
  - A requirement that management establish and execute documentation and reporting standards as required by the law
- Guidelines for the insurer's determination of acceptable levels of basis risk, credit risk, foreign currency risk, interest rate risk, market risk, operational risk, and option risk
- A requirement that the board of directors and senior management comply with risk oversight functions and adhere to laws, rules, regulations, prescribed practices, or ethical standards

## Related Professional Standards

### AT Section 201, Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements

.13 Agreed-upon procedures engagements performed to meet the requirements of the law are to be performed in accordance with AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*. As described in paragraph .03 of AT section 201, an agreed-upon procedures engagement is one in which a practitioner is engaged by a client to issue a report of findings based on specific procedures performed on the subject matter. Not all of the provisions of AT section 201 are discussed herein. Rather, this SOP includes guidance to assist practitioners in the application of selected aspects of AT section 201.

.14 Paragraph .06 AT section 201 (states, in part, that the practitioner may perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement provided that, “...(c) the practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed by the practitioner; and (d) the specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes.”

.15 As previously stated, Regulation No. 163 states that an agreed-upon procedures engagement may be used to meet the requirement for an independent CPA's assessment of internal control over derivative transactions. When performing an agreed-upon procedures engagement under this SOP, practitioners should not eliminate any of the procedures presented in appendix B, “Agreed-Upon Procedures for Testing Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions” (paragraph .37), of this SOP or reduce the extent of the tests. The Department or the insurance company may request that additional procedures be performed and the practitioner may agree to perform such procedures. In those circumstances, it would be expected that the additional procedures would be performed in the context of a separate agreed-upon procedures engagement.

.16 As previously noted, the Department has not agreed to the sufficiency of the procedures included in this SOP for their purposes. *Therefore, the Department should not be named as a specified party to the agreed-upon procedures report, and the use of a practitioner's agreed-upon procedures report, issued in accordance with this SOP, should be restricted to the board of directors and management of the insurance company.* Although the Department is not a specified party, footnote 15 of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements*, states the following, in part:

... a regulatory agency as part of its oversight responsibility for an entity may require access to restricted-use reports in which they are not named as a specified party.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### **AU section 332, Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities**

.17 AU sec. 332, *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), provides guidance to auditors in planning and performing auditing procedures for financial statement assertions about derivative instruments, hedging activities, and investments in securities in a financial statement audit performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. A practitioner performing the agreed-upon procedures engagement described in this SOP may find it helpful to consider the guidance in AU section 332 and the related audit guide of the same name supporting AU section 332. Specifically, the practitioner should consider AU sections 332.05 and 332.06 of SAS No. 92 which describe the need for special skill or knowledge to plan and perform the auditing procedures presented in AU section 332. That same skill and knowledge is needed to perform the procedures described in this SOP. . [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.18 The procedures in this SOP are not designed to meet the requirements of generally accepted auditing standards for an audit of the financial statements of an entity that engages in derivative transactions. In addition, performing the audit procedures described in AU section 332 would not meet the requirements of this SOP.

**.19** In an audit of financial statements, the auditor may determine that he or she will not perform procedures related to derivative transactions because they are not material to the financial statements. There is no requirement to perform the procedures described in this SOP when performing an audit of financial statements. In contrast, the law requires that an assessment of internal control be performed whether or not the derivative transactions are material to the insurer's financial statements. Accordingly, a decision not to perform procedures related to derivative transactions in an audit of financial statements, because of immateriality, would not alleviate the requirement to perform the agreed-upon procedures engagement described herein.

## Procedures to Be Performed

**.20** The agreed-upon procedures to be performed are directed toward tests of controls over derivative transactions that occurred during the period covered by the practitioner's report. Any projection of the practitioner's findings to the future is subject to the risk that because of change, the controls may no longer be in existence, suitably designed, or operating effectively. Also, the potential effectiveness of controls over derivative transactions is subject to inherent limitations and, accordingly, errors or fraud may occur and not be detected.

**.21** The procedures to be performed in the agreed-upon procedures engagement described in this SOP are presented in appendix B (paragraph .37). The procedures have been designed so that the findings resulting from the application of the procedures can be recorded in a tabular format. The three options available to the practitioner for expressing the findings for each procedure are *No Exception*, *Exception*, or *N/A* (not applicable). If a procedure is not applicable to a particular insurance company, the procedure should be marked N/A rather than deleted from the report. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.22** Section 1 of appendix B (paragraph .37) of this SOP is applicable to all insurance companies that enter into derivative transactions. Therefore, the procedures in section 1 are to be performed in all engagements performed in accordance with this SOP. Sections 2 through 10 of appendix B (paragraph .37) of this SOP each address a specific type of derivative. The procedures in those sections are to be performed only if the insurance company entered into derivative transactions of the type covered by the section. Sections that address types of derivatives not used by the insurance company should not be attached to the agreed-upon procedures report.

**.23** If any portion of a procedure results in an exception, the findings for that entire procedure should be recorded as an exception and described in the section "Description of Exceptions If Any," at the end of each section. The practitioner should provide a brief factual explanation for each exception that will enable the specified parties to understand the nature of the findings resulting in the exception. If management informs the practitioner that the condition giving rise to the exception was corrected by the date of the practitioner's report, the practitioner's explanation of the exception may include that information; for example, "Management has advised us that the condition resulting in the exception was corrected on Month X, 20XX. We have performed no procedures with respect to management's assertion."

**.24** A practitioner may perform significant portions of the agreed-upon procedures engagement before the end of the period covered by the report. If,

during that time, the practitioner identifies conditions that result in an exception in one or more agreed-upon procedures, he or she should report the exception in the findings section of the agreed-upon procedures report, even if management corrects the condition prior to the end of the period.

**.25** The Law requires the insurance company to provide the Department with a statement describing the independent CPA's assessment of the insurance company's internal control over derivative transactions. It also requires the insurance company to include a description of any remedial actions taken or proposed to be taken to correct any deficiencies identified by the independent CPA.

**.26** Paragraph 40 of AT section 201 states the following.

The practitioner need not perform procedures beyond the agreed-upon procedures. However, in connection with the application of agreed-upon procedures, if matters come to the practitioner's attention by other means that significantly contradict the subject matter (or written assertion related thereto) referred to in the practitioner's report, the practitioner should include this matter in his or her report. For example, if during the course of applying agreed-upon procedures regarding an entity's internal control, the practitioner becomes aware of a material weakness by means other than performance of the agreed-upon procedures, the practitioner should include this matter in his or her report.

**.27** A practitioner has no obligation to perform procedures beyond the agreed-upon procedures included in appendix B (paragraph .37) of this SOP. However, if information indicating a weakness in internal control over derivative transactions comes to the practitioner's attention by other means, such information should be included in the practitioner's report. This would apply to conditions or events occurring during the subsequent-events period (subsequent to the period covered by the practitioner's report but prior to the date of the practitioner's report) that either contradict the findings in the report or that would have resulted in the reporting of an exception by the practitioner if that condition or event had existed during the period covered by the report. However, the practitioner has no responsibility to perform any procedure to detect such conditions or events.

## Establishing an Understanding With the Client

**.28** In accordance with paragraph 10 of AT section 201, the practitioner should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed. Such an understanding reduces the risk that the client may misinterpret the objectives and limitations of an agreed-upon procedures engagement performed to meet the regulatory requirements of the law. Such an understanding also reduces the risk that the client will misunderstand its responsibilities and the responsibilities of the practitioner. The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client (an *engagement letter*). The communication should be addressed to the client. Matters that might be included in such an understanding are the following:

- A statement confirming that an agreed-upon procedures engagement is to be performed to meet the requirements of Section 1410(b)(5) of the law
- A statement identifying the procedures to be performed as those set forth in this SOP

- A statement identifying the client as the specified party to the agreed-upon procedures report
- A statement acknowledging the client's responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures in the SOP
- A statement acknowledging that the practitioner makes no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures in the SOP
- A statement describing the responsibilities of the practitioner, including but not limited to the responsibility to perform the agreed-upon procedures and to provide the client with a report, and the circumstances under which the practitioner may decline to issue a report
- A statement indicating that the engagement will be conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA)
- A statement indicating that an agreed-upon procedures engagement does not constitute an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on the internal control over derivative transactions, and that if an examination were performed, other matters might come to the practitioner's attention
- A statement indicating that the practitioner will not express an opinion or any other form of assurance
- A statement describing the client's responsibility to comply with the law and the client's responsibility for the design and operation of effective internal control over derivative transactions
- A statement describing the client's responsibility for providing accurate and complete information to the practitioner
- A statement indicating that the practitioner has no responsibility for the completeness or accuracy of the information provided to the practitioner
- A statement restricting the use of the report to the client
- A statement describing any arrangements to involve a specialist

## Management Representations

**.29** Although AT section 201 does not require a practitioner to obtain a representation letter from management in an agreed-upon procedures engagement, when performing the engagement described in this SOP, it is recommended that the practitioner obtain such a letter signed by the appropriate members of management, including the highest ranking officer responsible for internal control over derivative transactions. Management's refusal to furnish written representations that the practitioner has determined to be appropriate for the engagement constitutes a limitation on the performance of the engagement that requires either modification of the report or withdrawal from the engagement. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.30** The representations that a practitioner deems appropriate will depend on the specific nature of the engagement; however, they generally include the following representations from management:

- A statement acknowledging responsibility for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over derivative transactions

- A statement that there have been no errors or fraud that might indicate a weakness in the internal control over derivative transactions
- A statement that management has disclosed to the practitioner all significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the internal control over derivative transactions
- A statement that management has disclosed to the practitioner any communications from regulatory agencies, internal auditors, and other practitioners or consultants relating to the internal control over derivative transactions
- A statement that management has made available to the practitioner all information they believe is relevant to the internal control over derivative transactions
- A statement that management has responded fully to all inquiries made by the practitioner during the engagement
- A statement that no events have occurred subsequent to the date as of which the procedures were applied that would require adjustment to or modification to responses to the agreed-upon procedures

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.31** An illustrative representation letter is presented in appendix C, “Illustrative Management Representation Letter” (paragraph .38) of this SOP. For additional information regarding management’s representations in an agreed-upon procedures engagement, see paragraphs .37–.39 AT section 201.

## Restriction on the Performance of Procedures

**.32** As previously stated, a practitioner should not agree to do either of the following.

- a. Eliminate any of the procedures presented in appendix B (paragraph .37) of this SOP, unless a section is not applicable because the insurance company did not enter into derivative transactions addressed by the section.
- b. Reduce the extent of the tests in an applicable section.

**.33** If circumstances impose restrictions on the performance of the agreed-upon procedures presented in appendix B (paragraph .37) of this SOP, the practitioner should describe the restriction(s) in his or her report or withdraw from the engagement.

## Dating the Report

**.34** The date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures should be used as the date of the practitioner’s report.

## Effective Date

**.35** This SOP is effective upon issuance and is applicable only to agreed-upon procedures engagements that address internal control over derivative transactions required by the law.

## Appendix A

### Illustrative Agreed-Upon Procedures Report

The following is an illustrative agreed-upon procedures report based on the guidance in AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.

Independent Accountant's Report  
on Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures

To the Management of ABC Insurance Company:

We have performed the applicable procedures enumerated in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Statement of Position (SOP), 01-3, *Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions as Required by the New York State Insurance Law*, which were agreed to by ABC Insurance Company, solely to assist you in complying with the requirements of Section 1410 (b)(5) of the New York State Insurance Law, as amended (the law), which addresses the assessment of internal control over derivative transactions as defined in Section 1401(a) of the law, and Section 178.6(b) of Regulation No. 163 during the year ended December 31, 20XX. Management of ABC Insurance Company is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over derivative transactions. This agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of ABC Insurance Company. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described in the attached appendix either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

The procedures performed and the findings are included in the attached appendix.

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on the internal control over derivative transactions of ABC Insurance Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the management and Board of Directors of ABC Insurance Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

**Appendix B**  
**Agreed-Upon Procedures for Testing Internal Control  
Over Derivative Transactions**

The following table lists the types of derivative transactions permitted by the New York Derivative Law (the law). We inquired of management of the insurance company as to whether the insurance company used the type of derivative addressed by each section, and marked the column entitled “Is the Section Applicable?” either *Yes* or *No* based on management’s response to the inquiry. For each type of derivative with a *Yes* response, we performed the procedures in the applicable section and attached the section to the report. For each type of derivative with a *No* response, we did not perform procedures nor did we attach the applicable section to the report. We compared the types of derivative reported by the insurance company in its “Schedule of Derivative Transactions” included in the Annual Statement with the types of derivatives listed in the following table and found that the types of derivatives included in the schedule were marked *Yes* in the table.

**Attachments to the Report**

<b>Section of the Agreed-Upon Procedures</b>		<b>Is the Section Applicable?</b>
<b>No.</b>	<b>Type of Derivative</b>	<b>Yes or No</b>
1	All Derivative Types	Yes
2	Cap Contracts	
3	Collar Contracts	
4	Floor Contracts	
5	Forward Contracts	
6	Future Contracts	
7	Option Contracts	
8	Swap Contracts	
9	Swaption Contracts	
10	Warrant Contracts	

## Section 1—All Derivative Types

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>
<u>N/A</u>			
The following procedures were performed to test controls applicable to all derivative transactions. The procedures were applied to the internal control over derivative transactions in existence during the year ended December 31, 20XX			
<b>Documentation of Controls, Policies, and Procedures</b>			
1. Read the insurance company's derivative use plan (DUP), amendments thereto, and its documentation of controls, policies, and procedures that describe internal control over derivative transactions and found that the DUP and the documentation of controls, policies, and procedures include a description of controls that address the following:			
a. Systems or processes for the periodic valuation of derivative transactions including mechanisms for compensating for any lack of independence in valuing derivative positions (Valuation)	_____	_____	_____
b. Systems or processes for determining whether a derivative instrument used for hedging or replication has been effective (Effectiveness)	_____	_____	_____
c. Credit risk management systems or processes for over-the-counter (OTC) derivative transactions that measure credit risk exposure using the counterparty exposure amount and policies for the establishment of collateral arrangements with counterparties (Credit Risk Management)	_____	_____	_____
d. Management assessment of the adequacy and technical expertise of personnel associated with derivative transactions and systems to implement and control investment practices involving derivatives (Professional Competence)	_____	_____	_____

(continued)

<b><u>Procedures</u></b>	<b><u>Findings</u></b>		
	<b><u>No</u></b>	<b><u>Exception</u></b>	<b><u>N/A</u></b>
e. Systems or processes for regular reports to management, segregation of duties, and internal review procedures (Reporting)	_____	_____	_____
f. Procedures for conducting initial and ongoing legal reviews of derivative transactions including assessments of contract enforceability (Legal Reviews)	_____	_____	_____
<b>Nontransaction-Specific Procedures</b>			
2. Read the minutes of meetings of the board of directors and found an indication that the board of directors of the insurance company approved the DUP and any amendments thereto.	_____	_____	_____
3. Inquired of management as to whether the DUP and any amendments thereto were approved by the New York State Insurance Department and was advised that the DUP and any amendments thereto were approved.	_____	_____	_____
4. Read the minutes of meetings of the board of directors and found an indication that the board of directors of the insurance company approved the commitment of financial resources determined by management to be sufficient to accomplish the objectives of the insurance company's DUP.	_____	_____	_____
<i>This procedure does not provide an assessment of or assurance about the adequacy of the resources determined by management to be sufficient to accomplish the objectives of the DUP.</i>			
<i>In performing the following procedures, the practitioner frequently will find that management has designated and will have in place limits, controls, or procedures that are more restrictive than those approved for use in the DUP</i>			
For the year ended December 31, 20XX,			
5. inquired of management and was advised that—			
a. There was monitoring of derivative transactions by a control staff, such as internal audit or other internal review group, that is independent of derivatives trading activities.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No</u> <u>Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
b. There were procedures in place for derivative personnel to obtain, prior to exceeding limits prescribed by management, at least oral approval from members of senior management who are independent of derivatives trading activities.	_____	_____	_____
c. There were procedures in place for senior management to address excesses related to management-established limits and divergences from management-approved derivative strategies, and that such management has authority to grant exceptions to derivatives limits.	_____	_____	_____
d. There were procedures in place requiring that management be informed when limits prescribed in the DUP were exceeded and for management to approve corrective action(s) in such circumstances.	_____	_____	_____
e. There were procedures in place for the accurate transmittal of derivatives positions to the risk measurement systems when management had implemented risk management systems.	_____	_____	_____
f. There were procedures in place for the performance of appropriate reconciliations to ensure data integrity across the full range of derivatives, including any new or existing derivatives that may be monitored apart from the main processing networks.	_____	_____	_____
g. There were procedures in place for senior management, an independent group, or an individual that management designated to perform at least an annual assessment of the identified controls and financial results of the derivative activities to determine that controls were effectively implemented and that the insurance company's business objectives and strategies were achieved.	_____	_____	_____

(continued)

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
h. There were procedures in place for a review of limits in the context of changes in strategy, risk tolerance of the insurance company, and market conditions.	_____	_____	_____
<b>Reporting to the Board of Directors or Committee Thereof</b>			
The Law contains provisions regarding management oversight of derivative and replication transactions.			
6. Read the minutes of the board of directors meetings or committees thereof and found an indication that the board of directors or committee thereof received, at least quarterly, a report regarding derivative and replication transactions.	_____	_____	_____
7. Read one quarterly report referred to in procedure 6 and found that the report contained—			
a. A list, or appropriate summaries, of the following:			
(1) Derivative transactions during the period	_____	_____	_____
(2) Derivative transactions outstanding at the end of the period	_____	_____	_____
(3) Unrealized gains or losses on open derivative positions	_____	_____	_____
(4) Derivative transactions closed during the period	_____	_____	_____
b. A summary of the performance of the derivatives in comparison to the objective of the derivative transactions	_____	_____	_____
c. An evaluation of the risks and benefits of the derivative transactions	_____	_____	_____
d. A summary of the amount, type, and performance of replication transactions	_____	_____	_____
8. If the report referred to in the preceding procedure was received, reviewed, and approved by a committee of the board of directors, read the minutes of the board of directors meeting and found an indication that a report of such committee was reviewed at the next board of directors meeting.	_____	_____	_____

<b><i>Procedures</i></b>	<b><i>Findings</i></b>		
	<b><i>No Exception</i></b>	<b><i>Exception</i></b>	<b><i>N/A</i></b>
9. Read the board of directors minutes and found an indication that the board of directors received a report during the year describing the level of knowledge and experience of individuals conducting, monitoring, controlling, and auditing derivative and replication transactions.	_____	_____	_____

### **Derivative and Replication Limitations**

The Law contains limits on hedging and replication transactions. An insurance company may enter into hedging or replication transactions if, as a result of and after giving effect to the transaction, the derivative investments and replication investments do not exceed certain specified percentages of admitted assets. The following procedures were performed using one analysis per quarter prepared by the insurance company to monitor compliance with the limitations.

10. Obtained and read the insurance company's analysis used to test limitations on investments in derivatives and replication transactions and found that the amounts shown in the analysis indicated that—

a. The aggregate statement value of options, swaptions, caps, floors, and warrants purchased was not in excess of seven and one-half percent of the insurance company's admitted assets, per the last annual statement.

\_\_\_\_\_

b. The aggregate statement value of options, swaptions, caps, and floors written was not in excess of three percent of admitted assets.

\_\_\_\_\_

c. The aggregate potential exposure of collars, swaps, forwards, and futures entered into and options, swaptions, caps, and floors written was not in excess of six and one-half percent of admitted assets.

\_\_\_\_\_

d. The aggregate statement value of all assets being replicated did not exceed ten percent of the insurance company's admitted assets.

\_\_\_\_\_

<i><b>Procedures</b></i>	<i><b>Findings</b></i>		
	<i><b>No Exception</b></i>	<i><b>Exception</b></i>	<i><b>N/A</b></i>
e. The extent of derivative transactions did not exceed the insurance company's internal limitations or that any excess had been specifically authorized by management.	_____	_____	_____
11. Inquired of the preparer of the analysis read in procedure 10 and was advised that the analysis excluded transactions entered into to hedge the currency risk of investments denominated in a currency other than United States dollars.	_____	_____	_____
12. Obtained and read the insurance company's analysis used to test limitations on counterparty exposure, as defined in section 178.3(e) of the Regulation, and found that the report indicated that—			
a. The counterparty exposure under one or more derivative transactions for any single counterparty, other than a "qualified counterparty," was not in excess of one percent of the insurance company's admitted assets.	_____	_____	_____
b. The counterparty exposure under one or more derivative transactions for all counterparties, other than qualified counterparties, was not in excess of three percent of the insurance company's admitted assets.	_____	_____	_____
13. If the insurance company required collateral arrangements with the counterparties, obtained and read the insurance company's analysis used to monitor the adequacy of the collateral held in accordance with the terms of the arrangement and found that the amount of the collateral held as shown on the analysis was equal to or in excess of the amount to be held.	_____	_____	_____

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<i><b>Procedure Number</b></i>	<i><b>Description of Exception</b></i>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

## Section 2—Cap Contracts

Procedures

Performed the following procedures on selected cap contracts to test internal control over cap transactions. Selected five percent of each type of cap transaction (that is, purchases [premium disbursements], sales [premium receipts], and closeouts [closings and settlements of the position]), with the selections distributed throughout the year. If five percent of a given type of transaction exceeded 40, the number of items selected for that type of transaction was limited to 40. If five percent of a type of transaction resulted in less than four items, selected four or fewer items that represented all the transactions of that type.

Findings

<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
-------------------------	------------------	------------

**Reporting**

1. Read the insurance company's derivative use plan (DUP) and any amendments thereto and found that the DUP permits the insurance company to enter into cap contracts.

_____	_____	_____
-------	-------	-------

2. For each cap selected for testing, read management's documentation describing the intended use of the cap and performed the following procedures, as applicable.

_____	_____	_____
-------	-------	-------

For caps used as a hedge—

3. Determined that the documentation described the following:

- a. The risk hedged

_____	_____	_____
-------	-------	-------

- b. How the hedge was consistent with the overall risk management strategy

_____	_____	_____
-------	-------	-------

- c. How the cap was expected to be effective in offsetting the exposure

_____	_____	_____
-------	-------	-------

- d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the hedge

_____	_____	_____
-------	-------	-------

4. Determined that the following items were documented:

- a. The purpose(s) of the cap as a hedge

_____	_____	_____
-------	-------	-------

<i><b>Procedures</b></i>	<i><b>Findings</b></i>		
	<i><b>No Exception</b></i>	<i><b>Exception</b></i>	<i><b>N/A</b></i>
b. The terms of the cap, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
c. The assets or liabilities (or portion thereof) that the cap hedged	_____	_____	_____
d. Evidence that the cap continued to be an effective hedge	_____	_____	_____
e. Evidence that the cap was consistent with the insurance company's parameters, as specified in the DUP or applicable company policies and procedures, for entering into hedge transactions; for example, the notional amount or underlying	_____	_____	_____
If the cap was an exact offset to an outstanding cap—			
5. Read documentation indicating that the cap offset an outstanding cap previously purchased or sold by the insurance company and that the cap was an exact offset of the market risk of the cap being offset.	_____	_____	_____
For caps used in a replication transaction—			
6. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. How the replication was consistent with the overall management investment strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the cap was expected to be effective in replicating the investment characteristics of the replicated investment	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach for assessing the effectiveness of the replication transaction	_____	_____	_____
7. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The instruments used in the replication and the investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
b. The terms of the cap, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
For all selected caps including those that are a part of a replication transaction—			
8. Obtained a list of individuals, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof, who had the authority to authorize cap transactions. Compared the name of the individual who authorized the cap transaction with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
9. Based on the details of the transaction identified in procedure 2 and company policy, compared the terms of the transaction with the insurance company's policy regarding the requirement for the board of directors or a committee thereof to authorize the specific transaction tested; for example, a transaction in which the notional amount or strike price exceeded a limit requiring additional approval. If the board of directors or a committee thereof was required to approve the transaction, read minutes of the board of directors or a committee thereof or other appropriate support and found evidence of approval of the transaction tested.	_____	_____	_____
10. Obtained a list of <i>qualified</i> and <i>nonqualified</i> counterparties, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof. Compared the name of the counterparty involved in the cap transaction with names on the list and found the name of the counterparty on the respective qualified or nonqualified list.	_____	_____	_____
11. Determined that the counterparty was listed as qualified or nonqualified in the analysis used for monitoring the insurance company's limitations on counterparty exposure consistent with the classification in the listing obtained in procedure 10.	_____	_____	_____

<i><u>Procedures</u></i>	<i><u>Findings</u></i>		
	<i><u>No Exception</u></i>	<i><u>Exception</u></i>	<i><u>N/A</u></i>
12. Obtained a list of individuals authorized by the board of directors or a committee thereof to trade cap contracts. Compared the name of the individual who executed the purchase, sale, or closeout of the cap with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
13. Obtained a list of individuals authorized to approve payments relating to caps. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the cap with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
14. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the cap with the name of the individual who approved entering into the contract and found that the names were different.	_____	_____	_____
15. Compared the name of the individual who received cash or other consideration in connection with the cap with the name of the individual who entered into the contract and found that the names of the individuals were different.	_____	_____	_____
16. Obtained the deal ticket and confirmation for the purchase, sale, or closeout of the cap and found that the purchase, sale, or closeout was confirmed by the counterparty.	_____	_____	_____
17. Compared the name of the individual who received the deal ticket and confirmation with the names on a list of individuals authorized to trade caps and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
18. Compared the terms of the cap contract, as stated on the deal ticket and confirmation, with the terms of the cap contract recorded in the insurance company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
19. Obtained documentation for one reporting period (for example, monthly or quarterly), indicating that the insurance company determined that its accounting records for caps tested in procedure 18, agreed with or reconciled to the related control account; for example, the subsidiary ledger to the general ledger.	_____	_____	_____
20. Obtained the accounting record documenting modifications, if any, to the cap agreement. Compared the name of the individual who approved the modification with a list of individuals authorized to approve modifications and found the name of the individual who approved the modification on the list.	_____	_____	_____
21. Compared the terms of the cap agreement recorded in the insurance company's accounting records with the terms shown in the executed copy of the cap agreement and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
22. Obtained documentation for one reporting period (for example, monthly or quarterly), indicating that the insurance company physically inventoried the cap agreements.	_____	_____	_____
23. Using the list of authorized traders obtained in procedure 12, compared the name of the individual who had custody or access to the cap agreement with the names of individuals authorized to execute purchases, sales, or closeouts of cap contracts and found that the name of the individual was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
24. Compared information regarding the cap, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information included in the report to the board of directors or appropriate committee thereof and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
25. If the cap should have been included in the monitoring analysis separately tested in procedure 10 within section 1, "All Derivative Types," compared information regarding the cap, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information in the monitoring analysis and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
26. Read accounting documentation indicating that the insurance company monitored periodic cash settlements related to the cap tested, meaning, the insurance company had controls in place to determine that periodic cash settlements, if any, were received.	_____	_____	_____

**Effectiveness of Caps Used As Hedges and in Replication Transactions**

27. Read the insurance company's documentation of effectiveness and found that the insurance company evaluated the effectiveness of the cap as a hedge or replication in accordance with the policies regarding effectiveness.	_____	_____	_____
28. If the cap was no longer effective as a hedge or replication, compared the action taken by the insurance company with the action required by the accounting policies and procedures and found that the action taken was consistent with the accounting policy.	_____	_____	_____

**Legal Review**

29. Read documentation indicating that the legal department reviewed the cap agreement to assess contract compliance with the DUP and enforceability.	_____	_____	_____
30. Read documentation indicating that the legal department updated its assessment of agreement enforceability at least annually.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b>Valuation</b>			
31. Obtained the insurance company's policies and procedures for valuing caps and found that the insurance company determined the fair value of the cap in accordance with the policy described in the insurance company's procedures for the valuation of caps.	_____	_____	_____
32. Read documentation supporting the fair value of the cap and found that the fair value was either (a) obtained from an independent source, (b) checked against an independent source, or (c) calculated internally by an authorized person.	_____	_____	_____

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<u>Procedure Number</u>	<u>Description of Exception</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Section 3—Collar Contracts

Procedures

Performed the following procedures on selected collar contracts to test internal control over collar transactions. Selected five percent of each type of collar transaction (that is, executions [entering into a collar transaction in which the net position at inception may result in either no cash outlay, cash received, or cash disbursed] and closeouts [closings and settlements of the position]), with the selections distributed throughout the year. If five percent of a given type of transaction exceeded 40, the number of items selected for that type of transaction was limited to 40. If five percent of a type of transaction resulted in less than four items, selected four or fewer items that represented all the transactions of that type.

Reporting

- 1. Read the insurance company’s derivative use plan (DUP) and any amendments thereto and found that the DUP permits the insurance company to enter into collar contracts.
- 2. For each collar selected for testing, read management’s documentation describing the intended use of the collar and performed the following procedures, as applicable.

For collars used as a hedge—

- 3. Determined that the documentation described the following:
  - a. The risk hedged
  - b. How the hedge was consistent with the overall risk management strategy
  - c. How the collar was expected to be effective in offsetting the exposure
  - d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the hedge

<i>Findings</i>		
<i>No Exception</i>	<i>Exception</i>	<i>N/A</i>

_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
4. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The purpose(s) of the collar as a hedge	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the collar, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
c. The assets or liabilities (or portion thereof) that the collar hedged	_____	_____	_____
d. Evidence that the collar continued to be an effective hedge	_____	_____	_____
e. Evidence that the contract was consistent with the insurance company's parameters, as specified in the DUP or applicable company policies and procedures, for entering into hedge transactions; for example, the notional amount or underlying	_____	_____	_____
If the collar was an exact offset of an outstanding collar—			
5. Read documentation indicating that the collar offset an outstanding collar previously purchased or sold by the insurance company and that the collar was an exact offset of the market risk of the collar being offset.	_____	_____	_____
For collars used in a replication transaction—			
6. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. How the replication was consistent with the overall management investment strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the collar was expected to be effective in replicating the investment characteristics of the replicated investment	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the replication transaction	_____	_____	_____



<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
11. Determined that the counterparty was listed as qualified or nonqualified in the analysis used for monitoring the insurance company's limitations on counterparty exposure consistent with the classification in the listing obtained in procedure 10.	_____	_____	_____
12. Obtained a list of individuals authorized by the board of directors or a committee thereof to trade collar contracts. Compared the name of the individual who executed the execution or closeout of the collar contract with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
13. Obtained a list of individuals authorized to approve payments relating to collars. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the collar with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
14. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the collar with the name of the individual who approved entering into the contract and found that the names were different.	_____	_____	_____
15. Compared the name of the individual who received cash or other consideration in connection with the collar with the name of the individual who entered into the contract and found that the names of the individuals were different.	_____	_____	_____
16. Obtained the deal ticket and confirmation for the execution or closeout of the collar and found that the execution or closeout was confirmed by the counterparty.	_____	_____	_____
17. Compared the name of the individual who received the deal ticket and confirmation with the names on a list of individuals authorized to trade collars and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<i><u>Procedures</u></i>	<i><u>Findings</u></i>		
	<i><u>No Exception</u></i>	<i><u>Exception</u></i>	<i><u>N/A</u></i>
18. Compared the terms of the collar contract, as stated on the deal ticket and confirmation, with the terms of the collar contract recorded in the insurance company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
19. Obtained documentation for one reporting period (for example, monthly or quarterly) indicating that the insurance company determined that its accounting records for collars, tested in procedure 18, agreed with or reconciled to the related control account; for example, the subsidiary ledger to the general ledger.	_____	_____	_____
20. Obtained the accounting record documenting modifications, if any, to the collar agreement. Compared the name of the individual who approved the modification with a list of individuals authorized to approve modifications and found the name of the individual who approved the modification on the list.	_____	_____	_____
21. Compared the terms of the collar agreement recorded in the insurance company's accounting records with the terms shown in the executed copy of the collar agreement and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
22. Obtained documentation for one reporting period (for example, monthly or quarterly), indicating that the insurance company physically inventoried the collar agreement.	_____	_____	_____
23. Using the list of authorized traders obtained in procedure 12, compared the name of the individual who had custody or access to the collar contracts with the names of individuals authorized to enter into trades, executions, or closeouts of collar contracts and found that the name of the individual was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
24. Compared information regarding the collar, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information included in the report to the board of directors or appropriate committee thereof and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
25. If the collar should have been included in the monitoring analysis separately tested in procedure 10 within section 1, "All Derivative Types," compared information regarding the collar, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information in the monitoring analysis and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
26. Read accounting documentation indicating that the insurance company monitored periodic cash settlements related to the collar tested, meaning, the insurance company had controls in place to determine that periodic cash settlements, if any, were received.	_____	_____	_____

### **Effectiveness of Collars Used As Hedges and in Replication Transactions**

27. Read the insurance company's documentation of effectiveness and found that the insurance company evaluated the effectiveness of the collar as a hedge or replication in accordance with the policies regarding effectiveness.	_____	_____	_____
28. If the collar was no longer effective as a hedge or replication, compared the action taken by the insurance company with the action required by the accounting policies and procedures and found that the action taken was consistent with the accounting policy.	_____	_____	_____

<i><b>Procedures</b></i>	<i><b>Findings</b></i>		
	<i><b>No Exception</b></i>	<i><b>Exception</b></i>	<i><b>N/A</b></i>
<b>Legal Review</b>			
29. Read documentation indicating that the legal department reviewed the collar agreement to assess contract compliance with the DUP and enforceability.	_____	_____	_____
30. Read documentation indicating that the legal department updated its assessment of agreement enforceability at least annually.	_____	_____	_____
<b>Valuation</b>			
31. Obtained the insurance company's policies and procedures for valuing collars and found that the insurance company determined the fair value of the collar in accordance with the policy described in the insurance company's procedures for the valuation of collars.	_____	_____	_____
32. Read documentation supporting the fair value of the collar and found that the fair value was either (a) obtained from an independent source, (b) checked against an independent source, or (c) calculated internally by an authorized individual.	_____	_____	_____

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<i><b><u>Procedure Number</u></b></i>	<i><b><u>Description of Exception</u></b></i>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

## Section 4—Floor Contracts

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<p>Performed the following procedures on selected floor contracts to test internal control over floor transactions. Selected five percent of each type of floor transaction (that is, purchases [premium disbursements], sales [premium receipts], and closeouts [closings and settlements of the position]), with the selections distributed throughout the year. If five percent of a given type of transaction exceeded 40, the number of items selected for that type of transaction was limited to 40. If five percent of a type of transaction resulted in less than four items, selected four or fewer items that represented all the transactions of that type.</p>			
<b>Reporting</b>			
1. Read the insurance company's derivative use plan (DUP) and any amendments thereto and found that the DUP permits the insurance company to enter into floor contracts.	_____	_____	_____
2. For each floor selected for testing, read management's documentation describing the intended use of the floor and performed the following procedures, as applicable.	_____	_____	_____
For floors used as a hedge—			
3. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The risk hedged	_____	_____	_____
b. How the hedge was consistent with the overall risk management strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the floor was expected to be effective in offsetting the exposure	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the hedge	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
4. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The purpose(s) of the floor as a hedge	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the floor, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
c. The assets or liabilities (or portion thereof) that the floor hedged	_____	_____	_____
d. Evidence that the floor continued to be an effective hedge	_____	_____	_____
e. Evidence that the floor was consistent with the insurance company's parameters, as specified in the DUP or applicable company policies and procedures for entering into hedge transactions; for example, the notional amount or underlying	_____	_____	_____
If the floor was an exact offset of an outstanding floor—			
5. Read documentation indicating that the floor offset an outstanding floor previously purchased or sold by the insurance company and that the floor was an exact offset of the market risk of the floor being offset.			
For floors used in a replication transaction—			
6. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. How the replication was consistent with the overall management investment strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the floor was expected to be effective in replicating the investment characteristics of the replicated investment	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the replication transaction	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
7. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The instruments used in the replication and the investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the floor, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
For all selected floors including those that are a part of a replication transaction—			
8. Obtained a list of individuals approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof who had the authority to authorize floor transactions. Compared the name of the individual who authorized the floor transaction with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
9. Based on the details of the transaction identified in procedure 2 and company policy, compared the terms of the transaction with the insurance company's policy regarding the requirement for the board of directors or a committee thereof to authorize the specific transaction tested; for example, a transaction in which the notional amount or strike price exceeded a limit requiring additional approval. If the board of directors or a committee thereof was required to approve the transaction, read minutes of the board of directors or a committee thereof or other appropriate support and found evidence of approval of the transaction tested.	_____	_____	_____
10. Obtained a list of <i>qualified</i> and <i>nonqualified</i> counterparties, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof. Compared the name of the counterparty involved in the floor transaction with names on the list and found the name of the counterparty on the respective qualified or non-qualified list.	_____	_____	_____

<i><u>Procedures</u></i>	<i><u>Findings</u></i>		
	<i><u>No Exception</u></i>	<i><u>Exception</u></i>	<i><u>N/A</u></i>
11. Determined that the counterparty was listed as qualified or nonqualified in the analysis used for monitoring the insurance company's limitations on counterparty exposure consistent with the classification in the listing obtained in procedure 10.	_____	_____	_____
12. Obtained a list of individuals authorized by the board of directors or a committee thereof to trade floor contracts. Compared the name of the individual who executed the purchase, sale, or closeout of the floor with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
13. Obtained a list of individuals authorized to approve payments relating to floors. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the floor with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
14. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the floor with the name of the individual who approved entering into the contract and found that the names were different.	_____	_____	_____
15. Compared the name of the individual who received cash or other consideration in connection with the floor with the name of the individual who entered into the contract and found that the names of the individuals were different.	_____	_____	_____
16. Obtained the deal ticket and confirmation for the purchase, sale, or closeout of the floor and found that the purchase, sale, or closeout was confirmed by the counterparty.	_____	_____	_____
17. Compared the name of the individual who received the deal ticket and confirmation with the names on a list of individuals authorized to trade floors and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
18. Compared the terms of the floor contract, as stated on the deal ticket and confirmation, with the terms of the floor contract recorded in the insurance company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
19. Obtained documentation for one reporting period (for example, monthly or quarterly), that the insurance company determined that its accounting records for floors, tested in procedure 18, agreed with or reconciled to the related control account; for example, the subsidiary ledger to the general ledger.	_____	_____	_____
20. Obtained the accounting record documenting modifications, if any, to the floor agreement. Compared the name of the individual who approved the modification with a list of individuals authorized to approve modifications and found the name of the individual who approved the modification on the list.	_____	_____	_____
21. Compared the terms of the floor agreement recorded in the insurance company's accounting records with the terms shown in the executed copy of the floor agreement and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
22. Obtained documentation for one reporting period (for example, monthly or quarterly), indicating that the insurance company physically inventoried the floor agreements.	_____	_____	_____
23. Using the list of authorized traders obtained in procedure 12, compared the name of the individual who had custody or access to the floor agreement with the names of individuals authorized to execute purchases, sales, or closeouts of floor contracts and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
24. Compared information regarding the floor, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information included in the report to the board of directors or appropriate committee thereof and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
25. If the floor should have been included in the monitoring analysis separately tested in procedure 10 within section 1, “All Derivative Types,” compared information regarding the floor, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information in the monitoring analysis and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
26. Read accounting documentation indicating that the insurance company monitored periodic cash settlements related to the floor tested, meaning, the insurance company had controls in place to determine that periodic cash settlements, if any, were received.	_____	_____	_____

**Effectiveness of Floors Used As Hedges and in Replication Transactions**

27. Read the insurance company’s documentation of effectiveness and found that the insurance company evaluated the effectiveness of the floor as a hedge or replication in accordance with the policies regarding effectiveness.	_____	_____	_____
28. If the floor was no longer effective as a hedge or replication, compared the action taken by the insurance company with the action required by the accounting policies and procedures and found that the action taken was consistent with the accounting policy.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b>Legal Review</b>			
29. Read documentation indicating that the legal department reviewed the floor agreement to assess contract compliance with the DUP and enforceability.	_____	_____	_____
30. Read documentation indicating that the legal department updated its assessment of agreement enforceability at least annually.	_____	_____	_____
<b>Valuation</b>			
31. Obtained the insurance company's policies and procedures for valuing floors and found that the insurance company determined the fair value of the floor in accordance with the policy described in the insurance company's procedures for the valuation of floors.	_____	_____	_____
32. Read documentation supporting the fair value of the floor and found that the fair value was either (a) obtained from an independent source, (b) checked against an independent source, or (c) calculated internally by an authorized individual.	_____	_____	_____

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<u>Procedure Number</u>	<u>Description of Exception</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Section 5—Forward Contracts

Procedures

Performed the following procedures on selected forward contracts to test internal control over forward transactions. Selected five percent of each type of forward transaction, with the selections distributed throughout the year. These are, (1) forward contracts entered into to make delivery, (2) forward contracts entered into to take delivery, (3) forward contracts settled by making delivery, (4) forward contracts settled by taking delivery, (5) forward contracts settled by cash. If five percent of a given type of transaction exceeded 40, the number of items selected for that type of transaction was limited to 40. If five percent of a type of transaction resulted in less than four items, selected four or fewer items that represented all of the transactions of that type.

*Findings*

<u>No</u>		
<u>Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>

**Reporting**

1. Read the insurance company’s derivative use plan (DUP) and any amendments thereto and found that the DUP permits the insurance company to enter into forward contracts.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. For each forward selected for testing, read management’s documentation describing the intended use of the forward and performed the following procedures, as applicable.

\_\_\_\_\_

For forward contracts used as a hedge—

3. Determined that the documentation describes the following:

a. The risk hedged

\_\_\_\_\_

b. How the hedge was consistent with the overall risk management strategy

\_\_\_\_\_

c. How the forward was expected to be effective in offsetting the exposure

\_\_\_\_\_

d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the hedge

\_\_\_\_\_

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
4. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The purpose(s) of the forward as a hedge	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the forward, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
c. The assets or liabilities (or portion thereof) that the forward hedged	_____	_____	_____
d. The specific forward contract used in the hedge	_____	_____	_____
e. Evidence that the forward continued to be an effective hedge	_____	_____	_____
f. Evidence that the forward was consistent with the insurance company's parameters, as specified in the DUP or applicable company policies and procedures, for entering into hedge transactions; for example, the notional amount or underlying	_____	_____	_____
If the forward was an exact offset of an outstanding forward—			
5. Read documentation indicating that the forward offset an outstanding forward previously purchased or sold by the insurance company and that the forward was an exact offset of the market risk of the forward being offset.	_____	_____	_____
For forwards used in a replication transaction—			
6. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. How the replication was consistent with the overall management investment strategy	_____	_____	_____

<i><b>Procedures</b></i>	<i><b>Findings</b></i>		
	<i><b>No Exception</b></i>	<i><b>Exception</b></i>	<i><b>N/A</b></i>
c. How the forward was expected to be effective in replicating the investment characteristic of the replicated investment	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach for assessing the effectiveness of the replication transaction	_____	_____	_____
7. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The instruments used in the replication and the investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the forward contract, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
For all selected forwards, including those that are a part of the replication transaction—			
8. Obtained a list of individuals, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof who had the authority to authorize forward transactions. Compared the name of the individual who authorized the forward transaction with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
9. Based on the details of the transaction identified in procedure 2 and company policy, compared the terms of the transaction with the insurance company’s policy regarding the requirement for the board of directors or a committee thereof to authorize the specific transaction tested; for example, a transaction in which the notional amount exceeded a limit requiring additional approval. If the board of directors or a committee thereof was required to approve the transaction, read minutes of the board of directors or a committee thereof or other appropriate support and found evidence of approval of the transaction tested.	_____	_____	_____

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
10. Obtained a list of <i>qualified</i> and <i>nonqualified</i> counterparties, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof. Compared the name of the counterparty involved in the forward transaction with names on the list and found the name of the counterparty on the respective qualified or nonqualified list.	_____	_____	_____
11. Determined that the counterparty was listed as qualified or nonqualified in the analysis used for monitoring the insurance company's limitations on counterparty exposure consistent with the classification in the listing obtained in procedure 10.	_____	_____	_____
12. Obtained a list of individuals authorized by the board of directors or committee thereof to trade forward contracts. Compared the name of the individual who executed the purchase or sale of the forward with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
13. Obtained a list of individuals authorized to approve settlements or payments related to forward contracts. For the purchase and any transaction subsequent to purchase, compared the name of the individual who approved any payment or settlement of funds in connection with the forward contract with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
14. Compared the name of the individual who approved any settlement or payment relating to the forward with the name of the individual who approved entering into the contract and found that the names were different.	_____	_____	_____
15. Compared the name of the individual who received cash or other consideration in connection with the forward with the name of the individual who entered into the contract and found that the names of the individuals were different.	_____	_____	_____

<i><u>Procedures</u></i>	<i><u>Findings</u></i>		
	<i><u>No Exception</u></i>	<i><u>Exception</u></i>	<i><u>N/A</u></i>
16. Obtained the deal ticket and confirmation for the purchase or sale of the forward contract and found that the purchase or sale was confirmed by the counterparty.	_____	_____	_____
17. Compared the name of the individual who received the deal ticket and confirmation with the names on a list of individuals authorized to trade forwards and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
18. Compared the terms of the forward contract, as stated on the deal ticket and confirmation, with the terms of the forward contract recorded in the insurance company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
19. Obtained documentation for one reporting period, (for example, monthly or quarterly), that the insurance company determined that its accounting records for forwards, tested in procedure 18, agreed with or reconciled to the related control account, (for example, the subsidiary ledger to the general ledger).	_____	_____	_____
20. Obtained the accounting record documenting modifications, if any, to the forward contract. Compared the name of the individual who approved the modification with a list of individuals authorized to approve modifications and found the name of the individual who approved the modification on the list.	_____	_____	_____
21. For one reporting period, (for example, monthly or quarterly), obtained the insurance company's documentation of the existence of the forward contract and found that the insurance company either (a) obtained a statement from the custodian confirming the existence of the forward contract, (b) physically inventoried the forward contract, or (c) obtained a statement from the counterparty acknowledging the existence of the forward contract.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
22. Using the list of authorized traders obtained in procedure 12, compared the name of the individual who had custody or access to the forward with the names of individuals authorized to execute purchases and sales of forwards and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
23. Compared information regarding the forward, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information included in the report to the board of directors or appropriate committee thereof and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
24. If the forward should have been included in the monitoring analysis separately tested in step 10 within section 1, "All Derivative Types," compared information regarding the forward, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information in the monitoring analysis and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____

**Effectiveness of Forward Contracts  
Used As Hedges and in Replication  
Transactions**

25. Read the insurance company's documentation of effectiveness and found that the insurance company evaluated the effectiveness of the forward as a hedge or replication in accordance with the policies regarding effectiveness.	_____	_____	_____
26. If the forward was no longer effective as a hedge or replication, compared the action taken by the insurance company with the action required by the accounting policies and procedures and found that the action taken was consistent with the accounting policy.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b>Legal Review</b>			
27. Read documentation indicating that the legal department reviewed the forward contract to assess contract compliance with the DUP and enforceability.	_____	_____	_____
28. Read documentation indicating that the legal department updated its assessment of contract enforceability at least annually.	_____	_____	_____
<b>Valuation</b>			
29. Obtained the insurance company's policies and procedures for valuing forwards and found that the insurance company determined the fair value of the forward in accordance with the policy described in the insurance company's procedures for valuation of forwards.	_____	_____	_____
30. Read documentation supporting the fair value of the forward contract and found that the fair value was either (a) obtained from an independent source, (b) checked against an independent source, or (c) calculated internally by an authorized individual.	_____	_____	_____

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<u>Procedure Number</u>	<u>Description of Exception</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Section 6—Futures Contracts**

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
Performed the following procedures on selected futures contracts to test internal control over futures transactions. Selected five percent of each type of futures transaction, with the selections distributed throughout the year. These are purchases, sales, and cash settlements (closeouts of a position). If five percent of a given type of transaction exceeded 40, the number of items selected for that type of transaction was limited to 40. If five percent of a type of transaction resulted in less than four items, selected four or fewer items that represented all of the transactions of that type.			
<b>Reporting</b>			
1. Read the insurance company's derivative use plan (DUP) and any amendments thereto and found that the DUP permits the insurance company to trade futures.	_____	_____	_____
2. For each futures transaction selected for testing, read management's documentation describing the intended use of the futures and performed the following procedures, as applicable.	_____	_____	_____
For futures used as a hedge—			
3. Determined that the documentation describes the following:			
a. The risk hedged	_____	_____	_____
b. How the hedge was consistent with the overall risk management strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the futures position was expected to be effective in offsetting the exposure	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the hedge	_____	_____	_____

<i><b>Procedures</b></i>	<i><b>Findings</b></i>		
	<i><b>No Exception</b></i>	<i><b>Exception</b></i>	<i><b>N/A</b></i>
4. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The purpose(s) of the futures as a hedge	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the futures transaction and the name of the exchange and firm(s) handling the trade	_____	_____	_____
c. The assets or liabilities (or portion thereof) that the futures transaction hedged	_____	_____	_____
d. Evidence that the futures contract continued to be an effective hedge	_____	_____	_____
e. Evidence that the futures position was consistent with the insurance company's parameters, as specified in the DUP or applicable company policies and procedures for futures transactions; for example, the notional amount or underlying	_____	_____	_____
For futures transactions that were an exact offset of an outstanding futures transaction—			
5. Read documentation indicating that the futures transaction offset an outstanding futures position previously purchased or sold by the insurer and that the futures transaction was an exact offset of the market risk of the futures position being offset.	_____	_____	_____
For futures used in a replication transaction—			
6. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. How the replication was consistent with the overall management investment strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the futures position was expected to be effective in replicating the investment characteristics of the replicated investment	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the replication transaction	_____	_____	_____

<b><u>Procedures</u></b>	<b><u>Findings</u></b>		
	<b><u>No Exception</u></b>	<b><u>Exception</u></b>	<b><u>N/A</u></b>
7. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The instruments used in the replication and the investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the futures transaction and the name of the exchange and the firm(s) handling the trade	_____	_____	_____
c. The specific futures contract used in the replication	_____	_____	_____
For all selected futures including those that are a part of the replication transaction—			
8. Obtained a list of individuals, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof, who had the authority to authorize futures trades. Compared the name of the individual who authorized the futures transaction with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
9. Based on the details of the transaction identified in procedure 2 and company policy, compared the terms of the transaction with the insurance company's policy regarding the requirement for the board of directors or a committee thereof to authorize the specific transaction tested; for example, a transaction in which the notional amount exceeded a limit requiring additional approval. If the board of directors or a committee thereof was required to approve the transaction, read minutes of the board of directors or a committee thereof or other appropriate support and found evidence of approval of the transaction tested.	_____	_____	_____
10. Obtained a list of individuals authorized by the board of directors or committee thereof to trade futures contracts. Compared the name of the individual who executed the purchase or sale of the futures contract with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<i><u>Procedures</u></i>	<i><u>Findings</u></i>		
	<i><u>No Exception</u></i>	<i><u>Exception</u></i>	<i><u>N/A</u></i>
11. Obtained a list of individuals authorized to approve settlements or disbursements related to futures transactions. For purchases and transactions subsequent to purchase or sale of the futures contract, compared the name of the individual who approved any settlement of funds relating to the futures with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
12. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the futures with the name of the individual who approved entering into the contract and found that the names were different.	_____	_____	_____
13. Compared the name of the individual who received cash or other consideration in connection with the futures with the name of the individual who entered into the contract and found that the names of the individuals were different.	_____	_____	_____
14. Obtained the deal ticket and confirmation for the purchase, expiration, or sale of the futures contracts and found that the purchase, sale, or expiration of the futures contract was confirmed by the deal ticket and confirmation.	_____	_____	_____
15. Compared the terms of the futures transaction, as stated on the deal ticket and confirmation, with the terms of the transaction recorded in the insurance company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
16. Obtained documentation for one reporting period, (for example, monthly or quarterly), that the insurance company determined that its accounting records for futures, tested in procedure 15, agreed with or reconciled to the related control account, (for example, the subsidiary ledger to the general ledger).	_____	_____	_____

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
17. For one reporting period, (for example, monthly or quarterly), obtained the insurance company's documentation of the existence of the futures contracts and found that the insurance company obtained statements from the futures counterparty(ies) or broker(s) confirming the futures transactions and positions.	_____	_____	_____
18. Compared information regarding the futures contract, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information included in the report to the board of directors or appropriate committee thereof and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
19. If the futures position should have been included in the monitoring analysis separately tested in procedure 10 within section 1, "All Derivative Types," compared information regarding the futures contract, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information in the monitoring analysis and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____

**Effectiveness of Futures Used  
As Hedges and in Replication  
Transactions**

20. Read the insurance company's documentation of effectiveness and found that the insurance company evaluated the effectiveness of the futures position as a hedge or replication in accordance with the policies regarding effectiveness.	_____	_____	_____
21. If the futures position was no longer effective as a hedge or replication, compared the action taken by the insurance company with the action required by the company policies and procedures and found that the action taken was consistent with the accounting policy.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b>Valuation</b>			
22. Obtained the insurance company’s policies and procedures for valuing positions and found that the insurance company determined the valuation of the futures contract in accordance with the policy described in the insurance company’s procedures for valuation of futures.	_____	_____	_____
23. Read documentation supporting the market price of the futures contract and found that the market price was obtained from an independent source.	_____	_____	_____

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<u>Procedure Number</u>	<u>Description of Exception</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

## Section 7—Option Contracts

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
Performed the following procedures on selected option contracts to test internal control over option transactions. Selected five percent of each type of option transaction (that is, purchases, sales, expirations, and exercises), with the selections distributed throughout the year. If five percent of a given type of transaction exceeded 40, the number of items selected for that type of transaction was limited to 40. If five percent of a type of transaction resulted in less than four items, selected four or fewer items that represented all of the transactions of that type.			
<b>Reporting</b>			
1. Read the insurance company's derivative use plan (DUP) and any amendments thereto and found that the DUP permits the insurance company to trade or enter into option contracts.	_____	_____	_____
2. For each option selected for testing, read management's documentation describing the intended use of the option and performed the following procedures, as applicable.	_____	_____	_____
For options used as a hedge—			
3. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The risk hedged	_____	_____	_____
b. How the hedge was consistent with the overall risk management strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the option was expected to be effective in offsetting the exposure	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the hedge	_____	_____	_____

<i>Procedures</i>	<i>Findings</i>		
	<i>No Exception</i>	<i>Exception</i>	<i>N/A</i>
4. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The purpose(s) of the option as a hedge	_____	_____	_____
b. For over-the-counter (OTC) options, the terms of the option, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
c. For exchange-traded options, the term of the option, the name of the exchange, and the name of the firm(s) handling the trade	_____	_____	_____
d. The assets or liabilities (or portion thereof) that the option hedged	_____	_____	_____
e. For OTC and exchange-traded options, the specific option used in the hedge	_____	_____	_____
f. Evidence that the option continued to be an effective hedge	_____	_____	_____
g. Evidence that the option was consistent with the insurance company's parameters, as specified in the DUP or applicable company policies and procedures, for entering into hedge transactions; for example, the notional amount, or underlying	_____	_____	_____
If the option transaction was (a) for income generation and was for the sale of a call option on securities or (b) an exact offset to an outstanding option—			
5. Read the documentation supporting the transaction which indicated that the insurance company was holding or could immediately acquire through the exercise of options, warrants, or conversion rights already owned, the underlying securities during the entire period the option was outstanding.	_____	_____	_____
6. Read documentation indicating that the option offset an outstanding option previously purchased or sold by the insurance company and that the option was an exact offset to the market risk of the option being offset.	_____	_____	_____

<b><u>Procedures</u></b>	<b><u>Findings</u></b>		
	<b><u>No Exception</u></b>	<b><u>Exception</u></b>	<b><u>N/A</u></b>
For options used in a replication transaction—			
7. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. How the replication was consistent with the overall management investment strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the option was expected to be effective in replicating the investment characteristics of the replicated investment	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the replication transaction	_____	_____	_____
8. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The instruments used in the replication and the investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. The specific option used in the replication	_____	_____	_____
c. For OTC options, the terms of the option, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
d. For exchange-traded options, the name of the exchange and the firm(s) handling the trade	_____	_____	_____
For all selected options, including those that are a part of a replication transaction—			
9. Obtained a list of individuals, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof, who had the authority to authorize option transactions. Compared the name of the individual who authorized the option transaction with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<i><b>Procedures</b></i>	<i><b>Findings</b></i>		
	<i><b>No Exception</b></i>	<i><b>Exception</b></i>	<i><b>N/A</b></i>
10. Based on the details of the transaction identified in procedure 2 and company policy, compared the terms of the transaction with the insurance company's policy regarding the requirement for the board of directors or a committee thereof to authorize the specific transaction tested; for example, a transaction in which the notional amount exceeded a limit requiring additional approval. If the board of directors or a committee thereof was required to approve the transaction, read minutes of the board of directors or a committee thereof or other appropriate support and found evidence of approval of the transaction tested.	_____	_____	_____
11. Obtained a list of <i>qualified</i> and <i>nonqualified</i> counterparties, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof. Compared the name of the counterparty involved in the option transaction with names on the list and found the name of the counterparty on the respective qualified or nonqualified list.	_____	_____	_____
12. For OTC options, determined that the counterparty was listed as qualified or nonqualified in the analysis used for monitoring the insurance company's limitations on counterparty exposure consistent with the classification in the listing obtained in procedure 11.	_____	_____	_____
13. Obtained a list of individuals authorized by the board of directors or committee thereof to trade option contracts. Compared the name of the individual who executed the purchase, sale, or exercise of the option with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
14. Obtained a list of individuals authorized to approve payments relating to options contracts. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the option with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<b><i>Procedures</i></b>	<b><i>Findings</i></b>		
	<b><i>No Exception</i></b>	<b><i>Exception</i></b>	<b><i>N/A</i></b>
15. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the option with the name of the individual who approved entering into the contract and found that the names were different.	_____	_____	_____
16. Compared the name of the individual who received cash or other consideration in connection with the option with the name of the individual who entered into the contract and found that the names of the individuals were different.	_____	_____	_____
17. Obtained the deal ticket and confirmation for the purchase, sale, or exercise of the option and found that the purchase, sale, or exercise of the option was confirmed by the counterparty or firm handling the transaction.	_____	_____	_____
18. Compared the name of the individual who received the deal ticket and confirmation with the names on a list of individuals authorized to trade options and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
19. Compared the terms of the option contract, as stated on the deal ticket and confirmation, with the terms of the option contract recorded in the insurance company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
20. Obtained documentation for one reporting period, (for example, monthly or quarterly), indicating that the insurance company determined whether its accounting records for options, tested in procedure 19, agreed with or reconciled to the related control account, (for example, the subsidiary ledger to the general ledger).	_____	_____	_____
21. Obtained the accounting record documenting modifications, if any, to the option transaction. Compared the name of the individual who approved the modification with a list of individuals authorized to approve modifications and found the name of the individual who approved the modification on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<i><b>Procedures</b></i>	<i><b>Findings</b></i>		
	<i><b>No Exception</b></i>	<i><b>Exception</b></i>	<i><b>N/A</b></i>
22. Obtained documentation for one reporting period, (for example, monthly or quarterly), indicating that the insurance company obtained a statement from the counterparty confirming the existence of the option position.	_____	_____	_____
23. Using the list of authorized traders obtained in procedure 13, compared the name of the individual who had custody of or access to the option documentation with the names of individuals authorized to purchase, sell, or exercise the option and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
24. Compared information regarding the option, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information included in the report to the board of directors or appropriate committee thereof and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
25. If the option should have been included in the monitoring analysis separately tested in procedure 10 within section 1, “All Derivative Types,” compared information regarding the option, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information in the monitoring analysis and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____

**Effectiveness of Options Used As  
Hedges and in Replication Transactions**

26. Read the insurance company’s documentation of effectiveness and found that the insurance company evaluated the effectiveness of the option as a hedge or replication in accordance with the policies regarding effectiveness.	_____	_____	_____
27. If the option was no longer effective as a hedge or replication, compared the action taken by the insurance company with the action required by the accounting policies and procedures and found that the action taken was consistent with the accounting policy.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No</u> <u>Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>

**Legal Review**

- |   |       |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|-------|
| 28. Read documentation indicating that the legal department reviewed the option agreement to assess contract compliance with the DUP and enforceability.  | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 29. Read documentation indicating that the legal department updated its assessment of legal enforceability of the OTC option agreement at least annually. | _____ | _____ | _____ |

**Valuation**

- |   |       |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|-------|
| 30. Obtained the insurance company's policies and procedures for valuing options and found that the insurance company determined the fair value of OTC options and the market price of exchange-traded options, in accordance with the policy described in the insurance company's procedures for the valuation of options. | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 31. Read documentation supporting the fair value for OTC options and the market price of exchange-traded options and found that the fair value or market value was either (a) obtained from an independent source, (b) checked against an independent source, or (c) calculated internally by an authorized individual.     | _____ | _____ | _____ |

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<u>Procedure Number</u>	<u>Description of Exception</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Section 8—Swap Contracts

Procedures

Performed the following procedures on selected swap contracts to test internal control over swap transactions. Selected five percent of each type of swap transaction (that is, executions [purchases] and closeouts [sales]), with the selections distributed throughout the year. If five percent of a given type of transaction exceeded 40, the number of items selected for that type of transaction was limited to 40. If five percent of a type of transaction resulted in fewer than four items, selected four or fewer items that represented all the transactions of that type.

*Findings*

<u>No</u>		
<u>Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>

**Reporting**

1. Read the insurance company’s derivative use plan (DUP) and any amendments thereto and found that the DUP permits the insurance company to enter into swap agreements.
2. For each swap agreement selected for testing, read management’s documentation describing the intended use of the swap agreement and performed the following procedures, as applicable.

_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

For swaps used as a hedge—

3. Determined that the documentation describes the following:
  - a. The risk hedged
  - b. How the hedge was consistent with the overall risk management strategy
  - c. How the swap was expected to be effective in offsetting the exposure
  - d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the hedge

_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
4. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The purpose(s) of the swap as a hedge	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the swap, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
c. The assets or liabilities (or portion thereof) that the swap hedged	_____	_____	_____
d. Evidence that the swap continued to be an effective hedge	_____	_____	_____
e. Evidence that the swap was consistent with the insurance company's parameters, as specified in the DUP or applicable policies and procedures, for entering into swap agreements; for example, the notional amount or underlying	_____	_____	_____
For swaps that were an exact offset of an outstanding swap—			
5. Read documentation that indicated that the swap offset a swap previously purchased or sold, and that the swap was an exact offset to the market risk of the swap being offset.	_____	_____	_____
For swaps used in a replication transaction—			
6. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. How the replication was consistent with the overall management investment strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the swap was expected to be effective in replicating the investment characteristic of the replicated investment	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the replication transaction	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
7. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The instruments used in the replication and the investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the swap, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
For all selected swaps including those that are a part of a replication transaction—			
8. Obtained a list of individuals, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof who had the authority to authorize swap transactions. Compared the name of the individual who authorized the swap transaction with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
9. Based on the details of the transaction identified in procedure 2 and company policy, compared the terms of the transaction with the insurance company's policy regarding the requirement for the board of directors or a committee thereof to authorize the specific transactions tested; for example, a transaction in which the notional amount exceeded a limit requiring additional approval. If the board of directors or a committee thereof was required to approve the transaction, read minutes of the board of directors or a committee thereof or other appropriate support and found evidence of approval of the transaction tested.	_____	_____	_____
10. Obtained a list of <i>qualified</i> and <i>nonqualified</i> counterparties, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof. Compared the name of the counterparty involved in the swap agreement with names on the list and found the name of the counterparty on the respective qualified or non-qualified list.	_____	_____	_____

<b><u>Procedures</u></b>	<b><u>Findings</u></b>		
	<b><u>No Exception</u></b>	<b><u>Exception</u></b>	<b><u>N/A</u></b>
11. Determined that the counterparty was listed as qualified or nonqualified in the analysis used for monitoring the insurance company's limitations on counterparty exposure consistent with the classification in the listing obtained in procedure 10.	_____	_____	_____
12. Obtained a list of individuals authorized by the board of directors or committee thereof to trade swap contracts. Compared the name of the individual who executed the swap with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
13. Obtained a list of individuals authorized to approve settlements or disbursements related to swaps. For purchases and any interim settlements or closeouts of the swap subsequent to purchase, compared the name of the individual who approved any settlement of funds relating to the swap with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
14. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the swap with the name of the individual who approved entering into the contract and found that the names were different.	_____	_____	_____
15. Compared the name of the individual who received cash or other consideration in connection with the swap with the name of the individual who entered into the contract and found that the names of the individuals were different.	_____	_____	_____
16. Obtained the deal ticket and confirmation for the purchase, execution, or closeout of the swap and found that the purchase, execution, or closeout of the swap was confirmed by the counterparty.	_____	_____	_____
17. Compared the name of the individual who received the deal ticket and confirmation with the names on a list of individuals authorized to trade swaps and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<i><u>Procedures</u></i>	<i><u>Findings</u></i>		
	<i><u>No Exception</u></i>	<i><u>Exception</u></i>	<i><u>N/A</u></i>
18. Compared the terms of the swap contract, as stated on the deal ticket and confirmation, with the terms of the swap contract recorded in the insurance company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
19. Obtained documentation for one reporting period (for example, monthly, or quarterly), that the insurance company determined whether its accounting records for swaps, tested in procedure 18, agreed with or reconciled to the related control account, (for example, the subsidiary ledger to the general ledger).	_____	_____	_____
20. Obtained the accounting record documenting modifications, if any, to the swap agreement. Compared the name of the individual who approved the modification with a list of individuals authorized to approve modifications and found the name of the individual who approved the modification on the list.	_____	_____	_____
21. Compared the terms of the swap agreement recorded in the insurance company's accounting records with the terms shown in the executed copy of the swap agreement and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
22. Using the list of authorized traders obtained in procedure 12, compared the name of the individual who had custody or access to the swap agreement with the names of individuals authorized to execute swap agreements and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
23. Compared information regarding the swap, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information included in the report to the board of directors or appropriate committee thereof and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____

<b><u>Procedures</u></b>	<b><u>Findings</u></b>		
	<b><u>No Exception</u></b>	<b><u>Exception</u></b>	<b><u>N/A</u></b>
24. If the swap should have been included in the monitoring analysis separately tested in procedure 10 within section 1, "All Derivative Types," compared information regarding the swap, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information in the monitoring analysis and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
25. Read accounting documentation indicating that the insurance company monitored periodic cash settlements related to swap transactions, meaning, the insurance company had controls in place to determine that periodic cash settlements, if any, were received.	_____	_____	_____

### **Effectiveness of Swaps Used As Hedges and in Replication Transactions**

26. Read the insurance company's documentation of effectiveness and found that the insurance company evaluated the effectiveness of the swap as a hedge or replication in accordance with the policies regarding effectiveness.	_____	_____	_____
27. If the swap was no longer effective as a hedge or replication, compared the action taken by the insurance company with the action required by the accounting policies and procedures and found that the action taken was consistent with the accounting policy.	_____	_____	_____

### **Legal Review**

28. Read documentation indicating that the legal department reviewed the swap agreement to assess contract compliance with the DUP and enforceability.	_____	_____	_____
29. Read documentation indicating that the legal department updated its assessment of the enforceability of the swap agreement at least annually.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b>Valuation</b>			
30. Obtained the insurance company’s policies and procedures for valuing swaps and found that the insurance company determined the fair value of the swap in accordance with the policy described in the insurance company’s procedures for valuation of swaps.	_____	_____	_____
31. Read documentation supporting the fair value of the swap and found that the fair value was either (a) obtained from an independent source, (b) checked against an independent source, or (c) calculated internally by an authorized individual.	_____	_____	_____

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<u>Procedure Number</u>	<u>Description of Exception</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**Section 9—Swaption Contracts**

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
<p>Performed the following procedures on selected swaption contracts to test internal control over swaption transactions. Selected five percent of each type of swaption transaction with the selections distributed throughout the year. These are executions (purchases) and closeouts (sales). If five percent of a given type of transaction exceeded 40, the number of items selected for that type of transaction was limited to 40. If five percent of a type of transaction resulted in less than four items, selected four or fewer items that represented all the transactions of that type.</p>			
<b>Reporting</b>			
1. Read the insurance company's derivative use plan (DUP) and any amendments thereto and found that the DUP permits the insurance company to buy or sell swaptions.	_____	_____	_____
2. For each swaption contract selected for testing, read management's documentation describing the intended use of the swaption and performed the following procedures, as applicable.	_____	_____	_____
For swaptions used as a hedge—			
3. Determined that the documentation describes the following:			
a. The risk hedged	_____	_____	_____
b. How the hedge was consistent with the overall risk management strategy	_____	_____	_____
c. How the swaption was expected to be effective in offsetting the exposure	_____	_____	_____
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the hedge	_____	_____	_____

<i>Procedures</i>	<i>Findings</i>		
	<i>No Exception</i>	<i>Exception</i>	<i>N/A</i>
4. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The purpose(s) of the swaption as a hedge			
b. The terms of the swaption, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount			
c. The assets or liabilities (or portion thereof) that the swaption hedged			
d. Evidence that the swaption continued to be an effective hedge			
e. Evidence that the swaption was consistent with the insurance company's parameters, as specified in the DUP or applicable policies and procedures, for entering into swaption agreements; for example, the notional amount or underlying			
For swaptions that were an exact offset of an outstanding swaption—			
5. Read documentation indicating that the swaption offset an outstanding swaption and that the swaption was an exact offset of the market risk of the swaption being offset.			
For swaptions used in a replication transaction—			
6. Determined that the documentation described the following:			
a. The investment type and characteristics replicated			
b. How the replication was consistent with the overall management investment strategy			
c. How the swaption was expected to be effective in replicating the investment characteristic of the replicated investment			
d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the replication transaction			

<b><u>Procedures</u></b>	<b><u>Findings</u></b>		
	<b><u>No Exception</u></b>	<b><u>Exception</u></b>	<b><u>N/A</u></b>
7. Determined that the following items were documented:			
a. The instruments used in the replication and the investment type and characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
b. The terms of the swaption, the name of the counterparty, and the counterparty exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
For all selected swaptions including those that are a part of a replication transaction—			
8. Obtained a list of individuals, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof, who had the authority to authorize swaptions. Compared the name of the individual who authorized the swaption transaction with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
9. Based on the details of the transaction identified in procedure 2 and company policy, compared the terms of the transaction with the insurance company's policy regarding the requirement for the board of directors or a committee thereof to authorize the specific transactions tested; for example, a transaction in which the notional amount exceeded a limit requiring additional approval. If the board of directors or a committee thereof was required to approve the transaction, read minutes of the board of directors or a committee thereof or other appropriate support and found evidence of approval of the transaction tested.	_____	_____	_____
10. Obtained a list of qualified and nonqualified counterparties, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof. Compared the name of the counterparty involved in the swaption transaction with names on the list and found the name of the counterparty on the respective qualified or nonqualified list.	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
11. Determined that the counterparty was listed as qualified or nonqualified in the analysis used for monitoring the insurance company's limitations on counterparty exposure consistent with the classification in the listing obtained in procedure 10.	_____	_____	_____
12. Obtained a list of individuals authorized by the board of directors or committee thereof to trade swaption contracts. Compared the name of the individual who executed the swaption with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
13. Obtained a list of individuals authorized to approve settlements or disbursements related to swaption agreements. Compared the name of the individual who approved settlements and disbursements relating to the swaption with the names on the list and found the name on the list.	_____	_____	_____
14. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the swaption with the name of the individual who approved entering into the contract and found that the names were different.	_____	_____	_____
15. Compared the name of the individual who received cash or other consideration in connection with the swaption with the name of the individual who entered into the contract and found that the names of the individuals were different.	_____	_____	_____
16. Obtained the deal ticket and confirmation for the purchase, sale, modification, or closeout of the swaption and found that the purchase, sale, modification, or closeout was confirmed by the counterparty.	_____	_____	_____
17. Compared the name of the individual who received the deal ticket and confirmation with the names on a list of individuals authorized to trade swaptions and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
18. Compared the terms of the swaption contract, as stated on the deal ticket and confirmation, with the terms of the swaption contract recorded in the insurance company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
19. Obtained documentation for one reporting period (for example, monthly or quarterly), that the insurance company determined whether its accounting records for swaptions, tested in procedure 18, agreed with or reconciled to the related control account, (for example, the subsidiary ledger to the general ledger).	_____	_____	_____
20. Obtained the accounting record documenting modifications, if any, to the swaption agreement. Compared the name of the individual who approved the modification with a list of individuals authorized to approve modifications and found the name of the individual who approved the modification on the list.	_____	_____	_____
21. Compared the terms of the swaption agreement recorded in the insurance company's accounting records with the terms shown in the executed copy of the swaption agreement and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
22. Using the list of authorized traders obtained in procedure 12, compared the name of the individual who had custody or access to the swaption agreement with the names of individuals authorized to execute swaption agreements and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
23. Compared information regarding the swaption, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information included in the report to the board of directors or appropriate committee thereof and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____

<i>Procedures</i>	<i>Findings</i>		
	<i>No Exception</i>	<i>Exception</i>	<i>N/A</i>
24. If the swaption should have been included in the monitoring analysis separately tested in procedure 10 within section 1, "All Derivative Types," compared information regarding the swaption, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information in the monitoring analysis and found them to be in agreement.			
<b>Effectiveness of Swaptions Used As Hedges and in Replication Transactions</b>			
25. Read the insurance company's documentation of effectiveness and found that the insurance company evaluated the effectiveness of the swaption as a hedge or replication in accordance with the policies regarding effectiveness.			
26. If the swaption was no longer effective as a hedge or replication, compared the action taken by the insurance company with the action required by the accounting policies and procedures and found that the action taken was consistent with the accounting policy.			
<b>Legal Review</b>			
27. Read documentation indicating that the legal department reviewed the swaption agreement to assess contract compliance with the DUP and enforceability.			
28. Read documentation indicating that the legal department updated its assessment of the enforceability of the swaption agreement at least annually.			
<b>Valuation</b>			
29. Obtained the insurance company's policies and procedures for valuing swaptions and found that the insurance company determined the fair value of the swaption in accordance with the policy described in the insurance company's procedures for valuation of swaptions.			

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
30. Read documentation supporting the fair value of the swaption and found that the fair value was either (a) obtained from an independent source, (b) checked against an independent source, or (c) calculated internally by an authorized individual.			

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<u><b>Procedure Number</b></u>	<u><b>Description of Exception</b></u>

Section 10—Warrant Contracts

Procedures

Performed the following procedures on selected warrant contracts to test internal control over warrant transactions. Selected five percent of each type of warrant transaction (that is, purchases, sales, expirations, and exercises), with the selections distributed throughout the year. If five percent of a given type of transaction exceeded 40, the number of items selected for that type of transaction was limited to 40. If five percent of a type of transaction resulted in less than four items, selected four or fewer items that represented all of the transactions of that type.

*Findings*

<i>No Exception</i>	<i>Exception</i>	<i>N/A</i>
-------------------------	------------------	------------

**Reporting**

1. Read the insurance company’s derivative use plan (DUP) and any amendments thereto and found that the DUP permits the insurance company to trade or enter into warrant contracts.
2. For each warrant selected for testing, read management’s documentation describing the intended use of the warrant and performed the following procedures, as applicable.

_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

For warrants used as a hedge—

3. Determined that the documentation described the following:
  - a. The risk hedged
  - b. How the hedge was consistent with the overall risk management strategy
  - c. How the warrant was expected to be effective in offsetting the exposure
  - d. The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the hedge

_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No</u> <u>Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
4. Determined that the following items were documented:			
The purpose(s) of the warrant as a			
a. hedge	_____	_____	_____
For exchange-traded warrants, the			
term of the warrant, the name of			
the exchange, and the name of the			
b. firm(s) handling the trade	_____	_____	_____
For over-the-counter (OTC)			
warrants, the terms of the			
warrant, the name of the			
counterparty, and the counterparty			
c. exposure amount	_____	_____	_____
The assets or liabilities (or portion			
d. thereof) that the warrant hedged	_____	_____	_____
Evidence that the warrant			
e. continued to be an effective hedge	_____	_____	_____
f. Evidence that the warrant was			
consistent with the insurance			
company's parameters, as specified			
in the DUP or applicable company			
policies and procedures for			
entering into hedge transactions;			
for example, the notional amount			
or underlying	_____	_____	_____
If the warrant transaction was an exact			
offset of an outstanding warrant—			
5. Read documentation indicating that			
the warrant transaction offset an			
outstanding warrant previously			
purchased or sold by the insurance			
company and that the warrant was an			
exact offset of the market risk of the			
warrant being offset	_____	_____	_____
For warrants used in a replication			
transaction—			
6. Determined that the documentation			
described the following:			
The investment type and			
a. characteristics replicated	_____	_____	_____
How the replication was consistent			
with the overall management			
b. investment strategy	_____	_____	_____
How the warrant was expected to			
be effective in replicating the			
investment characteristics of the			
c. replicated investment	_____	_____	_____

(continued)

<i><b><u>Procedures</u></b></i>	<i><b><u>Findings</u></b></i>		
	<i><b><u>No</u></b></i> <i><b><u>Exception</u></b></i>	<i><b><u>Exception</u></b></i>	<i><b><u>N/A</u></b></i>
The approach in assessing the effectiveness of the replication			
d. transaction			
7. Determined that the following items were documented:			
The instruments used in the replication and the investment			
a. type and characteristics replicated			
The specific warrant used in the			
b. replication			
For exchange-traded warrants, the name of the exchange and the			
c. firm(s) handling the trade			
For OTC warrants, the terms of the warrant, the name of the			
counterparty, and the counterparty			
d. exposure amount			
For all selected warrants including those that are part of a replication transaction—			
8. Obtained a list of individuals, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof who had the authority to authorize warrant transactions. Compared the name of the individual who authorized the warrant transaction with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.			
9. Based on the details of the transaction identified in procedure 2 and company policy, compared the terms of the transaction with the insurance company's policy regarding the requirement for the board of directors or a committee thereof to authorize the specific transaction tested; for example, a transaction in which the notional amount exceeded a limit requiring additional approval. If the board of directors or a committee thereof was required to approve the transaction, read minutes of the board of directors or a committee thereof or other appropriate support, and found evidence of approval of the transaction tested.			

<u><b>Procedures</b></u>	<u><b>Findings</b></u>		
	<u><b>No Exception</b></u>	<u><b>Exception</b></u>	<u><b>N/A</b></u>
10. Obtained a list of <i>qualified</i> and <i>nonqualified</i> counterparties, approved by the board of directors or a committee thereof. Compared the name of the counterparty involved in the warrant transaction with names on the list, and found the name of the counterparty on the respective qualified or nonqualified list.	_____	_____	_____
11. For OTC warrants, determined that the counterparty was listed as qualified or nonqualified in the analysis used for monitoring the insurance company's limitations on counterparty exposure, consistent with the classification in the listing obtained in procedure 10.	_____	_____	_____
12. Obtained a list of individuals authorized by the board of directors or committee thereof to trade warrant contracts. Compared the name of the individual who executed the purchase, sale, or exercise of the warrant with the names on the list and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
13. Obtained a list of individuals authorized to approve payments related to warrant contracts. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the warrant with the names on the list, and found the name of the individual on the list.	_____	_____	_____
14. Compared the name of the individual who approved any payment relating to the warrant with the name of the individual who approved entering into the contract and found that the names were different.	_____	_____	_____
15. Compared the name of the individual who received cash or other consideration in connection with the warrant with the name of the individual who entered into the contract and found that the names of the individuals were different.	_____	_____	_____

<i><u>Procedures</u></i>	<i><u>Findings</u></i>		
	<i><u>No Exception</u></i>	<i><u>Exception</u></i>	<i><u>N/A</u></i>
16. Obtained the deal ticket and confirmation for the purchase, sale, or exercise of an exchange-traded warrant and found that the purchase, sale, or exercise was confirmed by the firm handling the transaction.	_____	_____	_____
17. Compared the name of the individual who received the deal ticket and confirmation with the names on a list of individuals authorized to trade warrants and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
18. Compared the terms of the warrant contract, as stated on the deal ticket and confirmation, with the terms of the warrant contract recorded in the insurance company's accounting records and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
19. Obtained documentation for one reporting period, (for example, monthly or quarterly), that the insurance company determined whether its accounting records for warrants, tested in procedure 18, agreed with or reconciled to the related control account, (for example, the subsidiary ledger to the general ledger).	_____	_____	_____
20. Obtained the accounting record documenting modifications, if any, to the warrant transaction. Compared the name of the individual who approved the modification with a list of individuals authorized to approve modifications and found the name of the individual who approved the modification on the list.	_____	_____	_____
21. For one reporting period, (for example, monthly or quarterly), obtained the insurance company's documentation of the existence of the warrant contract and found that the insurance company either (a) obtained statements from the custodian confirming the existence of the warrant contracts or (b) physically inventoried the warrant contracts.	_____	_____	_____

<b><u>Procedures</u></b>	<b><u>Findings</u></b>		
	<b><u>No Exception</u></b>	<b><u>Exception</u></b>	<b><u>N/A</u></b>
22. Using the list of authorized traders obtained in procedure 12, compared the name of the individual who had custody of or access to the warrant contracts with the names of individuals authorized to execute purchases, sales, or exercises of warrants and found that the name was not on the list.	_____	_____	_____
23. Compared information regarding the warrant, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information included in the report to the board of directors or appropriate committee thereof and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
24. If the warrant position should have been included in the monitoring analysis separately tested in procedure 10 of section 1, "All Derivative Types," compared information regarding the warrant, such as type of derivative, notional amount, and fair value, with the comparable information in the monitoring analysis and found them to be in agreement.	_____	_____	_____
<b>Effectiveness of Warrants Used As Hedges and in Replication Transactions</b>			
25. Read the insurance company's documentation of effectiveness and found that the insurance company evaluated the effectiveness of the warrant as a hedge or replication in accordance with the policies regarding effectiveness.	_____	_____	_____
26. If the warrant was no longer effective as a hedge or replication, compared the action taken by the insurance company with the action required by the accounting policies and procedures and found that the action taken was consistent with the accounting policy.	_____	_____	_____

(continued)

<i><b>Procedures</b></i>	<i><b><u>Findings</u></b></i>		
	<i><b><u>No</u></b></i>	<i><b><u>Exception</u></b></i>	<i><b><u>N/A</u></b></i>
<b>Legal Review</b>			
27. Read documentation indicating that the legal department reviewed a nonexchange traded warrant agreement to assess contract compliance with the DUP and enforceability.	_____	_____	_____
28. Read documentation indicating that the legal department updated its assessment of enforceability of the nonexchange traded warrant agreement at least annually.	_____	_____	_____
<b>Valuation</b>			
29. Obtained the insurance company's policies and procedures for valuing warrants and found that the insurance company determined the fair value of the warrant in accordance with the policy described in the insurance company's procedures for the valuation of warrants	_____	_____	_____
30. Read documentation supporting the fair value of warrants and found that the fair value was either (a) obtained from an independent source, (b) checked against an independent source, or (c) calculated internally by an authorized individual.	_____	_____	_____

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

<i><b><u>Procedure Number</u></b></i>	<i><b><u>Description of Exception</u></b></i>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.38

## Appendix C

### Illustrative Management Representation Letter

[Responsible Party's Letterhead]

[Date]

[CPA Firm's Name and Address]

In connection with your engagement to apply the agreed-upon procedures enumerated in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Statement of Position 01-03, *Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements that Address Internal Control Over Derivative Transactions as Required by the New York State Insurance Law*, which were agreed to by management of ABC Insurance Company, solely to assist us in complying with the requirements of Section 1410 (b)(5) of the New York State Insurance Law, as amended (the law), which addresses the assessment of internal control over derivative transactions as defined in Section 1401 (a) of the law and Section 178.6 of Regulation No. 163 during the year ended December 31, 20XX, we confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, the following representations made to you during your engagement:

1. We are responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over derivative transactions in accordance with the law.
2. During the year ended December 31, 20XX, the internal control over derivative transactions was functioning in accordance with the policies and procedures set forth in the Company's derivative use plan (DUP) and related accounting policies and procedures. There have been no errors or fraud that would indicate a weakness in the internal control over derivative transactions.
3. We have disclosed to you all significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the internal control over derivative transactions that would adversely affect the Company's ability to function in accordance with the Company's DUP.
4. There have been no communications from regulatory agencies, internal auditors, or other practitioners or consultants relating to the internal control over derivative transactions, including communications received between December 31, 20XX and the date of this letter.
5. We have made available to you all information that we believe is relevant to the internal control over derivative transactions.
6. We have responded fully to all inquiries made to us by you during the engagement.

To the best of our knowledge and belief, no events have occurred subsequent to December 31, 20XX and through the date of this letter that would require adjustment to or modification of the findings of the agreed-upon procedures.

[Signature]

[Title]

[Signature]

[Title]

## Reporting on Controls Over Derivative Transactions at Insurance Entities Task Force

ALBERT J. REZNICEK, *Chair*  
EDWARD F. BADER  
DARRYL BRILEY  
BEN B. KORBLY  
EDWARD J. METZGER

DAVID A. NACHMAN  
PAULA C. PANIK  
ROBERT M. SOLITRO  
MARY TODD STOCKER  
DEBORAH H. WHITMORE

The AICPA is grateful to Jean Connolly, James S. Gerson, Laurel A. Hammer, Jay Matalon, and James M. Yanosy for their technical assistance with this document and also to Michael Moriarty of the New York State Department of Insurance for reviewing this document and providing recommendations.

### AICPA Staff

CHARLES E. LANDES  
*Director*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

JUDITH M. SHERINSKY  
*Technical Manager*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

---

[The next page is 31,621.]

## Section 14,390

# ***Statement of Position 02-1 Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code***

May 23, 2002

### **NOTE**

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretive publication and represents the recommendations of the AICPA's New Jersey Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports Task Force of the Auditing Standards Board (ASB) regarding the application of Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) to agreed-upon procedures engagements performed to comply with the requirements of New Jersey Administrative Code, Title 11, Chapter 22, Subchapter 1 (NJAC 11:22-1 or the Code), which establishes Department of Banking and Insurance (department) standards for the payment of claims relating to health benefits plans and dental plans and contains requirements for carriers to file certain reports with the department relating to the timeliness of claims payments and the reasons for denial and late payment of claims in a format prescribed by the department. The department has approved the use of the agreed-upon procedures outlined in this SOP to comply with the reporting requirements of the Code. The ASB has found the recommendations in this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202, Compliance With Standards (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 202.01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Interpretive publications are not as authoritative as pronouncements of the ASB; however, if a practitioner does not apply the attestation guidance included in this SOP, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the SSAE provisions addressed by this SOP.

## **Introduction and Background**

**.01** New Jersey Administrative Code, Title 11, Chapter 22, Subchapter 1 (NJAC 11:22-1 or the Code), establishes Department of Banking and Insurance (department) standards for the payment of claims relating to health benefits plans and dental plans and contains requirements for carriers to file certain reports with the department relating to the timeliness of claims payments and the reasons for denial and late payment of claims in a format prescribed by the department.

**.02** NJAC 11:22-1 applies to any insurance company, health service corporation, medical service corporation, hospital service corporation, health maintenance organization, dental service corporation, and dental plan organization that issues health benefits plans or dental plans in the state of New

Jersey and to any agent, employee, or other representative of such entity that processes claims for such entity.

**.03** Among other things, the Code requires carriers to report:

- Quarterly to the department on the timeliness of claims payments in the format set forth in Appendix A (claims payment exhibit report) of NJAC 11:22-1, and
- Quarterly and annually on late payments of claims and the reasons for any denials (claims prompt payment report) in the format set forth in Appendix B of NJAC 11:22-1.

**.04** Furthermore, the Code requires that the annual claims prompt payment report, which is due to be filed with the department on or before March 31, pursuant to NJAC 11:22-1.9(a), be accompanied by the report of a private auditing firm, which may be a Certified Public Accountant (CPA) or a firm of CPAs. However, for calendar year 2001, the report of the private auditing firm may be filed with the department on or before July 1, 2002. The department has specified, in Bulletin No. 02-07, that the work shall be conducted, and the report shall be prepared, in accordance with agreed-upon procedures acceptable to the department.

## Applicability

**.05** This Statement of Position (SOP) was developed to provide practitioners with guidance on performing agreed-upon procedures engagements that address annual claims prompt payment reports as required by the New Jersey Administrative Code. The engagement described in this SOP is designed only to satisfy the requirements of the Code. The procedures, as set forth in this SOP, are not necessarily appropriate for use in any other engagement. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## The Code

### Definitions

**.06** The following definitions are reprinted from the Code and are applicable when performing the agreed-upon procedures engagement described in this SOP.

*Agent*—Any entity, including a subsidiary of a carrier, or an organized delivery system as defined by N.J.S.A. 17:48H-1, with which a carrier has contracted to perform claims processing or claims payment services.

*Carrier*—An insurance company, health service corporation, hospital service corporation, medical service corporation or health maintenance organization authorized to issue health benefits plans in this State and a dental service corporation or dental plan organization authorized to issue dental plans in this State.

*Claim*—A request by a covered person, a participating health care provider, or a nonparticipating health care provider who has received an assignment of benefits from the covered person, for payment relating to health care services or supplies or dental services or supplies covered under a health benefits plan or dental plan issued by a carrier.

*Clean claim—*

1. The claim is for a service or supply covered by the health benefits plan or dental plan;
2. The claim is submitted with all the information requested by the carrier on the claim form or in other instructions distributed to the provider or covered person;
3. The person to whom the service or supply was provided was covered by the carrier's health benefits or dental plan on the date of service;
4. The carrier does not reasonably believe that the claim has been submitted fraudulently; and
5. The claim does not require special treatment. For the purposes of this subchapter, special treatment means that unusual claim processing is required to determine whether a service or supply is covered, such as claims involving experimental treatments or newly approved medications. The circumstances requiring special treatment should be documented in the claim file.

*Covered person*—A person on whose behalf a carrier offering the plan is obligated to pay benefits or provide services pursuant to the health benefits or dental plan.

*Covered service or supply*—A service or supply provided to a covered person under a health benefits or dental plan for which the carrier is obligated to pay benefits or provides services or supplies.

*Dental plan*—A benefits plan which pays dental expense benefits or provides dental services and supplies and is delivered or issued for delivery in this State by or through any carrier in this State.

*Department*—The Department of Banking and Insurance.

*Health benefits plan*—A benefits plan that pays hospital and medical expense benefits or provides hospital and medical services, and is delivered or issued for delivery in this State by or through a carrier. Health benefits plan includes, but is not limited to, Medicare supplement coverage and risk contracts to the extent not otherwise prohibited by Federal law. For the purposes of this chapter, health benefits plan shall not include the following plans, policies or contracts: accident only, credit, disability, long-term care, CHAMPUS supplement coverage, coverage arising out of a workers' compensation or similar law, automobile medical payment insurance, personal injury protection insurance issued pursuant to P.L. 1972, c.70 (N.J.S.A. 39:6A-1 et seq.) or hospital confinement indemnity coverage.

*Health care provider or provider*—An individual or entity which, acting within the scope of its license or certification, provides a covered service or supply as defined by the health benefits or dental plan. Health care provider includes, but is not limited to, a physician, dentist and other health care professional licensed pursuant to Title 45 of the Revised Statutes and a hospital and other health care facilities licensed pursuant to Title 26 of the Revised Statutes.

## Reporting Requirements

.07 The Code requires a carrier and its agent to remit payment of clean claims pursuant to specified time frames. The Code further requires that if a

carrier or its agent denies or disputes a claim, in full or in part, the carrier or its agent must, within a specified time frame, notify both the covered person when he or she will have increased responsibility for payment, and the provider, of the basis for its decision to deny or dispute the claim.

**.08** The Code requires a carrier to report to the department quarterly on the timeliness of claims payments in the format prescribed in NJAC 11:22-1, Appendix A, “New Jersey Claims Payment Exhibit.” This quarterly report is not required to be subjected to an agreed-upon procedures engagement, nor is an annual claims payment exhibit report required to be filed with the department.

**.09** The Code also requires a carrier to report to the department on a quarterly and annual basis on the late payment of claims and the reasons for denial of claims in the format prescribed in NJAC 11:22-1, Appendix B, “Quarterly (Annual) Claims Prompt Payment Report.” The Code requires that the annual claims prompt payment report be accompanied by a report of a private auditing firm, which may be a CPA or a firm of CPAs.

**.10** The department has indicated, in Bulletin No. 02-07, that an agreed-upon procedures engagement pursuant to this SOP may be used to satisfy the requirement that an annual claims prompt payment report be accompanied by the report of a private auditing firm. Furthermore, in Bulletin No. 02-12, issued in May 2002, the department has indicated that it agrees to the sufficiency of the procedures included in this SOP for its purposes.

## Related Professional Standards

### AT Section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*

**.11** Agreed-upon procedures engagements performed to meet the requirements of the Code are to be performed in accordance with AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). As described in paragraph .03 of AT section 201 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), an agreed-upon procedures engagement is one in which a practitioner is engaged by a client to issue a report of findings based on specific procedures performed on the subject matter. Not all of the provisions of AT section 201 are discussed herein. Rather, this SOP includes guidance to assist practitioners in the application of selected aspects of AT section 201.

**.12** Chapter 2 of SSAE No. 10 (AT sec. 201.06) states, in part, that the practitioner may perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement provided that, “...(c) the practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed by the practitioner; and (d) the specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes.”

**.13** As previously stated, Bulletin No. 02-07 from the department states that an agreed-upon procedures engagement may be used to meet the requirement for an independent private auditing firm to report on the annual claims prompt payment reports as required by the New Jersey Administrative Code. Furthermore, the department has approved the use of the agreed-upon procedures outlined in this SOP to comply with the reporting requirements of the Code. Accordingly, practitioners should not eliminate any of the procedures presented in appendix B (paragraph .28), “Agreed-Upon Procedures That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code,” of this SOP or reduce the extent of the tests. The department or the carrier may request that additional procedures be performed

and the practitioner may agree to perform such procedures. In those circumstances, it would be expected that the additional procedures would be performed in the context of a separate agreed-upon procedures engagement.

## Procedures to Be Performed

**.14** The agreed-upon procedures to be performed are applied to the carrier's annual claims prompt payment report, which reports on the late payment of claims and reasons for denial of claims in the format prescribed in NJAC 11:22-1, Appendix B.

**.15** The procedures to be performed in the agreed-upon procedures engagement described in this SOP are presented in appendix B (paragraph .28) of this SOP. The procedures have been designed so that the findings resulting from the application of the procedures can be recorded in a tabular format. The three options available to the practitioner for expressing the findings for each procedure are *No Exception*, *Exception*, or *N/A* (not applicable). If a procedure is not applicable to a particular carrier, the procedure should be marked *N/A* rather than deleted from the report. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.16** If any portion of a procedure results in an exception, the findings for that entire procedure should be recorded as an exception and described in the section "Description of Exceptions If Any." The practitioner should provide a brief factual explanation for each exception that will enable the specified parties to understand the nature of the findings resulting in the exception. If management informs the practitioner that the condition giving rise to the exception was corrected by the date of the practitioner's report, the practitioner's explanation of the exception may include that information; for example, "Management has advised us that the condition resulting in the exception was corrected on Month X, 20XX. We have performed no procedures with respect to management's assertion."

**.17** A practitioner may perform significant portions of the agreed-upon procedures engagement before the end of the period covered by the report. If, during that time, the practitioner identifies conditions that result in an exception in one or more agreed-upon procedures, he or she should report the exception in the findings section of the agreed-upon procedures report, even if management corrects the condition prior to the end of the period.

**.18** Paragraph 40 of AT section 201 states the following:

The practitioner need not perform procedures beyond the agreed-upon procedures. However, in connection with the application of agreed-upon procedures, if matters come to the practitioner's attention by other means that significantly contradict the subject matter (or written assertion related thereto) referred to in the practitioner's report, the practitioner should include this matter in his or her report. For example, if, during the course of applying agreed-upon procedures regarding an entity's internal control, the practitioner becomes aware of a material weakness by means other than performance of the agreed-upon procedure, the practitioner should include this matter in his or her report.

**.19** A practitioner has no obligation to perform procedures beyond the agreed-upon procedures included in appendix B (paragraph .28 of this SOP. However, if information that contradicts the information in the carrier's annual claims prompt payment report comes to the practitioner's attention by other

means, such information should be included in the practitioner's report. This also would apply to conditions or events occurring during the subsequent-events period (subsequent to the period covered by the practitioner's report but prior to the date of the practitioner's report) that either contradict the findings in the report or that would have resulted in the reporting of an exception by the practitioner if that condition or event had existed during the period covered by the report. However, the practitioner has no responsibility to perform any procedure to detect such conditions or events.

## Establishing an Understanding With the Client

**.20** In accordance with paragraph 10 of AT section 201, the practitioner should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed. Such an understanding reduces the risk that the client may misinterpret the objectives and limitations of an agreed-upon procedures engagement performed to meet the regulatory requirements of the Code. Such an understanding also reduces the risk that the client will misunderstand its responsibilities and the responsibilities of the practitioner. The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client (an engagement letter). The communication should be addressed to the client. Matters that might be included in such an understanding are the following:

- A statement confirming that an agreed-upon procedures engagement is to be performed to meet the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1
- A statement identifying the procedures to be performed as those set forth in SOP 02-1, *Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code*
- A statement identifying the client and the department as the specified parties to the agreed-upon procedures report
- A statement acknowledging the client's responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures in the SOP and referring to Bulletin No. 02-12, which acknowledges the department's responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures in the SOP
- A statement acknowledging that the practitioner makes no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures in the SOP
- A statement describing the responsibilities of the practitioner, including but not limited to the responsibility to perform the agreed-upon procedures and to provide the client with a report, and the circumstances under which the practitioner may decline to issue a report
- A statement indicating that the engagement will be conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA)
- A statement indicating that an agreed-upon procedures engagement does not constitute an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on the carrier's compliance with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1, and that if an examination were performed, other matters might come to the practitioner's attention
- A statement indicating that the practitioner will not express an opinion or any other form of assurance

- A statement describing the client's responsibility to comply with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1 and the client's responsibility for the information in the carrier's annual claims prompt payment report
- A statement describing the client's responsibility for providing accurate and complete information to the practitioner
- A statement indicating that the practitioner has no responsibility for the completeness or accuracy of the information provided to the practitioner
- A statement restricting the use of the report to the client and the department
- A statement describing any arrangements to involve a specialist

## Management Representations

**.21** Although AT section 201 does not require a practitioner to obtain a representation letter from management in an agreed-upon procedures engagement, when performing the engagement described in this SOP, it is recommended that the practitioner obtain such a letter, and that it generally be signed by the appropriate members of management including the highest-ranking officer responsible for the carrier's compliance with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1. Management's refusal to furnish written representations that the practitioner has determined to be appropriate for the engagement constitutes a limitation on the performance of the engagement that requires either modification of the report or withdrawal from the engagement. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.22** The representations that a practitioner deems appropriate will depend on the specific nature of the engagement; however, they ordinarily include the following representations from management:

- A statement acknowledging responsibility for compliance with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1 and responsibility for the information in the carrier's annual claims prompt payment report
- A statement that there have been no errors or fraud that might indicate that the carrier is not in compliance with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1 and that there are no known matters (or that management has disclosed to the practitioner all known matters) that contradict the information in the carrier's annual claims prompt payment report
- A statement that management has disclosed to the practitioner any communications from regulatory agencies relating to the carrier's annual claims prompt payment report
- A statement that management has made available to the practitioner all information it believes is relevant to the carrier's annual claims prompt payment report
- A statement that management has responded fully to all inquiries made by the practitioner during the engagement
- A statement that no events have occurred subsequent to the date as of which the procedures were applied that would require modification of the findings of the agreed-upon procedures

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.23** An illustrative representation letter is presented in appendix C (paragraph .29), “Illustrative Management Representation Letter,” of this SOP. For additional information regarding management’s written representations in an agreed-upon procedures engagement, see paragraphs .37–.39 of AT section 201.

## **Restriction on the Performance of Procedures**

**.24** As previously stated, a practitioner should not agree to eliminate any of the procedures presented in appendix B (paragraph .28) of this SOP. If circumstances impose restrictions on the performance of the agreed-upon procedures, the practitioner should attempt to obtain agreement from the specified users for modification of the agreed-upon procedures presented in appendix B (paragraph .28) of this SOP. When such agreement cannot be obtained, the practitioner should describe the restriction(s) on the performance of procedures in his or her report or withdraw from the engagement.

## **Dating the Report**

**.25** The date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures should be used as the date of the practitioner’s report.

## **Effective Date**

**.26** This SOP is effective upon issuance and is applicable only to agreed-upon procedures engagements that report on annual claims prompt payment reports as required by the NJAC.

## Appendix A

### Illustrative Agreed-Upon Procedures Report

The following is an illustrative agreed-upon procedures report based on the guidance in AT sec. 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements*.”

Independent Accountant’s Report  
on Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures

To the Management of ABC Carrier:

We have performed the applicable procedures enumerated in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants’ Statement of Position (SOP) 02-1, *Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code*, which were agreed to by ABC Carrier and the New Jersey Department of Banking and Insurance (the department), solely to assist you in complying with the reporting requirements of New Jersey Administrative Code, Title 11, Chapter 22, Subchapter 1.9 (NJAC 11:22-1.9) for Appendix B 20XX Annual Report (Exhibit I) for the year ended December 31, 20XX. Management of ABC Carrier is responsible for compliance with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1. This agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of ABC Carrier and the department. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described in the attached Appendix either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

The procedures performed and the findings are included in the attached Appendix.

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on ABC Carrier’s compliance with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1 for the year ended December 31, 20XX. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the management of ABC Carrier and the State of New Jersey Department of Banking and Insurance, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

[Signature]

[Date]

Appendix B

Agreed-Upon Procedures That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
The following procedures were applied to the ABC Carrier's 20XX Appendix B annual claims prompt payment report.			
We obtained supporting documentation used by management to prepare the Annual New Jersey Prompt Payment Report, and for each of the five categories (physician, dental, other health care professional, hospital, or other health care facilities), where applicable, compared the number of claims and the amount of claims for each quarter and the annual period from the supporting documentation used by management to prepare the Annual New Jersey Prompt Payment Report to the following columns of the report:			
• Total claims	_____	_____	_____
• Denied ineligible	_____	_____	_____
• Denied document	_____	_____	_____
• Denied coding/enrollment	_____	_____	_____
• Denied for amount	_____	_____	_____
• Time limit special	_____	_____	_____
• Time limit other	_____	_____	_____
• Denied referred fraud	_____	_____	_____
• Interest paid	_____	_____	_____
• Interest amount paid	_____	_____	_____
• Total paid	_____	_____	_____

<i><b>Procedures</b></i>	<i><b>Findings</b></i>		
	<i><b>No Exception</b></i>	<i><b>Exception</b></i>	<i><b>N/A</b></i>
We selected 10 percent of the claims from ABC Carrier’s supporting documentation used by management to prepare the Annual New Jersey Prompt Payment Report, with the selections distributed throughout the year. If 10 percent of the claims exceeded 50, then the number of items selected was limited to 50. If 10 percent of the claims resulted in less than 10 claims, then the number of items selected was 10, and for each item selected we:			
1. Compared the following information to ABC Carrier’s claim payment system:			
• Paid amount	_____	_____	_____
• Claim finalization or payment date	_____	_____	_____
• Claim received date	_____	_____	_____
• Denial code	_____	_____	_____
• Claim category (physician, dental, other health care professional, hospital, or other health care facilities)	_____	_____	_____
2. Compared the following information to the original claim information submissions:			
• Date received	_____	_____	_____
• Amount billed	_____	_____	_____
• Category (physician, dental, other health care professional, hospital, or other health care facilities)	_____	_____	_____
3. Noted whether, per ABC Carrier’s member records, original claim information submission, or both, the claim related to a policy issued in the state of New Jersey	_____	_____	_____
4. If a selected claim was denied, compared denial reason indicated in ABC Carrier’s claims system records to supporting documentation used by management to prepare the Annual New Jersey Prompt Payment Report	_____	_____	_____

<u>Procedures</u>	<u>Findings</u>		
	<u>No</u> <u>Exception</u>	<u>Exception</u>	<u>N/A</u>
5. If a selected claim is a “clean claim,” as defined in NJAC 11:22-1.2, and as determined by ABC Carrier, recalculated the amount of interest paid on the selected claim in accordance with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1.5	_____	_____	_____
We selected 10 claims from ABC Carrier’s primary claims system, with the selections distributed throughout the year, and for each item selected, traced the selected claims covered under New Jersey contracts to the supporting documentation used by management to prepare the Annual New Jersey Prompt Payment Report.	_____	_____	_____
We proved the arithmetic accuracy of ABC Carrier’s 20XX Appendix B annual claims prompt payment report.	_____	_____	_____

**Description of Exceptions if Any**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## Appendix C

### Illustrative Management Representation Letter

[ABC Carrier's Letterhead]

[Date]

[CPA Firm's Name and Address]

In connection with your engagement to apply the agreed-upon procedures enumerated in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Statement of Position (SOP) 02-1, *Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address Annual Claims Prompt Payment Reports as Required by the New Jersey Administrative Code*, which were agreed to by ABC Carrier and the New Jersey Department of Banking and Insurance, solely to assist us in complying with the requirements of New Jersey Administrative Code, Title 11, Chapter 22, Subchapter 1 (NJAC 11:22-1.9), for Appendix B 20XX Annual Report (Exhibit I) for the period from January 1, 20XX through December 31, 20XX, we confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, the following representations made to you during your engagement:

1. We are responsible for compliance with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1 and for the information in ABC Carrier's annual claims prompt payment report.
2. During the year ended December 31, 20XX, there have been no errors or fraud that would indicate that ABC Carrier is not in compliance with the requirements of NJAC 11:22-1.
3. We have disclosed to you all known matters contradicting the information in ABC Carrier's annual claims prompt payment report.
4. There have been no communications from regulatory agencies relating to ABC Carrier's annual claims prompt payment report, including communications received between December 31, 20XX, and the date of this letter.
5. We have made available to you all information that we believe is relevant to ABC Carrier's annual claims prompt payment report.
6. We have responded fully to all inquiries made to us by you during the engagement.

To the best of our knowledge and belief, no events have occurred subsequent to December 31, 20XX, and through the date of this letter that would require adjustment to or modification of the findings of the agreed-upon procedures.

[Signature]

[Title]

[Signature]

[Title]

**New Jersey Annual Claims  
Prompt Payment Reports Task Force**

JEFF MUZIO, *Chair*  
CRAIG C. ANDERSON  
JOHN D. HARRIS  
JOHN LANGIONE

NANCY LOFREDO  
KIM RAIMONDI  
CHRIS SCUDELLARI

**AICPA Staff**

CHARLES E. LANDES  
*Director*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

SUSAN S. JONES  
*Senior Technical Manager*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

The AICPA is grateful to Jean Connolly, James S. Gerson, and Kim Hekker, for their technical assistance with this document.

---

**[The next page is 31,651.]**

## Section 14,400

# Statement of Position 03-2 Attest Engagements on Greenhouse Gas Emissions Information

September 22, 2003

### NOTE

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretive publication and represents the recommendations of the Joint Task Force of the AICPA and CICA on Sustainability Reporting regarding the application of Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) to attest engagements on greenhouse gas emissions information. The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has found the recommendations of this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 202.01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Interpretive publications are not as authoritative as pronouncements of the ASB; however, if a practitioner does not apply the attest guidance included in this SOP, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the provisions of SSAEs addressed by this SOP.

## Background and Introduction

### Climate Change and Greenhouse Gases

.01 Many scientists believe that global temperatures are increasing and that the increase is due to a buildup of so-called greenhouse gases (GHGs) in the atmosphere. Certain atmospheric gases (methane, carbon dioxide, nitrous oxide, water vapor, and others) are called greenhouse gases because they are believed to help trap some of the outgoing energy, retaining heat somewhat like the glass panels of a greenhouse. Atmospheric concentrations of carbon dioxide, methane, and nitrous oxide are believed to have increased by over 31 percent, 151 percent, and 17 percent, respectively, since the late 19th century.<sup>1</sup> Over the same period, many scientists have noted an increase of approximately 1 degree Fahrenheit in the average global temperature.

.02 Fossil fuel use and other human activities have added significant amounts of GHGs to the atmosphere. GHG emissions are also produced by agriculture, animal husbandry, and various industrial processes. Many scientists believe the release of GHGs into the atmosphere to be the cause of the increase in global temperatures. This has led to a number of global and national initiatives to reduce GHG emissions; one such initiative is the Kyoto Protocol (see paragraphs .04–.07). Since a significant portion of GHG emissions is closely tied to fossil fuel use, achieving the reductions envisioned by those various

<sup>1</sup> Source: Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Third Assessment Report: *Climate Change 2001 Summary for Policy Makers*, p. 34, Table SPM-1. [www.ipcc.ch/pub/reports.htm](http://www.ipcc.ch/pub/reports.htm).

initiatives would require reduced consumption of coal, oil, natural gas, and other fuels. Such reductions would clearly affect consumers and industry in the United States and elsewhere.

**.03** However, there is no universal agreement on the science behind global warming. Some scientists and policy makers oppose initiatives and regulations to reduce GHG emissions because they dispute how much of the global warming trend can be attributed to human activity, arguing that natural forces are also at work. As a result, some are reluctant to make the changes required to reduce GHG emissions while, in their view, the causes, consequences, and severity of climate change remain in doubt.

## The Kyoto Protocol

**.04** At the 1992 Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro, a voluntary agreement to reduce global concentrations of “man-made greenhouse gases,” the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC), was adopted and ratified by the United States and a majority of the world’s developed countries. When the voluntary targets outlined in the UNFCCC did little to reduce global concentrations of GHGs, the United Nations (UN) initiated an annual negotiation process known as the Conference of the Parties (COP) to set mandatory reduction targets. In 1997, during the third round of negotiations in Kyoto, Japan, the COP reached an agreement on a mandatory mechanism to reduce global GHG emissions; that agreement is now referred to as the Kyoto Protocol.

**.05** The Kyoto Protocol set targets for each of 38 developed countries, which would have to reduce emissions by a certain percentage below their 1990 emissions baseline. To be legally binding, the Kyoto Protocol must be ratified by at least 55 countries, including developed countries responsible for at least 55 percent of the emissions in 1990.

**.06** To give countries more options for achieving their emission reduction targets, the Kyoto Protocol incorporated a number of “flexibility mechanisms,” namely emissions trading, clean development mechanism (CDM), and joint implementation (JI). Whether trading systems established under the Kyoto Protocol will allow trades with external parties (that is, those that have not signed the Kyoto Protocol) is still being debated among the signatory countries. GHG emission credits may also be traded outside the Kyoto Protocol processes through independent, voluntary markets such as the Chicago Climate Exchange, or by contracts between two or more companies. It is unclear whether GHG emissions credit trading from these latter two mechanisms can be used to meet targets related to the Kyoto Protocol.

## GHGs to Be Regulated by the Kyoto Protocol

**.07** The Kyoto Protocol would regulate emissions of the following six GHGs:

- Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>)
- Methane (CH<sub>4</sub>)
- Nitrous oxide (N<sub>2</sub>O)
- Perfluorocarbons (PFCs)
- Hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs)
- Sulphur hexafluoride (SF<sub>6</sub>)

## Why U.S. Companies Are Considering Strategies to Address Their GHG Emissions

.08 U.S. companies with operations in countries that have ratified the Kyoto Protocol may have to meet emission reduction targets in those countries once the Kyoto Protocol becomes effective. Consideration of alternative strategies and related costs will enable those companies to find the lowest-cost alternative before triggering the imposition of requirements and any related fines. Emissions trading is considered to be an effective, cost-efficient way to meet limits imposed by regulators, especially toward the end of a compliance period.

.09 In addition, there is a sense among many companies that even though they will not be subject to the Kyoto Protocol in the United States, at some point a regulatory framework that places a limit on GHG emissions may be adopted. These companies take the view that it would be wise to start planning and preparing for a “carbon-constrained” future and eventually take advantage of the potential opportunities that GHG emissions trading presents.

## GHG Emissions Trading Programs and GHG Registries in the United States

.10 There are a number of initiatives to establish GHG emissions trading programs or GHG emission registries in the United States, most of which are in various stages of development. One program currently in development is the Chicago Climate Exchange (CCX) ([www.chicagoclimateX.com](http://www.chicagoclimateX.com)).

.11 The CCX is a voluntary *cap-and-trade program* for reducing and trading GHG emissions. Entities that agree to become members of the CCX must, upon becoming members, enter into a legally binding commitment to reduce their emissions of GHGs by 4 percent below the average of their 1998 through 2001 baseline by 2006, the last year of the pilot program. CCX will enable participants to buy and sell credits to find the most cost-effective way of achieving reductions. Trading is targeted to begin in the fourth quarter of 2003.

.12 Some trading schemes involve trading of CO<sub>2</sub> only, while others permit trading of the six GHGs identified in the Kyoto Protocol (see paragraph .07 of this SOP). The CCX plans to enable trading in the six GHGs described in the Kyoto Protocol. Those non-CO<sub>2</sub> GHGs can be translated into tons of CO<sub>2</sub> equivalent using the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change’s (IPCC) Global Warming Potentials (GWP) ([www.ipcc.ch](http://www.ipcc.ch)).

.13 The California Climate Action Registry ([www.climateregistry.org](http://www.climateregistry.org)) will enable entities operating within the State of California to voluntarily record their annual GHG emissions inventories. In turn, the State of California has stated that it will use its best efforts to ensure that entities voluntarily inventorying their emissions will receive appropriate credit for early action (that is, action before regulation of GHG emissions) under any future international, federal, or state regulatory regimes relating to GHG emissions. Third-party certification<sup>2</sup> of the baseline and emission reductions is a key component of the California Climate Action Registry. An entity can register emissions (a) only for the units in California or (b) for all units within the United States.

---

<sup>2</sup> See paragraph .14 of this Statement of Position (SOP) for a definition of the term *certification*.

## Terms and Definitions Used by Registries and Regulatory Frameworks

.14 Different registries and regulatory frameworks may use different terms and definitions for similar services. A *validation* is a service that would provide assurance on the feasibility of the design of an emission reduction project, typically before inception of the project; an entity would typically engage an engineering or a consulting firm to provide such a service. This SOP does not provide guidance on validation services. A *verification* is the objective and independent assessment of whether the reported GHG inventory properly reflects the GHG impact of the entity in conformance with preestablished GHG accounting and reporting standards. The California Climate Action Registry's Certification Protocol (October 2002) defines a *certification* as "the process used to ensure that a given participant's *GHG emissions inventory* (either the baseline or the annual result) has met a minimum quality standard and complied with the Registry's procedures and protocols for calculating and reporting GHG emissions." A certification may be viewed by some as providing absolute, not reasonable, assurance. Various GHG registries and regulatory frameworks may not define these terms in exactly the same way; thus the practitioner should obtain the official definitions of such terms under the registry or regulatory framework relevant to the engagement. However, practitioners should not use such terms in their attest reports on GHG emissions. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Scope of SOP

.15 This SOP addresses the following:

- Engagements to examine and report on a schedule or an assertion relating to information about a GHG emissions inventory (GHG emissions for a compliance period, such as a year) or a baseline GHG inventory
- Engagements to examine and report on a schedule or an assertion relating to information about a GHG emission reduction in connection with (a) the recording of the reduction with a registry or (b) a trade of that reduction or credit

Such examination engagements should be performed pursuant to AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.16 While a review-level service relating to an entity's GHG inventory is permissible under existing attestation standards, it is most likely that the market will ultimately demand an examination-level service. Accordingly, this SOP provides guidance only on an examination-level service.

## Engagement Acceptance Considerations

.17 The following are examples of matters addressed in AT section 101 that are relevant to a practitioner's decision as to whether to accept an engagement:

- Independence (see paragraphs .18–.20 of this SOP).

- Whether the practitioner has adequate technical knowledge of the subject matter to perform the engagement, including evaluation of the work of any specialists involved in the engagement (see paragraphs .21–.26 of this SOP).
- Considerations in selecting and using the work of a specialist, when applicable (paragraphs .27–.29 of this SOP).
- Existence of suitable criteria (see paragraphs .30 –.36 of this SOP).
- Materiality considerations (see paragraph .37 of this SOP).
- Expectations of users of the GHG inventory or reduction information and the practitioner’s report thereon.
- Whether the client is likely to have adequate information systems and controls to provide reliable GHG information.
- Whether sufficient evidence is likely to exist when the entity has changed measurement methods for GHG emissions from one period to the next (see paragraphs .39 and .65 of this SOP).
- The scope of the entity’s GHG inventory (see paragraph .40 of this SOP for a discussion of boundaries and paragraphs .41–.44 of this SOP for a discussion of direct and indirect emissions for a GHG inventory).
- • Availability of historical data. If the practitioner is engaged to perform the attest service at a date considerably later than the base year there is a risk that historical data for the base year may not be available. (See paragraph .45 of this SOP for a discussion of baselines.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Independence

**.18** The practitioner performing an attest engagement should be *independent* pursuant to Rule 101, *Independence*, (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 101.01), of the Code of Professional Conduct.<sup>3</sup>

**.19** According to section 201 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act (the Act),<sup>4</sup> it is unlawful for a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board that performs an audit of a public company to provide, contemporaneously with the audit, certain nonaudit services; those prohibited services do not include attest engagements on GHG emissions information. A registered public accounting firm may engage in any nonaudit service that is not on the prohibited list for a public company audit client only if the activity is approved in advance by the company’s audit committee. The Act does not place any limitations on public accounting firms in providing nonaudit services to public companies that they do not audit or to any nonpublic companies.

**.20** Certain GHG registries or regulatory frameworks set rules that prohibit professionals who provide assurance on GHG inventories or reductions from providing other services to the entity for a period of time (for example,

<sup>3</sup> For guidance on independence when engaged to issue an attest report that is restricted as to use, see Ethics Interpretation No. 11, “Modified Application of Rule 101 for Certain Engagements to Issue Restricted-Use Reports Under the Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements,” under Rule 101, *Independence* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 101.13).

<sup>4</sup> See also subsections (g) through (l) of Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

California Climate Action Registry). The practitioner should determine whether the relevant scheme or registry sets independence requirements beyond those of the AICPA or sets other limitations on the scope of services.<sup>5</sup> [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Adequate Knowledge of Subject Matter and Use of a Specialist

**.21** The second general attestation standard states, “The engagement shall be performed by a practitioner having adequate knowledge of the subject matter.” Paragraph .22 of AT section 101 (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1) states that “this knowledge requirement may be met, in part, through the use of one or more specialists on a particular attest engagement if the practitioner has sufficient knowledge of the subject matter (a) to communicate to the specialist the objectives of the work and (b) to evaluate the specialist’s work to determine if the objectives were achieved.” Before accepting an attest engagement on GHG emissions information, the practitioner should evaluate whether his or her involvement in the engagement and understanding of the subject matter are sufficient to enable the practitioner to discharge his or her responsibilities. The practitioner should accept an attest engagement on GHG emissions information only if the practitioner is satisfied that those persons who are to perform the engagement collectively possess the necessary professional competencies. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.22** In most attest engagements on GHG emissions, the nature of the entity’s operations, emissions, or the emissions measurement methodology in general requires specialized skill or technical knowledge in a particular field other than accounting or auditing. As a result, the practitioner should possess adequate technical knowledge of the subject matter to understand how GHG emissions information might be misstated and to evaluate the work of a specialist and the specialist’s conclusion, when applicable. A practitioner may obtain adequate knowledge of the subject matter through formal or continuing education, including self-study, or through practical experience. The practitioner should read the criteria selected by the responsible party to understand what is involved in the measurements in determining whether the practitioner has adequate technical knowledge.

**.23** Since most attest engagements on GHG emissions will require specialized skill or technical knowledge in a particular field other than accounting or auditing, the practitioner may use the work of a specialist, such as an environmental engineer or consultant. If the client is a service entity whose GHG emissions are limited to the use of purchased electricity and natural gas or oil, the practitioner may be able to use published factors to convert the electricity, gas, or oil used to GHGs emitted. Under those circumstances, the practitioner may not need to use a specialist, provided that the practitioner possesses sufficient technical knowledge regarding the published factors, including an understanding of the nature of each factor and distinctions between alternatives. If the client has significant industrial operations with numerous

---

<sup>5</sup> For example, a greenhouse gas (GHG) framework or registry may set independence requirements that specifically prohibit a practitioner who has performed a financial statement audit or other specified service for an entity from also providing a verification (examination) of an entity’s GHG emission inventory for a certain period of time.

sources of emissions, however, it is more likely that the practitioner will need to use a specialist.

**.24** If specialized skills are needed to supplement the practitioner's technical knowledge, the practitioner should seek the assistance of a professional possessing such skills, who may be either a member of the engagement team or an outside professional. The practitioner should possess adequate technical knowledge to direct, supervise, and review the specialist's work in the former situation and to understand and evaluate the specialist's work in the latter situation.

**.25** When the specialist is not a member of the practitioner's staff, the practitioner should consider the magnitude of the specialist's work in relation to the overall engagement to determine whether the practitioner will be performing a sufficient portion of the engagement to assume overall responsibility.

**.26** When the responsible party employs an in-house specialist to develop evidence that is used to support the assertion or presentation, the practitioner should evaluate whether the practitioner or another member of the engagement team possesses adequate technical knowledge to understand, test, and evaluate the in-house specialist's work or whether the practitioner should seek the assistance from an outside specialist. The practitioner should follow the guidance in AU section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), in evaluating the competence and objectivity of the responsible party's in-house specialist. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.27** Considerations in selecting a specialist, or using the work of a specialist engaged by the responsible party, include:

- a. The specialist's expertise and competence in the subject matter
- b. The relevance of the specialist's expertise to the practitioner's objectives in the attest engagement
- c. The objectivity of the specialist
- d. The nature and extent of the anticipated use of the specialist

**.28** If the specialist is employed by the practitioner's firm, the practitioner should follow the guidance in this SOP and the relevant guidance in AU section 311, *Planning and Supervision* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). If an outside specialist is engaged, the practitioner should follow the guidance in this SOP and the relevant guidance in AU section 336. When the practitioner is considering using the work of a specialist engaged by the responsible party, the practitioner should follow the guidance contained in this SOP and the relevant guidance in AU section 336, including evaluating the relationship of the specialist to the responsible party.

**.29** Examples of types of matters that ordinarily may require the practitioner to consider using the work of a specialist or having a specialist participate in the GHG engagement include:

- Review of the quality of client-provided data (for example, appropriateness and accuracy)
  - a. Determination of whether it is necessary or appropriate to use a derived emissions factor versus a published emissions factor
  - b. Determination of the population and selection of appropriate published emissions factors

- c. Assessment of the methodology used to calculate the specific GHG emissions (see paragraphs .39 and .65 of this SOP)
  - Review of the work of the client's in-house or external specialist (for example, to assess whether the assumptions underlying the methodology are reasonable)

## Criteria

**.30** The third general attestation standard states, "The practitioner shall perform the engagement only if he or she has reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of evaluation against criteria that are suitable and available to users."

**.31** Criteria that are established or developed by groups composed of experts that follow due process procedures, including exposure of the proposed criteria for public comment, ordinarily should be considered suitable.

**.32** Different industries, regulatory organizations, or organizations acting in a standard-setting role may have developed guidance on measurement relevant to an industry, regulated group, or GHG emissions in general. Alternatively, an entity may develop its own methodology or criteria for measurement of emissions.

**.33** The practitioner should consider whether criteria described in paragraph .32 are suitable (see paragraphs .23–.32 of AT section 101 for guidance). For guidance on availability of criteria, see paragraphs .33–.34 of AT section 101.

**.34** Most entities will need to select a framework and further refine measurement criteria, perhaps using software tools for measuring emissions in specific industries or using certain industrial processes, such as cement production or aluminum smelting. The practitioner should review the entity's measurement protocol and consider whether the entity's measurement methods are appropriate.<sup>6</sup>

## Attributes to Be Met by GHG Emission Reductions

**.35** Various registries and GHG emissions trading schemes have specified attributes to be met by an emission reduction for it to be registered or traded. Common attributes are identified and described below; however, definitions may vary by trading scheme. In the context of a specific registry or emissions trading scheme, there may be additional requirements to be met by the emission reduction.

- a. *Ownership.* In many cases, ownership is clear. Examples of such cases include efficiency upgrades at a manufacturing facility or fuel-switching at a power plant. For some project types, however, particularly those with renewable energy and demand-side management projects that offset or displace fossil-fuel emissions, demonstrating ownership can be challenging. Ownership of the reductions may be open to dispute because the reductions do not occur on the site of the project, but rather on the site of a fossil-fueled facility whose power was

---

<sup>6</sup> For example, the WRI/WBCSD GHG Protocol (released on October 23, 2001), when supplemented by appropriate specified methodologies for calculating GHG emissions, may be suitable criteria for calculating an GHG emissions inventory. This is an emerging area; as a result, other suitable frameworks may be developed in the future. See Appendix B, "Sources for GHG Emission Protocols and Calculation Tools" (paragraph .81).

displaced. These are known as indirect emission reductions because the reductions occur at facilities other than the one where the project has been undertaken. The possibility that the direct source of emissions would claim title to the same reductions claimed by the project developer or that the joint venture partners would claim title to the same reductions of their joint venture (referred to as double-counting) represents a risk that buyers prefer to avoid. It is possible that multiple claimants, such as the owner of the emitting source, technology vendors, and the entity installing the technology, could claim ownership of these reductions.

- b. *Real*. An emission reduction is real if it is a reduction in actual emissions resulting from a specific and identifiable action or undertaking that is not a mere change in activity level (for example, due to typical business fluctuations) and net of any leakage to a third party or jurisdiction. Leakage occurs when an emission reduction project causes emissions to increase beyond the project's boundaries. Entities entering into an emission reduction project typically must demonstrate that the emission reduction will not cause emissions to increase beyond the project's boundaries.
- c. *Quantifiable or measurable*. An emission reduction is quantifiable or measurable if the total amount of the reduction can be determined and the reduction is calculated in an accurate and replicable manner.
- d. *Surplus*. An emission reduction is surplus if the reduction is not otherwise required of a source by current regulations or a voluntary commitment to reduce emissions to a specified level.
- e. *Establishment of a credible emissions baseline*. Many programs measure emission reductions by comparing a credible emissions baseline without the project to the emissions baseline with the project. A reduction quantity is not meaningful unless it is compared with a credible baseline (that is, a baseline compiled in accordance with the current protocol, using the same boundaries and scope).
- f. *Unique*. Credits should be created and registered only once from a specific reduction activity and time.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.36** Some registries or trading schemes may have a requirement for *additionality*. Environmental additionality requires that the emission reductions achieved by the project would not have occurred in the absence of the project (the reduction must be additional to any required reductions; that is, if the entity has taken on a cap, the reduction must be additional to the cap). A credible emission baseline is crucial for an entity to demonstrate additionality. Various GHG registries and regulatory frameworks may not define additionality and the terms referred to in paragraph .35 in exactly the same way; thus the practitioner should obtain the official definitions of such terms under the registry or regulatory framework relevant to the engagement. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Materiality

**.37** Paragraph .67 of AT section 101 addresses materiality in attestation engagements. Also, the applicable GHG registry or voluntary or regulatory

framework may set specific materiality limits. If a GHG registry or framework sets specific materiality requirements that are more stringent than those of AT section 101, the practitioner should consider whether it is possible to meet such requirements before accepting the engagement. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Uncertainty<sup>7</sup> in the Measurement of GHG Emissions

.38 Uncertainty in emissions estimates can be due to inherent risk or control risk. Examples of matters that may create or increase uncertainty in emissions estimates include the following:

- Use of factors that are poorly researched or uncertain (for example, factors for CH<sub>4</sub> and N<sub>2</sub>O from combustion processes)
- Use of average case factors not perfectly matched to specific and varying circumstances (for example, miles per gallon, average kgCO<sub>2</sub>/MWh generated)
- Deliberate estimation to compensate for missing data (for example, nonreporting facilities or missing fuel bills)
- Assumptions that simplify calculation of emissions from highly complex processes
- Imprecise measurement of emissions-producing activity (for example, miles traveled in airplanes or rental vehicles, hours per year specific equipment is used)
- Insufficient frequency of measurement to account for natural variability
- Poor calibration of measuring instruments[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Consistency

.39 Measurement of the GHG inventory requires consistent application of measurement methods. If the entity has changed measurement methods from one period to the next, the practitioner should consider the implications on the engagement (for example, whether it is essential that the same methods be used because either comparative information is presented or a reduction is being calculated and, if so, whether the entity has restated the prior period's results using the same measurement method as the current period). (See paragraphs .40, .45, .65 and .72 of this SOP.)

## Boundaries

.40 It is important for the entity to draw clear *organizational boundaries*. This is particularly salient when accounting for GHG emissions from partially owned entities or facilities. The criteria framework selected by the entity may provide guidance on how to set organizational boundaries. Once organizational boundaries have been set, the entity must set its *operational boundaries*.

---

<sup>7</sup> The term *uncertainty* as used in the field of GHG emissions refers to variability in the measurement of GHG emissions rather than the term *uncertainty* as defined in the auditing literature.

Leakage may affect the choice of operational boundaries. In planning the engagement, the practitioner should obtain an understanding of the boundaries that have been set by the entity and the potential for leakage. If leakage has occurred, the entity may account for it by adjusting its baseline or by changing its boundaries. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Scopes for Reporting GHG Emissions: Direct and Indirect Emissions

.41 GHG reporting and emission reductions may encompass one or more of the following three scopes of emissions:

- Scope 1: *Direct GHG Emissions*. These are emissions associated with the following:
  - a. Production of electricity, heat, or steam
  - b. Physical or chemical processing
  - c. Transportation by the entity of, for example, materials, products, waste, and employees
  - d. Fugitive emissions
- Scope 2: *Indirect GHG Emissions From the Generation of Imported or Purchased Electricity, Heat, or Steam*
- Scope 3: *Other Indirect Emissions*, including the following:
  - a. Employee business travel
  - b. Outsourced activities, contract manufacturing, and franchises
  - c. Transportation by the vendor or contractor of, for example, materials, products, waste, and employees
  - d. Emissions from product use and end of life
  - e. Employee commuting
  - f. Production of imported materials

.42 In the United States there is a focus on both actual emissions and *emissions intensity* (that is, emissions per unit of production). For example, national GHG reduction policy focuses on emission intensity while emissions trading organizations (for example, the Chicago Climate Exchange) trade in emission reduction credits, usually expressed as an annual rate (for example, tons of GHGs per year).

.43 The practitioner should determine whether the proposed scope of the engagement covers (a) direct GHG emissions; (b) indirect GHG emissions associated with the generation of purchased electricity, heat, or steam; and (c) other indirect emissions. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.44 Some reporting schemes may classify these emissions sources differently than those noted in paragraph .41 of this SOP. There is a potential for double-counting of emissions and reductions, especially in instances of indirect emissions and shared ownership or control. If the practitioner has been engaged to report on an entity's indirect emissions, especially those emissions for a supplier not under the direct control of the entity, the practitioner should consider whether he or she can obtain a written assertion from the responsible

party and obtain sufficient evidence to form an opinion; the practitioner also should consider the availability or existence of data for emitting sources not under the direct control of the entity. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Baselines

**.45** A *baseline* is the amount of the entity's emissions for a specified base year against which any future changes in emissions are evaluated. Management should recalculate the baseline, however, for changes in scope and boundaries, subsequent acquisitions, and sales or closing of emitting sources. If the practitioner is engaged to perform the attest service at a date considerably later than the base year, there may be differences in the quality of the data and consistency of methodology between the base year and the current year. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Examination Engagement: GHG Inventory

### Objective of the Engagement

**.46** The criteria selected determine the specific subject matter of the examination engagement and what is to be presented. It is anticipated that appropriate disclosures will be included in the presentation, not just the quantity of GHG emissions for a period of time, and that the presentation may include or be accompanied by other information, such as the discussion of the responsible party's commitment and strategy, projections, and targets related to its GHG emissions. Therefore, the form of opinion will vary depending upon the information presented under the selected criteria.

**.47** The practitioner's objective typically is to express an opinion about whether:

- a. The entity's schedule of greenhouse gas emissions (GHG inventory)<sup>8</sup> information is presented, in all material respects, in conformity with the criteria selected by management (see paragraphs .30–.36 of this SOP); or
- b. The responsible party's written assertion about the schedule of greenhouse gas emissions information is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the criteria selected by management.

### Written Assertion by the Responsible Party

**.48** A written assertion by a responsible party<sup>9</sup> may be presented to a practitioner in a number of ways, such as in a narrative description, within a schedule, or as part of a representation letter appropriately identifying what is being presented and the point in time or period of time covered. An example of a written assertion on a GHG inventory follows: "XYZ Company asserts that its schedule of GHG emissions information for the year ended December 31, 20XX,

---

<sup>8</sup> An entity's emissions of GHGs for a specified period, typically a year or a series of years, are often referred to as the entity's *GHG inventory*.

<sup>9</sup> The responsible party is defined in paragraph .11 of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), as the person or persons, either as individuals or representatives of the entity, responsible for the subject matter.

is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on *[identify criteria selected by management]*.”

## Examination Engagement: GHG Emission Reduction Information

### Objective of the Engagement

- .49 The practitioner’s objective is to express an opinion about whether:
- a. The entity’s GHG emission reduction information related to a specific project or on an entity-wide basis is presented, in all material respects, in conformity with the criteria selected by management; or
  - b. The responsible party’s written assertion about the GHG emission reduction information related to a specific project or on an entity-wide basis is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the criteria selected by management.

### Written Assertion by the Responsible Party

.50 A written assertion may be presented to a practitioner in a number of ways, such as in a narrative description, within a schedule, or as part of a representation letter appropriately identifying what is being presented and the point in time or period of time covered. An example of a written assertion on a GHG emission reduction project follows: “XYZ Company reduced GHG emissions in connection with project ABC by 50,000 tons of CO<sub>2</sub> equivalents for the year ended December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria selected by management]*.”

### Examples of GHG Emission Reduction Projects

.51 Examples of GHG emission reduction projects include but are not limited to the following:

- Use of renewable energy systems such as wind, solar, and other low emission technologies
- Change in processes to increase energy efficiency/installation and use of more energy efficient equipment
- Carbon sequestration: no-till farming; agricultural grass and tree plantings
- Change from more GHG-intensive fuels to less GHG-intensive fuels (for example, from coal to natural gas or nuclear power)
- Recovery and use of agricultural and landfill methane
- Improvement in the fuel efficiency of vehicle fleets
- Reduction in venting or flaring on offshore oil production platforms (installation of zero flare systems; rapid response to unplanned events)
- Cessation of operations at noneconomical plants
- Demand-side management projects

## Prerequisite for an Examination of GHG Emission Reduction Information

**.52** As a prerequisite to providing examination-level assurance on GHG emission reduction information, the practitioner should obtain sufficient appropriate evidence by performing procedures on the entity's GHG emissions for the period in which the project took effect to provide a reasonable basis for an opinion on the GHG emission reduction information. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.53** In some cases, one practitioner has examined and reported on an entity's GHG inventory but another practitioner is engaged to examine and report on the entity's GHG emission reduction information. When the practitioner engaged to examine and report on the GHG emission reduction information is deciding whether he or she may rely on the work of the other practitioner, the guidance in AU section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), is applicable. Another important consideration in this situation is the consistency of the assumptions and methods used to measure the GHG emission reduction with those used to measure the GHG inventory reported on by the other practitioner. See paragraphs .39 and .65 of this SOP. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.54** Members of professions other than public accounting are subject to their own professional requirements; those requirements may differ from those of the public accounting profession. When a non-CPA has provided verification or certification services (see paragraph .14 of this SOP) with respect to an entity's GHG inventory and the practitioner is engaged to examine an entity's GHG reduction, the practitioner should perform examination procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence with respect to the entity's GHG inventory as part of examining the entity's GHG emission reduction (for example, evaluating the appropriateness of the methodology and any emission factors used, and whether the base year emissions were adjusted if needed). The practitioner should consider certain aspects of the specialist's work in accordance with AU section 336. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Engagement Performance

### Planning the Examination Engagement

**.55** The examination should be performed in accordance with attestation standards established by the AICPA (see AT section 101). This SOP is not intended to provide all the guidance set forth in the applicable standards established by the AICPA.

**.56** The practitioner should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed. The understanding should include the objectives of the engagement, management's responsibilities, the practitioner's responsibilities, and the limitations of the engagement. The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client, such as an engagement letter.

.57 Other relevant information when planning the examination engagement includes:

***Applicable to GHG Inventories and Reductions***

- a. The nature of the entity's business and whether the entity has operations, and therefore GHG emission sources, in multiple locations and the types of GHG emissions produced
- b. The organizational and operational boundaries used for the emissions inventory
- c. Whether there have been any mergers, acquisitions, divestitures, sales of emitting sources, or outsourcing of functions with significant emissions that may require adjustment of the entity's baseline
- d. Whether all significant sources of emissions have been identified by the entity
- e. The potential for double-counting of emissions and, if applicable, reductions
- f. When applicable, any regulatory framework(s) (for example, state- or country-specific regulations, permits, or operating licenses governing emissions where the client has operations; the Kyoto Protocol) or any requirements relevant to a voluntary commitment to register or reduce GHG emissions
- g. How GHG emissions have been calculated and reported, including emissions factors and their justification, and any assumptions on which estimates are based
- h. The entity's internal control over gathering and reporting GHG emissions data, including data assembly and data retention. Effective internal control may reduce the likelihood of material misstatement of an entity's GHG inventory
- i. The protocols that were used for measurement of emissions; and whether they were used in a consistent manner throughout the entity over the period under examination
- j. Whether there is a need to use the work of a specialist
- k. Whether to obtain a legal letter

***Applicable to GHG Reductions Only***

- l. The type(s) of emission reduction(s); for instance, a switch in fuel type or change in production process (see paragraph .39 of this SOP)
- m. Whether the emitting entity is required by a registry or regulatory framework to engage an outside specialist to evaluate the scientific or engineering basis for the proposed reduction project (sometimes referred to as a validation); those rules may further specify that the party evaluating the science cannot be the same party as the verifier. Where applicable, whether another reputable party has evaluated the science and found it to be acceptable and the implications of findings in the report
- n. Whether there are any ownership issues relating to the GHG emission reduction credits to be sold. (For example, in the case of a landfill, the seller may own the landfill or have ownership rights over the emission reduction by virtue of a contract)

## Part of Attest Engagement Performed by Other Practitioners

**.58** If another practitioner is reporting on the GHG inventory for a subsidiary of the entity, that practitioner also should follow the guidance in this SOP. The practitioner who is engaged to report on the entity as a whole (hereafter referred to as the principal practitioner) should consider whether the practitioner for the subsidiary has the skill and knowledge required to conduct the engagement. AU section 543 provides guidance on the professional judgments the independent auditor makes in deciding whether he or she may serve as principal auditor and use the work and reports of other independent auditors who have audited the financial statements of one or more subsidiaries, divisions, branches, components, or investments included in the financial statements presented. The principal practitioner may find that guidance helpful when performing an attest engagement on GHG emissions and another practitioner is reporting on the GHG emissions of a subsidiary or other component of the client entity. Other relevant information for the practitioner reporting on the subsidiary is whether the subsidiary is using the same protocol, scope of reporting, and boundaries as the parent entity. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Attestation Risk

**.59** Attestation risk is the risk that the practitioner may unknowingly fail to appropriately modify his or her attest report on the subject matter or assertion that is materially misstated. It consists of (a) the risk (consisting of *inherent risk* and *control risk*) that the subject matter or assertion contains deviations or misstatements that could be material and (b) the risk that the practitioner will not detect such deviations or misstatements. The degree of reliability between methods of measurement of emissions varies (inherent risk). For example, the degree of reliability from a stack test may be greater than that from the use of emissions factors. The reliability of the information also depends on the source of the GHGs and the measurement systems in place.

**.60** Examples of causes of possible misstatements of GHG inventory or GHG emission reduction information include the following:

- Human error in calculations
- Use of incorrect emissions factors
- Omission from the inventory of emissions from one or more emitting sources
- Omission from the inventory of one or more GHG emissions (for example, omission of methane emissions)
- Failure to properly account for leakage (for example, when the entity has outsourced a major function that accounted for a significant part of its GHG emissions baseline but has not adjusted its baseline to reflect such change)
- Failure to appropriately adjust the baseline for events such as sales or acquisitions of emitting sources
- Existence of one or more significant deficiencies in the entity's internal control over reporting of emissions information
- Double counting of an emission source within the entity

## Obtaining Sufficient Evidence

**.61** In conducting an attest engagement, the practitioner should accumulate sufficient appropriate evidence to restrict attestation risk to a level that is, in the practitioner's professional judgment, appropriately low for the high level of assurance that may be imparted by his or her report. A practitioner should select from all available procedures—that is, procedures that assess inherent and control risk and restrict detection risk—any combination that can restrict attestation risk to such an appropriately low level. (See paragraph .54 of AT section 101.) [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.62** Procedures that are relevant in an examination engagement of a GHG inventory or an emission reduction include, among others:

- a. Obtaining evidence of how emissions were calculated and any underlying methodologies, emission factors, and assumptions.
- b. Evaluating techniques used by the client to calculate the emissions or emission reduction, including how completeness and uncertainty are addressed in those calculations. Reductions are calculated by comparing the amount of emissions from one period to another. For clients reporting on a facility basis, this will usually be done annually. For clients reporting on a project basis, the period may vary depending on the nature of the project. Measurement techniques include, but are not limited to, the use of mass balance equations (MBE), emissions factors, stack tests, and direct measurement of emissions, including continuous emission monitors (CEMs). For reductions calculated in comparison to a base year, adjustments are evaluated to the base year based on structural changes with the client's organization and on changes in ownership/control of the emitting source(s). (Mergers, acquisitions, sales of emitting sources, outsourcing of certain functions, and joint ventures, how the entity accounts for joint ventures may cause leakage and would likely require adjustment of the baseline.) Note that adjustments based on organic growth or decline are generally not appropriate.
- c. Ascertaining whether there have been any changes in the protocol(s) used to calculate emissions. Where applicable, ascertain whether the subsidiary uses the same protocol.
- d. Conducting site visits as considered appropriate.
- e. Inquiring about the business purpose or reason behind such measurements or emission reductions.
- f. Ascertaining whether there have been any changes in baselines, such as sales or acquisitions of operational facilities or subsidiaries.
- g. Where applicable, obtaining information about the frequency of meter readings and calibration and maintenance of meters.
- h. Examining relevant contracts.
- i. Obtaining an understanding of the entity's internal control over the subject matter of the contracts and contractual aspects.
- j. Tracing information to supporting documents.
- k. Inquiring about the nature of significant judgments and estimates made by management and any uncertainties regarding measurements;

the practitioner should consider management's process for and internal control over developing those estimates, inquire about key factors and assumptions underlying those estimates, and evaluate the reasonableness thereof.

- l.* Where applicable, tracing emissions factors used to recognized sources.
- m.* Ascertaining whether emissions factors have been properly applied and whether the underlying assumptions are documented and have a reasonable basis.
- n.* Performing analytical procedures (for example, change in amounts from the previous year, fluctuations in amounts during the present year, variation from an independent expectation developed by the practitioner).
- o.* Where applicable, comparing emission data to number of units sold for the period.
- p.* Where applicable, confirming details of the transaction(s) (for example, quantity of methane sold or purchased) with the other party to the transaction.
- q.* Inquiring about whether there have been any changes in production levels (lower emissions due to a drop in production level might not be permanent); obtain evidence supporting production levels.
- r.* Inquiring about whether there have been any communications from regulators concerning emission levels or noncompliance with permits or regulatory schemes.
- s.* Obtaining supporting evidence for any emission reduction credits that are banked, purchased from, or sold to a third party (such information may be included in a public report on a GHG inventory).
- t.* Obtaining and reading environmental (or Environmental, Health and Safety [EH&S]) internal audit reports and minutes of audit committee meetings (or other relevant board committees to which the environmental/EH&S internal auditors report).
- u.* Inquiring about whether there have been any subsequent events that would affect the subject matter or the assertion.
- v.* Obtaining a legal letter when considered appropriate (for example, to address (1) noncompliance with regulatory schemes [emissions exceed permitted amount], (2) ownership of credits, or (3) the existence of any unasserted claims).
- w.* Obtaining written representations from management.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.63** Additional procedures that may be relevant in an examination engagement of GHG emission reduction information, include, among others:

- a.* Obtaining evidence of significant changes in the production process, switches from one fuel type to another, or other changes resulting in the emission reduction.
- b.* Evaluating techniques used by the client to calculate the emission reduction. Reductions are calculated by comparing the amount of emissions from one period to another, typically a year. Measurement techniques include but are not limited to the use of MBEs, stack tests, and metering of gases or effluents, including CEMs.

- c. Inquiring about the reason or business purpose for the reduction and consider the possible implications with respect thereto. Consider obtaining from management a written representation regarding the reason for the reduction project (See paragraph .36 of this SOP on additionality.)
- d. Inquiring about whether there are any permits applicable to the facility and, if so, examine the permit for factors that may have a bearing on the reduction project (for example, reductions that meet other requirements cannot be transferred).
- e. Where applicable, examining reports prepared by the seller for purposes other than the sale of the GHG credit (for example, an emission report filed with a regulatory agency) and check for consistency of information related to the sale.
- f. Where applicable, confirming details of emission reduction credits with the relevant GHG registry.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Consideration of Subsequent Events

**.64** Events or transactions sometimes occur subsequent to the point in time or period of time of the subject matter being tested but before the date of the practitioner's report that have a material effect on the subject matter and therefore require adjustment or disclosure in the presentation of the subject matter or the assertion. These occurrences are referred to as *subsequent events*. In performing an attest engagement, the practitioner should consider information about subsequent events that comes to his or her attention. While the practitioner has no responsibility to detect subsequent events, the practitioner should inquire of the responsible party (and his or her client if the client is not the responsible party) about whether they are aware of any subsequent events, through the date of the practitioner's report, that would have a material effect on the subject matter or the assertion. If the practitioner has decided to obtain a representation letter from the responsible party, the letter ordinarily would include a representation concerning subsequent events. (Paragraphs .95–.99 of AT section 101 provides additional guidance on the consideration of subsequent events in an attest engagement.) Types of events that may represent a subsequent event in the context of an attest engagement on GHG emissions include the following:

- Changes in baseline emissions due to events such as acquisition or disposition of facilities, change in number of shifts at a facility, or change in production levels
- Destruction of the facility to which an emission reduction relates
- In the case of a GHG emission reduction, unplanned or accidental release of sequestered carbon

## Adequacy of Disclosure

**.65** The occurrence of changes in the entity's boundaries or emissions calculation methodologies, and of mergers, divestitures, acquisitions, or closures may be significant to the users of the report. If so, the practitioner should determine whether the criteria are clearly stated or described for each of the dates or periods, and whether the changes have been adequately disclosed. (See

paragraphs .70 and .76–.77 of AT section 101.) See paragraph .72 of this SOP for reporting guidance. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Representation Letter

**.66** In an examination engagement, a practitioner should consider obtaining a representation letter from the responsible party. Written representations from the responsible party ordinarily confirm representations explicitly or implicitly given to the practitioner, indicate and document the continuing appropriateness of such representations, and reduce the possibility of misunderstanding concerning the matters that are the subject of the representations. Examples of matters that might appear in such a representation letter include the following:

- a. A statement acknowledging responsibility for the subject matter and, when applicable, the assertion
- b. A statement acknowledging responsibility for selecting the criteria, where applicable
- c. A statement acknowledging responsibility for determining that such criteria are appropriate for its purposes, where the responsible party is the client
- d. Management's assertion about the subject matter based on the criteria selected
- e. A statement acknowledging ownership of the emissions or emission reductions
- f. A statement that all known matters contradicting the assertion or presentation and any communication from regulatory agencies affecting the subject matter or the assertion have been disclosed to the practitioner
- g. A statement that management (responsible party) has disclosed to the practitioner all significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal control over its GHG inventory
- h. A statement regarding the availability of all records relevant to the subject matter
- i. A statement that management has responded fully to all inquiries made by the practitioner during the engagement
- j. A statement that any known events subsequent to the period (or point in time) of the subject matter being reported on that would have a material effect on the subject matter (or, if applicable, the assertion) have been disclosed to the practitioner
- k. Other matters as the practitioner deems appropriate
- l. Relevant to an emission reduction, a statement regarding the business purpose of the emission reduction project
- m. Relevant to an emission reduction, a statement that the reduction is both real and additional to any requirements

Appendix C (paragraph .82) includes an illustrative management representation letter.

**.67** When the client is not the responsible party, the practitioner should consider obtaining a letter of written representations from the client as part of

the attest engagement. Examples of matters that might appear in such a representation letter include the following:

- a. A statement regarding whether the client is aware of any matters that might contradict the subject matter or the assertion
- b. A statement that all known events subsequent to the period (or point in time) of the subject matter being reported on that would have a material effect on the subject matter (or, if applicable, the assertion) have been disclosed to the practitioner
- c. A statement acknowledging the client's responsibility for selecting the criteria, where applicable
- d. A statement acknowledging the client's responsibility for determining that such criteria are appropriate for its purposes
- e. Other matters as the practitioner deems appropriate

**.68** If the responsible party or the client refuses to furnish all written representations that the practitioner deems necessary, the practitioner should consider the effects of such a refusal on his or her ability to express an opinion about the subject matter. If the practitioner believes that the representation letter is necessary to obtain sufficient evidence to express an opinion, the responsible party's or the client's refusal to furnish such evidence in the form of written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of an examination sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion and is ordinarily sufficient to cause the practitioner to disclaim an opinion or withdraw from an examination engagement. However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the practitioner may conclude, in an examination engagement, that a qualified opinion is not appropriate. Further, the practitioner should consider the effects of the refusal on his or her ability to rely on other representations.

## Reporting

**.69** AT section 101 permits the practitioner to report either on the written assertion or directly on the subject matter to which the assertion relates. However, as stated in paragraph .66 of AT section 101, if conditions exist that, individually or in combination, result in one or more material misstatements or deviations from the criteria, the practitioner should modify the report and, to most effectively communicate with the readers of the report, should ordinarily express his or her opinion directly on the subject matter, not on the assertion.

**.70** The report should contain language describing inherent limitations, such as the following:

Environmental and energy use data are subject to inherent limitations, given the nature and the methods used for determining such data. The selection of different but acceptable measurement techniques can result in materially different measurements. The precision of different measurement techniques may also vary.

**.71** The precision of different measurement techniques may vary; for example, stack tests would provide more precise measurements than the use of published emission factors.

**.72** When the measurement methods and the application thereof have not been consistent from period to period, the practitioner's report should be

modified. The form of the modification depends on whether the presentation or management's assertion appropriately disclose those facts or whether prior periods, if presented or used in the calculation of a reduction, are restated. If the responsible party (that is, in most cases, the client) does not appropriately restate the baseline and prior period(s) inventory for the change, the practitioner should include an explanatory paragraph in the practitioner's report describing the lack of consistency and should express a qualified or an adverse opinion due to a departure from the criteria. If the responsible party does appropriately restate, the practitioner should include an explanatory paragraph (following the opinion paragraph) in his or her report that refers to the change in the measurement methods or application.

**.73** When the trading scheme or GHG registry contains specific materiality requirements that are more stringent than those of AT section 101, the practitioner may include a reference to those requirements in the attest report. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.

**.74** AT section 101 requires the report on an attest examination engagement to contain a statement of management's responsibility for the subject matter or the assertion. The statement of management's responsibility may also address management's responsibility for selecting and adhering to the criteria used.

**.75** Appendix D (paragraph .83) presents illustrative reports for the examination of an entity's GHG emissions information for a period of time. Appendix E (paragraph .84) presents illustrative reports for the examination of an entity's GHG emission reduction information.

**.76** The practitioner, in his or her attest report, may refer to the report of another practitioner under the following circumstances:

- When reporting on an attest engagement on GHG emissions and another practitioner is providing assurance with respect to the GHG emissions of a subsidiary or other component of the client entity
- When reporting on an attest engagement on an emission reduction and another practitioner has examined and reported on the entity's emissions inventory

See Appendix D (paragraph .83), Example 3, for an example examination report that refers to the report of another practitioner.

**.77** The practitioner reporting on the emission reduction would only be able to divide responsibility with the practitioner reporting on the GHG inventory information if both practitioners are reporting on emissions information for the same emission source(s) addressed by the reduction project. For example, if practitioner A reported on GHG inventory for Plant X for which practitioner B is reporting on the emission reduction, practitioner B may divide responsibility by referring in his or her report to the work of practitioner A. However, if practitioner A reported on the company's GHG inventory for its nationwide operations taken as a whole, practitioner B, who is reporting only on the reduction project at Plant X, would need to perform sufficient additional procedures on the GHG inventory at Plant X and should not refer in his or her report to the work of practitioner A.

## Attest Documentation

.78 Paragraphs .100–.107 of AT section 101 set documentation requirements. The practitioner should be aware that the GHG registry or regulatory scheme relevant to the attest engagement may have set additional documentation requirements for those providing assurance on GHG emissions inventories or reductions (sometimes referred to as *verifiers*).

## Effective Date

.79 This SOP is effective for reports on attest engagements on GHG emissions information issued on or after December 15, 2003. Early implementation is permitted.

## Appendix A

### Glossary

**additionality.** A project is *additional* if it would not have happened but for the incentive provided by the credit trading program (for example, Clean Development Mechanism [CDM] or Joint Implementation [JI]). The Kyoto Protocol specifies that only projects that provide emission reductions that are *additional* to any that would occur in the absence of the project activity shall be awarded certified emission reductions (CERs) in the case of CDM projects or emission reduction units (ERUs) in the case of JI projects. This is often referred to as environmental additionality. Financial additionality is the notion that a project is made commercially viable through its ability to generate value in the form of certified emission reductions. Various greenhouse gas (GHG) registries or regulatory frameworks may define these terms differently.

**allowance.** An allowance is the unit of trade under a trading system. In a closed trading system, trading of allowances is permitted only between parties subject to the scheme or regulatory system. Allowances grant the holder the right to emit a specific quantity (for example, one ton) of emissions once. The total quantity of allowances issued by regulators dictates the total quantity of emissions possible under the system. Allowances are typically granted to emitters by governmental entities or agencies either for free or for a fee. At the end of each compliance period each source must surrender sufficient allowances to cover its emissions during that period. In an open trading system, trades can be made between parties within the system and parties outside the system.

**baseline.** A baseline refers to the level of emissions during some specified period, often referred to as a “baseline year.” Emission reductions targets are often expressed as a percent reduction from the baseline emission level.

**Boundaries.** There are two types of boundaries: organizational and operational. When accounting for GHG emissions from partially owned entities, it is important to draw clear organizational boundaries, which should be consistent with the organizational boundaries that have been drawn up for financial reporting purposes. After the entity has determined its organizational boundaries in terms of the entities it owns or controls, it must then set operational boundaries with respect to direct and indirect emissions. The WRI/WBCSD Greenhouse Gas Protocol provides additional guidance on setting organizational and operational boundaries with respect to GHG emissions.

**certification.** The process used to ensure that a given participant’s GHG inventory (either the baseline or the annual result) has met a minimum quality standard and complied with a specific registry’s procedures and protocols for calculating and reporting GHG emissions is often referred to as a certification. Many perceive that a certification would be required to provide a higher level of assurance than a verification or a practitioner’s examination report.

**closed trading system.** In a closed trading system, trading of allowances is permitted only between parties subject to the scheme or regulatory system. (See also “Open trading system.”)

**credit.** The term *credit* is used in a number of contexts, most commonly in relation to emission reductions that have been achieved in excess of the required amount for one of the following:

- The Kyoto Protocol's Joint Implementation (JI), also known as emission reduction units (ERUs)
- The Kyoto Protocol's Clean Development Mechanism (CDM), specifically known as Certified Emission Reductions (CERs)
- The Kyoto-related and voluntary trading schemes

**data assembly.** Data assembly is the process the client uses to “roll-up” individual site or process level information to a facility- or corporate-level report. For example, the entity may choose to have a manufacturing unit report only the number of widgets it produced each year and have corporate level environmental staff apply the appropriate emission factors to calculate the resultant emissions. Alternatively, the entity may choose to have all calculations done at the operational level and assign only quality control responsibilities to the corporate staff.

**direct GHG emissions.** Direct GHG emissions, or Scope 1 reporting under the WRI/WBCSD Greenhouse Gas Protocol, represent emissions associated with the following:

- Production of electricity, heat, or steam
- Physical or chemical processing
- Transportation by the entity of, for example, materials, products, waste, and employees
- Fugitive emissions

**GHG inventory.** An entity's GHG emissions for a compliance period, such as a year, is referred to as its GHG inventory.

**indirect GHG emissions.** Indirect emissions, or Scope 2 reporting under the WRI/WBCSD Greenhouse Gas Protocol, represent emissions from the generation of imported or purchased electricity, heat, or steam. Other indirect emissions, or Scope 3 reporting under the GHG Protocol, include the following:

- Employee business travel
- Outsourced activities, contract manufacturing, and franchises
- Transportation by the vendor or contractor of, for example, materials, products, waste, and employees
- Emissions from product use and end of life
- Employee commuting
- Production of imported materials

**inventory.** See “GHG inventory.”

**leakage.** Leakage occurs when an emission reduction project causes emissions to increase beyond the project's boundaries. Entities entering into an emission reduction project typically must demonstrate that the emission reduction will not cause emissions to increase beyond the project's boundaries.

**offset.** Offsets are created when a source makes voluntary, permanent emission reductions that are in surplus to any required reductions. Entities that create offsets can trade them to other entities to cover growth or relocation. Regulators may be required to approve each trade. Regulators normally

require a portion of the offsets to be retired to ensure an overall reduction in emissions. Offsets are an open system (an open system is one in which trades can be made between parties within the system and parties outside the system). One offset is an emission reduction that a pollution source has achieved in excess of permitted levels and/or required reductions. The excess amount is the credit and can be sold on the market.

**open trading system.** In an open trading system, trades can be made between parties within the system and parties outside the system. (See “Closed trading system.”)

**permit.** Permits are certificates of operation that allow holders to operate a facility provided they do not exceed a specified rate (kilograms/tons per day). Permits are often designated as an upper limit. Because few systems operate at 100 percent of capacity at all times, actual emissions are usually a fraction of the theoretical upper limit of allowed emissions. However, as new permits become harder to obtain, existing operations are motivated to increase their level of operations under their existing permits (for example, by adding a second shift, thereby legally increasing the overall quantity of emissions). Allowances (see “Allowances”) are transferable, while the permit itself is attached to a specific installation or site.

**validation.** The process used to ensure that a given project, if implemented, can achieve the projected reduction results. The entity may validate the feasibility of the design of an emission reduction project internally, or the entity may engage an outside party (typically an engineering or a consulting firm) to perform the validation.

**verification.** A *verification* is the objective and independent assessment of whether the reported GHG inventory properly reflects the GHG impact of the entity in conformance with pre-established GHG accounting and reporting standards.

**verified emission reductions (VERs).** VERs are created, in the absence of government rules, by project-based activities that are defined by the buyer and seller and verified by a third party.

## Emissions Trading Programs

**baseline-and-credit program.** In a baseline-and-credit program (that is, credit- or project-based trading), each participant is provided a baseline against which its performance is measured. If an action is taken to reduce emissions, the difference between the baseline and the actual emissions, where actual emissions are less than the baseline, can be credited and traded. The baseline established for crediting purposes can be fixed or dynamic, decreasing or increasing over time. The key distinction between a cap-and-trade program and a baseline-and-credit program is that in the former, regulated sources’ emissions are required to remain under an emissions cap, which is a fixed quantity. Such a limit is not necessarily imposed in a baseline-and-credit program. The Kyoto Protocol’s Clean Development Mechanism (CDM), for example, would operate as a baseline-and-credit program.<sup>10</sup>

**cap-and-trade program.** In a cap-and-trade program (that is, allowance-based trading), the maximum level of emissions that can be released from sources is set by the control authority. This level is the cap. All sources are required to have allowances to emit. The allowances are freely transferable;

<sup>10</sup> Adapted from Richard Rosenzweig and Josef Janssen, *The Emerging International Greenhouse Gas Market* (Arlington, Va.: Pew Center on Global Climate Change, 2002).

they can be bought or sold. The control authority issues exactly the number of allowances needed to produce the desired emission level. The largest example of this kind of system, and the most comprehensive trading program to date, is Title IV of the U.S. Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990, under which allowances of SO<sub>2</sub> can be traded to comply with an emissions cap.<sup>11</sup>

---

<sup>11</sup> See footnote 1.



Appendix B

Sources for GHG Emission Protocols and Calculation Tools

These tools are included solely as informational resources. They are not, however, endorsed by the AICPA.

World Resource  
Institute/World  
Business Council for  
Sustainable Develop-  
ment (WRI/WBCSD)  
Greenhouse Gas  
Protocol

[www.ghgprotocol.org/  
standard/standard.htm](http://www.ghgprotocol.org/standard/standard.htm)

GHG Calculation Tools  
(cross-sector and sector  
specific tools)

[www.ghgprotocol.org/  
standard/tools.htm](http://www.ghgprotocol.org/standard/tools.htm)

This Web site contains tools  
for the following:

- Calculating N<sub>2</sub>O emissions from the production of adipic acid
- Calculating CO<sub>2</sub> and PFC emissions from the production of aluminum
- Calculating CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from the production of ammonia
- Calculating CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from the production of cement
- Calculating HFC-23 emissions from the production of HCFC-22
- Calculating CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from the production of iron and steel
- Calculating CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from the production of lime
- Calculating N<sub>2</sub>O emissions from the production of nitric acid
- Calculating CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from mobile combustion
- Calculating GHG emissions from office-based organizations
- Calculating GHG emissions from pulp and paper mills

(continued)

California Climate  
Action Registry

[www.climateregistry.org](http://www.climateregistry.org)

- Calculating PFC emissions from the production of semiconductor wafers
- Calculating CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from stationary combustion
- Certification Protocol (Committee report) June 2002
- General Reporting Protocol (Committee report) June 2002

## Appendix C

### Illustrative Management Representation Letter

[Date]

[Name of CPA Firm]

We are providing this letter in connection with your examination of our assertion(s) that *[describe assertion(s), for example, the accompanying schedule of greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions information for XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX, is presented in conformity with (identify criteria)]*.

We are responsible for *[describe assertions and subject matter]*. We further confirm that we are responsible for the selection of *[identify criteria used, for example the World Resource Institute/World Business Council for Sustainable Development Greenhouse Gas Protocol]* as the criteria against which you are evaluating our assertion(s). Further we confirm that we are responsible for determining that *[identify criteria]* represent appropriate criteria for our purposes.

We confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, the following representations made to you during your examination:

1. We are not aware of any matters contradicting the assertion(s), nor have we received any communications from regulatory agencies or *[identify organizations to which the company reports GHG emissions]* affecting the subject matter or our assertion(s) on such subject matter.
2. We have disclosed to you all significant emission sources. There are no material emissions that have not been recorded in the greenhouse gas (GHG) emission records underlying our assertion referred to above.
3. There has been no (a) fraud involving management or employees who have significant roles in the Company's processes and procedures relating to measurements of emissions in conformity with the criteria specified above or (b) fraud involving others that could have a material effect on measurements of emissions in conformity with the selected criteria.
4. There are no significant deficiencies in the design or operation of the Company's internal control over its GHG inventory.
5. We have made available to you all records relevant to your examination of the aforementioned subject matter or assertion(s).
6. We have responded fully to all inquiries made by you during the engagement.
7. *[Add additional representations as deemed appropriate.]*

We are not aware of any events that occurred subsequent to the period being reported on and through the date of this letter that would have a material effect on the aforementioned subject matter or assertion(s).

---

[Name of chief executive officer and title]

---

[Name of corporate environmental officer and title]

*[The following illustrates an example of a written assertion and additional representations that should be obtained in connection with GHG emission reductions:]*

Example assertion in connection with an emission reduction:

XYZ Company reduced GHG emissions in connection with project ABC by 50,000 tons of CO<sub>2</sub> equivalents for the year ended December 31, 20XX, based on *[identify criteria selected by management]*.

Additional representations:

The GHG emission reduction project was undertaken for the purpose of *[describe business purpose]*. The GHG emission reductions were achieved as a direct result of the project and not as a result of any changes in activity level. The GHG emission reductions related to the project are both real and additional to any requirements. Further, we have satisfactory title to all GHG emission reduction credits related to the project, and there are no liens or encumbrances on such GHG emission reduction credits, nor have any GHG emission reduction credits been pledged as collateral.

## Appendix D

### Illustrative Examination Reports on GHG Emissions Information

The report examples illustrated herein are for general use; see paragraphs .78–.83 of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1, for requirements and guidance on restricting the use of an attest report.

#### Example 1—Reporting on Subject Matter

##### Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the accompanying schedule of greenhouse gas emissions information of XYZ Company (the Company) for *[identify period; for example, the year ended December 31, 20XX]*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the schedule of greenhouse gas emissions information. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of the nature of the Company's greenhouse gas emissions and its internal control over greenhouse gas emissions information, examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the Company's schedule of greenhouse gas emissions information and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Environmental and energy use data are subject to inherent limitations, given the nature and the methods used for determining such data. The selection of different but acceptable measurement techniques can result in materially different measurements. The precision of different measurement techniques may also vary.

In our opinion, the schedule referred to above presents, in all material respects, the greenhouse gas emissions information of XYZ Company for *[identify period; for example, the year ended December 31, 20XX]* in conformity with *[identify criteria]*.

*[Signature]*

*[Date]*

#### Example 2—Reporting on Management's Assertion

##### Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined management's assertion that *[identify the assertion—for example, the accompanying schedule of greenhouse gas emissions information for XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX, is presented in conformity with (identify criteria)]*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the assertion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of the nature of the Company's greenhouse gas emissions and its internal control over greenhouse gas

emissions information, examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting management's assertion and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Environmental and energy use data are subject to inherent limitations, given the nature and the methods used for determining such data. The selection of different but acceptable measurement techniques can result in materially different measurements. The precision of different measurement techniques may also vary.

In our opinion, management's assertion referred to above is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on *[identify criteria]*.

*[Signature]*

*[Date]*

### **Example 3—Reporting on Subject Matter; Includes Reference to the Report of Another Practitioner**

#### Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the accompanying schedule of greenhouse gas emissions information of XYZ Company and subsidiaries (the Company) for the year ended December 31, 20XX. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the schedule of greenhouse gas emissions information. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination. We did not examine the schedule of greenhouse gas emissions information for B Company, a wholly owned subsidiary, which reflected 20 percent of the related consolidated emissions. This schedule was examined by other accountants, whose report has been furnished to us and our opinion, insofar as it relates to the amounts included for B Company, is based solely on the report of the other accountants.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of the nature of the Company's greenhouse gas emissions and its internal control over greenhouse gas emissions information, examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the Company's schedule of greenhouse gas emissions information and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination and the report of the other accountants provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Environmental and energy use data are subject to inherent limitations, given the nature and the methods used for determining such data. The selection of different but acceptable measurement techniques can result in materially different measurements. The precision of different measurement techniques may also vary.

In our opinion, based on our examination and the report of the other accountants, the schedule referred to above presents, in all material respects, the greenhouse gas emissions information of XYZ Company for the year ended December 31, 20XX, in conformity with *[identify criteria]*.

*[Signature]*

*[Date]*

## Appendix E

### Illustrative Examination Reports on GHG Emission Reduction Information

The report examples illustrated herein are for general use; see paragraphs .78–.83 of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), for requirements and guidance on restricting the use of an attest report.

#### Example 1—Reporting on Subject Matter

##### Independent Accountant's Report

We have examined the schedule of greenhouse gas emission reduction information of XYZ Company related to the ABC project for the year ended December 31, 20XX. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the greenhouse gas emission reduction information. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of the nature of the Company's greenhouse gas emissions and its internal control over greenhouse gas emission reduction information, examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the greenhouse gas emission reduction information and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Environmental and energy use data are subject to inherent limitations, given the nature and the methods used for determining such data. The selection of different but acceptable measurement techniques can result in materially different measurements. The precision of different measurement techniques may also vary.

Our engagement related to the specific project identified above. We were not engaged to, and did not, examine XYZ Company's entity-wide greenhouse gas emissions inventory or whether the entity has reduced its entity-wide greenhouse gas emissions inventory. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on its entity-wide greenhouse gas emissions inventory or changes from prior periods.

In our opinion, the schedule of greenhouse gas emission reduction information of XYZ Company related to ABC project for the year ended December 31, 20XX is presented, in all material respects, in conformity with *[identify criteria]*.

*[Signature]*

*[Date]*

## Example 2—Reporting on Management’s Assertion

### Independent Accountant’s Report

We have examined management’s assertion that *[identify the assertion; for example, XYZ Company reduced GHG emissions in connection with project ABC by 50,000 tons of CO2 equivalents for the year ended December 31, 20XX]* based on *[identify criteria selected by management]*. XYZ Company’s management is responsible for the assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the assertion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of the nature of the Company’s greenhouse gas emissions and its internal control over greenhouse gas emission reduction information, examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting management’s assertion and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Environmental and energy use data are subject to inherent limitations, given the nature and the methods used for determining such data. The selection of different but acceptable measurement techniques can result in materially different measurements. The precision of different measurement techniques may also vary.

Our engagement related to the specific project identified above. We were not engaged to, and did not, examine XYZ Company’s entity-wide greenhouse gas emissions inventory or whether the entity has reduced its entity-wide greenhouse gas emissions inventory. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion or any other form of assurance on its entity-wide greenhouse gas emissions inventory or changes from prior periods.

In our opinion, management’s assertion referred to above is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the *[identify criteria]*.

*[Signature]*

*[Date]*

## Joint Task Force of the AICPA and CICA on Sustainability Reporting

BETH A. SCHNEIDER, *Chair*  
RON BERGIN  
DENNIS R. JENNINGS  
ERIC ISRAEL

JOHN L. PAYNE, P.E.  
EMIL RAGONES  
ALAN WILLIS

### AICPA Staff

CHARLES E. LANDES  
*Director*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

JANE M. MANCINO  
*Technical Manager*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

J. LOUIS MATHERNE  
*Director*  
*Business Assurance and Advisory Services*

### CICA Staff

GREGORY P. SHIELDS, CA  
*Director*  
*Assurance Services Development*

The Joint Task Force of the AICPA and CICA on Sustainability Reporting gratefully acknowledges the contributions of Michael J. Radcliffe in the development of this SOP.

---

[The next page is 31,701.]



**Section 14,410****Statement of Position 04-1 Auditing the Statement of Social Insurance**

November 22, 2004

**NOTE**

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretive publication and represents the recommendations of the AICPA's Social Insurance Task Force (task force) regarding the application of Statements on Auditing Standards to audits of statements of social insurance prepared in accordance with the standards of the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB). Audits of federal government agencies are also governed by *Government Auditing Standards* ("the Yellow Book") and applicable Office of Management and Budget (OMB) guidance.

The Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has found the recommendations in this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 202 par. .01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct. Interpretive publications are not as authoritative as pronouncements of the ASB; however, if an auditor does not apply the guidance included in this SOP, the auditor should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the provisions of this SOP.

Financial reporting for social insurance programs and auditing of statements of social insurance are developing areas of practice. As auditors gain additional experience in implementing this SOP, the task force will monitor and consider feedback from auditors and users of statements of social insurance, and will determine whether additional or revised guidance on this subject is needed.

**Introduction**

**.01** The Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) establishes accounting standards for reporting information about the following social insurance programs:

- a. Old-Age Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI or Social Security)
- b. Medicare ([Hospital Insurance [HI] and Medicare Supplementary Medical Insurance [SMI])
- c. Railroad Retirement benefits
- d. Black Lung benefits
- e. Unemployment Insurance

**.02** FASAB standards require the financial statements of the federal agencies responsible for the Social Security, Medicare, Railroad Retirement, and Black Lung programs and the financial statements of the federal government-wide entity to present a statement of social insurance as a basic

financial statement. FASAB standards require these agencies and the government-wide entity to report:

- a. The estimated present value of the income to be received from or on behalf of the following groups during a projection<sup>1</sup> period sufficient to illustrate the long-term sustainability of the social insurance programs:
  - (1) Current participants who have not yet attained retirement age
  - (2) Current participants who have attained retirement age
  - (3) Individuals expected to become participants
- b. The estimated present value of the benefit payments to be made during that same period to or on behalf of the groups listed in item a
- c. The estimated net present value of the cash flows during the projection period (the income described in item a over the expenditures described in item b, or the expenditures described in item b over the income described in item a)
- d. In notes to the statement of social insurance:
  - (1) The accumulated excess of all past cash receipts, including interest on investments, over all past cash disbursements within the social insurance program represented by the fund balance at the valuation date
  - (2) An explanation of how the net present value referred to in item c is calculated for the closed group<sup>2</sup> (Paragraph 27(3)(i) of Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards [SFFAS] No. 17, *Accounting for Social Insurance*, identifies the information to be included in this explanation.)
  - (3) Comparative financial information for items a, b, c, and d(1) for the current year and for each of the four preceding years
  - (4) The significant assumptions used in preparing the estimates

**.03** The income, expenditures, and net present value of cash flows recognized in the statement of social insurance differ from traditional concepts of income and expenditures for retirement and health benefit programs. Financial reporting for social insurance programs includes estimates of income and expenditures not only for current program participants but also for individuals expected to become participants in social insurance programs in the future. In paragraphs 26–28 of the basis for conclusions section of SFFAS No. 25, *Reclassification of Stewardship Responsibilities and Eliminating the Current Services Assessment*, FASAB acknowledges this difference and explains why the recognition of such amounts is essential to the fair presentation of federal financial statements:

---

<sup>1</sup> The AICPA Guide *Prospective Financial Information* (guide) defines the term *projection* and differentiates it from the term *forecast*. In this Statement of Position (SOP), the term projection is used in its generic sense, as it is used in standards issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) and the federal agencies that administer social insurance programs. The use of the term *projection* in this SOP is not intended to suggest that information presented in the statement of social insurance is a projection as defined in the guide or that the provisions of the guide would apply to the audit of the statement of social insurance.

<sup>2</sup> The *closed group* is defined as those persons who, as of a valuation date, are participants in a social insurance program as beneficiaries, covered workers, or payers of earmarked taxes or premiums.

26. The Board believes that the SOSI [statement of social insurance] should be treated as a basic financial statement because it is essential to fair presentation and is important to achieve the objectives of federal financial reporting. The related stewardship objectives include helping users to assess the impact on the country of the Government's activities, determine whether the Government's financial position improved or deteriorated over the period, and predict whether future budgetary resources will likely be sufficient to sustain public services and meet obligations as they come due. In that regard, the multi-trillion dollar obligations associated with Social Insurance over the next 75 years could significantly exceed the largest liabilities currently recognized in the U.S. Government Balance Sheet.

27. The Board acknowledges that there is great uncertainty inherent in long term projections, but believes that if the uncertainty is suitably disclosed—as is required by SFFAS 17—it need not preclude designating the information as a basic financial statement, essential for fair presentation in conformity with GAAP...

28. Even within the context of historical financial reporting, the Board notes that accrual-basis “historical” financial statements include many measurements that involve assumptions about the future. The distinction between reporting on the financial effects of events that have occurred and the effects of future events depends, obviously, upon the definition of the event. The information required by SFFAS 17 reports on the financial effects of existing law and demographic conditions and assumptions, just as the pension obligation at a point in time is based on existing conditions. In that sense, Social Insurance information can be viewed as reflecting events that have occurred and, therefore, as “historical.”

## Applicability

.04 This Statement of Position (SOP) provides guidance to auditors in auditing the statement of social insurance for the following social insurance programs:

- a. Old-Age Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI or Social Security)
- b. Medicare (Hospital Insurance [HI] and Medicare Supplementary Medical Insurance [SMI])
- c. Railroad Retirement benefits
- d. Black Lung benefits

As permitted by AU section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), a principal auditor may fulfill the requirements of this SOP by using work that other independent auditors have performed in conformity with the provisions of this SOP. For example, for the OASDI program, the auditor of the federal government-wide financial statements may use the work and report of the auditor of the Social Security Administration's statement of social insurance.

## Management's Responsibilities

.05 The agency's management (management) is responsible for preparing the statement of social insurance and the estimates underlying it in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. In doing so, management must

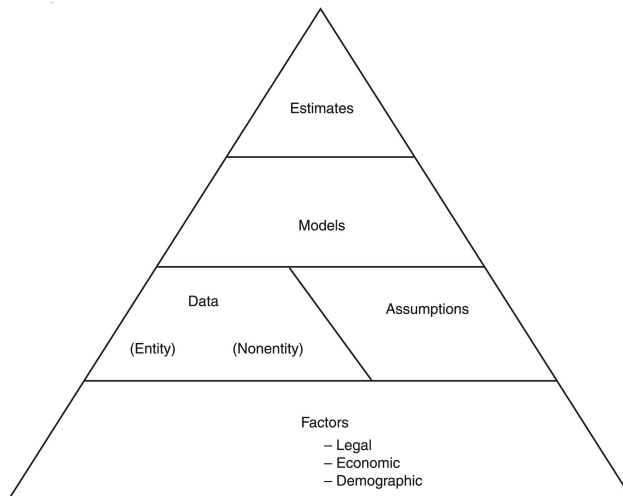
determine its best estimate<sup>3</sup> of the economic and demographic conditions that will exist in the future. Because estimates in the statement of social insurance are based on subjective as well as objective factors, management must use judgment to estimate amounts included in the statement of social insurance. Management's judgment ordinarily is based on its knowledge and experience about past and current events and its assumptions about conditions it expects to exist. Management is responsible for the accuracy and completeness of the statement of social insurance.

## Preparing Social Insurance Estimates

**.06** Management is responsible for preparing the estimates underlying the statement of social insurance. That process ordinarily consists of:

- a. Identifying the relevant factors that may affect the estimates
- b. Developing assumptions that represent management's best estimate of circumstances and events with respect to the relevant factors
- c. Accumulating relevant, sufficient, and reliable data on which to base the estimates
- d. Determining the estimated amounts based on assumptions and other relevant factors
- e. Determining that the estimates are presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and that disclosure is adequate

## Conceptual Model



**Figure 1: Elements of the Process of Developing Social Insurance Estimates**

<sup>3</sup> Paragraph 25 of FASAB Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards (SFFAS) No. 17, *Accounting for Social Insurance*, states, in part, "The projections and estimates used should be based on the entity's best estimates of demographic and economic assumptions, taking each factor individually and incorporating future changes mandated by current law." Certain agencies prepare social insurance information using assumptions prepared by a board of trustees. Auditors should consider such assumptions to represent the agency's "best estimates" if the trustees have characterized them as such, and agency management has determined them to be reasonable. With respect to these assumptions, the auditor should perform audit procedures that are consistent with the guidance in paragraphs .09–.35 of this SOP.

.07 Figure 1, “Elements of the Process of Developing Social Insurance Estimates,” is a conceptual model depicting the elements of the process that results in the statement of social insurance. It is not intended to depict the<sup>4</sup> actual process used by an organization to develop the statement of social insurance. With the assistance of internal and external specialists, management considers, identifies, and documents factors, assumptions, and data that serve as input to a model for developing estimates. The factors, data, assumptions, and models used to develop the statement of social insurance are closely interrelated and may not be separable. Following are definitions of the terms used in figure 1:

- a. *Factors.* The elements or variables that affect income or expenditures for a program and for which data must be gathered and assumptions must be generated, for example, legal, economic, and demographic factors. An example of a factor is the number of individuals reaching age 65 in a specific year.
- b. *Assumptions.* Expectations about what will happen in the future. An example of an assumption is that there will be a 1 percent increase in the number of women working outside the home in each of the next five years. An assumption is expressed as a value or direction assigned to a factor.
- c. *Data.* Organized factual information used for analysis or to make decisions. An example is census data and classifications of that data, such as the population classified by sex or age. Data may be developed within the entity that prepares the statement of social insurance or it may come from sources outside the entity.
- d. *Models.* Methods or formulas for mathematically expressing how the assumptions and data relate to each other. For example, a model might indicate that a 1 percent decline in the birth rate in a given year will result in a 0.2 percent decrease in social insurance income and benefit payments 10 years later. A model is a set of coded instructions, rules, or procedures used to perform a desired sequence of events or to obtain a result. Typically, models are developed by using various computer applications.
- e. *Estimates.* The amounts or valuations that result after processing the factors, data, and assumptions in a model. These estimates will be used in preparing the statement of social insurance.

[Paragraph revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Designing and Implementing Internal Control Related to Estimates

.08 Controls that are designed and implemented in a manner consistent with Standards for Internal Control in the Federal Government issued by the Government Accountability Office help ensure the accuracy and completeness of the statement of social insurance. An entity’s internal control may reduce the likelihood of material misstatements of financial statement assertions involving estimates. Among the aspects of internal control that are relevant to the process of developing estimates are the following:

---

<sup>4</sup> Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular No. A-123, *Management Accountability and Control*, section II, “Establishing Management Controls,” states, in part, “...documentation for transactions, management controls, and other significant events must be clear and readily available for examination.”

- a. Management communication of the need for proper estimates
- b. Accumulation of relevant, sufficient, and reliable data on which to base accounting estimates
- c. Preparation of the estimates by qualified personnel
- d. Adequate review and approval of the estimates by appropriate levels of authority, for example:
  - (1) Review of the sources of the relevant factors
  - (2) Review of the process used to develop assumptions
  - (3) Review of the reasonableness of the assumptions and resulting estimates
  - (4) Consideration of the need to use the work of specialists
  - (5) Consideration of changes in previously established methods for developing estimates
- e. Comparison of prior estimates with actual subsequent results to assess the reliability of the process and models used to develop the estimates
- f. Appropriate general and application controls related to computer-based models used in the calculation of estimates included in the statement of social insurance

[Paragraph revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## The Auditor's Responsibility

.09 Paragraph .10 of AU section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that the auditor should obtain an understanding of how management developed the estimate. Based on that understanding, the auditor should use one or a combination of the following approaches to evaluate the reasonableness of an estimate:

- a. Review and test the process used by management to develop the estimate.
- b. Develop an independent expectation of the estimate to corroborate the reasonableness of management's estimate.
- c. Review subsequent events or transactions occurring prior to the date of the auditor's report.

In auditing the statement of social insurance, if controls over the estimation process are effective, the most practicable and efficient approach may be to review and test the process used by management. However, if the auditor finds that controls over the estimation process are ineffective, the auditor should consider whether it is practicable to:

- Develop an independent expectation of the estimate, or portions of the estimate, to corroborate management's estimate
- or
- Obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence from outside the audited agency's process that would support the assertions in the statement of social insurance.

If it is not practicable to mitigate the effects of the ineffective controls through substantive procedures such as these, the auditor's report on the statement of social insurance should be modified. [Paragraph revised, June 2009, to reflect

conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.10** The auditor's objective when auditing the statement of social insurance is to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to provide reasonable assurance that:

- a. The estimates presented in the statement of social insurance are reasonable in the circumstances.
- b. The statement of social insurance is presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, including adequate disclosure.

Paragraphs .11–.43 of this SOP describe how the auditor achieves this objective. As discussed in footnote 9 of paragraph .19, if the auditor does not possess the level of competence in actuarial science to qualify as an actuary, it is necessary for the auditor to obtain the services of an independent actuary<sup>5</sup> to assist the auditor in planning and performing auditing procedures. Generally, the auditor will need the assistance of an independent actuary in performing various procedures during all phases of the audit and related to all elements of the estimates. [Paragraph revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Obtaining an Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment, Including Its Internal Control

**.11** AU section 314, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), requires the auditor to obtain a sufficient understanding of the entity and its environment, including its internal control, to assess the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements whether due to error or fraud, and to design the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures. [Paragraph added, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.12** The procedures the auditor performs to obtain the required understanding are known as *risk assessment procedures*. In an audit of the statement of social insurance, the auditor's risk assessment procedures should include

- a. obtaining knowledge about the agency and its environment including the following matters:
  - (1) The agency's program and its operations including relevant laws and regulations governing the program that have a direct and material effect on the statement of social insurance (paragraphs .13–.14)

---

<sup>5</sup> The actuary can either be under contract with the audit firm or employed by the audit firm. In either case, the actuary performing services for the audit firm would need to meet the independence standards of generally accepted governmental auditing standards (GAGAS), which are applicable to audits of statements of social insurance. For example, for actuaries under contract with the audit firm, the auditor should determine whether the actuary's firm is independent of the agency being audited and then assess the actuary's ability to impartially perform the work and report results. In conducting this assessment, the auditor should provide the actuary with the GAGAS independence requirements and obtain representations from the actuary regarding his or her independence from the audited entity. For actuaries employed by the audit firm, the independence requirements are the same as those for auditors. Paragraphs 3.06–.18 of chapter 3, "General Standards," *Government Auditing Standards: 2003 Revision* (GAO-03-673G) describe applicable independence requirements.

- (2) The agency's process for developing, evaluating, and incorporating estimates in the statement of social insurance (paragraph .15)
- (3) The work performed by the agency's actuary (paragraphs .16–.20)
- (4) The work performed and findings reported by any external review groups that have been commissioned by the agency, an appropriate advisory board, or the trustees<sup>6</sup> (paragraph .21).
- b. considering materiality (paragraphs .22–.23).
- c. obtaining an understanding of the agency's internal control as it relates to the preparation of the statement of social insurance (paragraphs .24–.27).
- d. assessing the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements (paragraphs .28–.29).<sup>7</sup>
- e. performing further audit procedures (paragraphs .30–.35).

[Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### ***Obtaining Knowledge About the Agency's Program and Its Operations***

**.13** Relevant knowledge about the program and its operations includes the following:

- a. The nature of the program's activities
- b. The source of its funding
- c. Who the beneficiaries are

[Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.14** An important aspect of the program and its operations are the laws and regulations governing the program that may have a direct and material effect on amounts reported as social insurance income and expenditures. To obtain the laws and regulations governing the operation of the social insurance program, the auditor may request them from agency management. Through inquiry of management, the auditor may obtain information about

- a. the laws and regulations that significantly affect the determination of amounts included in the statement of social insurance and
- b. how management has given effect to changes in laws and to new regulations published in final form in determining future social insurance income and expenditures.

---

<sup>6</sup> Certain social insurance programs are overseen by a board of trustees. For example, the Social Security Act establishes a board of trustees to oversee the financial operations of the Federal Old-Age and Survivors Insurance Trust Fund and the Federal Disability Insurance Trust Fund. The board is composed of six members, four of whom serve automatically by virtue of their positions in the federal government: the Secretary of the Treasury (the managing trustee), the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of Health and Human Services, and the Commissioner of Social Security. The other two members are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate to serve as public representatives.

<sup>7</sup> The auditor generally would conclude that inherent risk is high for assertions about estimates in the statement of social insurance because of the complexity of such estimates and the need for significant judgment in preparing them. Other factors that may affect inherent risk in auditing the statement of social insurance include the political climate surrounding social insurance programs, budget limitations, and economic conditions.

[Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### ***Obtaining Knowledge About the Agency's Process for Developing, Evaluating, and Incorporating Estimates in the Statement of Social Insurance***

**.15** The auditor should obtain knowledge about the agency's process for developing, evaluating, and incorporating estimates in the statement of social insurance. Procedures the auditor may perform to obtain that knowledge include the following:

- a. Making inquiries of management; individuals responsible for initiating, processing, or recording estimates; and internal and external specialists with expertise in relevant subject matter, such as actuarial science, economics, and law.
- b. Reading entity or nonentity documents and records used to prepare the statement of social insurance, as well as the agency's documentation of the process for preparing the statement of social insurance.
- c. Observing entity activities and operations used to prepare the statement of social insurance, such as transferring data from a tabulation report to a computerized application.

[Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### ***Obtaining Knowledge About the Work Performed by the Agency's Actuary***

**.16** Information presented in the statement of social insurance ordinarily is determined on the basis of an actuarial valuation of the program performed or reviewed by the agency's actuary, using data received from sources inside and outside the agency, and actuarial techniques. Paragraph .12 of AU section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states the following:

The auditor should (a) obtain an understanding of the methods and assumptions used by the specialist, (b) make appropriate tests of data provided to the specialist, taking into account the auditor's assessment of control risk, and (c) evaluate whether the specialist's findings support the related assertions in the financial statements.

[Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.17** The auditor's qualifications do not encompass actuarial science or the complexities of probability and longevity associated with social insurance income and expenditures. The auditor may have a general awareness and understanding of actuarial concepts and practices; however, he or she does not purport to act in the capacity of an actuary. The auditor, therefore, should follow the guidance in AU section 336 to obtain assurance regarding the work of an actuary on such matters as program income and benefit payments. [Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.18** An audit of the statement of social insurance requires cooperation and coordination between the auditor and the actuary. The auditor uses the work of the actuary as an audit procedure to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence; the auditor does not merely rely on the report of an actuary. Although

the appropriateness and reasonableness of the methods and assumptions used, as well as their application, are within the expertise of the actuary, the auditor does not divide responsibility with the actuary for his or her opinion on the financial statements taken as a whole. Thus, the auditor should satisfy himself or herself as to the professional qualifications and reputation of the actuary as well as the actuary's objectivity, and should obtain an understanding of the actuary's methods and assumptions, test data provided to the actuary, and consider whether the actuary's findings support the related representations in the financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.19** If the actuary who has prepared or reviewed the actuarial valuation of the social insurance program was engaged by the agency administering that program, it is necessary for the auditor to obtain the services of an independent actuary<sup>8</sup> to assist the auditor in performing auditing procedures that assess the agency actuary's methods, assumptions, and estimates, and aid the auditor in determining whether the agency actuary's findings are not unreasonable in the circumstances.<sup>9</sup> *Government Auditing Standards*, which are applicable to audits of statements of social insurance, provide independence requirements and examples of personal, external, and organizational impairments to independence. [Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.20** The auditor should document (a) the specific audit procedures that were performed with the assistance of an independent actuary, and the related findings and conclusions, (b) the relationship between the procedures performed with the assistance of an independent actuary and the auditor's assessments of audit risk and materiality, and (c) all other significant matters related to the objectives and scope of the independent actuary's work, including any limitations on the independent actuary's procedures. [Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### ***Obtaining Knowledge About the Work Performed by External Review Groups***

**.21** In some cases, the agency responsible for the preparation of the statement of social insurance or the program's trustees may commission the services of an external review group comprising technical experts in relevant fields to review the factors, assumptions, data, estimates, and models used to prepare the statement of social insurance. In many instances, individuals assigned to perform these reviews are recognized authorities in their respective fields of study. Because of the nature of these external review groups and the qualifications of the individuals typically assigned to them, information about the work performed by the external review group, how its findings are communicated to the agency, and how the agency has responded to these findings

---

<sup>8</sup> See footnote 5.

<sup>9</sup> Although paragraph .11 of AU section 336, *Using the Work of a Specialist* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), does not preclude the auditor from using the work of a specialist who is related to the client, because of the significance of the estimates of income and expenditures to the statement of social insurance, and the complexity and subjectivity involved in developing such estimates, auditing estimates in the statement of social insurance requires the use of an outside actuary, that is, an actuary who is not employed or managed by the agency. If the auditor has the requisite knowledge and experience in actuarial science, the auditor may serve as the actuary. If the auditor does not possess the level of competence in actuarial science to qualify as an actuary, the auditor should use the work of an independent outside actuary.

are relevant to an audit of the statement of social insurance.<sup>10</sup> See paragraph A-18c of the appendix of this SOP, entitled “Illustrative Controls and Audit Procedures,” for examples of inquiries the auditor may make of management to obtain knowledge about the work performed by external review groups. [Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### ***Considering Materiality***

**.22** The auditor’s determination of materiality is a matter of professional judgment and is influenced by the auditor’s perception of the needs of users of financial statements. Materiality judgments are made in light of surrounding circumstances and necessarily involve both quantitative and qualitative considerations. Auditors should design audit procedures to obtain reasonable assurance of detecting misstatements that, either individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, could be material to the financial statements taken as a whole. Auditors should exercise due professional care when setting the materiality base, carefully assessing the information gained from risk assessment procedures and the needs of users of the financial statements. [Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.23** For certain federal agencies, amounts reported in the statement of social insurance may vary significantly from the amounts reported in the other basic financial statements, or may differ significantly on a qualitative basis. In such cases, it may not be appropriate to establish a single materiality threshold for the entire set of financial statements. Instead, the auditor should consider using a separate materiality level when planning and performing the audit of the statement of social insurance and related disclosures. [Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### ***Obtaining an Understanding of the Agency’s Internal Control***

**.24** AU section 314 defines internal control as a process—effected by those charged with governance, an entity’s board of directors, management, and other personnel—designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of the entity’s objectives with regard to (a) reliability of financial reporting, (b) effectiveness and efficiency of operations, and (c) compliance with applicable laws and regulations. [Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.25** In auditing the statement of social insurance, the auditor should obtain a sufficient understanding of the agency’s internal control by performing risk assessment procedures to evaluate the design of the agency’s controls relevant to an audit of the statement of social insurance and to determine whether those controls have been implemented. The auditor should use this knowledge to

- a. identify types of potential misstatements.
- b. consider factors that affect the risks of material misstatement.
- c. design tests of controls, when applicable, and substantive procedures.

---

<sup>10</sup> Although reviews by external review groups may not be conducted annually, in auditing the statement of social insurance the auditor should obtain and review the most recent report of such external review groups.

[Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

[.26] [Paragraph renumbered and deleted, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.27** Internal control consists of the following five interrelated components:

- a. *Control environment* sets the tone of an organization, influencing the control consciousness of its people. It is the foundation for all other components of internal control, providing discipline and structure.
- b. Entity's *risk assessment* is the entity's identification and analysis of relevant risks to achievement of its objectives, forming a basis for determining how the risks should be managed.
- c. *Information and communication systems* support the identification, capture, and exchange of information in a form and time frame that enable people to carry out their responsibilities.
- d. *Control activities* are the policies and procedures that help ensure that management directives are carried out.
- e. *Monitoring* is a process that assesses the quality of internal control performance over time.

Ordinarily, controls that are relevant to an audit pertain to the entity's objective of preparing financial statements that are fairly presented in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. [Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### ***Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement***

**.28** Using the information gained from the auditor's risk assessment procedures, the auditor should identify and assess the risks of material misstatement for assertions in the statement of social insurance. [Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.29** The risk of material misstatement of estimates ordinarily varies with the complexity and subjectivity of the process, the availability and reliability of the relevant data, the number and significance of assumptions that are made, and the degree of uncertainty associated with the assumptions. [Paragraph added, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### **Performing Further Audit Procedures**

**.30** The auditor should design further audit procedures, including tests of the operating effectiveness of controls, where relevant or necessary, and substantive procedures, whose nature, timing, and extent are responsive to the assessed risks of material misstatement at both the financial statement and the relevant assertion level. [Paragraph added, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

[.31] [Paragraph renumbered and deleted, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.32** AU section 318, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that the auditor should perform tests of controls when the

auditor's risk assessment includes an expectation of the operating effectiveness of controls or when substantive procedures alone do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence at the relevant assertion level. However, when auditing the statement of social insurance, the complexity and subjectivity of the estimates, the volume of data involved, and the importance of controls ordinarily would make performing only substantive tests an ineffective strategy.<sup>11</sup> [Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**[.33]** [Paragraph renumbered and deleted, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**[.34]** [Paragraph renumbered and deleted, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.35** As indicated in paragraph .09 of this SOP, in evaluating the reasonableness of the estimates in the statement of social insurance, the auditor primarily reviews and tests the process used by management. The appendix of this SOP contains examples of

- a. procedures the auditor performs to obtain knowledge about the agency's process for developing, evaluating, and incorporating estimates in the statement of social insurance.
- b. controls that are relevant to an agency's preparation of the statement of social insurance. (The auditor should obtain an understanding of the design of such controls and determine whether they have been placed in operation.)
- c. procedures the auditor performs to test controls, assess control risk, and test assertions in the statement of social insurance. [Paragraph added, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### ***Testing the Work of the Agency's Actuary***

**.36** When auditing estimates and considering the related factors, assumptions, data, and models, the auditor should obtain the services of an actuary in accordance with AU section 336.<sup>12</sup> [Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.37** With respect to the actuarial present value of amounts reported in the statement of social insurance, the auditor, in following the guidance in AU section 336, should

- a. read the agency actuary's actuarial report.
- b. evaluate the professional qualifications, competence, and objectivity of the agency's actuary. Examples of factors that should be considered are the actuary's membership in a recognized professional organization and the opinion of other actuaries, whom the auditor knows to be qualified, regarding the actuary's professional qualifications.
- c. obtain an understanding of the actuary's objectives, scope of work, methods, and assumptions, and their consistency of application. The Actuarial Standards Board establishes Actuarial Standards of Practice

---

<sup>11</sup> OMB Bulletin No. 01-02 states that "For those internal controls that have been properly designed and placed in operation, the auditor shall perform sufficient tests to support a low assessed level of control risk."

<sup>12</sup> See footnote 9.

(ASOPs) that identify what the actuary should consider, document, and disclose when performing an actuarial assignment. The auditor may consult the ASOPs in obtaining an understanding of the methods and assumptions used in the valuation of the social insurance program.<sup>13</sup> Management, not the actuary, is responsible for the assumptions made and methods used.

- d. test the reliability and completeness of the data provided by the agency and used by the actuary in the actuarial valuation. (See paragraphs A-11–A-14 in the appendix to this SOP.) For example, laws or regulations governing program operations can affect the determination of the data or methods to be used in the actuarial calculations. In testing the reliability and completeness of the data, the auditor may inquire as to whether the actuarial valuation considers all pertinent provisions of laws and regulations governing program operations, including any changes in laws or regulations affecting the actuarial calculations since the date of the latest statement of social insurance. In the event that data provided to the actuary are significantly incomplete, the auditor may inquire of the actuary about the treatment of the incomplete data and determine whether the method used by the actuary to give effect to the missing data in his or her valuation is reasonable in the circumstances.
- e. assess the nature and significance of any reservations concerning assumptions or data that the actuary has stated in his or her report.

[Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### **Testing the Fund Balance**

.38 Paragraph 27(3)(h) of SFFAS No. 17 requires the agency to report “the accumulated excess of all past cash receipts, including interest on investments, over all past cash disbursements within the social insurance program represented by the fund balance at the valuation date.” As noted in paragraph 26 of SFFAS No. 17, the valuation date for the statement of social insurance may differ from the valuation date for the other financial statements. Accordingly, the auditor should conduct appropriate testing of the accumulated cash receipts over the accumulated cash disbursements, as of the social insurance valuation date. The nature and extent of testing is a matter of professional judgment. Examples of procedures the auditor may perform are confirmation testing or roll-forward testing. [Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

### **Obtaining Management’s Representations**

.39 AU section 333, *Management Representations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), requires the auditor to obtain a representation letter from management confirming representations given to the auditor during the engagement, for example, a representation regarding the completeness of the information provided to the auditor. In an audit of the statement of social insurance, the representation letter should include, as applicable, the following representations:

---

<sup>13</sup> Relevant standards include Actuarial Standards of Practice No. 21, *The Actuary’s Responsibility to the Auditor*, No. 23, *Data Quality*, and No. 32, *Social Insurance*.

- a. The actuarial assumptions and methods used to measure amounts in the statement of social insurance for financial accounting and disclosure purposes represent management's best estimates regarding future events based on demographic and economic assumptions, and future changes mandated by law.
- b. There were no material omissions from the data provided to the agency's actuary for the purpose of determining the actuarial present value of the estimated future income to be received, and estimated future expenditures to be paid during a projection period sufficient to illustrate the long-term sustainability of the *[name of the social insurance program]* as of *[dates of statements of social insurance presented]*.
- c. Management is responsible for the assumptions and methods used in the preparation of the statement of social insurance. Management of the agency agrees with the actuarial methods and assumptions used by the agency's actuary and has no knowledge or belief that would make such methods or assumptions inappropriate in the circumstances. Management did not give any instructions, nor cause any instructions to be given to the agency's actuary with respect to values or amounts derived, and is not aware of any matters that have affected the objectivity of the agency's actuary. Management believes that the actuarial assumptions and methods used to measure amounts in the statement of social insurance for financial accounting purposes are appropriate in the circumstances.
- d. The statement of social insurance covers a projection period sufficient to illustrate long-term sustainability of the social insurance program.
- e. Management has provided the auditor with all the reports developed by external review groups appointed by the agency or the program's trustees related to estimates in the statement of social insurance.
- f. The following matters relating to the statement of social insurance have been disclosed properly in the notes to the financial statements:
  - (1) The accumulated excess of all past cash receipts, including interest on investments, over all past cash disbursements within the social insurance program represented by the fund balance at the valuation date
  - (2) An explanation of how the net present value is calculated for the closed group<sup>14</sup> (Paragraph 27(3)(i) of SFFAS No. 17 identifies the information to be included in this explanation.)
  - (3) Comparative financial information for the items in paragraphs .02a, .02b, .02c, and .02d(1) of this SOP, for the current year and for each of the four preceding years
  - (4) Significant assumptions used in preparing the estimates
- g. There have been no changes in *[or, Changes in the following have been properly recorded or disclosed in the financial statements]:*
  - (1) The actuarial methods or assumptions used to calculate amounts recorded or disclosed in the financial statements between the valuation dates (that is, January 1, 20X8, and January 1, 20X7) or changes in the method of collecting data.

---

<sup>14</sup> The *closed group* is defined as those persons who, as of a valuation date, are participants in a social insurance program as beneficiaries, covered workers, or payers of earmarked taxes or premiums.

- (2) The actuarial methods or assumptions used to calculate amounts recorded or disclosed in the financial statements between the valuation date and the financial reporting date (that is, January 1, 20X8, and September 30, 20X8) or changes in the method of collecting data.
- h. There have been no changes in [or, Changes in the following have been properly recorded or disclosed in the financial statements]:
  - (1) Laws and regulations affecting social insurance program income and benefits between the valuation dates (January 1, 20X8, and January 1, 20X7).
  - (2) Laws and regulations affecting social insurance program income and benefits between the valuation date and the financial reporting date (that is, January 1, 20X8, and September 30, 20X8).
- i. Accounting estimates applicable to the financial information of the agency included in the statement of social insurance are based on management's best estimate, after considering past and current events and assumptions about future events.

[Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Reporting

.40 Because FASAB has defined the statement of social insurance as a basic financial statement, the auditor should report on it as a part of his or her report on the other basic financial statements. In addition to following the requirements of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), the auditor's report on a federal agency's financial statements that present a statement of social insurance should include the following elements:

- a. An opinion as to whether the statement of social insurance presents fairly, in all material respects, the financial condition<sup>15</sup> of the agency's social insurance program(s) as of the valuation date in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles.
- b. An explanatory paragraph following the opinion paragraph, describing that (i) the statement of social insurance presents the actuarial present value of the agency's estimated future income to be received from or on behalf of the participants and estimated future expenditures to be paid to or on behalf of participants during a projection period sufficient to

---

<sup>15</sup> In Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts No. 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*, the FASAB articulates a concept of *financial condition*, as distinct from *financial position*. Financial condition is broader and more forward-looking than financial position. Presenting information on financial condition is consistent with FASAB's financial reporting objective of stewardship. In illustrating how the stewardship objective aligns with the needs of users of federal financial statements, FASAB observes that,

All users need information on earmarked revenues recorded in trust funds. They want to know, for example, whether the Social Security Trust funds are likely, in the foreseeable future, to need infusions of new taxes to pay benefits. Citizens need to know the implications of investing trust fund revenues in government securities.

In reporting the actuarial present value of the estimated future income to be received, estimated future expenditures to be paid, and excess of income over expenditures during a projection period sufficient to illustrate the long-term sustainability of an agency's social insurance programs, and in disclosing in the notes to the financial statements comparative financial information for the five most recent years, the statement of social insurance presents the financial condition of the programs. Thus, in reporting on the statement of social insurance, the auditor refers to the financial condition of the agency's social insurance programs.

illustrate long-term sustainability of the social insurance program; (ii) in preparing the statement of social insurance, management considers and selects assumptions and data that it believes provide a reasonable basis for the assertions in the statement; and (iii) because of the large number of factors that affect the statement of social insurance and the fact that future events and circumstances cannot be known with certainty, there will be differences between the estimates in the statement of social insurance and the actual results, and those differences may be material.

- c. Reference to any standards or regulations in addition to generally accepted auditing standards, such as *Government Auditing Standards*, that apply to audits of federal financial statements and any additional elements of the auditor's report that those standards or regulations require.

[Paragraph renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.41 The following is an illustrative auditor's report for a statement of social insurance.

#### Independent Auditor's Report<sup>16</sup>

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of XYZ Social Insurance Agency, as of September 30, 20X8 and 20X7, the related consolidated statements of net cost, of changes in net position and of financing; the combined statements of budgetary resources for the years then ended; and statements of social insurance as of January 1, 20X8, 20X7, 20X6, 20X5, and 20X4.<sup>17</sup> These financial statements are the responsibility of XYZ Social Insurance Agency's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States; and Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Bulletin No. 01-02, *Audit Requirements for Federal Financial Statements*. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to previously present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of XYZ Social Insurance Agency as of September 30, 20X8 and 20X7; its net cost of operations; changes in net position, budgetary resources, and financing for the year then ended; and the financial condition of its social insurance programs as

---

<sup>16</sup> Paragraphs .65–.74 of AU section 508, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), provide guidance on reporting on comparative financial statements, including guidance on reporting when there has been a change in auditors.

<sup>17</sup> The auditor's report on the statement of social insurance covers a period of five years (see paragraph 27(3)(j) of SFFAS No. 17); whereas, the auditor's report on the other financial statements covers a period of two years. In the first year's audit of the statement of social insurance, the auditor would only express an opinion on one year; in year two, the auditor would express an opinion on two years, and so on, until all five years were covered.

of January 1, 20X8, 20X7, 20X6, 20X5, and 20X4, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

As discussed in Note X to the financial statements, the statements of social insurance present the actuarial present value of the Agency's estimated future income to be received from or on behalf of the participants and estimated future expenditures to be paid to or on behalf of participants during a projection period sufficient to illustrate long-term sustainability of the social insurance program. In preparing the statements of social insurance, management considers and selects assumptions and data that it believes provide a reasonable basis for the assertions in the statements. However, because of the large number of factors that affect the statement of social insurance and the fact that future events and circumstances cannot be known with certainty, there will be differences between the estimates in the statement of social insurance and the actual results, and those differences may be material.

Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A) and the Required Supplementary Information (RSI) are not required parts of the financial statements but are supplementary information required by the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board and OMB Bulletin No. 01-09, *Form and Content of Agency Financial Statements*. We have applied certain limited procedures, which consisted principally of inquiries of management regarding the methods of measurement and presentation of the MD&A and the RSI. However, we did not audit this information and express no opinion on it.

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued a report dated [report date] on our consideration of the agency's internal control and a report dated [report date] on its compliance with laws and regulations. Those reports are an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* and should be read in conjunction with this report in considering the results of our audit.

[Signature]

[Date]

[Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.42 The statement of social insurance does not articulate with the other basic financial statements. For that reason, the portion of the auditor's report that addresses the statement of social insurance ordinarily will not affect the auditor's report on the balance sheet or the statements of net costs, changes in net position, financing, or budgetary resources. The following illustrates a report in which the auditor disclaims an opinion on the statement of social insurance but expresses an unqualified opinion on the other financial statements.

#### Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of XYZ Social Insurance Agency, as of September 30, 20X8 and 20X7, the related consolidated statements of net cost, of changes in net position and of financing, and the combined statements of budgetary resources for the years then ended, and we were engaged to audit the statements of social insurance as of January 1, 20X8, 20X7, 20X6, 20X5, and 20X4. These financial statements are the responsibility of XYZ Social Insurance Agency's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

Except as explained in the following paragraph, we conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States; and Office of Management and Budget Bulletin No. 01-02, *Audit Requirements for Federal Financial Statements*. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

*[Insert paragraph describing limitation on scope of the audits of the statements of social insurance.]*

Because of the matter discussed in the preceding paragraph, the scope of our work was not sufficient to enable us to express, and we do not express, an opinion on the statements of social insurance as of January 1, 20X8, 20X7, 20X6, 20X5, and 20X4.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to previously present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of XYZ Social Insurance Agency as of September 30, 20X8 and 20X7, its net cost of operations, changes in net position, budgetary resources, and financing for the year then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

*[Omit explanatory paragraph required by paragraph .40(b) of this SOP.]*

*[Modify the paragraph reporting on Management's Discussion and Analysis and Required Supplementary Information for the effects of the scope limitations regarding the statement of social insurance on that information, considering the guidance in AU section 551, Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor-Submitted Documents, and AU section 552, Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data (AICPA, Professional Standards, vol. 1).]*

*[Reference to reports on internal control and compliance with laws and regulations in accordance with the Government Auditing Standards is the same as in the illustration in paragraph .41 of this SOP.]*

*[Signature]*

*[Date]*

[Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.43** If the agency that operates a social insurance program issues financial statements that purport to present financial position, net cost of operations, changes in net position, budgetary resources, and financing for the years then ended, but omits the related statements of social insurance, the auditor ordinarily will conclude that the omission requires qualification of the auditor's opinion in the following manner.

#### Independent Auditor's Report

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of XYZ Social Insurance Agency, as of September 30, 20X8 and 20X7, the related consolidated statements of net cost, of changes in net position and of

financing, and the combined statements of budgetary resources for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of XYZ Social Insurance Agency's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

*[Same second paragraph as the standard report]*

The agency declined to present statements of social insurance as of January 1, 20X8, 20X7, 20X6, 20X5, and 20X4. Presentation of such statements describing the financial condition of its social insurance programs is required by accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

In our opinion, except that the omission of the statements of social insurance results in an incomplete presentation as explained in the preceding paragraph, the financial statements referred to previously present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of XYZ Social Insurance Agency as of September 30, 20X8 and 20X7; its net cost of operations; and changes in net position, budgetary resources, and financing for the year then ended in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

*[Omit explanatory paragraph required by paragraph .40(b) of this SOP.]*

*[Modify, in accordance with the guidance in paragraph .08 of AU section 558, Required Supplementary Information (AICPA, Professional Standards, vol. 1), the paragraph regarding Management's Discussion and Analysis and the Required Supplementary Information (RSI) for the omission of the RSI.]*

*[Reference to reports on internal control and compliance with laws and regulations in accordance with Government Auditing Standards is the same as in the illustration in paragraph .41 of this SOP.]*

*[Signature]*

*[Date]*

[Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Effective Date and Transition

**.44** This SOP is effective for audits of statements of social insurance for periods beginning after September 30, 2005. SFFAS No. 17 (subparagraph 27(3)(a-h)) requires disclosure of the information for the current year and for each of the four preceding years. Comparative information in the statement of social insurance that has not been audited should be marked as unaudited. Earlier implementation of the provisions of this SOP is permitted. [Paragraph renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Appendix

### Illustrative Controls and Audit Procedures

**A-1.** This appendix contains examples of:

- a. Procedures the auditor performs to obtain knowledge about the agency's process for developing, evaluating, and incorporating estimates in the statement of social insurance
- b. Controls that are relevant to the agency's preparation of the statement of social insurance (The auditor should obtain an understanding of the design of such controls and determine whether they have been implemented.)
- c. Procedures the auditor performs to tests controls and assertions in the statement of social insurance

**A-2.** The appendix is divided into the following five sections:

- a. Factors (paragraphs A-3–A-5)
- b. Assumptions (paragraphs A-6–A-10)
- c. Data (paragraphs A-11–A-14)
- d. Models (paragraphs A-15–A-17)
- e. Estimates (paragraphs A-18–A-20)

Each of these sections includes examples of the items described in paragraph A-1. The procedures and controls included in this appendix are illustrative and do not represent a complete list of procedures and controls.

#### Factors

**A-3.** In evaluating the reasonableness of an accounting estimate, the auditor ordinarily concentrates on key factors that are significant to the estimate, sensitive to variation, deviations from historical patterns, and subjective and susceptible to misstatement and bias. The following are examples of procedures the auditor performs to obtain knowledge about how the agency generates, evaluates, selects, and reviews factors to be included in estimates in the statement of social insurance:

- a. Identifying the individuals involved in generating, evaluating, selecting, and reviewing factors to be included in estimates in the statement of social insurance
- b. Determining how factors affecting social insurance estimates are generated, evaluated, selected, and reviewed, and how that process is documented<sup>1</sup>
- c. Reading documentation of the process for generating, evaluating, selecting, and reviewing estimates to be included in the statement of social insurance

---

<sup>1</sup> Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular No. A-123, *Management and Accountability Control*, and No. A-127, *Financial Management Systems*, outline documentation requirements for manual and automated financial related transactions and systems.

- A-4.** The auditor should obtain a sufficient understanding of the entity's internal control by performing risk assessment procedures to evaluate the design of controls relevant to an audit of financial statements and to determine whether they have been implemented. The following are examples of controls related to factors:
- Management's process for monitoring the environment to determine the effect that change in the environment (for example, legal, political, health, immigration) might have on the factors considered
  - Procedures to prevent or detect and correct the inadvertent omission of factors that should be considered in developing the estimate (an example of such a control would be comparing factors considered and selected in the current period with those of prior periods)
  - Hiring procedures to ensure that individuals responsible for generating, evaluating, selecting, and reviewing factors have the appropriate education and experience
- A-5.** The following are examples of procedures the auditor performs to test controls and financial statement assertions related to factors:
- Reviewing documentation of the factors considered in developing the estimate
  - Evaluating whether the factors that have been considered are relevant and sufficient for the purpose of preparing the statement of social insurance
  - Considering whether there are additional key factors that management has not addressed

## Assumptions

- A-6.** In evaluating the reasonableness of an accounting estimate, the auditor ordinarily concentrates on assumptions that are significant to the accounting estimate, sensitive to variation, deviations from historical patterns, and subjective and susceptible to misstatement and bias.
- A-7.** The following are examples of matters the auditor inquires about in discussions with management and other knowledgeable personnel to determine how the agency generates, evaluates, selects, and reviews assumptions to be included in estimates in the statement of social insurance:
- The source of the assumptions for significant estimates<sup>2</sup>
  - How the assumptions underlying the estimates are documented

---

<sup>2</sup> For some agencies, the assumptions are established by an external board of trustees and provided to the agency. For example, for the Social Security program, the Social Security Act establishes a board of trustees to oversee the financial operations of the Federal Old-Age and Survivors Insurance Trust Fund and the Federal Disability Insurance Trust Fund. The board is composed of six members, four of whom serve automatically by virtue of their positions in the federal government. They are the Secretary of the Treasury (the managing trustee), the Secretary of Labor, the Secretary of Health and Human Services, and the Commissioner of Social Security. The other two members are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate to serve as public representatives. In such circumstances, the auditor's procedures generally would focus on testing the work performed by the agency's actuary in reviewing the assumptions developed by the board of trustees. The agency's actuary reports on whether (a) the techniques and methodology used to evaluate the financial and actuarial status of the program is based upon sound principles of actuarial practice and are generally accepted within the actuarial profession; and (b) the assumptions used and the resulting actuarial estimates

- c.* The process for determining the best estimate (for example, intermediate) assumptions (possible outcomes)
  - d.* How management considers and determines the effect that variation in the underlying assumptions will have on the estimates
- A-8.** The following are examples of controls related to assumptions:
- a.* The agency's documentation of the process used to generate, evaluate, select, and review assumptions
  - b.* How management monitors the environment for possible changes that might affect the assumptions used to develop estimates, for example, the need to consider alternative assumptions
  - c.* Comparing assumptions made in the current period with those of prior periods and reconciling differences
  - d.* Hiring procedures to ensure that personnel have the appropriate education and experience to meet job description requirements
- A-9.** The following are examples of procedures the auditor performs to test controls and financial statement assertions related to assumptions:
- a.* Identifying the assumptions used and evaluating the reasonableness of those assumptions
  - b.* Determining whether data and other related information support the assumptions
  - c.* Evaluating whether interrelated assumptions are consistent with each other
  - d.* Comparing assumptions made by the entity to the range of assumptions made by entities in other industries, for example, insurance companies, financial institutions, or other government agencies, and evaluating the implications of significant differences
  - e.* Considering whether there are alternative assumptions about the factors
  - f.* Evaluating whether the assumptions selected are consistent with supporting data, relevant historical data, and industry data
  - g.* Reviewing available documentation of the assumptions used in developing the estimates
  - h.* Evaluating whether facts and informed judgment about past and future events or circumstances support the underlying assumptions
  - i.* Evaluating whether any of the significant assumptions are so subjective that no reasonably objective basis could exist to support the use of the assumption
  - j.* Inquiring of program managers regarding the reasonableness of assumptions that are related to the manager's realm of responsibility
  - k.* Evaluating whether the assumptions appear to be complete, that is, whether assumptions have been developed for each key factor

---

are, individually and in the aggregate, reasonable for the purpose of evaluating the financial and actuarial status of the trust funds, taking into consideration the past experience and future expectations for the population, the economy, and the program.

- l.* Considering whether the assumptions appear to be relatively objective, that is, are not unduly optimistic or pessimistic
  - m.* Evaluating whether the assumptions are consistent with the laws and regulations governing the program
  - n.* Evaluating whether the assumptions, individually and in the aggregate, make sense in the context of the statement of social insurance taken as a whole
  - o.* Evaluating whether significant assumptions are appropriately disclosed in the statement of social insurance
- A-10.** Assumptions that have no material effect on the statement of social insurance may not have to be individually evaluated; however, the aggregate effect of individually insignificant assumptions should be considered in making an overall evaluation of whether the assumptions underlying the reported amounts are reasonable.

## Data

- A-11.** The following are examples of matters the auditor inquires about in discussions with management and other knowledgeable personnel, and reads about in agency documentation to determine how the agency generates, evaluates, selects, and reviews data to be included in estimates in the statement of social insurance:
- a.* The source of the data for significant estimates and whether the data are developed internally or by outside parties
  - b.* How data are collected, maintained, processed, and updated
  - c.* How the data underlying the estimates are documented
- A-12.** The following are examples of controls related to data:
- a.* Controls over the accuracy and completeness of internally prepared data, for example, review of the data for reasonableness and consistency with other data, and general and application controls over the data such as edit checks and batch totals
  - b.* Controls that prevent or detect and correct errors in the collection, maintenance, processing, and updating of the data, for example, manual controls to ensure that data are accurately entered and uploaded to a computerized system
  - c.* Controls over the reliability of external sources of data, for example, confirming and verifying data by tracing and agreeing it to census information in reports prepared by the United States Census Bureau
  - d.* Procedures to identify and document authorized users of the system and to restrict access to the system, for example, the use of unique user passwords and periodic changes to those passwords
  - e.* Preparation and review of a risk assessment on a regular basis or when a significant change occurs in either the internal or external physical environment
  - f.* Preventive maintenance agreements or procedures for key system hardware components
  - g.* On a regular basis, backing up software and data that are stored offsite

- h.* Restricting access to utility programs that can read, add, change, or delete data or programs to authorized individuals
- i.* Establishing procedures to ensure that original source documents are retained or are reproducible by the agency for an adequate amount of time to facilitate the retrieval or reconstruction of data

**A-13.** The following are examples of procedures the auditor performs to test controls and financial statement assertions related to data:

- a.* Evaluating whether the data used to develop the estimates are relevant, reliable, and sufficient for the purpose
- b.* Identifying the source of the data, that is, whether the data were developed by the agency or by an outside entity
- c.* Reviewing documentation of the data used to develop estimates
- d.* Determining whether data used to develop estimates are consistent with supporting data, historical data, and other related information. An example would be determining whether a positive or negative correlation exists between sets of data if such a correlation would be expected to exist
- e.* Evaluating the accuracy and completeness of internally prepared data
- f.* Tracing and agreeing internally prepared data to system output reports generated by the agency

**A-14.** In determining the extent of the procedures to be performed on data obtained from an external source, a factor to consider is whether the data are widely disseminated and used, or whether the data were developed for limited use. An example of data that are widely disseminated and used is a report prepared by the U.S. Census Bureau. For such data, the auditor may trace and agree the information to reports prepared by the U.S. Census Bureau. If management has made adjustments to data obtained from a widely disseminated and used external source, the auditor should evaluate:

- a.* Management's reason for adjusting the data
- b.* The accuracy and completeness of the adjustments to the externally obtained data
- c.* Management's documentation supporting the adjustment

For data meant for limited use, all other factors being equal, the auditor should confirm or otherwise verify data obtained from other federal agencies and other external sources that were used in the actuarial valuation. If management has made adjustments to data developed for limited use, the auditor should evaluate:

- a.* Management's reason for adjusting the data
- b.* The accuracy and completeness of the adjustments to the externally obtained data
- c.* Management's documentation supporting the adjustment

**Models**

- A-15.** The following are examples of procedures the auditor performs to obtain knowledge about how the agency generates, evaluates, selects, and reviews models used to develop estimates included in the statement of social insurance:
- a.* Inquiring of management and other knowledgeable personnel about how they design or select the model used for the development of estimates and how they document that model
  - b.* Inquiring of management and other knowledgeable personnel about how they determine the effect that variations in the underlying assumptions have on the estimates
- A-16.** The following are examples of controls related to models:
- a.* General and application controls related to the model, such as controls over input to the model and processing of that input
  - b.* Controls that prevent or detect and correct errors in the development and processing of the model
  - c.* Controls that prevent or detect and correct unauthorized access or changes to the model, for example, an access control table that is a component of the system and prohibits unauthorized users from accessing and changing the model. An example of a detective control is an audit log that tracks any changes made to the model
  - d.* Controls designed to ensure that the information contained in the statement of social insurance and related disclosures conforms to generally accepted accounting principles
  - e.* Designating responsibility for significant information resources within the agency (for example, data and programs) and establishing and maintaining security over such resources
  - f.* Comparing existing system security features to documented system security requirements
  - g.* Assigning responsibility to individuals in a manner that ensures that no single individual has the authority to read, add, change, or delete information without an independent review of that activity
  - h.* Subjecting hardware and software acquisitions and implementations to extensive testing prior to acceptance in production
- A-17.** The following are examples of procedures the auditor performs to test controls and financial statement assertions related to models:
- a.* Reviewing documentation that describes the instructions, rules, or procedures used in the model to calculate estimates
  - b.* Reperforming calculations used in the model to translate the assumptions, data, and factors into the estimate
  - c.* Reviewing management's documentation of its sensitivity analysis and considering whether the results are consistent with the auditor's expectations
  - d.* If available, comparing the results of the model with the results of models used by other organizations for reasonableness

**Estimates**

- A-18.** The following are examples of matters the auditor inquires about in discussions with management and other knowledgeable personnel to determine how the agency generates, evaluates, selects, and reviews estimates to be included in the statement of social insurance:
- a. How management obtains the expertise to develop and evaluate estimates in the statement of social insurance, including hiring procedures, professional development activities, and procedures for engaging outside specialists
  - b. Who has final authority for reviewing and approving estimates
  - c. The work performed by external review groups, their findings, and how those findings are used by the agency, for example:
    - (1) The scope and timing of the work performed by external review groups
    - (2) The composition of external review groups and the qualifications of the members
    - (3) Whether the external review groups are independent of the agency
    - (4) Whether the external review groups issued formal reports including findings or recommendations
- A-19.** The following are examples of controls related to estimates:
- a. Procedures related to the review and implementation of recommendations developed by external review groups
  - b. General and application controls related to estimates, such as evidence of supervisory and management review of estimates and supporting documentation
  - c. Controls intended to ensure that the information contained in the statement of social insurance and related notes conforms to Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB) guidance
  - d. Controls related to the supervision of individuals who develop estimates, and the review of those estimates and supporting documentation
  - e. Controls to regularly verify that personnel developing estimates are qualified to perform those tasks based on their education, training, and experience, as required
- A-20.** The following are examples of procedures the auditor performs to test controls and financial statement assertions related to estimates:
- a. Developing a trend analysis in which one period is compared to the next period
  - b. Determining whether the information in the statement of social insurance, including related disclosure, is supported by sufficient, competent evidential matter
  - c. Comparing the estimated future expenditures predicted by the actuarial model to actual expenditures for the previous fiscal year
  - d. Evaluating the reasonableness of the time period covered by the statement of social insurance. FASAB standards require that the

statement of social insurance cover a projection period sufficient to illustrate long-term sustainability of the social insurance program

[Appendix renumbered and revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**Auditing Standards Board  
2004**

JOHN A. FOGARTY, *Chair*  
HAROLD L. MONK, *Vice Chair*  
BARTON W. BALDWIN  
GERALD W. BURNS  
CRAIG W. CRAWFORD  
GEORGE P. FRITZ  
JAMES W. GOAD  
DAN L. GOLDWASSER  
LYNFORD GRAHAM  
AUSTON G. JOHNSON

JAMES E. LEE  
WANDA LORENZ  
SUSAN L. MENELAIDES  
WILLIAM F. MESSIER  
DANIEL D. MONTGOMERY  
DIANE M. RUBIN  
MARK K. SCOLES  
SCOTT A. SEASOCK  
MICHAEL T. UMSCHIED

**Social Insurance Task Force**

PATRICK L. MCNAMEE, *Chair*  
SHIRLEY L. ABEL  
BEN W. CARMICHAEL, JR.  
WALTER F. FENNELL

DANIEL L. KOVLAK  
ELLIOT P. LEWIS  
JOHN C. WARNER

**AICPA Staff**

CHARLES E. LANDES  
*Director*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

JUDITH M. SHERINSKY  
*Technical Manager*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

---

[The next page is 31,741.]



**Section 14,420****Statement of Position 06-1  
Reporting Pursuant to the Global Investment  
Performance Standards**

April 6, 2006

**NOTE**

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretative publication and represents the recommendations of the AICPA's Investment Performance Standards Task Force regarding the application of Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements to engagements to report pursuant to the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®). The Auditing Standards Board has found the recommendations in this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202 of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Interpretative publications are not as authoritative as a pronouncement of the ASB, however, if a practitioner does not apply the attestation guidance included in this SOP, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the SSAE provisions addressed by this SOP.

**Introduction and Background**

.01 To promote fair representation, full disclosure, and greater comparability in investment performance presentations, CFA Institute (formerly known as the Association for Investment Management and Research (AIMR®)) developed the AIMR Performance Presentation Standards (AIMR-PPS® standards) and the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards)<sup>1</sup> (collectively, the performance standards). Although compliance with the performance standards is voluntary, an investment management firm's claim of compliance with the performance standards is widely regarded as providing a competitive advantage. The performance standards include both required and recommended guidelines for calculating and reporting performance.

.02 In February 2005, CFA Institute revised the GIPS standards to include new sections to address real estate and private equity investments as well as other new provisions. All references to the GIPS standards in this Statement of Position (SOP) refer to the GIPS standards revised as of February 2005. The GIPS standards specify that they include any updates, reports, guidance statements, interpretations, or clarifications published by CFA Institute and its committees.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The phrase "Association for Investment Management and Research Performance Presentation Standards" is abbreviated in this Statement of Position (SOP) as the AIMR-PPS standards. The phrase "Global Investment Performance Standards" is abbreviated in this SOP as the GIPS standards. For information on the appropriate use of the AIMR-PPS and/or GIPS registered trademark, see the CFA Institute Web site [www.cfainstitute.org](http://www.cfainstitute.org).

<sup>2</sup> The GIPS standards, updates, reports, guidance statements, interpretations, and clarifications are available via CFA Institute's Web site at [www.cfainstitute.org](http://www.cfainstitute.org).

.03 As of January 1, 2006, the AIMR-PPS standards converged with the GIPS standards, and the AIMR-PPS standards no longer exist as a separate set of standards. Investment management firms (referred to as *firms* in this SOP; see paragraph .09 regarding the definition of a *firm*) may continue to claim compliance with the AIMR-PPS standards on presentations that include performance through December 31, 2005. Once a firm's performance presentation includes results for periods that begin after December 31, 2005, the firm may no longer claim compliance with the AIMR-PPS standards. All firms that previously claimed compliance with the AIMR-PPS standards are granted reciprocity for GIPS compliance for periods prior to January 1, 2006.

.04 The performance standards recommend that firms obtain independent third-party verification of a firm's claim of compliance with the performance standards. Verification is defined as the review of a firm's performance measurement processes and procedures by an independent third-party "verifier."<sup>3</sup>

.05 In addition, a firm may choose to have a more extensive, specifically focused performance examination of a specific composite presentation. A firm *must* obtain *firm-wide* verification concurrent with, or prior to, obtaining a performance examination of the performance presentation of any specific composite.<sup>4</sup>

.06 Verification reports should make reference to the criteria against which the subject matter was evaluated. Verification reports covering periods ended on or before December 31, 2005, may make reference to the AIMR-PPS standards, the GIPS standards, or both, depending on which standards a firm claims compliance with as of the reporting date. Verification reports covering periods ending after December 31, 2005, may not make reference to the AIMR-PPS standards.

## Scope

.07 This SOP provides guidance to practitioners for engagements to examine and report on aspects of a firm's compliance with the GIPS standards (a verification engagement).<sup>5</sup> It also provides guidance on engagements to examine and report on the performance presentation of specific composites (a performance examination). Such examination engagements should be performed pursuant to AT section 101, *Attest Engagements*.<sup>6</sup>

.08 This SOP supersedes SOP 01-4, *Reporting Pursuant to the Association for Investment Management and Research Performance Presentation Standards*. This SOP also supersedes paragraphs 11.21 through 11.23 of Chapter 11,

---

<sup>3</sup> A verifier who is a certified public accountant in the practice of public accounting that has been hired to perform a verification or performance examination is referred to in this SOP as a "practitioner."

<sup>4</sup> Previously under the AIMR-PPS standards, firm-wide verification was referred to as Level I verification, and performance examination of a specific composite was referred to as Level II verification. As of January 1, 2003, the term *Level I verification* was replaced by *verification*, and the term *Level II verification* was replaced by *performance examination*. There may be no references to "Level I" or "Level II" verifications in any attest report.

<sup>5</sup> The requirements for a verification engagement under the AIMR-PPS standards are the same as those under the GIPS standards.

<sup>6</sup> The AIMR-PPS standards and GIPS standards provide suitable criteria, as defined in AT section 101, *Attest Engagements*, for reporting composite performance. The criteria are available to users, as defined in AT section 101, as they are posted to CFA Institute's Web site. CFA Institute's Web site also provides additional guidance on interpreting and applying the GIPS standards and AIMR-PPS standards through a variety of means, including questions and answers, guidance statements, and subcommittee reports.

“Independent Auditor’s Reports and Client Representations,” of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Investment Companies* (as of May 1, 2004, with conforming changes).

## Overview of the Gips Standards

### Compliance With the GIPS Standards

**.09** For a firm to claim compliance with the GIPS standards, the firm must meet *all* of the required elements of the GIPS standards on a *firm-wide* basis. Firms are prohibited from claiming compliance “except for” one or more of the required standards. Firms that have met all of the required elements may include the following statement in performance presentations to clients:

[Insert name of firm] has prepared and presented this report in compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®).

The GIPS standards must be applied on a firm-wide basis. For the purpose of compliance with the GIPS standards, the firm must state how it defines itself as a *firm*.

**.10** The GIPS standards establish both requirements and recommendations for firms to follow in preparing investment performance presentations. To claim firm-wide compliance, a firm must adhere to the requirements of the GIPS standards. Adherence to the recommendations of the GIPS standards is encouraged.

**.11** Verifiers are required to use the criteria set forth in the GIPS standards. Consequently, practitioners who perform a verification or a performance examination pursuant to the GIPS standards must be familiar with those standards, including the interpretative guidance, which are available on CFA Institute’s Web site ([www.cfainstitute.org](http://www.cfainstitute.org)).

### Verification

**.12** A verification tests:

- a. Whether the firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis; and
- b. Whether the firm’s processes and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards.

The GIPS standards specify required procedures that practitioners must perform for a verification (see Section III of the GIPS standards).

**.13** According to the GIPS standards, when a firm has obtained a verification, the firm may state that it is “verified.” This claim may or may not be accompanied by a presentation of performance history for a specific composite. A verification, however, does *not* imply that the verifiers have examined the accuracy of the performance results of any particular composite presentation(s) that may accompany the verification report. (See paragraph .34.)

### Performance Examination

**.14** In addition to a verification, a firm may choose to have an independent third-party conduct a performance examination. A firm-wide verification is required to be performed prior to or concurrent with *any* performance examination. A firm cannot make any claim that a particular composite has been independently examined with respect to the GIPS standards unless the firm has also obtained a firm-wide verification in accordance with the GIPS verification procedures. Firms cannot state that a particular composite presentation

has been “GIPS verified” or make any claim to that effect. CFA Institute and its committees have issued guidance that identifies objectives and suggested procedures for a performance examination (see Guidance for Performance Examinations<sup>7</sup> on CFA Institute’s Web site).

## Verification and Performance Examination Engagements

### Engagement Objectives

.15 Verifications and performance examinations should be conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the AICPA. These engagements also should be conducted in accordance with the procedures set forth in the GIPS standards. This SOP is not intended to provide all the required and recommended procedures set forth in the GIPS standards or all the applicable attestation standards established by the AICPA.

.16 For a verification engagement, the practitioner’s objective is to express an opinion on whether, in all material respects:

- a. The firm has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis; and
- b. The firm’s processes and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards.

.17 For a performance examination, the practitioner’s objective is to express an opinion on whether the performance presentation of a specific composite is presented, in all material respects, in conformity with the GIPS standards.

### Planning the Engagement

.18 AT section 101.44 states that planning an attest engagement involves developing an overall strategy for the expected conduct and scope of the engagement. To develop such a strategy, practitioners need to have sufficient knowledge to enable them to understand adequately the events, transactions, and practices that, in their judgment, have a significant effect on the subject matter of the assertions. Such knowledge includes a sufficient understanding of the investment management industry and of the GIPS standards and interpretative guidance.

### Establishing an Understanding With the Client

.19 The practitioner should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed to reduce the risk that either the practitioner or the client may misinterpret the needs or expectations of the other party. The understanding should include the objectives of the engagement, management’s responsibilities, the practitioner’s responsibilities, limitations of the engagement, and any limitations on the use of the practitioner’s name and report. The understanding may include a statement that, if the client intends to use the practitioner’s report(s), or refer to the practitioner, in connection with any sales or advertising literature, a draft of such literature should be provided to the practitioner for his or her review and comment prior to issuance.

---

<sup>7</sup> A proposed Guidance Statement on Performance Examinations was issued for public comment on November 7, 2005, and as of the date of publication of this SOP has not been adopted. Reference in this SOP to the GIPS guidance refers to this proposed guidance.

.20 The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client, such as an engagement letter (see Appendix A of this SOP [paragraph .38] for an example engagement letter).

## Obtaining Sufficient Evidence

.21 In conducting an attest examination, the practitioner's objective is to accumulate sufficient evidence to restrict attestation risk<sup>8</sup> to a level that is, in the practitioner's professional judgment, appropriately low for the high level of assurance that may be imparted by his or her report. A practitioner should select from all available procedures—that is, procedures that assess inherent and control risk and restrict detection risk—any combination that can mitigate attestation risk to such an appropriately low level.

.22 As noted previously, Section III of the GIPS standards specifies procedures that practitioners should perform for a verification. A practitioner may perform other procedures in addition to those specified in Section III of the GIPS standards. In addition, practitioners who are engaged to conduct a performance examination of one or more specific composite presentations should consider the objectives specified in the GIPS guidance for conducting a performance examination.

.23 Regardless of the scope of the engagement, the practitioner should obtain sufficient evidence to provide a reasonable basis for the opinion expressed in the report.

.24 When the practitioner is engaged to conduct a performance examination of one or more composite presentations subsequent to the performance and issuance of a report on a verification engagement, the practitioner should follow the pre-performance examination procedures required by the GIPS guidance. These procedures include updating the practitioner's understanding of relevant controls and inquiring about any other changes that may affect the planning and conduct of the performance examination.

.25 The GIPS standards require that firms report, at a minimum, five years of investment performance for each composite presented (or performance since inception of the composite if the period since inception is less than five years) to claim compliance with the standards. After initially presenting five years of performance, the firm must add an additional year of performance until the firm presents a 10-year performance record. Thereafter, a 10-year performance record must be presented at a minimum. A firm already presenting 10 years (or a since-inception period greater than five years) under the AIMR-PPS standards may not revert to presenting five years upon adoption of the GIPS standards.

.26 The initial minimum period for which verifications and performance examinations can be performed is one year of the firm's presented performance or since inception if less than one year. Subsequent verifications and performance examinations may cover any additional time periods, with quarterly or annual updates being common.

.27 During a performance examination, the practitioner would be alert for circumstances and events that affect prior period performance results presented or related disclosures. The nature and materiality of any errors in prior period performance results or related disclosures would be assessed to determine whether a redistribution of performance presentations and reissuance of

---

<sup>8</sup> See AT section 101.45, footnote 9, for the definition of *attestation risk*.

the practitioner's report is necessary. In such instances, the practitioner would perform appropriate testing of material revisions to previously reported information, would ensure that adequate disclosures are made regarding the changes, and would consider the necessity of modifying his or her report.

## Representation Letter

**.28** The attestation standards specify that a practitioner should consider obtaining a representation letter. However, as part of a verification, the GIPS standards require the practitioner to obtain a representation letter from the client firm confirming major policies and any other specific representations made to the practitioner during the engagement. The GIPS guidance also requires the practitioner to obtain a representation letter as part of a performance examination. The practitioner should request that responsible persons with an appropriate level of authority (for example, chief executive officer, chief financial officer, chief compliance officer, and/or chief investment officer) sign the letter. Examples of matters that might appear in a representation letter include the following:

- a. A statement acknowledging management's responsibility for its assertions and, where applicable, for the preparation of specific composite performance presentations.
- b. A statement acknowledging responsibility for selecting the criteria (AT section 101.60).
- c. A statement acknowledging responsibility for determining that such criteria (GIPS standards) are appropriate for its purposes, where the responsible party is the client (AT section 101.60).
- d. Management's assertions about (1) compliance with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis, (2) the processes and procedures designed to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards, and (3) where applicable, a statement that the specific composite performance presentations are presented in conformity with the GIPS standards. Management's assertions should address the same periods to be covered by the practitioner's examination report.
- e. A statement that the firm is in compliance with the GIPS standards.
- f. A statement that all known matters contradicting the assertions and any communication from CFA Institute or regulatory agencies affecting the subject matter or the assertions have been disclosed to the practitioner.
- g. A statement that there has been no (1) fraud or alleged fraud involving management or employees who have significant roles in the firm's processes and procedures relating to compliance with the GIPS standards or (2) fraud or alleged fraud involving others that could have a material effect on the firm's compliance with the GIPS standards.
- h. A statement that all records relevant to the examination have been made available to the practitioner.
- i. A statement that there are no violations or possible violations of laws or regulations, including the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (if applicable), whose effects should be considered for disclosure in the practitioner's report or in the composite performance presentations.

- j. A statement that management is responsible for maintaining sufficient books and records to substantiate performance as required by the GIPS standards and/or applicable regulatory requirements and that management has maintained such records to comply with those requirements.
- k. A statement that any known events subsequent to the period (or point in time) of the subject matter being reported on that would have a material effect on the subject matter or the assertions have been disclosed to the practitioner.
- l. Other matters as the practitioner deems appropriate.

Appendix B of this SOP [paragraph .39] contains an example management representation letter. Management's refusal to furnish all appropriate written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the examination that may preclude the practitioner from rendering an opinion (see paragraph .30 of this SOP). Further, the practitioner should consider the effects of management's refusal on his or her ability to rely on other management representations.

## Reporting

**.29** AT section 101 permits the practitioner to report either on the assertions or directly on the subject matter to which the assertions relate. The illustrative reports in Appendixes C [paragraph .40] and D [paragraph .41] present both reporting options.

**.30** After conducting the procedures for a verification or a performance examination, the practitioner may conclude that the firm is not in compliance with the standards or that the records of the firm cannot support a complete verification or a performance examination. In such situations, the GIPS standards specify that the practitioner must issue a statement to the firm clarifying why it was not possible to issue a verification or performance examination report; issuance of a qualified (except for) opinion is not permitted for either a verification or a performance examination.

**.31** According to AT section 101, when the practitioner is reporting on management's assertion, the practitioner's examination report should include an identification of the assertion and the responsible party. When the assertion does not accompany the practitioner's report, the first paragraph of the report should contain a statement of the assertion.

**.32** The first standard of reporting states that "the report must identify the subject matter or the assertion being reported on and state the character of the engagement in the report." For engagements covered by this SOP, the report must clearly indicate whether a verification or a performance examination has been performed. The report must also state the time period covered. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.33** Appendix C [paragraph .40] presents illustrative reports for a verification. Appendix D [paragraph .41] presents illustrative reports for a performance examination. The reports in Appendixes C [paragraph .40] and D [paragraph .41] also illustrate how the reference to a verification or a performance examination may be incorporated into the attest report. Appendix E [paragraph .42] presents an illustrative report for an engagement performed under both AIMR-PPS and GIPS standards, for periods ended before January 1, 2006.

**.34** To avoid confusion to users of a verification report, the practitioner would add a paragraph to the verification report disclaiming an opinion on the performance results of any specific composites that may accompany the verification report (see the verification report in Appendix C [paragraph .40]). This recognizes that the practitioner cannot control whether the verification report may be distributed by the firm accompanying a composite performance presentation even though no performance examination was conducted.

**.35** The GIPS guidance specifies that composite performance presentations that are the subject of a performance examination report be attached to the performance examination report. The practitioner also would add a paragraph to a performance examination report disclaiming an opinion on performance results presented for any periods that were not examined by the practitioner and/or stating that the report does not relate to any composite performance presentations other than those identified in the report.

**.36** When a firm has changed verifiers and prior periods presented were subject to verification or performance examination by another verifier, the firm may request that the practitioner refer to all verified/examined periods in his or her report. In such cases, a practitioner may decide to refer to the report of a predecessor verifier. The successor practitioner would consider the appropriateness of referring to reports on verifications or performance examinations conducted by other verifiers in the specific circumstances. If the successor practitioner decides to refer to the report of the predecessor verifier, the report would be modified appropriately. Appendix F [paragraph .43] contains an example of a successor practitioner's report when the predecessor verifier's report is not presented.

## Effective Date

**.37** This SOP is effective upon issuance.

## Appendix A

### Example Engagement Letter: Verification and Performance Examination

The following is an illustration of an example engagement letter that may be used for this kind of engagement.

*[Practitioner Letterhead]*

*[Client's Name and Address]*

Dear \_\_\_\_\_:

This will confirm our understanding of the arrangements for our examination of management's assertions that (1) *[name of company]* (the Company) has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) on a firm-wide basis for the *[specify period]* ending *[date]* and (2) the Company's processes and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of *[date]*; this is referred to as a verification under the GIPS standards. We have also been engaged to conduct an examination (referred to as a performance examination under the GIPS standards) on the composite performance presentation of *[specify composites]* of the Company for the *[specify period]* ending *[date]*.

Our examination of management's assertions will be conducted in accordance with the attestation standards of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and with the criteria set forth in the GIPS standards. The Company is responsible for selecting the GIPS standards as the criteria against which we will evaluate its assertions and for determining that the GIPS standards are appropriate criteria for its purposes. The Company is responsible for compliance with all applicable laws, regulations, contracts, and agreements, including the GIPS standards. The Company is also responsible for the design, implementation, and monitoring of the policies and procedures upon which compliance is based.<sup>1</sup> Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examinations.

Should conditions not now anticipated preclude us from performing our examination procedures and issuing a report as contemplated by the preceding paragraph, we will advise you promptly and take such action as we deem appropriate.

Working papers that are prepared in connection with this engagement are our property. The working papers are prepared for the purpose of providing principal support for our report.

As you are aware, there are inherent limitations in the examination process, including, for example, selective testing and the possibility that collusion or forgery may preclude the detection of material errors, fraud, and illegal acts.

---

<sup>1</sup> The independent practitioner may wish to include an understanding with the client about any limitation or other arrangements regarding liability of the practitioner or the client in the engagement letter.

Our fees will be billed as work progresses and are based on the amount of time required at various levels of responsibility plus actual out-of-pocket expenses. Invoices are payable upon presentation. We will notify you immediately of any circumstances we encounter that could significantly affect our initial estimate of total fees. The quoted fees assume that you will provide an accumulation of data for the period to be tested and that the records provided to us are clear, concise, and accurate.

In the event we are requested or authorized by management or are required by government regulation, subpoena, or other legal process to produce our documents or our personnel as witnesses with respect to our engagement, the Company will reimburse us for our professional time and expenses, as well as any fees and expenses of our counsel, incurred in responding to such requests.

If the Company intends to use our report in whole or in part, or refer to [*name of practitioner*], in connection with any sales or advertising literature, a draft of such literature will be provided to us for review and comment prior to issuance.

Either party may terminate this agreement at will.

If these arrangements are acceptable, please sign one copy of this letter and return it to us. We appreciate the opportunity to serve you.

Very truly yours,

[*Name of Practitioner*]

**Accepted and agreed to:**

[*Client Representative's Signature*]

[*Title*]

[*Date*]

## Appendix B

### Example Management Representation Letter: Verification And Performance Examination

[Date]

[Name of Practitioner]

We are providing this letter in connection with your examination(s) of the assertions of [name of company] (the Company) that (1) the Company has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, (2) the Company's processes and procedures were designed to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0, and (3) the Performance Presentation(s) for Composite(s) [specify composite(s)] for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, are presented in conformity with the GIPS standards.

We confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, the following representations made to you during your examination(s):

1. We are responsible for (a) compliance with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and (b) the design of the Company's processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards and have complied with those requirements as of December 31, 20Y0. We further confirm that we are responsible for the selection of the GIPS standards as the criteria against which you are evaluating our assertions and for determining that the GIPS standards are appropriate criteria for our purposes.
2. We assert to you that (a) we have complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and (b) the Company's processes and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0. We also assert that the Composite Performance Presentation for ABC Composite for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, are presented in conformity with the GIPS standards.
3. We assert that we are in compliance with the GIPS standards and we are not aware of any matters contradicting the assertions, nor have we received any communications from CFA Institute or regulatory agencies concerning (a) noncompliance with the GIPS standards or our assertions with regard thereto or (b) noncompliance with any other criteria relevant to investment performance results.
4. There has been no (a) fraud or alleged fraud involving management or employees who have significant roles in the Company's processes and procedures relating to compliance with the GIPS standards or (b) fraud or alleged fraud involving others that could have a material effect on the Company's compliance with the GIPS standards.

5. We have made available to you all records relevant to your examination of the aforementioned assertions.
6. There are no violations or possible violations of laws or regulations, including the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (if applicable), whose effects should be considered for disclosure in your report or in the composite performance presentations.
7. We acknowledge responsibility for maintaining sufficient books and records as required by the GIPS standards and/or applicable regulatory requirements and we have maintained such records to comply with those requirements.

We are not aware of any events that occurred subsequent to the period being reported on and through the date of this letter that would have a material effect on the aforementioned assertions.

*[Name of Chief Executive Officer and Title]*

*[Name of Chief Financial Officer and Title]*

## Appendix C

### Illustrative Attest Reports: Verification

#### Example 1: Reporting Directly on the Subject Matter

##### Independent Accountant's Report

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We have examined Atlas Asset Management's (the Company) (1) compliance with all the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and (2) design of its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0. The Company's management is responsible for compliance with the GIPS standards and the design of its processes and procedures. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence about the Company's compliance with the above-mentioned requirements, evaluating the design of the Company's processes and procedures referred to above, and performing the procedures for a verification set forth by the GIPS standards and such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, Atlas Asset Management has, in all material respects:

- Complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0; and
- Designed its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0.

We did not examine the performance results of the Company's composites for any period through December 31, 20Y0, including any performance presentations that may accompany this report and, accordingly, we express no opinion on any such performance results.<sup>1</sup>

[Signature]

September 1, 20Y1

---

<sup>1</sup> If the verifier has issued a separate performance examination report concurrently, it may insert the following instead: "This report does not relate to any composite presentation of the Company that may accompany this report, and, accordingly, we express no opinion on any such performance results."

**Example 2: Reporting on Management's Assertions—Assertions Included in Practitioner's Report**Independent Accountant's Report

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We have examined management's assertions that Atlas Asset Management (the Company) (1) complied with all the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and (2) designed its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0. These assertions are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these assertions based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting management's assertions and performing the procedures for a verification set forth by the GIPS standards and such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, management's assertions referred to above are fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the GIPS standards.

We did not examine the performance results of the Company's composites for any period through December 31, 20Y0, including any performance presentations that may accompany this report and, accordingly, we express no opinion on any such performance results.<sup>2</sup>

[Signature]

September 1, 20Y1

**Example 3: Reporting on Management's Assertions—Assertions Accompany Practitioner's Report**Independent Accountant's Report

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We have examined the accompanying management assertions of Atlas Asset Management (the Company) regarding compliance with all the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and the design of its processes and procedures for complying with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0. These assertions are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these assertions based on our examination.

---

<sup>2</sup> If the verifier has issued a separate performance examination report concurrently, it may insert the following instead: "This report does not relate to any composite presentation of the Company that may accompany this report, and, accordingly, we express no opinion on any such performance results."

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting management's assertions and performing the procedures for a verification set forth by the GIPS standards and such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, management's assertions referred to above are fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the GIPS standards.

We did not examine the performance results of the Company's composites for any period through December 31, 20Y0, including any performance presentations that may accompany this report and, accordingly, we express no opinion on any such performance results.<sup>3</sup>

[Signature]

September 1, 20Y1

**Example 3A: Illustrative Management's Assertions for Report Example 3**

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We assert that (1) Atlas Asset Management (the Company) has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and (2) the Company's processes and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0.

[Signature]

John Q. Jones

Chief Executive Officer

Atlas Asset Management

---

<sup>3</sup> If the verifier has issued a separate performance examination report concurrently, it may insert the following instead: "This report does not relate to any composite presentation of the Company that may accompany this report, and, accordingly, we express no opinion on any such performance results."

## Appendix D

### Illustrative Attest Reports: Verification and Performance Examination

#### Example 1: Reporting Directly on the Subject Matter (Verification and Performance Examination Report)

##### Independent Accountant's Report

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We have examined Atlas Asset Management's (the Company) (1) compliance with all the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and (2) design of its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0. We have also examined the accompanying [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*] of the Company's XYZ Composite for the periods from January 1, 20X1, through December 31, 20Y0. The Company's management is responsible for compliance with the GIPS standards and the design of its processes and procedures and for the [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*]. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence about the Company's compliance with the above-mentioned requirements; evaluating the design of the Company's processes and procedures referred to above; examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the accompanying composite performance presentation; and performing the procedures for a verification and a performance examination set forth by the GIPS standards and such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, Atlas Asset Management has, in all material respects:

- Complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0; and
- Designed its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0.

Also, in our opinion, [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*] of the Company's XYZ Composite for the periods from January 1, 20X1, through December 31, 20Y0, is presented, in all material respects, in conformity with the GIPS standards.

This report does not relate to any composite presentation of the Company other than the Company's XYZ Composite.

[*Signature*]

September 1, 20Y1

**Example 1A: Illustrative GIPS-Compliant Presentation for  
Report Example 1**

Atlas Asset Management  
XYZ Composite  
January 1, 20X1 through December 31, 20Y0

Year	Gross-of-Fees Return (Percent)	Net-of-Fees Return (Percent)	Benchmark Return (Percent)	Number of Port- folios	Internal Disper- sion (Percent)	Total Composite Assets (US\$ Million)	Total Firm Assets (US\$ Million)
20X1	16.0	15.0	14.1	26	4.5	165	236
20X2	2.2	1.3	1.8	32	2.0	235	346
20X3	22.4	21.5	24.1	38	5.7	344	529
20X4	7.1	6.2	6.0	45	2.8	445	695
20X5	8.5	7.5	8.0	48	3.1	520	839
20X6	-8.0	-8.9	-8.4	49	2.8	505	1014
20X7	-5.9	-6.8	-6.2	52	2.9	499	995
20X8	2.4	1.6	2.2	58	3.1	525	1125
20X9	6.7	5.9	6.8	55	3.5	549	1225
20Y0	9.4	8.6	9.1	59	2.5	575	1290

**Atlas Asset Management has prepared and presented this report  
in compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards  
(GIPS® standards).**

**Notes:**

1. Atlas Asset Management (the Company) is a balanced portfolio investment manager that invests solely in U.S. securities. The Company is defined as an independent investment management firm that is not affiliated with any parent organization. For the period from 20X1 through 20Y0, the Company has been verified by Verification Services LLP. A copy of the verification report is available upon request. Additional information regarding the firm's policies and procedures for calculating and reporting performance results is available upon request.
2. The composite includes all nontaxable balanced portfolios with an asset allocation of 30 percent S&P 500® and 70 percent Large-Cap Growth Bond Index Fund, which allow up to a 10 percent deviation in asset allocation.
3. The benchmark: 30 percent S&P 500®; 70 percent Large-Cap Growth Bond Index Fund rebalanced monthly.
4. Valuations are computed and performance reported in U.S. dollars.

5. Gross-of-fees performance returns are presented before management and custodial fees but after all trading expenses. Returns are presented net of nonreclaimable withholding taxes. Net-of-fees performance returns are calculated by deducting the highest fee of 0.25 percent from the quarterly gross composite return. The management fee schedule is as follows: 1.00 percent on the first \$25,000,000; 0.60 percent thereafter.
6. This composite was created in February 20X1. A complete list and description of firm composites is available upon request.
7. Internal dispersion is calculated using the equal-weighted standard deviation of all portfolios that were included in the composite for the entire year.

## **Example 2: Reporting Directly on the Subject Matter (Performance Examination Report With a Reference to a Separate Report on a Verification)**

### Independent Accountant's Report

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We have examined the accompanying<sup>1</sup> [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentations*] of Atlas Asset Management's (the Company) ABC and XYZ Composites for the periods from January 1, 20X1, through December 31, 20Y0. The Company's management is responsible for these performance presentations. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination. We previously conducted an examination (also referred to as a verification) of the Company's (1) compliance with all the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and (2) design of its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0; our report dated August 7, 20Y1, with respect thereto is attached.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the accompanying composite performance presentations, and performing the procedures for a performance examination set forth by the GIPS standards and such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentations*] of the Company's ABC and XYZ Composites for the periods from January 1, 20X1, through December 31, 20Y0, are presented, in all material respects, in conformity with the GIPS standards.

This report does not relate to any composite presentation of the Company other than the Company's ABC and XYZ Composites.

[Signature]

September 1, 20Y1

---

<sup>1</sup> See Example 1A for illustrative composite performance presentation that would accompany report.

**Example 3: Reporting on Management's Assertions; Assertions Accompany Practitioner's Report**Independent Accountant's Report

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We have examined the accompanying management assertions of Atlas Asset Management (the Company) regarding compliance with the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and the design of its processes and procedures for complying with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 20Y0. We have also examined management's assertion relating to the presentation of the Company's ABC and XYZ Composites for the periods from January 1, 20X1, through December 31, 20Y0.<sup>2</sup> These assertions are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these assertions based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting management's assertions and performing the procedures for a verification and a performance examination set forth by the GIPS standards and such other procedures we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, management's assertions referred to above are fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the GIPS standards.

This report does not relate to any composite presentation of the Company other than the Company's accompanying ABC and XYZ Composites.

[Signature]

September 1, 20Y1

***Example 3A: Illustrative Management's Assertions for Report Example 3***

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We assert that (1) Atlas Asset Management (the Company) has complied with all the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 20Y0, and (2) the Company's processes and procedures are designed to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) as of December 31, 20Y0.

---

<sup>2</sup> If management's assertions do not accompany the report, this sentence and the preceding sentence would be modified to include management's complete assertions.

We also assert that the accompanying composite performance presentations for the ABC and XYZ Composites for the periods from January 1, 20X1, through December 31, 20Y0, are presented in conformity with the GIPS standards.<sup>3</sup>

[Signature]

John Q. Jones  
Chief Executive Officer  
Atlas Asset Management

---

<sup>3</sup> See Example 1A for illustrative composite performance presentation that would accompany report.

## Appendix E

### Illustrative Attest Reports: Verification and Performance Examination Under Both AIMR-PPS and GIPS Standards

(Not to be used for periods ending after December 31, 2005)

#### Reporting Directly on the Subject Matter (Verification and Performance Examination Report)

##### Independent Accountant's Report

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We have examined Atlas Asset Management's (the Company) (1) compliance with all the composite construction requirements of both the Association for Investment Management and Research Performance Presentation Standards (AIMR-PPS® standards) and the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS® standards) (collectively, the performance standards) on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 2005, and (2) design of its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the performance standards as of December 31, 2005. We have also examined the accompanying [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*] of the Company's XYZ Composite for the periods from January 1, 1996 through December 31, 2005. The Company's management is responsible for compliance with the performance standards and the design of its processes and procedures and for the [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*]. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence about the Company's compliance with the above-mentioned requirements; evaluating the design of the Company's processes and procedures referred to above; examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the accompanying composite performance presentation; and performing the procedures for a verification and a performance examination set forth by the performance standards and such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, Atlas Asset Management has, in all material respects:

- Complied with all the composite construction requirements of the performance standards on a firm-wide basis for the 10-year period ended December 31, 2005; and
- Designed its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the performance standards as of December 31, 2005.

Also, in our opinion, [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*] of the Company’s XYZ Composite for the periods from January 1, 1996, through December 31, 2005, is presented, in all material respects, in conformity with the performance standards.<sup>1</sup>

This report does not relate to any composite presentation of the Company other than the Company’s XYZ Composite.

[*Signature*]

March 1, 2006

---

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix D [paragraph .41], Example 1A, for illustrative composite performance presentation that would accompany report.

## Appendix F

### Illustrative Attest Reports: Successor Practitioner Report—Verification and Performance Examination

#### Reporting Directly on the Subject Matter (Verification and Performance Examination Report) in Successor Practitioner's Report When the Predecessor Verifier's Report Is Not Presented

##### Independent Accountant's Report

Atlas Asset Management  
10 Main Street  
Anytown, USA

We have examined Atlas Asset Management's (the Company) (1) compliance with the composite construction requirements of the Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS®) on a firm-wide basis for the year ended December 31, 2005, and (2) design of its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 2005. We have also examined the accompanying [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*] of the Company's XYZ Composite for the year ended December 31, 2005. The Company's management is responsible for compliance with the GIPS standards and the design of its processes and procedures and for the [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*]. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination. [*Refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*] of the Company's XYZ Composite for the periods from January 1, 1996, through December 31, 2004, were examined by other independent accountants, whose report dated August 27, 2005, expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining, on a test basis, evidence about the Company's compliance with the above-mentioned requirements, evaluating the design of the Company's processes and procedures referred to above, examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the accompanying composite performance presentation, and performing the procedures for a verification and a performance examination set forth by the GIPS standards and such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, Atlas Asset Management has, in all material respects:

- Complied with all the composite construction requirements of the GIPS standards on a firm-wide basis for the year ended December 31, 2005; and
- Designed its processes and procedures to calculate and present performance results in compliance with the GIPS standards as of December 31, 2005.

Also, in our opinion, [*refer to accompanying composite performance presentation*] of the Company's XYZ Composite for the year ended December 31, 2005, is presented, in all material respects, in conformity with the GIPS standards.<sup>1</sup>

We have not been engaged to examine, and did not examine, performance results of the Company's XYZ Composite for any period prior to January 1, 2005, as shown in the accompanying [*refer to the accompanying composite performance presentation*] and, accordingly, we express no opinion on any such performance results.

This report does not relate to any composite presentation of the Company other than the Company's XYZ Composite.

[*Signature*]

March 1, 2006

---

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix D [paragraph .41], Example 1A, for illustrative composite performance presentation that would accompany report.

## Investment Performance Standards Task Force

PETER J. MCNAMARA, *Chair*  
KIMBERLY A. CASH  
RAJAN CHARI  
TODD JOHNSON

CARNEY LEUNG  
ALECIA L. LICATA  
BRENT D. OSWALD  
KARYN D. VINCENT

### AICPA Staff

CHARLES E. LANDES  
*Vice President Professional  
Standards and Services*

AHAVA Z. GOLDMAN  
*Technical Manager  
Audit and Attest Standards*

---

[The next page is 31,781.]



## Section 14,430

# ***Statement of Position 07-2 Attestation Engagements That Address Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls at Entities That Provide Services to Investment Companies, Investment Advisers, or Other Service Providers***

October 15, 2007

### **NOTE**

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretive publication and represents the recommendations of the Chief Compliance Officers Task Force of the AICPA Auditing Standards Board (ASB) regarding the application of Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAE) primarily to examination engagements in which a practitioner reports on the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of a service provider's controls in achieving specified compliance control objectives. Examples of the service providers addressed by this SOP are investment advisers, custodians, transfer agents, administrators, and principal underwriters that provide services to investment companies (including business development companies), investment advisers, or other service providers (*user organizations*). A practitioner's report on the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of a service provider's controls in achieving specified compliance control objectives is used primarily by user organizations because aspects of a user organization's compliance or internal control over compliance with laws, regulations, and rules may be affected by or include controls at service providers. The ASB has found the recommendations in this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 202.01), of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct.

Interpretive publications are not as authoritative as pronouncements of the ASB; however, if a practitioner does not apply the attestation guidance included in this SOP, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the provisions of SSAE addressed by this SOP.

## **Introduction and Background**

.01 In December 2003, the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) adopted Rule 38a-1 under the Investment Company Act of 1940 and Rule 206(4)-7 under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940. The rules were adopted to protect investors by ensuring that (a) each investment company registered with the SEC under the Investment Company Act of 1940, and each business

development company<sup>1</sup> (collectively, funds) has an internal program to enhance compliance with federal securities laws<sup>2</sup> and (b) each investment adviser registered with the SEC has an internal program to enhance compliance with the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, including SEC rules issued thereunder.

**.02** Many operations of funds and, in some instances, operations of investment advisers are carried out by entities that provide services to the funds or investment advisers. In this Statement of Position (SOP), such entities are termed *service providers*. Service providers have their own compliance policies and procedures that may affect or be part of a fund's or investment adviser's compliance or internal control over compliance with federal securities laws, individual statutes or provisions thereof, or corresponding SEC rules (*federal securities laws or elements thereof*).<sup>3</sup> Rule 38a-1 requires each fund to adopt and implement written policies and procedures reasonably designed to prevent violation of federal securities laws by the fund or any of the following service providers named in the rule: investment advisers, principal underwriters, administrators, and transfer agents. Accordingly, a fund's compliance policies and procedures provide for oversight of the compliance procedures performed by the named service providers. Further, Rule 206(4)-7 requires an investment adviser to adopt and implement written policies and procedures reasonably designed to prevent violation by the investment adviser and its supervised persons of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 and SEC rules issued thereunder. In this SOP, the term *service providers* refers to the service providers named in Rule 38a-1 as well as other service providers, such as custodians. The term *user organization* generally refers to a fund or investment adviser that uses the services of a service provider. In some instances, a single entity may be a service provider *and* a user organization. For example, Administrator A, in its capacity as a service provider to a fund, may be responsible for monitoring whether the fund's registration statement filed with the SEC complies with SEC disclosure requirements, but may subcontract that function to Administrator B that specializes in that area. In this situation, Administrator A is also a user organization because it uses the services of Administrator B. In this SOP, Administrator B is referred to as a *subservice provider*. In applying the guidance in this SOP, a subservice provider is considered a service provider.

**.03** Among other provisions, the rules mentioned in paragraph .01 require funds and investment advisers to:

- Adopt and implement written policies and procedures<sup>4</sup> reasonably designed to prevent violation of, in the case of funds, federal securities

---

<sup>1</sup> A business development company is a closed-end investment company that, among other requirements, has elected to be subject to the provisions of certain sections of the Investment Company Act of 1940.

<sup>2</sup> Rule 38a-1 defines *federal securities laws* to include the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, Title V of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, any rules adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) under any of these statutes, the Bank Secrecy Act as it applies to funds, and any rules adopted thereunder by the SEC or the Department of the Treasury.

<sup>3</sup> In this Statement of Position (SOP), *federal securities laws or elements thereof* is defined as federal securities laws (see footnote 2), individual statutes or provisions thereof, or corresponding SEC rules.

<sup>4</sup> Rule 38a-1 and Rule 206(4)-7 use the term *policies and procedures* to refer to the principles and activities an entity adopts and implements to prevent violation of federal securities laws or elements thereof. In this SOP, the term *controls* is used to refer to the policies and procedures an entity adopts and implements to achieve specified compliance control objectives.

laws and, in the case of investment advisers, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, including SEC rules issued thereunder

- Review those policies and procedures at least annually for their adequacy and the effectiveness of their implementation<sup>5</sup>
- Designate a chief compliance officer (CCO) to be responsible for administering the policies and procedures (for funds, the CCO must report directly to the fund's board of directors)

.04 SEC Release Nos. IC-26299 and IA-2204 adopting the rules note that it may be impractical for a fund or its CCO to directly review all of its named service providers' policies and procedures, particularly if one or more of the service providers are not affiliated with the fund. In these circumstances, the SEC considers the fund to have satisfied the requirements of Rule 38a-1 if the fund's board of directors, in evaluating whether to approve the service provider's compliance program, uses a "third-party report" on the service provider's policies and procedures.<sup>6</sup> In the United States fund industry, in connection with the audit of a fund's financial statements, a number of service providers are accustomed to engaging an independent auditor to report on the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of controls at the service provider that may be relevant to the fund's internal control over financial reporting. These engagements are performed under AU section 324, *Service Organizations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), and reports issued thereunder are used by the funds' independent auditor when auditing the fund's financial statements. Similarly, since the adoption of the rules in December 2003, service providers have received requests from funds and investment advisers for information and assurance regarding the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the service provider's controls in achieving compliance control objectives. Also, in some circumstances, subservice providers (service providers that provide services to other service providers, for example, a service organization that reports fund share balances and transactions of retirement plan participants, in aggregate, to a fund's transfer agent and maintains records thereof) have received similar requests from service providers. Such information assists funds and investment advisers in fulfilling their responsibilities to perform an annual review of specified compliance activities and assists service providers and subservice providers in their consideration of their own controls.

.05 Specific information about the rules is provided in "Compliance Programs of Investment Companies and Investment Advisers," which can be

---

<sup>5</sup> The annual review requirement is imposed upon the fund or investment adviser. Specifically, the rules do not require the fund or adviser to engage an independent accountant to attest to management's annual review or to perform a separate evaluation of any aspect of the fund's or investment adviser's compliance policies and procedures. Further, the rules do not require that the annual review employ a specific framework or methodology for evaluating the effectiveness of a fund's or investment adviser's compliance policies and procedures. Lastly, there is no requirement that annual or other compliance reports prepared by chief compliance officers of funds or investment advisers be filed with the SEC; however, the SEC may request such reports in connection with their inspection and examination programs of funds and investment advisers or in other circumstances.

<sup>6</sup> The SEC release states that the third party report must describe the service provider's compliance program as it relates to the types of services provided to the fund, discuss the types of compliance risks material to the fund, and assess the adequacy of the service provider's compliance controls. Information produced as a result of an engagement covered by this SOP may be used by the fund, in part, to meet these provisions. The report must be provided to the fund no less frequently than annually.

accessed at the United States SEC Web site at [www.sec.gov/rules/final/ia-2204.htm](http://www.sec.gov/rules/final/ia-2204.htm). The following is a table that briefly summarizes significant provisions of the rules. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

<b>SEC Rule and (Section Number)</b>	<b>Rule 38a-1 (§17 CFR 270.38a-1)</b>	<b>Rule 206(4)-7 (§17 CFR 275.206(4)-7) and Amendments to Rule 204-2 (§17 CFR 275.204-2)</b>
<b>Applicable entity</b>	<b>Investment companies and business development companies (funds) must:</b>	<b>Investment advisers must:</b>
<b>Nature of the policies and procedures to be adopted and implemented</b>	Adopt and implement written policies and procedures reasonably designed to prevent violation of federal securities laws by the fund, including policies and procedures that provide for oversight of compliance by each investment adviser, principal underwriter, administrator, and transfer agent (named service providers) of the fund.	Adopt and implement written policies and procedures reasonably designed to prevent violation, by the investment adviser and persons supervised by the investment adviser, of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 and the SEC rules issued thereunder.
<b>Board approval of policies and procedures</b>	Obtain approval by the fund's board of directors of the fund's policies and procedures and those of each of the named service providers.	
<b>Annual review of policies and procedures</b>	Review, no less frequently than annually, (1) the adequacy of the policies and procedures of the fund and each of the named service providers and (2) the effectiveness of their implementation.	Review, no less frequently than annually, (1) the adequacy of the policies and procedures established pursuant to the rule and (2) the effectiveness of their implementation.
<b>Individual responsible for administering policies and procedures</b>	Designate an individual to be the fund's CCO, responsible for administering the policies and procedures adopted under paragraph (a) (1) of the rule. The designation and compensation of the CCO must be approved by the fund's board of directors, and the CCO may be removed only by action and approval of the fund's board of directors.	Designate an individual (who is a supervised person) to be the adviser's CCO, responsible for administering the policies and procedures that are adopted under paragraph (a) of the rule.

<b>Report to the board of directors</b>	<p>The CCO must provide a written report to the fund's board of directors, no less frequently than annually, that addresses at a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The operation of the fund's policies and procedures and those of each of the named service providers, any material changes made to those policies and procedures since the last report, and any material changes to the policies and procedures recommended as a result of the annual review.</li> <li>• Each <i>material compliance matter</i><sup>7</sup> that occurred since the date of the last report.</li> </ul> <p>After the initial report, subsequent CCO reports are expected to cover the period since the date of the last report.</p>	
---	--	--

## Objective of the Examination Engagement

**.06** Because federal securities laws encompass a significantly comprehensive set of obligations and responsibilities, the compliance control objectives presented by management of the service provider ordinarily would not include all conceivable compliance control objectives related to federal securities laws or elements thereof. Also, although Rule 38a-1 requires a fund's CCO to include in the fund's annual compliance report information concerning any material compliance matter(s) that occurred during the relevant period, the objective of the examination engagement described in paragraphs .01–.33 of this SOP is not to identify and report any material compliance matter(s) that may have existed at the service provider during the period covered by the practitioner's report. Rather, the objective of the examination engagement described in paragraphs .01–.33 of this SOP is for the practitioner to report on the suitability of the design (at the end of a specified period) and the operating effectiveness (during the specified period) of the service provider's controls in achieving the compliance control objectives specified by management of the service provider.

**.07** AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), allows a practitioner to report on either management's assertion or on

<sup>7</sup> SEC Rule 38a-1 defines a *material compliance matter* as any compliance matter about which the fund's board of directors would reasonably need to know to oversee fund compliance and that involves, without limitation, (a) a violation of federal securities laws (as defined in Rule 38a-1) by the fund, its investment adviser, principal underwriter, administrator, or transfer agent (or officers, directors, employees, or agents thereof); (b) a violation of the policies and procedures of the fund, its investment adviser, principal underwriter, administrator, or transfer agent; or (c) a weakness in the design or implementation of the policies and procedures of the fund, its investment adviser, principal underwriter, administrator, or transfer agent.

the subject matter to which it relates.<sup>8</sup> Paragraph .64 of AT section 101 indicates that when the practitioner reports on an assertion, the assertion should either be (a) bound with or accompany the practitioner's report or (b) clearly stated in the practitioner's report. In view of the intended use of the information produced in connection with examination engagements covered by this SOP, practitioners are strongly encouraged to report on management's assertion rather than on the subject matter to ensure that management's assertion will be available to users of the report.

## Subject Matter of the Examination Engagement

.08 The examination engagement described in paragraphs .01–.33 of this SOP should be performed in accordance with AT section 101. AT section 101 enables a practitioner to design an engagement and report on subject matter (or an assertion thereon) other than financial statements. The subject matter of the engagement described in paragraphs .01–.33 of this SOP is the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of a service provider's controls directed at achieving specified compliance control objectives. Use of the practitioner's examination report is restricted to the CCOs, management, boards of directors, and independent auditors of the service provider and of the entities that use the services of the service provider because these users would be expected to have the requisite knowledge and familiarity with the service provider's organization to understand the context of the examination report. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Management's Responsibilities

.09 In an examination engagement in which the practitioner reports on the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of controls to achieve specified compliance control objectives, management of the service provider is responsible for:

- a. Specifying compliance control objectives and related controls that are relevant to the services provided to user organizations and their internal control over compliance with federal securities laws or elements thereof.
- b. Preparing and providing the practitioner with a written description of the specified compliance control objectives and related controls referred to in paragraph .09a (see Appendix A-4 [paragraph .41] of this SOP, "Illustrative Service Provider's Description of Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls"). If applicable, the written description should include the applicable information described in paragraphs .16–.17 of this SOP concerning compliance control objectives and related controls of subservice providers.
- c. Preparing and providing the practitioner with a written assertion regarding the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives<sup>9</sup>

---

<sup>8</sup> When conditions exist that individually or in combination result in one or more material misstatements or deviations from the criteria, to most effectively communicate with the reader of the report, the practitioner should ordinarily express his or her conclusion directly on the subject matter, not on the assertion.

<sup>9</sup> Paragraph .09 of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), states that a practitioner should ordinarily obtain a written assertion in an examination engagement, whether reporting on the subject matter or reporting on a written assertion.

(see Appendix A-3 (paragraph .40) of this SOP for an illustrative management assertion). The criteria management use in evaluating the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls included in management's description and in making its assertion are the specified compliance control objectives.

- d. Identifying and presenting a list of user control considerations if the application of controls by user organizations is necessary to achieve the specified compliance control objectives. In certain circumstances, a service provided by a service provider may be designed with the assumption that certain controls will be implemented by user organizations. For example, the service may be designed with the assumption that user organizations will have controls in place for authorizing transactions before they are sent to the service provider for processing. If such user controls are required to achieve the stated compliance control objectives, the service provider should describe them either in its written description or in a separate list accompanying the description.
- e. Preparing and providing the practitioner with a representation letter that ordinarily includes the items listed in paragraph .26a–j of this SOP.

## Criteria

.10 Paragraph .23 of AT section 101 states, in part, that “The practitioner must have reason to believe that the subject matter is capable of evaluation against criteria that are suitable....” Paragraph .24 of AT section 101, in turn, indicates that suitable criteria must have each of the following attributes: objectivity, measurability, completeness, and relevance. In the examination engagement covered by this SOP, the criteria to be used to evaluate the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls are the specified compliance control objectives. The practitioner should consider whether the language used by management to describe the specified compliance control objectives included in the written description is sufficiently precise to permit people having competence in and using the same measurement criterion to ordinarily obtain materially similar measurements (paragraph .29 of AT section 101). Consequently, practitioners should not perform an engagement covered by this SOP if the criteria are so subjective or vague that reasonably consistent measurements, qualitative or quantitative, of the subject matter cannot ordinarily be obtained. For example, the following compliance control objective ordinarily would be too subjective for evaluation:

Advertising and sales literature is frequently and properly reviewed.

The following revision of this control objective improves its objectivity and measurability:

At the end of each quarter, advertising and sales literature is reviewed by the service provider's compliance officer for conformity with the service provider's written policies.

Furthermore, although this SOP does not require all service providers to present identical compliance control objectives for similar business activities or services (for example, transfer agency and fund administration) included in the scope of the attestation engagement, compliance control objectives or elements thereof that pertain to those business activities or services and are relevant to user organizations should not be omitted if management of the service provider or the practitioner becomes aware of deficiencies in the suitability of the design

or operating effectiveness of controls that would prevent the achievement of such objectives. See also related guidance in paragraphs .12*b* and .21–.22 of this SOP. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Reference to Laws, Regulations, and Rules

.11 The written description of specified compliance control objectives and related controls prepared by management of the service provider should not include general or broad references<sup>10</sup> to federal securities laws or elements thereof that might imply that the specified compliance control objectives completely address or directly correspond to such laws or elements thereof. Such references may mislead user organizations and others because most laws, regulations, and rules contain numerous and detailed provisions, all of which may not be addressed by the compliance control objectives and related controls. Management of the service provider may, however, include a citation from such federal securities laws or elements thereof within the specified compliance control objective, in the written description, if the citation is sufficiently specific. An example is a citation containing the specific section or subsection of the law, regulation, or rule corresponding to the specified compliance control objective as in “For money market mutual funds, investments are monitored on a weekly basis for compliance with the portfolio maturity and quality provisions of SEC Rule 2a-7c.2 and 2a-7c.3, respectively.”

## Practitioner’s Responsibilities

.12 For the practitioner to express an opinion on the suitability of the design<sup>11</sup> and operating effectiveness of a service provider’s controls in achieving specified compliance control objectives, the practitioner should:

- a. Obtain an understanding of the nature of the services provided by the service provider to user organizations and determine whether the specified compliance control objectives included in management’s description are relevant to the services provided. Methods for obtaining an understanding of the services provided include:
  - Reading representative contracts between the service provider and user organizations, marketing or other material provided to user organizations, reports developed by internal auditors, and correspondence to and from regulatory authorities; and
  - Making inquiries of management and other service provider personnel.
- b. Obtain a written description prepared by management of the service provider of the specified compliance control objectives and related controls that are relevant to the services provided to user organizations and their internal control over compliance with federal securities laws or elements thereof (see Appendix A-4 (paragraph .41) of this SOP, “Illustrative Service Provider’s Description of Specified Compliance

---

<sup>10</sup> For example, the written description should not include a table that aligns the specified compliance control objectives with generally or broadly described federal securities laws or elements thereof. Such a presentation could cause readers to incorrectly conclude that the specified control objectives address all provisions of the federal securities laws or elements thereof referenced in the table.

<sup>11</sup> A control is suitably designed if individually, or in combination with other controls, it is likely to prevent or detect errors that could result in the nonachievement of specified compliance control objectives when the described controls are complied with satisfactorily.

Control Objectives and Related Controls”). If the practitioner concludes that the description is materially misstated or misleading in the circumstances, the practitioner should inform the service provider’s management and request that the description be amended. If management refuses to amend the description in a manner that addresses the practitioner’s concerns, the practitioner should consider withdrawing from the engagement.

- c. Consider the linkage between the controls and the specified compliance control objectives and the ability of the controls to prevent or detect errors related to the specified compliance control objectives.
- d. Obtain sufficient appropriate evidence regarding the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives. Procedures to obtain evidence regarding the suitability of the design and implementation of relevant controls may include inquiry of appropriate service provider personnel, observation of the application of specific controls, inspection of documents and reports, and tracing transactions relevant to the subject matter of the engagement through the service provider’s applicable information and communication systems. Inquiry alone is not sufficient to evaluate the design of a control relevant to an examination engagement and to determine whether it has been implemented. In testing the operating effectiveness of controls, the practitioner should obtain evidence about how the controls were applied at relevant times during the period under examination, the consistency with which they were applied, and by whom or what means they were applied. Tests of the operating effectiveness of controls ordinarily include the same types of procedures used to evaluate the design and implementation of controls, and may also include reperformance of the application of the control by the practitioner. Since inquiry alone is not sufficient, the practitioner should use a combination of procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence regarding the operating effectiveness of controls.
- e. Ordinarily, obtain a written assertion prepared by management of the service provider regarding the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the service provider’s controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives (see Appendix A-3 [paragraph .40] of this SOP for an illustrative management assertion). As noted in paragraph .07 of this SOP, to ensure that management’s assertion will be available to users of the report, practitioners are strongly encouraged to report on management’s written assertion rather than on the subject matter, except when a deficiency or deficiencies in controls exist that, individually or in combination, result in the nonachievement of one or more specified compliance control objectives.
- f. Obtain a representation letter from management that ordinarily would include the items in paragraph .26a–j of this SOP. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.13** Ordinarily, for the examination engagement described in this SOP, the relevant aspects of a service provider’s internal control over compliance pertaining to its control environment, risk assessment, and monitoring would not be presented in the form of compliance control objectives; however, management of the service provider is not precluded from doing so. The practitioner should perform tests of the relevant aspects of the service provider’s control environment, risk assessment, and monitoring that relate to the services

provided and should assess their effectiveness in establishing, enhancing, or mitigating the effectiveness of specific controls. If there are weaknesses in relevant aspects of the control environment, risk assessment, and monitoring the practitioner should consider an appropriate response. For example, modifying his or her procedures to obtain more persuasive evidence about the operating effectiveness of the controls and whether the specified compliance control objectives have been achieved. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Matters Addressed by the Compliance Control Objectives

**.14** As noted in paragraph .06, because federal securities laws encompass a significantly comprehensive set of obligations and responsibilities, management's description ordinarily would not include all conceivable compliance control objectives related to federal securities laws or elements thereof.

**.15** Unless the compliance control objectives have been designated by an outside party, such as a regulatory authority or a user group, management of the service provider is responsible for specifying the compliance control objectives and related controls that are the subject of the engagement. In establishing the compliance control objectives and related controls, management of the service provider should consider:

- a. The nature of the services provided to user organizations
- b. The service provider's contractual obligations to user organizations
- c. The information and assurance needs of user organizations, including the relevancy of the compliance control objectives and related controls to the services provided to user organizations and their internal control over compliance with federal securities laws or elements thereof<sup>12</sup>

Further, when circumstances permit, discussions between management of the service provider and user organizations are advisable in determining the compliance control objectives intended to address the needs of user organizations.

**.16** Service providers may have contractual or other arrangements with one or more subservice providers or other parties that perform administrative, computer operations, transaction processing, recordkeeping, or other activities on their behalf. In these circumstances, management of the service provider determines whether the subservice provider's relevant control objectives and related controls are to be included or excluded from its written description of specified compliance control objectives and related controls. Although the inclusive method provides more information to user organizations, it may not be appropriate or feasible in many or all instances. In determining which approach to use, management of the service provider should consider (a) the nature and extent of information about the subservice provider from which user organizations would derive benefit, (b) the degree of responsibility management would assume by including information about the subservice organization in its description and accompanying written assertion, and (c) the practical difficulties entailed in implementing the inclusive method. Whether the subservice provider's relevant control objectives and related controls are included or excluded from the written description, the description should include a brief statement of the functions and nature of the services performed by the subservice provider. Ordinarily, disclosure of the identity of the subservice provider

<sup>12</sup> See SEC Release Nos. IC-26299 and IA-2204 adopting Rules 38a-1 and 206(4)-7, respectively (Section II.A., *Adoption and Implementation of Policies and Procedures*).

is not required. If, however, management of the service provider determines that the identity of the subservice provider would be relevant to user organizations, the name of the subservice provider may be included in the written description provided that there are no prohibitions against doing so, by contract or otherwise, and any necessary approvals have been obtained by the service provider. Also, when included, the written description should clearly differentiate between controls of the service provider and controls of the subservice provider.

**.17** If the subservice provider's relevant compliance control objectives and related controls are excluded, management of the service provider should state in the written description that the subservice provider's compliance control objectives and related controls are omitted from the description and, unless achievement of the compliance control objectives depends on controls at the subservice provider, that the compliance control objectives included in the written description include only those objectives that the service provider's controls are intended to achieve. Reporting guidance for situations in which the service provider excludes the subservice provider's compliance control objectives and related controls from the service provider's written description is presented in paragraph .31 of this SOP.

**.18** As noted in paragraph .13, ordinarily in the examination engagement described in this SOP, the relevant aspects of a service provider's internal control pertaining to its control environment, risk assessment, and monitoring would not be presented in the form of compliance control objectives; however, management of the service provider is not precluded from presenting those aspects in the form of compliance control objectives.

## Evaluating Deficiencies in Controls

**.19** Paragraph .24 of AT section 101 states, in part, that criteria are the standards or benchmarks against which the practitioner evaluates the subject matter. In this SOP, the criteria used by the practitioner to evaluate the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls included in management's description are the specified compliance control objectives. The practitioner should evaluate the results of the procedures he or she performed to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence about the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls and determine the significance of any identified deficiencies in controls, individually and in combination, to the achievement of the specified compliance control objectives. A deficiency in design exists when (a) a control necessary to meet the control objective is missing or (b) an existing control is not properly designed so that, even if it operates as designed, the control objective would not always be met. A deficiency in operation exists when a properly designed control does not operate as designed or when the person performing the control does not possess the necessary authority or qualifications to perform the control effectively. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**.20** The following are examples of factors that are relevant in evaluating the significance of identified deficiencies in controls:

- The existence of effective compensating controls that have been tested and evaluated and limit the severity of the deficiency
- The significance of the control(s) to achieving the compliance control objective

- The existence of multiple deficiencies in controls that, in combination, may be significant to the achievement of a compliance control objective, even if the deficiencies are individually insignificant to the achievement of the compliance control objective

The practitioner may conclude that the specified compliance control objective has been achieved even if a deficiency or deficiencies in controls have been identified. However, if, after performing his or her procedures, the practitioner concludes that the specified compliance control objective was not achieved, the practitioner should modify his or her report. See paragraph .29 of this SOP for related reporting guidance.

## **User Organizations Affected by a Service Provider's Noncompliance With Federal Securities Laws or Elements Thereof**

**.21** In the course of performing procedures at a service provider, a practitioner may become aware of a matter or matters constituting noncompliance with federal securities laws or elements thereof (including material compliance matters) that occurred during the period covered by the practitioner's report and relate to business activities or services included in the scope of the attestation engagement. Unless the instance(s) of noncompliance are clearly inconsequential, the practitioner should obtain an understanding of:

- The nature of the noncompliance matter(s),
- The cause(s) of such,
- The period during which the noncompliance matter(s) existed or occurred, and
- The nature of any remediation activities taken to subsequently achieve compliance or the status of any remediation activities the service provider plans to take to achieve compliance.

**.22** Further, the practitioner should determine whether information about the noncompliance matter(s) has been communicated to affected user organizations. If management of the service provider has not communicated this information and is unwilling to do so, and the practitioner believes the nature of the noncompliance matter(s) could be significant to user organizations, the practitioner should inform management and those charged with governance of the service provider of the circumstances. If management and those charged with governance of the service provider do not respond in an appropriate manner, the practitioner should consider withdrawing from the engagement. The practitioner generally is not required to confirm with the user organizations that the service provider has communicated such information. If the user organizations have been notified in writing, the practitioner may request a copy from the service provider of the written communication. In all cases, judgment should be used by the practitioner in considering the effect, if any, of all information obtained about the noncompliance matter(s) on (a) the written assertion provided by management of the service provider regarding the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives; and (b) the practitioner's procedures and report. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Management Assertion

**.23** Paragraph .08 of AT section 101 defines an assertion as any declaration or set of declarations about whether the subject matter is based on or in conformity with the criteria selected. Paragraph .09 of AT section 101 provides the practitioner with additional information about a written assertion. For the examination engagement described in this SOP, whether reporting directly on the subject matter or on the assertion, the practitioner should ordinarily obtain a written assertion from management of the service provider regarding the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the service provider's controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives. Appendix A-3 (paragraph .40) of this SOP contains an illustrative management assertion.

**.24** Management's assertion regarding the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls should specify the "as of" date and period covered by management's assertion. The determination of an appropriate period is at the discretion of management; however, to be useful to user organizations, the assertion and related practitioner's report ordinarily covers a minimum reporting period of six months. The following are examples of factors that are relevant in establishing the reporting period:

- The anticipated needs of users of the report
- The degree and frequency of changes in the service provider's controls related to the specified compliance control objectives
- The period needed to provide sufficient and appropriate evidence regarding the operating effectiveness of the controls [Revised, June

2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Management Representations

**.25** Paragraphs .59–.60 of AT section 101 state, in part:

59. During an attest engagement, the responsible party makes many representations to the practitioner, both oral and written, in response to specific inquiries or through the presentation of subject matter or an assertion. Such representations from the responsible party are part of the evidential matter the practitioner obtains.

60. Written representations from the responsible party ordinarily confirm representations explicitly or implicitly given to the practitioner, indicate and document the continuing appropriateness of such representations, and reduce the possibility of misunderstanding concerning the matters that are the subject of the representations. Accordingly, in an examination or a review engagement, a practitioner should consider obtaining a representation letter from the responsible party.

**.26** The representations that a practitioner considers appropriate generally will depend on the subject matter and circumstances of the engagement. In addition to obtaining management's written assertion about the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the service provider's controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives, the practitioner ordinarily would obtain the following written representations from management of the service provider in connection with the examination engagement described in paragraphs .01–.33 of this SOP:

- a. A statement acknowledging management's responsibility for:

- The subject matter of the examination engagement; namely, the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives
  - Selecting the criteria used and determining the appropriateness of such criteria for its purposes, including selecting and presenting compliance control objectives that are relevant to the services provided to user organizations and their internal control over compliance with federal securities laws or elements thereof (practitioners may wish to include in the representation letter the definition of the term *federal securities laws or elements thereof* found in footnotes 2 and 3 of this SOP)
  - Its description of specified compliance control objectives and related controls
  - Its written assertion about the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives
  - Establishing and maintaining compliance and effective internal control over compliance with federal securities laws or elements thereof as they relate to the scope of the examination engagement, including establishing and maintaining controls that are suitably designed and operating effectively to achieve the specified compliance control objectives
- b. A statement that management has disclosed to the practitioner all deficiencies of which it is aware in the design or operation of the service provider's internal control over compliance with federal securities laws or elements thereof, related to the scope of the attestation engagement, that existed during the period covered by the practitioner's report, including those for which management believes the cost of corrective action may exceed the benefits
- c. A statement that management has disclosed to the practitioner any significant changes in the service provider's controls related to the scope of the attestation engagement made since the service provider's last examination
- d. A statement that management has disclosed to the practitioner any instances of which it is aware of the service provider's noncompliance with federal securities laws or elements thereof, related to the scope of the attestation engagement, that existed during the period covered by the practitioner's report and that may affect one or more user organizations
- e. A statement that management has disclosed to the practitioner all instances of which it is aware when the service provider's controls have not operated with sufficient effectiveness during the period covered by the practitioner's report to achieve the specified compliance control objectives
- f. A statement that management has disclosed to the practitioner all known matters contradicting the assertion and any communications from attorneys, regulatory agencies, internal auditors, consultants, other practitioners, or third parties related to the service provider's compliance, or internal control over compliance, with federal securities laws or elements thereof during the period covered by the practitioner's report that may affect one or more user organizations

- g.* A statement that management has made available to the practitioner all records and other information it believes are relevant to the service provider's compliance, or internal control over compliance, with federal securities laws or elements thereof, related to the scope of the attestation engagement and the period covered by the practitioner's report
- h.* A statement that management has responded fully to all inquiries made by the practitioner during the engagement
- i.* A statement that management has disclosed all events of which it is aware that occurred subsequent to the period being reported on that would have a material effect on the subject matter (or management's assertion) to which the practitioner's report relates
- j.* Statements regarding other matters the practitioner deems appropriate for inclusion in management's representations to the practitioner

**.27** If management refuses to furnish all the written representations that the practitioner deems necessary, the practitioner should consider the effects of such a refusal on his or her ability to express an opinion about the subject matter or assertion. If the practitioner believes that the representations are necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence to express an opinion, management's refusal to furnish such evidence in the form of written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of an examination sufficient to preclude an unqualified opinion and is ordinarily sufficient to cause the practitioner to disclaim an opinion or withdraw from an examination engagement. However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the practitioner may conclude, in an examination engagement, that a qualified opinion is appropriate. Further, the practitioner should consider the effects of the refusal on his or her ability to rely on other representations made by management of the service provider. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

## Reporting

**.28** Appendix A-1 (paragraph .38) of this SOP contains an illustrative practitioner's examination report on an assertion by management of a service provider regarding specified compliance control objectives and related controls. The illustrative report includes the required elements of a practitioner's unqualified report on an assertion that are listed in paragraph .86 of AT section 101. Paragraph .85 of AT section 101 presents the required elements of a practitioner's unqualified report on subject matter, and Appendix A, "Examination Reports," of AT section 101 presents additional illustrative examination reports.

**.29** Paragraph .19 of this SOP notes that criteria are the standards or benchmarks against which a practitioner evaluates the subject matter, and in this SOP, the criteria for evaluating the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls are the specified compliance control objectives. If, after performing the procedures described in paragraphs .12–.13 and .19–.22 of this SOP, the practitioner concludes that the controls were not suitably designed or operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable assurance that the specified compliance control objectives were achieved, the practitioner should modify his or her report and include a brief factual description that will enable users of the report to understand the nature of the deficiency or deficiencies in controls. The matter or matters pertaining to the suitability of the design or operating effectiveness of controls and giving rise to a qualified

or adverse opinion in a report on the examination engagement described in this SOP should be referred to as a deficiency or deficiencies. Further, paragraph .66 of AT section 101 states, in part, that "...if conditions exist that, individually or in combination, result in one or more material misstatements or deviations from the criteria, the practitioner should modify the report and, to most effectively communicate with the reader of the report, should ordinarily express his or her conclusion directly on the subject matter, not on the assertion." Appendix B (paragraph .42) of this SOP contains an illustrative practitioner's examination report containing a qualified opinion on a service provider's controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives. In that illustrative report, the practitioner reports on the subject matter rather than on the assertion.

**.30** As noted in paragraph .72 of AT section 101, a practitioner may have reservations about the engagement (for example, a restriction on the scope of the engagement), the subject matter, and, if applicable, the assertion. When a practitioner has such reservations, he or she should exercise professional judgment in determining the significance of those reservations and the type of report to be issued. Paragraphs .71–.74 and .76–.77 of AT section 101 provide guidance in this area.

**.31** If a subservice provider's compliance control objectives and related controls are excluded from the service provider's written description of specified compliance control objectives and related controls (see paragraph .17 of this SOP), the scope paragraph of the practitioner's report should be modified to:

- Refer to the disclosure in the written description regarding the service provider's use of a subservice provider and the functions and nature of the services performed by the subservice provider
- State that the subservice provider's compliance control objectives and related controls are omitted from the written description and that the practitioner's examination did not extend to controls of the subservice provider

Appendix A-2 (paragraph .39) of this SOP contains an illustrative practitioner's examination report on a service provider's specified compliance control objectives and related controls when the service provider uses a subservice provider and the subservice provider's control objectives and related controls are excluded from the description.

**.32** As noted in paragraph .17, situations may arise in which the service provider specifies compliance control objectives whose achievement depends on controls at a subservice provider. In those circumstances, if the service provider has excluded the subservice provider's controls from the written description, the practitioner should modify the scope and opinion paragraphs of his or her report to include the phrase "and subservice providers applied the controls contemplated in the design of the service provider's controls."

**.33** A practitioner may perform significant portions of the engagement before the end of the period covered by the report. If during that time the practitioner identifies compliance control objectives that have not been achieved, he or she should include a description of the condition in his or her report, even if management corrects the condition prior to the end of the period.

## Agreed-Upon Procedures

**.34** A practitioner may also perform agreed-upon procedures related to compliance control objectives and related controls. Such engagements are performed in accordance with AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). In these engagements, the parties to the engagement (specified parties) and the practitioner agree upon the procedures to be performed. The practitioner performs these procedures and reports his or her findings. The specified parties assume responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures because they best understand their own needs. In an agreed-upon procedures engagement, the practitioner does not perform an examination or review of an assertion or subject matter or express an opinion or negative assurance about the assertion or subject matter. The practitioner's report on agreed-upon procedures is in the form of procedures and findings. An illustrative agreed-upon procedures report is presented in Appendix E (paragraph .45) of this SOP. Use of an agreed-upon procedures report is restricted to the specified parties that agree upon the procedures and accept responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures for their purposes.

**.35** In accordance with paragraph .10 of AT section 201, a practitioner should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed. Such an understanding reduces the risk that the client may misinterpret the objectives and limitations of an agreed-upon procedures engagement and also reduces the risk that the client will misunderstand its responsibilities and the responsibilities of the practitioner. Paragraph .46 of AT section 101 provides further guidance on establishing an understanding with a client in an attestation engagement.

**.36** Paragraph .36 of AT section 201 enables a practitioner, after considering certain matters, to add a nonparticipant party as a specified party. If the practitioner agrees to add a specified party, he or she should obtain affirmative acknowledgement, normally in writing, from that party agreeing to the procedures performed and taking responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures.

## Effective Date

**.37** This SOP is effective upon issuance.

## Appendix A-1

### Illustrative Practitioner's Examination Report on a Service Provider's Assertion Regarding Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls

*Note: The compliance control objectives and related controls referenced in the following illustrative practitioner's report are examples only and should not be viewed as representative of or a complete description of the compliance control objectives or related controls a service provider might be expected to (1) establish and implement to meet any contractual responsibilities to funds or any other clients, (2) monitor for investment compliance, or (3) include in its description of specified compliance control objectives and related controls in an examination engagement covered by this Statement of Position (SOP). Additionally, there may be other areas of responsibility (beyond investment compliance) that a service provider might assume on behalf of funds or any other clients that might result in the inclusion and presentation of different or additional compliance control objectives and related controls for engagements covered by this SOP.*

#### Report of Independent Accountants

To the Management of XYZ Service Provider:

*[Introductory paragraph]*

We have examined the assertion made by the management of XYZ Service Provider pertaining to controls over investment compliance that XYZ Service Provider performs for user organizations. Management's assertion is included in the accompanying document titled, "Management's Assertion Regarding XYZ Service Provider's Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls" and states that:

- The controls described in the accompanying document titled, "XYZ Service Provider's Description of Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls" (management's description), were suitably designed as of December 31, 20X1 to provide reasonable assurance that the compliance control objectives established by management and described therein would be achieved, if those controls were complied with satisfactorily *[and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of XYZ Service Provider's controls<sup>1</sup>]*; and
- The controls described in management's description were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable assurance that the specified compliance control objectives described therein were achieved during the period from January 1, 20X1 to December 31, 20X1.

Management of XYZ Service Provider is responsible for its assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on management's assertion based on our examination.

---

<sup>1</sup> Refer to user controls only in situations in which the application of controls by the user organizations is necessary to achieve specified control objectives. Otherwise omit this reference.

*[Scope paragraph]*

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of and evaluating the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives, and examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting management's assertion and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We were not engaged to perform and did not perform an examination of XYZ Service Provider's or user organizations' compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws, as that term is defined by Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Rule 38a-1 under the Investment Company Act of 1940 ("Federal Securities Laws"). We also were not engaged to perform and did not perform an examination of XYZ Service Provider's compliance with its contractual obligations to its clients during the period from January 1, 20X1 to December 31, 20X1.

Our examination was limited to examining, for the purposes described above, management's assertion about the specified compliance control objectives and related controls included in management's description and did not consider any other compliance control objectives or controls that may be relevant to XYZ Service Provider's or user organizations' compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws. Further, the relative effectiveness and significance of specific controls at XYZ Service Provider, and their effect on user organizations' compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws are dependent on their interaction with the controls and other factors present at individual user organizations. We have performed no procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of such controls or such other factors at individual user organizations.

The compliance control objectives and related controls set forth in management's description have been provided to enable user organizations, when performing their annual compliance reviews as required by SEC Rule 38a-1 under the Investment Company Act of 1940, to consider such information along with information about their own compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws, and any other relevant information.

*[Inherent limitations paragraph]*

Management's description is as of December 31, 20X1. Any projection of such information to the future is subject to the risk that, because of change, the description may no longer portray the system or controls in existence. The potential effectiveness of controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives established by XYZ Service Provider is subject to inherent limitations and, accordingly, lack of compliance with controls and instances of errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any evaluations, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with such controls may deteriorate, or changes made to the system or controls, or the failure to make needed changes to the system or controls, may alter the validity of such evaluations.

*[Opinion paragraph]*

In our opinion, management's assertion referred to above is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the specified compliance control objectives set forth in management's description.

*[Restricted use paragraph]*

This report is intended solely for the information and use of chief compliance officers, management, boards of directors, and the independent auditors of XYZ Service Provider and of the entities that use the services of XYZ Service Provider, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

---

*[Signature of Independent Accountant]*

March 31, 20X2

## Appendix A-2

### **Illustrative Practitioner's Examination Report on a Service Provider's Assertion Regarding Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls When the Service Provider Uses a Subservice Provider and the Subservice Provider's Control Objectives and Related Controls are Excluded From the Description and the Scope of the Practitioner's Engagement**

*Note: The compliance control objectives and related controls referenced in the following illustrative practitioner's report are examples only and should not be viewed as representative of or a complete description of the compliance control objectives or related controls a service provider might be expected to (1) establish and implement to meet any contractual responsibilities to funds or any other clients (2) monitor for investment compliance, or (3) include in its description of specified compliance control objectives and related controls in an examination engagement covered by this Statement of Position (SOP). Additionally, there may be other areas of responsibility (beyond investment compliance) that a service provider might assume on behalf of funds or any other clients that might result in the inclusion and presentation of different or additional compliance control objectives and related controls for engagements covered by this SOP.*

#### **Report of Independent Accountants**

To the Management of XYZ Service Provider:

*[Introductory paragraph]*

We have examined the assertion made by the management of XYZ Service Provider pertaining to controls over investment compliance that XYZ Service Provider performs for user organizations. Management's assertion is included in the accompanying document titled, "Management's Assertion Regarding XYZ Service Provider's Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls" and states that:

- The controls described in the accompanying document, "XYZ Service Provider's Description of Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls" (management's description), were suitably designed as of December 31, 20X1 to provide reasonable assurance that the compliance control objectives established by management and described therein would be achieved, if those controls were complied with satisfactorily *[and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of XYZ Service Provider's controls<sup>1</sup>]*:

---

<sup>1</sup> Refer to user controls only in situations in which the application of controls by the user organizations is necessary to achieve the specified control objectives. Otherwise omit this reference. Also, if the application of controls by the subservice provider is necessary to achieve the specified compliance control objectives, and the subservice provider's controls are excluded from the description, the practitioner's report should be modified to include the phrase, "and the subservice provider applied the controls contemplated in the design of XYZ Service Provider's controls."

- The controls described in management's description were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable assurance that the specified compliance control objectives described therein were achieved during the period from January 1, 20X1 to December 31, 20X1.

As stated in management's description, XYZ Service Provider uses a computer processing service provider for all of its computerized application processing. Management's description includes only those compliance control objectives and related controls of XYZ Service Provider, and does not include compliance control objectives and related controls of the computer processing service provider. Our examination did not extend to controls of the computer processing service provider.

Management of XYZ Service Provider is responsible for its assertion. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on management's assertion based on our examination.

*[Scope paragraph]*

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included obtaining an understanding of and evaluating the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives; and examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting management's assertion and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We were not engaged to perform and did not perform an examination of XYZ Service Provider's or user organizations' compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws, as that term is defined by Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Rule 38a-1 under the Investment Company Act of 1940 ("Federal Securities Laws"). We also were not engaged to perform and did not perform an examination of XYZ Service Provider's compliance with its contractual obligations to its clients during the period from January 1, 20X1 to December 31, 20X1.

Our examination was limited to examining, for the purposes described above, management's assertion about the specified compliance control objectives and related controls included in management's description and did not consider any other compliance control objectives or controls that may be relevant to XYZ Service Provider's or user organizations' compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws. Further, the relative effectiveness and significance of specific controls at XYZ Service Provider, and their effect on user organizations' compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws are dependent on their interaction with the controls and other factors present at individual user organizations and at subservice providers. We have performed no procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of such controls or such other factors at individual user organizations or at subservice providers.

The compliance control objectives and related controls set forth in management's description have been provided to enable user organizations, when performing their annual compliance reviews as required by SEC Rule 38a-1 under the Investment Company Act of 1940, to consider such information along with information about their own compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws, and any other relevant information.

*[Inherent limitations paragraph]*

Management's description is as of December 31, 20X1. Any projection of such information to the future is subject to the risk that, because of change, the description may no longer portray the system or controls in existence. The potential effectiveness of controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives established by XYZ Service Provider is subject to inherent limitations and, accordingly, lack of compliance with controls and instances of errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any evaluations, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with such controls may deteriorate, or changes made to the system or controls, or the failure to make needed changes to the system or controls, may alter the validity of such evaluations.

*[Opinion paragraph]*

In our opinion, management's assertion referred to above is fairly stated, in all material respects, based on the specified compliance control objectives set forth in management's description.

*[Restricted use paragraph]*

This report is intended solely for the information and use of chief compliance officers, management, boards of directors, and the independent auditors of XYZ Service Provider and of the entities that use the services of XYZ Service Provider, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

---

*[Signature of Independent Accountant]*

March 31, 20X2

Appendix A-3

Illustrative Management Assertion Regarding a Service Provider’s Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls

Management’s Assertion Regarding XYZ Service Provider’s Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls

XYZ Service Provider provides certain investment compliance services to funds (user organizations). XYZ Service Provider’s description of specified compliance control objectives and related controls is presented in the accompanying document, “XYZ Service Provider’s Description of Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls” (management’s description). We, as members of management of XYZ Service Provider, are responsible for the description as well as for the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of those controls.

Management’s description is provided to enable user organizations, when performing their annual compliance review as required by Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Rule 38a-1 under the Investment Company Act of 1940, to consider such information, along with information about their own compliance and internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws, as that term is defined in Rule 38a-1, and any other relevant information. We have evaluated the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of these controls in achieving the compliance control objectives included in management’s description during the period from January 1, 20X1 through December 31, 20X1. The criteria against which the controls were evaluated are the specified compliance control objectives included in management’s description. Based on our evaluation, we assert that:

- The controls included in management’s description were suitably designed as of December 31, 20X1 to provide reasonable assurance that the compliance control objectives described therein would be achieved, if those controls were complied with satisfactorily [*and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of XYZ Service Provider’s controls*<sup>1</sup>].
- The controls set forth in management’s description were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable assurance that the specified compliance control objectives, included in management’s description, were achieved during the period from January 1, 20X1 to December 31, 20X1.

By:\_\_\_\_\_

[Signature, name, and title of appropriate official]

By:\_\_\_\_\_

[Signature, name, and title of appropriate official]

<sup>1</sup> Refer to user controls only in situations in which the application of controls by the user organizations is necessary to achieve the specified control objectives. Otherwise omit the reference. Also, if the application of controls by a subservice provider is necessary to achieve the specified compliance control objectives, and the subservice provider’s controls are excluded from the description, the practitioner’s report should be modified to include the phrase, “and the subservice provider applied the controls contemplated in the design of XYZ Service Provider’s controls.”

## Appendix A-4

### Illustrative Service Provider's Description of Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls

#### XYZ Service Provider's Description of Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls

*Note: The following is an illustration of a description of investment compliance control objectives and related controls for an investment adviser (XYZ Service Provider) performing investment compliance-related services for funds.<sup>1</sup> This illustration is presented solely to provide an example of control objectives and related controls pertaining to investment-compliance related services and should not be viewed as representative of or a complete set of compliance control objectives or related controls that a service provider might be expected to (1) perform in these circumstances or similar circumstances, (2) establish and implement to meet any contractual responsibilities to funds or any other clients, or (3) include in its written description of specified compliance control objectives and related controls in an examination engagement covered by this Statement of Position (SOP). Additionally, there may be other areas of responsibility (beyond investment compliance) that a service provider might assume on behalf of funds or any other clients that might result in the inclusion and presentation of different or additional compliance control objectives and related controls for engagements covered by this SOP.*

#### Monitoring Compliance with Fund Investment Guidelines and Restrictions

*[XYZ Service Provider uses a computer processing service provider for all of its computerized application processing.<sup>2</sup> The accompanying description includes only those compliance control objectives and related controls of XYZ Service Provider, and does not include compliance control objectives and related controls of the computer processing service provider.]*

**Control Objective 1:** Controls provide reasonable assurance that securities trades for the fund and the fund's securities holdings comply with investment guidelines and restrictions included in the fund's investment advisory agreement, prospectus, and statement of additional information.

#### Controls:

1. Before any securities trading commences for a fund (a) XYZ Service Provider's trading desk representative enters information (coding) in the fund's securities trading order entry and compliance (STOEC) module to reflect all investment guidelines and restrictions included

<sup>1</sup> In this illustration, the investment adviser performs investment compliance-related services in addition to investment advisory services for funds. In other situations, investment compliance-related services may be performed, in whole or in part, by one or more other service providers or subservice providers.

<sup>2</sup> If the service provider uses a subservice provider, management's description should include a brief statement of the functions and nature of the services performed by the subservice provider. In addition, the description should indicate whether the subservice provider's compliance control objectives and related controls are included in or excluded from the description. See paragraphs .16–.17 of the Statement of Position for additional information about the information to be included in this disclosure.

in the documents identified in Control Objective 1, and (b) a supervisor in XYZ Service Provider's fund services department compares, for completeness and accuracy, the information (coding) entered in the fund's STOEC module to the corresponding information included in the source documents referred to in Control Objective 1. Any discrepancies that appear to be the result of data entry errors (for example, entering the number 50% when the prospectus states 5%) are corrected upon identification by XYZ Service Provider. Any other discrepancies related to differences in interpretation or uncertainty about the meaning of information in the source documents, are communicated to the fund's treasurer or chief compliance officer for research, clarification, and resolution. Any subsequent changes to the original information (coding) entered by XYZ Service Provider must be approved by the fund's treasurer or chief compliance officer.

2. On a daily basis, a report of all deletions, modifications, and additions made to investment guidelines and restrictions in the fund's STOEC module is reviewed by a supervisor in XYZ Service Provider's fund services department. The supervisor compares each change made to a written authorization to effect the change submitted by the fund's treasurer or chief compliance officer.
3. Annually, a supervisor in XYZ Service Provider's fund services department compares, for completeness and accuracy, the current information (coding) in each fund's STOEC module to the corresponding source documents referred to in the Control Objective.
4. For all securities trades for which the functionality of a fund's STOEC module identifies an apparent or possible noncompliant securities trade order, the order is 'pending' until the fund's treasurer or chief compliance officer reviews the circumstances of the requested trade and determines whether it is permissible. If permissible, the 'pending' trade is released for processing upon written approval by either the fund's treasurer or chief compliance officer. If not permissible, the trade is cancelled. On the basis prescribed in the fund's compliance policies and procedures (daily, weekly, monthly, or quarterly), members of the compliance staff of XYZ Service Provider review reports generated by the STOEC module to ascertain that no violations of the fund's investment guidelines and restrictions have occurred. Any violations are researched, and XYZ Service Provider's compliance staff ascertains that corrective actions were approved by the fund's treasurer or chief compliance officer, and effected.

**Control Objective 2:** Controls provide reasonable assurance that the dollar-weighted average portfolio maturities (WAPM) of money market funds do not exceed 90 days, as required by Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Rule 2a-7.

**Controls:**

1. For each new security purchased, a trade department analyst at XYZ Service Provider compares the terms entered in the trade system to the corresponding information in the documentation of the security purchase, including the date used for the WAPM calculation (for example, interest-rate reset date or maturity date).

2. On a quarterly basis, XYZ Service Provider's compliance staff verifies that the computation logic in its securities accounting system (SAS), which affects the calculation of the funds' WAPM, is consistent with applicable provisions of SEC Rule 2a-7 and regulatory guidance issued.
3. On a daily basis, using reports and information produced by the SAS, XYZ Service Provider's compliance staff determines whether any of the funds' WAPM exceeds 75 days. If so, the compliance staff alerts the portfolio manager so that this information can be taken into account by the portfolio manager when making prospective investment management decisions for the fund. If a fund's WAPM exceeds 80 days, the compliance staff also alerts the fund's treasurer.
4. On a daily basis, using reports and information produced by the SAS, XYZ Service Provider's compliance staff identifies changes of 3 days or more in any fund's WAPM from the fund's prior day WAPM, and researches the fund's investing activities sufficiently to identify the reason for the change and whether there is a reasonable basis for the change. The results of the research are documented and provided to a compliance department manager for his or her written review and approval.

## Appendix B

### **Illustrative Practitioner's Examination Report Containing a Qualified Opinion on the Suitability of the Design and Operating Effectiveness of a Service Provider's Controls in Achieving Specified Compliance Control Objectives**

*Paragraph .66 of AT section 101 (AICPA, Professional Standards, vol 1.) states, in part, "If conditions exist that individually or in combination result in one or more material misstatements or deviations from the criteria, the practitioner should modify the report and, to most effectively communicate with the reader of the report, should ordinarily express his or her conclusion directly on the subject matter, not on the assertion." The following illustrative practitioner's report relates to an examination engagement in which the practitioner identified a control deficiency in the operating effectiveness of the service provider's controls; accordingly, the practitioner reports on the subject matter, rather than on the assertion. Also, in an explanatory paragraph preceding the opinion paragraph, the practitioner describes the matters giving rise to the qualification. In this engagement, the practitioner has concluded that the deficiency in controls is not sufficiently pervasive to warrant an adverse opinion.*

#### **Report of Independent Accountants**

To the Management of ABC Service Provider:

*[Introductory paragraph]*

We have examined whether the controls described in the accompanying document, "ABC Service Provider's Description of Specified Compliance Control Objectives and Related Controls" (management's description), were:

- Suitably designed, as of December 31, 20X1, to provide reasonable assurance that the specified compliance control objectives established by management of ABC Service Provider and described therein would be achieved, if those controls were complied with satisfactorily; *[and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of ABC Service Provider's controls<sup>1</sup>]; and*
- Operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable assurance that the specified compliance control objectives described therein were achieved during the period from January 1, 20X1 to December 31, 20X1.

Management of ABC Service Provider is responsible for the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of these controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives. Our responsibility is to express an opinion based on our examination.

---

<sup>1</sup> Refer to user controls only in situations in which the application of controls by the user organizations is necessary to achieve the specified control objectives. Otherwise omit this reference.

*[Scope paragraph]*

Our examination was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants and, accordingly, included examining on a test basis, evidence supporting the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our examination provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We were not engaged to perform and did not perform an examination of ABC Service Provider's or user organizations' compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws, as that term is defined by Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Rule 38a-1, under the Investment Company Act of 1940 ("Federal Securities Laws"). We also were not engaged to perform and did not perform an examination of ABC Service Provider's compliance with its contractual obligations to its clients during the period from January 1, 20X1 to December 31, 20X1.

Our examination was limited to examining, for the purposes described above, the suitability of the design and operating effectiveness of the controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives included in management's description and did not consider any other compliance control objectives or controls that may be relevant to ABC Service Provider's or user organizations' compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws. Further, the relative effectiveness and significance of specific controls at ABC Service Provider, and their effect on user organizations' compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws are dependent on their interaction with the controls and other factors present at individual user organizations. We have performed no procedures to evaluate the effectiveness of such controls or such other factors at individual user organizations.

The compliance control objectives and related controls set forth in management's description have been provided to enable user organizations, when performing their annual compliance reviews as required by SEC Rule 38a-1 under the Investment Company Act of 1940, to consider such information along with information about their own compliance or internal control over compliance with Federal Securities Laws, and any other relevant information.

*[Inherent limitations paragraph]*

Management's description is as of December 31, 20X1. Any projection of such information to the future is subject to the risk that, because of change, the description may no longer portray the system or controls in existence. The potential effectiveness of controls in achieving the specified compliance control objectives established by ABC Service Provider is subject to inherent limitations and, accordingly, lack of compliance with controls and instances of errors or fraud may occur and not be detected. Furthermore, the projection of any evaluations, based on our findings, to future periods is subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with such controls may deteriorate, or changes made to the system or controls, or the failure to make needed changes to the system or controls, may alter the validity of such evaluations.

*[Explanatory paragraph]*

Management of ABC Service Provider has included in its description a control requiring that the manager of the advertising and sales department review and approve performance data used in ABC Service Provider's advertising and sales

literature prior to its release to the public. Our tests of operating effectiveness noted that the manager of the advertising and sales department did not review and approve the aforementioned performance data prior to its release to the public. The manager's failure to perform this control is a deficiency in the operating effectiveness of the service provider's controls that resulted in the nonachievement of the compliance control objective included in management's description: "Performance data used in advertising and sales literature are accurate and approved before release to the public."

*[Opinion paragraph]*

In our opinion ABC Service Provider's controls were suitably designed at December 31, 20X1 to provide reasonable assurance that the specified compliance control objectives, as described in management's description, would be achieved, if those controls were complied with satisfactorily [*and user organizations applied the controls contemplated in the design of ABC Service Provider's controls*<sup>2</sup>]. Also, in our opinion, except for the deficiency described in the preceding paragraph, ABC Service Provider's controls were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable assurance that the specified compliance control objectives were achieved during the period from January 1, 20X1 through December 31, 20X1, based on the specified compliance control objectives set forth in management's description.<sup>3</sup>

*[Restricted use paragraph]*

This report is intended solely for the information and use of chief compliance officers, management, boards of directors, and the independent auditors of ABC Service Provider and of the entities that use the services of ABC Service Provider, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

---

*[Signature of Independent Accountant]*

March 31, 20X2

---

<sup>2</sup> Refer to user controls only in situations in which the application of controls by the user organizations is necessary to achieve the specified control objectives. Otherwise omit this reference.

<sup>3</sup> In instances in which a control is not suitably designed, the phrase "except for the deficiency described in the preceding paragraph" would be inserted in the first sentence of the opinion paragraph, which relates to the suitability of the design of controls.

## Appendix C

### Additional Illustrative Compliance Control Objectives

*Note: The following are additional illustrative compliance control objectives pertaining to various services service providers might provide. These illustrative compliance control objectives are only examples and should not be viewed as representative of or a complete set or description of compliance control objectives that a service provider might be expected to (1) establish and implement to meet any contractual responsibilities to funds or any other clients, (2) monitor for achievement, or (3) include in its description of specified compliance control objectives and related controls in an attestation engagement covered by this Statement of Position (SOP). Additionally, there may be other areas of responsibility (beyond those listed below) that a service provider might assume on behalf of funds or any other clients that might result in the inclusion and presentation of different or additional compliance control objectives and related controls for engagements covered by this SOP.*

#### Fund Advertising and Sales Literature

Controls provide reasonable assurance that:

1. Advertising and sales literature is reviewed for compliance with the service provider's established policies and is timely submitted to the National Association of Securities Dealers (NASD) for approval
2. Comments from the NASD on advertising and sales literature are reviewed and timely reflected in advertising and sales literature as required
3. Performance data used in advertising and sales literature are accurate and approved before release
4. Expiring advertisement and sales literature is identified and updated or disposed of before the expiration date
5. Regulatory changes are monitored and reflected in current and future advertising and sales literature

#### Valuation of Client Assets or Investments

Controls provide reasonable assurance that:

1. Securities price information is received from authorized sources in accordance with client instructions and is entered completely and accurately into the portfolio accounting system
2. Foreign exchange rates are received from authorized sources in accordance with client instructions and are entered completely and accurately into the portfolio accounting system
3. Securities that do not have readily determinable market values (for example, those valued at fair value in good faith), including international equity securities whose values are determined by adjusting the closing price on the foreign securities exchange, are valued according to consistently applied policies and procedures established by the service provider's client

4. For registered money-market-fund securities valued at amortized cost, valuation is monitored for compliance with the “mark-to-market” provision of Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Rule 2a-7 and deviations in excess of established thresholds are reported in accordance with client instructions

**Privacy**

Controls provide reasonable assurance that:

1. The use of and access to nonpublic client information is restricted to authorized personnel
2. Customers of the fund are provided with a notice of privacy policies at the time they become a customer and in the event of a change to the privacy policy
3. Access to and use of material nonpublic information is restricted to authorized personnel
4. At least annually, employees are provided with written policies related to material nonpublic information and instruction about those policies
5. Customer information is disclosed only to authorized third parties

**Transfer Agency**

Controls provide reasonable assurance that:

1. As required by policies and procedures, the identity of any person seeking to open an account with the fund is verified by examining specified documents and other information and maintaining records of the information used to verify the person’s identity
2. Cash equivalents under \$10,000 are monitored and tracked for a rolling 12-month period; Internal Revenue Service (IRS) Form 8300 is filed, and the shareholder is notified as required by the IRS
3. Certificate redemption requests are processed in a timely manner and archived in a secure manner for subsequent inquiry
4. Missing, lost, stolen, or counterfeit certificate notifications are processed in a timely manner, and Form X-17F-1A is filed with the Securities Information Center within the required number of business days
5. Transfer agent employees are fingerprinted and the related records are maintained for the required time period
6. Shareholder financial-related transactions are priced using the appropriate net asset value per share
7. Dividends are processed completely and accurately; dividend distributions are reconciled between the fund’s general ledger and the shareholder accounting system; and any exceptions are researched and resolved by the next reporting period
8. Signature guarantees pertaining to shareholder transactions are reviewed upon presentment; rejected signature guarantees are communicated to the compliance department for tracking

**Investment Compliance**

Controls provide reasonable assurance that on a weekly basis:

1. Securities holdings are monitored for compliance with prospectus guidelines
2. Securities holdings are monitored to ensure that the portfolio meets a 15 percent liquidity standard
3. Securities of money market funds are monitored for compliance with the portfolio maturity and credit quality provisions of SEC Rules 2a-7c.2 and 2a-7c.3, respectively

## Appendix D

### **Matters Identified in Securities and Exchange Commission Release Nos. IC-26299 and IA-2204 Adopting Rules 38a-1 and 206(4)-7 Pertaining to Compliance Policies and Procedures of Funds and Investment Advisers**

As described in paragraph .15 of this Statement of Position (SOP), when management of the service provider establishes the compliance control objectives and related controls that are the subject of the engagement, it should consider, among other things, the compliance matters identified in Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Release Nos. IC-26299 and IA-2204 adopting Rule 38a-1 under the Investment Company Act of 1940 and Rule 206(4)-7 under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, respectively. The SEC Release indicates that the SEC expects the policies and procedures of funds and their advisers to, at a minimum, address the following specified areas if those areas are relevant to the services the entity provides:

- Portfolio management processes, including allocation of investment opportunities among clients, and consistency of portfolios with clients' investment objectives, disclosures by the adviser, and applicable regulatory restrictions
- Trading practices, including procedures by which the adviser satisfies its best execution obligation, uses client brokerage to obtain research and other services (soft dollar arrangements), and allocates aggregated trades among clients
- Proprietary trading of the adviser and personal trading activities of supervised persons
- Accuracy of disclosures made to investors, clients, and regulators, including account statements and advertisements
- Safeguarding of client assets from conversion or inappropriate use by advisory personnel
- Accurate creation of required records and their maintenance in a manner that secures them from unauthorized alteration or use and protects them from untimely destruction
- Marketing advisory services, including the use of solicitors
- Processes to value client holdings and assess fees based on those valuations
- Safeguards for the privacy protection of client records and information
- Business continuity plans

Additional matters that the SEC expects funds (or their service providers) to address are listed in paragraph .02. This SOP does not require that a service provider's compliance control objectives address all of the relevant areas identified in the SEC Release; however, the areas listed in this paragraph and in paragraph .02 comprise matters that, if relevant in the circumstances, should

be considered by management of the service provider in determining compliance control objectives to be included in the scope of the attestation engagement.

The following is a summary of the additional areas, identified in the SEC Release, for which a fund or its service providers would be expected to have policies and procedures.

*Pricing of portfolio securities and fund shares.* The Investment Company Act of 1940 requires funds to sell and redeem their shares at prices based on their current net asset value, to pay redemption proceeds promptly, and, when market quotations are readily available, to calculate net asset values using the market value of the portfolio securities. If a market quotation is not readily available, the fund should use the fair value of the security, as determined in good faith by the fund's board. Further, Rule 38a-1 requires funds to adopt policies and procedures requiring the fund to monitor for circumstances that may necessitate the use of fair value prices, establish criteria for determining when market quotations are no longer reliable for a particular portfolio security, provide a methodology or methodologies by which the fund determines the current fair value of the portfolio security, and regularly review the appropriateness and accuracy of the method used in valuing securities and make any necessary adjustments.

*Processing of fund shares.* Pursuant to SEC rules, an investor submitting a purchase order or redemption request must receive the price next calculated after receipt of the purchase order or redemption request. A fund must have procedures in place that segregate investor orders received before the fund prices its shares (which will receive that day's price) from those that were received after the fund prices its shares (which will receive the following day's price). Rule 38a-1 requires funds to approve and periodically review the policies and procedures of transfer agents. Funds should also take affirmative steps to protect themselves and their shareholders against late trading by obtaining assurances that those policies and procedures are effectively administered.

*Identification of affiliated persons.* To prevent self-dealing and overreaching by persons in a position to take advantage of the fund, the Investment Company Act of 1940 prohibits funds from entering into certain transactions with affiliated persons. Funds should have policies and procedures in place to identify these persons and to prevent unlawful transactions with them.

*Protection of nonpublic information.* The federal securities laws prohibit insider trading, and section 204A of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 requires investment advisers (including advisers to funds) to establish, maintain, and enforce policies and procedures designed to prevent the adviser or any of its associated persons from misusing material, nonpublic information. Fund advisers should incorporate their section 204A policies into the policies required by Rule 38a-1. A fund's compliance policies and procedures should also address other potential misuses of nonpublic information, including the disclosure to third parties of material information about the fund's portfolio, its trading strategies or pending transactions, and the purchase or sale of fund shares by advisory personnel based on material, nonpublic information about the fund's portfolio.

*Compliance with fund governance requirements.* Fund boards are responsible for, among other things, approving the fund's advisory contracts, underwriting agreements, and distribution plans. The Investment Company Act of 1940 requires that fund boards be elected by fund shareholders and that a certain percentage of the board be "independent directors." To rely on many of the SEC's exemptive rules, independent directors must constitute a majority of the

board, must be selected and nominated by other independent directors, and, if they hire legal counsel, must hire independent legal counsel. A fund's policies and procedures should be designed to guard against, among other things, an improperly constituted board, the failure of the board to properly consider matters entrusted to it, and the failure of the board to request and consider information required by the Investment Company Act of 1940 from the fund adviser and other service providers.

*Market timing.* Under Rule 38a-1, a fund must have procedures reasonably designed to ensure compliance with its disclosed policies regarding market timing. Market timing is the excessive short-term trading of mutual fund shares that may be harmful to the fund. These procedures should provide for monitoring of shareholder trades or flows of money in and out of the funds in order to detect market timing activity, and for consistent enforcement of the fund's policies regarding market timing. If the fund permits any waivers of those policies, the procedures should be reasonably designed to prevent waivers that would harm the fund or its shareholders or subordinate the interests of the fund or its shareholders to those of the adviser or any other affiliated person or associated person of the adviser. Fund boards are strongly urged by the SEC to require fund advisers, or other persons authorized to waive market timing policies, to report to the board at least quarterly all waivers granted so that the board can determine whether the waivers were proper. Many funds' prospectuses already disclose market timing policies, and failure to adhere to those disclosed policies violates the antifraud provisions of the federal securities laws. Moreover, a fund adviser who waives or disregards those policies for the benefit of itself or a third party has breached its fiduciary responsibilities to the fund.

## Appendix E

### Illustrative Practitioner's Agreed-Upon Procedures Report

The following is an illustrative agreed-upon procedures report for procedures performed at a service provider.

#### **Independent Accountant's Report on Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures**

To the Management of XYZ Service Provider:

We have performed the procedures enumerated in Attachment X which were agreed to by XYZ Service Provider, solely to assist you in evaluating XYZ Service Provider's internal control over compliance during the year ended December 31, 20X1. Management of XYZ Service Provider is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over compliance with federal securities laws, regulations, and related SEC rules. This agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of XYZ Service Provider. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described in Attachment X either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

The procedures performed and the findings are included in Attachment X.

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on internal control over compliance by XYZ Service Provider for the year ended December 31, 20X1. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of XYZ Service Provider and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than this specified party.<sup>1</sup>

---

[Signature of Independent Accountant]

March 31, 20X2

---

<sup>1</sup> Paragraph .36 of AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), and paragraph .36 of this SOP address adding specified parties as users of an agreed-upon procedures report.

## Chief Compliance Officers Task Force

BRIAN GALLAGHER, *Chair*

BRENT D. OSWALD

JOSEPH GRAINGER

PATRICIA PITEO

RICHARD N. MURPHY

The AICPA is grateful to Stephen Callahan, Matthew Epp, Michael P. Fay, Kevin W. O'Connell, and Mark Twerdok for their technical assistance with this document.

## AICPA Staff

CHARLES E. LANDES  
*Vice President Professional  
Standards and Services*

JUDITH M. SHERINSKY  
*Technical Manager  
Audit and AttestStandards*

---

[The next page is 31,831.]

## Section 14,440

# ***Statement of Position 09-1 Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address the Completeness, Accuracy, or Consistency of XBRL-Tagged Data***

April 2009

### **NOTE**

This Statement of Position (SOP) is an interpretive publication and represents the recommendations of the XBRL Assurance Task Force of the AICPA Assurance Services Executive Committee regarding the application of Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) (attestation standards established by the AICPA) to engagements in which a practitioner performs and reports on agreed-upon procedures related to the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of XBRL-tagged data. The AICPA Auditing Standards Board (ASB) has found the recommendations in this SOP to be consistent with existing standards covered by Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards*, of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 2, ET sec. 202 par. .01).

Interpretive publications are not as authoritative as pronouncements of the ASB; however, if a practitioner does not apply the standards and guidance established in the attestation standards established by the AICPA and included in this SOP, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the provisions of SSAE addressed by this SOP.

Appendixes A–E of this SOP contain examples of how this SOP might be applied to an agreed-upon procedures engagement that addresses XBRL-tagged data related to financial statements and are intended to be illustrative only. The examples are not intended to be applicable to, or comprehensive for, all engagements, and a practitioner should tailor them to the specific facts and circumstances of each engagement.

## **Introduction and Background**

**.01** On January 30, 2009, the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) issued a release adopting final rules, “Interactive Data to Improve Financial Reporting” (SEC rules), that require issuers to provide their financial statements to the SEC and on their corporate Web sites in interactive data format using eXtensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL-tagged data).

**.02** In this Statement of Position (SOP), the term *XBRL-tagged data* means information that has been expressed using XBRL and included in one or more electronic files. For purposes of SEC filings, this would include the entity’s tagged financial statements (including note disclosures) and financial statement schedules. XBRL is a global standard that provides unique electronically readable codes (tags) for each item in the financial statements or other business report. Tagging can be thought of as placing a unique barcode

on each item of information included in business reports so that XBRL-enabled software can search for a specified tag, recognize it, and retrieve it.

**.03** *Taxonomies* are dictionaries that contain the terms used in financial statements and other business reports and their corresponding XBRL tags. Taxonomies specify the tags to be used for individual items of information, such as the tag for the line item “cash and cash equivalents,” and for a group of items, such as narrative disclosures. Taxonomies also identify relationships between terms, for example, the term *cash and cash equivalents* is related to the term *current assets*. Business rules can also be expressed within a taxonomy, such as “the beginning balance of cash and cash equivalents plus the net changes in cash must equal the ending balance of cash and cash equivalents.” Reporting companies may add to the dictionaries of terms, relationships, and business rules (that is, extend the taxonomy).

**.04** In order for XBRL to be a useful tool for investors and other users of business information, the data contained in XBRL files must be accurate and reliable. Preparers of XBRL-tagged data may be issuers or nonissuers and are responsible for providing accurate information in their XBRL files on which investors and other users of business information may rely. For issuers, the SEC rules emphasize the SEC’s expectation that preparers of tagged data will take the initiative to develop practices to promote complete, accurate, and consistent tagging.

**.05** The SEC rules state that, “an auditor will not be required to apply AU section 550, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, AU section 722, *Interim Financial Information*, or AU section 711, *Filings under Federal Securities Statutes* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), to the interactive data provided as an exhibit in a company’s reports or registration statements, or to the viewable interactive data.”

**.06** Because of factors such as a company’s limited experience with XBRL and its desire to ensure the accuracy and reliability of the data, management may express interest in engaging a practitioner to assist them in assessing the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of the XBRL-tagged data. Management may be interested in having a practitioner perform procedures to assist management in assessing whether

- the taxonomy tags or extensions selected are appropriate.
- the rendering accurately reflects the source document.
- the XBRL files comply with other aspects of XBRL that cannot be assessed solely by looking at a rendering (for example, whether contexts are used appropriately or whether tags are used consistently from period to period).

It should be noted that this SOP addresses only agreed-upon procedures engagements.

## Subject Matter of the Engagement

**.07** This SOP provides practitioners with guidance on performing agreed-upon procedures engagements that address the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of an entity’s XBRL-tagged data of information as of a specified date and for a specified period. Frequently, the source document consists of the entity’s comparative financial statements for several periods (for example, the SEC rules require tagging of comparative financial information for all years presented). In that case, the XBRL-tagged data would include all of the periods

presented in the source document. The engagement is performed under AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). Not all of the provisions of AT section 201 are discussed in this SOP. Rather, this SOP includes guidance to assist practitioners in applying certain aspects of AT section 201 to the subject matter of XBRL.

**.08** In an agreed-upon procedures engagement, a practitioner is engaged to perform procedures agreed upon by specified parties and the practitioner that assists those parties in evaluating subject matter or an assertion. AT section 201 permits an agreed-upon procedures report to be used by multiple specified parties to the engagement. However, because the objective of the engagement described in this SOP generally is to provide information to management or the audit committee of the entity about its XBRL-tagged data, it is anticipated that the only specified parties ordinarily will be management or the audit committee.

**.09** The practitioner should not report on an engagement if the specified parties do not agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and do not take responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures for their purposes.

**.10** In this SOP, the subject matter to which the agreed-upon procedures are to be applied is the XBRL-tagged data as of a specified date and for a specified period. Because management may engage a third party to assist in the preparation of the XBRL files, assertions also may be made by a third party, as per paragraph .13 of AT section 101, *Attest Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). For example, a service organization may make assertions that the XBRL files comply with specified SEC Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval System (EDGAR) Filer Manual guidelines. Management, however, is expected to take responsibility for all assertions, including any that are made by third parties.

**.11** A practitioner may perform engagements described in this SOP for entities that are required under the SEC rules to submit their XBRL-tagged data to the SEC as well as entities that voluntarily prepare XBRL-tagged data.

**.12** *Criteria* are the standards or benchmarks used to measure, present, and evaluate the subject matter. Suitable criteria must be objective, measurable, complete, and relevant. Criteria to be used in the determination of findings are agreed upon between the practitioner and the specified parties. The criteria<sup>1</sup> against which the XBRL-tagged data are to be evaluated are dependent on the specific procedures to be performed and may be recited within the procedures enumerated or referred to in the practitioner's report.

**.13** As experience in the use of XBRL grows, it is expected that the criteria will evolve, and that more specific requirements may be established. For example, the SEC rules currently limit the use of extensions to circumstances where the appropriate financial statement element does not exist in the standard list of tags.

**.14** Appendix D of this SOP presents certain illustrative procedures that a practitioner might perform and findings that might be reported as part of an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of XBRL-tagged data. These procedures do not represent a complete

---

<sup>1</sup> Examples of criteria may include the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) rules, the U.S. GAAP Taxonomy, and sections of the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval System (EDGAR) Filer Manual that are agreed upon by the specified parties and source documents.

set of procedures that might be performed in an agreed-upon procedures engagement relating to XBRL-tagged data. Practitioners should tailor the procedures to the circumstances of the particular engagement and to the procedures agreed upon among the specified parties and the practitioner.

## Conditions for Engagement Performance

**.15** A practitioner may perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement described in this SOP provided that

- a. the practitioner is independent.
- b. management provides the practitioner with one or more written assertions about the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of its XBRL-tagged data. (Illustrative assertions are presented in appendix A of this SOP.)
- c. the practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed by the practitioner.
- d. the specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes.
- e. criteria for the determination of findings are agreed upon among the practitioner and the specified parties.
- f. the procedures to be applied with respect to the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of the XBRL-tagged data are expected to result in reasonably consistent findings using the criteria established by the specified parties.
- g. evidential matter related to the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of the XBRL-tagged data is expected to exist to provide a reasonable basis for expressing the findings in the practitioner's report.
- h. when applicable, the practitioner and the specified parties agree on any materiality limits for reporting purposes. (See materiality discussion in paragraph .28.)
- i. use of the report is restricted to the specified parties.

**.16** The specified parties are responsible for the sufficiency (nature, timing, and extent) of the agreed-upon procedures because they best understand their own needs. The practitioner performs the procedures and reports his or her findings. Because the procedures are intended to meet the needs of the specified parties and may not be appropriate for others, use of these reports is restricted to the specified parties. To avoid misunderstanding, it is not appropriate for the entity to refer to services obtained from a practitioner in connection with an agreed-upon procedures engagement in a document that is available to anyone other than the specified parties (for example, general use audited financial statements).

## Agreement on Sufficiency of Procedures

**.17** To satisfy the requirement that the practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed, and that the specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of those procedures for

their purposes, ordinarily, the practitioner should communicate<sup>2</sup> directly with and obtain affirmative acknowledgment from each of the specified parties. For example, this may be accomplished by meeting with the specified parties or distributing a draft of the anticipated report or a copy of an engagement letter to the specified parties and obtaining their agreement.

## Establishing an Understanding With the Client

.18 In accordance with paragraph .10 of AT section 201, the practitioner should establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed. Such an understanding reduces the risk that the client may misinterpret the objectives and limitations of an agreed-upon procedures engagement. The understanding also reduces the risk that the client will misunderstand its responsibilities and the responsibilities of the practitioner. The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers. When the practitioner documents the understanding through a written communication with the client (an engagement letter), such communication should be addressed to the client and might include statements

- confirming that an agreed-upon procedures engagement will be performed.
- identifying
  - the subject matter of the engagement [*XBRL-tagged data that the specified parties are evaluating and to which the practitioner is to apply procedures*] (or the written assertion(s) related thereto).
  - the responsible party (for example, management).
  - the criteria for evaluating the XBRL-tagged data.
  - the specified parties to the agreed-upon procedures report.
- indicating that the objective of the practitioner's agreed-upon procedures is to present specific findings to assist the specified parties in evaluating the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of the entity's XBRL-tagged data.
- acknowledging the specified parties' responsibility for the sufficiency of the enumerated procedures.
- acknowledging management's responsibility for
  - the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of the entity's XBRL-tagged data and its assertions thereon.
  - providing accurate and complete information to the practitioner.
- identifying the practitioner's responsibilities which include, but are not limited to
  - performing the enumerated procedures.
  - providing management with a report and the circumstances under which the practitioner may decline to issue a report.

---

<sup>2</sup> Paragraph .07 of AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), does not require a written communication with the specified parties; it only requires that the practitioner communicate with and obtain affirmative acknowledgment from each of the specified parties. It is generally preferable that the agreement be in writing to avoid any misunderstandings regarding the procedures to be performed and responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures.

- indicating that the engagement will be conducted in accordance with attestation standards established by the AICPA.
- enumerating the procedures to be performed.
- acknowledging that
  - the practitioner makes no representation regarding the sufficiency of the enumerated procedures.
  - the practitioner has no responsibility for the completeness or accuracy of the information provided to the practitioner.
  - an agreed-upon procedures engagement does not constitute an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of the entity's XBRL-tagged data. The report will not express an opinion or any other form of assurance and, if additional procedures were performed, other matters might come to the practitioner's attention.
- identifying any assistance to be provided to the practitioner.
- describing any arrangements to involve a specialist.
- where applicable, agreeing upon materiality limits.
- indicating that use of the report will be restricted to the specified parties.

An illustrative engagement letter is presented in appendix B of this SOP.

**.19** Practitioners should consider any applicable audit committee preapproval requirements before accepting an agreed-upon procedures engagement.

## Nature, Timing, and Extent of Procedures

### Responsibilities of Management

**.20** Management is responsible for the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of its XBRL-tagged data. That responsibility encompasses

- a. identifying the applicable XBRL-tagged data filing requirements of the organization to which the XBRL-tagged data is to be submitted.
- b. establishing and maintaining controls relating to the preparation and submission of the entity's XBRL-tagged data to the organization to which it is being submitted (for example, the SEC or other regulators).
- c. evaluating the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of the entity's XBRL-tagged data.
- d. providing XBRL-tagged data in a form and manner that satisfies any regulatory or other requirements of the organization to which it is being submitted.

### Responsibilities of the Practitioner

**.21** The practitioner is responsible for carrying out the procedures and reporting the findings in accordance with the general, fieldwork, and reporting standards for attestation engagements as established in AT section 50, *SSAE Hierarchy* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1). In order to accomplish this, the practitioner should have adequate knowledge of the specific subject matter to which the agreed-upon procedures are to be applied. That knowledge would

include a working understanding of XBRL and a familiarity with the applicable XBRL taxonomies used, as well as knowledge of the source documents and supporting records.

## Procedures to Be Performed

**.22** The procedures that the practitioner and specified parties agree upon may be as limited or as extensive as the specified parties desire. However, mere reading of an assertion or specific information about the XBRL-tagged data does not constitute a procedure sufficient to permit a practitioner to report on the results of applying agreed-upon procedures. Examples of appropriate procedures are included in appendix D of this SOP. Examples of inappropriate procedures may include the following:

- Merely reading the work performed by a third party involved in the preparation of XBRL-tagged data (for example, service provider)
- Evaluating the competence or objectivity of another party involved in preparing or in providing assistance in the preparation of the XBRL-tagged data
- Obtaining an understanding about XBRL-related requirements<sup>3</sup>

## Involvement of a Specialist<sup>4</sup>

**.23** Generally, the use of a specialist would not be necessary. However, if specialized matters were included in the engagement that required expertise beyond that possessed by the practitioner (such as compliance with certain aspects of the EDGAR Filer Manual), the practitioner and the specified parties should explicitly agree to the involvement of the specialist in assisting the practitioner in the performance of those agreed-upon procedures. This agreement may be reached when obtaining agreement on the procedures performed or to be performed and acknowledgment of responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures, as discussed in paragraph .17. The practitioner's report should describe the nature of the assistance provided by the specialist.

**.24** A practitioner may agree to apply procedures to the report or work product of a specialist. Performing such procedures does not constitute assistance by the specialist to the practitioner in an agreed-upon procedures engagement. For example, the practitioner may make reference to information contained in a report of a specialist in describing an agreed-upon procedure. However, it is inappropriate for the practitioner to agree to merely read the specialist's report solely to describe or repeat the findings or to take responsibility for all or a portion of any procedures performed by a specialist or the specialist's work product.

## Written Representations

**.25** During an attest engagement, the responsible party (for example, management) makes many representations to the practitioner, both oral and written, in response to specific inquiries or through the presentation of the subject matter or an assertion. A practitioner may find a representation letter to be a useful and practical means of obtaining representations from the

<sup>3</sup> Although the practitioner may need to obtain an understanding about XBRL, such understanding is not in itself an agreed-upon procedure (see paragraph .21).

<sup>4</sup> A *specialist* is a person (or firm) possessing skill or knowledge in a particular field other than the attest function. As used herein, a specialist does not include a person employed by the practitioner's firm who participates in the attest engagement.

responsible party. An illustrative representation letter is presented in appendix C of this SOP.

**.26** If management refuses to furnish all written representations that the practitioner deems necessary, the practitioner should consider the effects of such a refusal on his or her ability to perform the engagement.

## Reporting Considerations

**.27** A practitioner's report on agreed-upon procedures should be in the form of procedures and findings. The practitioner should not provide negative assurance in his or her report about the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of the XBRL-tagged data. For example, the practitioner should not include a statement that "nothing came to our attention that caused us to believe that the assertion is not fairly stated in accordance with the criteria."

**.28** The practitioner should report all findings from the application of the agreed-upon procedures. The concept of materiality does not apply to findings to be reported in an agreed-upon procedures engagement unless the definition of materiality is agreed to by the specified parties. Any agreed-upon materiality limits should be described in the practitioner's report.

**.29** The practitioner's report on agreed-upon procedures should include all of the following elements:

- a. A title that includes the word *independent*
- b. Identification of the specified parties
- c. Identification of the subject matter (or the written assertion related thereto) and the character of the engagement (and where appropriate, clarifications of the criteria used [refer to explanatory language discussion in paragraph .32])
- d. Identification of the party responsible for the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of the XBRL-tagged data (for example, management)
- e. A statement that the subject matter is the responsibility of the responsible party (for example, management)
- f. A statement that the procedures performed were those agreed to by the specified parties identified in the report
- g. A statement that the agreed-upon procedures engagement was conducted in accordance with the attestation standards established by the AICPA
- h. A statement that the sufficiency of the procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified parties and a disclaimer of responsibility for the sufficiency of those procedures
- i. A list of the procedures performed (or reference thereto) and related findings
- j. When applicable, a description of any agreed-upon materiality limits (Refer to materiality discussion in paragraph .28.)
- k. A statement that the practitioner was not engaged to and did not conduct an examination of the subject matter (or the written assertion related thereto), the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion, a disclaimer of opinion on the subject matter (or the written assertion related thereto), and a statement that if the practitioner had

performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to his or her attention that would have been reported

- l.* A statement restricting the use of the report to the specified parties and that the report is intended solely for the use of the specified parties
- m.* When applicable, reservations or restrictions concerning procedures or findings
- n.* When applicable, a description of the nature of the assistance provided by a specialist
- o.* The manual or printed signature of the practitioner's firm
- p.* The date of the report

An illustrative report is presented in appendix E of this SOP.

**.30** The date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures should be used as the date of the practitioner's report.

## Knowledge of Matters Outside Agreed-Upon Procedures

**.31** The practitioner need not perform procedures beyond the agreed-upon procedures. However, in connection with the application of agreed-upon procedures, if matters come to the practitioner's attention by other means that significantly contradict the subject matter (or written assertion related thereto) referred to in the practitioner's report, the practitioner should include this matter in his or her report.

## Explanatory Language in the Practitioner's Agreed-Upon Procedures Report

**.32** The practitioner may include explanatory language in his or her agreed-upon procedures report related to matters such as the following:

- Disclosure of stipulated facts, assumptions, or interpretations (including the source thereof) used in the application of agreed-upon procedures
- Description of the condition of records, controls, or data to which the procedures were applied
- Explanation that the practitioner has no responsibility to update his or her report
- Explanation of sampling risk

## Effective Date

**.33** This SOP is effective upon issuance.

## Appendix A

### Illustrative Management Assertions

Appendix A illustrates how this Statement of Position (SOP) might be applied to an agreed-upon procedures engagement on XBRL-tagged data related to financial statements<sup>1</sup> and is intended to be illustrative only. The practitioner should tailor it to the specific facts and circumstances of each engagement. Paragraph .15(b) of this SOP requires management to provide the practitioner with one or more written assertions about the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of its XBRL-tagged data. See the discussion regarding criteria in paragraph .12 of this SOP. Management should develop assertions and agree upon the procedures to meet its objectives. The following are examples of assertions that management might provide:

1. **Identification and Version of Taxonomies.** The taxonomies selected are appropriate for the entity's intended purpose (for example, using the most current applicable version) and have been used in creating the XBRL-tagged data.
2. **Tagging is Accurately and Consistently Applied.** With respect to both standard tags and extensions, the tags and related contextual structuring attributes (for example, context, units, footnotes) accurately reflect the corresponding data in the source document (for example, financial statements) and are consistently applied (that is, within the document and from period to period). Other metadata has been provided in a manner consistent with applicable requirements (for example, SEC rules).
3. **Creation of Extensions.** Extension elements have been created only when no element exists in the specified base taxonomy(ies) or modules that is the same as or accurately reflects a specified element in the source document. (Note: Assertion 6, "Labels and Label Linkbase," addresses extension situations in which the preparer changes the label for a standard tag instead of creating a new customized tag.)
4. **Completeness of XBRL-tagged Data.** All of the data in the source document that is required to be tagged (for example, under the SEC rules) have been tagged and included in the [*identify XBRL-related file (for example, instance document and related files)*].
5. **Granularity of Tagging of Note Disclosures.** Note disclosures are tagged at the level required or allowed by: [*describe: (for example, the SEC rules)*].
6. **Labels and Label Linkbase.** Labels in the label linkbase are the same as or accurately reflect respective captions in the [*identify source document (for example, financial statements)*] and the definition of the element. An example of tagging that is not the "same as" but may "accurately reflect" the source document is a source document that states "Gross Margin" as a line item and a standard XBRL label that reads "Gross Profit."

---

<sup>1</sup> Although the Securities and Exchange Commission rules require the tagging of any applicable schedules to the financial statements as well as the financial statements themselves, these appendixes only refer to the financial statements for purposes of illustration.

7. **Calculations and Calculation Linkbase.** Calculations in the XBRL instance document and in the calculation linkbase are complete and accurate and include only values that appear in the *[identify source document (for example, financial statements)]*. All calculations within the calculation linkbase have been assigned proper weight attributes and accurately sum to their parent values, except where appropriate exceptions exist (for example, allowance for doubtful accounts, gross vs. net).
8. **Presentation and Presentation Linkbase.** Presentation of line items as indicated in the presentation linkbase is consistent with the respective presentation of those items in the source document (for example, financial statements).

## Appendix B

### Illustrative Engagement Letter

Appendix B illustrates how this Statement of Position might be applied to an agreed-upon procedures engagement on XBRL-tagged data related to financial statements<sup>1</sup> and is intended to be illustrative only. The practitioner should tailor it to the specific facts and circumstances of each engagement.

The following is an illustrative engagement letter for an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of an entity's XBRL-tagged data. Because it is only an illustration, it may not include items that are relevant to a specific engagement and should be tailored to the circumstances of the particular engagement.<sup>2</sup> In this illustrative engagement letter, management and the audit committee of XYZ Company are the specified parties.

*[CPA Firm Letterhead]*

*[Client's Name and Address]*

166 7-09

To Management and the Audit Committee of XYZ Company:

This will confirm our understanding of the arrangements for our performance of certain agreed-upon procedures to assist management and the audit committee of XYZ Company in evaluating the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of its XBRL-tagged data related to the *[identify source document and period]*. We will perform the procedures enumerated in the attachment to this letter, which were agreed to by management and the audit committee of XYZ Company. Our responsibility is to carry out these procedures and report our findings. We will conduct our engagement in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of management and the audit committee of XYZ Company. Consequently, it is understood that we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described in the attachment for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

Management is responsible for the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of its XBRL-tagged data and the information provided to us. Management also is responsible for the design, implementation, effectiveness, and monitoring of controls over the preparation and submission of XYZ Company's XBRL-tagged data. It is understood that we make no representation regarding the completeness or accuracy of information provided to us during this engagement.

Our engagement to perform agreed-upon procedures is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an

---

<sup>1</sup> Although the Securities and Exchange Commission rules require the tagging of any applicable schedules to the financial statements as well as the financial statements themselves, these appendices only refer to the financial statements for purposes of illustration.

<sup>2</sup> It should be noted that although paragraph .10 of AT section 201, *Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, vol. 1), requires the practitioner to establish an understanding with the client regarding the services to be performed, that understanding is not required to be in writing. It may be preferable that the understanding be in writing to avoid any misunderstandings regarding the services to be performed. Paragraph .18 herein describes additional matters that may be appropriate to include in the engagement letter.

opinion on management's assertion regarding the XBRL-tagged data. Accordingly, the report will not express an opinion or any other form of assurance thereon and if additional procedures were performed, other matters might come to our attention.

At the completion of the agreed-upon procedures, we expect to issue a report that *[describe (for example, nature of procedures and findings and state that an opinion will not be expressed)]*. If, however, we are not able to complete all of the specified procedures, we will so advise you. At that time, we will discuss with you the form of communication, if any, that you desire for our findings. We will ask you to confirm your request in writing at that time.

Distribution and use of our agreed-upon procedures report is restricted to the audit committee and management of the Company.

*[Discuss other practitioner-specific matters, such as billing arrangements.]*

If this letter correctly expresses your understanding of this engagement, please sign the enclosed copy where indicated and return it to us. We appreciate the opportunity to serve you.

Sincerely,

\_\_\_\_\_  
*[Firm Name or Firm Representative's Signature]*

Accepted and agreed to by XYZ Company

\_\_\_\_\_  
*[Client Representative's Signature (such as Audit Committee Chair)]*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*[Title]*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*[Date]*

## Appendix C

### Illustrative Representation Letter

Appendix C illustrates how this Statement of Position (SOP) might be applied to an agreed-upon procedures engagement on XBRL-tagged data related to financial statements<sup>1</sup> and is intended to be illustrative only. The practitioner should tailor it to the specific facts and circumstances of each engagement. Paragraph .25 of this SOP indicates that a practitioner may find a representation letter to be a useful and practical means of obtaining representations from management. The following is an illustrative representation letter for an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of XBRL-tagged data. Because it is only an illustration, it may not include items that are relevant to a specific engagement and should be tailored to the circumstances of the particular engagement.

[Date]

To [CPA Firm]:

We are providing this letter in connection with the performance of certain agreed-upon procedures to assist management and the audit committee of XYZ Company in evaluating the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of its XBRL-tagged data related to the [identify source document and period]. We confirm that we are responsible for the XBRL-tagged data relating to our financial statements and the related assertions (attached hereto).<sup>2</sup> We also confirm that we are responsible for selecting the criteria specified in the procedures and for determining that such criteria are appropriate for our purposes.

We confirm, to the best of our knowledge and belief, [as of (date of attestation report),] the following representations made to you during your attestation engagement.

1. All known matters related to the XBRL-tagged data relating to our financial statements or the related assertions have been disclosed to you.
2. We have made available to you all—
  - a. Financial records and related data.
  - b. Documents used in the preparation of the XBRL files, such as information provided to a third party and tagging worksheets.
  - c. Output of all validation reports.
3. All of the data in the [source document] (for example, financial statements) that is required to be tagged has been accurately and completely tagged and included in the XBRL instance document and related files using the U.S. GAAP Taxonomy, Version X in accordance with the SEC rules, and the tags have been consistently applied from period to period.

---

<sup>1</sup> Although the Securities and Exchange Commission rules require the tagging of any applicable schedules to the financial statements as well as the financial statements themselves, these appendixes only refer to the financial statements for purposes of illustration.

<sup>2</sup> Management assertions may be incorporated within the representation letter or may be provided separately.

4. There have been no communications from regulatory agencies affecting the XBRL-tagged data relating to our financial statements [*or previously submitted XBRL exhibits*]<sup>3</sup>
5. We have no knowledge of any fraud or suspected fraud affecting the entity's XBRL-tagged data.
6. [*Add: Other matters as the practitioner deems appropriate.*]

---

[Name of Chief Executive Officer and Title]

---

[Name of Chief Financial Officer and Title]

---

<sup>3</sup> If this representation letter is obtained subsequent to the issuance of the underlying financial statements, a representation such as the following may be appropriate: "We are not aware of any communication from any regulatory agencies regarding the financial statements or previously submitted XBRL exhibits, and no material modifications exist that need to be made to the financial statements."

## Appendix D

### Illustrative Procedures and Findings

Appendix D illustrates how this Statement of Position (SOP) might be applied to an agreed-upon procedures engagement on XBRL-tagged data related to financial statements<sup>1</sup> and is intended to be illustrative only. The practitioner should tailor it to the specific facts and circumstances of each engagement. The illustrative procedures in appendix D do not necessarily represent a complete set of procedures that might be performed in any specific engagement. Practitioners should tailor the procedures to the circumstances of the particular engagement and to the procedures agreed upon among the specified parties.

- (1) This table presents illustrative procedures that a practitioner might perform and findings that might be reported as part of an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to the completeness, accuracy, or consistency of XBRL-tagged data. These procedures are illustrative and do not represent a complete set of procedures that might be performed in any specific engagement. In addition, this table does not necessarily address every attribute associated with an assertion. Practitioners should tailor the procedures to the circumstances of the particular engagement and to the procedures agreed-upon among the specified parties.
- (2) Certain agreed-upon procedures may appear under more than one assertion, but each procedure would only need to be performed once. In addition, in some cases, more than one procedure is listed that may relate to the same assertion.
- (3) As indicated in paragraph .28 of this SOP, the practitioner should report and describe all differences, exceptions, and other findings noted during the application of the agreed-upon procedures as part of their findings, unless they are below any agreed-upon materiality limits described in the practitioner's report. Sample wording to demonstrate how such a finding might be reported is provided for illustrative purposes in finding 2-2, which follows.
- (4) In planning for the execution of such an agreed-upon procedures engagement, the practitioner may find it useful to perform additional activities to assist in gaining an understanding of the entity's tagging approach. Examples of such activities may include
  - inquiring of management to gain an understanding of its overall tagging and validation process, including software or third-party providers used.
  - inquiring of management and inspection of documentation regarding the taxonomy industry view used and granularity level used for tag selection.
  - requesting management to provide a list of known differences between its XBRL-tagged documents and both the XBRL U. S. Preparers Guide and the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) rules.
- (5) Certain of these procedures may be performed using XBRL viewer software. Accordingly, as part of tailoring the procedures to a specific agreed-upon procedures engagement, management might agree to or specify the use of specific XBRL viewer software product for performing such procedures.
- (6) The SEC rules indicate that the SEC plans to use validation software to help identify data that may be problematic. The SEC will provide filers with an opportunity to make a test submission of interactive data. Specific procedures relating to technical specifications and standards are not illustrated in this appendix.

<sup>1</sup> Although the Securities and Exchange Commission rules require the tagging of any applicable schedules to the financial statements as well as the financial statements themselves, these appendices only refer to the financial statements for purposes of illustration.

<i>Assertions</i>	<i>Procedures</i>	<i>Findings</i>
<b>1. Identification and Version of Taxonomies:</b> The taxonomies selected are appropriate for the entity's intended purpose (for example, using the most current applicable version) and have been used in creating the XBRL-tagged data.	1-1 Identify which base taxonomy(ies) is (are) used and compare such referenced taxonomy(ies) to that specified in management's assertion.  1-2 Ascertain whether the base taxonomy and linkbases referenced by the XBRL instance document, including element prefixes and related namespaces, are the most current applicable version according to the applicable relevant source specified by management, such as the XBRL U.S. Web site (or IASB Web site if IFRS is used).	1-1 [ <i>Specify taxonomy(ies) used</i> ] agreed to the taxonomy(ies) specified in management's assertion.  1-2 We noted that the base taxonomy(ies) and linkbases used in the XBRL instance document are the most current version according to the XBRL U.S. Web site (or IASB Web site if IFRS is used) applicable to the entity.

(continued)

<i>Assertions</i>	<i>Procedures</i>	<i>Findings</i>
<b>2. Tagging is Accurately and Consistently Applied:</b> With respect to both standard tags and extensions, the tags and related contextual structuring attributes (for example, context, units, footnotes) accurately reflect the corresponding data in the source document (for example, financial statements) and are consistently applied (that is, within the document and from period to period). Other metadata has been provided in a manner consistent with applicable requirements (for example, SEC rules).	<p>2-1 For each reporting entity, ascertain whether the same identifier and scheme are used in all contexts related to that entity.</p> <p>2-2 Compare the context <i>segments, scenarios</i> (including dimensional information), and date(s) used for each tag to the [identify source document].</p> <p>2-3 Compare the information in each tag contained in the XBRL instance document to the corresponding data element in the source document, including (1) attributes of element, (2) context reference ("contextRef"), (3) unit reference ("unitRef"), (4) decimals/precision, and (5) amount.</p> <p>2-4 Compare the units and contexts identified in the XBRL instance document to the underlying source document to identify duplications, as well as units and contexts that do not reflect information contained in the source document.</p>	<p>2-1 We noted that the same identifier and scheme were used in all contexts related to that entity.</p> <p>2-2 The context segments, scenarios, and date(s) used for each tag agreed to the [identify source document], [except for: (describe any differences including items that are similar but not the same)].</p> <p>2-3 We found such information to be in agreement.</p> <p>2-4 We found the units and contexts to be in agreement with those in the source document.</p> <p>2-5 We found the line items, dates, and amounts to be in agreement between the source document and the rendered version.</p>

<i>Assertions</i>	<i>Procedures</i>	<i>Findings</i>
	<p>2-5 Compare line items, dates, and amounts in the source document (for example, financial statements) to a rendered version of the XBRL instance document (for example, using SEC Previewer, if applicable).</p> <p>2-6 Search for numeric or textual data that appears more than once in the XBRL instance document and compare the elements used for such data to the source document to identify any data that has been redundantly tagged<sup>2</sup> with different elements.</p> <p>2-7 Search for tags in the XBRL instance document and related files that have the same definition to identify tags that are used more than once.</p> <p>2-8 Obtain from management a detailed list of changes in the tags used from the prior period to the current period and inquire of management about why the changes were made. Compare the tags used for current period amounts and disclosures to the tags used for the related prior period amounts and disclosures in the XBRL instance document and with those in the corresponding prior period XBRL instance document(s) [specify] and to the detailed list obtained from management.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> See also procedures under assertion 5.</p>	<p>2-6 We sorted the numeric data and identified items where similar content was tagged with different tags, and found that [describe: for example, the Cash value from the financial statement was tagged both as [Cash] and as [CashCashEquivalents]]; and we noted that the other duplications were either two different concepts that coincidentally had the same value or facts that were block tagged were also separately tagged.</p> <p>2-7 We noted no tags in the XBRL instance document and related files that had the same definition.</p> <p>2-8 Management stated that the following changes were made for the reasons stated: [describe changes and management's reasons for changes]. We found no additional changes to the current tags from the prior period tags.</p>

(continued)

<sup>2</sup> Redundant tagging consists of (1) tagging the same data with different elements, (2) tagging data that appears more than once in the financial statements with the same tag, or (3) tagging different information with the same tag. It does not include tagging an element on the face of the financial statements and then block-tagging a note or tagging a sentence in a note in which the element appears; a different tag should be used for the tagging of sentences, paragraphs or individual notes from individual data amounts. The presentation linkbase is used to identify any data amounts that appear in more than one place in the financial statements.

<i>Assertions</i>	<i>Procedures</i>	<i>Findings</i>
<b>3. Creation of Extensions:</b> Extensions have been created only when no element exists in the specified base taxonomy(ies) or modules that is the same as or accurately reflects a specified element in the source document. (Note: Assertion 6, “Labels and Label Linkbase,” and Assertion 2, “Tagging is Accurately and Consistently Applied” (specifically procedure 2-3) cover extension situations in which the preparer changes the label for a standard tag, instead of creating a new customized tag.)	<p>3-1 Obtain from management a listing of the extension elements included in the extension taxonomy, including lists of those added, removed, or replaced from those in the prior period and inquire of management about the reasons it has used such extensions or eliminated the use of extensions for such elements.</p> <p>3-2 Inquire<sup>3</sup> of company personnel about whether they limited the use of extensions to circumstances where an appropriate financial statement element does not exist in the base taxonomy.</p> <p>3-3 For each extension element, locate and list any base taxonomy elements that are duplicative of the client’s definition in the source document.</p> <p>3-4 For each extension element that contains a definition, compare the definition to the company’s accounting policies or financial statement disclosures regarding such element.</p>	<p>3-1 Management stated that it used the extensions for the following elements because [state reasons]: [list elements]. Management stated that it no longer used extensions for the following elements because [state reasons]: [list elements].</p> <p>3-2 Management stated that they limited the use of extensions to circumstances where an appropriate financial statement element did not exist in the base taxonomy.</p> <p>3-3 For the following extension element(s), we have identified and listed elements from the U.S. GAAP Taxonomy that have a similar definition to the client’s definition in the source document: [list extension element and elements that are duplicative of the definition identified in the U.S. GAAP Taxonomy or IFRS, if any].</p> <p>3-4 We noted that definitions related to those extension elements that contained definitions were consistent with the related accounting policies or disclosures for such elements.</p>
<b>4. Completeness of XBRL-tagged Data:</b> All of the data in the source document that is required to be tagged has been tagged and included in the XBRL instance document.	<p>4-1 Compare the sections of the source document that are required to be tagged (for example, financial statements) to a rendered version of the XBRL instance document.</p>	<p>4-1 We noted the following differences between the [identify source document, for example, financial statements] and the rendered version: [describe].</p>

<sup>3</sup> Inquiries may be effective procedures if directed at a different party other than to which the report is directed.

<i>Assertions</i>	<i>Procedures</i>	<i>Findings</i>
<b>5. Granularity of Tagging of Note Disclosures:</b> Note disclosures are tagged at the level required or allowed by: <i>[describe (for example, SEC rules)]</i> .	5-1 Inquire of management about what level of granularity the entity used to tag its notes.  5-2 Compare the level of tagging used in the XBRL instance document to the requirements under the SEC rules or lower level of granularity chosen by management.	5-1 Management advised us that it is permitted to block tag each of the notes, and that it has chosen to tag the notes at that level.  5-2 The notes included in the XBRL instance document were block tagged at the level specified by the SEC rules <i>[or level of granularity chosen by management]</i> .
<b>6. Labels and Label Linkbase:</b> Labels in the label linkbase are the same as or accurately reflect respective captions in the <i>[identify source document (for example, financial statements)]</i> and with the definition of the element.	6-1 Compare labels in the label linkbase to the source document (for example, financial statements).	6-1 We noted the following differences between the labels in the label linkbase and the <i>[identify source document; for example, financial statements]</i> : <i>[describe]</i> .
<b>7. Calculations and Calculation Linkbase:</b> Calculations in the XBRL instance document and in the calculation linkbase are complete and accurate and include only values that appear in the <i>[identify source document (for example, financial statements)]</i> . All calculations within the calculation linkbase have been assigned proper weight attributes and accurately sum to their parent values, except where appropriate exceptions exist (for example, allowance for doubtful accounts, gross vs. net).	7-1 Compare the components of all XBRL calculations in the calculation linkbase to the corresponding components of such calculations in the source document (for example, financial statements) and ascertain whether the calculation concepts and amounts are the same (for example, same data forms the calculation). Note any calculations in the XBRL instance document that do not exist in the source document (that is, implied values or subtotals).	7-1 We noted that the components and amounts in the XBRL calculations included in the calculation linkbase resulted in the same components and amounts as the <i>[identify source document]</i> . We noted no calculations in the XBRL instance document that did not exist in the source document.

(continued)

<i>Assertions</i>	<i>Procedures</i>	<i>Findings</i>
<b>8. Presentation and Presentation Linkbase:</b> Presentation of line items, as indicated in the presentation linkbase, is consistent with the respective presentation of those items in the source document (for example, financial statements).	8-1 Compare presentation links for all elements in the presentation linkbase to the presentation order of the <i>[identify source document (for example, financial statements)]</i> .  8-2 Compare the line item text in the rendered version of the XBRL instance document to that used in the <i>[identify source document (for example, financial statements)]</i> to ascertain whether the labels are the same.	8-1 We noted the following differences between the presentation links in the XBRL instance document and the <i>[identify source document]: [describe]</i> .  8-2 We noted the following differences between the rendered version and the <i>[identify source document, for example, financial statements]: [describe]</i> .

## Appendix E

### Illustrative Agreed-Upon Procedures Report

Appendix E illustrates how this Statement of Position might be applied to an agreed-upon procedures engagement on XBRL-tagged data related to financial statements<sup>1</sup> and is intended to be illustrative only. The practitioner should tailor it to the specific facts and circumstances of each engagement.

#### Independent Accountant's Report on Applying Agreed-Upon Procedures

To Management and the Audit Committee of XYZ Company:

We have performed the procedures enumerated in Attachment A, which were agreed to by the audit committee and management of XYZ Company, solely to assist you in evaluating the completeness, accuracy, and consistency of XYZ Company's XBRL-tagged data presented in the *[identify XBRL instance document, related linkbases, and period]*. XYZ Company's management is responsible for the XBRL-tagged data.

This agreed-upon procedures engagement was performed in accordance with attestation standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of those parties specified in this report. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described in Attachment A either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

The findings relating to the procedures are included in Attachment A.

We were not engaged to and did not conduct an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on the XBRL-tagged data. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the audit committee and management of XYZ Company and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than these specified parties.

*[Signature]*

*[Date]*

*[Include as an attachment an enumeration of the procedures and findings.]*

---

<sup>1</sup> Although the Securities and Exchange Commission rules require the tagging of any applicable schedules to the financial statements as well as the financial statements themselves, these appendixes only refer to the financial statements for purposes of illustration.

## Appendix F

### Glossary<sup>1</sup>

<i>Terms</i>	<i>Technical Definitions</i>	<i>Nontechnical Clarifications</i>
Calculation linkbase	Part of a taxonomy used to define additive relationships between numeric items expressed as parent-child hierarchies. Each calculation child has a weight attribute (+1 or -1) based upon its natural balance of the parent and child items.	Documents the way the taxonomy elements are to be combined to perform calculations (for example, totals and subtotals). For example, the calculation linkbase might specify that the value of net fixed assets is equal to the value of gross fixed assets less the value of fixed asset depreciation.
CIK	Central Index Key: a unique number identifying companies and individuals who have filed disclosure with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC).	An SEC code to identify entities that file financial reports with them.
Concept	XBRL technical term for element.	A “concept” is synonymous with “element.” See element.
Context	Entity and report-specific information (reporting period, segment information, and so forth) required by XBRL that allows tagged data to be understood in relation to other information.	Provides information about the data reported such as the reporting entity, the date or timeframe of the information, whether the data is for the entire entity or only a part of the entity, and so on.
Context identifier	Each fact in an XBRL instance document is associated with a specific contextual structure (the context element and its children). Each context is given a unique identifier, which is used in the context’s ID attribute. The context identifier is then referred to by each fact using the contextRef attribute.	A user-defined title or code to identify each of the many contexts that are used in an instance document.

<sup>1</sup> Most of the definitions in the second column of this glossary were taken or derived from the *XBRL U.S. Taxonomy Preparers Guide* (Preparers Guide). XBRL US, Inc. owns all right, title, and interest in the U.S. GAAP Financial Statement Taxonomy and all technical data, software, documentation, manuals, instructional materials, and other information created in connection with the U.S. GAAP Financial Statement Taxonomy—which includes the Preparers Guide. Other works that incorporate the Preparers Guide, in whole or in part, without change, may be prepared, copied, published, and distributed without restriction of any kind, provided this notice is included on the first page of all such authorized copies and works. Under no circumstances may this document, or any part of it that is incorporated into another work, be modified in any way, such as by removing the copyright notice or references to XBRL US, Inc., except as required to translate it into languages other than English or with prior written consent of XBRL US, Inc.

<i>Terms</i>	<i>Technical Definitions</i>	<i>Nontechnical Clarifications</i>
Data	Content from a source document that are tagged in XBRL. Data characteristics include: (1) nature of element, (2) context reference (“contextRef”), (3) unit reference (“unitRef”), (4) precision, and (5) amount.	Entity reported facts. These may be numbers or text.
Decimal	Instance document fact attribute used to express the number of decimal places to which numbers have been rounded.	An indicator of the amount of decimal places that the reported number is rounded.
Definition Linkbase	Part of a taxonomy that allows taxonomy authors to represent relationships that are not expressed by presentation or calculation relationships. It contains miscellaneous relationships between concepts in taxonomies.	A definition linkbase describes relationships between concepts. It allows taxonomy authors to represent relationships that are expressed in tables.
Dimensions or Dimensional information	XBRL technical term for tables, and the axes of those tables, or reporting of segmental information.	Dimensions or dimensional information is a technical term for XBRL tables. An XBRL table, in its basic application, can be used to tag the tables typically found in financial reports.
Element or concept	XBRL components (for example, items, domain members, dimensions, and so on). The representation of a financial reporting concept, including: line items in the face of the financial statements, important narrative disclosures, and rows and columns of data in tables.	XBRL components that represent financial reporting concepts, including: line items on the face of the financial statements, important narrative disclosures, and rows of data in tables.
Extension or extension taxonomy	A taxonomy that allows users to add to a published taxonomy in order to define new elements or change element relationships and attributes (for example, presentation, calculation, labels, and so forth) without altering the original.	A change to one of the published public taxonomies, such as the US GAAP Taxonomy. Extensions enable preparers to modify the taxonomy to suit their reporting content and style.

(continued)

<i>Terms</i>	<i>Technical Definitions</i>	<i>Nontechnical Clarifications</i>
Identifier	The identifier is a sub-structure of the context structure that holds information identifying the organization whose data is being reported. The content of the identifier is usually the CIK, a stock ticker symbol, a federal ID number or similar organizational identifier and the scheme attribute holds a URL representing the authority that assigns or governs the CIK or relevant code.	Data that identifies the reporting entity. SEC filers would use their CIK code.
Instance document or XBRL instance document	XML file that contains business reporting information and represents a collection of financial facts and report-specific information using tags from one or more XBRL taxonomies.	The computer file that contains an entity's data and other entity-specific information.
Label	Human-readable name for an element; each element has a standard label that corresponds to the element name, and is unique across the taxonomy.	Equivalent to a financial statement line item description (for example, Revenue, SG&A, Inventory, Common Stock, Retained Earnings), which would be used in renderings of the XBRL instance document.
Label Linkbase	Part of a taxonomy used to associate labels to elements.	Contains the labels and definitions of the elements.
Line item	Elements that conventionally appear on the vertical axis (rows) of a table.	
Linkbase	XBRL technical term for a relationships file. Part of a taxonomy used to define specific relationships and other data about elements. There are five standard relationships file types: Presentation, Calculation, Definition (Dimensions), Label, and Reference	An XBRL file that (1) links additional information to the elements (for example, labels or references) or (2) documents the way elements relate to each other, such as presentation order and structure or calculation components. See glossary entries for the individual linkbases—presentation, label, calculation, and definition—for further detail.
Metadata	Data about information about the order in which the elements would normally appear in a financial statement.	Information that describes the tagged data. For example, a value on the balance sheet would be further defined by including the element, the company to which it applies, and the date or time period covered through the use of metadata.

<i>Terms</i>	<i>Technical Definitions</i>	<i>Nontechnical Clarifications</i>
Presentation linkbase	Part of a taxonomy that defines the organizational relationships (order) of elements using parent-child hierarchies; it presents the taxonomy elements to users and enables them to navigate the content.	Documents how (order and hierarchy) elements of an instance document are to appear, such as the order and hierarchy of a financial statement. That is, the presentation linkbase specifies which element comes first, second, and so on and how elements are indented to form the required hierarchy.
Render or rendered	To process an instance document into a layout that facilitates the readability and understanding of its contents.	Creation of a human-readable version of an instance document and related files (that is, to transform the XBRL instance document and related files into a printed document or a screen presentation.)
Scenario	Tag that allows for additional information to be associated with facts in an instance document; this information encompasses in particular the reporting circumstances of the fact, as for example actual or forecast. The scenario of any fact can be left unspecified.	A very broad way to characterize data. It can define, for example, whether the data is actual, forecasted, or budgeted.
Schema	Technical term for an element declaration file.	The XBRL file that contains the elements or concepts. A schema is similar to a dictionary. The schema also references the appropriate linkbases.
Scheme	Each context has an identifier element to describe the organization with which the fact is associated. The identifier has as its content some indicator of the organization's identity - its CIK number, ticker symbol or name. The identifier element also has an attribute, the scheme, which is used to specify the naming authority or Web site that governs the set of indicators used.	The Web site address of the authority that oversees the code used in the identifier.
Segment	Tag that allows additional information to be included in the context of an instance document; this information captures segment information such as an entity's business units, type of debt, type of other income.	Any logical subdivision of an entity or its financial information. Segments are used in the creation of XBRL tables. This is not the same as a segment under generally accepted accounting principles.

(continued)

<i>Terms</i>	<i>Technical Definitions</i>	<i>Nontechnical Clarifications</i>
Source document	The original source of the data - generally the financial statements	
Tag	Markup information that describes a unit of data in an instance document and encloses it in angle brackets ("<>" and "</>"). All facts in an instance document are enclosed by tags that identify the element of the fact.	All of the metadata in an instance document that represents the associated company data.
Taxonomy	Electronic dictionary of business reporting elements used to report business data. A taxonomy is composed of an element names file (.xsd) and relationships files directly referenced by that schema file. The taxonomy schema files plus the relationships files define the concepts (elements) and relationships that form the basis of the taxonomy. The set of related schemas and relationships files altogether constitute a taxonomy.	A dictionary that defines the elements (or concepts) used in XBRL documents to characterize or "tag" an entity's data.
Unit (of measure)	The units in which numeric items are measured, such as dollars, shares, Euros, or dollars per share.	
Validation	Process of checking that instance documents and taxonomies correctly meet the rules of the XBRL specifications.	Process of checking that instance documents and taxonomies correctly meet the rules of the XBRL specifications, typically using specially designed software.
Version	Refers to a specific release of a taxonomy obtained from its official Web site location such as the XBRL U.S. GAAP Taxonomies from the XBRL U.S. Web site, and the IFRS Taxonomies from the IASB Web site.	Taxonomies must be updated on a regular basis to accommodate new accounting pronouncements, changes in common reporting practices, and inadvertent errors. Every taxonomy release represents a new version.

<i>Terms</i>	<i>Technical Definitions</i>	<i>Nontechnical Clarifications</i>
Weight attribute	Calculation relationship attribute (-1 or +1) that works in conjunction with the balance of the parent and child numeric elements to determine the arithmetic summation relationship between them. A parent with a balance type credit that has two children, one with a balance type debit and the other with a balance type credit, would, in an XBRL calculation relationships file, have the parent with a weight of +1, the debit child with a weight of -1, and the credit child with a weight of +1. The parent's balance drives the weight of the children addends.	If an element is part of a calculation, the weight attribute specifies whether the element should be added or subtracted to calculate the total.
XBRL footnote	An instance document element that provides additional information for specified values by creating linkages between them and a footnote element containing this additional information.	Provides the means to attach a note to a specific piece of data. Often confused with Notes to the Financial Statements; the information in the Notes to the Financial Statements is not captured with XBRL footnotes, but as normal XBRL concepts.

## **Assurance Services Executive Committee (ASEC) XBRL Assurance Task Force**

William R. Titera, *Chair*  
Alan W. Anderson, *ASEC Chair*  
Matthew Birney  
Brian T. Croteau  
Sean Denham

Robert Dohrer  
Beth A. Schneider  
Darrel R. Schubert  
David H. Sharpe  
Harold I. Zeidman

## **Technical Advisors to the (ASEC) XBRL Assurance Task Force**

Eric E. Cohen  
Brad Homer  
Terri Koslowski  
Yossef Newman

Gene A. Ozgar  
Paul Penler  
Matthew F. Slavin

## **AICPA Staff**

Charles E. Landes  
*Vice President*  
*Professional Standards and*  
*Services*

Judith M. Sherinsky  
*Technical Manager*  
*Audit and Attest Standards*

Amy Pawlicki  
*Director*  
*Business Reporting, Assurance*  
*and Advisory Services*

Ami Beers  
*Manager*  
*Business Reporting, Assurance*  
*and Advisory Services*

Erin Mackler  
*Senior Manager*  
*Business Reporting, Assurance*  
*and Advisory Services*

---

[The next page is 50,741.]

# PA Section 16,000

## PRACTICE ALERTS

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
16,010	Dealing With Audit Differences (PA 94-1)	.01-.09
	Introduction . . . . .	.01
	Evaluating Audit Differences . . . . .	.02-.06
	Communicating Audit Differences . . . . .	.07-.09
16,020	Auditing Inventories—Physical Observations (PA 94-2)	.01-.18
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.02
	Inventory Fraud Schemes/Techniques . . . . .	.03
	Planning Considerations . . . . .	.04-.08
	The Actual Physical Count . . . . .	.09
	Multiple Locations . . . . .	.10-.11
	Inventories Held for or by Others . . . . .	.12-.13
	Use of Specialists . . . . .	.14
	Post-Observation Matters . . . . .	.15-.16
	Conclusion . . . . .	.17-.18
[16,030]	Acceptance and Continuance of Audit Clients (PA 94-3) [Superseded by PA 03-3, <i>Acceptance and Continuance of Clients and Engagements</i> ]	
[16,040]	Revenue Recognition Issues (PA 95-1) [Superseded by PA 98-3, <i>Revenue Recognition Issues</i> ]	
[16,050]	Auditing Related Parties and Related-Party Transactions (PA 95-3) [Superseded by <i>Accounting and Auditing for Related Parties and Related Party Transactions—A Toolkit for Accountants and Auditors</i> ]	
16,060	The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 (PA 96-1)	.01-.15
	Introduction . . . . .	.01
	Fraud Detection and Disclosure . . . . .	.02-.03
	Private Securities Reform Act of 1995 . . . . .	.04-.06
	Safe Harbor for Forward Looking Statements . . . . .	.07-.13
	Effective Date of Provisions . . . . .	.14-.15
16,070	Members in Public Accounting Firms (PA 97-1)	.01-.04
	Financial Statements on the Internet . . . . .	.01-.04

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
16,080 Audits of Employee Benefit Plans (PA 97-2)	.01-.13
Introduction . . . . .	.01-.02
Governmental Oversight of Employee Benefit Plans . . . . .	.03
Financial Accounting and Reporting Standards. . . . .	.04-.05
Common Deficiencies . . . . .	.06-.07
Best Practices . . . . .	.08
Recent Developments . . . . .	.09-.10
Service Organizations . . . . .	.11
Year 2000 Issues . . . . .	.12-.13
16,090 Changes in Auditors and Related Topics (PA 97-3)	.01-.23
Introduction . . . . .	.01-.03
Review of Audit Documentation . . . . .	.04-.05
Opening Balances . . . . .	.06-.09
Requests to Reissue Reports . . . . .	.10-.18
Use of Indemnification Clauses When Reissuing Reports . . . . .	.19-.20
Audits of Financial Statements Previously Audited. . . . .	.21
Reporting as Successor Auditor When Prior-Period Audited Financial Statements Were Audited by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations . . . . .	.22-.23
16,100 The Auditor's Use of Analytical Procedures (PA 98-1)	.01-.39
Introduction . . . . .	.01-.03
Substantive Analytical Procedures—Key Concepts and Discussion . . . . .	.04-.05
Expectations. . . . .	.06-.21
Level of Assurance . . . . .	.22-.25
Difficulties in Applying Substantive Analytical Procedures and Ways to Avoid Them. . . . .	.26-.35
Analytical Procedures and Fraud Detection. . . . .	.36-.39
16,110 Professional Skepticism and Related Topics (PA 98-2)	.01-.11
Introduction . . . . .	.01-.03
The Auditor's Review of Non-Standard Journal Entries . . . . .	.04-.08
The Auditor's Review of Original and Final Source Documents. . .	.09-.11
16,120 Responding to the Risk of Improper Revenue Recognition (PA 98-3)	.01-.22
Introduction . . . . .	.01-.02
Required Risk Assessment. . . . .	.03-.04
Improper, Aggressive or Unusual Revenue Recognition Practices . . . . .	.05
Audit Planning Considerations . . . . .	.06-.09
Brainstorming. . . . .	.10-.12
Audit Response . . . . .	.13

## Section

## Paragraph

16,120	Responding to the Risk of Improper Revenue Recognition (PA 98-3)—continued	
	Confirmations and Management Representations . . . . .	.14-.16
	Accounting Considerations . . . . .	.17-.19
	Communications with Board of Directors/Audit Committees . . .	.20-.21
	Conclusion . . . . .	.22
16,130	Guidance for Independence Discussions With Audit Committees (PA 99-1)	.01-.28
	Firm Policies and Procedures . . . . .	.06
	Determination of Matters to Be Communicated . . . . .	.07-.08
	Engaging the Audit Committee . . . . .	.09-10
	Threats to Objectivity and Related Safeguards . . . . .	.11-13
	Form of Communication . . . . .	.14-19
	Timing of Discussions with Audit Committees . . . . .	.20-.22
	Other Matters . . . . .	.23-.28
	Initial Public Offerings . . . . .	.23
	Initial Year of Application . . . . .	.24
	Prospective Clients . . . . .	.25
	Failure to Comply with the Standard . . . . .	.26-.28
16,140	How the Use of a Service Organization Affects Internal Control Considerations (PA 99-2)	.01-.28
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.02
	Factors to Consider in Planning an Audit . . . . .	.03
	When the User Auditor's Planning Should Consider the Guidance in SAS No. 70 . . . . .	.04
	Nature and Materiality of the Transactions . . . . .	.05-.06
	Degree of Interaction . . . . .	.07-11
	Factors to Consider in Assessing Control Risk . . . . .	.12-17
	SAS No. 70 Reports . . . . .	.18-.26
	Types of Reports . . . . .	.18
	What Is Included in the Reports . . . . .	.19
	Considerations in Using the Reports . . . . .	.20-24
	Timing Considerations in Using the Reports . . . . .	.25-26
	Conclusion . . . . .	.27-.28
16,150	Accounting for Certain Equity Transactions (PA 00-1)	.01-.31
	Stock Issued for Goods and Services . . . . .	.02-.12
	Stock Issued to an Owner for Expertise or Intellectual Capital Contributed to Business . . . . .	.13-.15
	Employee Stock Options . . . . .	.16-.22
	Retroactive Earnings per Share Adjustment for Cheap Stock . .	.23-.26
	Extinguishment of Related Party Debt . . . . .	.27-.28
	Other Accounting Literature Addressing Equity Transactions . .	.29-30
	Summary . . . . .	.31

<i>Section</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
16,160	Guidance for Communication With Audit Committees Regarding Alternative Treatments of Financial Information Within Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (PA 00-2)
	.01-.12
	Introduction . . . . .
	.01-.04
	Recommendation to Meet the Objectives of SAS No. 61 and the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 . . . . .
	.05-.06
	Discussion of Quality, Not Acceptability or Preferability, of Accounting Principles and Judgments . . . . .
	.07
	Discussion of Aggressiveness vs. Conservatism in Financial Reporting . . . . .
	.08-.11
	Summary . . . . .
	.12
16,170	Auditing Construction Contracts (PA 00-3)
	.01-.06
	Introduction . . . . .
	.01-.03
	Best Practices . . . . .
	.04-.06
[16,180]	Quarterly Review Procedures for Public Companies (PA 00-4) [Superseded by Statement on Auditing Standards No. 100, <i>Interim Financial Information</i> ]
16,190	Common Peer Review Recommendations (PA 01-1)
	.01-.13
	Introduction . . . . .
	.01-.03
	Implementation of New Professional Standards or Pronouncements . . . . .
	.04-.06
	Equity Transactions. . . . .
	.07
	Revenue Recognition . . . . .
	.08
	Documentation . . . . .
	.09
	Miscellaneous . . . . .
	.10-.11
	Annual Reviewers' Alert . . . . .
	.12
	Summary . . . . .
	.13
16,200	Audit Considerations in Times of Economic Uncertainty (PA 01-2)
	.01-.22
	Introduction . . . . .
	.01-.02
	Professional Skepticism. . . . .
	.03-.08
	Inventory . . . . .
	.09-.10
	Accounts Receivable. . . . .
	.11
	Investments. . . . .
	.12
	Long-Lived Assets, Including Goodwill and Intangibles . . . . .
	.13-.15
	Deferred Taxes and Other Deferred Charges . . . . .
	.16
	Accounts Payable. . . . .
	.17
	Debt. . . . .
	.18-.19
	Going Concern . . . . .
	.20
	Other Considerations . . . . .
	.21
	Summary . . . . .
	.22

## Section

## Paragraph

[16,210]	Communications With the Securities and Exchange Commission (PA 02-1) [Superseded due to the issuance of the SEC document entitled, "Guidance for Consulting on Accounting Matters with the Office of the Chief Accountant"]	
16,220	Use of Specialists (PA 02-2)	.01-.24
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.02
	Decision to Use a Specialist . . . . .	.03
	Use of a Specialist Engaged or Employed by the Audit Client . . .	.04-.13
	Use of Specialists Engaged or Employed by the Audit Firm . . .	.14-.17
	Introduction Examples of Specific Types of Specialists to Be Utilized . . . . .	.18-.24
	Information Technology ("IT") Specialists . . . . .	.18-.23
	Business Valuation Specialists . . . . .	.24
16,230	Reauditing Financial Statements (PA 02-3)	.01-.32
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.03
	Client/Engagement Acceptance Procedures and Considerations . . . . .	.04-.08
	Planning the Reaudit . . . . .	.09-.12
	Understanding the Client's Business . . . . .	.13
	Understanding of Internal Control, Assessment of Control Risk and Tests of Controls . . . . .	.14-.15
	Substantive Audit Procedures . . . . .	.16-.25
	Inventory . . . . .	.18
	Confirmations With Third Parties . . . . .	.19-.21
	Opening Balances and Consistency of Application of Accounting Principles . . . . .	.22-.24
	Uncorrected Financial Statement Misstatements . . . . .	.25
	Representation Letters . . . . .	.26-.27
	Reporting Implications . . . . .	.28-.29
	Other Audit Issues . . . . .	.30-.31
	Internal Inspection . . . . .	.32
16,240	Audit Confirmations (PA 03-1)	.01-.37
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.02
	General Confirmation Guidance . . . . .	.03-.28
	Improving Confirmation Response Rates . . . . .	.04-.06
	Negative vs. Positive Confirmation Requests . . . . .	.07-.09

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
16,240	Audit Confirmations (PA 03-1)—continued	
	Nonresponses to Positive Confirmations . . . . .	.10
	Responses to Positive Confirmation Requests Indicating Exceptions . . . . .	.11-.12
	Use of Electronic Confirmations . . . . .	.13-.17
	Confirmations Received Via Fax or Electronically . . . . .	.18
	Management Requests to Not Confirm . . . . .	.19-.22
	Alternative Procedures . . . . .	.23-.26
	Use of Client Personnel . . . . .	.27-.28
	Confirmation Guidance With Respect to Specific Areas . . . . .	.29-.41
	Confirmation of Accounts Receivable . . . . .	.30-.34
	Confirmation of Terms of Unusual or Complex Agreements or Transactions . . . . .	.35-.36
	Confirmation of Accounts Payable . . . . .	.37-.40
	Confirmations of Related Party Transactions . . . . .	.41
	Evolving Alternatives to Confirmation . . . . .	.42
16,250	Journal Entries and Other Adjustments (PA 03-2)	.01-.26
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.05
	Obtaining an Understanding of the Entity’s Financial Reporting Process and Its Controls Over Journal Entries and Other Adjustments . . . . .	.06-.08
	Assessing the Risk of Material Misstatement Resulting From Journal Entries and Other Adjustments . . . . .	.09-.11
	Inquiries of Individuals Involved in the Financial Reporting Process . . . . .	.12
	Assessment of Completeness of Journal Entry and Other Adjustments Sources . . . . .	.13
	Identification and Selection of Journal Entries and Other Adjustments for Testing . . . . .	.14-.24
	Other Adjustments . . . . .	.25
	Documentation . . . . .	.26
16,260	Acceptance and Continuance of Clients and Engagements (PA 03-3)	.01-.50
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.02
	Acceptance of Clients and Engagements . . . . .	.03-.06
	Continuance of Clients and Engagements . . . . .	.07-.10
	The Client Acceptance and Continuance Process . . . . .	.11
	Availability of Competent Personnel to Perform the Engagement . . . . .	.12
	Communication With Predecessor Accountants or Auditors . . . .	.13-.20
	Assessment of Management’s Commitment to the Appropriate Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles . . . . .	.21

## Section

## Paragraph

16,260	Acceptance and Continuance of Clients and Engagements (PA 03-3)—continued	
	Assessment of Management's Commitment to Implementing and Maintaining Effective Internal Control . . . . .	.22
	Assessment of the Entity's Financial Viability . . . . .	.23-.24
	Independence and Objectivity . . . . .	.25-.31
	Inquiry of Third Parties . . . . .	.32
	Background Investigations . . . . .	.33-.42
	Other Considerations . . . . .	.43-.48
	Restrictions on Scope of Services . . . . .	.44
	Entities Under Common Control . . . . .	.45-.46
	One-Time Engagements . . . . .	.47
	Business and Industry Environment . . . . .	.48
	Timing Considerations . . . . .	.49
	Documentation . . . . .	.50
16,270	Illegal Acts (PA 04-1)	.01-.37
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.04
	The Auditor's Responsibility for Detection of Illegal Acts Having a Direct and Material Effect on the Financial Statements . . . . .	.05-.06
	The Auditor's Responsibility for Detection of Illegal Acts Having an Indirect Effect on the Financial Statements . . . . .	.07
	Audit Procedures in the Absence of Specific Information Indicating the Existence of Possible Illegal Acts . . . . .	.08-.13
	Action on Discovery of Possible Illegal Acts . . . . .	.14-.28
	Obtain an Understanding Regarding the Illegal Act . . . . .	.17
	Determine Whether the Audit Committee Has Been Informed About the Illegal Act . . . . .	.18
	Client Investigation of the Possible Illegal Act . . . . .	.19-.26
	Material Illegal Acts . . . . .	.27
	Immaterial Illegal Acts . . . . .	.28
	Disclosure of Illegal Acts to Third Parties . . . . .	.29-.30
	Reporting Considerations . . . . .	.31-.36
	Scope Limitation . . . . .	.32
	Departure From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles . . . . .	.33
	Inability to Determine Materiality of an Illegal Act . . . . .	.34
	Client Refusal to Accept Report . . . . .	.35
	Audits Performed Under <i>Government     Auditing Standards</i> . . . . .	.36
	Documentation . . . . .	.37
16,280	Auditing Procedures With Respect to Variable Interest Entities (PA 05-1)	.01-.31
	Introduction . . . . .	.01
	Accounting Considerations . . . . .	.02-.04

<i>Section</i>		<i>Paragraph</i>
16,280	Auditing Procedures With Respect to Variable Interest Entities (PA 05-1)—continued	
	Step 1: Identify the Population of Variable Interests in VIEs . . . .	.05-.08
	Step 2: Consider the Involvement of Related Parties . . . . .	.09-.12
	Step 3: Identify Those VIEs in Which the Auditee Is the Primary Beneficiary . . . . .	.13-.15
	Step 4: For Those VIEs for Which the Auditee Is the Primary Beneficiary, Consider Whether the Auditee Properly Accounted for the VIE in the Consolidated Financial Statements. . . . .	.16-.17
	Step 5: For Those VIEs for Which the Auditee Is Not the Primary Beneficiary, Consider Whether the Auditee Properly Accounted for Its Interests in Accordance With GAAP . . . . .	.18-.19
	Step 6: Consider Whether Additional Evidential Matter Is Needed. . . . .	.20-.25
	Step 7: Consider Whether the Auditee Has Made the Appropriate Disclosures About the VIEs With Which It Is Involved, Both Those for Which It Is the Primary Beneficiary and Those for Which It Is Not the Primary Beneficiary . . . . .	.26-.28
	Step 8: Obtain Appropriate Representations From Management. . . . .	.29
	Step 9: Consider Whether the Results of the Auditor's Procedures With Respect to VIEs Require Any Special Reporting Considerations . . . . .	.30-.31
16,290	Dating of the Auditor's Report and Related Practical Guidance (PA 07-1)	.01-.19
	Introduction . . . . .	.01-.02
	Important Dates . . . . .	.03-.04
	The Audit Report Date . . . . .	.05-.08
	Evidence Supporting Financial Statement Amounts and Disclosures . . . . .	.09-.14
	Attorney Letters . . . . .	.09-.10
	Obtaining Waivers . . . . .	.11
	Consideration and Evaluation of Subsequent Events. . . .	.12-.14
	Financial Statement Preparation and Management's Assertions . . . . .	.15-.17
	Evidence That the Audit Documentation Has Been Reviewed . .	.18-.19

---

[The next page is 50,751.]

**Section 16,010*****Practice Alert 94-1  
Dealing With Audit Differences***

**First issued  
February, 1994;  
Updated December, 1999**

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing audit and accounting literature, the professional experience of the members of the AICPA SEC Practice Section Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by the AICPA SEC Practice Section members firms to their own professional staff. The information in this Practice Alert represents the views of the members or the PITF and is not an official position of the AICPA. Official positions are determined through certain specific committee procedures, due process and deliberation. The information provided herein should be used by practitioners with the understanding that it be read in conjunction with the professional literature and only as a means of assisting them in meeting their professional responsibilities.

**Introduction**

.01 Auditors often identify potential adjustments to client accounts as a consequence of audit work performed. Although auditors recognize the importance of identifying and accumulating audit differences, experiences, including those from litigation and peer reviews, suggest that audits can be more effective if auditors pay closer attention to this identification and accumulation process. Specifically, auditors should be mindful that:

- The materiality of audit differences needs to be considered in light of various factors in addition to earnings and stockholders' equity, such as the impact on debt covenants, and analysts' earnings estimates.
- An agreement with management to waive "hard" debit audit differences, including errors, because they have identified offsetting "soft" credit differences can result in problems. Experience has shown that soft differences may not materialize, particularly when they are discovered by management at the last minute after being informed of "hard" differences.
- Numerous audit differences trending in the same direction might suggest bias on the part of management to achieve an earnings forecast. In the worst case, it could be a possible prelude to fraud.
- Accumulated unrecorded audit differences that are not material in the period of origin may be material to financial statements of subsequent periods or when considered in light of changed conditions, including

changes in an entity's management or ownership. This is particularly a consideration where the purchase price is based on book value or a multiple of earnings.

- Audit committees and outsiders (attorneys, regulators, other auditors, etc.) who become aware of waived audit differences sometimes question why those differences were not recorded, especially if they are marginally below materiality thresholds, are errors and/or are clear deviations from generally accepted accounting principles. Audit committees may become upset that they were not previously informed of these differences.

## Evaluating Audit Differences

**.02** Auditing standards require the auditor to consider whether aggregated uncorrected misstatements, in relation to individual amounts, subtotals or totals in the financial statements, materially misstate the financial statements taken as a whole. Experience indicates that auditors also may need to give closer consideration to the effects on compliance with debt covenants, widely used ratios, financial statement disclosures and whether they may be indicative of an irregularity or illegal act. (See Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 47, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit*, as amended, paragraphs 34 through 40.) The internal control implications of identified audit differences should also be carefully considered.

**.03** Auditors should exercise great care when netting “hard” debit differences and “soft” credit differences because the soft differences may never materialize. For example, the auditor should be careful if a client proposes to reduce inventory obsolescence reserves in order to offset proposed physical inventory test count differences that decrease inventory. Last-minute entries oftentimes need an even higher degree of audit challenge, particularly if they seem to offset unfavorable proposed audit differences.

**.04** Also, even when individual accounting estimates included in the financial statements are within acceptable boundaries, the auditor should consider whether the trend of the differences between those estimates and the auditor's best estimates might suggest a possible bias on the part of management. In considering that possible bias, as well as aggregated unadjusted audit differences, the auditor is well advised to bear in mind that the financial statements still could be materially misstated due to differences that have not been detected.

**.05** Audit differences are ordinarily accumulated in order to assess their effects on significant components of the financial statements. The accumulated audit differences should include both known differences (e.g., mathematical mistakes, omissions, errors in classifying or recording balances or transactions) and likely differences (e.g., projected total misstatements from sampling applications, differences between an estimate recorded by the client and the auditor's assessment of the closest reasonable amount).

**.06** When assessing the materiality of audit differences for a public company, an auditor should consider Staff Accounting Bulletin 99 (“SAB 99”). SAB 99 addresses the concepts of materiality in financial statements. The SAB expresses the views of the SEC staff that “exclusive reliance on certain quantitative benchmarks to assess materiality in preparing financial statements

and performing audits of those financial statements is inappropriate.” The SAB reminds auditors of the need to consider both “quantitative” and “qualitative” factors in assessing an item’s materiality. In SAB 99, the SEC also expresses the view “A matter is material if there is a substantial likelihood that a reasonable person would consider it important.” The SAB provides guidance on the qualitative assessment of materiality in the preparation and audit of financial statements, and reminds registrants of their obligation to maintain accounting records and internal accounting controls as required by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

## Communicating Audit Differences

**.07** Encouraging management to record audit differences, even if they are not material to the current year financial statements, sends a clear message about management’s responsibility for the accounting records and financial statements. There is usually a much greater likelihood management will record appropriate adjustments when those adjustments are brought to their attention early in the audit process. Recording such differences assures that future financial statements will not be affected by an accumulation of unadjusted differences. An accumulation of immaterial unadjusted differences may take on increased significance if an entity or a business segment is sold, a new management team is appointed or if those differences become subject to scrutiny by third parties such as attorneys, regulators or other auditors. In the event that audit differences are not recorded and are assessed as immaterial, the auditor should work towards an agreed plan for management to record such items in the succeeding year.

**.08** Finally, auditors are reminded of their obligation to inform the audit committee, or other formally designated oversight body, of recorded and unrecorded adjustments arising from the audit that could, in their judgment, have a significant effect on the entity’s financial reporting process. (See SAS No. 61, *Communication With Audit Committees*, as amended, paragraph 9.)

**.09** In early 2000, the Auditing Standards Board will issue SAS No. 89, *Audit Adjustments*, which increases the auditor’s responsibilities for communicating passed audit differences to audit committees. Specifically, the auditor will be required to inform the audit committee about uncorrected misstatements aggregated by the auditor during the current engagement and pertaining to the latest period presented that were determined by management to be immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements taken as a whole. The auditor also will be required to obtain a written representation from management acknowledging that it has considered these financial statement misstatements and concluded that any uncorrected misstatements are immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements taken as a whole. The SAS will be effective for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after December 15, 1999.

---

[The next page is 50,761.]



**Section 16,020****Practice Alert 94-2****Auditing Inventories—Physical Observations**

First issued  
July, 1994;  
Updated July, 1999

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits. This document has been prepared by the SEC Practice Section Professional Issues Task Force and is based on the experiences of the individual members of the task force and matters arising from litigation and peer reviews. It has not been approved, disapproved or otherwise acted upon by any committee of the AICPA.

**Introduction**

**.01** The inventories of most commercial entities, especially those of manufacturers or distributors, are material to their financial statements. By its nature, accounting for inventories is complex and generally involves a great deal of detail and is therefore susceptible to inadvertent errors. For similar reasons and the fact that auditors test only a portion of the inventories, there exists more than a low risk of manipulation when management is disposed toward financial statement fraud.

**.02** This Alert discusses some ways in which inventory frauds have been perpetrated and presents information that might help prevent such frauds from going undetected. This Alert deals primarily with issues related to the physical existence of inventories. This Alert does not cover matters pertaining to inventory obsolescence, pricing or costing.

**Inventory Fraud Schemes/Techniques**

**.03** Unfortunately, in many cases of inventory fraud, client personnel at various levels knowingly participated and assisted in the scheme. The following are examples of inventory frauds:

- Including inventory that is not what it is claimed to be or valuing nonexistent inventory. Examples are:
  - Empty boxes or “hollow squares” in stacked goods.
  - Mislabeled boxes containing scrap, obsolete items or lower value materials.
  - Consigned inventory, inventory that is rented, or traded-in items for which credits have not been issued.
  - Diluted inventory so it is less valuable (e.g., adding water to liquid substances).

- Increasing or otherwise altering the inventory counts for those items the auditor did not test count.
- Programming the computer to produce fraudulent physical quantity tabulations or priced inventory listings.
- Manipulating the inventory counts/compilations for locations not visited by the auditor.
- Double-counting inventory in transit between locations.
- Physically moving inventory and counting it at two locations.
- Including in inventory merchandise recorded as sold but not yet shipped to a customer (“bill and hold sales”).
- Arranging for false confirmations of inventory held by others.
- Including inventory receipts for which corresponding payables had not been recorded.
- Overstating the stage of completion of work-in-process.
- Reconciling physical inventory amounts to falsified amounts in the general ledger.
- Manipulating the “roll-forward” of an inventory taken before the financial statement date.

## Planning Considerations

**.04** Even though there are numerous ways inventory frauds can be orchestrated, a well planned audit—appropriately executed with professional skepticism—can thwart many inventory falsification schemes. The audit procedures to be applied stem from and are responsive to the auditor’s assessment of risk (i.e., What could go wrong?). The use of analytical procedures (e.g., review of preliminary high-to-low inventory-value listings or comparison of year-to-year quantities) in planning the audit often helps identify inventory locations, areas or items for specific attention or greater scrutiny during and after the physical count.

**.05** To plan an appropriate and effective inventory observation, it is important for the engagement team leaders to have an understanding of the client’s business, its products, its computer processing applications and relevant controls before the physical count occurs, including knowledge of the physical inventory or cycle count procedures and the inventory summarization, pricing and cutoff procedures.

**.06** When a client plans to count inventories at various dates or at a date other than that of the financial statements, the early consideration of its business, internal controls and their effectiveness, and cutoff procedures are especially important. Heightened risks or the lack of adequate internal controls may suggest that the inventory should be taken and observed at year end.

**.07** An appropriate understanding of the client’s business systems, relevant computer processing applications and inventory procedures helps determine the experience needed by the personnel assigned to observe the physical count and their individual responsibilities. Assigning junior personnel to observe the count at a complex manufacturing operation may or may not be prudent, depending on the extent of on-site supervision provided. Similarly, work-in-process inventory presents completion/valuation issues that may call for a more experienced auditor.

**.08** When the observation requires the use of personnel from another office or another CPA firm, adequate planning also enables the auditor to provide clear, comprehensive instructions about the scope of the engagement, the important risk factors, the relevant controls, cutoff procedures, and the expected level of reliance to be placed on internal controls.

## The Actual Physical Count

**.09**

- The risk of inclusion of duplicate or fictitious items is higher in areas and for items not test counted by the auditor. Testing some counts made by all count teams at locations visited and ensuring that hard-to-count items are test counted helps minimize the risk of misstatement.
- Applying analytical procedures to the final priced-out inventory detail can help identify inventory items that might require additional audit scrutiny.
- Although client personnel are often helpful to the auditor making test counts, making test counts of which client personnel are unaware provides added assurance. The auditor can also record the details of some quantities that the auditor did not actually count for comparison with the final inventory listing. Also, the auditor needs to maintain appropriate control over the audit work papers so the client is not aware of the details of the test counts.
- Because the description on a container may not always match the goods inside, it is a good idea to open some containers or packages. Checking for empty containers or “hollow squares” (i.e., spaces between stacks of boxes) and verifying the units of measure on tags or count sheets are meaningful procedures. When observing work-in-process inventory, the auditor also needs to consider the reasonableness of the recorded stage of completion.
- When incorrect counts are observed, the auditor considers the nature and significance of the errors and whether to increase the extent of test counts or expand other procedures. Recounts of particular areas or the work of particular count teams may be necessary.
- Scanning inventory tags or count sheets for unusual or unreasonable quantities and descriptions is a useful technique to verify their propriety. Subsequent to the physical count, it may be desirable to test large or unusual inventory quantities or items with large extended values that were not test counted during the observation.
- The need to monitor the client’s control over the physical count tags or sheets used should not be downplayed or overlooked. Paying close attention to tag/count sheet control procedures helps avoid the inclusion of improper items and ensures appropriate items are included in the final inventory listing.

## Multiple Locations

**.10** Knowledge of all inventory locations is necessary to prevent the exclusion of any area(s) from audit consideration. Following are a few matters for auditors to consider related to multiple inventory locations.

.11 To help discourage the shifting of inventory from one location to another, the merits of taking the physical inventory at all significant locations at the same time should be considered. When the physical count at each significant location will not be observed, informing management that observations will be performed at some locations without advance notice might help discourage the manipulation of the quantity or quality of the inventory. For locations not visited, the auditor may perform alternative procedures to detect material misstatements. Comprehensive analytical procedures subsequently applied to priced-out inventory summarizations may be one such technique (e.g., the analysis of year-to-year inventories by location, the relationship of inventory to sales levels, etc.). However, the auditor needs to remember that analytical procedures may not always detect erroneous changes in inventory.

## Inventories Held for or by Others

.12 Ascertaining whether all inventory items on hand are the property of the client can be difficult in some situations. A client's procedures for identifying, segregating and excluding from inventory goods held on consignment should be considered. Requesting information from selected suppliers about such goods helps in this regard. Once consignment goods have been identified, noting the descriptions, quantities, serial numbers and shipping advice numbers for some items will help the auditor determine whether those items were properly excluded from the client's inventory.

.13 When a client consigns inventory to others or stores merchandise at a third-party location, written confirmation of the goods held is ordinarily obtained directly from the custodian. If such goods are significant in amount, one or more of the procedures discussed in SAS No. 1, section 331, *Inventories*, as amended, paragraph 14, which include visits to such locations and observation of physical counts, may be appropriate.

## Use of Specialists

.14 An auditor is not expected to possess the expertise of a specialist trained or qualified in another profession or occupation. Consequently, use of a specialist in certain situations to determine quantities (e.g., stockpiled materials, mineral reserves) or to value special-purpose inventory (e.g., high-technology materials or equipment, chemicals, works of art, precious gems) or to measure the stage of completion of long-term contracts may be appropriate. If the specialist used is affiliated or otherwise has a relationship with the client, the auditor will want to consider the need to perform procedures or otherwise test some or all of the specialist's assumptions, methods and findings. This will provide information about the reasonableness of the findings. Alternatively, the auditor could engage another specialist for this purpose.

## Post-Observation Matters

.15 The extent of audit procedures required normally increases when the inventory observation is performed at a date other than the balance sheet date. The extent and nature of the increase depends on the nature of the client's business, the type of inventory, inventory turnover period, the records maintained, the strength of the related internal controls, and the time interval between the observation and the date of the balance sheet. Interim physical

inventories or the client's use of cycle count programs present different audit risks warranting careful assessment of controls, and by extension, different audit tests. This assessment of audit risks and key controls and the focused testing thereof, along with appropriate analytical procedures, are important audit procedures to consider in these circumstances. The guidance in SAS No. 45, *Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1983*, "Substantive Tests Prior to the Balance Sheet Date," is relevant in these circumstances.

**.16** Testing significant items in the reconciliation of the physical inventory to the general ledger helps identify inadvertent errors along with intentional misstatements. Significant reconciling items for those locations where the physical counts were not observed by the auditor generally merit scrutiny. Goods in-transit and inventory transfers between affiliates, locations or departments are tested to ascertain their existence and to determine the propriety of their inclusion or exclusion.

## Conclusion

**.17** Unfortunately, there are no foolproof methods for assuring that all inventory counts are free from inadvertent or intentional misstatement. No audit will necessarily detect all fraudulent activity, especially when collusion to mislead the auditors occurs among client personnel or with third parties. However, understanding the client's business, its count procedures and controls and a resulting careful assessment of where and how quantity error might occur helps reduce the risk of inadvertent or intentional misstatement. Appropriate planning for the physical inventory observation together with healthy audit skepticism can effectively reduce the incidence of inventory misstatements.

**.18** This Practice Alert is not a complete list of all audit procedures, nor is every procedure discussed herein applicable in all circumstances. Additional information on this important subject is provided in the AICPA's Auditing Procedures Study, *Audits of Inventories* (Product No. 021045MJ). The AICPA Order Department may be reached at (888) 777-7077.

---

[The next page is 50,811.]



**Section 16,060****Practice Alert 96-1**  
**The Private Securities Litigation Reform**  
**Act of 1995**

First issued  
May, 1996;  
Updated July, 1999

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits. This document has been prepared by the SEC Practice Section Professional Issues Task Force. It has not been approved, disapproved or otherwise acted upon by any committee of the AICPA.

**Introduction**

.01 As 1995 drew to a close, the Private Securities Reform Act of 1995 (the Act) became law. This Act provides welcome liability reform for both Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) registrants and those who provide services to SEC registrants. The Act not only changes the way that plaintiffs may bring lawsuits, but also imposes certain obligations and requirements on SEC registrants and their auditors. This Practice Alert discusses two sections of the Act (Fraud Detection and Disclosure and the Safe Harbor for Forward-Looking Statements) and how they affect auditors in performing audits and other services.

**Fraud Detection and Disclosure**

.02 The Fraud Detection and Disclosure section of the Act reaffirms the independent accountant's responsibility regarding illegal acts as described in both Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 53, *The Auditor's Responsibility to Detect and Report Errors and Irregularities*, and SAS No. 54, *Illegal Acts by Clients*. The Act requires that audits of financial statements conducted pursuant to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 include generally accepted auditing standards procedures designed to provide reasonable assurance of detecting illegal acts that would have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts.

.03 An illegal act is defined as an "act or omission that violates any law, or any rule or regulation having the force of law." Under the Act, as under current practice, if the auditor "detects or otherwise becomes aware of information indicating that an illegal act (whether or not perceived to have a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer) has or may have occurred," the

auditor then (1) determines whether it is likely that an illegal act has occurred; (2) evaluates the possible effects of the illegal act on the issuer's financial statements; and (3) promptly informs the appropriate level of management and assures that the audit committee or board of directors is adequately informed with respect to the illegal act, unless it is clearly inconsequential.

## Private Securities Reform Act of 1995

**.04** The Act contains new reporting requirements that will come into play if the auditor:

- Determines that the audit committee or the board of directors is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that “have been detected” or have otherwise come to the auditor's attention during the course of the audit, and
- Concludes that the illegal act has a material effect on the financial statements;
- Senior management has not taken, and the board has not caused it to take, “timely and appropriate remedial actions”;<sup>1</sup> and
- The failure to take remedial action “is reasonably expected to warrant departure from a standard report of the auditor, when made, or warrant resignation from the audit engagement.”

In that instance the auditor “shall, as soon as practicable,” report its conclusions directly to the board.

**.05** Under the new reporting requirements added by the Act, an issuer that receives the report described above must notify the SEC within one business day after receiving the report and must send a copy of that notice to the auditor. If the auditor does not receive the notice within the one day period, it must, whether or not it resigns, furnish a copy of its report (or documentation of an oral report) to the SEC within one business day after the failure of the issuer to give its required notice. Auditors are protected from liability in a private action “for any finding, conclusion, or statement” expressed in a report required of them under this provision. The SEC staff has stated that until the SEC adopts reporting requirements to implement this rule, any auditor faced with filing such a notice should contact the SEC staff at (202) 942-4400.

**.06** The Fraud Detection and Disclosure section of the Act also reemphasizes the requirements that audits include:

- Procedures designed to identify related party transactions that are material to the financial statements or otherwise require disclosure therein. Note that appropriate procedures for identifying related parties and the related disclosure requirements are contained in SAS No. 45, *Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—1983*, “Related Parties,” and Financial Accounting Standard No. 57, *Related Party Disclosures*. In addition, related party issues are discussed in Practice Alert 95-3, *Auditing Related Parties and Related Party Transactions* [section 16,050]; and

---

<sup>1</sup> “Remedial action” for this purpose may include: (1) taking appropriate disciplinary actions; (2) establishing policies, internal controls, and related monitoring procedures designed to safeguard against the recurrence of such illegal acts; and (3) as appropriate, reporting the effects of the illegal acts in the financial statements. SAS No. 54, paragraphs 17 and 18.

- An evaluation of whether there is substantial doubt about the ability of the issuer to continue as a going concern during the ensuing fiscal year. This provision of the Act is covered by SAS No. 59, *The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern* (as amended by SAS No. 77, *Amendments to Statements on Auditing Standards No. 22, Planning and Supervision, No. 59, The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern, and No. 62, Special Reports*).

## Safe Harbor for Forward-Looking Statements

.07 The Act amends the Securities Act of 1933 and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 by creating a new “safe harbor” for forward-looking statements made by an issuer, persons acting on behalf of the issuer, and any outside reviewer retained by the issuer to make a statement on the issuer's behalf. Under the Act, the term “forward-looking information” means:

- a. A statement containing a projection of revenues, income, earnings per share, capital expenditures, dividends, capital structure, or other financial items;
- b. A statement of management's plans and objectives for future operations, including plans or objectives relating to the issuer's products or services;
- c. A statement of future economic performance, including any statement contained in management's discussion and analysis of financial condition or the results of operations included pursuant to SEC rules and regulations;
- d. Any statement of the assumptions underlying or relating to any statement described in a., b., or c.;
- e. Any report issued by an outside reviewer retained by the issuer, to the extent that the report assesses a forward-looking statement made by the issuer; or
- f. A statement containing a projection or estimate of such other items as may be specified by SEC rules or regulations.

.08 However, the Act provides for certain exclusions to the safe harbor protection, most notably for forward-looking statements made in connection with an initial public offering or a tender offer, and forward-looking statements included in financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (historical financial statements). Additional exclusions are detailed in the Act.

.09 The safe harbor protection covers both written and oral forward-looking statements made by the registrant or those acting on the registrant's behalf. In addition, there is no requirement under the Act to update the forward-looking statements. To be protected by the Act, a written or oral forward-looking statement must:

1. Be identified as a forward-looking statement; and
2. Be accompanied by meaningful (not boilerplate) cautionary language identifying important factors that might cause the actual results to differ materially from those in the forward-looking statement.

If these conditions are not met, liability may be attached only if the plaintiff can prove that the forward-looking statement was made with actual knowledge that the statement was false or misleading.

**.10** Oral forward-looking statements and cautionary language can satisfy the requirement of identifying important factors by making reference to a readily available written document, including a filing with the SEC.

**.11** Companies may request that auditors advise them in the development and presentation of forward-looking statements, possibly extending to attesting to their assertions regarding such information. Other companies may only seek informal input in the process. Attempting to provide guidance for all situations is difficult, but the following should be helpful in relation to the level of service requested.

- *No substantive attention requested by the registrant*

When no substantive work has been requested, the auditor's responsibility for forward-looking statements included in documents containing audited financial statements is discussed in SAS No. 8, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*, and SAS No. 37, *Filings under Federal Securities Statutes*. Basically, SAS No. 8 and SAS No. 37 require auditors to read other information, including any forward-looking statements, cautionary language, and important factors, and to consider whether such information, or the manner of its presentation, is materially inconsistent with the financial statement information or the manner of its presentation. This responsibility, of course, does not include opining on whether or not the disclosure meets the requirements of the safe harbor or any reasonableness or other review of the forecasted information. To assist client executives and directors in understanding this responsibility, auditors should discuss with them the auditor's responsibility for such information under generally accepted auditing standards as part of the required communications under SAS No. 61, *Communication with Audit Committees*, as amended, paragraph 10. The auditor may wish to add language to the engagement letter or other communications to clarify this understanding.

- *Substantive attention requested by the client, not leading to a report on such information*

The company may engage the auditor to consult on the forward-looking statement, cautionary language, and important factors. Because of the subjective nature of this consultation, the extent of the auditor's involvement should be clarified with the company. In addition, documenting the discussions held and having an engagement letter are strongly encouraged. In any event, the auditor should be aware of the SEC's position that accountants who assist in the preparation of a forecast may not be independent from an SEC perspective and may not report on the forecast.

- *Substantive attention requested by the client, leading to a report on such information*

The company may request the auditor to examine or perform agreed-upon procedures on the forward-looking statement, cautionary language, and important factors under Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements, *Financial Forecasts and Projections*, and the 1993 AICPA *Guide for Prospective Financial Information*. The

auditors report on an *examination* of forward-looking statements can be issued to the public. The auditor should emphasize to the company, however, that any agreed-upon procedures report would be limited to client officials and the board of directors and that the company and others cannot refer to the report in public statements. If underwriters require comfort with respect to forward-looking information, the auditor should refer to SAS No. 72, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*, for guidance.

.12 Legal counsel has advised that auditor's reports with respect to forward-looking information are eligible for the statutory safe harbor. As long as the auditor is acting within the scope of the engagement (what the statute terms acting "on behalf of the issuer"), safe harbor protection is available for "any report issued by an outside reviewer retained by an issuer, to the extent that the report assesses a forward-looking statement made by the issuer." Thus, coverage would be available for an auditor's report on wholly prospective information (for example, a report on an issuer's projected financial results for the upcoming year) or for a report on information that is both prospective and historical, such as the MD&A (in which case the report would be protected only as it relates to the issuer's forward-looking statements). Because historical financial statements are exempt from the safe harbor, reports on those financial statements receive no safe harbor protection. (The statute does empower the SEC to issue rules extending safe harbor protection to financial statement information, but it is not clear whether the Commission will exercise this authority.) The auditor should consult with legal counsel in determining whether and to what extent a particular report meets the statutory requirements for safe harbor coverage.

.13 The SEC's previous efforts at encouraging the disclosure of forward-looking statements with safe harbor protection were not successful because of the uncertainty and perceived ineffectiveness of the previous safe harbor. The new safe harbor for forward-looking statements is intended to provide real protection to registrants and auditors that provide services in connection with such statements. As with the existing safe harbor (which remains in place), the ultimate effectiveness and extent of protection will be tested through practice and proven over time in the courts.

## Effective Date of Provisions

.14 Most of the provisions of the Act, including the Safe Harbor for Forward-Looking Statements, became effective on Friday, December 22, 1995. However, the Fraud Detection and Disclosure provisions of the Act apply to annual reports for any period beginning on or after January 1, 1996, with respect to any registrant that is required to file selected quarterly financial data pursuant to SEC rules or regulations, and for any period beginning on or after January 1, 1997, with respect to any other registrant.

.15 This Practice Alert is not intended to represent a legal interpretation or description of the Act; auditors should seek advice from legal counsel for such information.

---

[The next page is 50,821.]



**Section 16,070****Practice Alert 97-1**  
**Members in Public Accounting Firms**

First issued  
January/February 1997;  
Updated August, 1999

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits. This document has been prepared by the SEC Practice Section Professional Issues Task Force and is based on the experiences of the individual members of the task force and matters arising from litigation and peer reviews. It has not been approved, disapproved or otherwise acted upon by any committee of the AICPA.

**Financial Statements on the Internet**

**.01** Generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) provides guidance to independent auditors when clients publish documents that contain information (hereinafter “other information”) in addition to audited financial statements and the independent auditor’s report thereon. (See SAS No. 8, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements*.) Examples of such documents include annual reports to shareholders, annual reports of not-for-profit organizations, and annual reports filed with regulatory authorities under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.<sup>1</sup>

**.02** Recent technology has changed the traditional means of disseminating information. Today, some entities are including their annual audited financial statements and related auditor’s report on the Internet. The Internet is an interactive medium, where entities portray information in components referred to as “pages,” which can be connected to other pages appearing elsewhere on the “Web site” through “hyperlinks.” Thus, the commingling of data from various sources is controlled by the “reader” or “browser,” rather than the traditional binding of tangible documents.

**.03** The users of the new technology are different from the client personnel with whom the auditor most often interacts. Today, the technological frontier (the Internet) is largely a marketing arena, but those users are not limited to the familiar marketing tools. For example, an entity might decide to include (by embedding a hyperlink) marketing information in the revenue recognition section of their summary of significant accounting policies. Also, this marketing information might be updated weekly.

---

<sup>1</sup> SAS No. 8 is not applicable when financial statements and report appear in a registration statement filed under the Securities Act of 1933. See SAS No. 72, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties*, as amended, and SAS No. 37, *Filings Under Federal Securities Statutes*.

.04 Auditors have recently asked questions regarding the dissemination of audit reports and the accompanying financial statements on the Internet, some of which are:

- Does an independent auditor have an obligation with respect to the ever-changing other information in an electronic site that contains audited financial statements and the related auditor's report?

The Auditing Standards Board recently approved for issuance an interpretation to SAS No. 8 entitled "Other Information in Electronic Sites That Contain Audited Financial Statements," to address this question. The Interpretation advises that auditors do not have an obligation pursuant to SAS No. 8 to read or consider information included in an electronic site.

- How may a client ensure the security of information integrity when published on the Internet? Tales appear daily in the news media concerning hackers breaking into previously thought secure databases, and altering or deleting information.

The auditor may wish to discuss these concerns with the client, so that the client may review the safeguards utilized to protect the data.

- Can a client who distributes its audited financial statements and auditor's report on the Internet set it up so that a user knows when they are hyper-linking to matters outside of that document?

Yes, and at least one large organization has done so by creating distinct boundaries around its "annual report." Specifically, when users either enter or leave pages of the annual report, they are warned with a message. (Alternatively, entities might wish to clearly mark each page of the annual report information as being a part of the annual report.)

Because of the way traditional documents are typically broken into much smaller "pages" for publishing on the Internet, it can be difficult for a user to locate a complete "document." Entities may wish to provide a facility on their site that would allow easy access to all parts of a document or the ability to download or print an entire document.

Auditors may wish to discuss these matters with the client during the performance of the audit.

---

[The next page is 50,831.]

**Section 16,080*****Practice Alert 97-2  
Audits of Employee Benefit Plans***

**First issued  
May, 1997;  
Updated April, 1999**

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits. This document has been prepared by the SEC Practice Section Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and is based on the experiences of the individual members of the task force and matters arising from litigation and peer reviews. It has not been approved, disapproved, or otherwise acted upon by any committee of the AICPA.

**Introduction**

**.01** The AICPA Peer Review Program, the AICPA Professional Ethics Division, as well as the U.S. Department of Labor (DOL), continue to note a high rate of deficiencies on audits of employee benefit plans. These deficiencies primarily resulted from the auditor's failure to comply with professional auditing standards and DOL reporting requirements. Practitioners, whose work is considered deficient by the DOL's Pension and Welfare Benefit Administration (PWBA), are referred to state licensing boards and/or to the AICPA Professional Ethics Division, and could face severe consequences, including loss of license and loss of membership in the AICPA, if found to have performed deficient employee benefit plan audits. Plan administrators could face monetary civil penalties under ERISA section 502(c)(2) if found to have filed deficient audit reports.

**.02** Employee benefit plans must meet a number of specialized financial, operational and regulatory requirements, and auditors have certain responsibilities for testing compliance with certain of those requirements. This Practice Alert is intended to assist auditors of employee benefit plans by providing an overview of the governmental oversight of employee benefit plans, the relevant financial accounting and reporting standards and the common deficiencies noted on such audits. This Practice Alert also includes best practices adopted by firms performing audits of employee benefit plans and an overview of current legislative developments which, if enacted, would significantly change the way employee benefit plan audits are conducted.

**Governmental Oversight of Employee Benefit Plans**

**.03** The Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (ERISA) was enacted to protect the interests of workers who participate in employee benefit plans and their beneficiaries. To achieve this objective, ERISA requires financial

reporting to government agencies and disclosure to participants and beneficiaries, establishes standards of conduct for plan fiduciaries, and provides for appropriate remedies, sanctions, and access to the federal courts. ERISA also provides for substantial federal government oversight in the operating and reporting practices of employee benefit plans. The ERISA reporting requirements and the plans subject to those requirements are described in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*, with conforming changes as of May 1, 1999 (the AICPA Guide). This Practice Alert addresses employee benefit plans that are subject to ERISA.

## Financial Accounting and Reporting Standards

**.04** FASB Statement No. 35, *Accounting and Reporting by Defined Benefit Pension Plans*, established standards of financial accounting and reporting for financial statements of defined benefit pension plans, but did not establish standards for defined contribution plans or health and welfare benefit plans. The AICPA Guide provides comprehensive guidance, including the guidance prescribed by FASB Statement No. 35, on accounting, auditing, and reporting matters for defined benefit, defined contribution and health and welfare benefit plans.

**.05** Employee benefit plans that are subject to ERISA are required to report certain information annually to federal government agencies—that is, the U.S. Department of Labor (DOL), Internal Revenue Service (IRS), and Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation (PBGC) and to provide summarized information to plan participants. For many plans, the information is reported to the IRS on Form 5500, *Annual Return/Report of Employee Benefit Plan*, which includes financial statements and certain supplemental schedules (for example, plan investments and reportable transactions). Comments or questions on this Alert should be directed to the AICPA's SEC Practice Section at (201) 938-3022.

## Common Deficiencies

**.06** The PWBA has established an ongoing quality review program to enhance the quality of audit work performed by independent auditors in audits of plan financial statements that are required by ERISA. The AICPA, working with the PWBA, has made a concerted effort to improve the guidance available to auditors of employee benefit plans, and has incorporated such improvements in the AICPA Guide. The DOL strongly encourages the use of the AICPA Guide in meeting the requirements contained in ERISA. A complement to the AICPA Guide, the AICPA *Employee Benefit Plans Audit Risk Alert—1999*, (the AICPA Audit Risk Alert) provides an overview of recent economic, industry, regulatory, and professional developments. Both the AICPA Guide (Product No. 0123368QB) and the AICPA Audit Risk Alert (Product No. 022201QB) can be ordered from the AICPA Order Department at (888) 777-7077 by phone, or at (800) 362-5066 by fax.

**.07** The PWBA, in their review of employee benefit plan audits, has noted the following common deficiencies:

- a. *Inadequate audit program or planning documentation.* Such deficiencies included lack of a specific audit program tailored to the audit

of employee benefit plans, failure to obtain/ review relevant plan documents, failure to understand the operations of the plan or current developments affecting the plan, and failure to address the area of prohibited transactions in the audit program. (Chapter 5 of the AICPA Guide provides guidance on audit planning, including the limited-scope audit exemption.)

- b. Inadequate documentation of the auditor's understanding of the plan's internal control. Such deficiencies included either no work or significantly inadequate work with respect to obtaining a sufficient understanding of the plan's internal control. (Chapter 6 of the AICPA Guide provides guidance on internal control.)
- c. Inadequate documentation supporting the audit work performed and insufficient procedures performed. Such deficiencies included failure to perform sufficient audit work related to participant data, benefit payments and/or plan obligations. (Chapters 9 and 10 of the AICPA Guide provide guidance in these areas.) Also, in certain instances, the auditor did not test the fair market valuations, investment transactions or authorizations for investment transactions. (Chapter 7 of the AICPA Guide provides guidance on investments.) In limited-scope engagements, the auditor did not obtain the proper certification from the bank or insurance company or the certification did not cover all of the plan assets. (Paragraphs 7.51 and 7.52 of the AICPA Guide provide guidance on limited-scope auditing procedures.) In audits of multi-employer plans, the auditor performed inadequate work relating to the contributions received from contributing employers. In certain participant-directed plans, the auditor did not agree the allocation of employee contributions to selected investment options. (Chapter 8 of the AICPA Guide provides guidance on contributions received and related receivables.)
- d. Deficiencies in the auditor's report. Such deficiencies included failure to reflect a departure from generally accepted accounting principles, and failure to report on all the years presented. (Chapter 13 of the AICPA Guide provides guidance on, and examples of, auditor's reports.)
- e. Deficiencies in the note disclosures. Such deficiencies included failure to disclose: the investments that represent 5 percent or more of the plan's net assets available for benefits (see paragraphs 2.26g, 3.28g and 4.57 of the AICPA Guide); information as to whether or not the plan has received a favorable tax determination ruling from the IRS (see paragraphs 2.26f, 3.28f and 4.57 of the AICPA Guide); the priorities of distribution of plan assets upon termination of the plan (see paragraphs 2.26c, 3.28c and 4.57 of the AICPA Guide); the funding policy of the plan (see paragraphs 2.26d, 3.28d and 4.57 of the AICPA Guide); information regarding the method and significant assumptions used to determine the actuarial present value of the plan's accumulated plan benefits as required by FASB Statement No. 35 (see paragraphs 2.20–2.24 of the AICPA Guide).
- f. Failure to comply with ERISA's or DOL's reporting and disclosure requirements. The most common reporting and disclosure deficiencies were as follows: the auditor's report failed to extend to one or more of the required supplemental schedules (see paragraphs 13.09–13.18

of the AICPA Guide); the required supplemental schedules failed to include all the necessary information pursuant to ERISA and DOL regulations (see appendix paragraphs A.51(b) and A.70–A.76 and Exhibit A-1 of the AICPA Guide); the plan administrator inappropriately invoked the limited-scope audit exemption when the financial institution holding the plan's assets did not qualify for such exemption because it was not a bank or similar institution or an insurance company (see appendix paragraphs A.57–A.58 of the AICPA Guide); the statement of net assets was not presented in comparative form as required by DOL regulations (see appendix paragraph A.51(a) of the AICPA Guide); the notes to the plan's financial statements failed to include certain information required by DOL regulations (for example, a note reconciling financial statement amounts to amounts reported in Form 5500 Series Annual Report) (see appendix paragraph A.51(c) of the AICPA Guide); the audit was of the trust rather than of the plan (see appendix paragraph A.55 of the AICPA Guide).

## Best Practices

**.08** To assist practitioners and CPA firms improve audit quality related to audits of employee benefit plans, and to reduce related enforcement and litigation risks, best practices used by firms in performing audits of employee benefit plans are noted below. These best practices were adapted from an article titled, "A Warning to CPAs on Employee Benefit Audits," by David M. Walker, CPA, in the June 1996 edition of the *Journal of Accountancy* (reprints may be obtained from the AICPA library at (888) 777-7077; available for AICPA members only). The best practices are as follows:

- Assign professionals trained in auditing employee benefit plans—preferably at the manager and/or senior level—to employee benefit plan audits, especially for higher-risk engagements. Factors that could be indicative of a high risk employee benefit plan audit include, among other things: plan sponsor financial difficulties; significant underfunding; volatile or non-readily marketable investments (for example, real estate and derivatives); plan amendments; changes in actuarial estimates or methods; plan merger, consolidation or termination; settlement of obligations or curtailment of accrual of benefits; initial audits; existence of prohibited transactions or unusual party-in-interest transactions; weak control environment (little or no direct plan sponsor involvement with plan administration); change in trustee, custodian or record keeper; report in accordance with Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 70, *Service Organizations*, not available from trustee, custodian or third-party administrator; recent IRS or DOL investigation; and accounting changes.
- Perform second (concurring) partner reviews on higher-risk engagements (see above for factors that could be indicative of a high risk employee benefit plan audit). (Concurring partner reviews are required for members firms of the AICPA SEC Practice Section who audit plans that file Form 11-K.)
- Coordinate responsibility for employee benefit plan audits between audit and tax staff, so that qualified tax staff review the plan's tax status, transactions with parties-in-interest, and Form 5500.
- Ensure that engagement personnel have access to current guidance (see "Common Deficiencies" section above for a discussion of the

AICPA Guide and the AICPA Audit Risk Alert). Ensure that engagement personnel have adequate training in employee benefit plan audits and any other related matters. (The AICPA sponsors an annual national conference on employee benefit plans, which provides hands-on interactive workshops in auditing, taxation, Form 5500 preparation, plan administration, and multi-employer plans; question and answer sessions with industry experts and government officials directly responsible for regulating employee benefit plans; and updates on all the recent and proposed employee benefit plan legislative and regulatory matters. The AICPA also offers the following self-study courses: Employee Benefit Plans I: Accounting Principles, Audits of Employee Benefit Plans, and Audits of 401(k) Plans. To obtain further information about the conference and the self-study courses, call (888) 777-7077.

- Use standardized engagement tools and documentation approaches. The AICPA has published checklists for defined benefit, defined contribution and health and welfare plans. The checklists include both industry specific and general disclosure requirements, and can be ordered from the AICPA Order Department at (888) 777-7077.
- Use the AICPA's publication, *Financial Statement Reporting and Disclosure Practice for Employee Benefit Plans* (Product No. 008725), which gives examples on required disclosure for employee benefit plan financial statements.
- Ensure that the CPA firm's internal inspection or monitoring program addresses employee benefit plan audit engagements and that engagement reviews are performed by qualified personnel.
- Use technical hotlines and support services provided by the AICPA and various state societies. The AICPA's Technical Information Division offers a hotline for accounting and auditing practice questions, and can be reached, free of charge to AICPA members, at (877) 242-7212. The AICPA's Tax Information Phone Service ("TIPS") offers a hotline for federal, state and local tax questions, and can be reached at (888) 777-7077, option 3, or members can submit questions through the AICPA Web site (see <http://www.aicpa.org/feedback/index.htm>). TIPS charges a fee of \$3 per minute (with a \$30 minimum) from January 15 to April 15 and \$2 per minute (with no minimum) the rest of the year, whether the query is by phone or through the Web site. The fee is billed to the member's MasterCard, Visa or Discover credit card. Also, the PWBA encourages auditors and plan filers to call its Division of Accounting Services at (202) 219-8794 with ERISA-related accounting and auditing questions and questions regarding preparation of Form 5500. Questions concerning filing requirements should be directed to the PWBA's Division of Reporting Compliance at (202) 219-8770.
- Consider engaging the services of another CPA firm, experienced in employee benefit plan accounting, audit and ERISA matters, when necessary and appropriate.

Implementing these best practices can significantly improve audit quality and client service and reduce related enforcement and litigation risks.

## Recent Developments

**.09** In June 1998, the Financial Accounting Standards Board issued Statement No. 133, *Accounting for Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities*. FASB No. 133 applies to employee benefit plans, although most plans do not hold such instruments. The AICPA's publication, *Employee Benefit Plans—1999 Audit Risk Alert*, describes the accounting effects of FASB No. 133 relating to employee benefit plans.

**.10** There are currently two proposed Statements of Positions (SOPs) relating to employee benefit plans. The two SOPs would amend the Audit and Accounting Guide *Employee Benefit Plans*, SOP 92-6, *Accounting and Reporting by Health and Welfare Benefit Plans* [section 10,530], and SOP 94-4, *Reporting of Investment Contracts Held by Health and Welfare Benefit Plans and Defined-Contribution Plans* [section 10,620].

## Service Organizations

**.11** Many plans are now offering their participants on-line access to their 401(k) plans. In such circumstances, participants can review their accounts, and change their investment elections at any time, even from home. Because plan participants can change their investments daily, by telephone or via Intranet sites, daily valuations of such plans are becoming commonplace with virtually no record of the changes being maintained by the service provider of the plan. Additionally, more and more services are being “bundled” and provided by one service provider. These service providers execute transactions and maintain accountability on behalf of the plan administrator. For example, outside service organizations such as, bank trust departments, insurance companies, and benefits administrators may maintain records and process benefit payments. Often, the plan sponsor does not maintain independent accounting records of transactions executed by the service provider. In fact, many plan sponsors no longer maintain records such as participant enrollment forms detailing the contribution percentage and the allocation by fund option, and this amount can be changed by telephone or on-line without any record. In these situations, the auditor may be unable to obtain a sufficient understanding of internal controls relevant to transactions executed by the service organization in planning the audit and determining the nature, timing and extent of testing to be performed without considering those components maintained by the service organization. These circumstances require an understanding of the requirements of SAS No. 70, *Service Organizations*, and additional explanation is described in Practice Alert 99-2, *How the Use of a Service Organization Affects Internal Control Considerations* [section 16,140].

## Year 2000 Issues

**.12** Generally, the Year 2000 issues are the entity's management's responsibility and not the auditor's. Management must assess and remediate the affects of the Year 2000 issue on an entity's system. Under generally accepted auditing standards, the auditor has the responsibility to plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. Thus, the auditor's responsibility relates to the detection of material misstatement of the financial statements being audited, whether caused by the Year 2000 issues or by some other cause.

.13 However, auditors should be aware of the auditing and accounting issues that arise from the Year 2000 issue, including audit planning, going-concern issues, establishing an understanding of the services to be provided to the client, impairment of revenue and expense recognition, and disclosure. A more comprehensive discussion of this topic can be found in AICPA's *1999 Audit Risk Alert*. Additional information on Year 2000 Issues can be found on the AICPA's website.

---

[The next page is 50,841.]



## Section 16,090

**Practice Alert 97-3**  
**Changes in Auditors and Related Topics**

First issued  
November, 1997;  
Updated August, 1999  
and April, 2004

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide practitioners with information that may help them improve the effectiveness and efficiency of their engagements and practices and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force ("PITF") and information provided by certain AICPA member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an *Other Auditing Publication* as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. *Other Auditing Publications* have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply SASs. If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an *Other Auditing Publication*, the auditor should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of the subject audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

.01 The purpose of this Practice Alert is to provide practitioners with guidance regarding appropriate procedures after a successor auditor has accepted an engagement to audit financial statements.

.02 Practice Alert 03-3, *Acceptance and Continuance of Clients and Engagements* [section 16,260] provides practitioners and their firms with guidance regarding the establishment of policies and procedures for deciding whether to accept or continue a client relationship and whether to perform a specific engagement for that client. The alert provides guidance with respect to following elements of an effective client acceptance program:

- Availability of competent personnel to perform the engagement.
- Communication with predecessor accountants or auditors.
- Assessment of management's commitment to the appropriate application of generally accepted accounting principles.
- Assessment of management's commitment to implementing and maintaining effective internal control.
- Assessment of the entity's financial viability.
- Independence and objectivity, including how the firm can mitigate possible impairment threats from significant clients.

- Inquiry of third parties.
- Background investigations.

The alert is currently available on the AICPA's Web site at: [http://www.aicpa.org/download/secps/pralert\\_03\\_03.pdf](http://www.aicpa.org/download/secps/pralert_03_03.pdf)

**.03** A predecessor auditor is an auditor who (a) has reported on the most recent audited financial statements or was engaged to perform but did not complete an audit of the financial statements and (b) has resigned, declined to stand for reappointment, or been notified that his or her services have been, or may be, terminated. Predecessor auditors must consider relevant issues when they are asked by a former client to reissue their reports on previously audited financial statements. Such issues include the need to decide whether to reestablish a client relationship, including consideration of the former client's intended use of the predecessor auditor's report. For example, a former client's request that a predecessor auditor reissue his or her report in connection with an initial public offering would expose the predecessor auditor to additional risk that was not contemplated at the time the original report was issued.

## Review of Audit Documentation

**.04** After accepting the engagement, the successor auditor should request the client to authorize the predecessor auditor to allow a review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation. In such situations, the predecessor auditor may want to obtain written notification of such a request in an effort to reduce or avoid misunderstandings. Appendix A to SAS No. 84 provides an illustrative client consent and acknowledgment letter which the predecessor auditor may wish to send the former client. It is customary that the predecessor auditor make himself or herself available to the successor auditor as well as certain audit documentation for review. Pursuant to SAS No. 84, the predecessor auditor should ordinarily permit the successor auditor to review audit documentation including documentation of planning, internal control, audit results and other matters of continuing accounting and auditing significance.

**.05** Before permitting access to the audit documentation, the predecessor auditor may wish to obtain a written communication from the successor auditor regarding the use of the audit documentation. Appendix B to SAS No. 84 includes an illustrative successor auditor acknowledgment letter. The purpose of the letter is to clarify the use of the audit documentation between the predecessor auditor and the successor auditor. This often provides the predecessor auditor more comfort in allowing unrestricted access to the audit documentation and may lead to a smoother transition.

## Opening Balances

**.06** The responsibility for the opening balances on the current year financial statements and consistency of accounting principles always rests solely with the client and the successor auditor. The successor auditor must obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to afford a reasonable basis for expressing an opinion on the financial statements under audit, including evaluating the consistency of the application of accounting principles. The nature of the tests to be performed and the extent of evidence obtained in auditing the opening balances on the current-year financial statements and consistency of accounting principles is a matter of professional judgment.

**.07** Evidence that may be obtained that will help a successor auditor determine the nature, timing and extent of auditing procedures to be applied to opening balances may include the following:

1. The most recently audited financial statements and the predecessor auditor's opinion thereon. The successor auditor may also consider making inquiries about the professional reputation and standing of the predecessor auditor in forming his or her opinion on the opening balances. For example, a firm with a sound reputation in the business community and an unqualified peer review report would normally give the successor auditor more comfort with respect to opening balances than if the predecessor auditor was unknown and their peer review report was qualified. Peer review reports can be requested from the firm. In addition, peer review reports for member firms of the AICPA Center for Public Company Audit Firms and for members of the PCPS: the AICPA Alliance for Member Firms can be obtained from the following Web site: <http://www.aicpa.org/centerprp/publicfile01.htm>.
2. The results of inquiries made to predecessor auditors. For example, a successor auditor would normally have a greater degree of comfort based on responses from a predecessor auditor that there were no disagreements with respect to the application of accounting principles or auditing procedures. Also, a successor auditor should consider the impact on opening balances when the predecessor auditor informs the successor auditor that his or her response to questions and access to certain audit documentation was limited.
3. The results of the successor auditor's review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation relating to the most recently completed audit may affect the nature, timing, and extent of the successor auditor's procedures. For example, upon reviewing a predecessor auditor's audit documentation with respect to contingencies at the beginning of the year, the successor auditor may conclude that the predecessor auditor's assessment of internal controls, substantive testing, and evaluation of misstatements is sufficient to preclude applying procedures to prior year transactions, and may take comfort from a current year attorney's letter or other procedures.
4. The results of audit procedures performed on the current period's transactions that may provide evidence about the opening balances or consistency. For example, evidence gathered during the current year's audit may provide information about the existence and valuation of receivables and inventory recorded at the beginning of the year.

**.08** In those rare circumstances where a successor auditor is not allowed access to a predecessor auditor's audit documentation, the successor auditor should consider the implications on whether the successor auditor will be able to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to afford a reasonable basis for expressing an opinion on the financial statements under audit. A successor auditor should not necessarily interpret a refusal for access to a predecessor auditor's audit documentation as a need to perform an audit of the previously audited financial statements.

**.09** In all circumstances, the successor auditor should use professional judgment in determining the nature, timing, and extent of procedures to be performed on opening balances. Such procedures, as outlined in 1, 2 and 4 above, will assist the successor auditor in determining the need to perform an audit of the previously audited financial statements.

## Requests to Reissue Reports

**.10** Predecessor auditors may be asked to reissue their report on financial statements for a number of reasons, including requests made by a former client to include a predecessor auditor's report in a registration statement filed with the SEC. In such situations, the predecessor auditor is, in effect, being asked to reestablish a client relationship and should consider the ramifications of that decision.

**.11** Before consenting to the inclusion of his or her report on previously audited financial statements, a predecessor auditor should perform procedures similar to its client acceptance and continuation procedures as required by Statement on Quality Control Standards No. 2, *System of Quality Control for a CPA Firm's Accounting and Auditing Practice* (QC section 20, paragraphs .14 through .16). In determining the nature and extent of client acceptance and continuation procedures as required by QC 20, an auditor might consider the guidance contained in Practice Alert 03-3, *Acceptance and Continuance of Clients and Engagements* [section 16,260]. That alert is currently available on the AICPA's Web site at: [http://www.aicpa.org/download/secps/pralert\\_03\\_03.pdf](http://www.aicpa.org/download/secps/pralert_03_03.pdf).

**.12** Such procedures would typically include an evaluation of whether specific events have occurred to determine whether a relationship with the former client should be reestablished, including a major change in one or more of the following: (1) management; (2) directors; (3) ownership; (4) legal counsel; (5) financial condition; (6) litigation status; (7) nature of the company's business; and (8) the scope of the engagement. Additionally, an auditor should determine whether he or she should be associated with a client that has selected, or may select, an underwriter that has been the subject of adverse publicity or that has matters reported on the underwriter's Form BD that raise questions or concerns about the underwriter. Similarly, an auditor should consider the professional reputation and experience of both the successor auditor and legal counsel who is or will be associated with subsequent years' financial statements.

**.13** After consideration of the above, and other relevant factors, but before consenting to reissuance of his or her report, the predecessor auditor should consider whether that report is still appropriate in the circumstances. The auditor should perform procedures on events occurring subsequent to the date or period of the most recent financial statements. The nature and extent of the procedures will vary depending on the circumstances of the particular situation, but generally consist of the following (as per SAS No. 58, *Reports on Audited Financial Statements*, as amended):

If a successor auditor has audited the financial statements of the most recent period following the period audited by the predecessor auditor, subsequent events procedures may consist of the following:

- Reading the financial statements for the current period (or the entire registration statement if the financial statements are included in a filing with the SEC).
- Comparing the financial statements that were reported on by the predecessor auditor with the financial statements to be presented in the registration statement (or other document).
- Obtaining a letter from the successor auditor indicating whether their audit has disclosed any events or transactions subsequent to the period covered by the most recent statement of income (or

the date of the latest balance sheet) audited by the predecessor auditor that, in the successor auditor's opinion, would have a material effect on, or require disclosure in the financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor.

.14 SAS No. 85, *Management Representations*, adds the additional requirement that a predecessor auditor obtain a representation letter from management of the former client in conjunction with reissuing his or her report on previously audited financial statements. This representation letter from management should state that nothing came to management's attention that would cause them to believe that any of their previous representations should be modified and whether any events have occurred subsequent to the balance sheet date of the latest prior period financial statements reported on by the predecessor auditor that would require adjustment to or disclosure in those financial statements. Appendix C to SAS No. 85 includes an illustrative management representation letter that might be obtained in these circumstances. In addition to the above described procedures, an auditor should consider the relevant guidance in SAS No. 1, section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*, as amended, paragraphs .10 through .12, which provides suggested procedures that may be performed when additional evidential matter might be necessary in the circumstances.

.15 If, after performing the procedures enumerated above and other procedures considered necessary in the circumstances, a predecessor auditor becomes aware of events or transactions occurring subsequent to the date of his previous report that may require an adjustment, additional disclosure, or reclassification to the financial statements previously reported on, the predecessor auditor should make inquiries and perform other procedures that are considered necessary in the circumstances.

.16 The extent of such procedures is a matter of professional judgment and will vary depending on the effect of the items on the financial statements previously issued. For example, reviewing the reclassification of a line of business as discontinued operations for comparative purposes with the subsequent year's treatment, resulting from a subsequent decision made by the company, would generally require less extensive procedures than those that may be required in connection with the correction of an error in previously issued financial statements. In such instances, the predecessor auditor might consider requesting a review of the audit documentation of the successor auditor in those areas related to the matter affecting the prior-period financial statements. Based on the evidence obtained, the predecessor auditor should then decide whether to revise the previously issued report. When reissuing his or her report on prior-period financial statements, a predecessor auditor should use the date of his or her previous report; if the financial statements are restated or the predecessor auditor revises the previous report, the report should be dual dated. If the predecessor auditor decides not to revise the previously issued report when the financial statements have been restated, the successor auditor should follow the guidance in SAS No. 58, paragraph 74, as amended.

.17 If successor auditors have not been engaged, or if engaged, have not performed an audit of the subsequent financial statements or sufficiently familiarized themselves with the accounting policies, control environment and other pertinent aspects of the company, the predecessor auditor's subsequent events review procedures might be the same as those performed by a continuing auditor in accordance with SAS No. 1, section 560, *Subsequent Events*, as amended.

.18 After considering the above or other relevant factors, an auditor may decide not to consent to the use of his or her previously issued report. The AICPA's

Code of Professional Conduct, Statements on Auditing Standards (SAS No. 58, as amended, paragraph 70) and the rules and regulations of the SEC do not require an independent certified public accountant who has performed a financial statement audit, to subsequently sign a consent for inclusion of that report in a registration statement filed with the SEC, or for any other reason. Additionally, SAS No. 58, as amended, does not require the predecessor auditor to communicate or disclose the reasons why that auditor decided not to reissue his or her audit report and there is no requirement for disclosure of those reasons to the entity or its audit committee, as a client relationship does not exist.

## Use of Indemnification Clauses When Reissuing Reports

**.19** In many instances, the risk of litigation that results from the inclusion of a predecessor auditor's report on financial statements of a former client may be such that a predecessor auditor might decide not to reissue his or her report unless the former client agrees to indemnify them for legal and other costs that might be incurred in defending itself, in the event of threatened or actual litigation, associated with knowing misrepresentations by management. In general, AICPA Ethics Ruling No. 94 (ET section 191.188-.189) allows obtaining such indemnification agreements. However, SEC rules related to independence prohibit indemnification agreements between auditors and current publicly-held clients.

**.20** As a result of discussions between the AICPA and the SEC, the staff of the SEC agreed not to question a predecessor auditor's independence with respect to a former audit client if that former audit client agrees to indemnify the predecessor auditor for the payment of legal costs and expenses that the predecessor auditor might incur in defending itself against legal actions or proceedings that arise as a result of the consent of that predecessor auditor to the inclusion of its auditor's reports on the former audit client's prior year's financial statements in a new registration statement provided that: (1) Such indemnification letter would be void and any advanced funds would be returned to the former client if a court, after adjudication, found the former auditor liable for malpractice, and (2) The indemnification provision is entered into after a successor auditor has issued an audit report on the former client's most recent financial statements included in the registration statement of the former client.

## Audits of Financial Statements Previously Audited

**.21** In September 2002, the Professional Issues Task Force issued Practice Alert 02-3, *Reauditing Financial Statements* [section 16,230]. The Alert provides practitioners with information that may help them when they are engaged to reaudit and report on financial statements that have been previously audited by another auditor. The alert is currently available on the AICPA's Web site at: [http://www.aicpa.org/members/div/secps/lit/practice/pralert\\_02\\_03.htm](http://www.aicpa.org/members/div/secps/lit/practice/pralert_02_03.htm).

## Reporting as Successor Auditor When Prior-Period Audited Financial Statements Were Audited by a Predecessor Auditor Who Has Ceased Operations

**.22** In November 2002, the AICPA issued Auditing Interpretation No. 15 to SAS No. 58. The Interpretation provides guidance regarding the effect on the

successor auditor's report when the prior-period financial statements audited by a predecessor auditor who has ceased operations are presented for comparative purposes with current-period audited financial statements.

**.23** The Interpretation is available using the following web address: <http://www.aicpa.org/members/div/auditstd/announce/interpsas58.htm>.

---

**[The next page is 50,851.]**



**Section 16,100*****Practice Alert 98-1***  
***The Auditor's Use of Analytical Procedures***

**First issued**  
**May, 1998;**  
**Updated August, 1999**

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing audit literature, the professional experience of the members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by SECPS member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and is not an official position of the AICPA. Official positions are determined through certain specific committee procedures, due process and deliberation. The information provided herein should be used by practitioners with the understanding that it be read in conjunction with the professional literature and only as a means of assisting them in meeting their professional responsibilities.

**Introduction**

**.01** Analytical procedures are defined by Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 56, *Analytical Procedures*, as "evaluations of financial information made by a study of plausible relationships among both financial and nonfinancial data." Analytical procedures are used in all three main phases of an audit: planning, substantive testing and overall review. The use of analytical procedures in the planning and overall review phases of an audit is required under generally accepted auditing standards and plays an important role in assisting the auditor in determining the nature, timing and extent of his or her substantive testing and in forming an overall opinion as to the reasonableness of recorded account balances.

**.02** The use of analytical procedures in the substantive testing phase of the audit is a consideration left to the judgment of the auditor and may or may not be a preferred choice to traditional detail tests of transactions. However, the use of analytical procedures typically enables the auditor to perform substantive tests that provide sound audit evidence, assists the auditor in better understanding a client's business, and when performed properly, may result in a more efficient and effective means of testing an account balance.

**.03** This Practice Alert provides guidance to practitioners on:

- Applying substantive analytical procedures through discussion of certain key concepts and definitions related to forming expectations of recorded balances,
- Difficulties noted in the performance of analytical procedures, and
- How analytical procedures can assist the auditor in evaluating the risk of fraud.

## Substantive Analytical Procedures—Key Concepts and Discussion

.04 Developing analytical procedures is a four-step process that consists of: (1) the development of an expectation; (2) the identification of fluctuations; (3) the investigation of material fluctuations and (4) the evaluation of the likelihood of material misstatements being present in the financial statements.

.05 The following discussion focuses on definitions and concepts pertinent to an auditor's development of an expectation and how accurate that expectation should be based on the risk characteristics of a particular engagement and should be read in conjunction with SAS No. 56 and the AICPA Publication *Analytical Procedures—Auditing Practice Release* (the "APR").

### Expectations

.06 Expectations are the auditor's prediction of what a recorded account balance or ratio *should* be. Auditors may be less likely to detect significant unexpected differences in the financial statements of a client when an expectation has not been properly developed. In forming an expectation, the auditor must determine that the relationship between the items used to develop the expectation and the recorded amount is plausible because the items might sometimes appear to be related when they are not, leading to erroneous conclusions. Plausible relationships are best defined as relationships expected to exist based on the auditor's understanding of the client and the industry in which the client operates.

.07 To gain this understanding the auditor might analyze forces external to the client's industry, the client's position within the industry and the processes the client has in place to achieve its objectives. The auditor might also consider the results of prior years audits, the client's budgeted and actual amounts, discussions held with client personnel responsible for the preparation of recorded account balances or ratios and financial and nonfinancial results of comparable entities operating in the industry.

.08 An expectation is typically developed using one or more of the following types of internally prepared data: prior year data adjusted for expected change; current period data; budgets or forecasts; and nonfinancial data from within the entity. These types of data might be considered independent and reliable if they are consistent with current business conditions and not subject to influence or manipulation by persons involved in the accounting functions related to the account balance being tested.

.09 Often, the account balance being tested can be estimated using data external to the entity. Sources of external information might include: government agencies (e.g., changes in tax rates); industry regulators, trade associations, industry surveys (e.g., bank interest rates); published financial information for companies of a similar size and/or with similar characteristics in the same industry; and securities exchanges.

.10 The auditor should consider the following factors which may limit or preclude the use of external information: industry statistics may be biased by the results of one or two major players within the industry; the client's activities may not match those that are covered by the information; industry statistics may only reflect prior year history; and the quality of industry statistics depends upon the degree of care taken by the industry participants in completing periodic returns.

**.11** In assessing the relationship between data used and the account balance being tested, the auditor should give consideration to the following factors: data may exist for only a part of the account balance being tested (e.g., comparable industry data is only available for certain of the products sold by the company); the relationship is circular or deterministic (e.g., predicting sales balances from commissions when commissions are calculated as a percentage of sales); the effects of changes in relationships, seasonality and lags (e.g., the client may have discontinued a product line, sales are in peak seasons, or the item of audit interest may be related to data of a prior period, such as the collectibility of receivables may be based on sales that occurred in prior periods).

**.12** The auditor should also bear in mind that relationships in income statement account balances tend to be more predictable than relationships involving only balance sheet accounts. Income statement account balances generally represent accumulations of similar transactions processed over a period of time and often have a predictable relationship with other data. Balance sheet items are the residual balance from transactions at specific points in time and are often more subject to management discretion.

**.13** The level of disaggregation and reliability of the data used in forming an expectation determines, in part, the precision with which the auditor can estimate an account balance. The desired precision of the expectation can vary according to the purpose of the analytical procedure. For example, an auditor would typically want more precision in performing substantive-type analytical procedures than in performing preliminary analytical procedures during planning. Generally, the higher the level of disaggregation of the data, the more precise the expectation will be. The reliability of the data is influenced by whether the data is:

- Audited
- From independent sources outside the entity
- From sources within the entity that are independent from those responsible for the amount being tested
- Subject to a reliable system of internal controls

Research has shown that incorrect expectations have been formed by the use of unreliable data and have led to incorrect audit conclusions. The auditor should exercise professional skepticism in considering the reliability of data used in forming expectations.

**.14 *Precision***—Precision is a measure of the closeness of the auditor's expectation to the actual amount (which may or may not be the recorded amount). Factors that affect the level of precision of an expectation include the basis upon which the expectation is developed (such as trend analysis, ratio analysis, reasonableness testing or regression analysis), the level of disaggregation of the data, the reliability of the data and the nature of the account balance being tested (e.g., income statement accounts might be less difficult to develop expectations for than balance sheet accounts).

**.15 *Trend analysis***—Trend analysis is the analysis of change(s) in an account balance over time and is most appropriate when the account or relationship is fairly stable. Conversely, trend analysis is less effective in situations when the entity being audited has experienced significant operating or accounting changes. Trend analysis typically produces the most effective results and higher levels of assurance when performed on disaggregated data, because at an aggregate level it tends to be relatively imprecise.

**.16** When using this type of analytical procedure, an auditor needs to gain a sufficient understanding of the environment and its associated volatility as it relates to the account being tested. Because trend analysis does not take into account changes in the business environment in which an entity operates, it is often suited for account balances where lower levels of assurance are necessary to reduce detection risk to acceptable levels. Trend analysis is often most useful to the auditor when used in conjunction with the planning and overall review stages of the audit. Refer to the upcoming APS for case study examples on the effective use of trend analysis.

**.17 *Ratio Analysis***—Ratio analysis is the comparison of relationships between financial statement accounts (between two periods or over time), the comparison of an account to nonfinancial data, or the comparison of relationships between entities operating within an industry. Ratio analysis may be considered most appropriate when the relationship between accounts is fairly predictable and stable.

**.18** Ratio analysis, like trend analysis, typically produces the most effective results and higher levels of assurance when performed on disaggregated data, because at an aggregate level it tends to be relatively imprecise. Refer to the APR for case study examples on the effective use of ratio analysis.

**.19 *Reasonableness testing***—Reasonableness testing is the analysis of account balances or changes in account balances within an accounting period which involves the development of an expectation based on financial and/or nonfinancial data. Reasonableness tests rely on the auditor's knowledge of the entity and the environment in which it operates to develop expectations of an account balance. As an example of a reasonableness test, an auditor might consider using the number of employees hired and terminated, the timing of pay changes, and the effect of vacation and sick days to develop a model that could predict the change in payroll expense from the previous year to the current balance. Refer to the upcoming APS for case study examples on the effective use of reasonableness testing.

**.20 *Regression analysis***—Regression analysis involves the use of statistical models to quantify the auditor's expectation(s) with measurable risk and precision levels. Regression analysis bears a resemblance to reasonableness testing in that it involves using the auditor's knowledge of the factors that affect the account balance in developing a model to predict it. Because regression analysis often involves the use of internally prepared data, it is most effective in assisting the auditor in detecting material misstatements in account balances when the data is disaggregated and is from an accounting system with good internal controls.

**.21** For analytical procedures used as substantive tests, the precision of the expectation developed is the primary determinant of how much assurance the auditor may obtain from such tests. In other words, the more assurance an auditor needs to obtain from analytical procedures on account balances where the risk of misstatement is high, the more precise his or her expectation needs to be. Because it involves the development of an expectation based on relatively sophisticated models, regression analysis generally tends to give the auditor more precision than any of the previously mentioned methods. Refer to the upcoming APS for case study examples on the effective use of regression analysis.

## Level of Assurance

**.22** The level of assurance that must be obtained in any audit testing is the amount of assurance the auditor needs to reduce detection risk to an

acceptable level. The level of assurance an auditor actually receives from a substantive analytical procedure is the degree to which the analytical procedure actually reduces audit risk. As such, an auditor plans the level of assurance he or she wishes to achieve in performing analytical procedures based on risk assessment in the planning stages of the audit. As the level of assurance needed from an analytical procedure increases, the auditor should design the analytical procedure with a corresponding level of precision.

**.23 *Confirmation of Accounts Receivable and the Use of Analytical Procedures***—In certain circumstances, auditors have concluded that it may be more effective to use analytical procedures as an alternative to confirmations when testing accounts receivable. Auditing standards presume that confirmation procedures are generally performed in conjunction with testing of accounts receivable.

**.24** The decision to utilize alternative procedures may be reached only after the auditor has carefully concluded that one of the following three conditions are present (SAS No. 67, *The Confirmation Process*, paragraphs 34 and 35): (1) accounts receivable are immaterial to the financial statements; (2) the use of confirmations would be ineffective; or (3) the assessed level of inherent and control risk is low, and the assessed level, in conjunction with the evidence expected to be provided by analytical procedures or other substantive tests of details, is sufficient to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level. The auditor's conclusions should be documented in the working papers.

**.25** In the event that confirmations are not used when testing accounts receivable balances and the auditor decides to use analytical procedures as substantive tests, the analytical procedures should be designed with a high level of precision in order to gain a tolerable level of assurance.

## Difficulties in Applying Substantive Analytical Procedures and Ways to Avoid Them

**.26** While analytical procedures can potentially improve audit efficiency and effectiveness, they also require the use of significant audit judgment in identifying and investigating unexpected fluctuations. Some of the difficulties posed and ways to address them were discussed in an article that appeared in the Nov. 1997 *Journal of Accountancy* entitled "When Judgment Counts" (reprints may be obtained from the AICPA library at (888) 777-7077; available for AICPA members only). These issues are generally discussed below.

**.27 *Using Unaudited Balances as a Starting Point***—Auditors should be careful not to use management's unaudited balance as a starting point in determining what a recorded balance should be without also looking to other predicative factors. For example, assume an auditor forms an expectation of what a recorded cost of sales balance should be based on a client's unaudited sales balance. In developing an expectation for what sales should be, the auditor used a trend analysis. It is unlikely that either result in this example has actually been audited in that the auditor has not developed an expectation on an independent basis using sufficiently reliable data. SAS No. 56 includes specific wording that instructs the auditor of his or her responsibility to develop an independent expectation using reliable data.

**.28** While auditors should be careful not to let unaudited account balances unduly influence their development of expectations of an account balance they

should also be aware that unaudited information, independent of the accounting function, may provide reliable information to assist in developing an expectation.

**.29 *Unusual Fluctuations Might Reflect a Pattern***—SAS No. 56 indicates that an auditor should evaluate significant differences between an expectation that he or she has developed and the amount recorded in the financial statements. In addition, an auditor should take care to recognize a pattern of fluctuations which may be necessary to correctly identify the cause of a fluctuation. Tendencies to examine each account without regard to combinations of financial discrepancies may result in problematic situations being overlooked.

**.30** As an example, assume an auditor has developed an expectation related to sales that is significantly lower than the actual recorded balance. In addition, the results of positive confirmations in accounts receivable indicated a number of discrepancies. These two problems, in combination, might indicate to the auditor that the sales balance and related receivables balance are misstated. Should the auditor consider the discrepancies noted in each balance in isolation, there might be a tendency to “explain” each discrepancy away without seeing a potentially serious issue.

**.31 *Placing Reliance on Management’s Explanations***—Auditors should use discretion in using management as a first resource in explaining unexpected fluctuations as a client’s explanation might limit the auditor’s consideration of other likely causes. An explanation that is offered by management in situations where the auditor cannot readily explain the variance between his or her expectation and the recorded amount should be carefully evaluated as to both its reasonableness in explaining the variance noted and its effect(s) on other accounts.

**.32** Information which may provide plausible explanations for fluctuations that should be considered by the auditor might include: an understanding of matters noted while performing audit work in other areas, particularly while performing audit work on the data used to develop an expectation; inquiries of client personnel unrelated to the preparation of the financial statements, analytical procedures performed in the planning stage of the audit; management and board reports containing explanations of variances between budgeted and actual results; and review of minutes of meetings.

**.33 *Developing Expectations at the Appropriate Level of Disaggregation***—In addition to the issues identified in the *Journal of Accountancy* article, auditors should be careful while performing substantive analytical procedures to use data at an appropriate level of disaggregation. Use of data that is disaggregated at the appropriate level is important in allowing the auditor to assess the risk of material misstatement in the financial statements.

**.34** For example, an auditor would have more information on which to base a conclusion on sales balances if that amount were considered on a monthly or quarterly basis than on an annualized basis. Generally, the more complex and non-routinely processed the amount to be tested is, the more difficult it is to develop an expectation that is sufficiently precise to provide adequate assurance that material misstatement does not exist.

**.35** By not analyzing data at the appropriate level of disaggregation, an auditor may not be as likely to detect unusual fluctuations caused by significant non-routine journal entries in the final quarter of a client’s fiscal year.

Unusual non-routine journal entries, if recorded consistently by the client over a period of years, would not necessarily be detected by the auditor when analyzing data on an aggregate level. Such fourth quarter adjustments might alert the auditor to an audit area requiring additional testing or even be indicative of the possibility of fraud.

## Analytical Procedures and Fraud Detection

**.36** The results of analytical procedures do not provide the auditor with the necessary evidence to determine if fraud has resulted in a material misstatement to the financial statements. However, analytical procedures, performed during the planning, substantive testing and overall review stages of the audit, do provide the auditor with a tool in determining if account balances might have an increased chance of having been subjected to fraud. Accordingly, analytical procedures can assist the auditor in fulfilling his or her responsibilities under paragraph 12 of SAS No. 82, *Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, which states, in part, that "The auditor should specifically assess the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements due to fraud and should consider that assessment in designing the audit procedures to be performed."

**.37** SAS No. 82 requires that an auditor should specifically assess the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements due to fraud and consider that assessment in designing his or her audit procedures. Analytical procedures have the potential to detect the possible existence of fraud during the planning stage by directing the auditor's attention to unexpected fluctuations or relationships. By performing such procedures at the appropriate level of disaggregation, the auditor has the potential to detect where such fraud might be present.

**.38** Even in situations where the auditor expects the client to adjust its trial balance after the completion of preliminary analytical procedures, he or she should consider whether some accounts, such as debt, might be less likely to be adjusted than others, such as expense accounts. In these situations, the auditor would still be able to analyze certain accounts in the planning stages and assess the likelihood that a material misstatement might exist.

**.39** SAS No. 82 indicates that if certain risk factors are present that would indicate the likelihood of fraud, the auditor might respond by performing substantive analytical procedures at a more detailed level.

---

[The next page is 50,871.]



**Section 16,110*****Practice Alert 98-2***  
***Professional Skepticism and Related Topics***

First issued  
September, 1998;  
Updated August, 1999

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing audit literature, the professional experience of the members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by SECPS member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and is not an official position of the AICPA. Official positions are determined through certain specific committee procedures, due process and deliberation. The information provided herein if used by practitioners should be used with the understanding that it is read in conjunction with the professional literature and only as a means of assisting them in meeting their professional responsibilities.

**Introduction**

**.01** Generally accepted auditing standards requires the auditor to exercise due professional care in the planning and performance of the audit and in the preparation of the auditor's report. Due professional care requires the auditor to exercise professional skepticism, which can be best defined as an attitude that includes a questioning mind and working practices that encompass a critical assessment of audit evidence. Since evidence is gathered and evaluated throughout the audit, professional skepticism should be exercised throughout the entire audit process. In gathering and evaluating evidence, including obtaining management representations, the auditor should neither assume that management is dishonest nor assume unquestioned honesty. Exercising professional skepticism means that the auditor should not be satisfied with less than persuasive evidence. Although representations obtained from management are part of the evidential matter the independent auditor obtains, they are rarely by themselves sufficient evidence to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion regarding the financial statements taken as a whole.

**.02** There have been a number of instances in the past when misstated audited financial statements have been issued when the auditor may not have exercised adequate professional skepticism during the audit. While it is not possible to list all sensitive areas where this might occur, experience suggests that the following areas should be among those subject to particular scrutiny:

- Management responses to questions resulting from analytical reviews.
- Representations regarding recoverability of assets or deferred charges.

- Accruals (or lack thereof), particularly for unusual events or transactions.
- Substance of large and unusual (particularly period-end) transactions.
- Vague contract terms or conditions.
- Non-standard journal entries and copies of original documents (see further discussion below).

**.03** Regular reminders to members of the firm and professional staff of the need to exercise appropriate professional skepticism would be useful in avoiding potential problems. This Practice Alert provides guidance to practitioners in two areas which may warrant a relatively high level of professional skepticism and attention to audit evidence: (1) the review of non-standard journal entries, and (2) the review of original and final versions of source documents rather than photocopies or draft versions in these two areas. This Practice Alert also provides a comprehensive list of previously issued Practice Alerts.

## The Auditor's Review of Non-Standard Journal Entries

**.04** Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 55, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, as amended by SAS No. 78, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit: An Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 55* requires the auditor to obtain a sufficient understanding of the information system relevant to financial reporting to understand:

- The classes of transactions in the entity's operations that are significant to the financial statements.
- How those transactions are initiated (e.g., manual or computerized).
- The accounting records, supporting information, and specific accounts in the financial statements involved in the processing and reporting of transactions.
- The accounting processing involved from the initiation of a transaction to its inclusion in the financial statements, including electronic means used to transmit, process, maintain and access information.
- The financial reporting process used to prepare the entity's financial statements, including significant accounting estimates and disclosures.

SAS No. 78 also notes that such knowledge should be used to identify types of potential misstatements, consider factors that affect the risk of material misstatement, and design substantive tests.

**.05** In today's complex computerized environments, reviewing the general ledger for non-standard journal entries has changed significantly from years ago when the general ledger could be manually scanned for evidence of non-standard journal entries. Standard journal entries include those journal entries processed in the normal course of business, such as sales, inventory purchases and cash disbursements. Non-standard journal entries are ones that are made outside the normal course of business, such as the provision for loan losses, provision for inventory obsolescence and cut-off or period-end adjustments. Non-standard journal entries may pose increased risk to the auditor in

that they might conceal attempts by management to manipulate earnings and can be recorded in practically any account.

**.06** Auditors may find that certain accounts might contain transactions processed in the normal course of business and some that are not. As an example, consider accounts payable, which may contain routine postings from the accounts payable subsidiary ledger to the general ledger, but may also contain entries to reconcile the two ledgers. The accounts payable account balance may also include debits to the account with an offset entry intended to inflate earnings. Since accounts payable is often subject to a high volume of activity, such reconciling entries or miscellaneous debits, or non-standard journal entries, may be difficult for the auditor to detect.

**.07** In order to determine which transactions are not subject to processing in the normal course of business, the auditor should consider whether the client has an established routine, or set of procedures, for processing a class of transactions on a recurring basis. Often, there will be an established routine whose recording is frequently recurring and is important to the day-to-day operation and management of the business. Routine processing does not necessarily or exclusively involve computer systems. Most processing involves a combination of manual and automated steps and procedures.

**.08** Transactions processed in the normal course of business generally have less risk of misstatement than other transactions. In order to identify transactions processed outside the normal course of business, particularly in computerized environments, the auditor may need to use computer-assisted audit techniques, such as report writers, software or data-extraction tools, or other systems-based techniques. The functionality of the software and proper processing with the client data files is essential to produce credible evidence. Electronic evidence often requires extraction of the desired data by a knowledgeable auditor or a specialist. SAS No. 31, *Evidential Matter*, as amended by SAS No. 80, *Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 31*, *Evidential Matter*, provides guidance for auditors who have been engaged to audit the financial statements of an entity that transmits, processes, maintains or accesses significant information electronically. In addition, the AICPA published an Auditing Procedures Study, *The Information Technology Age: Evidential Matter in the Electronic Environment*, to provide auditors with non-authoritative guidance on applying SAS No. 80. Account balances which might be subject to misstatement may be identified by the auditor in assessing whether each significant account balance:

- Contains journal entries processed outside the normal course of business.
- Contains transactions that are complex or unusual in nature.
- Contains estimates and period-end adjustments.
- Contains journal entries indicative of potential problems with the accounting systems.
- Has been prone to client error in the past.
- Has not been reconciled on a timely basis or contains old reconciling items.
- Represents a particular risk specific to the client's industry.
- Represents account balances affecting the client's value and liquidity (e.g., account balances that are used in determining loan covenant ratios).

## The Auditor's Review of Original and Final Source Documents

**.09** During the course of an audit of financial statements, auditors are frequently provided with photocopies or draft versions of documents, rather than original and final source documents. Of course, photocopies can be made of virtually every type of audit evidence, including bank statements, invoices, legal agreements, etc., and by accepting photocopies or draft versions as audit evidence, the auditor risks that the photocopy may not conform to the original and final source document. Also, with the advances in modern technology, scanners can also be used to alter documents. As an example, consider that bank statements can be altered and photocopies to reflect higher cash balances, invoices can be falsified to reflect sales which did not take place and legal agreements can be amended so that the photocopy does not reflect the actual agreement in place.

**.10** SAS No. 82, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, states that the unavailability of other than photocopied documents when documents in original form are expected to exist may pose a risk of material misstatement due to fraud. When presented with photocopied documents, the auditor should exercise professional skepticism and consider the need to obtain the original source documents to ensure conformity to the photocopied documents.

**.11** Also, when reviewing a document other than an original, there may be situations when an auditor receives a facsimile confirmation response rather than a written communication mailed directly to the auditor. A facsimile response may create some risk because it may be difficult to ascertain the source of the response. While the facsimile response may include the name and facsimile number of the entity sending the document, the auditor should assess the risk that the sender might have falsified that information. SAS No. 67, *The Confirmation Process*, states that to restrict the risk associated with facsimile responses and treat the confirmations as valid audit evidence, the auditor should consider taking certain precautions, such as verifying the source and contents of a facsimile response in a telephone call to the purported sender. In addition, the auditor should consider requesting the purported sender to mail the original confirmation directly to the auditor.

---

[The next page is 50,881.]

## Section 16,120

**Practice Alert 98-3**  
**Responding to the Risk of Improper**  
**Revenue Recognition**

First Issued  
November, 1998;  
Updated April, 2004

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide practitioners with information that may help them improve the effectiveness and efficiency of their engagements and practices and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by certain AICPA member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an *Other Auditing Publication* as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. *Other Auditing Publications* have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply SASs. If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an *Other Auditing Publication*, the auditor should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of the subject audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

.01 A substantial portion of litigation against accounting firms and a number of SEC Accounting and Auditing Enforcement Releases involve revenue recognition issues. Many of these issues result from alleged improper accounting treatment of sales recorded in the ordinary course of a client's business. Such improper accounting treatment ranges from allegedly stretching the accounting rules to falsifying sales in an effort to manage earnings. Therefore, auditors need to pay attention to warning signals that may indicate increased audit risk with respect to revenue recognition and respond with appropriate professional skepticism and additional audit procedures.

.02 This Practice Alert is intended to remind auditors of certain factors or conditions that can be indicative of increased audit risk of improper, aggressive or unusual revenue recognition practices, and suggests ways in which auditors may reduce the risk of failing to detect such practices. This Practice Alert also refers to professional guidance which addresses the accounting considerations for revenue recognition, and it reminds auditors of their responsibilities to communicate with the board of directors and audit committees.

**Required Risk Assessment**

.03 SAS No. 99, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, requires the auditor to ordinarily presume that improper revenue recognition is a

fraud risk on all audit engagements. The key threshold is “should ordinarily”. If the auditor does not identify improper revenue recognition as a risk of material misstatement due to fraud, the auditor should document the reasons supporting that conclusion.

.04 In addition, the Appendix to SAS No. 99 provides examples of fraud risk factors relating to fraudulent financial reporting, almost all of which may be relevant to revenue recognition.

## **Improper, Aggressive or Unusual Revenue Recognition Practices**

.05 Auditors need to consider the possibility that client personnel at various levels may participate in schemes that result in the overstatement of revenue. In some cases, customers and suppliers may be involved in such schemes as well. Client officials may be aware they are overstating revenue or may simply believe they are reflecting economic substance from their perspective. Revenue recognition principles are sometimes difficult to apply and often vary by industry. A high level of care is always required in this area, but if the auditor becomes aware of certain factors or conditions, as outlined below, special consideration may be required.

## **Audit Planning Considerations**

.06 To reduce the risk of improper revenue recognition, the audit needs to be planned and executed with an appropriate degree of professional skepticism. In planning the audit, the auditor should obtain a sufficient understanding of the client's industry and business, its products, its marketing and sales policies and strategies, its internal controls, and its accounting policies and procedures related to revenue recognition. During the planning phase of the audit, the auditor should seek to identify conditions that increase the risk of misstatement. Those conditions may include:

- A change in the company's revenue recognition policy.
- New product or service introductions or new sales arrangements.
- Sales terms that do not comply with the company's normal policies.
- Existence of longer than expected payment terms or installment receivables.
- Significant sales or volume of sales that are recorded at or near the end of the reporting period.
- Individually significant sales.
- Unusual or complex revenue transactions.
- Unusual volume of sales to distributors/ resellers (i.e., “channel stuffing”).
- Sales billed to customers prior to the delivery of goods and held by the seller (“bill and hold” or “ship-in-place” sales).
- The use of non-standard contracts or contract clauses.
- The use of letters of authorization in lieu of signed contracts or agreements.
- Transactions with related parties.
- Transactions involving barter, swaps, “round-trip” or “back-to-back.”

- The existence of “side-agreements.”
- Multiple-element arrangements.
- Revenue recognition when right of return exists.
- Control environment considerations, such as:
  - Aggressive accounting policies or practices.
  - Pressure from senior management to increase revenues and earnings.
  - Lack of involvement by the accounting/finance department in sales transactions or in the monitoring of arrangements with distributors.

**.07** The auditor’s understanding should include the procedures for receiving and accepting orders, shipping goods, relieving inventory, and billing and recording sales transactions. A sufficient understanding of a client’s policies with respect to acceptable terms of sale and an evaluation of when revenue recognition is appropriate given those terms is essential. It is also essential that the auditor have an understanding of the computer applications and key documents (e.g., purchase orders, shipping reports, bills of lading, invoices, credit memos, etc.) used during the processing of revenue transactions.

**.08** The auditor’s knowledge base of the revenue recognition cycle provides a perspective or mindset for determining the nature, timing, and extent of audit procedures to be applied. For example, a company operating in a declining industry or one characterized by frequent business failures ordinarily will present different audit considerations and may require different or more extensive audit procedures than a company operating in a healthy industry. Similarly, the risk of management misrepresentation may be greater when management’s compensation is based to a significant degree on reported earnings or when management places undue emphasis on meeting analysts’ earnings projections. Even when additional revenues do not contribute much to earnings (e.g., immature companies operating at a loss), recognize that many of these companies are valued based on increased revenues. Risk also may be heightened when there are frequent disputes or disagreements with management concerning the aggressive application of accounting principles. A proper understanding of a client’s business, its accounting policies and procedures, and the nature of its transactions with customers is also useful in assessing the extent of experience or supervision required of the personnel assigned to audit revenue transactions. Certain unusual or complex sales contracts may signal the need for more experienced engagement personnel.

**.09** The performance of well-planned analytical procedures during the audit planning process and in executing the audit itself (such as, a comparison of sales and customer receivable cash collections to corresponding periods of the prior year and to budgeted amounts; a review of monthly and/or quarterly sales volume analyses; a review of sales credits and returns subsequent to year-end; and comparisons of agings of accounts receivable portfolios in the current and prior periods) may assist the auditor in identifying situations that warrant additional consideration. A company constantly increasing sales that “always meets or exceeds” budgeted sales targets and that result in the “build-up” of accounts receivable may warrant extra attention. When a substantial portion of the company’s sales occur at the end of the accounting period, extra caution in auditing revenue transactions is appropriate. Also, individually significant revenue transactions, which could be designed to ease short-term profit concerns, may merit specific attention. Caution should also be

exercised when “bill and hold” sales exist. Auditors need to examine such transactions and obtain an understanding of the transaction’s business purpose to evaluate whether revenue recognition is appropriate.

## Brainstorming

**.10** SAS No. 99 requires that engagement teams conduct a brainstorming session as part of the planning process. One of the main objectives of the brainstorming session is to set the “tone at the top” by challenging any preconceived assumptions and bias that the engagement team members may have regarding the client and to remind the engagement team members to exercise professional skepticism during the course of the audit. The brainstorming session will also allow the team to exchange ideas about how and where they believe the entity’s financial statements might be susceptible to material misstatements due to fraud, how that fraud might be concealed, and how the auditor might respond.

**.11** Knowledge of common frauds related to improper revenue recognition can help engagement teams conduct more effective brainstorming sessions. Typical revenue recognition frauds include:

- Sales in which evidence indicates the customer’s obligation to pay for the merchandise depends on:
  - receipt of financing from another (third) party;
  - resale to another (third) party (i.e., sale to distributor, consignment sale); or
  - fulfillment by the seller of material unsatisfied conditions.
- Sales of merchandise that are shipped in advance of the scheduled shipment date without evidence of the customer’s agreement or consent.
- Pre-invoicing of goods that are in the process of being assembled or invoicing prior to, or in the absence of, actual shipments.
- Shipments are made after the end of the period (i.e., books kept open to record revenue for products shipped after the period end).
- Sales are not based on actual (firm) orders to buy.
- Shipments are made on canceled or duplicate orders.
- Shipments are made to a warehouse or other intermediary location without the instruction of the customer.
- Shipments that are sent to and held by freight forwarders pending return to the company for required customer modifications.
- Altered dates on contracts or shipping documents.

**.12** Many fraud schemes are designed to accelerate the recognition of revenue; however, the auditor should be alert for conditions that may motivate management to delay revenue recognition. For example, when sales estimates for a subsequent year are soft and management has met their earnings target for the current year, they may be tempted to improperly delay revenues into the next year. Additionally, an owner of a privately held entity may be motivated to improperly delay revenue recognition as a means of minimizing taxable income.

## Audit Response

**.13** If there is an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud that involves improper revenue recognition, the auditor may want to consider:

- Performing substantive analytical procedures related to revenue using disaggregated data, for example, comparing revenue reported by month and by product line or business segment during the current reporting period with comparable prior periods. Computer-assisted audit techniques may be useful in identifying unusual or unexpected revenue relationships or transactions.
- Confirming with customers certain relevant contract terms and the absence of side agreements, because the appropriate accounting often is influenced by such terms or agreements. For example, acceptance criteria, delivery and payment terms, the absence of future or continuing vendor obligations, the right to return the product, guaranteed resale amounts, and cancellation or refund provisions often are relevant in such circumstances.
- Inquiring of the entity's sales and marketing personnel or in-house legal counsel regarding sales or shipments near the end of the period and their knowledge of any unusual terms or conditions associated with these transactions.
- Being physically present at one or more locations at period end to observe goods being shipped or being readied for shipment (or returns awaiting processing) and performing other appropriate sales and inventory cutoff procedures.
- For those situations for which revenue transactions are electronically initiated, processed, and recorded, testing controls to determine whether they provide assurance that recorded revenue transactions occurred and are properly recorded.
- Examining inventory reports or other correspondence from distributors and reconciling that information with the company's records.
- Vouching all large or unusual sales made at quarter-end and year-end to original source documents.
- Performing a detailed review of the entity's quarter-end and year-end adjusting journal entries and investigating any that appear unusual as to nature or amount.
- Scanning the general ledger, accounts receivable subledger, and sales journal for unusual activity.
- Checking the clerical accuracy of the revenue journal or similar record and tracing the postings of the totals to the appropriate account in the general ledger.
- Checking the reconciliation of revenue journals during the audit period to the general ledger control account, or checking the postings to the general ledger control account from sources other than the revenue journal for unusual or unexpected activity.
- Analyzing and reviewing deferred revenue accounts at the end of the period for propriety of deferral.
- Analyzing and reviewing credit memos and other accounts receivable adjustments for the period subsequent to the balance sheet date.

- Scanning the general ledger or subsidiary ledgers, as appropriate, for a period subsequent to year-end for reversals of sales or large sales returns.
- Reviewing significant year-end contracts for unusual pricing, billing, delivery, return, exchange, or acceptance clauses. Performing post-year-end specific review for contract revisions or cancellations and for refunds or credits issued.
- As part of the accounts receivable confirmation effort, confirming with customers the terms of sales agreements, including the absence of right of return and terms that might preclude immediate revenue recognition.
- Comparing operating cash flow to sales; analyze by salesperson, location or period.

## Confirmations and Management Representations

.14 In January 2003, the PITF issued Practice Alert 03-1, *Audit Confirmations* [section 16,240], to emphasize the importance of the confirmation process. Additionally, the Alert focuses practitioners on the other benefits of confirming accounts besides confirmation of balances and discourages performing alternative procedures in lieu of confirming balances and information. The Alert also provides practical guidance regarding non-responses to positive confirmation requests, confirmations received via fax or electronically, and use of client personnel in the confirmation process.

.15 The Alert can be downloaded using the following web address: [http://www.aicpa.org/download/secps/pralert\\_03\\_01.pdf](http://www.aicpa.org/download/secps/pralert_03_01.pdf).

.16 SAS No. 85, *Management Representations*, requires the auditor to obtain written representations from management relating to the following: financial statements; completeness of information; recognition, measurement and disclosure; and subsequent events. Although representations from management are not a substitute for application of audit procedures designed to afford a reasonable basis for an opinion on the financial statements, the auditor may consider it useful to obtain written representations concerning specific revenue recognition issues, such as the terms and conditions of unusual or complex sales agreements. Such representations may include confirmation that there are no contingencies that affect the obligation of customers to pay for merchandise purchased, and may also include confirmation regarding the existence of side agreements. This is particularly important when it is common industry practice to provide customers with certain rights of return or other privileges (e.g., in high-technology enterprises). In addition to obtaining representations from management, auditors should consider making inquiries of others familiar with the transactions (e.g., sales personnel), aside from the accounting and finance personnel, and consider whether there is a need to also obtain written representations from those individuals.

## Accounting Considerations

.17 Revenue is defined in FASB Concept Statement No. 6, *Elements of Financial Statements*, paragraph 78, as follows:

“Revenues are inflows or other enhancements of assets of an entity or settlements of its liabilities (or a combination of both) from delivering or producing goods, rendering services, or other activities that constitute the entity’s ongoing major or central operations.”

Further, FASB Concepts Statement No. 5, *Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements of Business Enterprises*, paragraph 83 states that the recognition of revenue involves consideration of two factors:

- Being realized or realizable and
- Being earned.

.18 Paragraph 84(a) of FASB Concepts Statement No. 5 states that revenues from manufacturing and selling activities are commonly recognized at the time of the sale, usually meaning delivery.

.19 The auditor should be aware that many pronouncements have been issued with respect to revenue recognition. The auditor should consider those pronouncements that are relevant to the client's industry and the types of transactions in which the client engages when performing the audit.

## Communications With Board of Directors/Audit Committees

.20 Shareholders rely on the board of directors and its audit committee to monitor company performance and make decisions that serve the best interests of the company and its shareholders. SAS No. 61, *Communication With Audit Committees*, requires the auditor to ensure that the audit committee (defined as those parties who have oversight of the financial reporting process) receives additional information regarding the scope and results of the audit that may assist the audit committee in overseeing the financial reporting and disclosure process for which management is responsible. Certain matters are required to be communicated, as follows: the auditor's responsibility under generally accepted auditing standards; significant accounting policies; management judgments and accounting estimates; audit adjustments; auditor's judgments about the quality of an entity's accounting principles; other information in documents containing audited financial statements; disagreements with management; consultation with other accountants; major issues discussed with management prior to retention; and difficulties encountered in performing the audit.

.21 The communication by the auditor to the board of directors/audit committee should include a discussion related to revenue recognition practices of the company, including matters such as a change in the company's revenue recognition policy, a lack of involvement by the accounting/finance department in sales transactions or in the monitoring of arrangements with distributors, significant sales or volume of sales that are recorded at or near the end of the reporting period, sales terms that do not comply with the company's normal policies, etc.

## Conclusion

.22 No audit can be designed to provide absolute assurance that all revenue recorded by the client is appropriate or that fraudulent financial reporting is discovered. However, an awareness of conditions that increase audit risk, along with an appropriate skeptical response to issues identified during the planning process and during the performance of field work, can help auditors increase the likelihood that either inadvertent or intentional material misstatements of revenue will be detected.

---

[The next page is 50,891.]



**Section 16,130****Practice Alert 99-1**  
**Guidance for Independence Discussions With**  
**Audit Committees****May, 1999****NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing audit literature, the professional experience of the members of the AICPA SEC Practice Section Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by AICPA SEC Practice Section member firms to their own professional staff. The information in this Practice Alert represents the views of the members of the PITF and is not an official position of the AICPA. Official positions are determined through certain specific committee procedures, due process and deliberation. The information provided herein should be used by practitioners with the understanding that it be read in conjunction with the professional literature and only as a means of assisting them in meeting their professional responsibilities.

**.01** In January 1999, the Independence Standards Board (ISB) adopted Independence Standard No. 1, *Independence Discussions with Audit Committees* (the "Standard"). The Standard states that it applies to any auditor intending to be considered an independent accountant within the meaning of the Securities Acts administered by the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). This should be considered to include an auditor with respect to any entity for which his or her engagement is required to comply with SEC Regulation S-X.<sup>1</sup> The Standard requires annual written and oral communications between the auditor and the audit committee (or the board of directors if there is no audit committee) of a public company client regarding relationships that, in the auditor's professional judgment, may reasonably be thought to bear on independence, as well as written confirmation that the auditor is independent of the company within the meaning of the Securities Acts. Such communications are required with respect to audits of entities with fiscal years ending after July 15, 1999, with earlier application encouraged.

**.02** The Standard can be obtained from the ISB website at [www.cpaindependence.org](http://www.cpaindependence.org). The ISB has expressed its belief that the Standard will improve corporate governance by affording to audit committees a mandated opportunity to deepen their understanding of auditor independence issues. The ISB believes the Standard will assist directors in satisfying themselves that the

---

<sup>1</sup> The Standard applies to auditors of domestic and foreign registrants. The Standard would also apply where a regulatory agency (such as the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency (OCC)) undertakes to have auditors of entities under its jurisdiction comply with SEC Independence Rules. It is noted that an auditor might contractually obligate himself or herself to follow Regulation S-X. An example might be a private company intending to have a public offering in the future and the desire of management to have the auditor meet all SEC requirements.

company has engaged “independent” accountants as required by the Securities Acts. The ISB also believes that a mandate that audit firms describe and discuss the judgmental matters that might impact on independence will bring more focus within the firms on this important issue.

**.03** Additionally, *The Report and Recommendations of the Blue Ribbon Committee on Improving the Effectiveness of Corporate Audit Committees* (the “Blue Ribbon Committee Report”), issued in February 1999, included a recommendation that the listing rules for both the New York Stock Exchange and the National Association of Securities Dealers require audit committee charters to specify that the audit committee is responsible for ensuring receipt of the communication required by the Standard.

**.04** This recommendation also indicated the charter should specify that the audit committee is responsible for actively engaging in a dialogue with the auditors relating to the disclosure of any relationships or services that may impact the objectivity and independence of the auditor and should take appropriate action, if necessary, to ensure the continued independence of the auditor. To address implementation issues relative to the Standard, the Professional Issues Task Force of the AICPA SEC Practice Section (PITF) has been asked to develop initial guidance for CPA firms. The guidance in this PITF Alert is designed to assist firms in evaluating and enhancing their policies and procedures for identifying and communicating with audit committees those judgmental matters that may reasonably be thought to bear on the auditor’s independence.

**.05** These communications in turn should serve to assist audit committees/boards of directors in fulfilling certain of their responsibilities relative to corporate governance. These communications also will assist auditors in fulfilling their responsibilities to serve the interests of the public and strengthen the public’s confidence in audited financial information reported by registrants. The following discussion is in the context of communications between the auditor and the audit committee/board of directors. This should not be construed as precluding the auditor from having similar communications with senior management. Indeed, the PITF encourages such communications.

## Firm Policies and Procedures

**.06** Firms should establish policies and procedures relating to independence communications with audit committees. These policies and procedures should be distributed to all professional staff to enhance their awareness of independence issues and reaffirm professional standards. The following information may be a useful framework for developing these policies and procedures.

## Determination of Matters to Be Communicated

**.07** The Standard requires auditors to communicate, in writing, at least annually all relationships between the auditor and the company that, in the auditor’s professional judgment, may reasonably be thought to bear on independence. In determining which relationships to discuss, the auditor should not conclude that a relationship need not be disclosed solely because he or she has concluded that independence is not impaired. The auditor should consider whether the audit committee, which, as stated in the Blue Ribbon Committee Report, may be viewed as a “guardian of investor interests and corporate accountability,” would consider the disclosure and discussion of the relationship beneficial to further its understanding of auditor independence in the company’s specific circumstances. While the decision regarding the matters to

be communicated will vary in each circumstance, and that decision is ultimately the auditor's, consideration should be given to communicating and discussing with the audit committee all non-audit services that the auditor has agreed to perform for the client.

**.08** Exhibit A provides examples of certain relationships that, depending on the specific facts and circumstances, may commonly be thought to bear on the auditor's independence. Exhibit A also includes relevant safeguards to ensure the auditor's continued independence.

## Exhibit A

**Consideration of Relationships and Other Matters  
That May Bear on Independence**

This Exhibit provides examples of relationships that, depending on the specific facts and circumstances, may reasonably be thought to bear on independence, along with typical safeguards that, if in place, may mitigate threats to the auditor's independence. The information that follows may be used as a guide in determining the types of relationships that may be disclosed by the auditor. These examples should not be considered all-inclusive, nor should it be construed that the example relationships would be required to be disclosed by all auditors in all cases.

**Employment:<sup>2</sup>**

**Disclosure of Relationship:** The former audit engagement partner joined the audit client as Vice President and Chief Financial Officer.

**Safeguards:** The accounting firm conducted a review of all services for this client that were performed by the former partner for an appropriate period preceding the employment offer and did not note any matters which would cause the firm to believe the former partner and the firm were not independent of the company. The accounting firm performed a review of the appropriateness of the assignments of the succeeding engagement partner and concurring review partner and considered the need for involvement of other partners with appropriate experience and stature to ensure an appropriate level of professional skepticism is maintained.

In addition, the accounting firm and the former partner have severed all relationships, including settlement of the former partner's capital account and settlement of retirement benefits to the extent required by the SEC's independence rules.

**Disclosure of Relationship:** The former audit engagement manager joined the audit client as Controller.

**Safeguards:** The accounting firm conducted a review of all services for this client that were performed by the former manager for an appropriate period preceding the employment offer and did not note any matters which would cause the firm to believe the former manager and the firm were not independent of the company. The accounting firm performed a review of the appropriateness of the assignment of the remaining engagement team to ensure that an appropriate level of professional skepticism is maintained.

**Disclosure of Relationship:** The office managing partner in the local office of the accounting firm accepted a position with the audit client as Chief Operating Officer. Such partner provided no professional services to the company prior to his/her employment.

**Safeguards:** The accounting firm performed a review of the appropriateness of the assignments of engagement partner and concurring review partner and considered the need for involvement of other partners with appropriate experience and stature to ensure an appropriate level of professional

(continued)

<sup>2</sup> On March 12, 1999, the ISB issued a Discussion Memorandum, *Employment with Audit Clients*, to seek comments on a variety of independence issues when audit firm personnel accept employment with audit clients. Practitioners should be alert for developments in this area.

**Exhibit A—continued**

skepticism is maintained. In addition, the accounting firm and the former partner have severed all relationships, including settlement of the former partner's capital account and settlement of retirement benefits to the extent required by the SEC's independence rules.

**Family Relationships:**

**Disclosure of Relationship:** The audit client's Controller is the wife of a manager in the accounting firm's [city] office.

**Safeguards:** The accounting firm's manager will be restricted from performing any work for the audit client and his office will not participate in a significant portion of the audit engagement. All of the work on the engagement for the audit client will be performed by the accounting firm's office in [other city].

**Disclosure of Relationship:** One of the accounting firm's partners has a brother who is a director of the audit client.

**Safeguards:** Neither the partner nor the office to which he is assigned has any involvement in the accounting firm's engagement for the audit client. Further, the partner and his office are adequately geographically separated from both the residence of his brother and the office of the accounting firm performing the work on the engagement.

**Non-audit Services:**

**Disclosure of Relationship:** The accounting firm has been engaged to perform the following non-audit services:

- Extended audit services by outsourcing the internal audit function. Annual fees for this engagement are approximately [amount of fees].
- Assistance in the implementation of an accounting system [describe the system implemented]. Fees for this engagement were approximately [amount of fees].

**Safeguards:** In each case, management of the audit client has sufficient expertise to take responsibility for all management decisions that will be made and the accounting firm will not assume the role of an employee or of management of the audit client.

**Other Separate Business Arrangements Involving Mutual Clients:**

**Disclosure of Relationship:** The accounting firm and the audit client entered into separate business arrangements to provide advisory and consulting services which dealt with [describe nature of accounting firm's services] to a mutual third party. Fees for such services totaled approximately [amount of accounting firm's fees].

**Safeguards:** We believe this engagement does not constitute doing business with the client. In proposing for the services, the role of the accounting firm and the audit client were clearly defined through the use of separate proposals indicating the services for which each party was responsible. The third party has contracted separately with the accounting firm and the audit client such that neither party is dependent on the other party's performance and each party's liability and contractual obligations are separate.

## Engaging the Audit Committee

**.09** While the auditor must make the decision as to what is reported to the audit committee, engaging the audit committee chair in discussions regarding his or her views on relationships that may reasonably be thought to bear on independence may be a worthwhile approach to begin the process. If this approach is used, the audit committee chair should be asked by the auditor to express his or her views and concerns regarding the types of relationships that may reasonably be thought to bear on independence and, accordingly, would be expected to be disclosed. It is reasonable to assume that expectations may vary from company to company and the level of sensitivity as to independence issues may vary as well. These discussions should foster an open channel of communication between the parties relative to independence and other matters and should assist the auditor in understanding the audit committee's expectations regarding the types of relationships to be discussed.

**.10** While the PITF believes these discussions are worthwhile and should facilitate a meaningful discussion with the audit committee, in the final analysis, it is the auditor's judgment that must prevail with respect to the matters that get reported and discussed with the audit committee. Exhibit B provides the form of a sample letter to the audit committee chair that could be used to initiate these discussions.

**Exhibit B****Sample Letter to Audit Committee Chair**

July 15, 19x9  
Mr. [or Ms.] Smith  
Audit Committee Chair  
Blank Company  
Main Street  
City, State Zip Code

Dear Mr. [or Ms.] Smith:

In January 1999, the Independence Standards Board adopted Independence Standard No. 1, Independence Discussions with Audit Committees (the "Standard"). The Standard requires annual written and oral communications between our Firm and the Audit Committee of Blank Company regarding relationships that in our professional judgment may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence. Additionally, The Report and Recommendations of the Blue Ribbon Committee on Improving the Effectiveness of Corporate Audit Committees issued in February 1999 included a recommendation that the listing rules for both the New York Stock Exchange and the National Association of Securities Dealers require audit committee charters to specify that the audit committee is responsible for ensuring receipt of the communication required by the Standard. This recommendation also indicated the charter should specify that the audit committee is responsible for actively engaging in a dialogue with the auditors relating to the disclosure of any relationships or services that may reasonably be thought by the auditor to bear on independence and should take appropriate action, if necessary, to ensure the continued independence of the auditor.

In order to facilitate our independence discussions with the Audit Committee, I would like to meet with you to obtain an understanding of the expectations of you and the Audit Committee with respect to the types of matters and relationships between our Firm and Blank Company that you believe may bear on our independence. These may include specific areas of interest to you and the Audit Committee, as well as matters the Audit Committee and senior management believe should be considered because they may be of interest to the Audit Committee as a representative of Blank Company's investors.

I would be pleased to meet with you at your convenience to discuss your thoughts and views on auditor independence and related matters.

Yours truly,

## Threats to Objectivity and Related Safeguards

**.11** To assist audit committees in expanding their understanding of auditor independence issues, auditors are encouraged to periodically discuss emerging independence issues and new or revised independence standards.

**.12** To further assist these discussions, auditors also may consider providing the audit committee with an overview of common threats to auditor objectivity. While independence standards are designed to preclude relationships that may appear to impair an auditor's objectivity, additional safeguards have been developed by firms and the profession, and other external factors exist, that further mitigate threats to actual loss of objectivity.

**.13** Exhibit C provides a summary of common threats to auditor objectivity and related safeguards that mitigate these threats.

**Exhibit C****Common Threats to Auditor Objectivity and Related Safeguards  
Often Employed to Mitigate These Threats****Common Threats to Auditor Objectivity:**

- **Self-Interest:** The threat to the auditor's objectivity due to financial or other self-interests.
- **Self-Review:** The threat to the auditor's objectivity caused by a self-review of services performed by the auditor or the auditor's firm during the audit.
- **Advocacy:** The threat to the auditor's objectivity if the auditor becomes an advocate for (or against) the client's position.
- **Familiarity or Trust:** The threat of the auditor becoming too trusting of the client and therefore not maintaining appropriate professional skepticism.
- **Intimidation:** The threat of the auditor becoming intimidated or threatened by an overbearing or dominating member(s) of management.

**Related Safeguards Often Employed to Mitigate These Threats:***Instilling Professional Values:*

- Training
- Firm Policies on Independence
- Monitoring Investments
- Annual Confirmations of Compliance with Firm Independence Policies

*Communication:*

- Audit Team Disagreement Resolution Process
- Consultation Requirements
- Separate National Consultation Function

*Internal Accountability:*

- Partner Rotation
- Concurring Partner Reviews
- Internal Inspection/Monitoring Programs
- Analysis of Regulatory and Litigation Experience
- Internal Disciplinary Actions
- Partner and Staff Evaluation and Compensation Methods

*Risk Management:*

- Client Acceptance and Retention Policies
- New Service Line Acceptance Policies

*External Factors:*

- Peer Review
- Quality Control Inquiry Committee (QCIC) Review
- Ethics Investigations (by the AICPA, state societies and state boards)
- SEC Enforcement Division
- Litigation Threat
- Reputational Threat

## Form of Communication

**.14** Communications from the auditor to the audit committee should disclose the relationships identified that may reasonably be thought to bear on independence. Disclosure should not be construed to imply that the auditor's independence has been impaired. In fact, it is presumed that the auditor has concluded that independence has not been impaired. Rather, disclosure of the relationships is a tool to foster discussion between the auditor and the audit committee regarding the nature of the relationship.

**.15** The Standard requires that written communications summarize the relationship(s) identified. The auditor may wish to include in its written communications the relevant safeguards employed by the firm (see Exhibit A) to ensure the auditor's continued independence. Oral communications should include an open candid discussion relating to the relationship and a discussion of the relevant safeguards.

**.16** The Standard also requires that the written communication include a confirmation that, in the auditor's professional judgment, the auditor is independent of the company within the meaning of the Securities Acts.

**.17** Exhibit D provides the form of a sample letter relating to annual independence discussions with audit committees and confirmation that the auditor is independent of the company within the meaning of the Securities Acts.

**Exhibit D****Sample Letter Relating to Annual Independence  
Discussions With Audit Committees**

September 15, 19x9

The Audit Committee [or the Board of Directors]

Blank Company

Main Street

City, State Zip Code

Dear Audit Committee Members:

We have been engaged to audit the consolidated financial statements of Blank Company (the "Company") for the year ending December 31, 19x9.

Our professional standards require that we communicate at least annually with you regarding all relationships between our Firm and the Company that, in our professional judgment, may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence. [We have previously communicated with Mr./Ms. Smith, Chair of the Audit Committee, to obtain his/her views as to the nature of the matters that should be reported to the Audit Committee.] We have prepared the following comments to facilitate our discussion with you regarding independence matters. [After the initial year, this last sentence might be revised to read: "We have prepared the following comments to facilitate our discussion with you regarding independence matters arising since September 15, 19x9, the date of our last letter."]

We are aware of the following relationships between our Firm and the Company that, in our professional judgment, may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence. The following relationships represent matters that have occurred during 19x9, the initial year of adoption, through September 15, 19x9.

[Describe any significant relationships or matters bearing on the Firm's independence, and also discuss the appropriate safeguards in place. See Exhibit A for examples.]

[OR]

We are not aware of any relationships between our Firm and the Company that, in our professional judgment, may reasonably be thought to bear on our independence which have occurred during 19x9, the initial year of adoption, through September 15, 19x9.

We hereby confirm that as of September 15, 19x9, we are independent accountants with respect to the Company, within the meaning of the Securities Acts administered by the Securities and Exchange Commission and the requirements of the Independence Standards Board.

This report is intended solely for the use of the Audit Committee, the Board of Directors, management, and others within the Company and should not be used for any other purposes.

We look forward to discussing with you the matters addressed in this letter as well as other matters that may be of interest to you at our upcoming meeting on September 30, 19x9. We will be prepared to answer any questions you may have regarding our independence as well as other matters.

Yours truly,

**.18** While this Alert focuses on the Standard, it is recognized that communications with audit committees, whether written or oral, are broader than independence. For example, membership requirements of the AICPA SEC Practice Section require annual communication of the nature of and the amount of fees billed for management advisory [consulting] services. Generally accepted auditing standards require communications of matters regarding internal control, including material weaknesses identified, and various other matters.

**.19** The recently issued Blue Ribbon Committee Report contains recommendations that will likely result in additional required discussions with audit committees, including dialogue on accounting principles. Without in any way reducing the importance of the independence discussion, the auditor may choose a more comprehensive form of communication to cover some or all of these other matters.

## Timing of Discussions with Audit Committees

**.20** Annually, the auditor should meet with the audit committee to discuss all applicable relationships (actual and, preferably, proposed) between the company and the auditor. It may be beneficial to establish a schedule of regular meetings to discuss independence matters with the audit committee, including the timing for the annual independence confirmation. To enhance the effectiveness of the process, early communication to the audit committee of significant new matters might be considered at the time the relationship is established or the matter is first identified, rather than waiting until the meeting.

**.21** The annual meeting desirably should be conducted as early as possible in the audit cycle. However, it should be noted that the ISB intentionally left the timing flexible as long as the communication is done annually. It is entirely acceptable to have the communication at any time, preferably prior to the issuance of the auditor's report. If the formal communication takes place early in the audit cycle, the auditor and the audit committee should establish a protocol to update the audit committee for any new or proposed relationships requiring communication that may have occurred since the initial communication.

**.22** If the formal communication takes place near the end of the audit cycle, it may be desirable to combine the independence discussions with other required communications.

## Other Matters

### Initial Public Offerings

**.23** Auditors and audit committees of first time registrants must comply with the Standard prior to the company's initial public offering. These communications are required for all audits of financial statements with fiscal years ending after July 15, 1999, and included in the registration statement in the company's initial public offering. Thus, this may require involvement of both the current auditor and a predecessor auditor, if there has been a change of auditors during this period. Early communication between the auditor and the audit committee is encouraged to proactively identify and resolve any potential issues regarding the auditor's independence early in the offering process.

## **Initial Year of Application**

**.24** The Standard requires annual discussion between the auditor and the audit committee. For existing registrants in the initial year of application, these discussions are only required to cover relationships that exist in the current year. Thus, where a change of auditor has occurred, the discussions would only require involvement of the current auditor.

## **Prospective Clients**

**.25** Auditors are encouraged to discuss relationships that may exist with prospective clients during the proposal process. Discussion should include identification of the relationship, a discussion of safeguards that may mitigate these threats and, where necessary, identification of the methods to resolve potential impairments of independence prior to commencement of the audit.

## **Failure to Comply with the Standard**

**.26** The ISB recognized the possibility that there might be occasions where the required communications are not completed. This could occur for a variety of reasons, including unexpected cancellation of a scheduled meeting with the audit committee, or the inadvertent failure to schedule and complete the meeting or the auditor's failure to issue a written confirmation of its independence with respect to the company.

**.27** The ISB did not intend that an isolated and inadvertent violation of the Standard's requirements would constitute a per se impairment of the auditor's independence, provided that the auditor is in compliance with all other independence rules. The ISB specifically recognized that in such circumstances, the violation could be "cured" through the prompt completion of the procedures. In the unlikely event that the auditor encounters difficulty in completing these procedures either initially or at the time a "cure" is attempted, prompt communication with the audit committee and the board of directors should be undertaken to highlight the effect of the failure to comply with the Standard on the company.

**.28** The ISB also recognized that the auditor could, but is not required to, withhold his or her audit report until such discussion with the audit committee took place.

---

[The next page is 50,911.]



**Section 16,140****Practice Alert 99-2**  
**How the Use of a Service Organization**  
**Affects Internal Control Considerations**

July/August 1999

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing audit literature, the professional experience of the members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by SEC Practice Section member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and is not an official position of the AICPA. Official positions are determined through certain specific committee procedures, due process and deliberation. The information provided herein should be used only with the understanding that it is to be read in conjunction with the professional literature and that it is only a means of assisting auditors in meeting their professional responsibilities.

**Introduction**

**.01** Obtaining a Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 70 report may be an efficient means of satisfying the requirements of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) with respect to service organizations. There have been recent examples of situations where a user organization's auditor did not obtain a SAS No. 70 report and did not employ alternative approaches to obtaining the necessary information. There also have been recent examples where a SAS No. 70 report was obtained but the report was not sufficient for the user auditor's purposes or was not needed. This may result from the user auditor not having a sufficient understanding of SAS No. 70, *Service Organizations*, or the different types of SAS No. 70 reports that are issued (i.e., Type 1 and Type 2 reports). Today, more and more companies are outsourcing activities to service organizations. In doing so, there often is a belief by the user organization that the service organization can be totally relied upon and that the user organization needs only to provide very limited, if any, controls. It is in these situations that it is critical for the user auditor to consider the guidance in SAS No. 70 and the implications the service organization may have to his/her audit.

**.02** Many companies and organizations use outside service organizations to provide services ranging from performing specific tasks (such as maintaining custody of marketable securities) to replacing entire departments (such as performing all computer processing). They generally use such organizations because they do not have the internal expertise or skills to perform the services or it is cost effective to outsource the service. Examples of service organizations are:

- Data processing service organizations that perform such services as payroll, billing, general ledger accounting and other administrative functions.
- Trust departments of financial service companies.
- Mortgage loan servicers.
- Organizations providing services for employee benefit plans, such as providing investment management, custody of investments, record keeping of employee or participant data, processing employee benefit claims, and other accounting or administrative functions.

## Factors to Consider in Planning an Audit

**.03** Professional standards require that the auditor obtain an understanding of an entity's internal controls sufficient to plan the audit. The understanding is obtained by performing procedures to gain knowledge about the design of the controls relevant to the audit of the financial statements and whether they have been placed in operation. The requirement to understand internal control may extend beyond the controls in place at the entity's physical environment and may extend to other organizations who perform services on behalf of the entity to assist it in the recording, processing, summarizing and reporting of information in its financial statements. SAS No. 70 provides guidance for auditing an entity when a service organization's services are part of the user organization's information system.

## When the User Auditor's Planning Should Consider the Guidance in SAS No. 70

**.04** A user auditor should consider the guidance in SAS No. 70 whenever a service organization's services are part of the user organization's information system. A service organization's services would meet that criterion if they affect:

- How the user organization's transactions are initiated.
- The accounting records, supporting information, and specific accounts in the financial statements involved in the processing and reporting of the user organization's transactions.
- The accounting processing involved from the initiation of the transactions to their inclusion in the financial statements.
- The financial reporting process used to prepare the user organization's financial statements, including significant accounting estimates and disclosures.
- The guidance in SAS No. 70 does not relate to an entity that obtains a service from another organization that is limited to executing a client's transactions that are authorized by the client. Examples of such services are when a bank processes checking account transactions and when a broker processes securities transactions that are initiated by the client.
- The significance of the service organization's controls depends primarily on the nature and materiality of the transactions it processes for

the user organization and the degree of interaction between the internal controls at the user organization and the controls at the service organization.

## Nature and Materiality of the Transactions

**.05** If the transactions processed or accounts affected by the service organization are material to the user organization's financial statements, the user auditor may need to obtain an understanding of the controls at the service organization. In certain situations, the transactions processed and accounts affected may not appear to be material to the user organization's financial statements, but the nature of the transactions processed may require that the user auditor obtain an understanding of those controls. Such a situation might exist when a service organization provides third-party administration services to self-insured organizations providing health insurance benefits to employees. Although transactions processed and accounts affected may not appear to be material to the user organization's financial statements, the user auditor may need to gain an understanding of the controls at the third-party administrator because improper processing may result in a material understatement of the liability for unpaid claims.

**.06** Information about the nature of the service provided by a service organization may be available from a variety of sources, such as SAS No. 70 reports by service auditors, user manuals, system overviews, technical manuals, the contract between the user organization and the service organization, and reports by internal auditors, or regulatory authorities on the service organization's controls.

## Degree of Interaction

**.07** The degree of interaction relates to the extent to which a user organization is able to and decides to implement effective internal controls over the processing performed by the service organization and on the nature of the services provided by the service organization.

**.08** If the user organization implements highly effective internal controls over the processing of transactions at the service organization, the user auditor may not need to gain an understanding of the controls at the service organization in order to plan the audit. For example, if the user organization has such controls, the user auditor could obtain an understanding of the controls by performing a walkthrough at his/her client.

**.09** If the user organization has a low degree of interaction and has not placed into operation effective internal controls over the activities of the service organization, the user auditor would most likely need to gain an understanding of the relevant controls at the service organization in order to plan the audit in accordance with GAAS.

**.10** If the user organization relies on controls at the service organization to prevent or detect errors that would have an impact on its financial statements, the user auditor must understand those controls.

**.11** The understanding of the service organization should include an understanding of the control environment, risk assessment, control activities,

information and communication and monitoring relevant to the audit of the client's financial statements. The understanding should include knowledge about the design of the controls and whether they have been placed in operation. The understanding of the controls should enable the user auditor to:

- Identify the types of potential misstatements that could occur in the client financial statements.
- Consider the factors that affect the risk of misstatement.
- Design substantive tests.

Failure to obtain such an understanding from either the client or the service organization may cause the user auditor to consider whether a scope limitation on the audit has occurred.

## Factors to Consider in Assessing Control Risk

**.12** After the user auditor obtains an understanding of the relevant controls at both the user organization and the service organization and considers the factors that affect the risk of material misstatement, he or she should assess control risk for the financial statement assertions. As previously stated, if the user organization has implemented certain controls over the service organization's activities that effectively operate to prevent or detect material misstatements in its financial statements, the user auditor may be able to perform the audit without identifying and testing controls at the service organization.

**.13** Generally, the user auditor can identify relevant controls at a service organization by reading the service auditor's report, either a Type 1 or Type 2 report. Information about the operating effectiveness of the controls at the service organization are only included in a Type 2 report. Control risk can only be assessed below the maximum, if evidential matter is obtained using one or a combination of the following ways:

- By testing the user organization's controls over the activities of the service organization.
- By obtaining a service auditor's report (Type 2) on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness, or a report on the application of agreed-upon procedures that describes relevant tests of controls.
- By the user auditor performing appropriate tests of controls at the service organization.

Following is a further discussion of when each of these activities may apply.

**.14** The user organization may establish effective controls over the service organization's activities that may be tested and that may enable the user auditor to reduce the assessed level of control risk below the maximum for some or all of the related assertions. For example, if a user organization uses an EDP service center to process payroll transactions, the user organization may establish controls over input and output data to prevent or detect material misstatements. The user organization might recalculate the service organization's payroll computations on a test basis. In this situation, the user auditor may perform tests of the user organization's controls over data processing that would provide a basis for assessing control risk below the maximum for the assertions related to payroll transactions. The user auditor may decide that obtaining evidence of the operating effectiveness of the service organization's controls, such as those over changes in payroll programs, is not necessary or efficient.

**.15** The user auditor may find that controls relevant to assessing control risk below the maximum for the particular assertions are applied only at the service organization. If the user auditor plans to assess control risk below the maximum for specified assertions, the user auditor should obtain evidence of the operating effectiveness of these controls by obtaining and evaluating a service auditor's report that describes the results of the service auditor's tests of those controls, or by performing tests of controls at the service organization.

**.16** If the user auditor decides to use a service auditor's report, the user auditor should consider the extent of the evidence provided by the report concerning the effectiveness of controls intended to prevent or detect material misstatements regarding the particular assertions. The user auditor remains responsible for evaluating the evidence presented by the service auditor and for determining the effect of this evidence on the assessment of control risk at the user organization.

**.17** Because SAS No. 70 reports may be intended to satisfy the needs of several different user auditors, a user auditor should determine whether the specific tests of controls and results in the service auditor's reports are relevant to assertions that are significant in the user organization's financial statements. For those tests of controls and results that are relevant, a user auditor should consider whether the nature, timing and extent of such tests of controls and results provide sufficient evidence about the effectiveness of the controls to support the user auditor's desired assessment of the level of control risk. In evaluating these factors, the user auditor should also keep in mind that the shorter the time period covered by the tests of controls and the longer the time elapsed since the performance of the tests, the less support for control risk reduction the tests may provide.

## **SAS No. 70 Reports**

### **Types of Reports**

**.18** There are two types of SAS No. 70 reports:

- Reports on controls placed in operation (Type 1). Such a report may provide a user auditor with an understanding of the controls in operation at a service organization and whether they are suitably designed to achieve specific control objectives. A Type 1 report may be useful in providing the user auditor with an understanding of controls necessary to plan the audit and to design effective tests of controls and substantive tests at the user organization, but it is not intended to provide the user auditor with a basis for reducing his/her assessment of control risk below the maximum.
- Reports on controls placed in operation and tests of operating effectiveness (Type 2). Such a report may provide the user auditor with an understanding of controls in operation at a service organization and whether they are suitably designed to achieve specific control objectives. Also, a Type 2 report indicates whether the controls that were tested were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable assurance that the control objectives were achieved. This report may provide the user auditor with an understanding of controls necessary to plan the audit and may also provide a basis for reducing his/her assessment of control risk below the maximum.

## What Is Included in the Reports

**.19** A SAS No. 70 report typically includes the following items:

- Service organization's description of controls placed in operation as of a specific date.
- Service organization's description of the specified control objectives.
- Auditor's opinion on whether the description presents fairly, in all material respects, the relevant aspects of the service organization's controls that had been placed in operation as of a specified date.
- Auditor's opinion on whether the controls were suitably designed to provide reasonable assurance that the specified control objectives would be achieved if those controls were complied with satisfactorily.
- Auditor's opinion as to whether the controls that were tested were operating with sufficient effectiveness to provide reasonable, but not absolute, assurance that the control objectives specified in the report were achieved during the specified period (Type 2 reports only).

## Considerations in Using the Reports

**.20** After determining the need for a SAS No. 70 report, some auditors have a tendency to simply obtain the report and place it in the audit working papers. This clearly does not satisfy the requirements of GAAS.

**.21** In considering whether the service auditor's report is satisfactory for his/her purposes, the user auditor should make inquiries concerning the service auditor's professional reputation as discussed in SAS No. 1, section 543, as amended.

**.22** The user auditor may want to consider reading the report to determine whether the service auditor demonstrates an understanding of the subject matter. If the user auditor believes that the service auditor's report may not be sufficient to meet his/her objectives, the user auditor may consider supplementing his/her understanding of the service auditor's procedures and conclusions by discussing with the service auditor the scope and results of the service auditor's work.

**.23** Also, if necessary, the user auditor may contact the service organization to perform additional testing (this is usually arranged by the user organization). This additional testing can be performed by the service auditor (e.g., by applying agreed-upon procedures at the request of the user auditor) or by the user auditor.

**.24** The user auditor should not make reference to the report of the service auditor as a basis, in part, for his/her opinion on the user organization's financial statements. The service auditor's report is used in the audit, but the service auditor is not responsible for examining any portion of the user organization's financial statements as of any date or for any period. Thus, there cannot be a division of responsibility for the audit of the user organization's financial statements.

## Timing Considerations in Using the Reports

**.25** A service organization's description of controls is as of a specified date for both a Type 1 and Type 2 report. Accordingly, the service auditor issues a report on whether the description presents fairly, in all material respects, the

relevant aspects of the service organization's controls at a specified date. Such information may be used to plan the audit of a user organization's financial statements in the same way that an auditor's understanding of internal controls at a specified date is used to plan the audit of the financial statements of an entity that does not use a service organization.

**.26** A report on controls placed in operation that is as of a date outside the reporting period of a user organization may be useful in providing a user auditor with a preliminary understanding of the controls placed in operation at the service organization, if the report is supplemented by additional current information from other sources. If the service organization's description is as of a date that precedes the beginning of the period under audit, the user auditor should consider updating the information in the description to determine whether there have been any changes in the service organization's controls relevant to the processing of the user organization's transactions. Procedures to update the information in a service auditor's report may include:

- Discussions with user organization personnel who would be in a position to know about changes at the service organization.
- A review of current documentation and correspondence issued by the service organization.
- Discussion with service organization personnel or with the service auditor.

If the user auditor determines that there have been significant changes in the service organization's controls, the user auditor should attempt to gain an understanding of the changes and consider the effect of those changes on his/her audit.

## Conclusion

**.27** SAS No. 70 provides guidance on factors an independent auditor should consider when auditing the financial statements of an entity that uses a service organization. This Alert clarifies and highlights factors an auditor should consider in those audits. SAS No. 70 also provides guidance for independent auditors who issue reports on the processing of transactions by a service organization for use by other auditors, but this Alert does not address those circumstances. This Alert should be read as a complement to SAS No. 70. Terms such as user auditor and service auditor are defined in SAS No. 70.

**.28** The AICPA recently issued an updated version of the Auditing Practice Release, *Service Organizations: Applying SAS No. 70*. This publication (AICPA Publication Number 060457-CLD7) provides extensive guidance to auditors performing (1) an audit of a user organization's financial statements and (2) procedures at a service organization that will enable them to issue a service auditors report on a service organization's controls that may affect user organizations. This publication can be purchased by calling (888) 777-7077.

---

[The next page is 50,931.]



**Section 16,150*****Practice Alert 00-1***  
***Accounting for Certain Equity Transactions***

January, 2000

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing professional literature, the professional experience of the members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by SEC Practice Section member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and is not an official position of the AICPA. Official positions are determined through certain specific committee procedures, due process and deliberation. The information provided herein should be used only with the understanding that it is to be read in conjunction with the professional literature and that it is only a means of assisting auditors in meeting their professional responsibilities.

**.01** Equity or capital transactions are often complex and should involve close scrutiny by auditors. As highlighted at the conclusion of this Alert, substantial additional guidance is available addressing differing forms of equity or capital transactions. In this Alert, the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) will provide some of the more common examples which require careful consideration to determine the appropriate accounting treatment.

**Stock Issued for Goods and Services**

**.02** Start-up companies commonly issue stock in exchange for property, services, or any other form of asset other than cash. The general rule to be applied when equity instruments are issued to non-employees for property or services other than cash is that the transaction should be recorded at the fair value of the consideration received or the fair value of the equity instruments issued, whichever is more reliably measurable.

**.03** An example of the above is as follows:

ABC Manufacturing Inc. purchased inventory from their vendor XYZ & Co. In lieu of cash, ABC issued 1,000 shares of common stock to XYZ. ABC is a closely held company and the value of its stock has no readily determinable market value.

In the above example, ABC should determine the fair value of the inventory they are purchasing and assign that value to the inventory. Assuming the fair value of the inventory was estimated at \$2,500, the accounting entry would be to record inventory at the fair value (\$2,500) with the corresponding credits being recorded to common stock and additional paid-in capital.

**.04** Similarly, if ABC issued stock to compensate XYZ for services performed, the services would generally be valued at the estimated fair value of the services, because the services are generally more reliably measurable than the fair value of the securities issued. The manner in which the services are recorded (e.g., capitalize versus expense) will depend on the nature of the services and their treatment under generally accepted accounting principles.

**.05** An example of this scenario follows:

Mr. Baylor, a consultant who is not considered a founder or an insider of ABC, performs 1,000 hours of services for 10,000 shares of ABC's common stock. The stock has no readily determinable market value. Mr. Baylor typically charges his clients \$100 an hour.

In this instance the most reliable measurable value would appear to be Mr. Baylor's services valued at 1,000 hours multiplied by \$100 an hour, or \$100,000. Thus, the ABC would record an expense for \$100,000 and credits to common stock and paid-in capital for \$100,000.

**.06** In circumstances where the stock issued has no readily determinable market value and the goods and or services received cannot be measured objectively and reliably, a company generally should record the asset or service at a nominal value.

**.07** Another example of the above concepts follows:

Mr. Smith, who is not an insider or founder of the company, contributes raw land to a start-up company that will be used to build its manufacturing facility. The land was willed to Mr. Smith 20 years ago and has never been appraised. In exchange for the land, the company issues Mr. Smith 500,000 shares of the company's convertible preferred stock. The company's convertible preferred stock has no active trading, but a valuation was performed by a consultant six months before the land was donated. Mr. Smith is the consultant's uncle. The question is how do you value this transaction.

The above example demonstrates the complexities of equity transactions. First, the valuation of the company's stock by Mr. Smith's nephew would probably not be considered to be a reliable measure due to the fact that they are related parties. If practical, an appraisal of the land by an independent, qualified person may be a reliable measure. However, if an independent, qualified person performed the appraisal of the company's stock, this value may also be a reliable measure. If neither can be reliably measurable, the asset should be recorded at a nominal value.

**.08** The use of the book, par, or stated value of the stock as a basis for valuation is not appropriate. Similarly the contractual value assigned to goods, services or other assets received does not represent an appropriate surrogate measure of their value. The company should be able to furnish evidence to outside parties as to how the fair value of the goods, services or other assets was determined, as in the example cited above involving the transaction with Mr. Baylor. In that example, Mr. Baylor kept time records for his consulting services.

**.09** Emerging Issues Task Force (EITF) 96-18, *Accounting for Equity Instruments That Are Issued to Other Than Employees for Acquiring, or in Conjunction with Selling, Goods or Services*, provides numerous examples of situations where (1) the fair value of the equity instrument is more reliably measurable than the fair value of the goods or services received and (2) the counterparty receives shares of stock, stock options or other equity instruments in settlement of all or a part of a transaction.

.10 EITF 96-18 also addresses the measurement date for accounting for equity instruments that are issued to other than employees in exchange for goods and services. The EITF reached a consensus that the issuer should measure the fair value of the equity instruments using the stock price and other measurement assumptions at the earlier of either of the following:

1. The date at which a commitment for performance by the counterparty to earn the equity instrument is reached (referred to as a “performance commitment”), or
2. The date at which the counterparty’s performance is complete.

.11 Examples 1–3 of Exhibit 96-18A of EITF 96-18, describe transactions in which a performance commitment exists prior to the time that the counterparty’s performance is complete. Examples 4–7 describe transactions in which a performance commitment does not exist prior to the time the counterparty’s performance is complete.

.12 EITF 96-18 is extremely complex. This very brief summary should not be relied upon without a complete reading and understanding of the pronouncement itself. It is mentioned only as a reminder of an important source of authoritative literature on accounting for equity transactions.

## Stock Issued to an Owner for Expertise or Intellectual Capital Contributed to Business

.13 Companies sometimes issue stock to an owner for expertise contributed to a business, such as a patent or other intellectual capital. Such circumstances are most common immediately prior to an initial public offering (IPO). The question is what value should the company place on the asset acquired.

.14 The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) states in Staff Accounting Bulletin (SAB) Topic 5-G, *Acquisition of Assets from Promoters and Shareholders in Exchange for Common Stock*, that “transfers of nonmonetary assets to a company by its promoters or shareholders in exchange for stock prior to or at the time of the company’s initial public offering normally should be recorded at the transferor’s historical cost basis determined under generally accepted accounting principles”.

.15 The following is an example applying the above principle:

Mr. Norton, a founder of ABC Industries, Inc., contributes a patent to ABC in exchange for stock immediately prior to ABC’s IPO. The patent was obtained by Mr. Norton at a cost of \$1,000 (filing fees). The remainder of the costs associated with the patent relate to Mr. Norton’s own time developing the intellectual property. If Mr. Norton maintained books in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, the patent would be recorded on those books at \$1,000. Therefore, when the patent is contributed, ABC should record the patent at \$1,000 with corresponding credits to common stock and additional paid-in capital.

## Employee Stock Options

.16 The financial accounting and reporting standards for stock-based employee compensation plans are contained in the Financial Accounting Standards Board’s (FASB) Statement No. 123, *Accounting for Stock-Based*

*Compensation*, and the Accounting Principles Board's (APB) Opinion 25, *Accounting for Stock Issued to Employees*. These pronouncements cover all arrangements by which employees receive shares of stock or other equity instruments of the employer or the employer incurs liabilities to employees in amounts based on the price of the employer's stock. Examples are stock purchase plans, stock options, restricted stock, and stock appreciation rights.

**.17** FASB Statement No. 123 prescribes a *fair value method* of accounting for an employee stock option or similar equity instrument and encourages all entities to adopt that method of accounting for all of their employee stock compensation plans. However, FASB Statement No. 123 also permits an entity to continue to measure compensation cost for those plans using the *intrinsic value method* of accounting prescribed by APB Opinion 25. Where entities elect to continue using the accounting in APB Opinion 25, they are required to make pro forma disclosures of net income and, if presented, earnings per share, as if the fair value method of FASB Statement No. 123 had been applied.

**.18** Under the fair value method, compensation cost is measured at the grant date based on the value of the award and is recognized over the service period, which is usually the vesting period. Under the intrinsic value-based method, compensation cost is the excess, if any, of the quoted market price of the stock at grant date or other measurement date over the amount an employee must pay to acquire the stock.

**.19** The determination of fair value, either for accounting under FASB Statement No. 123 or the pro forma disclosures under APB Opinion 25, can be achieved through use of an option-pricing model (for example, the Black-Scholes or a binomial model) that takes into account, as of the grant date, the exercise price and expected life of the option, the current price of the underlying stock and its expected volatility, expected dividends on the stock, and the risk-free interest rate for the expected term of the option. The discussion of stock option valuation techniques is beyond the scope of this Alert but further guidance is available in FASB Statement No. 123. Also, for some non-public entities with minimal trading information upon which to assess price volatility as required for traditional option valuation techniques, the entity may use a minimum value method. Under the minimum value method, the stock option value is generally considered to equal the current price of the stock reduced by the present value of the expected dividends on the stock, if any, during the option's term minus the present value of the exercise price. For this purpose the present value discount is based on the risk-free rate of return. However, the minimum value could also be computed using the standard option-pricing model and volatility of zero.

**.20** It also is important to note that FASB Statement No. 123 requires a fair value method for all equity awards to non-employees, and use of the minimum value method, as described in the preceding paragraph, is not appropriate. This is demonstrated in the above sections of this Alert.

**.21** Where options are granted near an IPO, the value at which stock is issued in the IPO should be carefully considered in assessing the market value of options. For such grants, the SEC staff expects the registrant to have objective evidence to support its determination of "fair value." Such objective evidence would include contemporaneous third-party transactions and independent appraisals. "Rule of thumb" discounts, management estimates, related-party transactions (even for cash), and general market data do not represent objective evidence for this purpose. The most objective evidence that

can be used to support the value assigned to stock, options, or warrants is information from a contemporaneous transaction where the value of the consideration received for the company's securities is objectively measurable, i.e., an equity transaction with a third party for cash that is entered into in the same time frame. Absent a contemporaneous transaction, an independent appraisal can form the basis for the valuation. The independent appraisal should have been performed at the time the stock, options, or warrants were issued. Appraisals performed "after the fact" are not acceptable. If the appraised value of the stock is substantially below the IPO price, the company must be able to reconcile the difference between the appraised value and the IPO price, i.e., explain the events or factors that support the difference in values.

**.22** In 1999, the FASB issued an exposure draft addressing several issues regarding the accounting for employee stock options and awards under APB Opinion 25. Comments have been submitted and the FASB is re-deliberating many of the conclusions expressed in the exposure draft. A final interpretation of these issues is expected early in 2000. At this time it is expected that practice with respect to many aspects of APB Opinion 25 will be changed as a result of the interpretation.

## Retroactive Earnings per Share Adjustment for Cheap Stock

**.23** Cheap stock refers to stock issued for nominal consideration (i.e., a price below the price at which stock is subsequently sold in a public issuance of shares) to employees or others closely related to the company. SAB 98 Topic 4-D, *Earnings per Share Computations in an Initial Public Offering*, describes the SEC's position on this issue.

**.24** In applying the requirements of FASB Statement No. 128, *Earnings per Share*, the SEC staff believes that nominal issuances are recapitalizations in substance. Accordingly, in computing basic earnings per share (EPS) for the periods covered by income statements included in the registration statement and in subsequent filings with the SEC, nominal issuances of common stock should be reflected in a manner similar to a stock split or stock dividend for which retroactive treatment is required by paragraph 54 of FASB Statement No. 128. Consequently, in computing basic EPS, nominal issuances of common stock would be included for all periods; whereas in computing diluted EPS for such periods, nominal issuances of common stock and potential common stock (e.g., options) would be included for all periods. In addition, use of the treasury stock method is not allowed and retroactive treatment is required even if anti-dilutive.

**.25** This retroactive presentation of such nominal issuances as outstanding for all historical periods in the computation of EPS does not alter the requirement that entities determine whether the recognition of compensation expense for any issuance of equity instruments to employees is necessary.

**.26** Guidance has not been provided on what constitutes "nominal consideration." SAB Topic 4-D states that it should be determined based upon facts and circumstances by a comparison of the "consideration an entity receives" to the security's fair value (at the date of the issuance).

## Extinguishment of Related Party Debt

**.27** The AICPA frequently receives questions about whether an entity should record an expense or a charge to equity when a company forgives a receivable from an individual that is a related party of the company. Typically in such situations, the company should record a charge to equity. As a reminder, it should be noted that in certain circumstances, such receivables from related parties often are recorded as a reduction in equity rather than as an asset. This is sometimes required, depending on the nature of the receivable, by the SEC (see SAB Topic 4-E, *Receivables from Sale of Stock*, and Topic 4-G, *Notes and Other Receivables from Affiliates*) and by EITF 85-1, *Classifying Notes Received for Capital Stock*.

**.28** Similar to a company forgiving a loan from a related party, sometimes a company's outstanding loan is forgiven by a related party. Such a forgiveness usually should be recorded as a credit to equity. (APB Opinion 26, *Early Extinguishment of Debt*, paragraph 20 states "that extinguishment transactions between related parties may be in essence capital transactions".)

## Other Accounting Literature Addressing Equity Transactions

**.29** When auditing and accounting for equity transactions, members should review the FASB *Current Text* and the EITF index for a more complete list of accounting literature on such transactions. There are more than 50 accounting pronouncements addressing various equity transactions, including numerous EITFs on the subject. This is indicative of and exemplifies the careful research that is necessary when dealing with equity transactions.

**.30** Furthermore, members should review the SEC's SAB Topics when auditing public companies. Several SAB Topics covering equity transactions have been referred to in this Alert.

## Summary

**.31** Accounting for equity transactions is complex and requires comprehensive research of accounting literature to ensure the appropriate accounting treatment. The above examples provide a summary of the appropriate accounting for certain equity transactions.

---

[The next page is 50,941.]

**Section 16,160****Practice Alert 00-2**  
**Guidance for Communication With Audit Committees Regarding Alternative Treatments of Financial Information Within Generally Accepted Accounting Principles**

First Issued  
April, 2000;  
Updated March, 2004

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide practitioners with information that may help them improve the effectiveness and efficiency of their engagements and practices and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of the members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by certain AICPA member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an *Other Auditing Publication* as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. Other Auditing Publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply SASs. If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an *Other Auditing Publication*, the auditor should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of the subject audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

**.01** The role of the audit committee with respect to overseeing management's financial reporting responsibilities and the independent auditor's audit of the financial statements has become increasingly important. Likewise, the auditor's responsibility with respect to communicating with the Audit Committee has also increased. This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that will assist them in preparing for and participating in discussions with audit committees.

**.02** In December 1999, the Auditing Standards Board (ASB) issued SAS No. 90, *Audit Committee Communications*. SAS No. 90 amended SAS No. 61, *Communication With Audit Committees*, to require the independent auditor of an SEC client to discuss with a client's audit committee certain information relating to the auditor's judgment about the quality, not just acceptability, of the entity's accounting principles. In addition, the amendment to SAS No. 61 encouraged a three-way discussion among the auditor, management and the audit committee. SAS No. 90 was issued in response to Recommendation No. 8 of the Blue Ribbon Committee on Improving the Effectiveness of Corporate Audit Committees (the "BRC"). The BRC was formed in response to recommendations by SEC Chairman Arthur Levitt and issued its final report in February 1999.

.03 Additionally, on July 30, 2002, President George W. Bush signed into law the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the “Act”). The Act created new requirements in the communication between auditors and their publicly held audit clients. Auditors must report to and be overseen by a company’s audit committee, not management. Section 204, *Auditor Reports to Audit Committees*, of the Act states:

Each registered public accounting firm that performs for any issuer any audit required by [Section 10A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934] shall timely report to the audit committee of the issuer—

1. All critical accounting policies and practices to be used;
2. All alternative treatments of financial information within generally accepted accounting principles that have been discussed with management officials of the issuer, ramifications of the use of such alternative disclosures and treatments, and the treatment preferred by the registered public accounting firm; and
3. Other material written communications between the registered public accounting firm and the management of the issuer, such as any management letter or schedule of unadjusted differences.

.04 The information in this Practice Alert was developed to assist auditors in the identification of matters that may be relevant to a discussion with an entity’s audit committee of all alternative treatments of financial information within generally accepted accounting principles that have been discussed with management officials of the issuer.

## Recommendations to Meet the Objectives of SAS No. 61 and the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002

.05 As previously stated, an auditor of any public company is required to timely report to that company’s audit committee all alternative treatments of financial information within generally accepted accounting principles that have been discussed with management officials of the issuer, ramifications of the use of such alternative disclosures and treatments, and the treatment preferred by the registered public accounting firm. To meet this requirement, auditors of public companies should consider the following:

- **Manner of Communications.** Communications should be understandable to all members of the audit committee.
- **Timeliness of Communications.** Discussions with the audit committee should be sufficiently frequent to ensure that audit committee members are advised of issues on a timely basis.
- **Relevance of Issues Discussed.** Periodic communications with the audit committee need not encompass all accounting principles, estimates and judgments. Rather, the communications could build on prior communications and address those accounting principles and unusual transactions that are more significant in any particular period’s financial statements. For example, an asset impairment policy might be discussed in greater detail in periods in which impairment charges are under consideration, including periods in which impairment charges were considered but determined not to be needed.

.06 The auditor may implement the three core communication considerations described above as follows:

### 1. **Manner of Communications**

The auditor should tailor communications with the audit committee to the professional and educational backgrounds of the committee members. The auditor can enhance the accounting and financial literacy of the audit committee members by providing presentations on accounting issues, professional publications and financial press articles that will help the members understand critical and significant accounting and financial reporting issues.

### 2. **Timeliness of Communications**

Timely communication is inherently dependent upon management, the audit committee and the independent auditor sharing a common understanding of the timetable and key milestones in the financial reporting continuum. The auditor should attempt to complete the quarterly reviews and annual audit procedures in sufficient time to provide for discussion of significant matters as required by SAS No. 61 with the audit committee on a timely basis and not later than the filing of the entity's Form 10-Q or Form 10-K.

### 3. **Relevance of Issues Discussed**

Topics that the auditor should discuss with the audit committee would include but not be limited to the following:

1. **The accounting principles applied by the entity for which acceptable alternative principles are available.** The manner in which each significant alternative accounting principle would affect the transparency, understandability and usefulness of the financial information could be discussed. The discussion could include identification of the financial statement amounts that are affected by the choice of principles as well as information concerning accounting principles used by peer group companies. **Pursuant to the requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, the auditor must report to the audit committee as to the treatment preferred by the auditor.**
2. **Judgments and estimates that affect the financial statements.** The discussion with the audit committee may include major items for which judgments and estimates are significant, including how such judgments and estimates are determined and subsequently monitored. Generally a discussion of judgments and estimates would cover the appropriate disposition of previously established estimates when the events that caused their creation are no longer applicable. To the extent that judgments and estimates involve a range of possible outcomes, the discussion could indicate how the recorded estimate relates to the range and how various selections within the range would affect the financial reporting. In particular, if the entity has significant contingencies for which no recorded estimated liability has been provided, the discussion might consider the current and future financial statement impact of management's decisions. If the enterprise has recorded estimates that are "slow moving" in terms of resolution of the matters to which the estimate relates (e.g., litigation or environmental reserves), management and the auditor might address the continued need for the recorded estimate as well as the impact of changes in the estimate and the balance of the remaining estimated amount on

the perception of the enterprise's financial condition and performance. The adequacy of the disclosures of such contingencies, including the exposure to losses in excess of any recorded amounts, could also be discussed.

3. **Consideration of factors affecting asset and liability carrying values.** Management and the auditor could discuss factors including, but not limited to (a) the company's bases for determining useful lives assigned to tangible and intangible assets and salvage values, (b) discount rates used to value pension and post-retirement obligations, and (c) the carrying value of other assets and liabilities. The discussion should include the type and quality of evidence supportive of such factors. The discussion also might include an explanation of the manner in which factors affecting carrying values were selected and how alternative selections would have affected the financial condition and earnings of the enterprise. The audit committee generally should be made aware of the effect such judgments have on the financial statements.
4. **Use of special structures and timing of actions that affect financial statements.** Examples of special structures or timing decisions would include off balance sheet financing, research and development activities, and timing of transactions in order to recognize revenues or avoid recognition of expenses. Any special purpose financing structures or unusual transactions that affect ownership rights (such as leveraged recapitalizations, joint ventures, and preferred stock of subsidiaries) might be discussed with the audit committee. The discussion could include information about comparative structures used in practice and insight regarding the impact of these special structures on the risks and rewards of the entity and the timing and amounts of reported income and cash flow. The discussion also could address the impact of such structures on the transparency and understandability of the enterprise's economic position as compared to its financial statements.
5. **Evolving issues and choices that affect financial reporting.** Examples of issues and choices affecting financial reporting would include revenue recognition practices such as "gross versus net presentation" or "upfront recognition," outsourcing employee services, tax planning strategies, lease versus buy decisions, use of "restructuring plans," and classification of investments as held-to-maturity versus available-for-sale versus trading. The discussion should address not only the issues and choices but a comparison of how such choices affect financial reporting as compared to effects that would have resulted from other available choices.
6. **The frequency and significance of transactions with related parties particularly those that are not in the ordinary course of business.** Examples of these kinds of related party transactions include compensation arrangements, loans, related party leases, use of corporate assets, or employment of close relatives. The discussion could address such matters as whether the enterprise had similar transactions at similar prices with unrelated parties, whether transactions were undertaken on

a best available price basis, and whether the transactions or pricing of the transactions impacted financial reporting in any significant manner that would not be obvious to a user of the financial statements. Management and the auditor could consider informing the audit committee of the financial statement impact and disclosures of these items, as well as how such transactions reflect the underlying economics. The discussion might also address the adequacy and clarity of the disclosure of related party transactions.

Practitioners should be aware that the Nasdaq Stock Market, Inc. (the “Nasdaq”) requires that a company’s audit committee or another independent body of the board of directors review and approve all related party transactions.

7. **Unusual arrangements.** Examples of unusual arrangements would include bill-and-hold transactions, self-insurance, multi-element arrangements contemporaneously negotiated, and sales of assets or licensing arrangements with continuing involvement by the enterprise. Such arrangements could be brought to the attention of the audit committee members to ensure that they understand how the business and financial reporting is being affected. The discussion could address the manner in which financial reporting was affected by the transactions, the transparency of the financial reporting and disclosures, and the impact of the unusual transactions on the comparability of financial condition and performance among past and future periods.
8. **Clarity and transparency.** Management and the auditor could discuss the clarity and transparency of the financial statements and disclosures. Examples of items to discuss would include details about restructuring activities, activity in reserve accounts, market risk and other risk disclosures, details and comparative data discussed in management’s discussion and analysis, disclosure of alternative measures of performance whether in financial statements or other materials filed with the SEC or otherwise publicly distributed, and segment disclosures.
9. **Audit adjustments arising from the audit.** The discussion should address adjustments recommended by the auditor that, in the opinion of the auditor, have a significant effect on the entity’s financial reporting process. Further, because of the issuance of SAS No. 89, *Audit Adjustments*, the auditor also must inform the audit committee “about uncorrected misstatements aggregated by the auditor during the current engagement and pertaining to the latest period presented that were determined by management to be immaterial, both individually and in the aggregate, to the financial statements taken as a whole.” The auditor should also discuss the effect of unrecorded adjustments on subsequent years’ financial statements.
10. **Materiality thresholds and cost/benefit judgments.** The discussion could address the qualitative and quantitative criteria used by management in making its materiality assessments. The discussion could also address the performance measures or other specific factors considered in making materiality judgments, for example, whether materiality is measured in relation to

sales, gross margins, segment margin, specific financial statement line items, or before and after special non-recurring items. The discussion might address how the materiality criteria affect the period to period comparability of reported financial condition and results of operations.

## **Discussion of Quality, Not Acceptability or Preferability, of Accounting Principles and Judgments**

.07 Objective criteria have not been developed to aid in the consistent evaluation of an entity's accounting principles as applied in its financial statements. SAS No. 61, as amended, directs the discussion with the audit committee to include items that have a significant impact on whether the financial statements are representationally faithful, verifiable, neutral and consistent. These characteristics can serve as a basis for a discussion of quality in the broadest sense of the word since these are among the desired qualitative characteristics of accounting information as set forth in Financial Accounting Standards Board's Concepts Statement No. 2, *Qualitative Characteristics of Accounting Information* (CON 2).

## **Discussion of Aggressiveness vs. Conservatism in Financial Reporting**

.08 BRC Recommendation No. 8 suggests that the auditor's communication with the audit committee should address the degree of aggressiveness or conservatism of the accounting principles applied in the financial statements. The concept of aggressiveness or conservatism was viewed by many as too ambiguous to be dealt with effectively in response to the BRC recommendation. As a result, the amendment to SAS No. 61 that requires the auditor to discuss quality with the audit committee, as discussed above, addresses the BRC recommendation by requiring a discussion of items that have a significant impact on representational faithfulness, verifiability and neutrality of the accounting information included in the financial statements as those terms are defined in CON 2. Accordingly, a discussion of aggressiveness vs. conservatism is not required. If, however, either the auditor or the audit committee desire to discuss this concept, the following discussion may be helpful.

.09 Conservatism may be defined as prudent reaction to try to ensure that uncertainty and risks inherent in business situations are adequately considered. The term today is often misunderstood and has sometimes been used to defend accounting judgments that may not be fully supportable. As a result, the crossover between what is conservative and what is aggressive is sometimes difficult to distinguish. In the current financial reporting environment, actions that are conservative to one person may be viewed as aggressive by another. An entity that provides reserves for losses based on an overly pessimistic view (and thus may have excess reserves that can be released into earnings in future periods) may be viewed as aggressive in the current reporting environment notwithstanding past experience of companies being viewed as aggressive for having failed to provide adequate reserves. Providing for losses on a "too-much, too-soon" basis is as erroneous as providing for losses "too-little, too-late." Conservatism in financial reporting should not be used to justify understatement of income or assets.

.10 Financial statements are useful in making investment and lending decisions when an entity's accounting principles are applied in a manner that is

reasonable in light of all known circumstances. Discussions with the audit committee of the degree of aggressiveness or conservatism in financial reporting may take into account the financial reporting effects of accounting principles on all of the financial statements and all periods presented as well as expected future financial statement effects. For example, the use of inappropriately low salvage values for depreciable assets will result in the understatement of current period assets and income. This will, however, overstate income in future periods as the company benefits from the continued use of fully depreciated operating assets.

**.11** Choices among accounting principles and their application involve judgment. Judgments frequently involve the determination of a range of reasonableness. In practice, the terms conservative and aggressive are meant to connote management judgments that are within the range of reasonableness but are either on the low or on the high end of the range of reasonableness, respectively. Any discussions with the audit committee about the aggressiveness or conservatism of accounting principles should address the manner in which a reasonable range is determined and how choices are made and applied within that range.

## Summary

**.12** Under SAS No. 61 the auditor is required to communicate a number of matters, including the quality of an entity's accounting principles, with the entity's audit committee. The purpose of communication with the audit committee is to provide the audit committee with information that may assist it in overseeing the entity's financial accounting, reporting and disclosure process. The auditor's attention to the accounting and financial knowledge of audit committee members, the timing of communications, and the delivery of appropriate content in the proper context will enable auditors to provide significant insight and assistance to the audit committee to fulfill its oversight role while observing a high standard of professional practice.

---

[The next page is 50,961.]



**Section 16,170****Practice Alert 00-3**  
**Auditing Construction Contracts**

September, 2000

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of the members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by SEC Practice Section member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and is not an official position of the AICPA. Official positions are determined through certain specific committee procedures, due process and deliberation. The information provided herein should be used only with the understanding that it is to be read in conjunction with the professional literature and that it is only a means of assisting auditors in meeting their professional responsibilities.

**Introduction**

**.01** One of the more challenging audits is that of construction companies and other companies using the percentage of completion method of accounting for long-term contracts. This Practice Alert is intended to serve as a reminder of the important concepts, and provide some best practices for auditing such entities.

**.02** The primary authoritative accounting literature for construction companies, and entities using contract accounting is SOP 81-1, *Accounting for Performance of Construction-Type and Certain Production-Type Contracts* [section 10,330]. A thorough understanding of this literature is critical to auditing such entities. The AICPA's guide entitled "A CPA's Guide to Accounting, Auditing and Tax for Construction Contractors" and the related self-study course, are useful tools in preparing for such audits.

**.03** Auditing construction contractors or entities using contract accounting is complex. Such businesses rely on accurate and reliable estimates to operate their business as well as to prepare financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Therefore, it is critical that the auditor gain an understanding of the contractor's significant estimates and assumptions in operating its business. Remember that the audit of a contractor is an audit of a contractor's ability to estimate. There are several things to consider when auditing estimates (also see SAS No. 57, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*): Understand the internal control structure surrounding the estimate, consider the contractor's history of accurate estimates, compare actual to budgeted figures, and review subsequent events.

## Best Practices

**.04** The PITF has identified certain procedures that should be considered in performing an audit of a construction contractor. They are as follows:

- Read significant contracts. This procedure may seem obvious, but it is necessary in identifying the terms of the contract, any guarantees, penalties and incentives, as well as any cancellation and postponement provisions. For instance, reading the contract might identify the party responsible for additional expenses incurred as a result of weather delays (e.g., a colder than normal winter). Make sure the contracts are approved by the appropriate company personnel.
- Identify unique contracts and increase the amount of testing and professional skepticism relating to such contracts. These contracts increase the risk of improper estimates and thus improperly stated financial statements. If a company cannot reasonably estimate the cost or progress of a contract, it should be accounted for under the completed-contract method. For example, if a home building company decides to build power plants, they should consider accounting for such contracts under the completed-contract method until they are reasonably confident that its estimates in the power plant portion of the business are reliable.
- Understand the company's cash flow and how it will manage paying out expenses. Often expenses are due prior to receiving all the appropriate cash for the contract revenue. Some companies win long term contracts, but cannot fund the project long enough to realize the revenue earned. It is not uncommon for a customer to withhold 20%–25% of the contract price until they are satisfied with the quality of the completed contract.
- Recognize that the longer the contract period, the greater the risk that an estimate will be incorrect. Also, the farther along a contract is toward completion, the less risk there is of an incorrect estimate. Finally, the more variables inherent in an estimate the greater the risk that an estimate will be incorrect.
- Confirm the terms and conditions of the contract as well as the normal billing procedures. When confirming a receivable the auditor should strongly consider confirming: the original contract price, total approved change orders, total billings and payments, retainage held and whether it accrues interest, detail of any claims, back charges or disputes, and estimated completion date or the estimate of percentage complete.
- Review the unapproved change orders of significant contracts. Change orders often arise during the life of a contract and estimated revenue and cost should be adjusted for changed orders that have been approved both as to scope and price. However, when a change order has been approved as to scope but not price careful evaluation of the specific facts and circumstances is required prior to inclusion in estimated contract revenues. To the extent that change orders are in dispute or are unapproved in regard to both scope and price they should be evaluated as claims. Generally speaking, if there is no verifiable evidence to support the recognition of revenue on an unapproved change order or claim, it should not be recognized.
- Visit construction contract sites. Visiting contract sites can be a very useful audit procedure. Such a visit can provide an opportunity to view

the progress of a contract. Consideration of a site visit might include significant contract sites, in which the work is in the very early stages of a contract. Such a visit may identify the complexities of performing the contract. For example, a contract being performed in remote regions of Alaska presents certain logistical risks that may not be appreciated or understood without visiting. The site visit also may provide auditors an opportunity to interview operational personnel and to gain a better understanding for the responsibility the Company is undertaking performing the contract. At the site visit an auditor should also speak with available subcontractors on site to get additional information about the progress of the engagement. Furthermore, the auditor should consider observing equipment and uninstalled inventory on site.

- Meet with project managers. Project managers play an important role in controlling and reporting job site costs. They are also close to the facts and are likely to get more prompt and accurate information than the accounting personnel. For example, a project manager may be aware of a large bill that will arrive relating to his or her project about which the accounting department has not yet been notified. Meeting with the project managers will also assist the auditor in developing expectations for use in performing analytical review procedures. Also, consider having the project managers of significant contracts complete a questionnaire regarding the status of their contracts.
- Identify and understand the significant assumptions and uncertainties. This procedure is fundamental to performing an effective audit of an entity using contract accounting. Not performing this function results in an audit that does not comply with GAAS.
- Test contract costs to make sure that costs are matched with appropriate contracts. In some instances a company may shift costs from unprofitable contracts to profitable ones in an effort to defer losses.
- Audit estimated costs to complete. The focus should be on the key factors and assumptions, such as those that are (a) significant to the estimate, (b) sensitive to variation, (c) deviate from historical patterns, and are (d) subjective and susceptible to bias or misstatement. A review of revised or updated estimates of cost to complete and a comparison of the estimates with the actual costs incurred after the balance sheet date is also a useful procedure.
- See that losses are recorded as incurred, regardless of whether an entity is using the percentage-of-completion or the completed-contract method of recognizing revenue.
- Analytically review contracts completed and in progress. A detailed analytical review of completed contracts and contracts in progress will provide meaningful information in helping to focus the auditor's efforts on potential problem areas. The look back analysis also reveals significant information about the company's ability to estimate.
- See that there are appropriate disclosures relating to SOP 94-6, *Disclosure of Risks and Uncertainties* [section 10,640]. Entities using contract accounting probably should have more than generic disclosure about the use of significant estimates used in the preparation of financial statements. The AICPA SEC Practice Section has noticed that many companies include excellent disclosure about the risk of

contract losses and the possibility of inaccurate estimates in the forefront of their Form 10-K. It is the PITF's view that some of that enhanced disclosure would strengthen financial statement disclosure.

- Review the aging of receivables on contracts. This procedure will provide evidence that a Company is collecting funds on a timely basis.
- Consider the use of specialists in auditing construction contracts in accordance with SAS No.73, *Using the Work of a Specialist*.

**.05** Auditing entities that use contract accounting is challenging in that the main element of the contractor's financial statements are based on estimates of cost, and, importantly, costs not shipments drive the revenue recognition process.

**.06** Prior to auditing contractors an auditor should ensure that they have the appropriate expertise to understand the risks of the business. This additional knowledge will lead to an audit that meets or exceeds generally accepted auditing standards.

---

[The next page is 50,991.]

**Section 16,190*****Practice Alert 01-1***  
***Common Peer Review Recommendations*****April, 2001****NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of the members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by SEC Practice Section member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and is not an official position of the AICPA. Official positions are determined through certain specific committee procedures, due process and deliberation. The information provided herein should be used only with the understanding that it is to be read in conjunction with the professional literature and that it is only a means of assisting auditors in meeting their professional responsibilities.

**Introduction**

.01 The PITF believes that a summary of common peer review findings will be helpful to professionals as they consider critical and significant issues in planning and performing audits. The PITF hopes that by highlighting these items, the quality of audits will be enhanced and compliance with generally accepted auditing standards will be increased. Furthermore, the PITF hopes this alert will increase the sensitivity to these issues by professionals conducting peer reviews.

.02 Based on AICPA statistics of more than 21,000 peer reviews over the last four years, the PITF noted that approximately 94% of the peer review reports issued resulted in an unmodified report on the firm's quality control system. Approximately 5% resulted in modified reports and less than 1% resulted in adverse reports on the firm's quality control system. Overall, peer review results have improved since the inception of the peer review program.

.03 The most common peer review recommendations can be grouped into five categories: 1) implementation of new professional standards or pronouncements, 2) application of generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) pertaining to equity transactions, 3) application of GAAP pertaining to revenue recognition considerations, 4) documenting audit procedures or audit findings, and 5) miscellaneous findings.

**Implementation of New Professional Standards or Pronouncements**

.04 Peer reviewers have noted that some firms have not implemented new professional standards and pronouncements on a timely basis. The most recent common examples of professional standards that these firms failed to implement

on a timely basis include the application of Independence Standards Board (ISB) No. 1, *Independence Discussion with Audit Committees* and SAS No. 85, *Management Representations*. ISB No. 1 requires a firm to disclose certain relationships and confirm its independence in writing with each of its SEC audit clients every year. Details about the ISB and ISB No. 1 can be found on the ISB Web site at [www.cpaindependence.org](http://www.cpaindependence.org). Also, Practice Alert 99-1, *Guidance for Independence Discussion with Audit Committees* [section 16,130], provides examples of ISB No. 1 letters. SAS No. 85 states that written representations from management should relate to all financial statement periods covered by the auditor's report. For example, if a firm is giving an opinion on the financial statements at and for the years ended December 31, 2000 and 1999, a representation letter should be obtained that includes representations for 1999 and 2000. These representations should be updated each year even if they were obtained in the previous year, such as 1999 in the previous example.

**.05** There are frequently more than a dozen new pieces of authoritative professional literature issued each year. The most authoritative sources of new professional literature are issued by the Auditing Standard Board of the AICPA ("ASB"), the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB"), and the SEC in the form of Staff Accounting Bulletins ("SAB's"). However, other authoritative literature is issued in the form of Statements of Position ("SOP") issued by the Accounting Standards Executive Committee of the AICPA ("AcSEC"), consensus positions of the Emerging Issues Task Force ("EITF") and standards and interpretations issued by the Independence Standards Board ("ISB") and the Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB"). Other professional guidance that should be considered includes the AICPA Accounting General and Industry Audit Guides and related Risk Alerts.

**.06** A firm's quality control system should be designed to provide reasonable assurance that its professionals are informed of changes to the professional literature. To assist a firm in achieving this objective, a professional may be designated to help ensure that the new pronouncements are understood and implemented in a timely fashion. Many firms rely on third-party practice aides to help them in this endeavor. This is most effective if the material is updated frequently and the firm's professionals are informed of the changes and how the changes might affect their specific client engagements. The PITF recommends that even when using third-party practice aids, each firm should assign an experienced professional who is responsible for helping to ensure new pronouncements are implemented in a timely manner.

## Equity Transactions

**.07** Accounting for equity transactions can be complicated and some professionals do not encounter many of these transactions very frequently. Consequently, in January 2000, the PITF issued Practice Alert 00-1, *Accounting for Certain Equity Transactions* [section 16,150]. This Alert provided some of the more common examples, which require careful consideration in determining the appropriate accounting treatment. Common examples where GAAP has been misapplied include (1) stock issued for goods and services, (2) the issuance of warrants, (3) conversion features, and (4) stock options plans. The PITF strongly encourages consultation with other qualified professionals when auditing these transactions. Accounting for many equity transactions may be complicated and therefore, this engagement area may need to be assessed as moderate to high-risk.

## Revenue Recognition

**.08** Accounting for revenue continues to be an area of focus at the SEC. Specifically, in December of 1999, the SEC issued SAB 101, *Revenue Recognition*, in an attempt to clarify guidance on when it is appropriate for companies to recognize revenue. In October 2000, the SEC also published answers to frequently asked questions (“FAQ’s”) on SAB 101 which is available at [www.SEC.gov/info/accountants.shtml](http://www.SEC.gov/info/accountants.shtml). In November 1998, the PITF issued Practice Alert 98-3, *Revenue Recognition Issues* [section 16,120]. That Alert is intended to remind auditors of certain factors or conditions that can be indicative of increased audit risk relative to improper, aggressive or unusual revenue recognition practices and suggests ways in which auditors may reduce the risk of failing to detect such practices. Additionally, the AICPA’s revenue toolkit is available electronically at [www.aicpa.org/members/div/auditstd/pubaud.htm](http://www.aicpa.org/members/div/auditstd/pubaud.htm). Loading the toolkit from this Web site requires the use of the software Acrobat Reader. The toolkit can also be purchased from the AICPA at 888/777-7077 by requesting product number 022506. Finally, SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition* [section 10,700], is an important resource for software companies, whether auditing or accounting for revenue.

## Documentation

**.09** SAS No. 41, *Working Papers*, is the authoritative literature that provides guidance for documentation requirements. Other SASs (e.g., SAS Nos. 55, 61, and 82) also contain specific documentation requirements. The PITF members and the SECPS Peer Review Committee have noted that documentation in the following areas could be improved:

- Fraud risk factors, the disposition of such identified factors, or the planned procedures to address these risk factors.
- The firm’s understanding of the internal control system and the basis for reliance on that system.
- Materiality considerations including those relating to waived audit adjustments.
- The extent of auditing procedures performed, the person(s) performing specific procedures, and the conclusion reached.
- Analytical procedures used in planning the nature, timing and extent of the other auditing procedures to be performed; as substantive procedures to audit account balances, classes-of-transactions or assertions; and in the overall review of the financial information during the final stage of the audit.
- Compliance with loan covenants, or whether the company had obtained formal waiver letters from lenders that, when necessary, cover at least a year from the balance sheet date.
- The consideration of going concern and, if necessary, management’s plan to keep the entity operating.
- Consultation on significant matters.
- The extent of competent evidential matter supporting significant estimates.

- The completion of an accounting disclosure checklist when required by the firm's quality control policies and procedures. This document, when prepared correctly leads to complete financial statement disclosures complying with GAAP. Some of the more common deficiencies are incomplete disclosures related to deferred income taxes, the use of estimates and advertising policies and costs.
- The performance of appropriate quarterly review procedures. The PITF issued Practice Alert 00-4, *Quarterly Review Procedures for Public Companies* [section 16,180], in October 2000. This Alert provides auditors with the required quarterly review procedures and suggested procedures that should be considered when performing a quarterly review for a public company.
- Documenting SAS No. 61, *Communication With Audit Committees*, and SAS No. 90, *Audit Committee Communications*. If this communication is not in writing, it must be documented in the working papers as to what, when and with whom the communications occurred.

## Miscellaneous

.10 Peer reviewers have also noted deficiencies in the following areas:

- Performing ongoing monitoring procedures or a timely annual inspection. A firm's monitoring procedures or annual inspection needs to be completed timely so that the results and recommendations can be communicated and implemented prior to the firm's next busy season. A firm may elect to have the external peer review substitute for the internal inspection in the year an external peer review is performed.
- Performing an appropriate concurring partner review on an SEC attest engagement. Firms that are members of the SECPS are required to have a concurring review performed by a qualified partner of the firm or another firm. The concurring review partner should not be associated with the performance of the engagement. A partner, as defined by the SECPS, is an individual who is legally a partner, owner or shareholder in a CPA firm or a sole practitioner and should be party to any partnership, ownership or shareholder agreement of the firm.

.11 A concurring partner reviewer's responsibility as documented in the SECPS membership requirement ([www.aicpa.org/members/div/secps/coparemere.htm](http://www.aicpa.org/members/div/secps/coparemere.htm)) is fulfilled by performing the following procedures: 1) discussing significant accounting, auditing and financial reporting matters with the audit engagement partner; 2) discussing the audit engagement team's identification and audit of high-risk transactions and account balances; 3) reviewing documentation of the resolution of significant accounting, auditing and financial reporting matters, including documentation of consultation with firm personnel or resources external to the firm's organization (such as standard-setters, regulators, other accounting firms, the AICPA, and state societies); 4) reviewing a summary of unadjusted audit differences 5) reading the financial statements and auditors' report; and 6) confirming with the audit engagement partner that there are no significant unresolved matters. Engagement files should contain evidence that the concurring partner review was performed timely and that SECPS membership requirements were met. Typically, a concurring review takes longer than a couple of hours and may take many hours on larger engagements.

- Obtaining verification of independence when a firm uses per diem and contract employees, or outside concurring reviewers. Such independence is necessary to comply with professional standards.
- Compliance with the SEC rules on performing bookkeeping services for public companies. Instances were noted where firms were maintaining the client's fixed assets records and preparing and computing fixed asset depreciation schedules for audit clients. The SEC prohibits an auditor from performing such services because they believe it impairs auditor independence. The SECPS has also noted instances where the auditor was assisting their SEC client in closing out their books, including preparing routine accruals. This activity would appear to impair independence.
- Meeting the auditor's responsibilities with respect to performing and documenting subsequent event procedures in connection with the re-issuance of opinions or the issuance of consents. A firm is required to update discussions with management and attorneys, and obtain a formal written management representation letter up to the filing or effective date, or as close thereto as reasonable and practicable.

## Annual Reviewers' Alert

.12 The AICPA publishes an Annual Reviewers' Alert each year that provides peer review team captains and firms with information highlighting significant matters in the profession, such as issues raised by the SEC and new accounting and auditing pronouncements. In the spring of 2001, the AICPA anticipates that this publication will be available online at [www.aicpa.org](http://www.aicpa.org). Team captains and the firm's quality control leaders should obtain and read this publication.

## Summary

.13 This Alert summarizes some of the more significant common peer review recommendations. Every professional is advised to consider all of these issues when performing audits to help ensure that every audit is performed in compliance with generally accepted auditing standards.

---

[The next page is 51,011.]



**Section 16,200*****Practice Alert 01-2  
Audit Considerations in Times of  
Economic Uncertainty*****October, 2001****NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of the members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by SEC Practice Section member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and is not an official position of the AICPA. Official positions are determined through certain specific committee procedures, due process and deliberation. The information provided herein should be used only with the understanding that it is to be read in conjunction with the professional literature and that it is only a means of assisting auditors in meeting their professional responsibility.

**Introduction**

.01 During the past several months, the U.S. economy has suffered some significant declines. The U.S. Commerce Department has reported declines that are consistent with a slowing economy: consumer confidence has dropped, plant closings and lay-offs have increased dramatically, profit margins for many companies have slipped and many dot-com companies have failed. Some economists predict a recession, which could result in further deterioration in internally generated cash flows and restrictions on the availability of capital.

.02 Periods of economic uncertainty lead to challenging conditions for companies due to potential deterioration of operating results, increased external scrutiny, and reduced access to capital. These conditions can result in increased incentives for companies to adopt practices that may be incorrect or inconsistently applied in an effort to address perceived expectations of the capital markets, creditors or potential investors. During such times, professional skepticism should be heightened and the status quo should be challenged. This Practice Alert is designed to remind auditors of issues to consider during these times.

**Professional Skepticism**

.03 The third general auditing standard stipulates that due professional care be exercised in planning and conducting an audit engagement. Due professional care requires that the auditor exercise professional skepticism in gathering and evaluating audit evidence. Although the auditor neither assumes that management is dishonest nor assumes unquestioned honesty, the auditor should consider the increased risk associated with the potential increases in external pressure faced by management in times of economic decline.

.04 As a result of perceived external pressures, companies may be tempted to manage earnings through conduct of non-recurring transactions or through changes in the method of calculating key estimates, such as reserves, fair values or impairments. Companies may also adopt inappropriate accounting practices resulting in improper recognition or omission of financial transactions. Material non-recurring transactions may require special disclosure to facilitate the reader's understanding of the reported financial results, and the guidance in APB No. 20, *Accounting Changes*, should be applied in reporting on the effect of changes in estimates. Inappropriate transactions or accounting practices that may result in errors requiring adjustments of financial statements might include premature recognition of revenue, failure to record returns, inflating inventories, failure to appropriately accrue for contingent liabilities that are probable and estimable, and failure to record "misplaced" or otherwise unpaid purchase invoices. Additionally, an auditor should be particularly skeptical of non-system adjustments or fourth-quarter events that result in significant revenue recognition, loss accrual or non-cash earnings.

.05 The SEC has recently focused significant renewed attention with respect to potential inappropriate over-accrual or misuse of restructuring reserves. In this regard, auditors also have to be skeptical that provisions for restructuring costs and asset write-downs are not unduly conservative. Relevant accounting guidance can be found in SAB 100, *Restructuring and Impairment Charges*, and EITF Issue 94-3, *Liability Recognition for Certain Employee Termination Benefits and Other Costs to Exit an Activity (Including Certain Costs Incurred in a Restructuring)*. Additionally, the increased focus of external analysts on revenue rather than traditional measures of operating performance has resulted in the SEC providing companies with expanded interpretive guidance in SAB 101, *Revenue Recognition in Financial Statements*, which addresses recognition and classification of revenue.

.06 The appropriate level of professional skepticism is needed when corroborating management's representations. Management's explanations should make business sense. Additionally, the auditor may need to consider corroborating management's explanations with other evidence when practicable, including discussions with members of the board of directors or audit committee.

.07 Other indicators of potential increased accounting and reporting risk calling for increased professional skepticism include:

#### **1. Liquidity matters**

- The company is undercapitalized and is relying heavily on bank loans and other credit and is in danger of violating loan covenants.
- The company appears to be dependent on an IPO for future funding.
- The company is having difficulty obtaining or maintaining financing.
- The company is showing liquidity problems.

#### **2. Quality of earnings**

- The company is changing significant accounting policies and assumptions to less conservative ones.
- The company is generating profits but not cash flow.

**3. Industry characteristics**

- The company is a dot-com or Internet company or a supplier to those types of companies.
- The company is not a market leader. Companies that are not market leaders sometimes must sell products below cost to match competitors' pricing.

**4. Management characteristics**

- Management's compensation is largely tied to earnings or the appreciation of stock options.
- The company appears vulnerable to the weakening economic conditions and management is not proactive in addressing changing conditions.
- The company's management is selling their investment in company securities more than in the past.
- There is a significant change in members of senior management or the board of directors.

.08 The following paragraphs serve as reminders for considerations when auditing the following specific accounts.

## Inventory

.09 When auditing inventory, consider the following issues:

- The reason for an unusual increase in inventory balances. Reduction in turnover, increased backlog or deterioration in aging of inventories may be signs that the company has excessive inventory on hand.
- Whether the company's product is technologically attractive to consumers. If not, consider the company's plan to sell the inventory and at what cost.
- Whether declining prices and shrinking profit margins are causing inventory to be valued over market.
- Whether the reduced production at a manufacturing facility is leading to an over-capitalization of inventory overhead rather than expensing the costs of excess capacity.
- Whether there are material or unusual sales cancellations and returns after year-end.
- Whether there are indications of "channel stuffing."

.10 An auditor should also be aware of any:

- Unfavorable purchase commitments.
- Unfavorable sales commitments or arrangements.

## Accounts Receivable

.11 When auditing accounts receivable, consider the following circumstances:

- An increase in the aging of receivable balances. This event may be indicative of weakening economic conditions. Many companies that sell to Internet-related companies may need to increase their bad debt provisions this year since some of these Internet-related companies are facing financial challenges that may include bankruptcy.
- Internal controls over credit functions are weak. Consider a company's policies for reviewing the amount of customer credit extended to each customer.
- Receivable amounts that are increasing at a faster rate than revenue.
- Concentration of receivables in one geographic area or economic sector.
- The existence of extended payment terms or return privileges.
- Significant decreases in accounts receivable confirmation response rates from the prior year.
- Compliance with revenue recognition pronouncements, such as SOP 97-2, *Software Revenue Recognition*, and SAB 101, *Revenue Recognition in Financial Statements*.

## Investments

.12 An auditor should determine whether the classification of securities is appropriate. For example, an auditor should consider whether the company has the ability, as well as the intent, to hold securities to maturity that are classified as such.

## Long-Lived Assets, Including Goodwill and Intangibles

.13 Industry downturns and cash flow erosion may indicate an impairment of fixed assets, goodwill or other intangibles. Financial Accounting Standards Board's (FASB) Statement No. 121, *Accounting for the Impairment of Long-Lived Assets to Be Disposed Of*, provides guidance in this area. In that regard, significant idle plant capacity or equipment no longer used in operations may need to be written off, unless alternative uses exist.

.14 Goodwill and intangibles should be analyzed to consider whether the amortization assumptions still appear reasonable. For example, if a company purchases a patent that is amortized over 10 years and the technology of the product has changed to where the patent is no longer used, it may be necessary to write-down or write-off the asset.

.15 In June 2001, the FASB issued Statement No. 142, *Goodwill and Other Intangibles*. This Statement addresses financial accounting and reporting for acquired goodwill and other intangible assets and supersedes APB Opinion No. 17, *Intangible Assets*. The Statement also addresses how intangible assets that are acquired individually or with a group of other assets should be accounted for in financial statements upon their acquisition. FASB Statement No. 142 is required to be applied starting with fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2001.

## Deferred Taxes and Other Deferred Charges

.16 An auditor should consider whether the assumptions and expectations of future benefits of deferred tax assets and other deferred charges appear reasonable. In weighing positive and negative evidence for purposes of

assessing the need for or amount of a deferred tax asset valuation allowance, FASB Statement No. 109, Accounting for Income Taxes, requires that the weight given to evidence be commensurate with the ability to objectively verify that evidence. As a result, recent historical losses are given significant weight while expectations about future profits may not be given much weight.

## Accounts Payable

.17 An auditor should consider whether the company has delayed making payments on its outstanding payables. This may result from the company properly managing cash, but it may also be a result of a company experiencing cash flow shortages. An increasing accounts payable balance with flat or decreasing sales may be evidence of cash flow concerns.

## Debt

.18 An auditor should carefully review loan agreements and test for compliance with loan covenants. In this regard, an auditor should consider any “cross default” provisions; that is, a violation of one loan covenant affecting other loan covenants. An auditor should also keep in mind that any debt with covenant violations that are not waived by the lender for a period of more than a year from the balance sheet date may need to be classified in the balance sheet as a current liability.

.19 As always, an auditor should review the debt payment schedules and consider whether the company has the ability to pay current debt installments or to refinance the debt if necessary. When making such an evaluation, it is important to remember that it is quite possible that the company will not generate as much cash flow as it did in the previous year.

## Going Concern

.20 During times of economic uncertainty, an auditor should have a heightened sense of awareness of a company’s ability to continue as a going concern. SAS 59, *An Entity’s Ability to Continue as a Going Concern*, addresses an auditor’s responsibility to evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern. Negative trends, loan covenant violations and legal proceedings are examples of items that might indicate that there could be substantial doubt about the ability of an entity to continue as a going concern. When evaluating management’s plans to continue as a going concern, an appropriate level of professional skepticism is important. For example, the company’s assumptions to continue as a going concern should be scrutinized to assess whether they are based on overly optimistic or “once in a lifetime” occurrences.

## Other Considerations

.21

- An auditor should consider the extent of procedures that may be necessary relating to unusual and significant transactions noted during the audit, including unusual or “non-routine” journal entries. Many times, these entries are made on the parent company’s books, or as part of a consolidating entry, or in the last few days of the month.

- An auditor should be aware of new developments in his or her client's business. Analytical reviews, therefore, should emphasize the comparison of relationships with independent data. When expected fluctuations do not occur, or when unexpected fluctuations do occur, an auditor should investigate the reasons. It is also important to consider whether the relationships between financial and nonfinancial information make sense. For example, in a cable TV company, if the number of subscribers declined from the prior year, it would make sense, absent a rate increase, that revenue declined also.
- An auditor should consider whether significant declines in stock prices may result in option pricing changes or other compensation benefits being promised to employees.
- An auditor should be aware of inconsistent approaches to write-downs.
- An auditor should consider off-balance sheet risks; for example, the risks related to the failure to perform a contract efficiently. Large fixed fee contracts can subject companies to large risks.
- An auditor should consider a company's ability to forecast and anticipate changes in market conditions. The inability to forecast and foresee changes in market conditions should heighten an auditor's professional skepticism. Companies that are proactive and lead market changes often perform better in times of economic uncertainty than those that are reactive.
- Professional skepticism relating to the above should also be maintained when reviewing quarterly financial statements for public companies.
- An auditor should not allow client or self-imposed deadlines to pressure him or her into accounting and auditing decisions that are not well thought out. An auditor should also consult with other professionals whenever appropriate—for example, on a complex accounting or auditing issue.

## Summary

**.22** Auditing companies in times of economic uncertainty is challenging. As such, auditors need to maintain the appropriate levels of professional skepticism and due professional care.

---

[The next page is 51,051.]

**Section 16,220****Practice Alert 02-2**  
**Use of Specialists**

**First issued**  
**May, 2002;**  
**Updated October, 2002**

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by the SEC Practice Section member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an *Other Auditing Publication* as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. Other Auditing Publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply SASs. If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an Other Auditing Publication, he or she should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of his or her audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

.01 During the performance of an audit engagement, the auditor may decide to use the work of a specialist. A specialist is a person with a special skill or knowledge in a particular field other than accounting or auditing. The specialist may be either engaged by the client or by the auditor, or employed by the audit firm or the client. Although the auditor is expected to be knowledgeable about business matters in general, the auditor is not expected to have or obtain the same level of understanding of a subject field as an expert in that particular field. Examples of areas where specialists are utilized in audit engagements include:

- Valuations of certain types of assets, for example: land and buildings, plant and machinery, works of art, minerals and precious stones.
- Valuations of businesses and derivatives.
- Information technology.
- Determination of quantities or physical condition of assets, for example: minerals stored in stockpiles, and underground mineral and petroleum reserves.
- Actuarial valuations.

- Measurement of work completed and to be completed on construction contracts in progress for the purpose of revenue recognition. For example, providing corroborating evidence on the progress and possible obstacles to completing a hydroelectric plant.
- Legal interpretations of contacts and agreements, statutes, and government and other regulations.
- Evaluation of significant issues relating to federal, state or local income and other tax matters.

.02 Auditors may encounter difficulty in determining the appropriate situations in which to utilize a specialist and, in those cases when a specialist is appropriately utilized, understanding the findings of the specialist. The current guidance when specialists are used is broad and focuses on the use of all kinds of specialists. The purpose of this Practice Alert is to assist auditors in understanding their responsibilities both with respect to the use of specialists that have been engaged or employed by the audit client and the use of specialists engaged or employed by the audit firm.

## Decision to Use a Specialist

.03 The decision to obtain the assistance of a specialist is generally made in the planning stage of the audit engagement. The auditor should ascertain whether or not specialized knowledge will be needed in order to corroborate management's assertions with respect to amounts in the financial statements. The auditor should not accept an engagement when it is not possible to obtain an appropriate level of understanding of the subject matter, either directly or through the use of a specialist.

## Use of a Specialist Engaged or Employed by the Audit Client

.04 With respect to specialists engaged or employed by the audit client, the auditor should consider the specialist's qualifications and experience in the planning stage of the engagement. SAS No. 73, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, states that the auditor should consider the professional certification, license or other recognition of the competence of the specialist in his or her field, as appropriate. In addition, the reputation and standing of the specialist in the views of peers or others familiar with the specialist's capability or performance can assist the auditor in assessing the specialist's qualifications.

.05 After the auditor has become satisfied with the qualifications and experience of the specialist, the auditor should then obtain an understanding of the specialist's work. The auditor can obtain the understanding in many ways, including reading professional literature dealing with the subject specialty, discussing the subject with other auditors who have performed similar engagements in the same field, discussing the subject with the specialist or with other specialists and attending relevant seminars on the subject. The auditor should consider the following:

- The objectives and scope of the specialist's work;
- The specialist's relationship to the client;
- The specialist's methods and the assumptions used, including the comparability to those used in the preceding period and those used by similar specialists, if known;

- The specialist's compliance with the auditor's requirements;
- The appropriateness of using the specialist's work for the intended purpose; and
- The form and content of the specialist's findings.

**.06** In those situations where the audit client has engaged the specialist, during the planning process the auditor performs the necessary procedures to ascertain the nature of the specialist's relationship to the audit client. The auditor should assess the risk that the specialist's objectivity may be impaired. A specialist that is engaged by the client need not be independent, only objective. If the auditor determines that the specialist's objectivity might be impaired, the auditor should either engage another specialist or should perform additional procedures with respect to some or all of the specialist's assumptions, methods or findings to determine whether the findings are not unreasonable.

**.07** If the auditor concludes that he or she will use the findings of a specialist, consideration should be given to the need to communicate with the specialist to confirm the terms of the specialist's engagement and to cover such matters as:

- The objectives and scope of the specialist's work.
- Clarification of the specialist's relationship with the client.
- Information as to the assumptions and methods intended to be used by the specialist and, if appropriate, as to their consistency with those used in the prior period and compared to those used by other industry specialists.
- The specialist's compliance with the auditor's requirements.
- The appropriateness of using the specialist's work for the intended purpose.
- The form and content of the specialist's findings as well as a general outline as to the specific items the auditor expects the specialist will cover in the report.
- The auditor's intended use of the specialist's work.
- The identification of the data to be supplied by the client to the specialist, so that the auditor is aware of what needs to be subjected to audit testing.
- Any non-client data that the specialist intends to use.
- The extent of the specialist's access to appropriate records and files.
- Confidentiality of the client's information.
- Documentation or further information required supporting the auditor's procedures and report.

**.08** The auditor should consider obtaining a confirmation directly from the specialist regarding the nature and scope of his/her engagement.

**.09** The use of a specialist does not allow the auditor to delegate his or her audit responsibilities. Therefore, the auditor must be able to understand the methods and assumptions used by the specialist in order to fulfill his or her audit responsibilities.

**.10** The reliability of the source data used by the specialist is significant to the accuracy of the specialist's findings and ultimately, the audited financial statements. Therefore, the auditor performs procedures to corroborate the data, both accounting and non-accounting, that the client provided to the specialist, taking into account the auditor's assessment of control risk. The auditor's procedures may include making inquiries of the specialist to determine whether the specialist is satisfied as to the accuracy of the source data, identifying and conducting appropriate tests and considering the reliability and relevance of the data provided by the client to the specialist. For example, for an actuarial computation with respect to a pension plan, the auditor may, on a test basis, compare the demographic information to the client's personnel files and the payroll information to the payroll ledgers. In addition, the auditor may analytically review the rate of return on the plan portfolio for reasonableness and may test the forecasted earnings stream and the cap rate used in the valuation.

**.11** The auditor should evaluate whether the specialist's findings support the related assertions in the financial statements. Ordinarily, the auditor would use the work of the specialist unless the auditor concluded that the specialist's findings are unreasonable. For example, an actuary with respect to an automobile insurance company client may conclude that the loss reserves should decrease over the percentage used in the previous year. The finding may be deemed unreasonable if the auditor is aware that the experience in the subject state during that year was that losses had increased statewide. If the findings appear to be unreasonable, additional audit procedures may be necessary or the opinion of another specialist may be obtained. If the matter was not resolved to the auditor's satisfaction, the auditor would consider whether to qualify his or her report or disclaim an opinion because of a scope limitation.

**.12** The auditor would ordinarily not mention the work or findings of a specialist when expressing an unqualified opinion on audited financial statements, except in very limited circumstances described in SAS No. 73.

**.13** The auditor should consider incorporating a specific representation in the client representation letter if the audit client has engaged a specialist. An example representation is as follows:

We assume responsibility for the findings of specialists inevaluating the (describe assertion) and have adequately considered the qualifications of the specialists in determining the amounts and disclosures used in the financial statements and underlying accounting records. We did not give nor cause any instructions to be given to specialists with respect to the values or amounts derived in an attempt to bias their work, and we are not otherwise aware of any matters that have had an impact on the objectivity of the specialists.

## **Use of Specialists Engaged or Employed by the Audit Firm**

**.14** Except at the time of employment and as necessary to satisfy ongoing educational and licensing requirements, the auditor would not ordinarily need to check the qualifications of a specialist employed by the audit firm. In addition, the internal specialist is subject to the firm's requirements with respect to independence.

**.15** The auditor will need to make a determination as to whether the specialist is part of the audit engagement team. If the specialist is effectively

functioning as a member of the audit team, SAS No. 73 does not apply. SAS No. 22, *Planning and Supervision*, will apply in that situation since the specialist requires the same supervision and review as any assistant. For example, if a specialist is used to perform procedures as part of the engagement team, such as performing computer assisted audit techniques, then SAS No. 22 applies. Specific guidance with respect to the use of information technology specialists is provided later in this Practice Alert. However, if the client engages the audit firm's actuarial department to perform procedures with respect to a pension plan, and the auditor subsequently utilized that work, the specialist is not a member of the engagement team and the auditor should follow the guidance as outlined in the previous section of this Practice Alert.

**.16** Generally, using a specialist within the audit firm reduces audit risk, as the specialist should be familiar with the firm's professional policies. In addition, the other members of the audit team are generally familiar with the specialist's qualifications. Auditors employed by firms that make use of subsidiaries or affiliated organizations should take special care in assessing the internal specialist's familiarity with firm policies. Even though the specialist and the auditor may be part of the same "parent" firm, the specialist may not be familiar with the audit firm's policies.

**.17** If the auditor has engaged an outside specialist, an understanding with the specialist about the engagement should be obtained. The auditor may want to document the understanding and the arrangements with the specialist in writing. All other procedures with respect to the methods and assumptions used by the specialist and the use of the specialist's findings are consistent with those utilized for specialists engaged or employed by the client.

## Examples of Specific Types of Specialists to Be Utilized

### Information Technology ("IT") Specialists

**.18** The use of IT specialists is a significant aspect of many audit engagements. The Public Oversight Board's Panel on Audit Effectiveness issued a report in August 2000 which called for more effective participation in audits by IT specialists. The IT specialist is usually employed or engaged by the audit firm and the use of IT specialists is covered by SAS No. 22 and SAS No. 94, *The Effect of Information Technology on the Auditor's Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*.

**.19** SAS No. 94 provides guidance to assist auditors in determining whether to use the work of an IT specialist. To determine whether an IT specialist is needed, it is recommended that the auditor consider the following factors:

- The complexity of the entity's systems and IT controls, and the manner in which they are used
- The significance of changes made to existing systems or the implementation of new systems
- The extent to which data is shared
- The extent of the entity's participation in electronic commerce
- The entity's use of emerging technologies
- The significance of audit evidence that is available only in electronic form.

**.20** The extent of involvement of an IT specialist will depend on the complexity of information technology used in critical transaction cycles, control risk assessments and the information technology skills available in the engagement team. The role of the IT specialist may be to assist the engagement team in the following areas:

- Performing a preliminary review of computer processing
- Designing and implementing tests of controls and substantive tests related to information technology systems, including the use of computer assisted audit techniques
- Interpreting the test results
- Drafting client communications, such as internal control and management letters.

**.21** In addition, the IT specialist can assist the auditor in addressing many audit procedures. The IT specialist can examine the client's data files and information and detect and highlight transactions or patterns that show possible irregularities. Examples where an IT specialist may be used to assist the auditor are as follows:

- Ratio analysis
- Revenue and other cut-off testing
- Accounts receivable or payable aging
- Examination of purchase ledger transactions
- Summarizing payments by vendor or invoice numbers
- Testing for duplicate invoices
- Searching for payments to specific individuals
- Stratifying payments by size and extracting unusual ones
- Analyzing payroll data in the search for unusual payments
- Matching payments to payroll master files to test for correct rates and deductions.

**.22** IT specialists can also perform digit analysis—the process of using mathematical formulas and probability equations to examine data sets for irregularities. Examples include number duplication, excessive round numbers and identification of identical or near-identical entries in data subsets.

**.23** When an IT specialist is used, the auditor's responsibility for information technology aspects of an audit cannot be transferred to that specialist. The auditor is responsible for:

- Determining, in consultation with the IT specialist, the objectives of the review of computer processing and the procedures to be performed
- Participating appropriately in performing the work
- Reviewing the results of the specialist's work
- Evaluating the results of the review as it affects audit risk and strategy and modifying the audit procedures to be performed accordingly
- Ensuring that the workpapers adequately document all information technology aspects of the audit.

**Business Valuation Specialists**

.24 The Financial Accounting Standards Board's (FASB) Statement No. 141, *Business Combinations*, and FASB Statement No. 142, *Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets*, valuations that are performed in connection with purchase price allocations after a business combination and the impairment test required thereafter generally should be performed by a specialist. Although the auditor may have sufficient expertise to review the valuation, it is advisable for auditors to consider utilizing a valuation specialist. This is particularly so when the transaction and valuation has a material impact on the company's financial statements. That specialist may be internal or external, as considered necessary. The auditor should perform procedures to evaluate whether the specialist's findings support the related assertions in the financial statements

---

[The next page is 51,071.]



## Section 16,230

**Practice Alert 02-3**  
**Reauditing Financial Statements**

September, 2002

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by the SEC Practice Section member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an *Other Auditing Publication* as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. *Other Auditing Publications* have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply SASs. If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an *Other Auditing Publication*, he or she should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of his or her audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

**.01** An auditor may be engaged to reaudit and report on financial statements that have been previously audited and reported on by another auditor (the predecessor auditor). The auditor conducting a reaudit engagement (defined in SAS No. 84, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, as the successor auditor but hereinafter referred to as the reauditor) should not place reliance on the work of the predecessor auditor. Even when a reputable firm has already audited the financial statements, the reaudit work performed and the conclusions reached are solely the responsibility of the reauditor.

**.02** There are two common circumstances under which a firm may be requested to perform a reaudit:

- The predecessor auditor is unwilling or unable to reissue its report for the intended purpose. For example, a company may plan to file a registration statement with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) for an initial public offering and the predecessor auditor is unwilling to be associated with the financial statements of an SEC registrant or the predecessor auditor may not be independent under the independence rules applicable to SEC registrants or may no longer be in business.
- A company may wish to have another firm audit and report on its financial statements. Sometimes, the company or the underwriter with respect to an initial public offering may desire to have the current period and all prior periods audited by the same auditor, necessitating reaudits of prior periods.

.03 The reauditor should be aware of the audit guidance provided in paragraphs 14 through 20 of SAS No. 84. The purpose of this Practice Alert is to provide practitioners with additional factors to consider when performing a reaudit engagement.

## Client/Engagement Acceptance Procedures and Considerations

.04 In determining whether to accept an engagement involving a reaudit for a new client, the reauditor should request permission from the prospective client to make inquiries of the predecessor auditor. Specific consent from the prospective client is required to make sure that confidential information is not disclosed inappropriately. The reauditor, in determining whether to accept the engagement, should perform the communications with the predecessor auditor as required in paragraphs 7 through 10 of SAS No. 84, including inquiries as to (a) information that might bear on the integrity of management; (b) any disagreements with management as to accounting principles, auditing procedures or other similarly significant matters; (c) communications to audit committees or others with equivalent authority and responsibility regarding fraud, illegal acts by clients, and internal control related matters, and; (d) the predecessor auditor's understanding as to the reasons for the change of auditors. The reauditor should indicate to the predecessor auditor that the purpose of the inquiries is to obtain information about whether to accept an engagement to perform a reaudit. In the absence of unusual circumstances, the predecessor auditor should respond promptly and fully, on the basis of known facts, to the reauditor's reasonable inquiries. If due to unusual circumstances, the predecessor auditor does not fully respond to the inquiries, the predecessor auditor should clearly state that the response is limited.

.05 In some situations, the predecessor auditor (a firm) might not be able to respond fully to the reauditor's inquiries, for example, when the predecessor firm no longer employs the predecessor audit engagement team. In such situations, the reauditor should make reasonable efforts to locate the predecessor audit engagement partner or other senior members of the engagement team and make appropriate inquiries. In some cases, another firm may employ the partner who had responsibility for the predecessor firm's engagement or other senior members of the engagement team. The firm that currently employs a member or members of the predecessor audit engagement team is not a "predecessor auditor" as defined in SAS No. 84. That firm, however, would normally be expected to facilitate inquiries to such individuals provided that specific authorization to respond is obtained by the reauditor from the prospective client in a form satisfactory to the firm and the individuals, and the reauditor and prospective client acknowledge, in a form satisfactory to the firm, that the firm is not placing itself in the position of a predecessor auditor. When such specific authorization and acknowledgement has been provided, a member or members of the predecessor audit engagement team ordinarily should, absent certain other circumstances that would limit their response, respond to the inquiries of the reauditor based on the full extent of the individuals' knowledge.

.06 The reauditor also should consider information pertaining to the integrity of management and any disagreements between management and the predecessor that may be obtained by performing the following procedures:

- Inquiring of bankers, lawyers, underwriters and others with knowledge of management.

- Reading the Form 8-K reporting the resignation or dismissal of the predecessor auditor and the predecessor auditor's response, if available.
- Reading the audit committee communications issued by the predecessor auditor.
- Reading the management representation letters including the summary of uncorrected financial statement misstatements.
- Reading the company's copies of correspondence with the predecessor auditor and regulators, if applicable.

**.07** In circumstances where the predecessor auditor is unwilling or unable to reissue its report, the reauditor should consider the reasons and their implications, especially when the predecessor disagreed with management over accounting or auditing matters or restricts access to his or her audit documentation.

**.08** In making a decision to perform a reaudit, the firm's client acceptance procedures should consider the following:

- The ability of the reauditor to perform his or her firm's normal client acceptance procedures. The firm should consider performing background checks of key executives. In addition, the firm should consider implementing additional procedures in accepting reaudit engagements, such as required consultation with and approval by, designated senior firm personnel prior to acceptance of the reaudit engagement. National and large regional firms should consider designating members of senior management or the firm's national technical group, or personnel of equivalent authority, for this purpose.
- Reading the previously issued financial statements on which the reaudit is to be performed. The reauditor should consider conducting interviews of executive management, including the CEO, the CFO, and the Audit Committee. Based on those discussions and from discussions with the predecessor auditors, the reauditor may be in a position to make a preliminary assessment about, among other matters, significant accounting policies, balances and transactions.
- The need for advising the client that since the reaudit is a new audit, the risk exists that material misstatements may be identified that were not identified by the predecessor auditor or that the reauditor's judgment regarding the appropriate application of generally accepted accounting principles or the materiality of previously identified misstatements may differ from that of the predecessor auditor.
- Whether the reaudit is being undertaken in connection with his or her current audit of a subsequent period (hereinafter referred to as a "current period audit"), as a separate engagement to be reported on before completing a current period audit, or as a one-time engagement. If the engagement is a one-time engagement, the potential reauditor should strongly consider the reasons that he or she is not performing the current period audit and may wish to consider not accepting the engagement on that basis.
- The ability to obtain third party confirmation or other primary audit evidence as of the balance sheet date(s) or the need to obtain confirmations as of a subsequent date and test the intervening transactions.
- The ability to obtain the necessary audit evidence, especially in significant areas, such as inventories, receivables and revenue.

- The predecessor auditor's representation regarding whether there have been any disagreements regarding accounting or other matters with management.
- Whether there has been a significant change in the top management team of the client and whether current management is willing, and has sufficient knowledge of the financial statements subject to the reaudit, to make all required management representations. The possible difficulties in obtaining the representation letter in these circumstances are discussed later in this Alert.
- Whether there have been significant changes in internal control subsequent to the reaudit period and whether an adequate understanding of internal control in operation during the reaudit period can be obtained to plan the reaudit.
- Whether sufficient audit evidence can be obtained in support of material financial statement assertions in situations where significant amounts of information are initiated, recorded, processed, or reported electronically, and no other documentation of those transactions is produced or maintained, other than through the IT system (e.g., a telecommunications company that uses IT to create a log of the services provided to its customers, initiate and process its billings for the services and automatically record such amounts in electronic accounting records that are part of the system used to produce the entity's financial statements).

## Planning the Reaudit

**.09** In a reaudit, the nature, timing and extent of the audit procedures performed and the conclusions reached in the reaudit are solely the responsibility of the reauditor. Notwithstanding the procedures performed by the predecessor auditor, the reauditor must perform an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). Accordingly, the reauditor should not assume responsibility for the predecessor auditor's work or plan to divide responsibility with the predecessor auditor under SAS No. 1, section 543, *Part of Audit Performed by Other Independent Auditors*. The predecessor auditor is not a specialist as defined in SAS No. 73, *Using the Work of a Specialist*, or an internal auditor as defined in SAS No. 65, *The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements*.

**.10** The reauditor should request that the client specifically authorize the predecessor auditor to allow access to the predecessor auditor's audit documentation for the period or periods under reaudit and the period prior to the reaudit period. The reauditor should consider the information obtained from inquiries of the predecessor auditor and review of the predecessor auditor's report and audit documentation in planning the reaudit. Ordinarily, the reauditor documents his or her review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation and any information identified with continuing audit significance in the reaudit audit documentation. The reauditor should consider specifically examining the predecessor auditor's audit documentation with respect to the following:

- Understanding of internal controls and control risk assessments,
- The identification of internal control related matters noted in the audit, reportable conditions and material weaknesses,

- The identification of fraud risk factors and the results of audit procedures in response to specifically identified fraud risk factors,
- Understanding the company's business,
- Uncorrected financial statement misstatements,
- Other identified risks of material misstatement,
- And other audit documentation with respect to critical or significant accounting and audit areas.

.11 The extent, if any, to which the predecessor auditor permits access to his or her audit documentation is a matter of the predecessor auditor's judgment. However, it is customary for the predecessor auditor, absent any unusual circumstances such as impending, threatened, or potential litigation, disciplinary proceedings or non-payment of outstanding fees, to permit the reauditor to review the audit documentation, including documentation of planning, internal control, audit results, and other matters of continuing accounting and auditing significance.

.12 If possible, in order to maximize effectiveness and efficiency, the reaudit should be planned in conjunction with the current audit, if applicable, and the audit procedures for both should be coordinated.

## Understanding the Client's Business

.13 As a result of inquiries of the predecessor auditor and review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation, the reauditor may obtain significant information, including copies of audit documentation, related to understanding the entity's business that the reauditor may use in planning the reaudit. If the reauditor decides to utilize that information, he or she should corroborate the information through inquiries of management, inspection of key documents, and such other audit procedures as he or she considers necessary in the circumstances.

## Understanding of Internal Control, Assessment of Control Risk and Tests of Controls

.14 The reauditor, as required by GAAS, should obtain an understanding of internal control for those periods on which the reauditor is asked to report. Information obtained from his or her review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation may assist the reauditor in obtaining the required understanding and evaluating the design of relevant controls. The reauditor should perform procedures to corroborate the understanding and evaluation and determine whether key controls have been placed in operation. If the reauditor plans to assess control risk below the maximum, he or she should design and perform appropriate tests of controls to determine that relevant controls were operating effectively during the reaudit period. The reauditor may either test relevant controls in operation during the reaudit period or test relevant controls in operation currently, and perform a "rollback" of changes in the design of the internal controls to the prior periods.

.15 In instances where a "rollback" is not possible and control risk will be assessed at maximum, audit evidence should be obtained via substantive testing. However, the reauditor should consider whether it is possible to design

effective substantive tests that by themselves will provide sufficient evidence that financial statement assertions are not materially misstated in circumstances when a significant portion of the information supporting one or more financial statement assertions is electronically initiated, recorded, processed, or reported. Refer to paragraph 68 of SAS No. 55, *Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, as amended by SAS No. 78, for guidance.

## Substantive Audit Procedures

**.16** Some substantive testing, which may include analytical procedures and tests of details, is required for all material account balances and classes of transactions. In performing analytical procedures, the reauditor should develop his or her own expectations and use those expectations to determine matters requiring further investigation.

**.17** The reauditor may consider the knowledge obtained from his or her review of the predecessor auditor's audit documentation and inquiries of the predecessor auditor to determine the nature, timing and extent of procedures to be applied in the circumstances and to assist in determining his or her expectations when performing analytical procedures.

## Inventory

**.18** Since the reauditor did not observe physical inventories in the prior years, the reauditor must be able to perform satisfactory alternative procedures if inventories are material, including a current physical observation and performing a "rollback" of amounts to prior periods. The reauditor also should perform tests of intervening transactions and analytical procedures. Refer to paragraph 20 of SAS No. 84 for guidance.

## Confirmations With Third Parties

**.19** The reauditor may consider responses to confirmation requests received by the predecessor auditor, provided the reauditor is able to obtain copies from the predecessor auditor. The responses may relate to, for example, cash, accounts receivable, debt and transactions with related parties. The reauditor should evaluate the process used by the predecessor auditor in controlling the confirmation process and in selecting the accounts/items for confirmation and the persons or entities for inquiry. The reauditor is responsible for conclusions as to the adequacy of the confirmation responses received by the predecessor auditor, including the number and quality of those replies, and for alternative procedures with respect to nonreplies. The reauditor should consider directly obtaining confirmation responses relating to significant matters.

**.20** In those instances where the reauditor is not able to obtain copies of confirmation requests from the predecessor auditor or when the reauditor concludes that additional evidence is required, the reauditor should: 1) reconfirm the amounts/terms of balances and transactions as of the balance sheet date, or 2) confirm at a date subsequent to the period of the reaudit, in connection with a current audit or otherwise, and apply appropriate tests of intervening transactions. The reauditor may consider these procedures to be more effective than obtaining copies of the confirmation requests from the predecessor auditor. In addition, the reauditor should perform appropriate

subsequent events procedures (e.g., inspection of subsequent payments on accounts receivable), which may provide additional evidence concerning certain assertions.

.21 If the substance of an inquiry to lawyers relates to a significant matter, the reauditor should obtain responses directly.

## **Opening Balances and Consistency of Application of Accounting Principles**

.22 The reauditor obtains audit evidence concerning the impact of the opening balances on the financial statements being reaudited and the consistency of application of accounting principles from a variety of procedures. The reauditor may be able to obtain some evidence regarding opening balances and consistency of accounting principles by reading the audited financial statements for the prior period and the predecessor auditor's report thereon, and making inquiry and reviewing the audit documentation of the predecessor auditor.

.23 In performing these procedures, the reauditor should consider the independence and professional reputation of the predecessor auditor, and whether there are factors that preclude obtaining any evidence from reading the audited financial statements for the prior period and the predecessor auditor's report or reviewing the predecessor auditor's audit documentation. In addition, if, for any reason, the reauditor is not permitted to review the audit documentation of the predecessor auditor, the reauditor will not be able to obtain any evidence from reading the audited financial statements for the prior period and the predecessor auditor's report. Accordingly, the reauditor should perform appropriate alternative procedures with respect to the opening balances as of the beginning of the reaudit period and with respect to the consistency of accounting principles.

.24 The audit procedures performed on the reaudit period transactions may provide some audit evidence about the opening balances. For example, audit evidence gathered during the reaudit may provide some assurance about the existence and valuation of receivables and inventory recorded at the beginning of the year. Regardless of the procedures performed, the nature, timing and extent of such procedures are solely the responsibility of the reauditor.

## **Uncorrected Financial Statement Misstatements**

.25 The reauditor should evaluate the treatment and effects of uncorrected financial statement misstatements on both opening and closing balances of the period under reaudit. With respect to uncorrected misstatements that were identified by the predecessor auditor, the predecessor auditor and the reauditor may have different methods of evaluating uncorrected misstatements and may come to different conclusions with respect to their effects on the financial statements taken as a whole; accordingly, the reauditor cannot be held to any decisions of the entity and the predecessor auditor regarding the materiality of uncorrected misstatements or their disposition. In evaluating the effects of any uncorrected misstatements, irrespective of whether identified by the predecessor auditor or by the reauditor during the reaudit, including those that exist at the beginning and end of the period under reaudit, the reauditor alone is responsible for obtaining sufficient evidential matter to support his or her conclusion that the financial statements are free of material misstatement.

## Representation Letters

**.26** Practical difficulties may arise in obtaining a representation letter with respect to a reaudit engagement. In some situations, a different management team is in place currently than during the original audit period. Current management may believe that it bears no responsibility for financial statements developed by prior management and may resist a request for their signatures on the representation letter. This situation does not alleviate the need for obtaining an appropriately signed representation letter from current management for all periods being reported on.

**.27** The reauditor is advised to discuss the requirement for a signed representation letter early in the process to make sure that appropriate officials are aware of their responsibility for the audited financial statements and the efforts they must undertake to be able to provide the representations to the reauditor. If the reauditor is unable to obtain the written representations that he or she deems necessary from current management for all periods being reported on, a scope limitation exists.

## Reporting Implications

**.28** The reauditor should not issue a report that reflects divided responsibility as described in SAS No. 1, section 543 unless in connection with the reaudit, the reauditor has informed the predecessor auditor that he or she will rely on, and where applicable, refer to, the predecessor auditor's report on certain subsidiaries or divisions.

**.29** In some circumstances, the reauditor may not be able to complete a reaudit. For example, during a current period audit, the reauditor may conclude that controls are insufficient to allow the reauditor to rely on the types of procedures available to evaluate accounts such as inventory. If the reauditor is unable to obtain sufficient competent evidential matter to express an opinion on the financial statements, the reauditor qualifies the opinion or disclaims an opinion because of the inability to perform procedures the reauditor considers necessary in the circumstances. The SEC does not generally accept such reports. In such situations, the reauditor may elect to resign from the engagement.

## Other Audit Issues

**.30** Because the reaudit report is dated as of the date that the reauditor completes fieldwork, subsequent events procedures are to be performed through that date. Subsequent events are disclosed in the reaudited financial statements if their disclosure is required to keep the financial statements from being misleading.

**.31** The reauditor's consideration of the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time takes into consideration the reauditor's knowledge of relevant conditions and events that exist or have occurred prior to completion of the reaudit fieldwork. The reauditor should consider whether the financial statements adequately disclose such conditions and events, other conditions and events occurring subsequent to the balance sheet date, their possible effects, and any mitigating factors, including management's plans. If the reauditor concludes that substantial doubt remains about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, the audit report should include an explanatory paragraph reflecting that conclusion.

## Internal Inspection

**.32** It is important that a firm monitor its reaudits to determine whether the engagements are being performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and the firm's system of quality controls. Accordingly, a firm's internal inspection program should consider addressing the firm's re-audit engagements, including engagement acceptance procedures.

---

[The next page is 51,091.]



**Section 16,240****Practice Alert 03-1**  
**Audit Confirmations**

First issued January, 2003;

Updated June, 2007

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide practitioners with information that may help them improve the effectiveness and efficiency of their engagements and practices. It is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF), and information provided by certain AICPA member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA.

The auditing portion of this publication is an Other Auditing Publication as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and is intended to provide guidance to auditors of nonissuers.<sup>1</sup> Other Auditing Publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply SASs. If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an Other Auditing Publication, the auditor should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of the subject audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

**.01** AU section 330, *The Confirmation Process*, provides guidance to auditors about obtaining evidence from third parties about financial statement assertions made by management. AU section 326A, *Evidential Matter*, states that it is generally presumed that evidential matter obtained from independent sources outside an entity provides greater assurance of reliability than evidence secured solely within the entity.

**.02** The purpose of this practice alert is to communicate additional guidance to practitioners with respect to the use of audit confirmations.

**General Confirmation Guidance**

**.03** Audit confirmations can prove to be an effective audit procedure with respect to many different accounts, including accounts receivable, notes receivable, inventory, consigned merchandise, construction and production contracts, investment securities, market values, accounts payable, notes payable, lines of credit, account balances and other information from financial institutions, and other actual and contingent liabilities. In addition, confirmations

---

<sup>1</sup> The term *issuer* is defined in Section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act as: "An issuer as defined in Section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the securities of which are registered under Section 12 of that Act, or that is required to file reports under Section 15(d) [of the Exchange Act] or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933, and that it has not withdrawn." (Parenthetical references to the United States Code omitted).

can be used to obtain audit evidence with respect to related parties and unusual transactions.

## Improving Confirmation Response Rates

**.04** The effectiveness of the confirmation procedure is influenced by both the willingness and the ability of the respondents to accurately respond to the information presented on the confirmation. If the auditor requests information that the recipient is likely and able to confirm, the auditor may experience improved confirmation response rates. The confirmation request may include relevant information required for a response by the recipient. For example, with respect to accounts receivable confirmations, recipients may be more likely to reply, as well as identify discrepancies, if the confirmation request is sent with their monthly statement. The auditor also may consider attaching to the confirmation request a list of outstanding invoices and unapplied credits that make up the account balance. In addition, when the verification of an account balance is difficult or complex, the auditor may ask the recipient to confirm supporting information from which the auditor can later compute the ending account balance. For example, instead of asking an individual to confirm a mortgage balance that includes a complex interest calculation, the auditor could request confirmation of the original balance, interest rate, number of installments, and the date the last installment was paid.

**.05** In some cases, the effectiveness of the confirmation is improved not by providing relevant information with the request, but rather by asking the respondent to indicate his or her understanding of the information (an “open” confirmation). This may be particularly appropriate when seeking confirmation of terms of a transaction, rather than amounts.

**.06** The following techniques may be used by the auditor to improve the confirmation response rate:

- Use clear wording.
- Send the confirmation to a specified individual.
- Identify the organization being audited.
- Ask the client to hand-sign the confirmation requests. Hand-signing a confirmation may increase the confirmation rate when the signature on the confirmation is familiar to the recipient.
- Set response deadlines.
- Send second—and consider third—requests.
- Call the respondent to obtain oral confirmation and request that the written confirmation be returned.

## Negative vs. Positive Confirmation Requests

**.07** In designing the confirmation request, it is important that the auditor consider the assertions being addressed and the factors that affect the reliability of the evidence obtained through confirmation procedures. One factor to consider is the form of the request, that is, a positive or negative request. A positive confirmation request is one in which the recipient is asked to respond directly to the auditor as to whether he or she agrees with the information presented. The positive form provides evidential matter that is inherently more reliable than negative confirmations. However, the positive form only provides audit evidence if responses are received directly from the recipients.

**.08** Recipients of negative confirmation requests are asked to respond only if they disagree with the information presented. The auditor places reliance on the absence of any reply to a specific request by implicitly making the assumption that the intended recipient received the confirmation request and agreed with the information shown. AU section 330.20 states that negative confirmation requests may be used to reduce audit risk to an acceptable level when:

- The combined assessed level of inherent and control risk is low,
- A large number of small balances is involved, and
- The auditor has no reason to believe that recipients of the requests are unlikely to give them consideration. (For example, the auditor may become satisfied that recipients are not unlikely to give adequate consideration by considering the results of positive confirmation procedures performed in prior years on the engagement or on similar engagements.)

**.09** The auditor should consider performing other substantive procedures to supplement the use of negative confirmations. In addition, the auditor should investigate and determine the effects on the audit of relevant information provided in responses to negative confirmations. Additionally, the auditor can send some positive confirmation requests as well as the negative requests. When only negative confirmations are used, auditors generally send more confirmation requests than they would have if they had used positive confirmations.

## Nonresponses to Positive Confirmations

**.10** In order to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level, the auditor may seek corroborative evidence that intended recipients for which positive confirmation requests are returned undelivered do exist. The auditor ordinarily sends second, and sometimes third, requests in the event of a nonresponse. Those subsequent requests may be either oral or written, considering factors such as timing. In any event, the auditor should take appropriate follow-up actions with respect to all nonresponding requests (see “Alternative Procedures” below). Also, intended recipients who do not reply—and from whom confirmation requests are returned undelivered—may be reported to a client official who is not directly involved in the area subject to confirmation.

## Responses to Positive Confirmation Requests Indicating Exceptions

**.11** An exception to a positive confirmation request occurs when the respondent disagrees with, questions, or otherwise provides information that is different from the information presented. The nature of any exceptions—including the implications, both qualitative and quantitative, of those exceptions—should be evaluated.

**.12** If an exception cannot be resolved, or follow-up procedures indicate that the exception represents a misstatement, the auditor may, in order to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level: (1) determine the cause of the misstatement, (2) extrapolate the misstatement (together with other misstatements included in the same sampling application, if applicable) over the population to determine whether additional audit evidence is required to reduce the risk of material misstatement to an appropriately low level, and (3) consider whether the potential exists that fraud may have occurred (see AU section 316, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*). If similar

misstatements could exist, additional audit procedures generally would be necessary to determine the extent of possible misstatements and their effect on the achievement of confirmation audit objectives. In the case of fraud, an extensive investigation may be necessary before such determination can be made. As a best practice, unreconciled misstatements may be reported to a client official not directly associated with the accounts or other information subject to the request for confirmation. The auditor also may consider whether responses indicate matters that should be reported to the audit committee.

## Use of Electronic Confirmations

**.13** Interpretation No. 1, “Use of Electronic Confirmations” of AU section 330, *The Confirmation Process*, states that properly controlled electronic communications may be considered to be reliable audit evidence. The acceptance of electronic confirmations or the use of an electronic confirmation process is not precluded by the examples in AU section 330.

**.14** No confirmation process with a third party is without some risk of interception, alteration, or fraud. Risks associated with paper confirmations and use of the mail includes the risk that the confirmation respondent will not be a bona fide and authorized respondent. An electronic confirmation process that creates a secure confirmation environment may mitigate the risks of human intervention and misdirection. The key lies in the process or mechanism used by the auditor and the respondent to minimize the possibility that the results will be compromised because of interception, alteration, or fraud with respect to the confirmation.

**.15** Pursuant to paragraph .09 of AU section 326, *Audit Evidence*, the auditor should consider the reliability of the information to be used as audit evidence. In relation to the electronic confirmation process, the auditor’s consideration of the reliability of the information should include consideration of the risk that:

- The confirmation response might not be from the proper source.
- A respondent might not be authorized to respond.
- The integrity of the transmission might have been compromised.

**.16** If a system or process that facilitates electronic confirmation between the auditor and the confirmation respondent is in place, and the auditor plans to rely on such a system or process, an assurance trust services report (for example, Systrust) or another auditor’s report on that process may assist the auditor in assessing the design and operating effectiveness of the electronic and manual controls with respect to that process. Such a report would usually address the three risks listed above. If these risks are not addressed in the report, the auditor may perform additional procedures to address them.

**.17** Interpretation No. 1 of AU section 330 further states that if the auditor is satisfied that the electronic confirmation process is secure and properly controlled, and the confirmation is directly from a third party who is a bona fide authorized respondent, electronic confirmations may be considered as sufficient, valid confirmation responses. Various means might be used to validate the sender of electronic information and the respondent’s authorization to confirm the requested information. For example, the use of encryption,<sup>2</sup> electronic

---

<sup>2</sup> Encryption is the process of encoding electronic data in such a way that it cannot be read without the second party employing a matching encryption “key.” Use of encryption reduces the risk of unintended intervention in a communication.

digital signatures,<sup>3</sup> and procedures to verify Web site authenticity<sup>4</sup> may improve the security of the electronic confirmation process.

## Confirmations Received Via Fax or Electronically

.18 The auditor should communicate directly with the intended recipient of the confirmation request. In order to validate confirmations received via fax or electronically, the auditor should consider (a) verifying by telephone with the purported sender the source and contents of the response received by fax or e-mail and (b) asking the sender to mail the original confirmation directly to the auditor. All procedures performed and conclusions reached should be documented in the audit working papers.

## Management Requests to Not Confirm

.19 When management requests that the auditor not confirm certain balances or other information, the auditor may consider the basis for the request and the impact of the request on audit risk. A common reason for such a request is some type of dispute between the client and the intended recipient. The existence of a dispute by itself is not an appropriate reason for not confirming a balance or other information. An assertion of a dispute may be intended to divert the auditor from an inappropriate transaction.

.20 The auditor may seek corroborating evidence with respect to the reasons that management is making the request to not confirm. Ordinarily, a management representation as to the reasons would not constitute sufficient appropriate audit evidence. If the auditor accepts the validity of management's request not to seek external confirmation regarding a particular matter, alternative procedures should be applied to obtain sufficient, appropriate evidence regarding the matter that would have been the subject of the confirmation.

.21 If management requests the auditor not to confirm certain accounts or other information, the auditor may consider including a schedule of such accounts, including the reasons for the request not to confirm, in the client representation letter.

.22 If the auditor deems management's request to be reasonable and is able to satisfy himself or herself by applying alternative procedures, there is no limitation on the scope of the work, and the auditor's report need not include a reference to the omission of confirmation procedures or to the use of alternative procedures. If management's request is not deemed reasonable, and the restrictions significantly limit the scope of the audit, ordinarily the auditor should disclaim an opinion or withdraw from the engagement. In those situations, the auditor may wish to consult his or her legal counsel.

## Alternative Procedures

.23 After the auditor has decided to obtain a confirmation about an account, transaction, event, or other matter, the item should be either confirmed or subjected to alternative procedures to obtain the evidence necessary

---

<sup>3</sup> Digital signatures may use the encryption of codes, text, or other means to ensure that only the claimed signer of the document could have affixed the symbol. The signature and its characteristics are uniquely linked to the signer. Digital signature routines allow for the creation of the signature and the checking of the signature at a later date for authenticity.

<sup>4</sup> Web site authenticity routines may use various means, including mathematical algorithms, to monitor data or a Web site to ensure that its content has not been altered without authorization. Webtrust or VeriSign certifications may be earned and affixed to a Web site, indicating an active program of protecting the underlying content of the information.

to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level. This includes all nonresponses to positive confirmations, positive or negative confirmations that were returned as undeliverable, and accounts that were selected but not confirmed at the client's request.

**.24** AU section 330.31 provides for the omission of alternative procedures to nonresponding positive confirmations, in limited circumstances, if both of the following conditions are present:

- The auditor has not identified unusual qualitative factors or systemic characteristics related to the nonresponses.
- When testing for overstatement of amounts, the nonresponses in the aggregate, when projected as 100 percent misstatements to the population and added to the sum of all other unadjusted differences, would not affect the auditor's decision about whether the financial statements are materially misstated.

**.25** However, it is advised that the auditor use caution in deciding not to perform alternative procedures because unusual factors or systemic characteristics may not be evident and, even with projection of the items as misstatements, underlying causes that might indicate other misstatements would not be identified.

**.26** For example, with respect to accounts receivable confirmations, alternative procedures include examining cash receipt records, remittance advices or other evidence of subsequent collection, shipping records, evidence of receipt of goods by the customer, invoices, and customer correspondence. The nature and extent of the procedures selected will depend on the assessed risk of material misstatement, the nature of the account balance or other information the auditor attempted to confirm, and the availability of audit evidence. Because evidence obtained through confirmation often is more persuasive than internal evidence, the auditor may need to perform a combination of alternative procedures in order to reduce audit risk to the intended level. The auditor should maintain an appropriate level of professional skepticism with respect to the various possibilities concerning why no response was received, including the possibility of fraud.

## Use of Client Personnel

**.27** The auditor should maintain control over the confirmation process, from the preparation of the confirmation requests through the mailing of the confirmation requests, to the receipt of the responses. However, in order to increase audit efficiency, client personnel can be utilized to assist with the confirmation requests if under close auditor supervision and to facilitate the auditor's examination of differences and nonresponses by:

- Listing and accumulating data.
- Reconciling book and reported amounts for the auditor's follow-up and examination.
- Accumulating documents for the auditor's inspection.

**.28** Client personnel may investigate exceptions if the auditor supervises the activity and subsequently inspects, at least on a test basis, the evidence supporting the client's explanation of differences. The auditor may maintain control over the confirmations by maintaining the original confirmation reply and providing the client personnel with a copy or other record of the reply.

## Confirmation Guidance With Respect to Specific Areas

**.29** The following is intended to provide guidance and best practices with respect to the confirmation of specific financial statement accounts and other information:

### Confirmation of Accounts Receivable

**.30** AU section 330.34 states the following:

“Confirmation of accounts receivable is a generally accepted auditing procedure. . . Thus, there is a presumption that the auditor will request the confirmation of accounts receivable during an audit unless one of the following is true:

- Accounts receivable are immaterial to the financial statements.
- The use of confirmations would be ineffective.
- The auditor’s combined assessed level of inherent and control risk is low, and the assessed level, in conjunction with the evidence expected to be provided by analytical procedures or other substantive tests of details, is sufficient to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level for the applicable financial statement assertions. . .”

**.31** For the purposes of this requirement, “accounts receivable” is defined to include:

- Claims against customers that have arisen from the sale of goods or services in the normal course of business, and
- A financial institution’s loans.

**.32** Because AU section 330.34 establishes a presumption that the auditor will request confirmation of accounts receivable during an audit, it is not sufficient to merely assert that, for example, the use of confirmations would be ineffective. Rather, it is necessary to provide evidence sufficient to overcome the presumption. A decision not to confirm accounts receivable should be documented, including how the auditor overcame the presumption.

**.33** Footnote 4 to AU section 330.34 states that the use of confirmations would be ineffective if, for example, “based on prior years’ audit experience or on experience with similar engagements, the auditor concludes that response rates to properly designed confirmation requests will be inadequate, or if responses are known or expected to be unreliable.” Additionally, the use of confirmations may not be effective because the federal government and certain companies may have a policy of not responding to confirmation requests.

**.34** In addition, when confirmation procedures are not used because the auditor has concluded they would be ineffective, the nature or extent of alternative procedures, such as applying a combination of procedures or applying the procedures to a larger number of items than would have been confirmed, may be deemed necessary to reduce audit risk to an acceptably low level. Certain alternative procedures might be more difficult to perform if the entity extensively utilizes electronic systems, and copies of shipping documents and other sources of audit evidence are not retrievable.

### Confirmation of Terms of Unusual or Complex Agreements or Transactions

**.35** The auditor should consider confirming the terms of unusual or complex agreements or transactions. Software companies, for example, present significant risks related to revenue recognition due to the complexity of revenue

recognition methods and the risk of management override of controls over software sales contracts. Confirmation of terms can be performed in conjunction with the confirmation of account balances or separately. Because the details of the matters may not be known to the customer's lower-level accounting personnel, the confirmation may need to be addressed to customer personnel who would be familiar with the details. Such personnel may include executives in the company's sales department, the chief financial officer, the chief operating officer, or the chief executive officer.

**.36** AU section 316 states that the auditor should ordinarily presume that there is a risk of material misstatement due to fraud relating to revenue recognition. Therefore, a careful evaluation of the appropriateness of the client's accounting for revenue transactions, and a consideration of confirmation of the terms of transactions and the absence of any side agreements, are important. The necessity of confirming terms of transactions and the absence of side agreements increases if the auditor encounters any of the following:

- Significant sales or volume of sales at or near the end of the reporting period.
- Use of nonstandard contracts or contract clauses.
- Use of letters of authorization in lieu of signed contracts or agreements.
- Altered dates on contracts or shipping documents (this may indicate an increased risk of fraud).
- Concurrent agreements or "linked" contracts and transactions.
- Lack of evidence of customer acceptance.
- Existence of bill-and-hold transactions.
- Existence of extended payment terms or nonstandard installment receivables.
- Accounting/finance department's lack of involvement in sales transactions or in the monitoring of arrangements with distributors/retailers.
- Unusual volume of sales to distributors/retailers.
- Sales, other than sales of software, with commitments for future upgrades.
- Sales where significant uncertainties or obligations, or both, to the seller exist.
- Sales to value-added-resellers and distributors lacking financial strength.
- Increasing receivables from a customer, which may be an indicator of the customer's perception of the payment terms (for example, payments not due until resale to end users).
- Aggressive accounting policies or practices (for example, tone at the top regarding pressures for revenue and earnings).

## Confirmation of Accounts Payable

**.37** Confirmation with major suppliers, including those with small or zero balances, can substantially contribute to establishing the existence and completeness of accounts payable. In addition, confirmation of accounts payable can prove to be an effective procedure in the detection of "round-trip" or "linked"

transactions. Round-trip or linked transactions occur when a company enters into a seemingly valid sales transaction with a customer but sends all or some of the sales proceeds back to the customer in another seemingly valid purchase transaction, often affecting a different accounting period. These types of transactions frequently occur in industries where analysts have focused on the revenue that companies display on financial statements instead of on income. For a company in which round-tripping has been identified as a risk, the auditor may consider confirming balances for major customers or suppliers, or both, from which the company both recorded sales and made purchases during the year.

**.38** Situations that may call for the confirmation of accounts payable include:

- Client controls over payables and cash disbursements are poor or uncertain, creating a greater risk of unprocessed and unrecorded vendor invoices.
- Industry practices may create a higher risk of unrecorded liabilities or inappropriate accounting (for example, Internet entities, software companies, real estate, energy, telecommunications).
- Complex business transactions create an environment where unrecorded accounts might exist (for example, business combinations and royalty deals).

**.39** In confirming accounts payable, auditors generally use a blank request form in which the respondent is requested to fill in the missing information. This provides an effective test for the existence of unrecorded liabilities. In addition, the auditor may find it effective to request that the respondent provide a detailed listing of the payable balance and ask for information about quid pro quo transactions (in other words, transactions resulting in an equal exchange), if any, and the related details. To obtain the intended degree of assurance from confirmation of suppliers, the following procedures should be considered:

- Review accounts payable subsidiary (purchase) ledger, suppliers' invoice files, and disbursement records or purchase volume records by supplier.
- Ask client personnel responsible for purchasing to identify and list major suppliers. It usually is efficient to maintain and annually update a carryforward list of major suppliers in the permanent file.
- Identify other suppliers from which confirmation of the accounts payable balance is desired. Consider advertising and other major suppliers of services, construction contractors, equipment suppliers, and suppliers with known or suspected disputed balances.

**.40** When statements are not available from suppliers who did not reply to the confirmation requests, or from suppliers with unusually large (or generally more important, unusually small) balances that were not included with the suppliers subject to confirmation, the auditor may consider examining documentary evidence supporting payments made to those suppliers subsequent to the confirmation date. This may identify items that should have been accrued as payable at the confirmation date but were not.

## Confirmation of Related Party Transactions

**.41** The auditor should be cognizant of the fraud risks in transactions involving related parties and variable interest entities. In all financial statement

audits, the auditor should perform procedures to identify parties that are related to the entity being audited and to understand the relationships between the identified parties. Additionally, the auditor should gain an understanding of the business rationale for significant related party transactions. In order to fully understand a particular transaction, the auditor may consider confirming the transaction amount(s) and terms, including guarantees and other significant data, with the other parties to the transaction. In addition, the auditor may consider confirming significant information with intermediaries, such as banks, guarantors, agents, or attorneys. Because it is possible for management to be on both sides of the transaction, more reliable audit evidence may come from the intermediaries. The auditor also may be able to identify related parties through the confirmation of unusual transactions.

## **Evolving Alternatives to Confirmation**

.42 An auditor sometimes is able to directly access information held by a third party concerning a client's account balance. For example, using the client's personal identification number, an auditor may be able to make an online inquiry about a client's bank balance information. While such procedures may provide audit evidence concerning that information, it does not meet the definition of confirmation. AU section 330.04 states that "confirmation is the process of obtaining and evaluating a direct communication from a third party in response to a request for information about a particular item affecting financial statement assertions." A direct confirmation from a third party in response to a request for information requires an active response from the third party. Accordingly, an online inquiry of the third party's database does not constitute a response, but rather constitutes an alternative procedure. Such a procedure should not be treated as a confirmation in those circumstances where the auditor concludes that a confirmation is the required or desired type of evidence.

---

**[The next page is 51,111.]**

**Section 16,250****Practice Alert 03-2**  
**Journal Entries and Other Adjustments**

June, 2003

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide auditors with information that may help them improve the efficiency and effectiveness of their audits and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by the SEC Practice Section member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an Other Auditing Publication as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. Other Auditing Publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs). If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an Other Auditing Publication, he or she should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of his or her audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

.01 The Auditing Standards Board has promulgated standards that address an auditor's understanding and evaluation of journal entries and other adjustments. For example, in SAS No. 94, *The Effect of Information Technology on the Auditor's Consideration of Internal Control in a Financial Statement Audit*, the Auditing Standards Board expanded the auditor's required understanding of the automated and manual procedures an entity uses to prepare its financial statements and related disclosures to include procedures an entity uses to (a) enter transaction totals into the general ledger, (b) initiate, record and process journal entries in the general ledger, and (c) record recurring and nonrecurring adjustments, such as consolidating adjustments, report combinations and reclassifications, that are not reflected in formal journal entries.

.02 In addition, SAS No. 99, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit*, states, "Material misstatements of financial statements due to fraud often involve the manipulation of the financial reporting by (a) recording inappropriate or unauthorized journal entries throughout the year or at period end, or (b) making adjustments to amounts reported in the financial statements that are not reflected in formal journal entries, such as through consolidating adjustments, report combinations, and reclassifications. Accordingly, the auditor should design procedures to test the appropriateness of journal entries recorded in the general ledger and other adjustments (for example, entries posted directly to financial statement drafts) made in the preparation of the financial statements."

.03 SAS No. 99 further states, "Standard journal entries used on a recurring basis to record transactions such as monthly sales, purchases, and cash

disbursements, or to record recurring periodic accounting estimates generally are subject to the entity's internal controls. Nonstandard entries (for example, entries used to record nonrecurring transactions, such as a business combination, or entries used to record a nonrecurring estimate, such as an asset impairment) might not be subject to the same level of internal control. In addition, other adjustments, report combinations, and reclassifications generally are not reflected in formal journal entries and might not be subject to the entity's internal controls. Accordingly, the auditor should consider placing additional emphasis on identifying and testing items processed outside of the normal course of business."

**.04** In response to the risk of management override, SAS No. 99, which will be effective for audits of calendar year 2003 financial statements, requires the auditor, in all audits, to (a) obtain an understanding of the entity's financial reporting process and controls over journal entries and other adjustments, (b) identify and select journal entries and other adjustments for testing, (c) determine the timing of the testing, and (d) inquire of individuals involved in the financial reporting process about inappropriate or unusual activity relating to the processing of journal entries or other adjustments.

**.05** The purpose of this Practice Alert is to provide auditors with guidance regarding the design and performance of audit procedures to fulfill the responsibilities outlined in SAS No. 99 regarding journal entries and other adjustments.

## **Obtaining an Understanding of the Entity's Financial Reporting Process and Its Controls Over Journal Entries and Other Adjustments**

**.06** SAS No. 99 states, "An entity may have implemented specific controls over journal entries and other adjustments. For example, an entity may use journal entries that are preformatted with account numbers and specific user approval criteria, and may have automated controls to generate an exception report for any entries that were unsuccessfully proposed for recording or entries that were recorded and processed outside of established parameters. The auditor should obtain an understanding of the design of such controls over journal entries and other adjustments and determine whether they are suitably designed and have been placed in operation."

**.07** An entity's financial reporting system also includes the use of nonstandard journal entries to record nonrecurring or unusual transactions or adjustments such as business combinations, or a nonrecurring estimate such as an asset impairment. Additionally, nonstandard entries include consolidation entries, reclassification entries, and spreadsheet or other worksheet adjustments. Because of the risk of misstatements (intentional or unintentional) oftentimes linked to nonstandard journal entries and other adjustments, the engagement team needs to obtain a thorough understanding of the entity's controls surrounding this aspect of the financial reporting process.

**.08** Obtaining an understanding of the entity's financial reporting process helps the auditor to identify important information such as:

- The entity's written and unwritten policies and procedures regarding the initiation, recording and processing of standard and nonstandard journal entries and other adjustments;
- The sources of significant debits and credits to an account;
- Individuals responsible for initiating entries to the general ledger, transaction processing systems, or consolidation;

- Approvals and reviews required for such entries and other adjustments;
- The mechanics for recording journal entries and other adjustments (for example, whether entries are initiated and recorded online with no physical evidence, or created in paper form and entered in batch mode);
- Controls, if any, designed to prevent and detect fictitious entries and unauthorized changes to journals and ledgers; and
- Controls over the integrity of the process used to generate reports used by the auditors.

## Assessing the Risk of Material Misstatement Resulting From Journal Entries and Other Adjustments

**.09** Although SAS No. 99 requires the auditor to test journal entries and other adjustments regardless of the risk assessment, the nature, timing, extent and focus of the testing will be influenced by the auditor's risk assessments. The auditor should assess the nature and risk of management's incentive to manipulate earnings or financial ratios through financial statement misstatement. That assessment should be made in conjunction with the interim reviews as well as the year-end audit. For example, if a client has loan covenant ratios that depend on earnings, and net income is close to causing covenant violations, then the auditor may assess the risk of material misstatement as higher. The auditor may also assess the risk of material misstatement as higher when executive compensation is tied to earnings thresholds and earnings are close to the threshold. Additionally, market expectations in many cases have led to earnings manipulations. In those cases where the auditor determines that the risk of fraudulent journal entries is high due to questions regarding the integrity of management, the auditor should reassess his or her client acceptance/continuance decision.

**.10** SAS No. 99 states, "Members of the audit team should discuss the potential for material misstatement due to fraud. The discussion should include an exchange of ideas or "brainstorming" among the audit team members, including the auditor with final responsibility for the audit, about how and where they believe the entity's financial statements might be susceptible to material misstatement due to fraud, how management could perpetrate and conceal fraudulent financial reporting, and how assets of the entity could be misappropriated."

**.11** Journal entries and other adjustments oftentimes exist only in electronic form, which requires extraction of the desired data by an auditor with information technology (IT) knowledge and skills or the use of an IT specialist. In audits of entities with complex IT systems, the IT auditors and/or IT specialists should be included in the brainstorming session. In the brainstorming session, the auditors normally will discuss the following:

- The various ways in which management could originate and post inappropriate journal entries or other adjustments.
- The kinds of unusual combinations of debits and credits that the engagement team should be looking for.
- The types of journal entries or other adjustments that could result in a material misstatement that would not likely be detected by standard audit procedures.

## **Inquiries of Individuals Involved in the Financial Reporting Process**

.12 SAS No. 99, paragraph 24, states, “The auditor should inquire of others within the entity about the existence or suspicion of fraud. The auditor should use professional judgment to determine those others within the entity to whom inquiries should be directed and the extent of such inquiries. In making this determination, the auditor should consider whether others within the entity may be able to provide information that will be helpful to the auditor in identifying risks of material misstatement due to fraud—for example, others who may have additional knowledge about or be able to corroborate risks of fraud identified in the discussions with management . . . or the audit committee.” Where practical, regardless of the fraud risk assessment, the auditor should inquire of the entity’s accounting and data entry personnel about whether those individuals were requested to make unusual entries during the audit period. The auditor should also consider asking selected programmers and IT staff about the existence of unusual and/or unsupported entries and specifically inquire about these entries, including whether any were initiated directly by top management outside the normal accounting process. The auditor should not expect client personnel to volunteer information about known or suspected fraud. However, those same individuals may be more likely to provide information if asked directly.

## **Assessment of Completeness of Journal Entry and Other Adjustments Sources**

.13 It is important in testing journal entries and other adjustments that the auditor be aware of and consider the entire population of journal entries and other adjustments. The auditor’s ability to detect fraud is adversely affected if he or she is not assured of access to all of the journal entries posted and other adjustments made during the audit period. The auditor should be aware that journal entries and other adjustments may be made outside of the general ledger and should obtain a complete understanding as to how the various general ledgers are combined and the accounts are grouped to create the consolidated financial statements. For example, at large, multi-national companies, multiple general ledgers are utilized, adjustments are made to convert from local GAAP to U.S. GAAP, and translation and other adjustments are made before the numbers are combined (perhaps at more than one level of sub-consolidation) and become subject to further elimination and adjusting entries. Appropriate procedures should be applied to all of the various sources of information from which journal entries and other adjustments are selected for testing to assist the auditor in assessing completeness. The nature and extent of these procedures will depend on the engagement risk assessments and the client’s systems for recording transactions.

## **Identification and Selection of Journal Entries and Other Adjustments for Testing**

.14 After the auditor has made his or her assessment of the risk of fraudulent journal entries and other adjustments and has performed appropriate procedures to assess completeness, he or she should design procedures, based on that assessment, to test the appropriateness of the journal entries and other

adjustments from the various sources previously identified including (a) journal entries recorded in the general ledger, and (b) top side consolidation or report entries that are not actually posted to the general ledger. The auditor should test the appropriateness of selected journal entries and other adjustments in all engagements—including those in which the risk of fraudulent journal entries is assessed as low. Those tests are performed to confirm that entries are appropriately approved by management, are adequately supported and reflect the underlying events and transactions. Such tests should be designed to detect inappropriate entries.

**.15** After considering the identified population of journal entries and other adjustments, the auditor should use professional judgment to determine the nature, timing and extent of the testing of journal entries and other adjustments. SAS No. 99 requires that the auditor consider:

- The auditor's assessment of the risk of material misstatement due to fraud.
- The effectiveness of controls that have been implemented over journal entries and other adjustments.
- The entity's financial reporting process and the nature of the evidence that can be examined.
- The characteristics of fraudulent entries or adjustments.
- The nature and complexity of the accounts.
- Journal entries or other adjustments processed outside the normal course of business.

**.16** For many entities, routine processing of transactions involves a combination of manual and automated steps and procedures. Similarly, the processing of journal entries and other adjustments might involve both manual and automated procedures and controls. Regardless of the method, the auditor's procedures should include selecting, from the various sources of information from which journal entries and other adjustments are posted, specific entries and other adjustments to be tested and examining the support for those items. In addition, the auditor should be aware that journal entries and other adjustments might exist in either electronic or paper form. In an IT environment, it may be necessary for the auditor to employ computer-assisted audit techniques ("CAATs") (for example, report writers, software or data extraction tools, or other systems based techniques) to identify the journal entries and other adjustments to be tested. In addition, the CAATs ordinarily are designed to detect the following:

- Entries made at unusual times of day, that is, outside regular business hours.
- Entries made by unusual users, blank or nonsensical user names, senior management, or the IT staff.
- Electronic entries that, through management manipulation, are not documented in the general ledger.

**.17** Additionally, it is normally beneficial if the CAATs filter out recurring transactions in order to identify nonrecurring transactions and foot the detail in accounting records. The CAATs should be designed specifically to assist in evaluating whether all journal entries and other adjustments are included in the population to be reviewed. Firms utilizing internal IT specialists to perform the CAATs should invest appropriate resources in training to ensure that the IT specialists are able to competently perform the procedures and understand the importance of detecting any inappropriate journal entries or other adjustments.

**.18** Characteristics of fraudulent journal entries may include entries (a) made to unrelated, unusual, or seldom-used accounts, (b) made by individuals who typically do not make journal entries, (c) recorded at the end of the period or as post-closing entries that have little or no explanation or description, (d) made either before or during the preparation of the financial statements that do not have account numbers, or (e) containing round numbers or a consistent ending number. The auditor should look for unusual entries during both the year-end and quarter-end cut-off procedures. Additionally, any entries that were reversed at the beginning of the subsequent period should be scrutinized more carefully. Also, the auditor ordinarily should consider looking for unusual entries that affect revenue.

**.19** Inappropriate journal entries may be applied to accounts that (a) contain transactions that are complex or unusual in nature, (b) contain significant estimates and period-end adjustments, (c) have been prone to errors in the past, (d) have not been reconciled on a timely basis or contained unreconciled differences, (e) contain intercompany transactions, or (f) are otherwise associated with an identified risk of material misstatement due to fraud. The auditor should recognize, however, that inappropriate journal entries also might be made to other accounts.

**.20** Several high profile cases that resulted in restatements and allegedly involved management fraud, purportedly extensively utilized inappropriate journal entries and other adjustments. In many of those instances, management accomplished the fraud by posting numerous improper journal entries in relatively small amounts, which impacted large balance sheet and income statement accounts thereby not resulting in a significant fluctuation being identified through analytical procedures. The affected accounts included receivables, inventory, fixed assets, accumulated depreciation, goodwill, prepaid expenses and operating expenses, among others. If management is committed to creating fraudulent financial statements it can design journal entries to, among other things:

- Mask the diversion of funds.
- Record topside adjustments that improperly increase revenue.
- Improperly adjust segment reporting.
- Improperly reverse purchase accounting reserves.
- Improperly write-off uncollectible accounts receivable to purchase accounting reserve accounts and intercompany accounts thereby not reducing income.
- Understate payables through the recording of post-closing journal entries to increase various revenue accounts.
- Improperly decrease accounts payable and general and administrative expenses.
- Improperly capitalize costs as fixed assets or construction in progress instead of expensing those costs as incurred.
- Improperly record adjustments to allowances.

**.21** In audits of entities that have several locations or components, the auditor should consider the need to select journal entries from locations based on factors set forth in SAS 47, *Audit Risk and Materiality in Conducting an Audit* (AICPA Professional Standards, vol. 1, AU sec. 312.18). Those factors

include (a) the nature and amount of assets and transactions executed at the location or component, (b) the degree of centralization of records or information processing, (c) the effectiveness of the control environment, particularly with respect to management's direct control over the exercise of authority delegated to others and its ability to effectively supervise activities at the location or component, (d) the frequency, timing, and scope of monitoring activities by the entity or others at the location or component, and (e) judgments about materiality of the location or component.

**.22** After considering the factors outlined above, as well as the number and monetary amount of journal entries and other adjustments, the auditor should select journal entries and other adjustments from the population and examine documentary evidence indicating that the journal entries are properly supported and approved by management. The selections should include both journal entries recorded in the general ledger and top side or report adjustments that are not actually posted to the general ledger. Because fraudulent journal entries often are made at the end of a reporting period, the auditor's testing ordinarily should focus on the journal entries made at that time. However, because material misstatements in financial statements due to fraud can occur throughout the period and may involve extensive efforts to conceal how it is accomplished, the auditor should consider whether there is also a need to test journal entries throughout the period under audit. Additionally, if entries are used to correct errors in financial statements of a previous period, the auditor should evaluate whether those previously issued financial statements should be restated.

**.23** The auditor should introduce an element of unpredictability regarding the dollar amount and types of journal entries and other adjustments tested. Often, companies are able to perpetrate fraud when, over a period covering several engagements, management is able to determine the auditor's scope and/or strategy and therefore design inappropriate journal entries and other adjustments that have a high probability of not being tested.

**.24** SAS No. 100, *Interim Financial Information*, paragraph 23, states, "The accountant performing the review of interim financial information ordinarily will also be engaged to perform an audit of the annual financial statements of the entity. Certain auditing procedures may be performed concurrently with the review of interim financial information." SAS No. 100 is effective for interim periods with fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2002. As a matter of good practice, the auditor should consider auditing journal entries and other adjustments concurrently with the interim reviews. The auditor should especially focus on journal entries and other adjustments that were reversed at the beginning of the subsequent period.

## Other Adjustments

**.25** In many cases, entities utilize spreadsheets to group general ledger accounts and make consolidating adjustments, reclassifications and other adjustments to arrive at financial statement amounts. Those consolidating adjustments, report combinations and reclassifications that are not reflected in formal journal entries should also be tested based on the auditor's risk assessment. Tests of other adjustments would normally involve comparing the adjustments to underlying supporting information, and considering the rationale underlying the adjustment as well as the reason it was not reflected in a formal journal entry.

## Documentation

.26 SAS No. 96, *Audit Documentation*, requires that audit documentation be sufficient to show that the accounting records agree or reconcile with the financial statements or other information being reported on. The results of procedures performed relative to the entity's journal entries and other adjustments should be documented in the appropriate section of the current audit file. This documentation should include:

- The procedures used by the engagement team to assess the completeness of the population of journal entries and other adjustments subject to review and testing.
- The journal entries and other adjustments that were selected for testing and the basis therefore.
- The procedures performed to audit the journal entries and other adjustments.
- The conclusions reached.
- Who performed and reviewed the work.

---

[The next page is 51,131.]

**Section 16,260****Practice Alert 03-3**  
**Acceptance and Continuance of Clients and Engagements**

December, 2003

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide practitioners with information that may help them improve the effectiveness and efficiency of their engagements and practices and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by certain AICPA member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an Other Auditing Publication as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*. Other Auditing Publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs). If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an Other Auditing Publication, the auditor should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of the subject audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

.01 AICPA Statement on Quality Control Standards (SQCS) No. 2, *System of Quality Control for a CPA Firm's Accounting and Auditing Practice*, which applies to all "audit, attest, accounting and review, and other services for which standards have been established by the AICPA Auditing Standards Board or the AICPA Accounting and Review Services Committee under rule 201 or 202 of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct" states, in paragraphs 14 through 16:

Policies and procedures should be established for deciding whether to accept or continue a client relationship and whether to perform a specific engagement for that client. Such policies and procedures should provide the firm with reasonable assurance that the likelihood of association with a client whose management lacks integrity is minimized. Establishing such policies and procedures does not imply that a firm vouches for the integrity or reliability of a client, nor does it imply that a firm has a duty to any person or entity but itself with respect to acceptance, rejection, or retention of clients. However, prudence suggests that a firm be selective in determining its client relationships and the professional services it provides.

Such policies and procedures should also provide reasonable assurance that the firm:

- a. Undertakes only those engagements that the firm can reasonably expect to be completed with professional competence.

- b. Appropriately considers the risks associated with providing professional services in the particular circumstances.

To minimize the risk of misunderstandings regarding the nature, scope, and limitations of the services to be performed, policies and procedures should provide for obtaining an understanding with the client regarding those services.

**.02** The firm's client acceptance and continuance policies represent a key element in mitigating litigation and business risk. The firm must be aware that the integrity and reputation of a client's management could reflect on the reliability of the client's accounting records and financial representations, and therefore on the firm's reputation or involvement in litigation.

## Acceptance of Clients and Engagements

**.03** The firm should perform an evaluation of **all** potential new clients. The firm should strive to be associated with only those clients that have the following characteristics:

- Management possessing competence and integrity,
- A financial and accounting officer who is knowledgeable about the business and the decisions made by the top operating management,
- Management that is committed to the application of appropriate accounting principles,
- Appropriately comprehensive and sound internal controls that are consistent with the size and organizational structure of the business, and
- An appropriate corporate governance structure.

**.04** The firm may also wish to consider the future business prospects of the prospective client including whether it has a viable business with good long-range prospects and is adequately financed.

**.05** The firm should develop client acceptance procedures designed to identify and reject prospective clients of questionable reputation, and potential engagements that involve a high risk of litigation or regulatory investigations. The client acceptance procedures also should require the firm to consider its independence and ability to provide professional services, with reference to industry expertise, size of engagement, and personnel available to staff the engagement.

**.06** As a best practice, for the higher risk audit clients, including all SEC audit clients, the appropriate level of firm management should review and approve all client acceptance decisions.

## Continuance of Clients and Engagements

**.07** Risks similar to those involved in new client acceptance pertain to the firm's continued association with certain existing clients.

**.08** Each client for which the firm performs recurring attest engagements<sup>1</sup> should be evaluated annually to determine whether the firm should continue the relationship. The continuance assessments should be completed

---

<sup>1</sup> As defined in the AICPA *Code of Professional Conduct*, an attest engagement is one that requires independence under AICPA professional standards such as audits and reviews of financial statements or agreed-upon procedures performed under the attestation standards.

sufficiently in advance of engagement commencement so that identified risks and resulting actions can be included in engagement strategy and staffing plans or so that terminations can be initiated on a timely basis.

**.09** If a significant change in management, directors, owners, or legal counsel; or a significant change in financial condition or the nature of the entity's business has occurred, the firm should determine whether to continue the client relationship.

**.10** As a best practice, for the higher risk audit clients, including all SEC audit clients, the appropriate level of firm management should review and approve all client continuance decisions.

## The Client Acceptance and Continuance Process

**.11** In developing its client acceptance and continuance process, the firm should include procedures that include the following elements. Each of these elements is discussed in detail in this Practice Alert. Certain of these elements may not be applicable to the acceptance or continuance of a compilation or review engagement. Practitioners should exercise professional judgment in determining the applicability of each of the following to the acceptance or continuance of a specific engagement.

- Availability of competent personnel to perform the engagement
- Communication with predecessor accountants or auditors
- Assessment of management's commitment to the appropriate application of generally accepted accounting principles
- Assessment of management's commitment to implementing and maintaining effective internal control
- Assessment of the entity's financial viability
- Independence and objectivity
- Inquiry of third parties
- Background investigations
- Other considerations

## Availability of Competent Personnel to Perform the Engagement

**.12** In evaluating whether to accept or continue an accounting and auditing client relationship, the firm should determine whether competent personnel would be available to provide professional services to the client. In addition, the firm should consider how the addition of a prospective client would affect the firm's ability to staff its existing engagements requiring similar expertise. The firm should not undertake or continue a professional relationship unless the necessary technical and/or industry expertise are available to provide quality services, or the firm has a viable plan to develop the necessary expertise in time to provide quality services.

## Communication With Predecessor Accountants or Auditors

**.13** Before accepting an appointment as auditor, SAS No. 84, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, requires that the firm

communicate with the predecessor auditors to ascertain whether there is any professional reason why the firm should not accept the engagement. As a best practice, the firm may extend this requirement to all potential accounting and auditing engagements. However, a successor accountant is not required to communicate with a predecessor accountant in connection with acceptance of a compilation or review engagement. In those cases where a firm is considering accepting an engagement to reaudit and report on financial statements that have been previously audited and reported on by another auditor, the firm should refer to the guidance in Practice Alert 02-3, *Reauditing Financial Statements* [section 16,230].

**.14** A predecessor auditor is an auditor who (1) has reported on the most recent audited financial statements or was engaged to perform, but did not complete an audit of any subsequent financial statements, and (2) has resigned, declined to stand for reappointment, or been notified that his or her services have been, or may be, terminated. The SEC considers an auditor who is named as an “auditor of record” in a registrant’s registration statement to be a predecessor auditor, regardless of whether the auditor rendered an auditor’s report.

**.15** Although efforts should be undertaken to hold discussions with the predecessor accountants before submitting a proposal, SAS No. 84 recognizes that practical, competitive factors may preclude this. For example:

- The present auditors are asked to repropose on the engagement, in a competitive situation.
- The firm is asked to submit a proposal without the present auditor’s knowledge.

**.16** Accordingly, the requirements of SAS No. 84 to make inquiry of the predecessor auditor do not become operative until the prior auditor-client relationship is terminated. If the firm is asked to submit a proposal in these circumstances, the firm should make it clear to the prospective client that, if the firm’s proposal is accepted, the rules of the profession require the firm to communicate with the predecessor auditor before the firm can agree to accept the engagement. This requirement should be made clear during the proposal process.

**.17** The firm’s communication with the predecessor auditor should include all specific and reasonable inquiries that will assist the firm in determining whether to accept the client. Matters subject to inquiry of the predecessor auditors should include (1) information that might bear on the integrity of management; (2) disagreements with management as to accounting principles, auditing procedures, or other similarly significant matters; (3) communications with audit committees or others with equivalent authority and responsibility regarding fraud, illegal acts by clients, and internal-control related matters; and (4) the predecessor auditors’ understanding as to the reasons for the change in auditors. The firm’s inquiries should also cover other matters pertinent to its consideration of accepting the engagement such as adequacy of internal control; pending or threatened litigation or regulatory investigations; material contingencies or going concern considerations and; whether the predecessor auditor will be willing to reissue its report or otherwise provide a consent with respect to previously issued financial statements, if applicable. The successor auditor may receive limited responses from the predecessor auditor depending upon the circumstances surrounding the change in auditors.

**.18** Usually only after the firm has accepted the engagement, should the firm make arrangements to review the predecessor’s workpapers. That review should, however, occur prior to commencement of the engagement.

**.19** If the prospective client is subject to SEC reporting requirements, as early as possible in the acceptance process, the firm should ascertain what the prospective client plans to report to the SEC on Form 8-K regarding the change in independent accountants and whether the replaced accountant agrees with the proposed content of the report. Furthermore, before formally accepting an engagement, the firm should obtain a copy of the company's Form 8-K as filed, together with the prior accountant's response, and determine whether the contents confirm the firm's previous understanding. The firm is deemed to have formally accepted an engagement when it either signs an initial engagement letter or other agreement to perform attest services or begins to perform an attest engagement for a client, whichever is earlier.

**.20** In those situations where the prior period financial statements were audited by a predecessor auditor who has ceased operations, the firm's ability to perform the required communications with the predecessor auditor prior to accepting the engagement is challenged. However, the firm's obligations are not mitigated. If the audit firm is unable to communicate with the individual at the predecessor firm who had responsibility for the audit or receives a limited response, the firm should consider whether to accept the engagement. In some situations, the predecessor auditor might not be able to respond fully to the audit firm's inquiries, such as when the predecessor firm no longer employs the predecessor audit engagement partner or other senior members of the audit engagement team. The audit firm should make reasonable efforts to locate the predecessor audit engagement partner or other senior members of the predecessor engagement team and make appropriate inquiries. In some cases, another accounting firm may employ the engagement partner who had responsibility for the predecessor firm's engagement or other senior members of the engagement team. By employing that engagement partner, that accounting firm is not a "predecessor auditor" as defined in SAS No. 84. That firm, however, would normally be expected to facilitate inquiries to such individuals.

## **Assessment of Management's Commitment to the Appropriate Application of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles**

**.21** In connection with the firm's evaluation of a prospective or continuing attest client, the firm should assess management's commitment to the appropriate application of GAAP. The firm should inquire of the prospective client about its significant accounting policies. If the prospective or continuing client is following accounting policies or practices that the firm believes are inappropriate, the firm should advise the prospective or continuing client of this and ascertain whether it is prepared to adopt accounting policies or practices that the firm believes would be appropriate in the circumstances. An unwillingness to do so on the part of the prospective or continuing client should usually result in a decision not to accept or continue a professional relationship with the client.

## **Assessment of Management's Commitment to Implementing and Maintaining Effective Internal Control**

**.22** The firm should assess management's attitude toward, and the significance it places on, the entity's internal control over financial reporting in

evaluating whether to accept or continue a professional relationship with an attest client. The firm's assessment should include inquiring of management regarding its commitment to implementing and maintaining effective internal control including its anti-fraud programs and controls and inquiring about the entity's control environment, risk assessment process, information and communications systems relevant to financial reporting, and control and monitoring activities that are in place and any changes that management believes should be made to enhance the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Information that will assist the firm in determining whether there are material weaknesses or other reportable conditions in a prospective client's internal control might also be obtained during discussions with prior accountants and by reviewing copies of the predecessor accountants' reports on internal control related matters.

## Assessment of the Entity's Financial Viability

**.23** The firm should consider the financial viability of the entity in evaluating whether to accept or continue a client relationship. The firm should ordinarily choose not to accept an entity as an attest client if the firm believes that business failure may be imminent or it is very unlikely the entity would ultimately become a viable business enterprise. In such situations, the firm's association with the entity, if accepted as a client, would be short-lived and could expose the firm to litigation if the business failed, regardless of the quality of the firm's professional services.

**.24** Ordinarily, a prospective client's financial condition can be evaluated by a careful reading of prior audited or reviewed financial statements, reading of documents filed with regulatory agencies, discussions with predecessor accountants or auditors, and discussions with management. If recent audited or reviewed financial statements are not available, the firm should obtain unaudited financial statements and discuss the prospective client's financial condition with its management. The firm should also consider obtaining the prospective client's most recent income tax return. The firm may also use outside service providers, such as Dun & Bradstreet. In addition, Moody's KMV ratings are generally available for non-financial companies with publicly owned equity securities and are an indicator of a company's risk of default in paying its debt. Fitch Bank Rating ratings are a similar indicator for banking entities, and are generally available for all domestic banks.

## Independence and Objectivity

**.25** During the client acceptance process, independence implications should be carefully considered, including: any financial interests of the firm or of covered persons; employment relationships that bear on independence; business relationships with the prospective client; and other relationships that could impact independence. Before accepting any new client or engagement, the firm should take appropriate steps to determine that it meets all independence and objectivity requirements with respect to the client and that acceptance of the engagement will not create a conflict of interests with respect to existing engagements.

**.26** The aforementioned steps should include the adoption of procedures to obtain information from its professional personnel regarding potential conflicts of interests that would have to be considered in the client acceptance decision. For example, conflicts can arise in situations where two clients are considering a business combination, joint venture or other major transaction

with each other. In addition, certain entities are considered competitors that could raise conflict issues in the eyes of existing clients. The firm's professional personnel responsible for the overall engagement performance should also identify and evaluate the following:

- Services that the firm may have already provided to the prospective client or are in the process of providing that cause the firm to lack independence.
- Any relationships between firm personnel and officers and directors of the prospective client that could cause the firm to lack independence.
- Business relationships between the firm and the prospective client which could cause the firm to lack independence.
- The potential significance of the prospective client to the firm in terms of fees, status, or other factors which could possibly diminish the firm's ability to be objective and maintain independence when performing attest services.

**.27** Since the prospective client is not presently a client of the firm, at this time there is no need for firm personnel to take any action to cure a personal independence issue such as stock ownership or loans. However, before signing an engagement letter or performing any professional services, the firm should add that client to its Restricted Entity List, if one is maintained, and inform partners and employees as to the newly restricted entity. The Restricted Entity List is often a database that includes all audit clients of the firm, and to the extent practicable its foreign-associated firms, that are SEC registrants and other entities that the firm is required to be independent of under the applicable SEC requirements. For practicable purposes, firms may exclude entities whose securities are not available for public sale. The maintenance of a Restricted Entity List was required for all SEC Practice Section member firms. The Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (the "PCAOB"), in its Interim Professional Auditing Standards (PCAOB Release No. 2003-006 dated April 18, 2003), adopted the SEC Practice Section requirement that registered public accounting firms ensure that they have "policies and procedures in place to comply" with applicable independence requirements. This requirement further specifically requires firms to establish independence policies covering relationships between the firm, its benefit plans, and its professionals, and restricted entities.

**.28** In addition, during its annual continuance process, the firm should also address whether it has maintained independence with respect to the audit engagement. Those procedures should include an evaluation of nonaudit services provided to the client and an inquiry of all professional personnel responsible for overall engagement performance.

**.29** The firm should be aware that the AICPA, in June 2003, adopted new independence rules governing nonattest services. Included in those new rules are revisions that require AICPA members to:

- Comply with the regulations of certain regulatory bodies such as state boards of accountancy, Securities and Exchange Commission, General Accounting Office, and Department of Labor, when performing services for attest clients that are governed by such regulators' independence rules;
- Assess the client's willingness and ability to oversee permitted nonattest services; and

- Document various aspects of the permitted nonattest services engagement (objective and nature of the services, client's acceptance of its responsibilities, practitioner's responsibilities, and any limitations of the engagement) prior to performing nonattest services.

.30 In addition, the AICPA Professional Ethics Executive Committee adopted more restrictive rules for certain services:

- Performing appraisal, valuation, and actuarial services would impair independence if the results of the service will be material to the client's financial statements and the services involve a significant degree of subjectivity. Actuarial valuations of a client's pension or postretirement benefit liabilities and valuations performed for non-financial statement purposes (for example, estate and gift tax-related valuations) are permitted provided all of the interpretation's other requirements are met.
- Performing certain financial information systems design and implementation services would impair independence, for example, when a member creates or makes more than insignificant modifications to the source code underlying a client's financial reporting system. Practitioners also are precluded from operating a client's local area network (LAN) since that activity is considered to be a management function.

.31 The final nonattest services rules are available at [www.aicpa.org/download/ethics/interp\\_revisions\\_jun03.pdf](http://www.aicpa.org/download/ethics/interp_revisions_jun03.pdf).

## Inquiry of Third Parties

.32 Timely confidential inquiries of attorneys, bankers, underwriters, and other sources, where appropriate, should be made in order to obtain information concerning the reputation or integrity of key management and significant owners of the prospective client.

## Background Investigations

.33 On October 22, 2002, the AICPA SEC Practice Section sent a letter to the Managing Partners of all SEC Practice Section member firms regarding a report prepared by the Quality Control Inquiry Committee (QCIC) containing recommendations for the profession based on lessons learned from litigation (the "QCIC report"). That report is available at <http://www.aicpa.org/download/secps/QCIC10-02Report.pdf>.

.34 The QCIC report recommends that firms obtain background investigations on certain management personnel for **all** potential new SEC audit clients, and update background investigations whenever there is a significant change in management or the Board of Directors.

.35 The firm also may consider obtaining personnel background investigations for other prospective attest clients, and other current attest clients experiencing changes in key decision makers such as chairs of the company's board and audit committee (if applicable), chief executive officer, chief financial officer and principal accounting officer. Among other matters, a personnel background investigation may provide information regarding management integrity. Therefore, the extent of the personnel background investigations to be performed is subject to professional judgment.

.36 In addition, background investigations may be useful information in other situations, such as the following:

- Current or prospective clients considering an IPO.
- Existing clients where concerns arise about the integrity of management.
- Companies being acquired by an existing client.
- Nonclient entities seeking to acquire an existing client.
- Nonclient entities seeking to acquire a former client where the firm plans to reissue its report and/or consent to the inclusion of the firm's auditors' report in a filing of the acquirer (such as a registration statement).
- General due diligence regarding client related parties, major customers or suppliers, business partners, etc.

**.37** Subjects of a background investigation may include the following:

- Corporate officers—CEO, President (COO), CFO, and Principal Accounting Officer.
- Directors—Chair of the Board and Chair of the Audit Committee.
- Principal owners or shareholders.
- Non-employee financial advisors.
- Anticipated underwriters for an IPO.
- Related entities or affiliated parties.

**.38** The decision as to the specific individuals to be investigated should be based on the extent of their influence on the entity, its operations, its method of obtaining financing, and its financial reporting.

**.39** If the firm maintains offices at more than one location or is a member of an association of firms, the firm should consider consulting with its other offices or with the other members of the association. The potential client and its principals may be known to other offices or affiliates of the firm when the company's operations are conducted at several locations or if the principals at one time were in business or employed in another city. The firm should consider coordinating its assessments with local offices and/or affiliates in locations with significant subsidiaries and branches.

**.40** The firm should consider focusing background investigations on issues involving management reputation, management performance at prior companies, securities violations, regulatory investigations including SEC sanctions, frequent auditor changes, history of lawsuits against auditors and other professional advisors, financial difficulties, ties to organized crime, fraud allegations, accounting issues, lawsuits, bankruptcies, judgments and liens. The firm should consider performing a search of local and national media for information regarding the entity and identified personnel. Practitioners may also consider performing a search of media and/or litigation databases to identify background information on prospective clients.

**.41** If the firm is unable to conduct a background investigation in-house, then it may want to contact attorneys or other outside specialists to conduct such an investigation. In addition, firms that perform credit investigations for financial institutions usually also perform background investigation services.

**.42** If a background investigation is utilized, that investigation should be conducted as soon as practicable in the client acceptance or continuance process.

## Other Considerations

.43 The following listing of other considerations is not intended to be all-inclusive and the firm should consider whether other conditions are present that may create significantly increased risk, and carefully assess those conditions that are identified.

### Restrictions on Scope of Services

.44 The firm should avoid establishing a professional relationship with an entity whose management intends to impose restrictions on the scope of the firm's work, unless there are valid business reasons for the restrictions and those reasons are not the result of a desire to limit the firm's access to information that it may need to conduct unrestricted attest services. The entity may attempt to restrict scope indirectly by unreasonable fee constraints or by imposing unreasonable deadlines.

### Entities Under Common Control

.45 When the firm serves all entities under common control, it has added assurance that all material transactions among entities in the controlled group will come to the firm's attention during the course of the engagement. There may be valid business reasons such as investee-investor relationships, affiliates that do not require attest services, or long-standing relationships with other accountants or auditors that preclude the firm from providing professional services to all entities in the group.

.46 In the firm's evaluation of a prospective client in a situation where the firm would perform attest services for only some of the entities under common control, the firm should make a careful investigation of the nature of the operations of the controlled group, the types of transactions executed among the entities, and the transactions between members of the group and controlling persons. The firm's investigation should include discussions with management and the Audit Committee where applicable, reading documents filed with regulatory agencies, and inquiries of predecessor or continuing accountants or auditors.

### One-Time Engagements

.47 In a one-time engagement, the firm's risk may be increased, for example, by a lack of previous experience with management and the accounting records or by the fact that the firm will not be in as effective a position to review subsequent events or reevaluate positions taken and decisions made in prior engagements.

### Business and Industry Environment

.48 The prospective or existing attest client may be operating in a business environment that creates increased risk to the firm. In evaluating whether to accept or continue a client relationship, the firm should be alert to such environmental conditions and carefully assess their significance and relevance to the firm's decision.

### Timing Considerations

.49 There will be cases when, because of timing considerations, the firm is requested to submit its proposal before completion of its client acceptance procedures. In such cases, acceptance should be made contingent on satisfactory completion of the acceptance procedures. The prospective client should be

advised that the firm has not completed its acceptance procedures and changes could occur that may cause the firm to decline the engagement. The firm also should indicate that the prospective client should not announce the firm's appointment as auditors until the firm has completed its acceptance procedures. The engagement letter should not be issued and fieldwork should not begin until the firm's client acceptance procedures have been completed.

## Documentation

.50 Whether or not an engagement is accepted or a professional relationship continued, the firm should appropriately document its consideration of the elements of the acceptance and continuance process discussed in this Practice Alert. If the prospective client becomes or is continued as an attest client of the firm, the firm should comply with its document retention policies regarding the client acceptance and/or continuance consideration. The documentation with respect to prospective clients not accepted need only be retained for purposes of review by the appropriate level of firm management.

---

[The next page is 51,151.]



## Section 16,270

### **Practice Alert 04-1** **Illegal Acts**

November, 2004

#### NOTICE TO READERS

This Practice Alert is intended to provide practitioners with information that may help them improve the effectiveness and efficiency of their engagements and practices and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by certain AICPA member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an Other Auditing Publication as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and is intended to provide guidance to auditors of nonissuers.<sup>1</sup> Other Auditing Publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs). If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an Other Auditing Publication, the auditor should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of the subject audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

## Introduction

.01 In April 1988, the Auditing Standards Board issued SAS No. 54, *Illegal Acts by Client*. SAS No. 54 prescribes the nature and extent of the consideration an independent auditor should give to the possibility of illegal acts by a client in an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. SAS No. 54 also provides guidance on the auditor's responsibility when a possible illegal act is detected.

.02 SAS No. 54 is the primary source of guidance with respect to the auditor's consideration of the possibility of illegal acts by a client in an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. However, auditors performing audits in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* (also referred to as the "Yellow Book") should also be aware that those standards include additional requirements related to illegal acts. Auditors should refer to SAS No. 74, *Compliance Auditing Considerations in Audits of Governmental Entities and Recipients of Governmental Financial Assistance*, and the AICPA's Audit Guide *Government Auditing Standards and*

---

<sup>1</sup> Nonissuer refers to any entity other than an "issuer." The term "issuer" is defined in Section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act as :

An issuer as defined in Section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the securities of which are registered under Section 12 of that Act, or that is required to file reports under Section 15(d) [of the Exchange Act] or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933, and that it has not withdrawn. [Parenthetical references to the United States Code omitted].

*Circular A-133 Audits*, for additional information on illegal acts and the auditor's reporting responsibilities when performing an audit under *Government Auditing Standards*.

.03 SAS No. 54 defines illegal acts as violations of laws or government regulations. Additionally, the AICPA's Audit Guide *Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits*, states that it generally has been interpreted under GAAS that the term laws and regulations in SAS No. 54 implicitly includes provisions of contracts or grant agreements. Illegal acts by clients are acts attributable to the entity whose financial statements are under audit or acts by management or employees acting on behalf of the entity. Illegal acts by clients do not include personal misconduct by the entity's personnel unrelated to their business activities.

.04 Illegal acts are divided into two categories: (1) those having a **direct and material** effect on financial statement amounts and (2) those having only an **indirect** effect on the financial statements. Some laws and regulations have a direct and material effect on financial statement amounts. For example, tax laws affect accruals and the amount recognized as expense in the accounting period; applicable laws and regulations may affect the amount of revenue accrued under government contracts. Other laws and regulations, such as occupational safety and health, food and drug administration, environmental protection, equal employment opportunity, and antitrust violations, may have only an indirect effect on the financial statements.

## The Auditor's Responsibility for Detection of Illegal Acts Having a Direct and Material Effect on the Financial Statements

.05 The auditor must consider laws and regulations that are generally recognized to have a direct and material effect on the financial statements. However, the auditor should consider such laws and regulations from the perspective of their known relation to audit objectives derived from financial statement assertions rather than from the perspective of legality, per se.

.06 The auditor's responsibility to detect and report misstatements resulting from illegal acts having a direct and material effect on the financial statements is the same as that for misstatements caused by error or fraud and includes assessing the risk that an illegal act may cause the financial statements to contain a material misstatement. The auditor should design the audit to provide reasonable assurance that such illegal acts will be detected. Care should be exercised in planning, performing, and evaluating the results of these procedures. The auditor's planning and risk assessment process should include consideration of the different characteristics of illegal acts and of factors indicating increased risk of illegal acts that have a direct and material effect on the financial statements.

## The Auditor's Responsibility for Detection of Illegal Acts Having an Indirect Effect on the Financial Statements

.07 The auditor has no direct responsibility to detect and report misstatements resulting from illegal acts having an indirect effect on the financial statements (hereafter referred to as "indirect effect illegal acts") as the auditor

does not ordinarily have a sufficient basis for recognizing possible violations of laws and regulations that have only an indirect effect on the financial statements. The auditor's responsibility is limited to applying auditing procedures to such acts that come to the auditor's attention and being aware that such acts may exist. However, if specific information comes to the auditor's attention regarding the existence of possible indirect effect illegal acts, the auditor should apply audit procedures to determine the potential effects of the possible indirect effect illegal act on the financial statements.

## **Audit Procedures in the Absence of Specific Information Indicating the Existence of Possible Illegal Acts**

**.08** The auditor should perform the audit with an attitude of professional skepticism, remaining alert to conditions or events that indicate illegal acts may have occurred. Procedures applied for the purpose of forming an opinion on the financial statements may bring possible illegal acts to the auditor's attention. Considerations as to whether an act is illegal, or of doubtful legality, are frequently outside the auditor's expertise, therefore, the auditor should consider consulting with legal counsel. Additionally, laws and regulations can also vary considerably in terms of their significance to the financial statements.

**.09** Possible illegal acts may come to the auditor's attention as a result of inquiries of management and others. The auditor is required to make inquiries of management concerning the client's compliance with laws and regulations. The auditor should also consider the need to obtain representations from the audit committee or others with equivalent authority and responsibility such as the board of directors or the owner in an owner-managed business, (hereinafter referred to as the "audit committee") and the chief legal officer that possible illegal acts brought to their attention have been communicated to the auditor.

**.10** Other inquiries may include, but are not limited to:

- Discussions with principal officers as part of the planning process.
- Discussions with legal counsel and others as part of the evaluation of the adequacy of the accounting for, and the need for disclosure of, loss contingencies.
- Discussions with senior management as part of obtaining various written client representations.
- Inquiries of appropriate client personnel about whether the IRS has requested any information concerning possible illegal or improper payments as part of an IRS examination of tax returns, and about the content and significance of the client's replies to the IRS.
- Other inquiries of, and discussions with, client personnel regarding various matters during the course of performing auditing procedures. Examples of specific information, which might be obtained through the application of the audit procedures and the evaluation of the results of those procedures, that may raise a question concerning possible illegal acts are:
  - (a) Unauthorized transactions, improperly recorded transactions, or transactions not recorded in a complete or timely manner in order to maintain accountability for assets.

- (b) Investigation by a governmental agency, an enforcement proceeding, or payment of fines or penalties.
- (c) Violations of laws or regulations cited in reports of examinations by regulatory agencies.
- (d) Large payments for unspecified services to consultants, affiliates or employees.
- (e) Sales commissions or agents' fees that appear excessive in relation to those normally paid by the client or to the services actually received.
- (f) Large payments in cash, purchases of bank cashier's checks in large amounts payable to bearer, transfers to numbered bank accounts, or similar transactions.
- (g) Unexplained payments made to government officials or employees.
- (h) Failure to file tax returns or pay government duties or similar fees that are common to the entity's industry or the nature of its business.

**.11** In addition, the auditor should obtain representations in the management representation letter regarding:

- (1) The absence of any "violations or possible violations of laws or regulations whose effects should be considered for disclosure in the financial statements or as a basis for recording a loss contingency" and
- (2) That the auditor has been informed of all possible illegal acts brought to the attention of management.

**.12** The auditor should perform the audit with an attitude of professional skepticism, remaining alert to conditions or events that indicate illegal acts may have occurred. Procedures applied for the purpose of forming an opinion on the financial statements may bring possible illegal acts to the auditor's attention. Considerations as to whether an act is illegal, or of doubtful legality, are frequently outside the auditor's expertise, therefore, the auditor should consider consulting with legal counsel. Additionally, laws and regulations can also vary considerably in terms of their significance to the financial statements.

**.13** Prior to commencement of the audit, the auditor should consider reaching an understanding with the audit committee as to the communication expectations. Included in the understanding should be the expected nature and extent of communications about violations deemed immaterial either individually or in the aggregate and those perpetrated by lower-level employees.

## Action on Discovery of Possible Illegal Acts

**.14** If, in the course of conducting an audit, the auditor detects or becomes aware of information indicating that an illegal act has or may have occurred, the auditor should perform the following:

- (1) Obtain an understanding of the nature of the matter and the circumstances in which it has occurred, and sufficient other information to make a preliminary assessment of the matter and its possible effect on the financial statements.

- (2) Obtain assurance that the audit committee or others with equivalent authority and responsibility such as the board of directors or the owner in an owner-managed business (the “audit committee”) is adequately informed about possible illegal acts that come to the auditor’s attention.
- (3) Discuss the client investigation, if applicable, of the illegal act with the appropriate level of senior management and/or the audit committee.
- (4) Evaluate the conclusions reached by the client as a result of the investigation, if applicable.

**.15** If the audit is of the financial statements of a smaller or less complex, privately owned company that does not have an audit committee or the levels of management that would exist in a larger organization, the auditor should exercise the appropriate level of professional judgment in determining the extent of the audit procedures to be performed specifically, with respect to the communication that is required to the owner or owners and possibly to the company’s legal counsel. In addition, if the owner is involved, and the matter is significant, the auditor should also consider withdrawing from the engagement.

**.16** If the audit is of the financial statements of a local government that is overseen by a council or similar body, the auditor should report the information to the chief executive officer or the legislative body/board. If the chief executive officer is believed to be a party to the potential illegal act, the auditor should report the act directly to the legislative body/board.

## Obtain an Understanding Regarding the Illegal Act

**.17** In obtaining an understanding of the nature of the matter and the circumstances in which it has occurred, and sufficient other information to make a preliminary assessment of the matter and its possible effect on the financial statements, the auditor should inquire of the client’s management at a level above those involved, if possible, and consult with the client’s legal counsel or other specialists, as necessary. Based on the information that the auditor obtains about the possible illegal act, the auditor is required to:

- Determine whether it is likely that an illegal act has occurred,
- If so, determine and consider the possible effect of the illegal act on the client’s financial statements, and
- If the matter is other than clearly inconsequential, determine whether the audit committee has been informed of the situation and is taking appropriate action to investigate the matter.

## Determine Whether the Audit Committee Has Been Informed About the Illegal Act

**.18** The communications with the audit committee should describe the act and the circumstances of its occurrence, as understood by the auditor. In addition, the auditor should communicate the potential effect on the financial statements and related disclosures. The communication may be either oral or written. If the communication is oral, the auditor should document the discussion.

## Client Investigation of the Possible Illegal Act

**.19** When the audit committee is informed of possible illegal acts that come to the auditor's attention, an investigation into the matter may be made by the audit committee. In certain circumstances, the auditor may insist on an investigation in order to conclude on the effect of the possible illegal act on the financial statements.

**.20** Oftentimes in conducting these investigations, the audit committee may seek assistance from outside counsel and other experts such as forensic accountants, if necessary. The auditor may consider requesting that the audit committee keep the auditor apprised of the progress of the investigation and to facilitate discussions concerning the investigation between outside counsel and the auditor.

**.21** At the conclusion of the investigation, the auditor should consider requesting that he or she attend the investigative team's presentation to the audit committee and documenting the discussion.

**.22** After the audit committee has investigated the possible illegal act and presented the scope of their procedures, their conclusions and any remedial actions to the auditor, the auditor should evaluate the conclusions and determine how they affect the audit of the financial statements. The auditor should coordinate with the appropriate level of senior management and/or the audit committee, based upon the facts and circumstances, to facilitate the auditor's consultation with the client's outside legal counsel about the legal ramifications of the possible illegal act, including, for example, whether there is a penalty which might attach to the illegal act and, if so, the amount, or whether the transaction(s) in question has significance with respect to deductibility of stated amounts for tax purposes and under "cost plus" contracts or other similar situations that apply.

**.23** Based on these discussions and the results of the investigation, the auditor should assess the need for additional audit procedures, disclosures in the financial statements, communication of internal control deficiencies, and/or modifications to the audit report. Depending on the results of the investigation, the auditor may also need to consider whether to withdraw from the engagement.

**.24** If the client fails to give the occurrence of an illegal act the appropriate level of consideration or fails to take the steps deemed warranted, the auditor should consider the implications of the illegal act in relation to his or her initial evaluations and reevaluate:

- Engagement risk.
- Reliance on management's role in the functioning of internal control.
- Reliance on management's representations.
- Validity and propriety of other similar transactions.

**.25** Additionally, the auditor should consider whether any concerns might be mitigated by the performance of additional substantive audit procedures.

**.26** The auditor should be sure that the company's board of directors or audit committee is fully aware of the possible consequences of the act and has formally approved the course of action to be followed, when the circumstances so warrant.

## Material Illegal Acts

.27 The materiality of an illegal act cannot be appropriately assessed by considering only the quantitative effects; the auditor must also consider the qualitative effects of the illegal act. These effects may often be found to overshadow the act's immediate effect. Accounting and disclosure ramifications of loss contingencies associated with illegal acts should be considered in accordance with FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*. The determination of the significance of potential illegal acts will generally entail consultation with the client's legal counsel.

## Immaterial Illegal Acts

.28 The aggregate of all immaterial illegal acts should be evaluated in relation to the materiality level for the financial statements as a whole. The auditor should consider the effect of each individual misstatement and consider recording an individual misstatement that has a material effect on an individual account or group of accounts, even though that individual misstatement may be offset by other unadjusted misstatements. The auditor needs to also consider the qualitative aspects of the illegal act such as how the illegal act affects the auditor's ability to rely on management representations.

## Disclosure of Illegal Acts to Third Parties

.29 Disclosure of an illegal act to parties other than the client's audit committee is not ordinarily part of the auditor's responsibility, and such disclosure would normally be precluded by the auditor's ethical or legal obligation of confidentiality, unless the matter affects his or her opinion on the financial statements. The auditor should recognize, however, that a duty to notify parties outside the client may exist. A duty to notify parties outside of the client may include the following:

- To a successor auditor when the successor makes inquiries in accordance with SAS No. 84, *Communications Between Predecessor and Successor Auditors*, as amended. In accordance with SAS No. 84, as amended, communications between predecessor and successor auditors require the specific permission of the client.
- In response to a subpoena.
- To a funding agency or other specified agency in accordance with requirements for the audits of entities that receive financial assistance from a government agency. *Government Auditing Standards* state that the client may be required by law or regulation to report illegal acts to specified external parties (for example, to a federal inspector general or a state attorney general) and that if the client fails to report such acts, then the auditor should report the illegal acts directly to the external party specified in the law or regulation. Additionally, when an illegal act involves assistance received directly or indirectly from a government agency, auditors may have a duty to report it directly if management fails to take appropriate steps to remedy the illegal acts that the auditor reported to it. See Chapter 5 of *Government Auditing Standards* and the AICPA Audit Guide *Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits*, for additional guidance.

.30 Because potential conflicts with the auditor's ethical and legal obligations for confidentiality may be complex, the auditor may wish to consult with his or her legal counsel before discussing illegal acts with parties outside the client.

## Reporting Considerations

.31 The auditor may be faced with various reporting issues as a result of becoming aware of acts that he or she suspects may be illegal. Depending upon the particular circumstances, the auditor may consider modifying the auditor's report. Such modification may result from one or more of the following considerations.

### Scope Limitation

.32 Generally, the auditor should disclaim an opinion on the financial statements when precluded by the client from applying all the procedures considered necessary in the circumstances. In situations not involving a client-imposed scope restriction (e.g. appointment of the auditor after the client's physical inventory has been taken) and depending upon the auditor's assessment of the importance of the omitted procedures, the auditor may consider qualifying the opinion or disclaiming an opinion. In the latter case, the decision should reflect the auditor's assessment of the significance of the matter to the particular entity and the pervasiveness and magnitude of the potential direct and indirect effects of the acts in question on the client's financial statements taken as a whole.

### Departure From Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

.33 When the auditor has been able to conduct the audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and concludes an event or transaction has not been properly accounted for or disclosed in the financial statements, the auditor may qualify the opinion or issue an adverse opinion depending upon the magnitude of the potential effects of the event or transaction. If the departure from generally accepted accounting principles results from inadequate disclosure, the auditor's modified report should provide the information omitted by the client.

### Inability to Determine Materiality of an Illegal Act

.34 In the event that the auditor is unable to conclude as to the materiality of an illegal act, the auditor should modify his or her report or disclaim an opinion to adequately reflect the uncertainty.

### Client Refusal to Accept Report

.35 If the client refuses to accept a report that has been modified for a client-imposed scope restriction or a departure from generally accepted accounting principles, including inadequate disclosure, the auditor should withdraw from the engagement. If a client refuses to accept a report that has been modified for other reasons, the auditor may have no alternative but to withdraw from the engagement. In any case of withdrawal, the reasons for the withdrawal should be indicated in writing to the audit committee. Deciding whether there is a need to notify parties outside the client's organization of an illegal act is the responsibility of the company's management. However, as previously indicated, the auditor may have a duty to notify parties outside the client.

## Audits Performed Under Government Auditing Standards

.36 Auditors performing audits under *Government Auditing Standards* also must issue a report on internal control over financial reporting and on compliance and other matters that reports on the scope and results of testing of the auditee's internal control over financial reporting and compliance with laws, regulations, and provisions of contracts or grant agreements. The AICPA Audit Guide *Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits*, provides additional guidance on the auditor's responsibilities with regard to this report.

## Documentation

.37 The audit documentation should include appropriate documentation with respect to:

- The required inquiries related to possible illegal acts and compliance with laws and regulations.
- Company policies relative to the prevention of illegal acts, and the use of directives and periodic representations concerning compliance with laws and regulations.
- Circumstances identified that indicate the possible existence of illegal acts and conclusions reached thereon, if applicable.
- The auditor's assessment of the procedures performed by the company to determine that the illegal act was properly accounted for and disclosed, if applicable.
- Whether any uncorrected misstatements appear to represent illegal acts, if applicable.
- Written representation from management concerning the absence of violations or possible violations of laws and regulations.
- Discussions with management, the audit committee, and, if applicable, the board of directors.
- Representations from the audit committee regarding satisfactory completion of any investigations into possible illegal acts undertaken at their direction and satisfactory resolution of the matters identified in the investigation, if applicable.

---

[The next page is 51,171.]



## Section 16,280

**Practice Alert 05-1**  
**Auditing Procedures With Respect to**  
**Variable Interest Entities**

September, 2005

**NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide practitioners with information that may help them improve the effectiveness and efficiency of their engagements and practices and is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by certain AICPA member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an Other Auditing Publication as defined in Statement on Auditing Standards (SAS) No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and is intended to provide guidance to auditors of nonissuers.<sup>1</sup> Other Auditing Publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply SASs. If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an Other Auditing Publication, the auditor should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of the subject audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

.01 The purpose of this Practice Alert is to provide guidance to auditors in planning and performing auditing procedures with respect to variable interest entities (VIEs). VIEs include many entities that have previously been referred to as special-purpose entities (SPEs), but also include many other entities not previously thought of as SPEs. A VIE is to be evaluated for consolidation by the auditee based on all contractual, ownership, or other monetary interests, both explicit and implicit, in the VIE that expose the auditee to the economic risks and rewards of the VIE. Such interests are termed variable interests. In general, an entity is a VIE that is subject to consolidation pursuant to the provisions of FASB Interpretation No. 46 (R), *Consolidation of Variable Interest Entities* (FIN 46R), if (1) it has an insufficient amount of equity for the entity to finance its activities without additional subordinated financial support<sup>2</sup> provided by any parties, (2) as a group, the equity owners, through their equity holdings, are unable to control decisions

<sup>1</sup> The term "issuer" is defined in Section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act as:

An issuer as defined in Section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the securities of which are registered under Section 12 of that Act, or that is required to file reports under Section 15(d) [of the Exchange Act] or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933, and that it has not withdrawn. [Parenthetical references to the United States Code omitted].

<sup>2</sup> Subordinated financial support is defined in FIN 46R, paragraph 2(e), as variable interests that will absorb some or all of an entity's expected losses.

about the entity's activities that have a significant effect on the success of the entity, (3) as a group, the equity owners do not, through their equity holdings, absorb the expected losses or receive the expected residual returns of the entity, or (4) substantially all of the entity's activities involve or are conducted on behalf of an investor with disproportionately few decision making rights relative to the investor's obligation to absorb the entity's expected losses or the investor's right to receive the entity's expected residual returns. Variable interests might include, but are not limited to:

- Equity investments/ownership interests
- Loans or notes receivable
- Guarantees
- Insurance contracts
- Derivative contracts
- Management and other service contracts
- Leases
- Research and development and other project development activities

## Accounting Considerations

.02 In January 2003, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued FIN 46, *Consolidation of Variable Interest Entities*, which explains how to apply the controlling financial interest criterion in Accounting Research Bulletin No. 51, *Consolidated Financial Statements*, to VIEs. In December 2003, the FASB issued a revision to FIN 46 (FIN 46R). The revision was issued to clarify some of the provisions in FIN 46. Hereinafter, FIN 46 and FIN 46R will be collectively referred to as FIN 46.

.03 In addition to FIN 46, when considering disclosures related to VIEs, practitioners should refer to FASB Statement No. 57, *Related Party Disclosures* (SFAS 57), which gives the requirements for related party disclosures.

.04 This Practice Alert does not provide guidance with respect to the accounting for VIEs. For such accounting guidance, practitioners should refer to FIN 46 and FASB Staff Positions related to FIN 46. For the latest information and guidance on accounting for VIEs, practitioners may visit the FASB's Web site at [www.fasb.org](http://www.fasb.org).

## Step 1: Identify the Population of Variable Interests in VIEs

.05 Perhaps the greatest challenge to auditors, and the greatest risk, in auditing VIEs is evaluating the completeness of the population of VIEs in which the auditee may have a variable interest. One approach that has proven to be effective in addressing the completeness of the population is to examine the transactions that the auditee has engaged in that have the potential to create variable interests in another entity. The counterparty to each of those transactions represents a potential VIE that the auditor must consider. The auditor should keep in mind that although many transactions with VIEs involve SPEs or are other structured transactions undertaken in efforts by the

auditee to keep assets or liabilities off the balance sheet or avoid recognizing losses, many other transactions involve more conventional entities such as joint ventures, partnerships, and similar entities that may meet the definition of a VIE. It is those more conventional entities that often involve the greater risk of not being considered for consolidation.

**.06** In order for the auditor to be satisfied that the auditee has identified all variable interests in VIEs, the auditor should perform the following procedures:

- a. Request that management provide lists of all identified variable interests in (i) VIEs, (ii) potential VIEs that management considered but judged not to be VIEs, and (iii) entities that were afforded the scope exceptions of FIN 46. Inquire as to whether, during the period under audit, there were any transactions with those identified VIEs, potential VIEs, or entities afforded the scope exceptions.
- b. Review notes to financial statements related to SFAS 57 and FIN 45, *Guarantor's Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others*, as those disclosures may indicate the existence of potential variable interests in VIEs.
- c. Review prior year's audit documentation for the names of any potential VIEs.
- d. Review investment and sales transactions during the period under audit, as well as any operating agreements or other contracts, to determine whether the nature and extent of such transactions create variable interests in VIEs. Examine executed copies of agreements, contracts, and other pertinent documents, such as invoices. The review should include any new transactions during the period under audit and any changes to arrangements entered into in prior years.
- e. Inquire as to the existence of any unwritten agreements with other entities. "Other entities" includes unrelated parties, related parties, and de facto agents. Related parties and de facto agents are discussed further under Step 2 below.
- f. Review minutes of meetings of board of directors and other relevant meetings to identify potential variable interests in VIEs.
- g. Consider whether the auditee has adequate control procedures<sup>3</sup> for identifying all variable interests (which includes the identification of potential variable interests) and assessing whether those interests are in VIEs, including procedures to re-assess whether the status of VIEs or primary beneficiaries has changed.<sup>4</sup>
- h. Perform tests of the control procedures for identifying all variable interests and assessing whether those interests are in VIEs, and consider whether those controls are operating effectively. The auditor should keep in mind that the auditee may deliberately attempt

---

<sup>3</sup> Adequate control procedures may include the appointment of an appropriate individual to review transactions and contractual arrangements, such as those listed in the Introduction section of this Practice Alert, on a continuous basis in an effort to identify potential variable interests in VIEs. However, adequate procedures will vary depending on the size and complexity of the auditee.

<sup>4</sup> See paragraphs 7 and 15 of FIN 46R.

to obscure the fact that it has engaged in transactions with VIEs. In addition, it is uncommon for small business entities and privately held companies to have formal control procedures in place to identify all variable interests and assess whether they are in VIEs.

- i. Based on the results of the above procedures, and any other procedures that the auditor considered necessary, determine whether implied variable interests [as discussed in FASB Staff Position (FSP) No. FIN 46(R)-5, *Implicit Variable Interests under FASB Interpretation No. 46* (revised December 2003)] exist and were appropriately identified and evaluated by management.
- j. If the audit procedures reveal the existence of variable interests in VIEs that the auditee did not disclose to the auditor, consider the effect on the fraud risk assessment and the possible need to perform additional procedures and whether a significant control deficiency exists that should be reported to management.

**.07** For all variable interests and potential variable interests identified, the auditor should perform the following:

- a. Obtain an understanding of the business purpose of the transaction. When necessary to fully understand a particular transaction, the following procedures, which might not otherwise be deemed necessary to comply with generally accepted auditing standards, should be considered:
  - (1) Confirm transaction amount and terms, including guarantees and other significant data, with the counterparties to the transaction.
  - (2) Inspect evidence in possession of the counterparties to the transaction.
  - (3) Confirm significant information with intermediaries, such as banks, guarantors, agents, or attorneys.
  - (4) Refer to financial publications, trade journals, credit agencies, and other information sources when there is reason to believe that unfamiliar customers, suppliers, or other business enterprises with which material amounts of business have been transacted may lack substance.
  - (5) With respect to material uncollected balances, guarantees, and other obligations, obtain information about the financial capability of the counterparties to the transaction.
- b. Determine whether the transaction has been approved by the board of directors or other appropriate officials.
- c. Perform tests and conclude as to whether the auditee correctly applied FIN 46 to first identify potential variable interests in VIEs and then to determine variable interests in VIEs.

**.08** The auditor should adequately document the procedures performed, the evidence obtained, and the conclusions reached with respect to whether the auditee has identified all variable interests in VIEs.

## Step 2: Consider the Involvement of Related Parties

**.09** A number of the key provisions of FIN 46 require consideration of related parties. The principal guidance requiring such consideration includes

the scope exceptions of paragraph 4, the provisions in paragraph 5 for determining whether an enterprise is a VIE, and the provisions in paragraph 17 for determining whether an enterprise is the primary beneficiary of a VIE.

**.10** In order for the auditor to be satisfied that the auditee has adequately considered the variable interests held by related parties, the auditor should obtain an understanding of the relationships to the auditee of all other parties that hold variable interests in the VIEs or potential VIEs identified in Step 1 above. Additionally, audit procedures performed in accordance with SAS No. 45, *Omnibus Statements on Auditing Standards—1983*, section 334, “Related Parties,” will help identify related parties that the auditor should consider when determining whether the auditee is the primary beneficiary of a VIE.

**.11** The auditor should be aware that some, but not all, of the guidance in FIN 46 requiring consolidation of related parties requires that in addition to those parties identified in SFAS 57, certain other parties acting as de facto agents or de facto principals of a variable interest holder should be considered related parties. FIN 46 states that the following are considered to be de facto agents of an enterprise:

- a. A party that cannot finance its operations without subordinated financial support from the enterprise, for example, another VIE of which the enterprise is the primary beneficiary
- b. A party that received its interests as a contribution or a loan from the enterprise
- c. An officer, employee, or member of the governing board of the enterprise
- d. A party that has (1) an agreement that it cannot sell, transfer, or encumber its interests in the entity without the prior approval of the enterprise or (2) a close business relationship like the relationship between a professional service provider and one of its significant clients. The right of prior approval creates a de facto agency relationship only if that right could constrain the other party’s ability to manage the economic risks or realize the economic rewards from its interests in a VIE through the sale, transfer, or encumbrance of those interests.

**.12** The auditor should adequately document the procedures performed, the evidence obtained, and the conclusions reached with respect to whether the auditee has adequately considered related parties as required under FIN 46.

### **Step 3: Identify Those VIEs in Which the Auditee Is the Primary Beneficiary**

**.13** For those VIEs identified in Step 1 by the auditee, the auditor should review operating agreements and make inquiries to understand how the auditee determined whether it was the primary beneficiary. Auditors should be aware that not every VIE has a primary beneficiary. For those VIEs that were identified through audit procedures performed in Steps 1 and 2, the auditor should consider whether the auditee has applied the appropriate procedures to determine if it is the primary beneficiary.

**.14** In order for the auditor to be satisfied that the auditee has identified those VIEs for which it is the primary beneficiary, the auditor should perform the following procedures:

- a. Consider whether the auditee has adequate control procedures for determining whether it is the primary beneficiary, including procedures to re-assess whether the primary beneficiary has changed.<sup>5</sup>
- b. Consider whether the control procedures for determining whether the auditee is the primary beneficiary include consideration of implicit variable interests as discussed in FSP FIN 46(R)-5.
- c. Perform tests of the control procedures for determining whether the auditee is the primary beneficiary and consider whether such controls are operating effectively.
- d. Consider whether the auditee has properly identified the VIEs for which it is the primary beneficiary and the VIEs for which it is not the primary beneficiary.
- e. Consider using a valuation specialist to review any detailed computations of expected losses and/or expected residual returns.
- f. Perform tests and conclude on the auditee's determination of a primary beneficiary (that is, whether the auditee correctly applied FIN 46 and the concept of a primary beneficiary).

.15 The auditor should adequately document the procedures performed, the evidence obtained, and the conclusions reached with respect to whether the auditee has identified those VIEs in which it is the primary beneficiary.

#### **Step 4: For Those VIEs for Which the Auditee Is the Primary Beneficiary, Consider Whether the Auditee Properly Accounted for the VIE in the Consolidated Financial Statements**

.16 In order for the auditor to be satisfied that the auditee has properly accounted for a VIE in which the auditee is the primary beneficiary, the auditor should perform the following procedures:

- a. Determine whether the primary beneficiary of a VIE properly measured the assets, liabilities, and noncontrolling interests of the newly consolidated entity at their fair values at the date the enterprise first became the primary beneficiary.

*Valuation Based on Fair Value.* The auditor should obtain evidence supporting management's assertions about the fair value of interests in VIEs measured or disclosed at fair value. The method for determining fair value may be specified by generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and may vary depending on the industry in which the entity operates or the nature of the entity. If the determination of fair value requires the use of estimates, the auditor should consider the guidance in SAS No. 57, *Auditing Accounting Estimates*. In addition, SAS No. 101, *Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*, provides guidance as to auditing fair value measurements and disclosures contained in financial statements.

---

<sup>5</sup> See paragraph 15 of FIN 46 regarding reconsiderations of the primary beneficiary.

If a VIE is consolidated based on fair values that are not reflected in the VIE's financial statements, the auditee should provide adequate support for those amounts—even if the carrying value approximates fair value.

The AICPA has issued a toolkit for auditors entitled “Auditing Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures” that may be useful in obtaining evidence supporting management's assertions about the fair value of interests in VIEs measured or disclosed at fair value. That toolkit is available at [www.aicpa.org/members/div/auditstd/fasb123002.asp](http://www.aicpa.org/members/div/auditstd/fasb123002.asp).

- b. Determine whether the appropriate accounting treatments for losses (extraordinary items) and gains (adjustments to the asset values) upon conversion to fair value were followed.
- c. If the auditee is under common control with the VIE, evaluate whether the auditee initially measured the assets, liabilities, and noncontrolling interests of the VIE at amounts at which they were carried in the accounts of the entity that controls the VIE.
- d. Evaluate whether the auditee initially measured assets and liabilities that it transferred to the VIE at, after, or shortly before the date that the auditee became the primary beneficiary at the same amounts at which those assets and liabilities would have been measured had they not been transferred. No gain or loss is allowed to be recognized because of such transfers.
- e. Evaluate whether the auditee properly accounted for the excesses (for example, goodwill) described in paragraph 21 of FIN 46. That paragraph provides the appropriate accounting for such excesses.

.17 The auditor should adequately document the procedures performed, the evidence obtained, and the conclusions reached with respect to whether the auditee has properly consolidated VIEs in which the auditee is the primary beneficiary.

## **Step 5: For Those VIEs for Which the Auditee Is Not the Primary Beneficiary, Consider Whether the Auditee Properly Accounted for Its Interests in Accordance With GAAP**

.18 As described in the Introduction, variable interests take many forms. If the auditee holds variable interests but is not the primary beneficiary, the variable interests should be accounted for in accordance with the relevant requirements of GAAP. For example:

- Ownership interests—equity method, fair value method, or cost method in accordance with APB Opinion No. 18, FASB Statement No. 115, and other literature
- Loans or notes receivable—in accordance with APB Opinion No. 21, FASB Statements No. 91 and 114, EITF Issue No. 85-1, and other literature
- Debt securities—FASB Statement No. 115 and other literature

- Guarantees—in accordance with FIN 45 and other literature
- Insurance contracts—in accordance with FASB Statements No. 5, 60, and 113, FIN 14, and other literature
- Derivative contracts—in accordance with FASB Statement No. 133 and other literature
- Management and other service contracts—in accordance with EITF Issue No. 00-21 and other literature
- Leases—in accordance with FASB Statement No. 13 and other literature
- Research and development and other project development activities—in accordance with FASB Statements No. 2 and 68 and other literature

.19 The auditor should adequately document the procedures performed, the evidence obtained, and the conclusions reached with respect to whether the auditee has properly accounted for its interests in VIEs for which the auditee is not the primary beneficiary in accordance with GAAP.

## Step 6: Consider Whether Additional Evidential Matter Is Needed

.20 After identifying the VIEs for which the auditee is the primary beneficiary, the auditor should consider whether additional evidential matter is needed. If, in the auditor's judgment, additional evidential matter is needed, the auditor should perform procedures to gather such evidence. For example, the auditor may conclude that additional evidential matter is needed because of significant differences in fiscal-year ends between the auditee and the VIE, significant differences in accounting principles between the auditee and the VIE, changes in ownership of the VIE, changes in conditions affecting the auditee's use of the equity method, or the materiality of the VIE to the auditee's financial position or results of operations. Examples of procedures the auditor may perform are making inquiries of management about the VIE's financial results, and reviewing information in the auditee's files that relate to the VIE, such as VIE minutes, budgets, and information on cash flows.

.21 If the VIE's financial statements are not audited, or if the VIE auditor's report is not satisfactory, the auditor should apply, or should request that the auditee arrange with the VIE to have another auditor apply, appropriate auditing procedures to such financial statements, considering the materiality of the VIE in relation to the financial statements of the auditee.

.22 Any time lag in reporting between the date of the financial statements of the auditee and that of the VIE should be consistent from period to period. If such time lag has a material effect on the auditee's financial statements, the auditor should determine whether management has properly considered the lack of comparability. The effect may be material because, for example, the time lag is not consistent with the prior period in comparative statements or because a significant transaction occurred during the time lag. If a change in time lag occurs that has a material effect on the auditee's financial statements, an explanatory paragraph should be added to the auditor's report because of the change in reporting period. For guidance regarding consolidating entities with different fiscal year ends, auditors should refer to Accounting Research Bulletin No. 51, *Consolidated Financial Statements*, paragraph 4.

.23 The auditor should evaluate management's conclusion about the need to, or lack of need to, recognize an impairment loss for an other than temporary decline in the fair value of the individual assets of the VIE below their respective carrying amounts. In addition, with respect to subsequent events and transactions of the VIE occurring after the date of the VIE's financial statements but before the date of the auditor's report on the financial statements of the auditee, the auditor should read available interim financial statements of the VIE and make appropriate inquiries of management of the auditee to identify subsequent events and transactions that are material to the auditee's financial statements. Such events or transactions of the type contemplated in SAS No. 1, section 560, *Subsequent Events*, paragraphs 5 and 6, should be disclosed in the notes to the auditee's financial statements and, where applicable, labeled as unaudited information. For the purpose of recording the auditee's share of the VIE's results of operations, recognition should be given to events or transactions of the type contemplated in SAS No. 1, section 560, paragraph 3.

.24 The auditor should obtain evidence relating to material transactions between the auditee and the VIE in order to evaluate the adequacy of disclosures about material related party transactions.

.25 The auditor should adequately document the procedures performed, the evidence obtained, and the conclusions reached with respect to any additional evidential matter that is deemed necessary.

## **Step 7: Consider Whether the Auditee Has Made the Appropriate Disclosures About the VIEs With Which It Is Involved, Both Those for Which It Is the Primary Beneficiary and Those for Which It Is Not the Primary Beneficiary**

.26 In addition to disclosures required by other standards, the primary beneficiary of a VIE must disclose the following:

- The nature, purpose, size, and activities of the VIE.
- The carrying amount and classification of consolidated assets that are collateral for the VIE's obligations.
- Lack of recourse if creditors, or beneficial interest holders, of a consolidated VIE have no recourse to the general credit of the primary beneficiary.

.27 FIN 46 also requires an enterprise that has a significant variable interest in a VIE but is not the primary beneficiary to disclose the following:

- The nature of the enterprise's involvement with the VIE and when that involvement began.
- The nature, purpose, size, and activities of the VIE.
- The enterprise's maximum exposure to a loss as a result of its involvement with the VIE.

.28 In evaluating the adequacy of disclosure, the auditor should consider the form, arrangement, and content of the financial statements and their notes, including, for example, the terminology used, the amount of detail given,

the classification of items in the statements, and the bases of the amounts reported. The auditor should compare the presentation and disclosure with the requirements of GAAP. However, the auditor should also follow the guidance in SAS No. 32, *Adequacy of Disclosure in Financial Statements*, in evaluating the adequacy of disclosure that is not specifically required by GAAP.

## **Step 8: Obtain Appropriate Representations From Management**

.29 SAS No. 85, *Management Representations*, provides guidance to auditors in obtaining written representations from management. The auditor should obtain written representations from management regarding the completeness of the information regarding VIEs and transactions with VIEs, and the adequacy of the disclosures in the financial statements. The auditor should also consider obtaining written representations regarding critical issues and assumptions related to transactions with VIEs. Representations should also confirm that there are no side agreements that would materially affect the accounting.

## **Step 9: Consider Whether the Results of the Auditor's Procedures With Respect to VIEs Require Any Special Reporting Considerations**

.30 If the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence with respect to VIEs and transactions with VIEs in order to provide reasonable assurance that the financial statements are free of material misstatement, he or she should consider modifying the auditor's report for the scope limitation.

.31 Additionally, when there are significant transactions with VIEs the auditor may wish to emphasize a matter by adding an explanatory paragraph.

---

[The next page is 51,191.]

**Section 16,290**

# **Practice Alert 07-1**

## **Dating of the Auditor's Report and Related Practical Guidance**

**January, 2007****NOTICE TO READERS**

This Practice Alert is intended to provide practitioners with information that may help them improve the effectiveness and efficiency of their engagements and practices. It is based on existing professional literature, the experience of members of the Professional Issues Task Force (PITF) and information provided by certain AICPA member firms to their own professional staff. This information represents the views of the members of the PITF and has not been approved by any senior technical committee of the AICPA. The auditing portion of this publication is an Other Auditing Publication as defined in SAS No. 95, *Generally Accepted Auditing Standards*, and is intended to provide guidance to auditors of nonissuers.<sup>1</sup> Other Auditing Publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs). If an auditor applies the auditing guidance included in an Other Auditing Publication, the auditor should be satisfied that, in his or her judgment, it is both appropriate and relevant to the circumstances of the subject audit. This publication was reviewed by the AICPA Audit and Attest Standards staff and published by the AICPA, and is presumed to be appropriate.

**Introduction**

**.01** In December 2005, the Auditing Standards Board issued Statement on Auditing Standards No. 103, *Audit Documentation* (SAS No. 103). SAS No. 103, among other things, amends AU section 530, *Dating of the Independent Auditor's Report*, to require that the auditor's report not be dated earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the opinion on the financial statements.

**.02** The purpose of this Practice Alert is to provide guidance to practitioners regarding application of certain provisions of SAS No. 103, primarily relating to dating the auditor's report.

**Important Dates**

**.03** SAS No. 103 requires the consideration of three important dates, as follows:

- a. Auditor's report date. The auditor's report should not be dated earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the opinion.

<sup>1</sup> The term "issuer" is defined in Section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act as: An issuer as defined in Section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the securities of which are registered under Section 12 of that Act, or that is required to file reports under Section 15(d) [of the Exchange Act] or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933, and that it has not withdrawn. [Parenthetical references to the United States Code omitted].

- b. Report release date. This is the date that the auditor grants the entity permission to use the auditor's report in connection with the financial statements. In many cases, the report release date will be the date that the auditor delivers the audit report to the entity. As a practical matter, the auditor's report date will ordinarily be a date that is close to the report release date. The report release date is important as it "starts the clock" on the date that the final audit file must be completed.
- c. Documentation completion date. This is the date that the auditor determines that the audit documentation is assembled, final, and complete. The final audit file should be completed on a timely basis, but within 60 days following the report release date. After the documentation completion date, the auditor must not delete or discard audit documentation before the end of the specified retention period—not to be shorter than five years from the report release date. When the auditor finds it necessary to make additions (including amendments) to audit documentation after the documentation completion date, the auditor should document the following with respect to the additions:
  - (1) When and by whom such changes were made and (where applicable) reviewed;
  - (2) The specific reasons for the changes; and
  - (3) The effect, if any, of the changes on the auditor's conclusions.

**.04** Statutes, regulations, or the audit firm's quality control policies may specify a shorter period of time in which the assembly process should be completed or a longer retention period. Auditors need to be aware of the applicable state and federal regulations and should comply with the stricter requirement.

## The Audit Report Date

**.05** Paragraph .23 of SAS No. 103 states:

The auditor's report should not be dated earlier than the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the opinion. Among other things, sufficient appropriate audit evidence includes evidence that the audit documentation has been reviewed and that the entity's financial statements, including disclosures, have been prepared and that management has asserted that it has taken responsibility for them. This will ordinarily result in a report date that is close to the date the auditor grants the entity permission to use the auditor's report in connection with the financial statements (report release date). Delays in releasing the report may require the auditor to perform additional procedures to comply with the requirements of SAS No. 1, section 560, *Subsequent Events*, as amended.

**.06** The most significant impact on practitioners is the change of the date of the auditor's report from "the date of completion of the field work" to the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support the opinion.

**.07** Because the auditor's report cannot be dated until the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence, the term "completion of field work" is no longer relevant. The physical location where the auditor performs his or her audit procedures—either at the client site or in the practitioner's office—does not impact the auditor's report date.

**.08** If the auditor would not issue the auditor's report on the financial statements without resolution of a matter (for example, receipt of a confirmation, an attorney's letter, or information regarding a related party transaction), certain audit procedures being performed, or completion of a review, then the auditor's report is not dated until the matter is resolved, the audit procedures are performed, or the review is completed. Ultimately, it is a matter of professional judgment as to when the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to support his or her report.

## Evidence Supporting Financial Statement Amounts and Disclosures

### Attorney Letters

**.09** Attorney letters ordinarily represent a significant piece of "sufficient appropriate audit evidence" necessary to support the auditor's opinion. AU section 337.08 states:

A letter of audit inquiry to a client's lawyer is the auditor's primary means of obtaining corroboration of the information furnished by management concerning litigation, claims, and assessments. [Footnote omitted] Evidential matter obtained from the client's inside general counsel or legal department may provide the auditor with the necessary corroboration. However, evidential matter obtained from inside counsel is not a substitute for information outside counsel refuses to furnish.

**.10** In order to minimize the possibility that required attorney responses will delay completion of the audit, the auditor may find it advantageous to make the initial request of attorneys early in the audit process with the expectation that the auditor will request an update on the original response close to the auditor's report date. A verbal or e-mail update may be acceptable depending on the circumstances. If new litigation or significant developments related to existing litigation are discovered in the verbal or e-mail update, it is recommended that the auditor obtain a written update from the attorney.

### Obtaining Waivers

**.11** Clients sometimes have difficulty receiving written waivers from financial institutions related to violations of loan covenants on a timely basis. Without those written waivers, the client's long-term debt may need to be reclassified to short-term debt. Therefore, subject to materiality considerations, the auditor would not be able to conclude that he or she has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence with respect to classification of the debt as long-term unless the written waivers are received (i.e., the auditor could not opine that the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the company unless the auditor knows whether the debt should be classified as current or non-current).

## Consideration and Evaluation of Subsequent Events

**.12** The auditor's responsibility with respect to subsequent events is delineated in AU section 560. AU section 560.10 states "There is a period after the balance-sheet date with which the auditor must be concerned in completing various phases of his audit. This period is known as the "subsequent period" and is considered to extend to the date of the auditor's report." Furthermore, AU section 560.11 states that "Certain specific procedures are applied to transactions occurring after the balance-sheet date such as (a) the examination of data

to assure that proper cutoffs have been made and (b) the examination of data which provide information to aid the auditor in his evaluation of the assets and liabilities as of the balance-sheet date.”

.13 The purpose of the auditor’s consideration and evaluation of subsequent events is to determine whether all subsequent events that may require adjustment to or disclosure in the financial statements on which the auditor is to report have been appropriately recognized or disclosed in the financial statements. As a result of the issuance of SAS No. 103, the subsequent period extends past the completion of field work to the date on which the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence. This change will require the auditor to perform certain subsequent period procedures (for example, reading available interim financial statements, making inquiries of management having responsibility for financial and accounting matters, and reading minutes of meetings or inquiring as to actions taken when minutes are not available) at or near the date of the auditor’s report—which is now extended beyond the old “completion of field work” date. The impact of the change on the nature and extent of cut-off procedures will depend on the auditor’s assessment of the risk of material misstatement associated with the relevant financial statement assertions.

.14 The auditor has no obligation after the date of the report to make any further or continuing inquiries or perform any other auditing procedures, unless new information that may affect the report comes to his or her attention.

## Financial Statement Preparation and Management’s Assertions

.15 The requirement that the auditor’s report cannot be dated prior to the date that the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence means that the auditor’s report would not be dated before the financial statements have been prepared and management has reviewed and approved them.

.16 The auditor is required to obtain written representations from management as part of an audit of financial statements performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. SAS No. 85, *Management Representations*, as amended by SAS No. 113, *Omnibus Statement on Auditing Standards—2006*, states that because the auditor is concerned with events occurring through the date of his or her report that may require adjustment to or disclosure in the financial statements, the written representations should be made as of the date of the auditor’s report. Therefore, it is no longer acceptable for the written representations to be as of a date after the date of the auditor’s report.

.17 Certain audit committees require that they approve the audited financial statements. Ordinarily, audit committee approval of the financial statements would not impact the dating of the auditor’s report.

## Evidence That The Audit Documentation Has Been Reviewed

.18 SAS No. 22, *Planning and Supervision*, states that the work performed by each assistant should be reviewed to determine whether it was adequately performed and to evaluate whether the results are consistent with the conclusions to be presented in the auditor’s report. Such reviews by appropriate engagement team members should be completed prior to the date of the auditor’s report.

**.19** Some firm's quality control policies and procedures may require an engagement quality control review (such as a second review or a concurring review) of certain engagements prior to the release of the firm's audit report. Auditors need to be aware that the results of the engagement quality control review may require modification of the financial statements or the performance of additional audit procedures and, therefore, could impact the date of the auditor's report.

---













## **AICPA RESOURCE: *Accounting & Auditing Literature***

The AICPA has created a unique online research tool by combining the power and speed of the Web with comprehensive accounting and auditing standards. *AICPA RESOURCE* includes the AICPA, FASB and GASB libraries. You'll find subscriptions to these titles:

- AICPA Professional Standards
- AICPA Technical Practice Aids
- AICPA's Accounting Trends & Techniques
- AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides
- AICPA Audit Risk Alerts
- AICPA Financial Statement Preparation Manual
- AICPA Audit & Accounting Manual
- FASB Original Pronouncements
- FASB Current Text
- EITF Abstracts
- FASB Implementation Guides
- FASB's Comprehensive Topical Index
- GASB Original Pronouncements
- Codification of Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards
- GASB Implementation Guides
- GASB's Comprehensive Topical Index

Search for pertinent information from both databases by keyword and get the results ranked by relevancy. Print out important *AICPA RESOURCE* segments and integrate the literature into your engagements and financial statements. Available from anywhere you have Internet access, this comprehensive reference library is packed with the A & A guidance you need — and use — the most. All libraries are updated with the latest standards and conforming changes.

**AICPA, FASB and GASB Libraries**, No. WGLBY12

**AICPA and FASB Libraries**, No. WFLBY12

**AICPA Library**, No. WALBY12

Log onto **[www.cpa2biz.com/AICPAresource](http://www.cpa2biz.com/AICPAresource)** for subscription details.